

# Speech and Language Processing

An Introduction to Natural Language Processing,  
Computational Linguistics, and Speech Recognition

Third Edition draft

Daniel Jurafsky  
*Stanford University*

James H. Martin  
*University of Colorado at Boulder*

*Copyright ©2020. All rights reserved.*

Draft of December 30, 2020. Comments and typos welcome!

# Summary of Contents

1	Introduction.....	1
2	Regular Expressions, Text Normalization, Edit Distance.....	2
3	N-gram Language Models .....	29
4	Naive Bayes and Sentiment Classification.....	55
5	Logistic Regression .....	76
6	Vector Semantics and Embeddings .....	96
7	Neural Networks and Neural Language Models.....	127
8	Sequence Labeling for Parts of Speech and Named Entities.....	148
9	Deep Learning Architectures for Sequence Processing.....	173
10	Contextual Embeddings .....	202
11	Machine Translation and Encoder-Decoder Models .....	203
12	Constituency Grammars.....	231
13	Constituency Parsing .....	259
14	Dependency Parsing .....	280
15	Logical Representations of Sentence Meaning.....	305
16	Computational Semantics and Semantic Parsing .....	331
17	Information Extraction .....	332
18	Word Senses and WordNet.....	355
19	Semantic Role Labeling.....	373
20	Lexicons for Sentiment, Affect, and Connotation .....	393
21	Coreference Resolution .....	415
22	Discourse Coherence.....	442
23	Question Answering .....	464
24	Chatbots & Dialogue Systems .....	492
25	Phonetics.....	526
26	Automatic Speech Recognition and Text-to-Speech .....	548
	Bibliography.....	575
	Subject Index.....	607

# Contents

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>Regular Expressions, Text Normalization, Edit Distance</b>	<b>2</b>
2.1	Regular Expressions . . . . .	3
2.2	Words . . . . .	11
2.3	Corpora . . . . .	13
2.4	Text Normalization . . . . .	14
2.5	Minimum Edit Distance . . . . .	22
2.6	Summary . . . . .	26
	Bibliographical and Historical Notes . . . . .	27
	Exercises . . . . .	28
<b>3</b>	<b>N-gram Language Models</b>	<b>29</b>
3.1	N-Grams . . . . .	30
3.2	Evaluating Language Models . . . . .	35
3.3	Generalization and Zeros . . . . .	37
3.4	Smoothing . . . . .	41
3.5	Kneser-Ney Smoothing . . . . .	45
3.6	Huge Language Models and Stupid Backoff . . . . .	47
3.7	Advanced: Perplexity's Relation to Entropy . . . . .	49
3.8	Summary . . . . .	52
	Bibliographical and Historical Notes . . . . .	52
	Exercises . . . . .	53
<b>4</b>	<b>Naive Bayes and Sentiment Classification</b>	<b>55</b>
4.1	Naive Bayes Classifiers . . . . .	56
4.2	Training the Naive Bayes Classifier . . . . .	59
4.3	Worked example . . . . .	61
4.4	Optimizing for Sentiment Analysis . . . . .	61
4.5	Naive Bayes for other text classification tasks . . . . .	63
4.6	Naive Bayes as a Language Model . . . . .	64
4.7	Evaluation: Precision, Recall, F-measure . . . . .	65
4.8	Test sets and Cross-validation . . . . .	67
4.9	Statistical Significance Testing . . . . .	69
4.10	Avoiding Harms in Classification . . . . .	72
4.11	Summary . . . . .	73
	Bibliographical and Historical Notes . . . . .	73
	Exercises . . . . .	74
<b>5</b>	<b>Logistic Regression</b>	<b>76</b>
5.1	Classification: the sigmoid . . . . .	77
5.2	Learning in Logistic Regression . . . . .	81
5.3	The cross-entropy loss function . . . . .	82
5.4	Gradient Descent . . . . .	83
5.5	Regularization . . . . .	88
5.6	Multinomial logistic regression . . . . .	90
5.7	Interpreting models . . . . .	92
5.8	Advanced: Deriving the Gradient Equation . . . . .	93
5.9	Summary . . . . .	94

## 4 CONTENTS

Bibliographical and Historical Notes . . . . .	94
Exercises . . . . .	95
<b>6 Vector Semantics and Embeddings</b>	<b>96</b>
6.1 Lexical Semantics . . . . .	97
6.2 Vector Semantics . . . . .	100
6.3 Words and Vectors . . . . .	101
6.4 Cosine for measuring similarity . . . . .	105
6.5 TF-IDF: Weighing terms in the vector . . . . .	106
6.6 Pointwise Mutual Information (PMI) . . . . .	109
6.7 Applications of the tf-idf or PPMI vector models . . . . .	111
6.8 Word2vec . . . . .	112
6.9 Visualizing Embeddings . . . . .	118
6.10 Semantic properties of embeddings . . . . .	118
6.11 Bias and Embeddings . . . . .	120
6.12 Evaluating Vector Models . . . . .	122
6.13 Summary . . . . .	123
Bibliographical and Historical Notes . . . . .	123
Exercises . . . . .	126
<b>7 Neural Networks and Neural Language Models</b>	<b>127</b>
7.1 Units . . . . .	128
7.2 The XOR problem . . . . .	130
7.3 Feed-Forward Neural Networks . . . . .	133
7.4 Training Neural Nets . . . . .	137
7.5 Neural Language Models . . . . .	142
7.6 Summary . . . . .	146
Bibliographical and Historical Notes . . . . .	147
<b>8 Sequence Labeling for Parts of Speech and Named Entities</b>	<b>148</b>
8.1 (Mostly) English Word Classes . . . . .	149
8.2 Part-of-Speech Tagging . . . . .	151
8.3 Named Entities and Named Entity Tagging . . . . .	153
8.4 HMM Part-of-Speech Tagging . . . . .	155
8.5 Conditional Random Fields (CRFs) . . . . .	162
8.6 Evaluation of Named Entity Recognition . . . . .	167
8.7 Further Details . . . . .	167
8.8 Summary . . . . .	169
Bibliographical and Historical Notes . . . . .	170
Exercises . . . . .	171
<b>9 Deep Learning Architectures for Sequence Processing</b>	<b>173</b>
9.1 Language Models Revisited . . . . .	174
9.2 Recurrent Neural Networks . . . . .	176
9.3 Managing Context in RNNs: LSTMs and GRUs . . . . .	186
9.4 Self-Attention Networks: Transformers . . . . .	190
9.5 Potential Harms from Language Models . . . . .	198
9.6 Summary . . . . .	200
Bibliographical and Historical Notes . . . . .	200
<b>10 Contextual Embeddings</b>	<b>202</b>

<b>11 Machine Translation and Encoder-Decoder Models</b>	<b>203</b>
11.1 Language Divergences and Typology . . . . .	205
11.2 The Encoder-Decoder Model . . . . .	208
11.3 Encoder-Decoder with RNNs . . . . .	209
11.4 Attention . . . . .	212
11.5 Beam Search . . . . .	215
11.6 Encoder-Decoder with Transformers . . . . .	217
11.7 Some practical details on building MT systems . . . . .	218
11.8 MT Evaluation . . . . .	221
11.9 Bias and Ethical Issues . . . . .	226
11.10 Summary . . . . .	227
Bibliographical and Historical Notes . . . . .	228
Exercises . . . . .	230
<b>12 Constituency Grammars</b>	<b>231</b>
12.1 Constituency . . . . .	232
12.2 Context-Free Grammars . . . . .	232
12.3 Some Grammar Rules for English . . . . .	237
12.4 Treebanks . . . . .	244
12.5 Grammar Equivalence and Normal Form . . . . .	249
12.6 Lexicalized Grammars . . . . .	250
12.7 Summary . . . . .	255
Bibliographical and Historical Notes . . . . .	256
Exercises . . . . .	257
<b>13 Constituency Parsing</b>	<b>259</b>
13.1 Ambiguity . . . . .	259
13.2 CKY Parsing: A Dynamic Programming Approach . . . . .	261
13.3 Span-Based Neural Constituency Parsing . . . . .	267
13.4 Evaluating Parsers . . . . .	269
13.5 Partial Parsing . . . . .	270
13.6 CCG Parsing . . . . .	271
13.7 Summary . . . . .	277
Bibliographical and Historical Notes . . . . .	278
Exercises . . . . .	279
<b>14 Dependency Parsing</b>	<b>280</b>
14.1 Dependency Relations . . . . .	281
14.2 Dependency Formalisms . . . . .	283
14.3 Dependency Treebanks . . . . .	284
14.4 Transition-Based Dependency Parsing . . . . .	285
14.5 Graph-Based Dependency Parsing . . . . .	296
14.6 Evaluation . . . . .	301
14.7 Summary . . . . .	302
Bibliographical and Historical Notes . . . . .	302
Exercises . . . . .	304
<b>15 Logical Representations of Sentence Meaning</b>	<b>305</b>
15.1 Computational Desiderata for Representations . . . . .	306
15.2 Model-Theoretic Semantics . . . . .	308
15.3 First-Order Logic . . . . .	311
15.4 Event and State Representations . . . . .	318

## 6 CONTENTS

15.5 Description Logics . . . . .	323
15.6 Summary . . . . .	328
Bibliographical and Historical Notes . . . . .	329
Exercises . . . . .	330
<b>16 Computational Semantics and Semantic Parsing</b>	<b>331</b>
<b>17 Information Extraction</b>	<b>332</b>
17.1 Relation Extraction . . . . .	333
17.2 Relation Extraction Algorithms . . . . .	336
17.3 Extracting Times . . . . .	344
17.4 Extracting Events and their Times . . . . .	348
17.5 Template Filling . . . . .	350
17.6 Summary . . . . .	352
Bibliographical and Historical Notes . . . . .	353
Exercises . . . . .	354
<b>18 Word Senses and WordNet</b>	<b>355</b>
18.1 Word Senses . . . . .	356
18.2 Relations Between Senses . . . . .	358
18.3 WordNet: A Database of Lexical Relations . . . . .	360
18.4 Word Sense Disambiguation . . . . .	363
18.5 Alternate WSD algorithms and Tasks . . . . .	366
18.6 Using Thesauruses to Improve Embeddings . . . . .	369
18.7 Word Sense Induction . . . . .	369
18.8 Summary . . . . .	370
Bibliographical and Historical Notes . . . . .	371
Exercises . . . . .	372
<b>19 Semantic Role Labeling</b>	<b>373</b>
19.1 Semantic Roles . . . . .	374
19.2 Diathesis Alternations . . . . .	375
19.3 Semantic Roles: Problems with Thematic Roles . . . . .	376
19.4 The Proposition Bank . . . . .	377
19.5 FrameNet . . . . .	378
19.6 Semantic Role Labeling . . . . .	380
19.7 Selectional Restrictions . . . . .	384
19.8 Primitive Decomposition of Predicates . . . . .	389
19.9 Summary . . . . .	390
Bibliographical and Historical Notes . . . . .	390
Exercises . . . . .	392
<b>20 Lexicons for Sentiment, Affect, and Connotation</b>	<b>393</b>
20.1 Defining Emotion . . . . .	394
20.2 Available Sentiment and Affect Lexicons . . . . .	395
20.3 Creating Affect Lexicons by Human Labeling . . . . .	398
20.4 Semi-supervised Induction of Affect Lexicons . . . . .	399
20.5 Supervised Learning of Word Sentiment . . . . .	402
20.6 Using Lexicons for Sentiment Recognition . . . . .	406
20.7 Other tasks: Personality . . . . .	407
20.8 Affect Recognition . . . . .	408
20.9 Lexicon-based methods for Entity-Centric Affect . . . . .	410

20.10 Connotation Frames . . . . .	411
20.11 Summary . . . . .	413
Bibliographical and Historical Notes . . . . .	413
<b>21 Coreference Resolution</b>	<b>415</b>
21.1 Coreference Phenomena: Linguistic Background . . . . .	418
21.2 Coreference Tasks and Datasets . . . . .	423
21.3 Mention Detection . . . . .	424
21.4 Architectures for Coreference Algorithms . . . . .	427
21.5 Classifiers using hand-built features . . . . .	429
21.6 A neural mention-ranking algorithm . . . . .	430
21.7 Evaluation of Coreference Resolution . . . . .	434
21.8 Winograd Schema problems . . . . .	435
21.9 Gender Bias in Coreference . . . . .	436
21.10 Summary . . . . .	438
Bibliographical and Historical Notes . . . . .	438
Exercises . . . . .	441
<b>22 Discourse Coherence</b>	<b>442</b>
22.1 Coherence Relations . . . . .	444
22.2 Discourse Structure Parsing . . . . .	447
22.3 Centering and Entity-Based Coherence . . . . .	451
22.4 Representation learning models for local coherence . . . . .	456
22.5 Global Coherence . . . . .	458
22.6 Summary . . . . .	460
Bibliographical and Historical Notes . . . . .	461
Exercises . . . . .	463
<b>23 Question Answering</b>	<b>464</b>
23.1 Information Retrieval . . . . .	465
23.2 IR-based Factoid Question Answering . . . . .	473
23.3 Entity Linking . . . . .	477
23.4 Knowledge-based Question Answering . . . . .	482
23.5 Using Language Models to do QA . . . . .	484
23.6 Classic QA Models . . . . .	485
23.7 Evaluation of Factoid Answers . . . . .	488
Bibliographical and Historical Notes . . . . .	489
Exercises . . . . .	491
<b>24 Chatbots &amp; Dialogue Systems</b>	<b>492</b>
24.1 Properties of Human Conversation . . . . .	493
24.2 Chatbots . . . . .	496
24.3 GUS: Simple Frame-based Dialogue Systems . . . . .	504
24.4 The Dialogue-State Architecture . . . . .	508
24.5 Evaluating Dialogue Systems . . . . .	517
24.6 Dialogue System Design . . . . .	520
24.7 Summary . . . . .	522
Bibliographical and Historical Notes . . . . .	523
Exercises . . . . .	525
<b>25 Phonetics</b>	<b>526</b>
25.1 Speech Sounds and Phonetic Transcription . . . . .	526

## **8 CONTENTS**

25.2 Articulatory Phonetics . . . . .	527
25.3 Prosody . . . . .	532
25.4 Acoustic Phonetics and Signals . . . . .	534
25.5 Phonetic Resources . . . . .	544
25.6 Summary . . . . .	545
Bibliographical and Historical Notes . . . . .	546
Exercises . . . . .	547
<b>26 Automatic Speech Recognition and Text-to-Speech</b>	<b>548</b>
26.1 The Automatic Speech Recognition Task . . . . .	549
26.2 Feature Extraction for ASR: Log Mel Spectrum . . . . .	551
26.3 Speech Recognition Architecture . . . . .	555
26.4 CTC . . . . .	557
26.5 ASR Evaluation: Word Error Rate . . . . .	562
26.6 TTS . . . . .	564
26.7 Other Speech Tasks . . . . .	569
26.8 Summary . . . . .	570
Bibliographical and Historical Notes . . . . .	570
Exercises . . . . .	573
<b>Bibliography</b>	<b>575</b>
<b>Subject Index</b>	<b>607</b>

CHAPTER

# 1

## Introduction

La dernière chose qu'on trouve en faisant un ouvrage est de savoir celle qu'il faut mettre la première.

[The last thing you figure out in writing a book is what to put first.]  
Pascal

CHAPTER

## 2

# Regular Expressions, Text Normalization, Edit Distance

User: I am unhappy.  
 ELIZA: DO YOU THINK COMING HERE WILL HELP YOU NOT TO BE UNHAPPY  
 User: I need some help, that much seems certain.  
 ELIZA: WHAT WOULD IT MEAN TO YOU IF YOU GOT SOME HELP  
 User: Perhaps I could learn to get along with my mother.  
 ELIZA: TELL ME MORE ABOUT YOUR FAMILY  
 User: My mother takes care of me.  
 ELIZA: WHO ELSE IN YOU FAMILY TAKES CARE OF YOU  
 User: My father.  
 ELIZA: YOUR FATHER  
 User: You are like my father in some ways.

Weizenbaum (1966)

ELIZA

The dialogue above is from **ELIZA**, an early natural language processing system that could carry on a limited conversation with a user by imitating the responses of a Rogerian psychotherapist (Weizenbaum, 1966). ELIZA is a surprisingly simple program that uses pattern matching to recognize phrases like “I need X” and translate them into suitable outputs like “What would it mean to you if you got X?”. This simple technique succeeds in this domain because ELIZA doesn’t actually need to *know* anything to mimic a Rogerian psychotherapist. As Weizenbaum notes, this is one of the few dialogue genres where listeners can act as if they know nothing of the world. Eliza’s mimicry of human conversation was remarkably successful: many people who interacted with ELIZA came to believe that it really *understood* them and their problems, many continued to believe in ELIZA’s abilities even after the program’s operation was explained to them (Weizenbaum, 1976), and even today such **chatbots** are a fun diversion.

chatbots

Of course modern conversational agents are much more than a diversion; they can answer questions, book flights, or find restaurants, functions for which they rely on a much more sophisticated understanding of the user’s intent, as we will see in Chapter 24. Nonetheless, the simple pattern-based methods that powered ELIZA and other chatbots play a crucial role in natural language processing.

We’ll begin with the most important tool for describing text patterns: the **regular expression**. Regular expressions can be used to specify strings we might want to extract from a document, from transforming “I need X” in Eliza above, to defining strings like \$199 or \$24.99 for extracting tables of prices from a document.

text normalization

We’ll then turn to a set of tasks collectively called **text normalization**, in which regular expressions play an important part. Normalizing text means converting it to a more convenient, standard form. For example, most of what we are going to do with language relies on first separating out or **tokenizing** words from running text, the task of **tokenization**. English words are often separated from each other by whitespace, but whitespace is not always sufficient. *New York* and *rock ‘n’ roll* are sometimes treated as large words despite the fact that they contain spaces, while sometimes we’ll need to separate *I’m* into the two words *I* and *am*. For processing tweets or texts we’ll need to tokenize **emoticons** like :) or **hashtags** like #nlproc.

tokenization

Some languages, like Japanese, don't have spaces between words, so word tokenization becomes more difficult.

#### lemmatization

Another part of text normalization is **lemmatization**, the task of determining that two words have the same root, despite their surface differences. For example, the words *sang*, *sung*, and *sings* are forms of the verb *sing*. The word *sing* is the common *lemma* of these words, and a **lemmatizer** maps from all of these to *sing*. Lemmatization is essential for processing morphologically complex languages like Arabic. **Stemming** refers to a simpler version of lemmatization in which we mainly just strip suffixes from the end of the word. Text normalization also includes **sentence segmentation**: breaking up a text into individual sentences, using cues like periods or exclamation points.

#### stemming

#### sentence segmentation

Finally, we'll need to compare words and other strings. We'll introduce a metric called **edit distance** that measures how similar two strings are based on the number of edits (insertions, deletions, substitutions) it takes to change one string into the other. Edit distance is an algorithm with applications throughout language processing, from spelling correction to speech recognition to coreference resolution.

## 2.1 Regular Expressions

#### regular expression

One of the unsung successes in standardization in computer science has been the **regular expression (RE)**, a language for specifying text search strings. This practical language is used in every computer language, word processor, and text processing tools like the Unix tools grep or Emacs. Formally, a regular expression is an algebraic notation for characterizing a set of strings. They are particularly useful for searching in texts, when we have a **pattern** to search for and a **corpus** of texts to search through. A regular expression search function will search through the corpus, returning all texts that match the pattern. The corpus can be a single document or a collection. For example, the Unix command-line tool grep takes a regular expression and returns every line of the input document that matches the expression.

A search can be designed to return every match on a line, if there are more than one, or just the first match. In the following examples we generally underline the exact part of the pattern that matches the regular expression and show only the first match. We'll show regular expressions delimited by slashes but note that slashes are *not* part of the regular expressions.

Regular expressions come in many variants. We'll be describing **extended regular expressions**; different regular expression parsers may only recognize subsets of these, or treat some expressions slightly differently. Using an online regular expression tester is a handy way to test out your expressions and explore these variations.

### 2.1.1 Basic Regular Expression Patterns

The simplest kind of regular expression is a sequence of simple characters. To search for *woodchuck*, we type `/woodchuck/`. The expression `/Buttercup/` matches any string containing the substring *Buttercup*; grep with that expression would return the line *I'm called little Buttercup*. The search string can consist of a single character (like `!/`) or a sequence of characters (like `/urg1/`).

Regular expressions are **case sensitive**; lower case `/s/` is distinct from upper case `/S/` (`/s/` matches a lower case *s* but not an upper case *S*). This means that the pattern `/woodchucks/` will not match the string *Woodchucks*. We can solve this

RE	Example Patterns Matched
/woodchucks/	“interesting links to woodchucks and lemurs”
/a/	“Mary Ann stopped by Mona’s”
/!/	“You’ve left the burglar behind again!” said Nori

**Figure 2.1** Some simple regex searches.

problem with the use of the square braces [ and ]. The string of characters inside the braces specifies a **disjunction** of characters to match. For example, Fig. 2.2 shows that the pattern /[wW]/ matches patterns containing either w or W.

RE	Match	Example Patterns
/[wW]oodchuck/	Woodchuck or woodchuck	“Woodchuck”
/[abc]/	‘a’, ‘b’, or ‘c’	“In uomini, in soldati”
/[1234567890]/	any digit	“plenty of 7 to 5”

**Figure 2.2** The use of the brackets [] to specify a disjunction of characters.

The regular expression /[1234567890]/ specifies any single digit. While such classes of characters as digits or letters are important building blocks in expressions, they can get awkward (e.g., it’s inconvenient to specify

/[ABCDEFIGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ]/

to mean “any capital letter”). In cases where there is a well-defined sequence associated with a set of characters, the brackets can be used with the dash (-) to specify any one character in a **range**. The pattern /[2-5]/ specifies any one of the characters 2, 3, 4, or 5. The pattern /[b-g]/ specifies one of the characters b, c, d, e, f, or g. Some other examples are shown in Fig. 2.3.

RE	Match	Example Patterns Matched
/[A-Z]/	an upper case letter	“we should call it ‘Drenched Blossoms’ ”
/[a-z]/	a lower case letter	“my beans were impatient to be hoed!”
/[0-9]/	a single digit	“Chapter 1: Down the Rabbit Hole”

**Figure 2.3** The use of the brackets [] plus the dash - to specify a range.

The square braces can also be used to specify what a single character *cannot* be, by use of the caret ^ . If the caret ^ is the first symbol after the open square brace [, the resulting pattern is negated. For example, the pattern /[^a]/ matches any single character (including special characters) except a. This is only true when the caret is the first symbol after the open square brace. If it occurs anywhere else, it usually stands for a caret; Fig. 2.4 shows some examples.

RE	Match (single characters)	Example Patterns Matched
/[^A-Z]/	not an upper case letter	“Oyfn pripectchik”
/[^Ss]/	neither ‘S’ nor ‘s’	“I have no exquisite reason for’t”
/[^.]/	not a period	“our resident Djinn”
/[e^]/	either ‘e’ or ‘^’	“look up ^ now”
/a^b/	the pattern ‘a^b’	“look up a^b now”

**Figure 2.4** The caret ^ for negation or just to mean ^ . See below re: the backslash for escaping the period.

How can we talk about optional elements, like an optional s in *woodchuck* and *woodchucks*? We can’t use the square brackets, because while they allow us to say “s or S”, they don’t allow us to say “s or nothing”. For this we use the question mark ?/, which means “the preceding character or nothing”, as shown in Fig. 2.5.

RE	Match	Example Patterns Matched
/woodchucks?/	woodchuck or woodchucks	"woodchuck"
/colou?r/	color or colour	"color"

Figure 2.5 The question mark ? marks optionality of the previous expression.

We can think of the question mark as meaning “zero or one instances of the previous character”. That is, it’s a way of specifying how many of something that we want, something that is very important in regular expressions. For example, consider the language of certain sheep, which consists of strings that look like the following:

baa!  
baaa!  
baaaa!  
baaaaa!  
...

Kleene \*

This language consists of strings with a *b*, followed by at least two *a*’s, followed by an exclamation point. The set of operators that allows us to say things like “some number of *as*” are based on the asterisk or  $*$ , commonly called the **Kleene \*** (generally pronounced “cleany star”). The Kleene star means “zero or more occurrences of the immediately previous character or regular expression”. So  $/a^*/$  means “any string of zero or more *as*”. This will match *a* or *aaaaaa*, but it will also match *Off Minor* since the string *Off Minor* has zero *a*’s. So the regular expression for matching one or more *a* is  $/aa^*/$ , meaning one *a* followed by zero or more *as*. More complex patterns can also be repeated. So  $/[ab]^*/$  means “zero or more *a*’s or *b*’s” (not “zero or more right square braces”). This will match strings like *aaaa* or *ababab* or *bbbb*.

For specifying multiple digits (useful for finding prices) we can extend  $/[\text{0-9}]^*/$ , the regular expression for a single digit. An integer (a string of digits) is thus  $/[\text{0-9}][\text{0-9}]^*/$ . (Why isn’t it just  $/[\text{0-9}]^*/?$ )

Kleene +

Sometimes it’s annoying to have to write the regular expression for digits twice, so there is a shorter way to specify “at least one” of some character. This is the **Kleene +**, which means “one or more occurrences of the immediately preceding character or regular expression”. Thus, the expression  $/[\text{0-9}]^+$  is the normal way to specify “a sequence of digits”. There are thus two ways to specify the sheep language:  $/baaa^*/$  or  $/baa+^*/$ .

One very important special character is the period ( $./.$ ), a **wildcard** expression that matches any single character (*except* a carriage return), as shown in Fig. 2.6.

RE	Match	Example Matches
/beg.n/	any character between <i>beg</i> and <i>n</i>	<u>begin</u> , <u>beg'n</u> , <u>begun</u>

Figure 2.6 The use of the period . to specify any character.

anchors

The wildcard is often used together with the Kleene star to mean “any string of characters”. For example, suppose we want to find any line in which a particular word, for example, *aardvark*, appears twice. We can specify this with the regular expression  $/aardvark.^*aardvark/$ .

**Anchors** are special characters that anchor regular expressions to particular places in a string. The most common anchors are the caret  $\wedge$  and the dollar sign  $\$$ . The caret  $\wedge$  matches the start of a line. The pattern  $/^\wedge The/$  matches the word *The* only at the

start of a line. Thus, the caret `^` has three uses: to match the start of a line, to indicate a negation inside of square brackets, and just to mean a caret. (What are the contexts that allow grep or Python to know which function a given caret is supposed to have?) The dollar sign `$` matches the end of a line. So the pattern `$_` is a useful pattern for matching a space at the end of a line, and `/^The dog\.$/` matches a line that contains only the phrase *The dog*. (We have to use the backslash here since we want the `.` to mean “period” and not the wildcard.)

RE	Match
<code>^</code>	start of line
<code>\\$</code>	end of line
<code>\b</code>	word boundary
<code>\B</code>	non-word boundary

**Figure 2.7** Anchors in regular expressions.

There are also two other anchors: `\b` matches a word boundary, and `\B` matches a non-boundary. Thus, `/\bthe\b/` matches the word *the* but not the word *other*. More technically, a “word” for the purposes of a regular expression is defined as any sequence of digits, underscores, or letters; this is based on the definition of “words” in programming languages. For example, `/\b99\b/` will match the string *99* in *There are 99 bottles of beer on the wall* (because *99* follows a space) but not *99* in *There are 299 bottles of beer on the wall* (since *99* follows a number). But it will match *99* in *\$99* (since *99* follows a dollar sign (`$`), which is not a digit, underscore, or letter).

### 2.1.2 Disjunction, Grouping, and Precedence

Suppose we need to search for texts about pets; perhaps we are particularly interested in cats and dogs. In such a case, we might want to search for either the string *cat* or the string *dog*. Since we can’t use the square brackets to search for “cat or dog” (why can’t we say `/[catdog]/?`), we need a new operator, the **disjunction** operator, also called the **pipe** symbol `|`. The pattern `/cat|dog/` matches either the string *cat* or the string *dog*.

Sometimes we need to use this disjunction operator in the midst of a larger sequence. For example, suppose I want to search for information about pet fish for my cousin David. How can I specify both *guppy* and *guppies*? We cannot simply say `/guppy|ies/`, because that would match only the strings *guppy* and *ies*. This is because sequences like *guppy* take **precedence** over the disjunction operator `|`. To make the disjunction operator apply only to a specific pattern, we need to use the parenthesis operators `(` and `)`. Enclosing a pattern in parentheses makes it act like a single character for the purposes of neighboring operators like the pipe `|` and the Kleene\*. So the pattern `/gupp(y|ies)/` would specify that we meant the disjunction only to apply to the suffixes *y* and *ies*.

The parenthesis operator `(` is also useful when we are using counters like the Kleene\*. Unlike the `|` operator, the Kleene\* operator applies by default only to a single character, not to a whole sequence. Suppose we want to match repeated instances of a string. Perhaps we have a line that has column labels of the form *Column 1 Column 2 Column 3*. The expression `/Column[0-9]+_*/` will not match any number of columns; instead, it will match a single column followed by any number of spaces! The star here applies only to the space `_` that precedes it, not to the whole sequence. With the parentheses, we could write the expression

**operator precedence**

`/(Column_[0-9]+_*)*/` to match the word *Column*, followed by a number and optional spaces, the whole pattern repeated zero or more times.

This idea that one operator may take precedence over another, requiring us to sometimes use parentheses to specify what we mean, is formalized by the **operator precedence hierarchy** for regular expressions. The following table gives the order of RE operator precedence, from highest precedence to lowest precedence.

Parenthesis	()
Counters	* + ? {}
Sequences and anchors	the ^my end\$
Disjunction	

Thus, because counters have a higher precedence than sequences, `/the*/` matches *theeee* but not *thethe*. Because sequences have a higher precedence than disjunction, `/the|any/` matches *the* or *any* but not *thany* or *themy*.

**greedy**  
**non-greedy**

Patterns can be ambiguous in another way. Consider the expression `/[a-z]*/` when matching against the text *once upon a time*. Since `/[a-z]*/` matches zero or more letters, this expression could match nothing, or just the first letter *o*, *on*, *onc*, or *once*. In these cases regular expressions always match the *largest* string they can; we say that patterns are **greedy**, expanding to cover as much of a string as they can.

There are, however, ways to enforce **non-greedy** matching, using another meaning of the `?` qualifier. The operator `*?` is a Kleene star that matches as little text as possible. The operator `+?` is a Kleene plus that matches as little text as possible.

### 2.1.3 A Simple Example

Suppose we wanted to write a RE to find cases of the English article *the*. A simple (but incorrect) pattern might be:

`/the/`

One problem is that this pattern will miss the word when it begins a sentence and hence is capitalized (i.e., *The*). This might lead us to the following pattern:

`/[tT]he/`

But we will still incorrectly return texts with *the* embedded in other words (e.g., *other* or *theology*). So we need to specify that we want instances with a word boundary on both sides:

`/\b[tT]he\b/`

Suppose we wanted to do this without the use of `\b`. We might want this since `\b` won't treat underscores and numbers as word boundaries; but we might want to find *the* in some context where it might also have underlines or numbers nearby (*the\_* or *the25*). We need to specify that we want instances in which there are no alphabetic letters on either side of the *the*:

`/[^a-zA-Z][tT]he[^a-zA-Z]/`

But there is still one more problem with this pattern: it won't find the word *the* when it begins a line. This is because the regular expression `[^a-zA-Z]`, which we used to avoid embedded instances of *the*, implies that there must be some single (although non-alphabetic) character before the *the*. We can avoid this by specifying that before the *the* we require *either* the beginning-of-line or a non-alphabetic character, and the same at the end of the line:

`/(^|[^a-zA-Z])[tT]he([^a-zA-Z]|$)/`

false positives  
false negatives

The process we just went through was based on fixing two kinds of errors: **false positives**, strings that we incorrectly matched like *other* or *there*, and **false negatives**, strings that we incorrectly missed, like *The*. Addressing these two kinds of errors comes up again and again in implementing speech and language processing systems. Reducing the overall error rate for an application thus involves two antagonistic efforts:

- Increasing **precision** (minimizing false positives)
- Increasing **recall** (minimizing false negatives)

We'll come back to precision and recall with more precise definitions in Chapter 4.

### 2.1.4 More Operators

Figure 2.8 shows some aliases for common ranges, which can be used mainly to save typing. Besides the Kleene \* and Kleene + we can also use explicit numbers as counters, by enclosing them in curly brackets. The regular expression /{3}/ means “exactly 3 occurrences of the previous character or expression”. So /a\.{24}z/ will match *a* followed by 24 dots followed by *z* (but not *a* followed by 23 or 25 dots followed by a *z*).

RE	Expansion	Match	First Matches
\d	[0-9]	any digit	Party_of_5
\D	[^0-9]	any non-digit	Blue_moon
\w	[a-zA-Z0-9_]	any alphanumeric/underscore	Daiyu
\W	[^\w]	a non-alphanumeric	!!!!
\s	[_\r\t\n\f]	whitespace (space, tab)	in_Concord
\S	[^\s]	Non-whitespace	

Figure 2.8 Aliases for common sets of characters.

A range of numbers can also be specified. So /{n,m}/ specifies from *n* to *m* occurrences of the previous char or expression, and /{n,}/ means at least *n* occurrences of the previous expression. REs for counting are summarized in Fig. 2.9.

RE	Match
*	zero or more occurrences of the previous char or expression
+	one or more occurrences of the previous char or expression
?	exactly zero or one occurrence of the previous char or expression
{n}	<i>n</i> occurrences of the previous char or expression
{n,m}	from <i>n</i> to <i>m</i> occurrences of the previous char or expression
{n,}	at least <i>n</i> occurrences of the previous char or expression
{,m}	up to <i>m</i> occurrences of the previous char or expression

Figure 2.9 Regular expression operators for counting.

newline

Finally, certain special characters are referred to by special notation based on the backslash (\) (see Fig. 2.10). The most common of these are the **newline** character \n and the **tab** character \t. To refer to characters that are special themselves (like ., \*, [, and \]), precede them with a backslash, (i.e., /\./, /\\*//, /\[/, and /\\\/).

RE	Match	First Patterns Matched
\*	an asterisk “*”	“K*A*P*L*A*N”
\.	a period “.”	“Dr. Livingston, I presume”
\?	a question mark	“Why don’t they come and lend a hand?”
\n	a newline	
\t	a tab	

Figure 2.10 Some characters that need to be backslashed.

### 2.1.5 A More Complex Example

Let’s try out a more significant example of the power of REs. Suppose we want to build an application to help a user buy a computer on the Web. The user might want “any machine with at least 6 GHz and 500 GB of disk space for less than \$1000”. To do this kind of retrieval, we first need to be able to look for expressions like *6 GHz* or *500 GB* or *Mac* or *\$999.99*. In the rest of this section we’ll work out some simple regular expressions for this task.

First, let’s complete our regular expression for prices. Here’s a regular expression for a dollar sign followed by a string of digits:

```
/$[0-9]+/
```

Note that the \$ character has a different function here than the end-of-line function we discussed earlier. Most regular expression parsers are smart enough to realize that \$ here doesn’t mean end-of-line. (As a thought experiment, think about how regex parsers might figure out the function of \$ from the context.)

Now we just need to deal with fractions of dollars. We’ll add a decimal point and two digits afterwards:

```
/$[0-9]+\. [0-9][0-9]/
```

This pattern only allows *\$199.99* but not *\$199*. We need to make the cents optional and to make sure we’re at a word boundary:

```
/(^|\W)$[0-9]+(\. [0-9][0-9])?\b/
```

One last catch! This pattern allows prices like *\$199999.99* which would be far too expensive! We need to limit the dollars:

```
/(^|\W)$[0-9]{0,3}(\. [0-9][0-9])?\b/
```

How about disk space? We’ll need to allow for optional fractions again (*5.5 GB*); note the use of ? for making the final s optional, and the of */\w\*/* to mean “zero or more spaces” since there might always be extra spaces lying around:

```
/\b[0-9]+(\. [0-9]+)?\w*(GB|[Gg]igabytes?)\b/
```

Modifying this regular expression so that it only matches more than 500 GB is left as an exercise for the reader.

### 2.1.6 Substitution, Capture Groups, and ELIZA

#### substitution

An important use of regular expressions is in **substitutions**. For example, the substitution operator `s/regexp1/pattern/` used in Python and in Unix commands like `vim` or `sed` allows a string characterized by a regular expression to be replaced by another string:

`s/colour/color/`

It is often useful to be able to refer to a particular subpart of the string matching the first pattern. For example, suppose we wanted to put angle brackets around all integers in a text, for example, changing *the 35 boxes* to *the <35> boxes*. We'd like a way to refer to the integer we've found so that we can easily add the brackets. To do this, we put parentheses ( and ) around the first pattern and use the **number** operator \1 in the second pattern to refer back. Here's how it looks:

`s/([0-9]+)/<\1>/`

The parenthesis and number operators can also specify that a certain string or expression must occur twice in the text. For example, suppose we are looking for the pattern “the Xer they were, the Xer they will be”, where we want to constrain the two X's to be the same string. We do this by surrounding the first X with the parenthesis operator, and replacing the second X with the number operator \1, as follows:

`/the (.*er they were, the \1er they will be/`

Here the \1 will be replaced by whatever string matched the first item in parentheses. So this will match *the bigger they were, the bigger they will be* but not *the bigger they were, the faster they will be*.

**capture group**

**register**

**non-capturing group**

This use of parentheses to store a pattern in memory is called a **capture group**. Every time a capture group is used (i.e., parentheses surround a pattern), the resulting match is stored in a numbered **register**. If you match two different sets of parentheses, \2 means whatever matched the *second* capture group. Thus

`/the (.*er they (.*), the \1er we \2/`

will match *the faster they ran, the faster we ran* but not *the faster they ran, the faster we ate*. Similarly, the third capture group is stored in \3, the fourth is \4, and so on.

Parentheses thus have a double function in regular expressions; they are used to group terms for specifying the order in which operators should apply, and they are used to capture something in a register. Occasionally we might want to use parentheses for grouping, but don't want to capture the resulting pattern in a register. In that case we use a **non-capturing group**, which is specified by putting the commands ?: after the open paren, in the form (? : pattern ).

`/(?:some|a few) (people|cats) like some \1/`

will match *some cats like some cats* but not *some cats like some a few*.

Substitutions and capture groups are very useful in implementing simple chatbots like ELIZA ([Weizenbaum, 1966](#)). Recall that ELIZA simulates a Rogerian psychologist by carrying on conversations like the following:

User <sub>1</sub> :	Men are all alike.
ELIZA <sub>1</sub> :	IN WHAT WAY
User <sub>2</sub> :	They're always bugging us about something or other.
ELIZA <sub>2</sub> :	CAN YOU THINK OF A SPECIFIC EXAMPLE
User <sub>3</sub> :	Well, my boyfriend made me come here.
ELIZA <sub>3</sub> :	YOUR BOYFRIEND MADE YOU COME HERE
User <sub>4</sub> :	He says I'm depressed much of the time.
ELIZA <sub>4</sub> :	I AM SORRY TO HEAR YOU ARE DEPRESSED

ELIZA works by having a series or cascade of regular expression substitutions each of which matches and changes some part of the input lines. Input lines are

first uppercased. The first substitutions then change all instances of *MY* to *YOUR*, and *I'M* to *YOU ARE*, and so on. The next set of substitutions matches and replaces other patterns in the input. Here are some examples:

```
s/.* I'M (depressed|sad) .*/I AM SORRY TO HEAR YOU ARE \1/
s/.* I AM (depressed|sad) .*/WHY DO YOU THINK YOU ARE \1/
s/.* all .*?IN WHAT WAY/
s/.* always .*?CAN YOU THINK OF A SPECIFIC EXAMPLE/
```

Since multiple substitutions can apply to a given input, substitutions are assigned a rank and applied in order. Creating patterns is the topic of Exercise 2.3, and we return to the details of the ELIZA architecture in Chapter 24.

### 2.1.7 Lookahead Assertions

Finally, there will be times when we need to predict the future: look ahead in the text to see if some pattern matches, but not advance the match cursor, so that we can then deal with the pattern if it occurs.

**lookahead**

**zero-width**

These **lookahead** assertions make use of the (? syntax that we saw in the previous section for non-capture groups. The operator (?= pattern) is true if pattern occurs, but is **zero-width**, i.e. the match pointer doesn't advance. The operator (?! pattern) only returns true if a pattern does not match, but again is zero-width and doesn't advance the cursor. Negative lookahead is commonly used when we are parsing some complex pattern but want to rule out a special case. For example suppose we want to match, at the beginning of a line, any single word that doesn't start with "Volcano". We can use negative lookahead to do this:

```
/^(?!Volcano)[A-Za-z]+/
```

## 2.2 Words

**corpus**  
**corpora**

Before we talk about processing words, we need to decide what counts as a word. Let's start by looking at one particular **corpus** (plural **corpora**), a computer-readable collection of text or speech. For example the Brown corpus is a million-word collection of samples from 500 written English texts from different genres (newspaper, fiction, non-fiction, academic, etc.), assembled at Brown University in 1963–64 ([Kučera and Francis, 1967](#)). How many words are in the following Brown sentence?

He stepped out into the hall, was delighted to encounter a water brother.

This sentence has 13 words if we don't count punctuation marks as words, 15 if we count punctuation. Whether we treat period ("."), comma (","), and so on as words depends on the task. Punctuation is critical for finding boundaries of things (commas, periods, colons) and for identifying some aspects of meaning (question marks, exclamation marks, quotation marks). For some tasks, like part-of-speech tagging or parsing or speech synthesis, we sometimes treat punctuation marks as if they were separate words.

The Switchboard corpus of American English telephone conversations between strangers was collected in the early 1990s; it contains 2430 conversations averaging 6 minutes each, totaling 240 hours of speech and about 3 million words ([Godfrey et al., 1992](#)). Such corpora of spoken language don't have punctuation but do intro-

**utterance** duce other complications with regard to defining words. Let's look at one utterance from Switchboard; an **utterance** is the spoken correlate of a sentence:

I do uh main- mainly business data processing

**disfluency**  
**fragment**  
**filled pause**

This utterance has two kinds of **disfluencies**. The broken-off word *main-* is called a **fragment**. Words like *uh* and *um* are called **fillers** or **filled pauses**. Should we consider these to be words? Again, it depends on the application. If we are building a speech transcription system, we might want to eventually strip out the disfluencies.

But we also sometimes keep disfluencies around. Disfluencies like *uh* or *um* are actually helpful in speech recognition in predicting the upcoming word, because they may signal that the speaker is restarting the clause or idea, and so for speech recognition they are treated as regular words. Because people use different disfluencies they can also be a cue to speaker identification. In fact [Clark and Fox Tree \(2002\)](#) showed that *uh* and *um* have different meanings. What do you think they are?

Are capitalized tokens like *They* and uncapitalized tokens like *they* the same word? These are lumped together in some tasks (speech recognition), while for part-of-speech or named-entity tagging, capitalization is a useful feature and is retained.

**lemma**  
**wordform**

How about inflected forms like *cats* versus *cat*? These two words have the same **lemma** *cat* but are different wordforms. A **lemma** is a set of lexical forms having the same stem, the same major part-of-speech, and the same word sense. The **word-form** is the full inflected or derived form of the word. For morphologically complex languages like Arabic, we often need to deal with lemmatization. For many tasks in English, however, wordforms are sufficient.

**word type**  
**word token**

How many words are there in English? To answer this question we need to distinguish two ways of talking about words. **Types** are the number of distinct words in a corpus; if the set of words in the vocabulary is  $V$ , the number of types is the vocabulary size  $|V|$ . **Tokens** are the total number  $N$  of running words. If we ignore punctuation, the following Brown sentence has 16 tokens and 14 types:

They picnicked by the pool, then lay back on the grass and looked at the stars.

When we speak about the number of words in the language, we are generally referring to word types.

Corpus	Tokens = $N$	Types = $ V $
Shakespeare	884 thousand	31 thousand
Brown corpus	1 million	38 thousand
Switchboard telephone conversations	2.4 million	20 thousand
COCA	440 million	2 million
Google N-grams	1 trillion	13 million

**Figure 2.11** Rough numbers of types and tokens for some English language corpora. The largest, the Google N-grams corpus, contains 13 million types, but this count only includes types appearing 40 or more times, so the true number would be much larger.

**Herdan's Law**  
**Heaps' Law**

Fig. 2.11 shows the rough numbers of types and tokens computed from some popular English corpora. The larger the corpora we look at, the more word types we find, and in fact this relationship between the number of types  $|V|$  and number of tokens  $N$  is called **Herdan's Law** ([Herdan, 1960](#)) or **Heaps' Law** ([Heaps, 1978](#)) after its discoverers (in linguistics and information retrieval respectively). It is shown in Eq. 2.1, where  $k$  and  $\beta$  are positive constants, and  $0 < \beta < 1$ .

$$|V| = kN^\beta \quad (2.1)$$

The value of  $\beta$  depends on the corpus size and the genre, but at least for the large corpora in Fig. 2.11,  $\beta$  ranges from .67 to .75. Roughly then we can say that the vocabulary size for a text goes up significantly faster than the square root of its length in words.

Another measure of the number of words in the language is the number of lemmas instead of wordform types. Dictionaries can help in giving lemma counts; dictionary **entries** or **boldface forms** are a very rough upper bound on the number of lemmas (since some lemmas have multiple boldface forms). The 1989 edition of the Oxford English Dictionary had 615,000 entries.

## 2.3 Corpora

Words don't appear out of nowhere. Any particular piece of text that we study is produced by one or more specific speakers or writers, in a specific dialect of a specific language, at a specific time, in a specific place, for a specific function.

Perhaps the most important dimension of variation is the language. NLP algorithms are most useful when they apply across many languages. The world has 7097 languages at the time of this writing, according to the online Ethnologue catalog (Simons and Fennig, 2018). It is important to test algorithms on more than one language, and particularly on languages with different properties; by contrast there is an unfortunate current tendency for NLP algorithms to be developed or tested just on English (Bender, 2019). Even when algorithms are developed beyond English, they tend to be developed for the official languages of large industrialized nations (Chinese, Spanish, Japanese, German etc.), but we don't want to limit tools to just these few languages. Furthermore, most languages also have multiple varieties, often spoken in different regions or by different social groups. Thus, for example, if we're processing text that uses features of African American Language (**AAL**) — the name for the many variations of language used by millions of people in African American communities (King 2020) — we must use NLP tools that function with features of those varieties. Twitter posts might use features often used by speakers of African American Language, such as constructions like *iont* (*I don't* in Mainstream American English (**MAE**)), or *talmbout* corresponding to MAE *talking about*, both examples that influence word segmentation (Blodgett et al. 2016, Jones 2015).

**code switching** It's also quite common for speakers or writers to use multiple languages in a single communicative act, a phenomenon called **code switching**. Code switching is enormously common across the world; here are examples showing Spanish and (transliterated) Hindi code switching with English (Solorio et al. 2014, Jurgens et al. 2017):

- (2.2) Por primera vez veo a @username actually being hateful! it was beautiful:  
[*For the first time I get to see @username actually being hateful! it was beautiful:)*]
- (2.3) dost tha or ra- hega ... dont wory ... but dherya rakhe  
[“*he was and will remain a friend ... don't worry ... but have faith*”]

Another dimension of variation is the genre. The text that our algorithms must process might come from newswire, fiction or non-fiction books, scientific articles, Wikipedia, or religious texts. It might come from spoken genres like telephone conversations, business meetings, police body-worn cameras, medical interviews, or transcripts of television shows or movies. It might come from work situations

like doctors' notes, legal text, or parliamentary or congressional proceedings.

Text also reflects the demographic characteristics of the writer (or speaker): their age, gender, race, socioeconomic class can all influence the linguistic properties of the text we are processing.

And finally, time matters too. Language changes over time, and for some languages we have good corpora of texts from different historical periods.

### datasheet

Because language is so situated, when developing computational models for language processing from a corpus, it's important to consider who produced the language, in what context, for what purpose. How can a user of a dataset know all these details? The best way is for the corpus creator to build a **datasheet** (Gebru et al., 2020) or **data statement** (Bender and Friedman, 2018) for each corpus. A datasheet specifies properties of a dataset like:

**Motivation:** Why was the corpus collected, by whom, and who funded it?

**Situation:** When and in what situation was the text written/spoken? For example, was there a task? Was the language originally spoken conversation, edited text, social media communication, monologue vs. dialogue?

**Language variety:** What language (including dialect/region) was the corpus in?

**Speaker demographics:** What was, e.g., age or gender of the authors of the text?

**Collection process:** How big is the data? If it is a subsample how was it sampled? Was the data collected with consent? How was the data pre-processed, and what metadata is available?

**Annotation process:** What are the annotations, what are the demographics of the annotators, how were they trained, how was the data annotated?

**Distribution:** Are there copyright or other intellectual property restrictions?

## 2.4 Text Normalization

Before almost any natural language processing of a text, the text has to be normalized. At least three tasks are commonly applied as part of any normalization process:

1. Tokenizing (segmenting) words
2. Normalizing word formats
3. Segmenting sentences

In the next sections we walk through each of these tasks.

### 2.4.1 Unix Tools for Crude Tokenization and Normalization

Let's begin with an easy, if somewhat naive version of word tokenization and normalization (and frequency computation) that can be accomplished for English solely in a single UNIX command-line, inspired by Church (1994). We'll make use of some Unix commands: `tr`, used to systematically change particular characters in the input; `sort`, which sorts input lines in alphabetical order; and `uniq`, which collapses and counts adjacent identical lines.

For example let's begin with the 'complete words' of Shakespeare in one textfile, `sh.txt`. We can use `tr` to tokenize the words by changing every sequence of non-alphabetic characters to a newline ('A-Za-z' means alphabetic, the `-c` option complements to non-alphabet, and the `-s` option squeezes all sequences into a single character):

```
tr -sc 'A-Za-z' '\n' < sh.txt
```

The output of this command will be:

```
THE
SONNETS
by
William
Shakespeare
From
fairest
creatures
We
```

```
...
```

Now that there is one word per line, we can sort the lines, and pass them to `uniq -c` which will collapse and count them:

```
tr -sc 'A-Za-z' '\n' < sh.txt | sort | uniq -c
```

with the following output:

```
1945 A
72 AARON
19 ABELESS
25 Aaron
6 Abate
1 Abates
5 Abbess
6 Abbey
3 Abbot
```

```
...
```

Alternatively, we can collapse all the upper case to lower case:

```
tr -sc 'A-Za-z' '\n' < sh.txt | tr A-Z a-z | sort | uniq -c
```

whose output is

```
14725 a
97 aaron
1 abaissiez
10 abandon
2 abandoned
2 abase
1 abash
14 abate
3 abated
3 abatement
```

```
...
```

Now we can sort again to find the frequent words. The `-n` option to `sort` means to sort numerically rather than alphabetically, and the `-r` option means to sort in reverse order (highest-to-lowest):

```
tr -sc 'A-Za-z' '\n' < sh.txt | tr A-Z a-z | sort | uniq -c | sort -n -r
```

The results show that the most frequent words in Shakespeare, as in any other corpus, are the short **function words** like articles, pronouns, prepositions:

```

27378 the
26084 and
22538 i
19771 to
17481 of
14725 a
13826 you
12489 my
11318 that
11112 in
    ...

```

Unix tools of this sort can be very handy in building quick word count statistics for any corpus.

### 2.4.2 Word Tokenization

#### **tokenization**

The simple UNIX tools above were fine for getting rough word statistics but more sophisticated algorithms are generally necessary for **tokenization**, the task of segmenting running text into words.

While the Unix command sequence just removed all the numbers and punctuation, for most NLP applications we'll need to keep these in our tokenization. We often want to break off punctuation as a separate token; commas are a useful piece of information for parsers, periods help indicate sentence boundaries. But we'll often want to keep the punctuation that occurs word internally, in examples like *m.p.h.*, *Ph.D.*, *AT&T*, and *cap'n*. Special characters and numbers will need to be kept in prices (\$45.55) and dates (01/02/06); we don't want to segment that price into separate tokens of "45" and "55". And there are URLs (<http://www.stanford.edu>), Twitter hashtags (#nlp), or email addresses (someone@cs.colorado.edu).

Number expressions introduce other complications as well; while commas normally appear at word boundaries, commas are used inside numbers in English, every three digits: 555,500.50. Languages, and hence tokenization requirements, differ on this; many continental European languages like Spanish, French, and German, by contrast, use a comma to mark the decimal point, and spaces (or sometimes periods) where English puts commas, for example, 555 500,50.

#### **clitic**

A tokenizer can also be used to expand **clitic** contractions that are marked by apostrophes, for example, converting what're to the two tokens what are, and we're to we are. A clitic is a part of a word that can't stand on its own, and can only occur when it is attached to another word. Some such contractions occur in other alphabetic languages, including articles and pronouns in French (j'ai, l'homme).

Depending on the application, tokenization algorithms may also tokenize multiword expressions like New York or rock 'n' roll as a single token, which requires a multiword expression dictionary of some sort. Tokenization is thus intimately tied up with **named entity recognition**, the task of detecting names, dates, and organizations (Chapter 8).

#### **Penn Treebank tokenization**

One commonly used tokenization standard is known as the **Penn Treebank tokenization** standard, used for the parsed corpora (treebanks) released by the Linguistic Data Consortium (LDC), the source of many useful datasets. This standard separates out clitics (*doesn't* becomes *does* plus *n't*), keeps hyphenated words together, and separates out all punctuation (to save space we're showing visible spaces ' ' between tokens, although newlines is a more common output):

**Input:** "The San Francisco-based restaurant," they said,  
 "doesn't charge \$10".  
**Output:** "The.San.Francisco-based.restaurant,".they.said.,  
 ".does.n't.charge.\$.10.".

In practice, since tokenization needs to be run before any other language processing, it needs to be very fast. The standard method for tokenization is therefore to use deterministic algorithms based on regular expressions compiled into very efficient finite state automata. For example, Fig. 2.12 shows an example of a basic regular expression that can be used to tokenize with the `nltk.regexp_tokenize` function of the Python-based Natural Language Toolkit (NLTK) (Bird et al. 2009; <http://www.nltk.org>).

```
>>> text = 'That U.S.A. poster-print costs $12.40...'
>>> pattern = r'''(?x)      # set flag to allow verbose regexps
...     ([A-Z]\.)+        # abbreviations, e.g. U.S.A.
...     | \w+(-\w+)*       # words with optional internal hyphens
...     | \$?\d+(\.\d+)?%? # currency and percentages, e.g. $12.40, 82%
...     | \.\.\.            # ellipsis
...     | [][.,;"'?():-_'] # these are separate tokens; includes ], [
...     '',
>>> nltk.regexp_tokenize(text, pattern)
['That', 'U.S.A.', 'poster-print', 'costs', '$12.40', '...']
```

**Figure 2.12** A Python trace of regular expression tokenization in the NLTK Python-based natural language processing toolkit (Bird et al., 2009), commented for readability; the `(?x)` verbose flag tells Python to strip comments and whitespace. Figure from Chapter 3 of Bird et al. (2009).

Carefully designed deterministic algorithms can deal with the ambiguities that arise, such as the fact that the apostrophe needs to be tokenized differently when used as a genitive marker (as in *the book's cover*), a quotative as in *'The other class', she said*, or in clitics like *they're*.

Word tokenization is more complex in languages like written Chinese, Japanese, and Thai, which do not use spaces to mark potential word-boundaries. In Chinese, for example, words are composed of characters (called **hanzi** in Chinese). Each character generally represents a single unit of meaning (called a **morpheme**) and is pronounceable as a single syllable. Words are about 2.4 characters long on average. But deciding what counts as a word in Chinese is complex. For example, consider the following sentence:

(2.4) 姚明进入总决赛  
 “Yao Ming reaches the finals”

As Chen et al. (2017) point out, this could be treated as 3 words ('Chinese Treebank' segmentation):

(2.5) 姚明 进入 总决赛  
 YaoMing reaches finals

or as 5 words ('Peking University' segmentation):

(2.6) 姚 明 进 入 总 决 赛  
 Yao Ming reaches overall finals

Finally, it is possible in Chinese simply to ignore words altogether and use characters as the basic elements, treating the sentence as a series of 7 characters:

hanzi

(2.7) 姚 明 进 入 总 决 赛  
 Yao Ming enter enter overall decision game

In fact, for most Chinese NLP tasks it turns out to work better to take characters rather than words as input, since characters are at a reasonable semantic level for most applications, and since most word standards, by contrast, result in a huge vocabulary with large numbers of very rare words (Li et al., 2019).

word segmentation

However, for Japanese and Thai the character is too small a unit, and so algorithms for **word segmentation** are required. These can also be useful for Chinese in the rare situations where word rather than character boundaries are required. The standard segmentation algorithms for these languages use neural **sequence models** trained via supervised machine learning on hand-segmented training sets; we'll introduce sequence models in Chapter 8 and Chapter 9.

### 2.4.3 Byte-Pair Encoding for Tokenization

There is a third option to tokenizing text. Instead of defining tokens as words (whether delimited by spaces or more complex algorithms), or as characters (as in Chinese), we can use our data to automatically tell us what the tokens should be. This is especially useful in dealing with unknown words, an important problem in language processing. As we will see in the next chapter, NLP algorithms often learn some facts about language from one corpus (a **training** corpus) and then use these facts to make decisions about a separate **test** corpus and its language. Thus if our training corpus contains, say the words *low*, *new*, *newer*, but not *lower*, then if the word *lower* appears in our test corpus, our system will not know what to do with it.

subwords

To deal with this unknown word problem, modern tokenizers often automatically induce sets of tokens that include tokens smaller than words, called **subwords**. Subwords can be arbitrary substrings, or they can be meaning-bearing units like the morphemes *-est* or *-er*. (A morpheme is the smallest meaning-bearing unit of a language; for example the word *unlikeliest* has the morphemes *un-*, *likely*, and *-est*.) In modern tokenization schemes, most tokens are words, but some tokens are frequently occurring morphemes or other subwords like *-er*. Every unseen words like *lower* can thus be represented by some sequence of known subword units, such as *low* and *er*, or even as a sequence of individual letters if necessary.

Most tokenization schemes have two parts: a **token learner**, and a **token segmenter**. The token learner takes a raw training corpus (sometimes roughly pre-separated into words, for example by whitespace) and induces a vocabulary, a set of tokens. The token segmenter takes a raw test sentence and segments it into the tokens in the vocabulary. Three algorithms are widely used: **byte-pair encoding** (Sennrich et al., 2016), **unigram language modeling** (Kudo, 2018), and **WordPiece** (Schuster and Nakajima, 2012); there is also a **SentencePiece** library that includes implementations of the first two of the three (Kudo and Richardson, 2018).

BPE

In this section we introduce the simplest of the three, the **byte-pair encoding** or **BPE** algorithm (Sennrich et al., 2016); see Fig. 2.13. The BPE token learner begins with a vocabulary that is just the set of all individual characters. It then examines the training corpus, chooses the two symbols that are most frequently adjacent (say ‘A’, ‘B’), adds a new merged symbol ‘AB’ to the vocabulary, and replaces every adjacent ‘A’ ‘B’ in the corpus with the new ‘AB’. It continues to count and merge, creating new longer and longer character strings, until  $k$  merges have been done creating  $k$  novel tokens;  $k$  is thus is a parameter of the algorithm. The resulting vocabulary consists of the original set of characters plus  $k$  new symbols.

The algorithm is usually run inside words (not merging across word boundaries), so the input corpus is first white-space-separated to give a set of strings, each corresponding to the characters of a word, plus a special end-of-word symbol `_`, and its counts. Let's see its operation on the following tiny input corpus of 18 word tokens with counts for each word (the word *low* appears 5 times, the word *newer* 6 times, and so on), which would have a starting vocabulary of 11 letters:

corpus	vocabulary
5    l o w _	_, d, e, i, l, n, o, r, s, t, w
2    l o w e s t _	
6    n e w e r _	
3    w i d e r _	
2    n e w _	

The BPE algorithm first count all pairs of adjacent symbols: the most frequent is the pair `e r` because it occurs in *newer* (frequency of 6) and *wider* (frequency of 3) for a total of 9 occurrences<sup>1</sup>. We then merge these symbols, treating `er` as one symbol, and count again:

corpus	vocabulary
5    l o w _	_, d, e, i, l, n, o, r, s, t, w, er
2    l o w e s t _	
6    n e w e r _	
3    w i d e r _	
2    n e w _	

Now the most frequent pair is `er _`, which we merge; our system has learned that there should be a token for word-final `er`, represented as `er_`:

corpus	vocabulary
5    l o w _	_, d, e, i, l, n, o, r, s, t, w, er, er_
2    l o w e s t _	
6    n e w e r _	
3    w i d e r _	
2    n e w _	

Next `n e` (total count of 8) get merged to `ne`:

corpus	vocabulary
5    l o w _	_, d, e, i, l, n, o, r, s, t, w, er, er_, ne
2    l o w e s t _	
6    n e w e r _	
3    w i d e r _	
2    n e w _	

If we continue, the next merges are:

Merge	Current Vocabulary
(ne, w)	_, d, e, i, l, n, o, r, s, t, w, er, er_, ne, new
(l, o)	_, d, e, i, l, n, o, r, s, t, w, er, er_, ne, new, lo
(lo, w)	_, d, e, i, l, n, o, r, s, t, w, er, er_, ne, new, lo, low
(new, er_)	_, d, e, i, l, n, o, r, s, t, w, er, er_, ne, new, lo, low, newer_
(low, __)	_, d, e, i, l, n, o, r, s, t, w, er, er_, ne, new, lo, low, newer_, low__

Once we've learned our vocabulary, the **token parser** is used to tokenize a test sentence. The token parser just runs on the test data the merges we have learned

---

<sup>1</sup> Note that there can be ties; we could have instead chosen to merge `r __` first, since that also has a frequency of 9.

```

function BYTE-PAIR ENCODING(strings  $C$ , number of merges  $k$ ) returns vocab  $V$ 
     $V \leftarrow$  all unique characters in  $C$            $\#$  initial set of tokens is characters
    for  $i = 1$  to  $k$  do                       $\#$  merge tokens til  $k$  times
         $t_L, t_R \leftarrow$  Most frequent pair of adjacent tokens in  $C$ 
         $t_{NEW} \leftarrow t_L + t_R$                    $\#$  make new token by concatenating
         $V \leftarrow V + t_{NEW}$                        $\#$  update the vocabulary
        Replace each occurrence of  $t_L, t_R$  in  $C$  with  $t_{NEW}$        $\#$  and update the corpus
    return  $V$ 

```

**Figure 2.13** The token learner part of the BPE algorithm for taking a corpus broken up into individual characters or bytes, and learning a vocabulary by iteratively merging tokens. Figure adapted from [Bostrom and Durrett \(2020\)](#).

from the training data, greedily, in the order we learned them. (Thus the frequencies in the test data don't play a role, just the frequencies in the training data). So first we segment each test sentence word into characters. Then we apply the first rule: replace every instance of e r in the test corpus with r, and then the second rule: replace every instance of er \_ in the test corpus with er\_, and so on. By the end, if the test corpus contained the word n e w e r \_, it would be tokenized as a full word. But a new (unknown) word like l o w e r \_ would be merged into the two tokens low er\_.

Of course in real algorithms BPE is run with many thousands of merges on a very large input corpus. The result is that most words will be represented as full symbols, and only the very rare words (and unknown words) will have to be represented by their parts.

#### 2.4.4 Word Normalization, Lemmatization and Stemming

##### normalization

Word **normalization** is the task of putting words/tokens in a standard format, choosing a single normal form for words with multiple forms like USA and US or uh-huh and uhhuh. This standardization may be valuable, despite the spelling information that is lost in the normalization process. For information retrieval or information extraction about the US, we might want to see information from documents whether they mention the US or the USA.

##### case folding

**Case folding** is another kind of normalization. Mapping everything to lower case means that *Woodchuck* and *woodchuck* are represented identically, which is very helpful for generalization in many tasks, such as information retrieval or speech recognition. For sentiment analysis and other text classification tasks, information extraction, and machine translation, by contrast, case can be quite helpful and case folding is generally not done. This is because maintaining the difference between, for example, US the country and us the pronoun can outweigh the advantage in generalization that case folding would have provided for other words.

For many natural language processing situations we also want two morphologically different forms of a word to behave similarly. For example in web search, someone may type the string *woodchucks* but a useful system might want to also return pages that mention *woodchuck* with no s. This is especially common in morphologically complex languages like Russian, where for example the word *Moscow* has different endings in the phrases *Moscow*, *of Moscow*, *to Moscow*, and so on.

**Lemmatization** is the task of determining that two words have the same root, despite their surface differences. The words *am*, *are*, and *is* have the shared lemma

*be*; the words *dinner* and *dinners* both have the lemma *dinner*. Lemmatizing each of these forms to the same lemma will let us find all mentions of words in Russian like *Moscow*. The lemmatized form of a sentence like *He is reading detective stories* would thus be *He be read detective story*.

**morpheme**  
**stem**  
**affix**

How is lemmatization done? The most sophisticated methods for lemmatization involve complete **morphological parsing** of the word. **Morphology** is the study of the way words are built up from smaller meaning-bearing units called **morphemes**. Two broad classes of morphemes can be distinguished: **stems**—the central morpheme of the word, supplying the main meaning—and **affixes**—adding “additional” meanings of various kinds. So, for example, the word *fox* consists of one morpheme (the morpheme *fox*) and the word *cats* consists of two: the morpheme *cat* and the morpheme *-s*. A morphological parser takes a word like *cats* and parses it into the two morphemes *cat* and *s*, or parses a Spanish word like *amaren* (‘if in the future they would love’) into the morpheme *amar* ‘to love’, and the morphological features *3PL* and *future subjunctive*.

**stemming**  
**Porter stemmer**

### The Porter Stemmer

Lemmatization algorithms can be complex. For this reason we sometimes make use of a simpler but cruder method, which mainly consists of chopping off word-final affixes. This naive version of morphological analysis is called **stemming**. One of the most widely used stemming algorithms is the [Porter \(1980\)](#). The Porter stemmer applied to the following paragraph:

This was not the map we found in Billy Bones's chest, but an accurate copy, complete in all things-names and heights and soundings-with the single exception of the red crosses and the written notes.

produces the following stemmed output:

Thi wa not the map we found in Billi Bone s chest but an accur copi complet in all thing name and height and sound with the singl except of the red cross and the written note

**cascade**

The algorithm is based on series of rewrite rules run in series, as a **cascade**, in which the output of each pass is fed as input to the next pass; here is a sampling of the rules:

ATIONAL → ATE (e.g., relational → relate)  
ING → ε if stem contains vowel (e.g., motoring → motor)  
SSES → SS (e.g., grasses → grass)

Detailed rule lists for the Porter stemmer, as well as code (in Java, Python, etc.) can be found on Martin Porter’s homepage; see also the original paper ([Porter, 1980](#)).

Simple stemmers can be useful in cases where we need to collapse across different variants of the same lemma. Nonetheless, they do tend to commit errors of both over- and under-generalizing, as shown in the table below ([Krovetz, 1993](#)):

Errors of Commission	Errors of Omission
organization	organ
doing	doe
numerical	numerous
policy	police
	European
	analysis
	noise
	sparse
	Europe
	analyzes
	noisy
	sparsity

### 2.4.5 Sentence Segmentation

sentence segmentation

**Sentence segmentation** is another important step in text processing. The most useful cues for segmenting a text into sentences are punctuation, like periods, question marks, and exclamation points. Question marks and exclamation points are relatively unambiguous markers of sentence boundaries. Periods, on the other hand, are more ambiguous. The period character “.” is ambiguous between a sentence boundary marker and a marker of abbreviations like *Mr.* or *Inc.* The previous sentence that you just read showed an even more complex case of this ambiguity, in which the final period of *Inc.* marked both an abbreviation and the sentence boundary marker. For this reason, sentence tokenization and word tokenization may be addressed jointly.

In general, sentence tokenization methods work by first deciding (based on rules or machine learning) whether a period is part of the word or is a sentence-boundary marker. An abbreviation dictionary can help determine whether the period is part of a commonly used abbreviation; the dictionaries can be hand-built or machine-learned (Kiss and Strunk, 2006), as can the final sentence splitter. In the Stanford CoreNLP toolkit (Manning et al., 2014), for example sentence splitting is rule-based, a deterministic consequence of tokenization; a sentence ends when a sentence-ending punctuation (., !, or ?) is not already grouped with other characters into a token (such as for an abbreviation or number), optionally followed by additional final quotes or brackets.

## 2.5 Minimum Edit Distance

Much of natural language processing is concerned with measuring how similar two strings are. For example in spelling correction, the user typed some erroneous string—let’s say *graffe*—and we want to know what the user meant. The user probably intended a word that is similar to *graffe*. Among candidate similar words, the word *giraffe*, which differs by only one letter from *graffe*, seems intuitively to be more similar than, say *grail* or *graf*, which differ in more letters. Another example comes from **coreference**, the task of deciding whether two strings such as the following refer to the same entity:

Stanford President Marc Tessier-Lavigne  
Stanford University President Marc Tessier-Lavigne

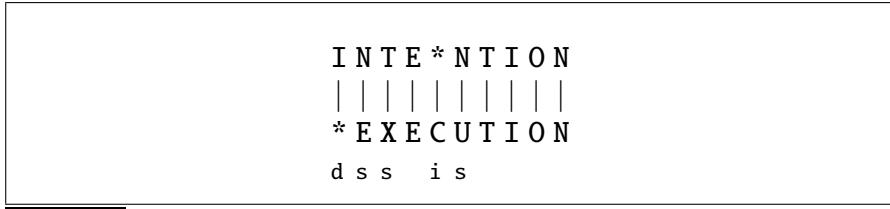
Again, the fact that these two strings are very similar (differing by only one word) seems like useful evidence for deciding that they might be coreferent.

minimum edit distance

**Edit distance** gives us a way to quantify both of these intuitions about string similarity. More formally, the **minimum edit distance** between two strings is defined as the minimum number of editing operations (operations like insertion, deletion, substitution) needed to transform one string into another.

alignment

The gap between *intention* and *execution*, for example, is 5 (delete an *i*, substitute *e* for *n*, substitute *x* for *t*, insert *c*, substitute *u* for *n*). It’s much easier to see this by looking at the most important visualization for string distances, an **alignment** between the two strings, shown in Fig. 2.14. Given two sequences, an **alignment** is a correspondence between substrings of the two sequences. Thus, we say *I* **aligns** with the empty string, *N* with *E*, and so on. Beneath the aligned strings is another representation; a series of symbols expressing an **operation list** for converting the top string into the bottom string: **d** for deletion, **s** for substitution, **i** for insertion.

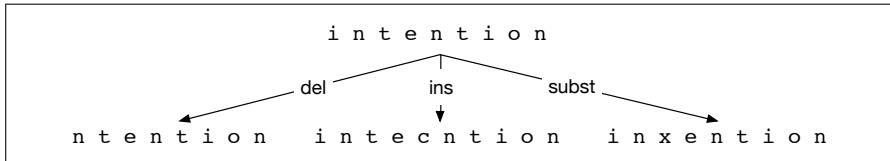


**Figure 2.14** Representing the minimum edit distance between two strings as an **alignment**. The final row gives the operation list for converting the top string into the bottom string: d for deletion, s for substitution, i for insertion.

We can also assign a particular cost or weight to each of these operations. The **Levenshtein** distance between two sequences is the simplest weighting factor in which each of the three operations has a cost of 1 (Levenshtein, 1966)—we assume that the substitution of a letter for itself, for example, t for t, has zero cost. The Levenshtein distance between *intention* and *execution* is 5. Levenshtein also proposed an alternative version of his metric in which each insertion or deletion has a cost of 1 and substitutions are not allowed. (This is equivalent to allowing substitution, but giving each substitution a cost of 2 since any substitution can be represented by one insertion and one deletion). Using this version, the Levenshtein distance between *intention* and *execution* is 8.

### 2.5.1 The Minimum Edit Distance Algorithm

How do we find the minimum edit distance? We can think of this as a search task, in which we are searching for the shortest path—a sequence of edits—from one string to another.



**Figure 2.15** Finding the edit distance viewed as a search problem

dynamic  
programming

The space of all possible edits is enormous, so we can't search naively. However, lots of distinct edit paths will end up in the same state (string), so rather than recomputing all those paths, we could just remember the shortest path to a state each time we saw it. We can do this by using **dynamic programming**. Dynamic programming is the name for a class of algorithms, first introduced by Bellman (1957), that apply a table-driven method to solve problems by combining solutions to sub-problems. Some of the most commonly used algorithms in natural language processing make use of dynamic programming, such as the **Viterbi** algorithm (Chapter 8) and the **CKY** algorithm for parsing (Chapter 13).

The intuition of a dynamic programming problem is that a large problem can be solved by properly combining the solutions to various sub-problems. Consider the shortest path of transformed words that represents the minimum edit distance between the strings *intention* and *execution* shown in Fig. 2.16.

Imagine some string (perhaps it is *exention*) that is in this optimal path (whatever it is). The intuition of dynamic programming is that if *exention* is in the optimal operation list, then the optimal sequence must also include the optimal path from *intention* to *exention*. Why? If there were a shorter path from *intention* to *exention*,

```

    intention      ← delete i
    n t e n t i o n   ← substitute n by e
    e t e n t i o n   ← substitute t by x
    e x e n t i o n   ← insert u
    e x e n u t i o n   ← substitute n by c
    e x e c u t i o n

```

**Figure 2.16** Path from *intention* to *execution*.**minimum edit distance algorithm**

then we could use it instead, resulting in a shorter overall path, and the optimal sequence wouldn't be optimal, thus leading to a contradiction.

The **minimum edit distance algorithm** algorithm was named by [Wagner and Fischer \(1974\)](#) but independently discovered by many people (see the Historical Notes section of Chapter 8).

Let's first define the minimum edit distance between two strings. Given two strings, the source string  $X$  of length  $n$ , and target string  $Y$  of length  $m$ , we'll define  $D[i, j]$  as the edit distance between  $X[1..i]$  and  $Y[1..j]$ , i.e., the first  $i$  characters of  $X$  and the first  $j$  characters of  $Y$ . The edit distance between  $X$  and  $Y$  is thus  $D[n, m]$ .

We'll use dynamic programming to compute  $D[n, m]$  bottom up, combining solutions to subproblems. In the base case, with a source substring of length  $i$  but an empty target string, going from  $i$  characters to 0 requires  $i$  deletes. With a target substring of length  $j$  but an empty source going from 0 characters to  $j$  characters requires  $j$  inserts. Having computed  $D[i, j]$  for small  $i, j$  we then compute larger  $D[i, j]$  based on previously computed smaller values. The value of  $D[i, j]$  is computed by taking the minimum of the three possible paths through the matrix which arrive there:

$$D[i, j] = \min \begin{cases} D[i - 1, j] + \text{del-cost}(\text{source}[i]) \\ D[i, j - 1] + \text{ins-cost}(\text{target}[j]) \\ D[i - 1, j - 1] + \text{sub-cost}(\text{source}[i], \text{target}[j]) \end{cases}$$

If we assume the version of Levenshtein distance in which the insertions and deletions each have a cost of 1 ( $\text{ins-cost}(\cdot) = \text{del-cost}(\cdot) = 1$ ), and substitutions have a cost of 2 (except substitution of identical letters have zero cost), the computation for  $D[i, j]$  becomes:

$$D[i, j] = \min \begin{cases} D[i - 1, j] + 1 \\ D[i, j - 1] + 1 \\ D[i - 1, j - 1] + \begin{cases} 2; & \text{if } \text{source}[i] \neq \text{target}[j] \\ 0; & \text{if } \text{source}[i] = \text{target}[j] \end{cases} \end{cases} \quad (2.8)$$

The algorithm is summarized in Fig. 2.17; Fig. 2.18 shows the results of applying the algorithm to the distance between *intention* and *execution* with the version of Levenshtein in Eq. 2.8.

Knowing the minimum edit distance is useful for algorithms like finding potential spelling error corrections. But the edit distance algorithm is important in another way; with a small change, it can also provide the minimum cost **alignment** between two strings. Aligning two strings is useful throughout speech and language processing. In speech recognition, minimum edit distance alignment is used to compute the word error rate (Chapter 26). Alignment plays a role in machine translation, in

```

function MIN-EDIT-DISTANCE(source, target) returns min-distance
    n  $\leftarrow$  LENGTH(source)
    m  $\leftarrow$  LENGTH(target)
    Create a distance matrix distance[n+1, m+1]

    # Initialization: the zeroth row and column is the distance from the empty string
    D[0,0] = 0
    for each row i from 1 to n do
        D[i,0]  $\leftarrow$  D[i-1,0] + del-cost(source[i])
    for each column j from 1 to m do
        D[0,j]  $\leftarrow$  D[0,j-1] + ins-cost(target[j])

    # Recurrence relation:
    for each row i from 1 to n do
        for each column j from 1 to m do
            D[i,j]  $\leftarrow$  MIN( D[i-1,j] + del-cost(source[i]),
                           D[i-1,j-1] + sub-cost(source[i], target[j]),
                           D[i,j-1] + ins-cost(target[j]) )

    # Termination
    return D[n,m]

```

**Figure 2.17** The minimum edit distance algorithm, an example of the class of dynamic programming algorithms. The various costs can either be fixed (e.g.,  $\forall x, \text{ins-cost}(x) = 1$ ) or can be specific to the letter (to model the fact that some letters are more likely to be inserted than others). We assume that there is no cost for substituting a letter for itself (i.e.,  $\text{sub-cost}(x,x) = 0$ ).

Src\Tar	#	e	x	e	c	u	t	i	o	n
#	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
i	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	6	7	8
n	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	7	8	7
t	3	4	5	6	7	8	7	8	9	8
e	4	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	9
n	5	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	10
t	6	5	6	7	8	9	8	9	10	11
i	7	6	7	8	9	10	9	8	9	10
o	8	7	8	9	10	11	10	9	8	9
n	9	8	9	10	11	12	11	10	9	8

**Figure 2.18** Computation of minimum edit distance between *intention* and *execution* with the algorithm of Fig. 2.17, using Levenshtein distance with cost of 1 for insertions or deletions, 2 for substitutions.

which sentences in a parallel corpus (a corpus with a text in two languages) need to be matched to each other.

To extend the edit distance algorithm to produce an alignment, we can start by visualizing an alignment as a path through the edit distance matrix. Figure 2.19 shows this path with the boldfaced cell. Each boldfaced cell represents an alignment of a pair of letters in the two strings. If two boldfaced cells occur in the same row, there will be an insertion in going from the source to the target; two boldfaced cells in the same column indicate a deletion.

Figure 2.19 also shows the intuition of how to compute this alignment path. The

**backtrace**

computation proceeds in two steps. In the first step, we augment the minimum edit distance algorithm to store backpointers in each cell. The backpointer from a cell points to the previous cell (or cells) that we came from in entering the current cell. We've shown a schematic of these backpointers in Fig. 2.19. Some cells have multiple backpointers because the minimum extension could have come from multiple previous cells. In the second step, we perform a **backtrace**. In a backtrace, we start from the last cell (at the final row and column), and follow the pointers back through the dynamic programming matrix. Each complete path between the final cell and the initial cell is a minimum distance alignment. Exercise 2.7 asks you to modify the minimum edit distance algorithm to store the pointers and compute the backtrace to output an alignment.

	#	e	x	e	c	u	t	i	o	n
#	0	← 1	← 2	← 3	← 4	← 5	← 6	← 7	← 8	← 9
<b>i</b>	↑ 1	↖ ↗ 2	↖ ↗ 3	↖ ↗ 4	↖ ↗ 5	↖ ↗ 6	↖ ↗ 7	↖ 6	↖ 7	↖ 8
<b>n</b>	↑ 2	↖ ↗ 3	↖ ↗ 4	↖ ↗ 5	↖ ↗ 6	↖ ↗ 7	↖ ↗ 8	↑ 7	↖ ↗ 8	↖ 7
<b>t</b>	↑ 3	↖ ↗ 4	↖ ↗ 5	↖ ↗ 6	↖ ↗ 7	↖ ↗ 8	↖ 7	↖ ↗ 8	↖ ↗ 9	↑ 8
<b>e</b>	↑ 4	↖ 3	← 4	↖ ← 5	← 6	← 7	↖ ← 8	↖ ← 9	↖ ← 10	↑ 9
<b>n</b>	↑ 5	↑ 4	↖ ← 5	↖ ← 6	↖ ← 7	↖ ← 8	↖ ← 9	↖ ← 10	↖ ← 11	↖ ↑ 10
<b>t</b>	↑ 6	↑ 5	↖ ← 6	↖ ← 7	↖ ← 8	↖ ← 9	↖ 8	↖ 9	↖ 10	↖ ↗ 11
<b>i</b>	↑ 7	↑ 6	↖ ← 7	↖ ← 8	↖ ← 9	↖ ← 10	↑ 9	↖ 8	↖ 9	↖ 10
<b>o</b>	↑ 8	↑ 7	↖ ← 8	↖ ← 9	↖ ← 10	↖ ← 11	↑ 10	↑ 9	↖ 8	↖ 9
<b>n</b>	↑ 9	↑ 8	↖ ← 9	↖ ← 10	↖ ← 11	↖ ← 12	↑ 11	↑ 10	↑ 9	↖ 8

**Figure 2.19** When entering a value in each cell, we mark which of the three neighboring cells we came from with up to three arrows. After the table is full we compute an **alignment** (minimum edit path) by using a **backtrace**, starting at the **8** in the lower-right corner and following the arrows back. The sequence of bold cells represents one possible minimum cost alignment between the two strings. Diagram design after [Gusfield \(1997\)](#).

While we worked our example with simple Levenshtein distance, the algorithm in Fig. 2.17 allows arbitrary weights on the operations. For spelling correction, for example, substitutions are more likely to happen between letters that are next to each other on the keyboard. The **Viterbi** algorithm is a probabilistic extension of minimum edit distance. Instead of computing the “minimum edit distance” between two strings, Viterbi computes the “maximum probability alignment” of one string with another. We'll discuss this more in Chapter 8.

## 2.6 Summary

This chapter introduced a fundamental tool in language processing, the **regular expression**, and showed how to perform basic **text normalization** tasks including **word segmentation** and **normalization**, **sentence segmentation**, and **stemming**. We also introduced the important **minimum edit distance** algorithm for comparing strings. Here's a summary of the main points we covered about these ideas:

- The **regular expression** language is a powerful tool for pattern-matching.
- Basic operations in regular expressions include **concatenation** of symbols, **disjunction** of symbols ([], |, and .), **counters** (\*, +, and {n,m}), **anchors** (^, \$) and precedence operators ((,)).

- Word **tokenization and normalization** are generally done by cascades of simple regular expression substitutions or finite automata.
- The **Porter algorithm** is a simple and efficient way to do **stemming**, stripping off affixes. It does not have high accuracy but may be useful for some tasks.
- The **minimum edit distance** between two strings is the minimum number of operations it takes to edit one into the other. Minimum edit distance can be computed by **dynamic programming**, which also results in an **alignment** of the two strings.

## Bibliographical and Historical Notes

Kleene (1951, 1956) first defined regular expressions and the finite automaton, based on the McCulloch-Pitts neuron. Ken Thompson was one of the first to build regular expressions compilers into editors for text searching (Thompson, 1968). His editor *ed* included a command “g/regular expression/p”, or Global Regular Expression Print, which later became the Unix *grep* utility.

Text normalization algorithms have been applied since the beginning of the field. One of the earliest widely used stemmers was Lovins (1968). Stemming was also applied early to the digital humanities, by Packard (1973), who built an affix-stripping morphological parser for Ancient Greek. Currently a wide variety of code for tokenization and normalization is available, such as the Stanford Tokenizer (<http://nlp.stanford.edu/software/tokenizer.shtml>) or specialized tokenizers for Twitter (O'Connor et al., 2010), or for sentiment (<http://sentiment.christopherpotts.net/tokenizing.html>). See Palmer (2012) for a survey of text preprocessing. NLTK is an essential tool that offers both useful Python libraries (<http://www.nltk.org>) and textbook descriptions (Bird et al., 2009) of many algorithms including text normalization and corpus interfaces.

For more on Herdan's law and Heaps' Law, see Herdan (1960, p. 28), Heaps (1978), Egghe (2007) and Baayen (2001); Yasseri et al. (2012) discuss the relationship with other measures of linguistic complexity. For more on edit distance, see the excellent Gusfield (1997). Our example measuring the edit distance from ‘intention’ to ‘execution’ was adapted from Kruskal (1983). There are various publicly available packages to compute edit distance, including Unix *diff* and the NIST *sclite* program (NIST, 2005).

In his autobiography Bellman (1984) explains how he originally came up with the term *dynamic programming*:

“...The 1950s were not good years for mathematical research. [the] Secretary of Defense ...had a pathological fear and hatred of the word, research... I decided therefore to use the word, “programming”. I wanted to get across the idea that this was dynamic, this was multi-stage... I thought, let's ... take a word that has an absolutely precise meaning, namely dynamic... it's impossible to use the word, dynamic, in a pejorative sense. Try thinking of some combination that will possibly give it a pejorative meaning. It's impossible. Thus, I thought dynamic programming was a good name. It was something not even a Congressman could object to.”

## Exercises

- 2.1** Write regular expressions for the following languages.
1. the set of all alphabetic strings;
  2. the set of all lower case alphabetic strings ending in a *b*;
  3. the set of all strings from the alphabet *a,b* such that each *a* is immediately preceded by and immediately followed by a *b*;
- 2.2** Write regular expressions for the following languages. By “word”, we mean an alphabetic string separated from other words by whitespace, any relevant punctuation, line breaks, and so forth.
1. the set of all strings with two consecutive repeated words (e.g., “Humbert Humbert” and “the the” but not “the bug” or “the big bug”);
  2. all strings that start at the beginning of the line with an integer and that end at the end of the line with a word;
  3. all strings that have both the word *grotto* and the word *raven* in them (but not, e.g., words like *grottos* that merely *contain* the word *grotto*);
  4. write a pattern that places the first word of an English sentence in a register. Deal with punctuation.
- 2.3** Implement an ELIZA-like program, using substitutions such as those described on page 11. You might want to choose a different domain than a Rogerian psychologist, although keep in mind that you would need a domain in which your program can legitimately engage in a lot of simple repetition.
- 2.4** Compute the edit distance (using insertion cost 1, deletion cost 1, substitution cost 1) of “leda” to “deal”. Show your work (using the edit distance grid).
- 2.5** Figure out whether *drive* is closer to *brief* or to *divers* and what the edit distance is to each. You may use any version of *distance* that you like.
- 2.6** Now implement a minimum edit distance algorithm and use your hand-computed results to check your code.
- 2.7** Augment the minimum edit distance algorithm to output an alignment; you will need to store pointers and add a stage to compute the backtrace.

# N-gram Language Models

*“You are uniformly charming!” cried he, with a smile of associating and now and then I bowed and they perceived a chaise and four to wish for.*

Random sentence generated from a Jane Austen trigram model

Predicting is difficult—especially about the future, as the old quip goes. But how about predicting something that seems much easier, like the next few words someone is going to say? What word, for example, is likely to follow

Please turn your homework ...

Hopefully, most of you concluded that a very likely word is *in*, or possibly *over*, but probably not *refrigerator* or *the*. In the following sections we will formalize this intuition by introducing models that assign a **probability** to each possible next word. The same models will also serve to assign a probability to an entire sentence. Such a model, for example, could predict that the following sequence has a much higher probability of appearing in a text:

all of a sudden I notice three guys standing on the sidewalk  
than does this same set of words in a different order:

on guys all I of notice sidewalk three a sudden standing the

Why would you want to predict upcoming words, or assign probabilities to sentences? Probabilities are essential in any task in which we have to identify words in noisy, ambiguous input, like **speech recognition**. For a speech recognizer to realize that you said *I will be back soonish* and not *I will be bassoon dish*, it helps to know that *back soonish* is a much more probable sequence than *bassoon dish*. For writing tools like **spelling correction** or **grammatical error correction**, we need to find and correct errors in writing like *Their are two midterms*, in which *There* was mistyped as *Their*, or *Everything has improve*, in which *improve* should have been *improved*. The phrase *There are* will be much more probable than *Their are*, and *has improved* than *has improve*, allowing us to help users by detecting and correcting these errors.

Assigning probabilities to sequences of words is also essential in **machine translation**. Suppose we are translating a Chinese source sentence:

他 向 记者 介绍了 主要 内容  
He to reporters introduced main content

As part of the process we might have built the following set of potential rough English translations:

he introduced reporters to the main contents of the statement  
he briefed to reporters the main contents of the statement  
**he briefed reporters on the main contents of the statement**

A probabilistic model of word sequences could suggest that *briefed reporters on* is a more probable English phrase than *briefed to reporters* (which has an awkward *to* after *briefed*) or *introduced reporters to* (which uses a verb that is less fluent English in this context), allowing us to correctly select the boldfaced sentence above.

Probabilities are also important for **augmentative and alternative communication** systems (Trnka et al. 2007, Kane et al. 2017). People often use such AAC devices if they are physically unable to speak or sign but can instead use eye gaze or other specific movements to select words from a menu to be spoken by the system. Word prediction can be used to suggest likely words for the menu.

Models that assign probabilities to sequences of words are called **language models** or **LMs**. In this chapter we introduce the simplest model that assigns probabilities to sentences and sequences of words, the **n-gram**. An n-gram is a sequence of  $n$  words: a 2-gram (which we'll call **bigram**) is a two-word sequence of words like "please turn", "turn your", or "your homework", and a 3-gram (a **trigram**) is a three-word sequence of words like "please turn your", or "turn your homework". We'll see how to use n-gram models to estimate the probability of the last word of an n-gram given the previous words, and also to assign probabilities to entire sequences. In a bit of terminological ambiguity, we usually drop the word "model", and use the term **n-gram** (and *bigram*, etc.) to mean either the word sequence itself or the predictive model that assigns it a probability. In later chapters we'll introduce more sophisticated language models like the RNN LMs of Chapter 9.

## 3.1 N-Grams

Let's begin with the task of computing  $P(w|h)$ , the probability of a word  $w$  given some history  $h$ . Suppose the history  $h$  is "*its water is so transparent that*" and we want to know the probability that the next word is *the*:

$$P(\text{the}|\text{its water is so transparent that}). \quad (3.1)$$

One way to estimate this probability is from relative frequency counts: take a very large corpus, count the number of times we see *its water is so transparent that*, and count the number of times this is followed by *the*. This would be answering the question "Out of the times we saw the history  $h$ , how many times was it followed by the word  $w$ ", as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} P(\text{the}|\text{its water is so transparent that}) &= \\ \frac{C(\text{its water is so transparent that the})}{C(\text{its water is so transparent that})} \end{aligned} \quad (3.2)$$

With a large enough corpus, such as the web, we can compute these counts and estimate the probability from Eq. 3.2. You should pause now, go to the web, and compute this estimate for yourself.

While this method of estimating probabilities directly from counts works fine in many cases, it turns out that even the web isn't big enough to give us good estimates in most cases. This is because language is creative; new sentences are created all the time, and we won't always be able to count entire sentences. Even simple extensions of the example sentence may have counts of zero on the web (such as "*Walden Pond's water is so transparent that the*"; well, *used to* have counts of zero).

Similarly, if we wanted to know the joint probability of an entire sequence of words like *its water is so transparent*, we could do it by asking “out of all possible sequences of five words, how many of them are *its water is so transparent*?”. We would have to get the count of *its water is so transparent* and divide by the sum of the counts of all possible five word sequences. That seems rather a lot to estimate!

For this reason, we’ll need to introduce more clever ways of estimating the probability of a word  $w$  given a history  $h$ , or the probability of an entire word sequence  $W$ . Let’s start with a little formalizing of notation. To represent the probability of a particular random variable  $X_i$  taking on the value “the”, or  $P(X_i = \text{“the”})$ , we will use the simplification  $P(\text{the})$ . We’ll represent a sequence of  $N$  words either as  $w_1 \dots w_n$  or  $w_{1:n}$  (so the expression  $w_{1:n-1}$  means the string  $w_1, w_2, \dots, w_{n-1}$ ). For the joint probability of each word in a sequence having a particular value  $P(X = w_1, Y = w_2, Z = w_3, \dots, W = w_n)$  we’ll use  $P(w_1, w_2, \dots, w_n)$ .

Now how can we compute probabilities of entire sequences like  $P(w_1, w_2, \dots, w_n)$ ? One thing we can do is decompose this probability using the **chain rule of probability**:

$$\begin{aligned} P(X_1 \dots X_n) &= P(X_1)P(X_2|X_1)P(X_3|X_{1:2}) \dots P(X_n|X_{1:n-1}) \\ &= \prod_{k=1}^n P(X_k|X_{1:k-1}) \end{aligned} \tag{3.3}$$

Applying the chain rule to words, we get

$$\begin{aligned} P(w_{1:n}) &= P(w_1)P(w_2|w_1)P(w_3|w_{1:2}) \dots P(w_n|w_{1:n-1}) \\ &= \prod_{k=1}^n P(w_k|w_{1:k-1}) \end{aligned} \tag{3.4}$$

The chain rule shows the link between computing the joint probability of a sequence and computing the conditional probability of a word given previous words. Equation 3.4 suggests that we could estimate the joint probability of an entire sequence of words by multiplying together a number of conditional probabilities. But using the chain rule doesn’t really seem to help us! We don’t know any way to compute the exact probability of a word given a long sequence of preceding words,  $P(w_n|w_1^{n-1})$ . As we said above, we can’t just estimate by counting the number of times every word occurs following every long string, because language is creative and any particular context might have never occurred before!

The intuition of the n-gram model is that instead of computing the probability of a word given its entire history, we can **approximate** the history by just the last few words.

**bigram**

The **bigram** model, for example, approximates the probability of a word given all the previous words  $P(w_n|w_{1:n-1})$  by using only the conditional probability of the preceding word  $P(w_n|w_{n-1})$ . In other words, instead of computing the probability

$$P(\text{the}|\text{Walden Pond's water is so transparent that}) \tag{3.5}$$

we approximate it with the probability

$$P(\text{the}| \text{that}) \tag{3.6}$$

When we use a bigram model to predict the conditional probability of the next word, we are thus making the following approximation:

$$P(w_n|w_{1:n-1}) \approx P(w_n|w_{n-1}) \tag{3.7}$$

**Markov** The assumption that the probability of a word depends only on the previous word is called a **Markov** assumption. Markov models are the class of probabilistic models that assume we can predict the probability of some future unit without looking too far into the past. We can generalize the bigram (which looks one word into the past) to the trigram (which looks two words into the past) and thus to the **n-gram** (which looks  $n - 1$  words into the past).

**n-gram**

Thus, the general equation for this n-gram approximation to the conditional probability of the next word in a sequence is

$$P(w_n | w_{1:n-1}) \approx P(w_n | w_{n-N+1:n-1}) \quad (3.8)$$

Given the bigram assumption for the probability of an individual word, we can compute the probability of a complete word sequence by substituting Eq. 3.7 into Eq. 3.4:

$$P(w_{1:n}) \approx \prod_{k=1}^n P(w_k | w_{k-1}) \quad (3.9)$$

**maximum likelihood estimation** How do we estimate these bigram or n-gram probabilities? An intuitive way to estimate probabilities is called **maximum likelihood estimation** or **MLE**. We get the MLE estimate for the parameters of an n-gram model by getting counts from a corpus, and **normalizing** the counts so that they lie between 0 and 1.<sup>1</sup>

**normalize** For example, to compute a particular bigram probability of a word  $y$  given a previous word  $x$ , we'll compute the count of the bigram  $C(xy)$  and normalize by the sum of all the bigrams that share the same first word  $x$ :

$$P(w_n | w_{n-1}) = \frac{C(w_{n-1}w_n)}{\sum_w C(w_{n-1}w)} \quad (3.10)$$

We can simplify this equation, since the sum of all bigram counts that start with a given word  $w_{n-1}$  must be equal to the unigram count for that word  $w_{n-1}$  (the reader should take a moment to be convinced of this):

$$P(w_n | w_{n-1}) = \frac{C(w_{n-1}w_n)}{C(w_{n-1})} \quad (3.11)$$

Let's work through an example using a mini-corpus of three sentences. We'll first need to augment each sentence with a special symbol  $\langle s \rangle$  at the beginning of the sentence, to give us the bigram context of the first word. We'll also need a special end-symbol  $\langle /s \rangle$ <sup>2</sup>

```
<s> I am Sam </s>
<s> Sam I am </s>
<s> I do not like green eggs and ham </s>
```

Here are the calculations for some of the bigram probabilities from this corpus

$$\begin{aligned} P(I | \langle s \rangle) &= \frac{2}{3} = .67 & P(Sam | \langle s \rangle) &= \frac{1}{3} = .33 & P(am | I) &= \frac{2}{3} = .67 \\ P(\langle /s \rangle | Sam) &= \frac{1}{2} = 0.5 & P(Sam | am) &= \frac{1}{2} = .5 & P(do | I) &= \frac{1}{3} = .33 \end{aligned}$$

<sup>1</sup> For probabilistic models, normalizing means dividing by some total count so that the resulting probabilities fall legally between 0 and 1.

<sup>2</sup> We need the end-symbol to make the bigram grammar a true probability distribution. Without an end-symbol, the sentence probabilities for all sentences of a given length would sum to one. This model would define an infinite set of probability distributions, with one distribution per sentence length. See Exercise 3.5.

For the general case of MLE n-gram parameter estimation:

$$P(w_n | w_{n-N+1:n-1}) = \frac{C(w_{n-N+1:n-1} w_n)}{C(w_{n-N+1:n-1})} \quad (3.12)$$

relative frequency

Equation 3.12 (like Eq. 3.11) estimates the n-gram probability by dividing the observed frequency of a particular sequence by the observed frequency of a prefix. This ratio is called a **relative frequency**. We said above that this use of relative frequencies as a way to estimate probabilities is an example of maximum likelihood estimation or MLE. In MLE, the resulting parameter set maximizes the likelihood of the training set  $T$  given the model  $M$  (i.e.,  $P(T|M)$ ). For example, suppose the word *Chinese* occurs 400 times in a corpus of a million words like the Brown corpus. What is the probability that a random word selected from some other text of, say, a million words will be the word *Chinese*? The MLE of its probability is  $\frac{400}{1000000}$  or .0004. Now .0004 is not the best possible estimate of the probability of *Chinese* occurring in all situations; it might turn out that in some other corpus or context *Chinese* is a very unlikely word. But it is the probability that makes it *most likely* that *Chinese* will occur 400 times in a million-word corpus. We present ways to modify the MLE estimates slightly to get better probability estimates in Section 3.4.

Let's move on to some examples from a slightly larger corpus than our 14-word example above. We'll use data from the now-defunct Berkeley Restaurant Project, a dialogue system from the last century that answered questions about a database of restaurants in Berkeley, California (Jurafsky et al., 1994). Here are some text-normalized sample user queries (a sample of 9332 sentences is on the website):

can you tell me about any good cantonese restaurants close by  
 mid priced thai food is what i'm looking for  
 tell me about chez panisse  
 can you give me a listing of the kinds of food that are available  
 i'm looking for a good place to eat breakfast  
 when is caffe venezia open during the day

Figure 3.1 shows the bigram counts from a piece of a bigram grammar from the Berkeley Restaurant Project. Note that the majority of the values are zero. In fact, we have chosen the sample words to cohere with each other; a matrix selected from a random set of seven words would be even more sparse.

	<b>i</b>	<b>want</b>	<b>to</b>	<b>eat</b>	<b>chinese</b>	<b>food</b>	<b>lunch</b>	<b>spend</b>
<b>i</b>	5	827	0	9	0	0	0	2
<b>want</b>	2	0	608	1	6	6	5	1
<b>to</b>	2	0	4	686	2	0	6	211
<b>eat</b>	0	0	2	0	16	2	42	0
<b>chinese</b>	1	0	0	0	0	82	1	0
<b>food</b>	15	0	15	0	1	4	0	0
<b>lunch</b>	2	0	0	0	0	1	0	0
<b>spend</b>	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	0

**Figure 3.1** Bigram counts for eight of the words (out of  $V = 1446$ ) in the Berkeley Restaurant Project corpus of 9332 sentences. Zero counts are in gray.

Figure 3.2 shows the bigram probabilities after normalization (dividing each cell in Fig. 3.1 by the appropriate unigram for its row, taken from the following set of unigram probabilities):

i	want	to	eat	chinese	food	lunch	spend
2533	927	2417	746	158	1093	341	278

i	want	to	eat	chinese	food	lunch	spend
i	0.002	0.33	0	0.0036	0	0	0
want	0.0022	0	0.66	0.0011	0.0065	0.0065	0.0054
to	0.00083	0	0.0017	0.28	0.00083	0	0.0025
eat	0	0	0.0027	0	0.021	0.0027	0.056
chinese	0.0063	0	0	0	0.52	0.0063	0
food	0.014	0	0.014	0	0.00092	0.0037	0
lunch	0.0059	0	0	0	0.0029	0	0
spend	0.0036	0	0.0036	0	0	0	0

**Figure 3.2** Bigram probabilities for eight words in the Berkeley Restaurant Project corpus of 9332 sentences. Zero probabilities are in gray.

Here are a few other useful probabilities:

$$\begin{aligned} P(i|<\text{s}>) &= 0.25 & P(\text{english}|want) &= 0.0011 \\ P(\text{food}|\text{english}) &= 0.5 & P(</\text{s}>|\text{food}) &= 0.68 \end{aligned}$$

Now we can compute the probability of sentences like *I want English food* or *I want Chinese food* by simply multiplying the appropriate bigram probabilities together, as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} P(<\text{s}> \ i \ \text{want} \ \text{english} \ \text{food} \ </\text{s}>) \\ &= P(i|<\text{s}>)P(\text{want}|i)P(\text{english}|want) \\ &\quad P(\text{food}|\text{english})P(</\text{s}>|\text{food}) \\ &= .25 \times .33 \times .0011 \times 0.5 \times 0.68 \\ &= .000031 \end{aligned}$$

We leave it as Exercise 3.2 to compute the probability of *i want chinese food*.

What kinds of linguistic phenomena are captured in these bigram statistics? Some of the bigram probabilities above encode some facts that we think of as strictly **syntactic** in nature, like the fact that what comes after *eat* is usually a noun or an adjective, or that what comes after *to* is usually a verb. Others might be a fact about the personal assistant task, like the high probability of sentences beginning with the words *I*. And some might even be cultural rather than linguistic, like the higher probability that people are looking for Chinese versus English food.

**Some practical issues:** Although for pedagogical purposes we have only described bigram models, in practice it's more common to use **trigram** models, which condition on the previous two words rather than the previous word, or **4-gram** or even **5-gram** models, when there is sufficient training data. Note that for these larger n-grams, we'll need to assume extra contexts to the left and right of the sentence end. For example, to compute trigram probabilities at the very beginning of the sentence, we use two pseudo-words for the first trigram (i.e.,  $P(I|<\text{s}><\text{s}>)$ ).

**log probabilities**

We always represent and compute language model probabilities in log format as **log probabilities**. Since probabilities are (by definition) less than or equal to 1, the more probabilities we multiply together, the smaller the product becomes. Multiplying enough n-grams together would result in numerical underflow. By using log probabilities instead of raw probabilities, we get numbers that are not as small.

Adding in log space is equivalent to multiplying in linear space, so we combine log probabilities by adding them. The result of doing all computation and storage in log space is that we only need to convert back into probabilities if we need to report them at the end; then we can just take the exp of the logprob:

$$p_1 \times p_2 \times p_3 \times p_4 = \exp(\log p_1 + \log p_2 + \log p_3 + \log p_4) \quad (3.13)$$

## 3.2 Evaluating Language Models

**extrinsic evaluation**

The best way to evaluate the performance of a language model is to embed it in an application and measure how much the application improves. Such end-to-end evaluation is called **extrinsic evaluation**. Extrinsic evaluation is the only way to know if a particular improvement in a component is really going to help the task at hand. Thus, for speech recognition, we can compare the performance of two language models by running the speech recognizer twice, once with each language model, and seeing which gives the more accurate transcription.

**intrinsic evaluation**

Unfortunately, running big NLP systems end-to-end is often very expensive. Instead, it would be nice to have a metric that can be used to quickly evaluate potential improvements in a language model. An **intrinsic evaluation** metric is one that measures the quality of a model independent of any application.

**training set**

For an intrinsic evaluation of a language model we need a **test set**. As with many of the statistical models in our field, the probabilities of an n-gram model come from the corpus it is trained on, the **training set** or **training corpus**. We can then measure the quality of an n-gram model by its performance on some unseen data called the **test set** or test corpus. We will also sometimes call test sets and other datasets that are not in our training sets **held out** corpora because we hold them out from the training data.

**test set**

**held out**

So if we are given a corpus of text and want to compare two different n-gram models, we divide the data into training and test sets, train the parameters of both models on the training set, and then compare how well the two trained models fit the test set.

But what does it mean to “fit the test set”? The answer is simple: whichever model assigns a **higher probability** to the test set—meaning it more accurately predicts the test set—is a better model. Given two probabilistic models, the better model is the one that has a tighter fit to the test data or that better predicts the details of the test data, and hence will assign a higher probability to the test data.

**development test**

Since our evaluation metric is based on test set probability, it’s important not to let the test sentences into the training set. Suppose we are trying to compute the probability of a particular “test” sentence. If our test sentence is part of the training corpus, we will mistakenly assign it an artificially high probability when it occurs in the test set. We call this situation **training on the test set**. Training on the test set introduces a bias that makes the probabilities all look too high, and causes huge inaccuracies in **perplexity**, the probability-based metric we introduce below.

Sometimes we use a particular test set so often that we implicitly tune to its characteristics. We then need a fresh test set that is truly unseen. In such cases, we call the initial test set the **development** test set or, **devset**. How do we divide our data into training, development, and test sets? We want our test set to be as large as possible, since a small test set may be accidentally unrepresentative, but we also want as much training data as possible. At the minimum, we would want to pick

the smallest test set that gives us enough statistical power to measure a statistically significant difference between two potential models. In practice, we often just divide our data into 80% training, 10% development, and 10% test. Given a large corpus that we want to divide into training and test, test data can either be taken from some continuous sequence of text inside the corpus, or we can remove smaller “stripes” of text from randomly selected parts of our corpus and combine them into a test set.

### 3.2.1 Perplexity

**perplexity** In practice we don’t use raw probability as our metric for evaluating language models, but a variant called **perplexity**. The **perplexity** (sometimes called *PP* for short) of a language model on a test set is the inverse probability of the test set, normalized by the number of words. For a test set  $W = w_1 w_2 \dots w_N$ :

$$\begin{aligned} \text{PP}(W) &= P(w_1 w_2 \dots w_N)^{-\frac{1}{N}} \\ &= \sqrt[N]{\frac{1}{P(w_1 w_2 \dots w_N)}} \end{aligned} \quad (3.14)$$

We can use the chain rule to expand the probability of  $W$ :

$$\text{PP}(W) = \sqrt[N]{\prod_{i=1}^N \frac{1}{P(w_i | w_1 \dots w_{i-1})}} \quad (3.15)$$

Thus, if we are computing the perplexity of  $W$  with a bigram language model, we get:

$$\text{PP}(W) = \sqrt[N]{\prod_{i=1}^N \frac{1}{P(w_i | w_{i-1})}} \quad (3.16)$$

Note that because of the inverse in Eq. 3.15, the higher the conditional probability of the word sequence, the lower the perplexity. Thus, minimizing perplexity is equivalent to maximizing the test set probability according to the language model. What we generally use for word sequence in Eq. 3.15 or Eq. 3.16 is the entire sequence of words in some test set. Since this sequence will cross many sentence boundaries, we need to include the begin- and end-sentence markers `<s>` and `</s>` in the probability computation. We also need to include the end-of-sentence marker `</s>` (but not the beginning-of-sentence marker `<s>`) in the total count of word tokens  $N$ .

There is another way to think about perplexity: as the **weighted average branching factor** of a language. The branching factor of a language is the number of possible next words that can follow any word. Consider the task of recognizing the digits in English (zero, one, two,..., nine), given that (both in some training set and in some test set) each of the 10 digits occurs with equal probability  $P = \frac{1}{10}$ . The perplexity of this mini-language is in fact 10. To see that, imagine a test string of digits of length  $N$ , and assume that in the training set all the digits occurred with equal probability. By Eq. 3.15, the perplexity will be

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{PP}(W) &= P(w_1 w_2 \dots w_N)^{-\frac{1}{N}} \\
 &= \left(\frac{1}{10}\right)^{-\frac{1}{N}} \\
 &= \frac{1}{10}^{-1} \\
 &= 10
 \end{aligned} \tag{3.17}$$

But suppose that the number zero is really frequent and occurs far more often than other numbers. Let's say that 0 occur 91 times in the training set, and each of the other digits occurred 1 time each. Now we see the following test set: 0 0 0 0 3 0 0 0 0. We should expect the perplexity of this test set to be lower since most of the time the next number will be zero, which is very predictable, i.e. has a high probability. Thus, although the branching factor is still 10, the perplexity or *weighted* branching factor is smaller. We leave this exact calculation as exercise 12.

We see in Section 3.7 that perplexity is also closely related to the information-theoretic notion of entropy.

Finally, let's look at an example of how perplexity can be used to compare different n-gram models. We trained unigram, bigram, and trigram grammars on 38 million words (including start-of-sentence tokens) from the *Wall Street Journal*, using a 19,979 word vocabulary. We then computed the perplexity of each of these models on a test set of 1.5 million words with Eq. 3.16. The table below shows the perplexity of a 1.5 million word WSJ test set according to each of these grammars.

	Unigram	Bigram	Trigram
Perplexity	962	170	109

As we see above, the more information the n-gram gives us about the word sequence, the lower the perplexity (since as Eq. 3.15 showed, perplexity is related inversely to the likelihood of the test sequence according to the model).

Note that in computing perplexities, the n-gram model  $P$  must be constructed without any knowledge of the test set or any prior knowledge of the vocabulary of the test set. Any kind of knowledge of the test set can cause the perplexity to be artificially low. The perplexity of two language models is only comparable if they use identical vocabularies.

An (intrinsic) improvement in perplexity does not guarantee an (extrinsic) improvement in the performance of a language processing task like speech recognition or machine translation. Nonetheless, because perplexity often correlates with such improvements, it is commonly used as a quick check on an algorithm. But a model's improvement in perplexity should always be confirmed by an end-to-end evaluation of a real task before concluding the evaluation of the model.

### 3.3 Generalization and Zeros

The n-gram model, like many statistical models, is dependent on the training corpus. One implication of this is that the probabilities often encode specific facts about a given training corpus. Another implication is that n-grams do a better and better job of modeling the training corpus as we increase the value of  $N$ .

We can visualize both of these facts by borrowing the technique of [Shannon \(1951\)](#) and [Miller and Selfridge \(1950\)](#) of generating random sentences from different n-gram models. It's simplest to visualize how this works for the unigram case. Imagine all the words of the English language covering the probability space between 0 and 1, each word covering an interval proportional to its frequency. We choose a random value between 0 and 1 and print the word whose interval includes this chosen value. We continue choosing random numbers and generating words until we randomly generate the sentence-final token `</s>`. We can use the same technique to generate bigrams by first generating a random bigram that starts with `<s>` (according to its bigram probability). Let's say the second word of that bigram is  $w$ . We next chose a random bigram starting with  $w$  (again, drawn according to its bigram probability), and so on.

To give an intuition for the increasing power of higher-order n-grams, Fig. 3.3 shows random sentences generated from unigram, bigram, trigram, and 4-gram models trained on Shakespeare's works.

1 gram	-To him swallowed confess hear both. Which. Of save on trail for are ay device and rote life have
2 gram	-Hill he late speaks; or! a more to leg less first you enter -Why dost stand forth thy canopy, forsooth; he is this palpable hit the King Henry. Live king. Follow.
3 gram	-What means, sir. I confess she? then all sorts, he is trim, captain. -Fly, and will rid me these news of price. Therefore the sadness of parting, as they say, 'tis done.
4 gram	-This shall forbid it should be branded, if renown made it empty. -King Henry. What! I will go seek the traitor Gloucester. Exeunt some of the watch. A great banquet serv'd in; -It cannot be but so.

**Figure 3.3** Eight sentences randomly generated from four n-grams computed from Shakespeare's works. All characters were mapped to lower-case and punctuation marks were treated as words. Output is hand-corrected for capitalization to improve readability.

The longer the context on which we train the model, the more coherent the sentences. In the unigram sentences, there is no coherent relation between words or any sentence-final punctuation. The bigram sentences have some local word-to-word coherence (especially if we consider that punctuation counts as a word). The trigram and 4-gram sentences are beginning to look a lot like Shakespeare. Indeed, a careful investigation of the 4-gram sentences shows that they look a little too much like Shakespeare. The words *It cannot be but so* are directly from *King John*. This is because, not to put the knock on Shakespeare, his oeuvre is not very large as corpora go ( $N = 884,647, V = 29,066$ ), and our n-gram probability matrices are ridiculously sparse. There are  $V^2 = 844,000,000$  possible bigrams alone, and the number of possible 4-grams is  $V^4 = 7 \times 10^{17}$ . Thus, once the generator has chosen the first 4-gram (*It cannot be but*), there are only five possible continuations (*that, I, he, thou, and so*); indeed, for many 4-grams, there is only one continuation.

To get an idea of the dependence of a grammar on its training set, let's look at an n-gram grammar trained on a completely different corpus: the *Wall Street Journal* (WSJ) newspaper. Shakespeare and the *Wall Street Journal* are both English, so we might expect some overlap between our n-grams for the two genres. Fig. 3.4

shows sentences generated by unigram, bigram, and trigram grammars trained on 40 million words from WSJ.

1 gram	Months the my and issue of year foreign new exchange's september were recession exchange new endorsed a acquire to six executives
2 gram	Last December through the way to preserve the Hudson corporation N. B. E. C. Taylor would seem to complete the major central planners one point five percent of U. S. E. has already old M. X. corporation of living on information such as more frequently fishing to keep her
3 gram	They also point to ninety nine point six billion dollars from two hundred four oh six three percent of the rates of interest stores as Mexico and Brazil on market conditions

**Figure 3.4** Three sentences randomly generated from three n-gram models computed from 40 million words of the *Wall Street Journal*, lower-casing all characters and treating punctuation as words. Output was then hand-corrected for capitalization to improve readability.

Compare these examples to the pseudo-Shakespeare in Fig. 3.3. While they both model “English-like sentences”, there is clearly no overlap in generated sentences, and little overlap even in small phrases. Statistical models are likely to be pretty useless as predictors if the training sets and the test sets are as different as Shakespeare and WSJ.

How should we deal with this problem when we build n-gram models? One step is to be sure to use a training corpus that has a similar **genre** to whatever task we are trying to accomplish. To build a language model for translating legal documents, we need a training corpus of legal documents. To build a language model for a question-answering system, we need a training corpus of questions.

It is equally important to get training data in the appropriate **dialect** or **variety**, especially when processing social media posts or spoken transcripts. For example some tweets will use features of African American Language (AAL)—the name for the many variations of language used in African American communities (King, 2020). Such features include words like *finna*—an auxiliary verb that marks immediate future tense—that don’t occur in other varieties, or spellings like *den* for *then*, in tweets like this one (Blodgett and O’Connor, 2017):

(3.18) Bored af den my phone finna die!!!

while tweets from varieties like Nigerian English have markedly different vocabulary and n-gram patterns from American English (Jurgens et al., 2017):

(3.19) @username R u a wizard or wat gan sef: in d mornin - u tweet, afternoon - u tweet, nyt gan u dey tweet. beta get ur IT placement wiv twitter

Matching genres and dialects is still not sufficient. Our models may still be subject to the problem of **sparsity**. For any n-gram that occurred a sufficient number of times, we might have a good estimate of its probability. But because any corpus is limited, some perfectly acceptable English word sequences are bound to be missing from it. That is, we’ll have many cases of putative “zero probability n-grams” that should really have some non-zero probability. Consider the words that follow the bigram *denied the* in the WSJ Treebank3 corpus, together with their counts:

denied the allegations:	5
denied the speculation:	2
denied the rumors:	1
denied the report:	1

But suppose our test set has phrases like:

denied the offer  
denied the loan

Our model will incorrectly estimate that the  $P(\text{offer}|\text{denied the})$  is 0!

**zeros**

These **zeros**—things that don’t ever occur in the training set but do occur in the test set—are a problem for two reasons. First, their presence means we are underestimating the probability of all sorts of words that might occur, which will hurt the performance of any application we want to run on this data.

Second, if the probability of any word in the test set is 0, the entire probability of the test set is 0. By definition, perplexity is based on the inverse probability of the test set. Thus if some words have zero probability, we can’t compute perplexity at all, since we can’t divide by 0!

### 3.3.1 Unknown Words

The previous section discussed the problem of words whose bigram probability is zero. But what about words we simply have never seen before?

**closed vocabulary**

Sometimes we have a language task in which this can’t happen because we know all the words that can occur. In such a **closed vocabulary** system the test set can only contain words from this lexicon, and there will be no unknown words. This is a reasonable assumption in some domains, such as speech recognition or machine translation, where we have a pronunciation dictionary or a phrase table that are fixed in advance, and so the language model can only use the words in that dictionary or phrase table.

**OOV**  
**open vocabulary**

In other cases we have to deal with words we haven’t seen before, which we’ll call **unknown** words, or **out of vocabulary (OOV)** words. The percentage of OOV words that appear in the test set is called the **OOV rate**. An **open vocabulary** system is one in which we model these potential unknown words in the test set by adding a pseudo-word called <UNK>.

There are two common ways to train the probabilities of the unknown word model <UNK>. The first one is to turn the problem back into a closed vocabulary one by choosing a fixed vocabulary in advance:

1. **Choose a vocabulary** (word list) that is fixed in advance.
2. **Convert** in the training set any word that is not in this set (any OOV word) to the unknown word token <UNK> in a text normalization step.
3. **Estimate** the probabilities for <UNK> from its counts just like any other regular word in the training set.

The second alternative, in situations where we don’t have a prior vocabulary in advance, is to create such a vocabulary implicitly, replacing words in the training data by <UNK> based on their frequency. For example we can replace by <UNK> all words that occur fewer than  $n$  times in the training set, where  $n$  is some small number, or equivalently select a vocabulary size  $V$  in advance (say 50,000) and choose the top  $V$  words by frequency and replace the rest by UNK. In either case we then proceed to train the language model as before, treating <UNK> like a regular word.

The exact choice of <UNK> model does have an effect on metrics like perplexity. A language model can achieve low perplexity by choosing a small vocabulary and assigning the unknown word a high probability. For this reason, perplexities should only be compared across language models with the same vocabularies (Buck et al., 2014).

## 3.4 Smoothing

**smoothing**  
**discounting**

What do we do with words that are in our vocabulary (they are not unknown words) but appear in a test set in an unseen context (for example they appear after a word they never appeared after in training)? To keep a language model from assigning zero probability to these unseen events, we'll have to shave off a bit of probability mass from some more frequent events and give it to the events we've never seen. This modification is called **smoothing** or **discounting**. In this section and the following ones we'll introduce a variety of ways to do smoothing: **Laplace (add-one)** **smoothing**, **add-k smoothing**, **stupid backoff**, and **Kneser-Ney smoothing**.

**Laplace  
smoothing**

### 3.4.1 Laplace Smoothing

The simplest way to do smoothing is to add one to all the bigram counts, before we normalize them into probabilities. All the counts that used to be zero will now have a count of 1, the counts of 1 will be 2, and so on. This algorithm is called **Laplace smoothing**. Laplace smoothing does not perform well enough to be used in modern n-gram models, but it usefully introduces many of the concepts that we see in other smoothing algorithms, gives a useful baseline, and is also a practical smoothing algorithm for other tasks like **text classification** (Chapter 4).

Let's start with the application of Laplace smoothing to unigram probabilities. Recall that the unsmoothed maximum likelihood estimate of the unigram probability of the word  $w_i$  is its count  $c_i$  normalized by the total number of word tokens  $N$ :

$$P(w_i) = \frac{c_i}{N}$$

**add-one**

Laplace smoothing merely adds one to each count (hence its alternate name **add-one** smoothing). Since there are  $V$  words in the vocabulary and each one was incremented, we also need to adjust the denominator to take into account the extra  $V$  observations. (What happens to our  $P$  values if we don't increase the denominator?)

$$P_{\text{Laplace}}(w_i) = \frac{c_i + 1}{N + V} \quad (3.20)$$

Instead of changing both the numerator and denominator, it is convenient to describe how a smoothing algorithm affects the numerator, by defining an **adjusted count**  $c^*$ . This adjusted count is easier to compare directly with the MLE counts and can be turned into a probability like an MLE count by normalizing by  $N$ . To define this count, since we are only changing the numerator in addition to adding 1 we'll also need to multiply by a normalization factor  $\frac{N}{N+V}$ :

$$c_i^* = (c_i + 1) \frac{N}{N + V} \quad (3.21)$$

**discounting**  
**discount**

We can now turn  $c_i^*$  into a probability  $P_i^*$  by normalizing by  $N$ .

A related way to view smoothing is as **discounting** (lowering) some non-zero counts in order to get the probability mass that will be assigned to the zero counts. Thus, instead of referring to the discounted counts  $c^*$ , we might describe a smoothing algorithm in terms of a relative **discount**  $d_c$ , the ratio of the discounted counts to the original counts:

$$d_c = \frac{c^*}{c}$$

Now that we have the intuition for the unigram case, let's smooth our Berkeley Restaurant Project bigrams. Figure 3.5 shows the add-one smoothed counts for the bigrams in Fig. 3.1.

	<b>i</b>	<b>want</b>	<b>to</b>	<b>eat</b>	<b>chinese</b>	<b>food</b>	<b>lunch</b>	<b>spend</b>
<b>i</b>	6	828	1	10	1	1	1	3
<b>want</b>	3	1	609	2	7	7	6	2
<b>to</b>	3	1	5	687	3	1	7	212
<b>eat</b>	1	1	3	1	17	3	43	1
<b>chinese</b>	2	1	1	1	1	83	2	1
<b>food</b>	16	1	16	1	2	5	1	1
<b>lunch</b>	3	1	1	1	1	2	1	1
<b>spend</b>	2	1	2	1	1	1	1	1

**Figure 3.5** Add-one smoothed bigram counts for eight of the words (out of  $V = 1446$ ) in the Berkeley Restaurant Project corpus of 9332 sentences. Previously-zero counts are in gray.

Figure 3.6 shows the add-one smoothed probabilities for the bigrams in Fig. 3.2. Recall that normal bigram probabilities are computed by normalizing each row of counts by the unigram count:

$$P(w_n|w_{n-1}) = \frac{C(w_{n-1}w_n)}{C(w_{n-1})} \quad (3.22)$$

For add-one smoothed bigram counts, we need to augment the unigram count by the number of total word types in the vocabulary  $V$ :

$$P_{\text{Laplace}}^*(w_n|w_{n-1}) = \frac{C(w_{n-1}w_n) + 1}{\sum_w C(w_{n-1}w) + V} = \frac{C(w_{n-1}w_n) + 1}{C(w_{n-1}) + V} \quad (3.23)$$

Thus, each of the unigram counts given in the previous section will need to be augmented by  $V = 1446$ . The result is the smoothed bigram probabilities in Fig. 3.6.

	<b>i</b>	<b>want</b>	<b>to</b>	<b>eat</b>	<b>chinese</b>	<b>food</b>	<b>lunch</b>	<b>spend</b>
i	0.0015	0.21	0.00025	0.0025	0.00025	0.00025	0.00025	0.00075
want	0.0013	0.00042	0.26	0.00084	0.0029	0.0029	0.0025	0.00084
to	0.00078	0.00026	0.0013	0.18	0.00078	0.00026	0.0018	0.055
eat	0.00046	0.00046	0.0014	0.00046	0.0078	0.0014	0.02	0.00046
chinese	0.0012	0.00062	0.00062	0.00062	0.00062	0.052	0.0012	0.00062
food	0.0063	0.00039	0.0063	0.00039	0.00079	0.002	0.00039	0.00039
lunch	0.0017	0.00056	0.00056	0.00056	0.00056	0.0011	0.00056	0.00056
spend	0.0012	0.00058	0.0012	0.00058	0.00058	0.00058	0.00058	0.00058

**Figure 3.6** Add-one smoothed bigram probabilities for eight of the words (out of  $V = 1446$ ) in the BeRP corpus of 9332 sentences. Previously-zero probabilities are in gray.

It is often convenient to reconstruct the count matrix so we can see how much a smoothing algorithm has changed the original counts. These adjusted counts can be computed by Eq. 3.24. Figure 3.7 shows the reconstructed counts.

$$c^*(w_{n-1}w_n) = \frac{[C(w_{n-1}w_n) + 1] \times C(w_{n-1})}{C(w_{n-1}) + V} \quad (3.24)$$

	<b>i</b>	<b>want</b>	<b>to</b>	<b>eat</b>	<b>chinese</b>	<b>food</b>	<b>lunch</b>	<b>spend</b>
i	3.8	527	0.64	6.4	0.64	0.64	0.64	1.9
want	1.2	0.39	238	0.78	2.7	2.7	2.3	0.78
to	1.9	0.63	3.1	430	1.9	0.63	4.4	133
eat	0.34	0.34	1	0.34	5.8	1	15	0.34
chinese	0.2	0.098	0.098	0.098	0.098	8.2	0.2	0.098
food	6.9	0.43	6.9	0.43	0.86	2.2	0.43	0.43
lunch	0.57	0.19	0.19	0.19	0.19	0.38	0.19	0.19
spend	0.32	0.16	0.32	0.16	0.16	0.16	0.16	0.16

**Figure 3.7** Add-one reconstituted counts for eight words (of  $V = 1446$ ) in the BeRP corpus of 9332 sentences. Previously-zero counts are in gray.

Note that add-one smoothing has made a very big change to the counts.  $C(want\ to)$  changed from 609 to 238! We can see this in probability space as well:  $P(to|want)$  decreases from .66 in the unsmoothed case to .26 in the smoothed case. Looking at the discount  $d$  (the ratio between new and old counts) shows us how strikingly the counts for each prefix word have been reduced; the discount for the bigram *want to* is .39, while the discount for *Chinese food* is .10, a factor of 10!

The sharp change in counts and probabilities occurs because too much probability mass is moved to all the zeros.

### 3.4.2 Add-k smoothing

One alternative to add-one smoothing is to move a bit less of the probability mass from the seen to the unseen events. Instead of adding 1 to each count, we add a fractional count  $k$  (.5? .05? .01?). This algorithm is therefore called **add-k smoothing**.

$$P_{\text{Add-}k}^*(w_n|w_{n-1}) = \frac{C(w_{n-1}w_n) + k}{C(w_{n-1}) + kV} \quad (3.25)$$

Add-k smoothing requires that we have a method for choosing  $k$ ; this can be done, for example, by optimizing on a **devset**. Although add-k is useful for some tasks (including text classification), it turns out that it still doesn't work well for language modeling, generating counts with poor variances and often inappropriate discounts (Gale and Church, 1994).

### 3.4.3 Backoff and Interpolation

The discounting we have been discussing so far can help solve the problem of zero frequency n-grams. But there is an additional source of knowledge we can draw on. If we are trying to compute  $P(w_n|w_{n-2}w_{n-1})$  but we have no examples of a particular trigram  $w_{n-2}w_{n-1}w_n$ , we can instead estimate its probability by using the bigram probability  $P(w_n|w_{n-1})$ . Similarly, if we don't have counts to compute  $P(w_n|w_{n-1})$ , we can look to the unigram  $P(w_n)$ .

In other words, sometimes using **less context** is a good thing, helping to generalize more for contexts that the model hasn't learned much about. There are two ways to use this n-gram "hierarchy". In **backoff**, we use the trigram if the evidence is sufficient, otherwise we use the bigram, otherwise the unigram. In other words, we only "back off" to a lower-order n-gram if we have zero evidence for a higher-order n-gram. By contrast, in **interpolation**, we always mix the probability estimates from all the n-gram estimators, weighing and combining the trigram, bigram, and unigram counts.

**backoff**

**interpolation**

In simple linear interpolation, we combine different order n-grams by linearly interpolating all the models. Thus, we estimate the trigram probability  $P(w_n|w_{n-2}w_{n-1})$  by mixing together the unigram, bigram, and trigram probabilities, each weighted by a  $\lambda$ :

$$\begin{aligned}\hat{P}(w_n|w_{n-2}w_{n-1}) = & \lambda_1 P(w_n|w_{n-2}w_{n-1}) \\ & + \lambda_2 P(w_n|w_{n-1}) \\ & + \lambda_3 P(w_n)\end{aligned}\tag{3.26}$$

such that the  $\lambda$ s sum to 1:

$$\sum_i \lambda_i = 1\tag{3.27}$$

In a slightly more sophisticated version of linear interpolation, each  $\lambda$  weight is computed by conditioning on the context. This way, if we have particularly accurate counts for a particular bigram, we assume that the counts of the trigrams based on this bigram will be more trustworthy, so we can make the  $\lambda$ s for those trigrams higher and thus give that trigram more weight in the interpolation. Equation 3.28 shows the equation for interpolation with context-conditioned weights:

$$\begin{aligned}\hat{P}(w_n|w_{n-2}w_{n-1}) = & \lambda_1(w_{n-2:n-1}) P(w_n|w_{n-2}w_{n-1}) \\ & + \lambda_2(w_{n-2:n-1}) P(w_n|w_{n-1}) \\ & + \lambda_3(w_{n-2:n-1}) P(w_n)\end{aligned}\tag{3.28}$$

**held-out** How are these  $\lambda$  values set? Both the simple interpolation and conditional interpolation  $\lambda$ s are learned from a **held-out** corpus. A held-out corpus is an additional training corpus that we use to set hyperparameters like these  $\lambda$  values, by choosing the  $\lambda$  values that maximize the likelihood of the held-out corpus. That is, we fix the n-gram probabilities and then search for the  $\lambda$  values that—when plugged into Eq. 3.26—give us the highest probability of the held-out set. There are various ways to find this optimal set of  $\lambda$ s. One way is to use the **EM** algorithm, an iterative learning algorithm that converges on locally optimal  $\lambda$ s (Jelinek and Mercer, 1980).

In a **backoff** n-gram model, if the n-gram we need has zero counts, we approximate it by backing off to the (N-1)-gram. We continue backing off until we reach a history that has some counts.

**discount** In order for a backoff model to give a correct probability distribution, we have to **discount** the higher-order n-grams to save some probability mass for the lower order n-grams. Just as with add-one smoothing, if the higher-order n-grams aren't discounted and we just used the undiscounted MLE probability, then as soon as we replaced an n-gram which has zero probability with a lower-order n-gram, we would be adding probability mass, and the total probability assigned to all possible strings by the language model would be greater than 1! In addition to this explicit discount factor, we'll need a function  $\alpha$  to distribute this probability mass to the lower order n-grams.

**Katz backoff** This kind of backoff with discounting is also called **Katz backoff**. In Katz backoff we rely on a discounted probability  $P^*$  if we've seen this n-gram before (i.e., if we have non-zero counts). Otherwise, we recursively back off to the Katz probability for the shorter-history (N-1)-gram. The probability for a backoff n-gram  $P_{BO}$  is

thus computed as follows:

$$P_{\text{BO}}(w_n | w_{n-N+1:n-1}) = \begin{cases} P^*(w_n | w_{n-N+1:n-1}), & \text{if } C(w_{n-N+1:n}) > 0 \\ \alpha(w_{n-N+1:n-1}) P_{\text{BO}}(w_n | w_{n-N+2:n-1}), & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases} \quad (3.29)$$

#### Good-Turing

Katz backoff is often combined with a smoothing method called **Good-Turing**. The combined **Good-Turing backoff** algorithm involves quite detailed computation for estimating the Good-Turing smoothing and the  $P^*$  and  $\alpha$  values.

## 3.5 Kneser-Ney Smoothing

**Kneser-Ney** One of the most commonly used and best performing n-gram smoothing methods is the interpolated **Kneser-Ney** algorithm (Kneser and Ney 1995, Chen and Goodman 1998).

Kneser-Ney has its roots in a method called **absolute discounting**. Recall that **discounting** of the counts for frequent n-grams is necessary to save some probability mass for the smoothing algorithm to distribute to the unseen n-grams.

To see this, we can use a clever idea from Church and Gale (1991). Consider an n-gram that has count 4. We need to discount this count by some amount. But how much should we discount it? Church and Gale's clever idea was to look at a held-out corpus and just see what the count is for all those bigrams that had count 4 in the training set. They computed a bigram grammar from 22 million words of AP newswire and then checked the counts of each of these bigrams in another 22 million words. On average, a bigram that occurred 4 times in the first 22 million words occurred 3.23 times in the next 22 million words. Fig. 3.8 from Church and Gale (1991) shows these counts for bigrams with  $c$  from 0 to 9.

Bigram count in training set	Bigram count in heldout set
0	0.0000270
1	0.448
2	1.25
3	2.24
4	3.23
5	4.21
6	5.23
7	6.21
8	7.21
9	8.26

**Figure 3.8** For all bigrams in 22 million words of AP newswire of count 0, 1, 2,...,9, the counts of these bigrams in a held-out corpus also of 22 million words.

#### Absolute discounting

Notice in Fig. 3.8 that except for the held-out counts for 0 and 1, all the other bigram counts in the held-out set could be estimated pretty well by just subtracting 0.75 from the count in the training set! **Absolute discounting** formalizes this intuition by subtracting a fixed (absolute) discount  $d$  from each count. The intuition is that since we have good estimates already for the very high counts, a small discount  $d$  won't affect them much. It will mainly modify the smaller counts, for which we

don't necessarily trust the estimate anyway, and Fig. 3.8 suggests that in practice this discount is actually a good one for bigrams with counts 2 through 9. The equation for interpolated absolute discounting applied to bigrams:

$$P_{\text{AbsoluteDiscounting}}(w_i|w_{i-1}) = \frac{C(w_{i-1}w_i) - d}{\sum_v C(w_{i-1}v)} + \lambda(w_{i-1})P(w_i) \quad (3.30)$$

The first term is the discounted bigram, and the second term is the unigram with an interpolation weight  $\lambda$ . We could just set all the  $d$  values to .75, or we could keep a separate discount value of 0.5 for the bigrams with counts of 1.

**Kneser-Ney discounting** (Kneser and Ney, 1995) augments absolute discounting with a more sophisticated way to handle the lower-order unigram distribution. Consider the job of predicting the next word in this sentence, assuming we are interpolating a bigram and a unigram model.

I can't see without my reading \_\_\_\_\_.

The word *glasses* seems much more likely to follow here than, say, the word *Kong*, so we'd like our unigram model to prefer *glasses*. But in fact it's *Kong* that is more common, since *Hong Kong* is a very frequent word. A standard unigram model will assign *Kong* a higher probability than *glasses*. We would like to capture the intuition that although *Kong* is frequent, it is mainly only frequent in the phrase *Hong Kong*, that is, after the word *Hong*. The word *glasses* has a much wider distribution.

In other words, instead of  $P(w)$ , which answers the question "How likely is  $w$ ? ", we'd like to create a unigram model that we might call  $P_{\text{CONTINUATION}}$ , which answers the question "How likely is  $w$  to appear as a novel continuation? ". How can we estimate this probability of seeing the word  $w$  as a novel continuation, in a new unseen context? The Kneser-Ney intuition is to base our estimate of  $P_{\text{CONTINUATION}}$  on the *number of different contexts word w has appeared in*, that is, the number of bigram types it completes. Every bigram type was a novel continuation the first time it was seen. We hypothesize that words that have appeared in more contexts in the past are more likely to appear in some new context as well. The number of times a word  $w$  appears as a novel continuation can be expressed as:

$$P_{\text{CONTINUATION}}(w) \propto |\{v : C(vw) > 0\}| \quad (3.31)$$

To turn this count into a probability, we normalize by the total number of word bigram types. In summary:

$$P_{\text{CONTINUATION}}(w) = \frac{|\{v : C(vw) > 0\}|}{|\{(u', w') : C(u'w') > 0\}|} \quad (3.32)$$

An equivalent formulation based on a different metaphor is to use the number of word types seen to precede  $w$  (Eq. 3.31 repeated):

$$P_{\text{CONTINUATION}}(w) \propto |\{v : C(vw) > 0\}| \quad (3.33)$$

normalized by the number of words preceding all words, as follows:

$$P_{\text{CONTINUATION}}(w) = \frac{|\{v : C(vw) > 0\}|}{\sum_{w'} |\{v : C(vw') > 0\}|} \quad (3.34)$$

A frequent word (*Kong*) occurring in only one context (*Hong*) will have a low continuation probability.

**Interpolated Kneser-Ney**

The final equation for **Interpolated Kneser-Ney** smoothing for bigrams is then:

$$P_{\text{KN}}(w_i|w_{i-1}) = \frac{\max(C(w_{i-1}w_i) - d, 0)}{C(w_{i-1})} + \lambda(w_{i-1})P_{\text{CONTINUATION}}(w_i) \quad (3.35)$$

The  $\lambda$  is a normalizing constant that is used to distribute the probability mass we've discounted.:

$$\lambda(w_{i-1}) = \frac{d}{\sum_v C(w_{i-1}v)} |\{w : C(w_{i-1}w) > 0\}| \quad (3.36)$$

The first term,  $\frac{d}{\sum_v C(w_{i-1}v)}$ , is the normalized discount. The second term,  $|\{w : C(w_{i-1}w) > 0\}|$ , is the number of word types that can follow  $w_{i-1}$  or, equivalently, the number of word types that we discounted; in other words, the number of times we applied the normalized discount.

The general recursive formulation is as follows:

$$P_{\text{KN}}(w_i|w_{i-n+1:i-1}) = \frac{\max(c_{\text{KN}}(w_{i-n+1:i}) - d, 0)}{\sum_v c_{\text{KN}}(w_{i-n+1:i-1} v)} + \lambda(w_{i-n+1:i-1})P_{\text{KN}}(w_i|w_{i-n+2:i-1}) \quad (3.37)$$

where the definition of the count  $c_{\text{KN}}$  depends on whether we are counting the highest-order n-gram being interpolated (for example trigram if we are interpolating trigram, bigram, and unigram) or one of the lower-order n-grams (bigram or unigram if we are interpolating trigram, bigram, and unigram):

$$c_{\text{KN}}(\cdot) = \begin{cases} \text{count}(\cdot) & \text{for the highest order} \\ \text{continuationcount}(\cdot) & \text{for lower orders} \end{cases} \quad (3.38)$$

The continuation count is the number of unique single word contexts for  $\cdot$ .

At the termination of the recursion, unigrams are interpolated with the uniform distribution, where the parameter  $\epsilon$  is the empty string:

$$P_{\text{KN}}(w) = \frac{\max(c_{\text{KN}}(w) - d, 0)}{\sum_{w'} c_{\text{KN}}(w')} + \lambda(\epsilon) \frac{1}{V} \quad (3.39)$$

If we want to include an unknown word <UNK>, it's just included as a regular vocabulary entry with count zero, and hence its probability will be a lambda-weighted uniform distribution  $\frac{\lambda(\epsilon)}{V}$ .

**modified Kneser-Ney**

The best performing version of Kneser-Ney smoothing is called **modified Kneser-Ney** smoothing, and is due to [Chen and Goodman \(1998\)](#). Rather than use a single fixed discount  $d$ , modified Kneser-Ney uses three different discounts  $d_1$ ,  $d_2$ , and  $d_{3+}$  for n-grams with counts of 1, 2 and three or more, respectively. See [Chen and Goodman \(1998, p. 19\)](#) or [Heafield et al. \(2013\)](#) for the details.

## 3.6 Huge Language Models and Stupid Backoff

By using text from the web or other enormous collections, it is possible to build extremely large language models. The Web 1 Trillion 5-gram corpus released by Google includes various large sets of n-grams, including 1-grams through 5-grams from all the five-word sequences that appear in at least 40 distinct books from

1,024,908,267,229 words of text from publicly accessible Web pages in English ([Franz and Brants, 2006](#)). Google has also released Google Books Ngrams corpora with n-grams drawn from their book collections, including another 800 billion tokens of n-grams from Chinese, English, French, German, Hebrew, Italian, Russian, and Spanish ([Lin et al., 2012a](#)). Smaller but more carefully curated n-gram corpora for English include the million most frequent n-grams drawn from the COCA (Corpus of Contemporary American English) 1 billion word corpus of American English ([Davies, 2020](#)). COCA is a balanced corpora, meaning that it has roughly equal numbers of words from different genres: web, newspapers, spoken conversation transcripts, fiction, and so on, drawn from the period 1990-2019, and has the context of each n-gram as well as labels for genre and provenance).

Some example 4-grams from the Google Web corpus:

4-gram	Count
serve as the incoming	92
serve as the incubator	99
serve as the independent	794
serve as the index	223
serve as the indication	72
serve as the indicator	120
serve as the indicators	45

Efficiency considerations are important when building language models that use such large sets of n-grams. Rather than store each word as a string, it is generally represented in memory as a 64-bit hash number, with the words themselves stored on disk. Probabilities are generally quantized using only 4-8 bits (instead of 8-byte floats), and n-grams are stored in reverse tries.

N-grams can also be shrunk by pruning, for example only storing n-grams with counts greater than some threshold (such as the count threshold of 40 used for the Google n-gram release) or using entropy to prune less-important n-grams ([Stolcke, 1998](#)). Another option is to build approximate language models using techniques like **Bloom filters** ([Talbot and Osborne 2007](#), [Church et al. 2007](#)). Finally, efficient language model toolkits like KenLM ([Heafield 2011](#), [Heafield et al. 2013](#)) use sorted arrays, efficiently combine probabilities and backoffs in a single value, and use merge sorts to efficiently build the probability tables in a minimal number of passes through a large corpus.

Bloom filters

stupid backoff

Although with these toolkits it is possible to build web-scale language models using full Kneser-Ney smoothing, [Brants et al. \(2007\)](#) show that with very large language models a much simpler algorithm may be sufficient. The algorithm is called **stupid backoff**. Stupid backoff gives up the idea of trying to make the language model a true probability distribution. There is no discounting of the higher-order probabilities. If a higher-order n-gram has a zero count, we simply backoff to a lower order n-gram, weighed by a fixed (context-independent) weight. This algorithm does not produce a probability distribution, so we'll follow [Brants et al. \(2007\)](#) in referring to it as  $S$ :

$$S(w_i | w_{i-k+1}^{i-1}) = \begin{cases} \frac{\text{count}(w_{i-k+1}^i)}{\text{count}(w_{i-k+1}^{i-1})} & \text{if } \text{count}(w_{i-k+1}^i) > 0 \\ \lambda S(w_i | w_{i-k+2}^{i-1}) & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \quad (3.40)$$

The backoff terminates in the unigram, which has probability  $S(w) = \frac{\text{count}(w)}{N}$ . [Brants et al. \(2007\)](#) find that a value of 0.4 worked well for  $\lambda$ .

## 3.7 Advanced: Perplexity's Relation to Entropy

**Entropy**

We introduced perplexity in Section 3.2.1 as a way to evaluate n-gram models on a test set. A better n-gram model is one that assigns a higher probability to the test data, and perplexity is a normalized version of the probability of the test set. The perplexity measure actually arises from the information-theoretic concept of cross-entropy, which explains otherwise mysterious properties of perplexity (why the inverse probability, for example?) and its relationship to entropy. **Entropy** is a measure of information. Given a random variable  $X$  ranging over whatever we are predicting (words, letters, parts of speech, the set of which we'll call  $\chi$ ) and with a particular probability function, call it  $p(x)$ , the entropy of the random variable  $X$  is:

$$H(X) = - \sum_{x \in \chi} p(x) \log_2 p(x) \quad (3.41)$$

The log can, in principle, be computed in any base. If we use log base 2, the resulting value of entropy will be measured in **bits**.

One intuitive way to think about entropy is as a lower bound on the number of bits it would take to encode a certain decision or piece of information in the optimal coding scheme.

Consider an example from the standard information theory textbook [Cover and Thomas \(1991\)](#). Imagine that we want to place a bet on a horse race but it is too far to go all the way to Yonkers Racetrack, so we'd like to send a short message to the bookie to tell him which of the eight horses to bet on. One way to encode this message is just to use the binary representation of the horse's number as the code; thus, horse 1 would be `001`, horse 2 `010`, horse 3 `011`, and so on, with horse 8 coded as `000`. If we spend the whole day betting and each horse is coded with 3 bits, on average we would be sending 3 bits per race.

Can we do better? Suppose that the spread is the actual distribution of the bets placed and that we represent it as the prior probability of each horse as follows:

Horse 1	$\frac{1}{2}$	Horse 5	$\frac{1}{64}$
Horse 2	$\frac{1}{4}$	Horse 6	$\frac{1}{64}$
Horse 3	$\frac{1}{8}$	Horse 7	$\frac{1}{64}$
Horse 4	$\frac{1}{16}$	Horse 8	$\frac{1}{64}$

The entropy of the random variable  $X$  that ranges over horses gives us a lower bound on the number of bits and is

$$\begin{aligned} H(X) &= - \sum_{i=1}^{i=8} p(i) \log p(i) \\ &= -\frac{1}{2} \log \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{4} \log \frac{1}{4} - \frac{1}{8} \log \frac{1}{8} - \frac{1}{16} \log \frac{1}{16} - 4(\frac{1}{64} \log \frac{1}{64}) \\ &= 2 \text{ bits} \end{aligned} \quad (3.42)$$

A code that averages 2 bits per race can be built with short encodings for more probable horses, and longer encodings for less probable horses. For example, we could encode the most likely horse with the code `0`, and the remaining horses as `10`, then `110`, `1110`, `111100`, `111101`, `111110`, and `111111`.

What if the horses are equally likely? We saw above that if we used an equal-length binary code for the horse numbers, each horse took 3 bits to code, so the average was 3. Is the entropy the same? In this case each horse would have a probability of  $\frac{1}{8}$ . The entropy of the choice of horses is then

$$H(X) = - \sum_{i=1}^{i=8} \frac{1}{8} \log \frac{1}{8} = -\log \frac{1}{8} = 3 \text{ bits} \quad (3.43)$$

Until now we have been computing the entropy of a single variable. But most of what we will use entropy for involves *sequences*. For a grammar, for example, we will be computing the entropy of some sequence of words  $W = \{w_0, w_1, w_2, \dots, w_n\}$ . One way to do this is to have a variable that ranges over sequences of words. For example we can compute the entropy of a random variable that ranges over all finite sequences of words of length  $n$  in some language  $L$  as follows:

$$H(w_1, w_2, \dots, w_n) = - \sum_{W_1^n \in L} p(W_1^n) \log p(W_1^n) \quad (3.44)$$

#### entropy rate

We could define the **entropy rate** (we could also think of this as the **per-word entropy**) as the entropy of this sequence divided by the number of words:

$$\frac{1}{n} H(W_1^n) = -\frac{1}{n} \sum_{W_1^n \in L} p(W_1^n) \log p(W_1^n) \quad (3.45)$$

But to measure the true entropy of a language, we need to consider sequences of infinite length. If we think of a language as a stochastic process  $L$  that produces a sequence of words, and allow  $W$  to represent the sequence of words  $w_1, \dots, w_n$ , then  $L$ 's entropy rate  $H(L)$  is defined as

$$\begin{aligned} H(L) &= \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{n} H(w_1, w_2, \dots, w_n) \\ &= -\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{n} \sum_{W \in L} p(w_1, \dots, w_n) \log p(w_1, \dots, w_n) \end{aligned} \quad (3.46)$$

The Shannon-McMillan-Breiman theorem ([Algoet and Cover 1988](#), [Cover and Thomas 1991](#)) states that if the language is regular in certain ways (to be exact, if it is both stationary and ergodic),

$$H(L) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} -\frac{1}{n} \log p(w_1 w_2 \dots w_n) \quad (3.47)$$

That is, we can take a single sequence that is long enough instead of summing over all possible sequences. The intuition of the Shannon-McMillan-Breiman theorem is that a long-enough sequence of words will contain in it many other shorter sequences and that each of these shorter sequences will reoccur in the longer sequence according to their probabilities.

#### Stationary

A stochastic process is said to be **stationary** if the probabilities it assigns to a sequence are invariant with respect to shifts in the time index. In other words, the probability distribution for words at time  $t$  is the same as the probability distribution at time  $t + 1$ . Markov models, and hence n-grams, are stationary. For example, in a bigram,  $P_i$  is dependent only on  $P_{i-1}$ . So if we shift our time index by  $x$ ,  $P_{i+x}$  is still dependent on  $P_{i+x-1}$ . But natural language is not stationary, since as we show

in Chapter 12, the probability of upcoming words can be dependent on events that were arbitrarily distant and time dependent. Thus, our statistical models only give an approximation to the correct distributions and entropies of natural language.

To summarize, by making some incorrect but convenient simplifying assumptions, we can compute the entropy of some stochastic process by taking a very long sample of the output and computing its average log probability.

#### **cross-entropy**

Now we are ready to introduce **cross-entropy**. The cross-entropy is useful when we don't know the actual probability distribution  $p$  that generated some data. It allows us to use some  $m$ , which is a model of  $p$  (i.e., an approximation to  $p$ ). The cross-entropy of  $m$  on  $p$  is defined by

$$H(p, m) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} -\frac{1}{n} \sum_{W \in L} p(w_1, \dots, w_n) \log m(w_1, \dots, w_n) \quad (3.48)$$

That is, we draw sequences according to the probability distribution  $p$ , but sum the log of their probabilities according to  $m$ .

Again, following the Shannon-McMillan-Breiman theorem, for a stationary ergodic process:

$$H(p, m) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} -\frac{1}{n} \log m(w_1 w_2 \dots w_n) \quad (3.49)$$

This means that, as for entropy, we can estimate the cross-entropy of a model  $m$  on some distribution  $p$  by taking a single sequence that is long enough instead of summing over all possible sequences.

What makes the cross-entropy useful is that the cross-entropy  $H(p, m)$  is an upper bound on the entropy  $H(p)$ . For any model  $m$ :

$$H(p) \leq H(p, m) \quad (3.50)$$

This means that we can use some simplified model  $m$  to help estimate the true entropy of a sequence of symbols drawn according to probability  $p$ . The more accurate  $m$  is, the closer the cross-entropy  $H(p, m)$  will be to the true entropy  $H(p)$ . Thus, the difference between  $H(p, m)$  and  $H(p)$  is a measure of how accurate a model is. Between two models  $m_1$  and  $m_2$ , the more accurate model will be the one with the lower cross-entropy. (The cross-entropy can never be lower than the true entropy, so a model cannot err by underestimating the true entropy.)

We are finally ready to see the relation between perplexity and cross-entropy as we saw it in Eq. 3.49. Cross-entropy is defined in the limit as the length of the observed word sequence goes to infinity. We will need an approximation to cross-entropy, relying on a (sufficiently long) sequence of fixed length. This approximation to the cross-entropy of a model  $M = P(w_i | w_{i-N+1} \dots w_{i-1})$  on a sequence of words  $W$  is

$$H(W) = -\frac{1}{N} \log P(w_1 w_2 \dots w_N) \quad (3.51)$$

#### **perplexity**

The **perplexity** of a model  $P$  on a sequence of words  $W$  is now formally defined as the exp of this cross-entropy:

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{Perplexity}(W) &= 2^{H(W)} \\
 &= P(w_1 w_2 \dots w_N)^{-\frac{1}{N}} \\
 &= \sqrt[N]{\frac{1}{P(w_1 w_2 \dots w_N)}} \\
 &= \sqrt[N]{\prod_{i=1}^N \frac{1}{P(w_i | w_1 \dots w_{i-1})}}
 \end{aligned} \tag{3.52}$$

## 3.8 Summary

This chapter introduced language modeling and the n-gram, one of the most widely used tools in language processing.

- Language models offer a way to assign a probability to a sentence or other sequence of words, and to predict a word from preceding words.
- n-grams are Markov models that estimate words from a fixed window of previous words. n-gram probabilities can be estimated by counting in a corpus and normalizing (the **maximum likelihood estimate**).
- n-gram **language models** are evaluated extrinsically in some task, or intrinsically using **perplexity**.
- The **perplexity** of a test set according to a language model is the geometric mean of the inverse test set probability computed by the model.
- **Smoothing** algorithms provide a more sophisticated way to estimate the probability of n-grams. Commonly used smoothing algorithms for n-grams rely on lower-order n-gram counts through **backoff** or **interpolation**.
- Both backoff and interpolation require **discounting** to create a probability distribution.
- **Kneser-Ney** smoothing makes use of the probability of a word being a novel **continuation**. The interpolated **Kneser-Ney** smoothing algorithm mixes a discounted probability with a lower-order continuation probability.

## Bibliographical and Historical Notes

The underlying mathematics of the n-gram was first proposed by [Markov \(1913\)](#), who used what are now called **Markov chains** (bigrams and trigrams) to predict whether an upcoming letter in Pushkin's *Eugene Onegin* would be a vowel or a consonant. Markov classified 20,000 letters as V or C and computed the bigram and trigram probability that a given letter would be a vowel given the previous one or two letters. [Shannon \(1948\)](#) applied n-grams to compute approximations to English word sequences. Based on Shannon's work, Markov models were commonly used in engineering, linguistic, and psychological work on modeling word sequences by the 1950s. In a series of extremely influential papers starting with [Chomsky \(1956\)](#) and including [Chomsky \(1957\)](#) and [Miller and Chomsky \(1963\)](#), Noam Chomsky argued that "finite-state Markov processes", while a possibly useful engineering heuristic,

were incapable of being a complete cognitive model of human grammatical knowledge. These arguments led many linguists and computational linguists to ignore work in statistical modeling for decades.

The resurgence of n-gram models came from Jelinek and colleagues at the IBM Thomas J. Watson Research Center, who were influenced by Shannon, and Baker at CMU, who was influenced by the work of Baum and colleagues. Independently these two labs successfully used n-grams in their speech recognition systems (Baker 1975b, Jelinek 1976, Baker 1975a, Bahl et al. 1983, Jelinek 1990).

Add-one smoothing derives from Laplace's 1812 law of succession and was first applied as an engineering solution to the zero frequency problem by Jeffreys (1948) based on an earlier Add-K suggestion by Johnson (1932). Problems with the add-one algorithm are summarized in Gale and Church (1994).

A wide variety of different language modeling and smoothing techniques were proposed in the 80s and 90s, including Good-Turing discounting—first applied to the n-gram smoothing at IBM by Katz (Nádas 1984, Church and Gale 1991)—Witten-Bell discounting (Witten and Bell, 1991), and varieties of **class-based n-gram** models that used information about word classes.

#### class-based n-gram

Starting in the late 1990s, Chen and Goodman performed a number of carefully controlled experiments comparing different discounting algorithms, cache models, class-based models, and other language model parameters (Chen and Goodman 1999, Goodman 2006, *inter alia*). They showed the advantages of **Modified Interpolated Kneser-Ney**, which became the standard baseline for n-gram language modeling, especially because they showed that caches and class-based models provided only minor additional improvement. These papers are recommended for any reader with further interest in n-gram language modeling. SRILM (Stolcke, 2002) and KenLM (Heafield 2011, Heafield et al. 2013) are publicly available toolkits for building n-gram language models.

Modern language modeling is more commonly done with **neural network** language models, which solve the major problems with n-grams: the number of parameters increases exponentially as the n-gram order increases, and n-grams have no way to generalize from training to test set. Neural language models instead project words into a **continuous** space in which words with similar contexts have similar representations. We'll introduce both **feedforward** language models (Bengio et al. 2006, Schwenk 2007) in Chapter 7, and **recurrent** language models (Mikolov, 2012) in Chapter 9.

## Exercises

- 3.1 Write out the equation for trigram probability estimation (modifying Eq. 3.11). Now write out all the non-zero trigram probabilities for the I am Sam corpus on page 32.
- 3.2 Calculate the probability of the sentence i want chinese food. Give two probabilities, one using Fig. 3.2 and the ‘useful probabilities’ just below it on page 34, and another using the add-1 smoothed table in Fig. 3.6. Assume the additional add-1 smoothed probabilities  $P(i | \langle s \rangle) = 0.19$  and  $P(\langle /s \rangle | food) = 0.40$ .
- 3.3 Which of the two probabilities you computed in the previous exercise is higher, unsmoothed or smoothed? Explain why.
- 3.4 We are given the following corpus, modified from the one in the chapter:

```
<s> I am Sam </s>
<s> Sam I am </s>
<s> I am Sam </s>
<s> I do not like green eggs and Sam </s>
```

Using a bigram language model with add-one smoothing, what is  $P(\text{Sam} | \text{am})$ ? Include `<s>` and `</s>` in your counts just like any other token.

- 3.5** Suppose we didn't use the end-symbol `</s>`. Train an unsmoothed bigram grammar on the following training corpus without using the end-symbol `</s>`:

```
<s> a b
<s> b b
<s> b a
<s> a a
```

Demonstrate that your bigram model does not assign a single probability distribution across all sentence lengths by showing that the sum of the probability of the four possible 2 word sentences over the alphabet {a,b} is 1.0, and the sum of the probability of all possible 3 word sentences over the alphabet {a,b} is also 1.0.

- 3.6** Suppose we train a trigram language model with add-one smoothing on a given corpus. The corpus contains  $V$  word types. Express a formula for estimating  $P(w_3|w_1, w_2)$ , where  $w_3$  is a word which follows the bigram  $(w_1, w_2)$ , in terms of various  $N$ -gram counts and  $V$ . Use the notation  $c(w_1, w_2, w_3)$  to denote the number of times that trigram  $(w_1, w_2, w_3)$  occurs in the corpus, and so on for bigrams and unigrams.

- 3.7** We are given the following corpus, modified from the one in the chapter:

```
<s> I am Sam </s>
<s> Sam I am </s>
<s> I am Sam </s>
<s> I do not like green eggs and Sam </s>
```

If we use linear interpolation smoothing between a maximum-likelihood bigram model and a maximum-likelihood unigram model with  $\lambda_1 = \frac{1}{2}$  and  $\lambda_2 = \frac{1}{2}$ , what is  $P(\text{Sam} | \text{am})$ ? Include `<s>` and `</s>` in your counts just like any other token.

- 3.8** Write a program to compute unsmoothed unigrams and bigrams.
- 3.9** Run your n-gram program on two different small corpora of your choice (you might use email text or newsgroups). Now compare the statistics of the two corpora. What are the differences in the most common unigrams between the two? How about interesting differences in bigrams?
- 3.10** Add an option to your program to generate random sentences.
- 3.11** Add an option to your program to compute the perplexity of a test set.
- 3.12** You are given a training set of 100 numbers that consists of 91 zeros and 1 each of the other digits 1-9. Now we see the following test set: 0 0 0 0 0 3 0 0 0 0. What is the unigram perplexity?

# Naive Bayes and Sentiment Classification

**Classification** lies at the heart of both human and machine intelligence. Deciding what letter, word, or image has been presented to our senses, recognizing faces or voices, sorting mail, assigning grades to homeworks; these are all examples of assigning a category to an input. The potential challenges of this task are highlighted by the fabulist Jorge Luis Borges (1964), who imagined classifying animals into:

*(a) those that belong to the Emperor, (b) embalmed ones, (c) those that are trained, (d) suckling pigs, (e) mermaids, (f) fabulous ones, (g) stray dogs, (h) those that are included in this classification, (i) those that tremble as if they were mad, (j) innumerable ones, (k) those drawn with a very fine camel's hair brush, (l) others, (m) those that have just broken a flower vase, (n) those that resemble flies from a distance.*

Many language processing tasks involve classification, although luckily our classes are much easier to define than those of Borges. In this chapter we introduce the naive Bayes algorithm and apply it to **text categorization**, the task of assigning a label or category to an entire text or document.

We focus on one common text categorization task, **sentiment analysis**, the extraction of **sentiment**, the positive or negative orientation that a writer expresses toward some object. A review of a movie, book, or product on the web expresses the author's sentiment toward the product, while an editorial or political text expresses sentiment toward a candidate or political action. Extracting consumer or public sentiment is thus relevant for fields from marketing to politics.

The simplest version of sentiment analysis is a binary classification task, and the words of the review provide excellent cues. Consider, for example, the following phrases extracted from positive and negative reviews of movies and restaurants. Words like *great, richly, awesome, and pathetic, and awful and ridiculously* are very informative cues:

- + ...zany characters and richly applied satire, and some great plot twists
- It was pathetic. The worst part about it was the boxing scenes...
- + ...awesome caramel sauce and sweet toasty almonds. I love this place!
- ...awful pizza and ridiculously overpriced...

spam detection

**Spam detection** is another important commercial application, the binary classification task of assigning an email to one of the two classes *spam* or *not-spam*. Many lexical and other features can be used to perform this classification. For example you might quite reasonably be suspicious of an email containing phrases like “online pharmaceutical” or “WITHOUT ANY COST” or “Dear Winner”.

language id

Another thing we might want to know about a text is the language it's written in. Texts on social media, for example, can be in any number of languages and we'll need to apply different processing. The task of **language id** is thus the first step in most language processing pipelines. Related text classification tasks like **authorship attribution**—determining a text's author—are also relevant to the digital humanities, social sciences, and forensic linguistics.

authorship attribution

Finally, one of the oldest tasks in text classification is assigning a library subject category or topic label to a text. Deciding whether a research paper concerns epidemiology or instead, perhaps, embryology, is an important component of information retrieval. Various sets of subject categories exist, such as the MeSH (Medical Subject Headings) thesaurus. In fact, as we will see, subject category classification is the task for which the naive Bayes algorithm was invented in 1961.

Classification is essential for tasks below the level of the document as well. We've already seen period disambiguation (deciding if a period is the end of a sentence or part of a word), and word tokenization (deciding if a character should be a word boundary). Even language modeling can be viewed as classification: each word can be thought of as a class, and so predicting the next word is classifying the context-so-far into a class for each next word. A part-of-speech tagger (Chapter 8) classifies each occurrence of a word in a sentence as, e.g., a noun or a verb.

The goal of classification is to take a single observation, extract some useful features, and thereby **classify** the observation into one of a set of discrete classes. One method for classifying text is to use handwritten rules. There are many areas of language processing where handwritten rule-based classifiers constitute a state-of-the-art system, or at least part of it.

Rules can be fragile, however, as situations or data change over time, and for some tasks humans aren't necessarily good at coming up with the rules. Most cases of classification in language processing are instead done via **supervised machine learning**, and this will be the subject of the remainder of this chapter. In supervised learning, we have a data set of input observations, each associated with some correct output (a ‘supervision signal’). The goal of the algorithm is to learn how to map from a new observation to a correct output.

Formally, the task of supervised classification is to take an input  $x$  and a fixed set of output classes  $Y = y_1, y_2, \dots, y_M$  and return a predicted class  $y \in Y$ . For text classification, we'll sometimes talk about  $c$  (for “class”) instead of  $y$  as our output variable, and  $d$  (for “document”) instead of  $x$  as our input variable. In the supervised situation we have a training set of  $N$  documents that have each been hand-labeled with a class:  $(d_1, c_1), \dots, (d_N, c_N)$ . Our goal is to learn a classifier that is capable of mapping from a new document  $d$  to its correct class  $c \in C$ . A **probabilistic classifier** additionally will tell us the probability of the observation being in the class. This full distribution over the classes can be useful information for downstream decisions; avoiding making discrete decisions early on can be useful when combining systems.

Many kinds of machine learning algorithms are used to build classifiers. This chapter introduces naive Bayes; the following one introduces logistic regression. These exemplify two ways of doing classification. **Generative** classifiers like naive Bayes build a model of how a class could generate some input data. Given an observation, they return the class most likely to have generated the observation. **Discriminative** classifiers like logistic regression instead learn what features from the input are most useful to discriminate between the different possible classes. While discriminative systems are often more accurate and hence more commonly used, generative classifiers still have a role.

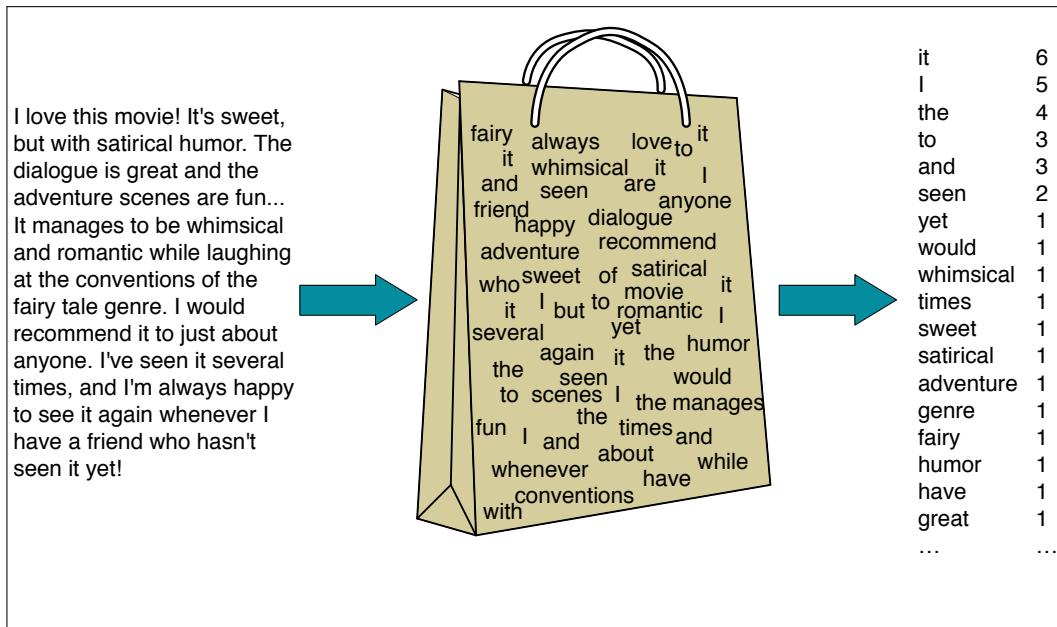
## 4.1 Naive Bayes Classifiers

### naive Bayes classifier

In this section we introduce the **multinomial naive Bayes classifier**, so called because it is a Bayesian classifier that makes a simplifying (naive) assumption about

how the features interact.

The intuition of the classifier is shown in Fig. 4.1. We represent a text document as if it were a **bag-of-words**, that is, an unordered set of words with their position ignored, keeping only their frequency in the document. In the example in the figure, instead of representing the word order in all the phrases like “I love this movie” and “I would recommend it”, we simply note that the word *I* occurred 5 times in the entire excerpt, the word *it* 6 times, the words *love*, *recommend*, and *movie* once, and so on.



**Figure 4.1** Intuition of the multinomial naive Bayes classifier applied to a movie review. The position of the words is ignored (the *bag of words* assumption) and we make use of the frequency of each word.

Naive Bayes is a probabilistic classifier, meaning that for a document  $d$ , out of all classes  $c \in C$  the classifier returns the class  $\hat{c}$  which has the maximum posterior probability given the document. In Eq. 4.1 we use the hat notation  $\hat{\cdot}$  to mean “our estimate of the correct class”.

$$\hat{c} = \operatorname{argmax}_{c \in C} P(c|d) \quad (4.1)$$

#### Bayesian inference

This idea of **Bayesian inference** has been known since the work of Bayes (1763), and was first applied to text classification by Mosteller and Wallace (1964). The intuition of Bayesian classification is to use Bayes’ rule to transform Eq. 4.1 into other probabilities that have some useful properties. Bayes’ rule is presented in Eq. 4.2; it gives us a way to break down any conditional probability  $P(x|y)$  into three other probabilities:

$$P(x|y) = \frac{P(y|x)P(x)}{P(y)} \quad (4.2)$$

We can then substitute Eq. 4.2 into Eq. 4.1 to get Eq. 4.3:

$$\hat{c} = \operatorname{argmax}_{c \in C} P(c|d) = \operatorname{argmax}_{c \in C} \frac{P(d|c)P(c)}{P(d)} \quad (4.3)$$

We can conveniently simplify Eq. 4.3 by dropping the denominator  $P(d)$ . This is possible because we will be computing  $\frac{P(d|c)P(c)}{P(d)}$  for each possible class. But  $P(d)$  doesn't change for each class; we are always asking about the most likely class for the same document  $d$ , which must have the same probability  $P(d)$ . Thus, we can choose the class that maximizes this simpler formula:

$$\hat{c} = \operatorname{argmax}_{c \in C} P(c|d) = \operatorname{argmax}_{c \in C} P(d|c)P(c) \quad (4.4)$$

We call Naive Bayes a **generative** model because we can read Eq. 4.4 as stating a kind of implicit assumption about how a document is generated: first a class is sampled from  $P(c)$ , and then the words are generated by sampling from  $P(d|c)$ . (In fact we could imagine generating artificial documents, or at least their word counts, by following this process). We'll say more about this intuition of generative models in Chapter 5.

To return to classification: we compute the most probable class  $\hat{c}$  given some document  $d$  by choosing the class which has the highest product of two probabilities: the **prior probability** of the class  $P(c)$  and the **likelihood** of the document  $P(d|c)$ :

$$\hat{c} = \operatorname{argmax}_{c \in C} \overbrace{P(d|c)}^{\text{likelihood}} \overbrace{P(c)}^{\text{prior}} \quad (4.5)$$

Without loss of generalization, we can represent a document  $d$  as a set of features  $f_1, f_2, \dots, f_n$ :

$$\hat{c} = \operatorname{argmax}_{c \in C} \overbrace{P(f_1, f_2, \dots, f_n|c)}^{\text{likelihood}} \overbrace{P(c)}^{\text{prior}} \quad (4.6)$$

Unfortunately, Eq. 4.6 is still too hard to compute directly: without some simplifying assumptions, estimating the probability of every possible combination of features (for example, every possible set of words and positions) would require huge numbers of parameters and impossibly large training sets. Naive Bayes classifiers therefore make two simplifying assumptions.

The first is the *bag of words* assumption discussed intuitively above: we assume position doesn't matter, and that the word "love" has the same effect on classification whether it occurs as the 1st, 20th, or last word in the document. Thus we assume that the features  $f_1, f_2, \dots, f_n$  only encode word identity and not position.

The second is commonly called the **naive Bayes assumption**: this is the conditional independence assumption that the probabilities  $P(f_i|c)$  are independent given the class  $c$  and hence can be 'naively' multiplied as follows:

$$P(f_1, f_2, \dots, f_n|c) = P(f_1|c) \cdot P(f_2|c) \cdot \dots \cdot P(f_n|c) \quad (4.7)$$

The final equation for the class chosen by a naive Bayes classifier is thus:

$$c_{NB} = \operatorname{argmax}_{c \in C} P(c) \prod_{f \in F} P(f|c) \quad (4.8)$$

To apply the naive Bayes classifier to text, we need to consider word positions, by simply walking an index through every word position in the document:

positions  $\leftarrow$  all word positions in test document

$$c_{NB} = \operatorname{argmax}_{c \in C} P(c) \prod_{i \in \text{positions}} P(w_i|c) \quad (4.9)$$

**prior  
probability  
likelihood**

**naive Bayes  
assumption**

Naive Bayes calculations, like calculations for language modeling, are done in log space, to avoid underflow and increase speed. Thus Eq. 4.9 is generally instead expressed as

$$c_{NB} = \operatorname{argmax}_{c \in C} \log P(c) + \sum_{i \in positions} \log P(w_i | c) \quad (4.10)$$

**linear classifiers**

By considering features in log space, Eq. 4.10 computes the predicted class as a linear function of input features. Classifiers that use a linear combination of the inputs to make a classification decision —like naive Bayes and also logistic regression—are called **linear classifiers**.

## 4.2 Training the Naive Bayes Classifier

How can we learn the probabilities  $P(c)$  and  $P(f_i|c)$ ? Let's first consider the maximum likelihood estimate. We'll simply use the frequencies in the data. For the class prior  $P(c)$  we ask what percentage of the documents in our training set are in each class  $c$ . Let  $N_c$  be the number of documents in our training data with class  $c$  and  $N_{doc}$  be the total number of documents. Then:

$$\hat{P}(c) = \frac{N_c}{N_{doc}} \quad (4.11)$$

To learn the probability  $P(f_i|c)$ , we'll assume a feature is just the existence of a word in the document's bag of words, and so we'll want  $P(w_i|c)$ , which we compute as the fraction of times the word  $w_i$  appears among all words in all documents of topic  $c$ . We first concatenate all documents with category  $c$  into one big “category  $c$ ” text. Then we use the frequency of  $w_i$  in this concatenated document to give a maximum likelihood estimate of the probability:

$$\hat{P}(w_i|c) = \frac{\text{count}(w_i, c)}{\sum_{w \in V} \text{count}(w, c)} \quad (4.12)$$

Here the vocabulary  $V$  consists of the union of all the word types in all classes, not just the words in one class  $c$ .

There is a problem, however, with maximum likelihood training. Imagine we are trying to estimate the likelihood of the word “fantastic” given class *positive*, but suppose there are no training documents that both contain the word “fantastic” and are classified as *positive*. Perhaps the word “fantastic” happens to occur (sarcastically?) in the class *negative*. In such a case the probability for this feature will be zero:

$$\hat{P}(\text{“fantastic”}|\text{positive}) = \frac{\text{count}(\text{“fantastic”}, \text{positive})}{\sum_{w \in V} \text{count}(w, \text{positive})} = 0 \quad (4.13)$$

But since naive Bayes naively multiplies all the feature likelihoods together, zero probabilities in the likelihood term for any class will cause the probability of the class to be zero, no matter the other evidence!

The simplest solution is the add-one (Laplace) smoothing introduced in Chapter 3. While Laplace smoothing is usually replaced by more sophisticated smoothing

algorithms in language modeling, it is commonly used in naive Bayes text categorization:

$$\hat{P}(w_i|c) = \frac{\text{count}(w_i, c) + 1}{\sum_{w \in V} (\text{count}(w, c) + 1)} = \frac{\text{count}(w_i, c) + 1}{(\sum_{w \in V} \text{count}(w, c)) + |V|} \quad (4.14)$$

Note once again that it is crucial that the vocabulary  $V$  consists of the union of all the word types in all classes, not just the words in one class  $c$  (try to convince yourself why this must be true; see the exercise at the end of the chapter).

What do we do about words that occur in our test data but are not in our vocabulary at all because they did not occur in any training document in any class? The solution for such **unknown words** is to ignore them—remove them from the test document and not include any probability for them at all.

**unknown word**  
**stop words**

Finally, some systems choose to completely ignore another class of words: **stop words**, very frequent words like *the* and *a*. This can be done by sorting the vocabulary by frequency in the training set, and defining the top 10–100 vocabulary entries as stop words, or alternatively by using one of the many predefined stop word list available online. Then every instance of these stop words are simply removed from both training and test documents as if they had never occurred. In most text classification applications, however, using a stop word list doesn't improve performance, and so it is more common to make use of the entire vocabulary and not use a stop word list.

Fig. 4.2 shows the final algorithm.

```

function TRAIN NAIVE BAYES(D, C) returns log  $P(c)$  and log  $P(w|c)$ 
  for each class  $c \in C$           # Calculate  $P(c)$  terms
     $N_{doc}$  = number of documents in D
     $N_c$  = number of documents from D in class c
     $logprior[c] \leftarrow \log \frac{N_c}{N_{doc}}$ 
     $V \leftarrow$  vocabulary of D
     $bigdoc[c] \leftarrow \text{append}(d)$  for  $d \in D$  with class  $c$ 
    for each word  $w$  in  $V$           # Calculate  $P(w|c)$  terms
       $count(w, c) \leftarrow$  # of occurrences of  $w$  in  $bigdoc[c]$ 
       $loglikelihood[w, c] \leftarrow \log \frac{count(w, c) + 1}{\sum_{w' \text{ in } V} (count(w', c) + 1)}$ 
  return  $logprior, loglikelihood, V$ 

function TEST NAIVE BAYES( $testdoc, logprior, loglikelihood, C, V$ ) returns best  $c$ 
  for each class  $c \in C$ 
     $sum[c] \leftarrow logprior[c]$ 
    for each position  $i$  in  $testdoc$ 
       $word \leftarrow testdoc[i]$ 
      if  $word \in V$ 
         $sum[c] \leftarrow sum[c] + loglikelihood[word, c]$ 
  return  $\text{argmax}_c sum[c]$ 

```

**Figure 4.2** The naive Bayes algorithm, using add-1 smoothing. To use add- $\alpha$  smoothing instead, change the  $+1$  to  $+\alpha$  for loglikelihood counts in training.

## 4.3 Worked example

Let's walk through an example of training and testing naive Bayes with add-one smoothing. We'll use a sentiment analysis domain with the two classes positive (+) and negative (-), and take the following miniature training and test documents simplified from actual movie reviews.

	Cat	Documents
Training	-	just plain boring entirely predictable and lacks energy no surprises and very few laughs + very powerful + the most fun film of the summer
Test	?	predictable with no fun

The prior  $P(c)$  for the two classes is computed via Eq. 4.11 as  $\frac{N_c}{N_{doc}}$ :

$$P(-) = \frac{3}{5} \quad P(+) = \frac{2}{5}$$

The word *with* doesn't occur in the training set, so we drop it completely (as mentioned above, we don't use unknown word models for naive Bayes). The likelihoods from the training set for the remaining three words "predictable", "no", and "fun", are as follows, from Eq. 4.14 (computing the probabilities for the remainder of the words in the training set is left as an exercise for the reader):

$$\begin{aligned} P(\text{"predictable"}|-) &= \frac{1+1}{14+20} & P(\text{"predictable"}|+) &= \frac{0+1}{9+20} \\ P(\text{"no"}|-) &= \frac{1+1}{14+20} & P(\text{"no"}|+) &= \frac{0+1}{9+20} \\ P(\text{"fun"}|-) &= \frac{0+1}{14+20} & P(\text{"fun"}|+) &= \frac{1+1}{9+20} \end{aligned}$$

For the test sentence  $S$  = "predictable with no fun", after removing the word 'with', the chosen class, via Eq. 4.9, is therefore computed as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} P(-)P(S|-) &= \frac{3}{5} \times \frac{2 \times 2 \times 1}{34^3} = 6.1 \times 10^{-5} \\ P(+)P(S|+) &= \frac{2}{5} \times \frac{1 \times 1 \times 2}{29^3} = 3.2 \times 10^{-5} \end{aligned}$$

The model thus predicts the class *negative* for the test sentence.

## 4.4 Optimizing for Sentiment Analysis

While standard naive Bayes text classification can work well for sentiment analysis, some small changes are generally employed that improve performance.

First, for sentiment classification and a number of other text classification tasks, whether a word occurs or not seems to matter more than its frequency. Thus it often improves performance to clip the word counts in each document at 1 (see the end of the chapter for pointers to these results). This variant is called **binary**.

**binary NB** or **multinomial naive Bayes** or **binary NB**. The variant uses the same Eq. 4.10 except that for each document we remove all duplicate words before concatenating them into the single big document. Fig. 4.3 shows an example in which a set of four documents (shortened and text-normalized for this example) are remapped to binary, with the modified counts shown in the table on the right. The example is worked without add-1 smoothing to make the differences clearer. Note that the results counts need not be 1; the word *great* has a count of 2 even for Binary NB, because it appears in multiple documents.

	NB Counts		Binary Counts	
	+	-	+	-
<b>Four original documents:</b>				
– it was pathetic the worst part was the boxing scenes	and	2	0	1 0
– no plot twists or great scenes	boxing	0	1	0 1
+ and satire and great plot twists	film	1	0	1 0
+ great scenes great film	great	3	1	2 1
	it	0	1	0 1
	no	0	1	0 1
	or	0	1	0 1
	part	0	1	0 1
– it was pathetic the worst part boxing scenes	pathetic	0	1	0 1
– no plot twists or great scenes	plot	1	1	1 1
+ and satire great plot twists	satire	1	0	1 0
+ great scenes film	scenes	1	2	1 2
	the	0	2	0 1
	twists	1	1	1 1
	was	0	2	0 1
	worst	0	1	0 1

Figure 4.3 An example of binarization for the binary naive Bayes algorithm.

A second important addition commonly made when doing text classification for sentiment is to deal with negation. Consider the difference between *I really like this movie* (positive) and *I didn't like this movie* (negative). The negation expressed by *didn't* completely alters the inferences we draw from the predicate *like*. Similarly, negation can modify a negative word to produce a positive review (*don't dismiss this film, doesn't let us get bored*).

A very simple baseline that is commonly used in sentiment analysis to deal with negation is the following: during text normalization, prepend the prefix *NOT\_* to every word after a token of logical negation (*n't, not, no, never*) until the next punctuation mark. Thus the phrase

`didn't like this movie , but I`

becomes

`didn't NOT_like NOT_this NOT_movie , but I`

Newly formed ‘words’ like *NOT\_like*, *NOT\_recommend* will thus occur more often in negative document and act as cues for negative sentiment, while words like *NOT\_bored*, *NOT\_dismiss* will acquire positive associations. We will return in Chapter 16 to the use of parsing to deal more accurately with the scope relationship between these negation words and the predicates they modify, but this simple baseline works quite well in practice.

Finally, in some situations we might have insufficient labeled training data to train accurate naive Bayes classifiers using all words in the training set to estimate positive and negative sentiment. In such cases we can instead derive the positive

**sentiment lexicons**  
**General Inquirer**  
**LIWC**

and negative word features from **sentiment lexicons**, lists of words that are pre-annotated with positive or negative sentiment. Four popular lexicons are the **General Inquirer** (Stone et al., 1966), **LIWC** (Pennebaker et al., 2007), the opinion lexicon of Hu and Liu (2004a) and the MPQA Subjectivity Lexicon (Wilson et al., 2005).

For example the MPQA subjectivity lexicon has 6885 words, 2718 positive and 4912 negative, each marked for whether it is strongly or weakly biased. Some samples of positive and negative words from the MPQA lexicon include:

- + : *admirable, beautiful, confident, dazzling, ecstatic, favor, glee, great*
- : *awful, bad, bias, catastrophe, cheat, deny, envious, foul, harsh, hate*

A common way to use lexicons in a naive Bayes classifier is to add a feature that is counted whenever a word from that lexicon occurs. Thus we might add a feature called ‘this word occurs in the positive lexicon’, and treat all instances of words in the lexicon as counts for that one feature, instead of counting each word separately. Similarly, we might add as a second feature ‘this word occurs in the negative lexicon’ of words in the negative lexicon. If we have lots of training data, and if the test data matches the training data, using just two features won’t work as well as using all the words. But when training data is sparse or not representative of the test set, using dense lexicon features instead of sparse individual-word features may generalize better.

We’ll return to this use of lexicons in Chapter 20, showing how these lexicons can be learned automatically, and how they can be applied to many other tasks beyond sentiment classification.

## 4.5 Naive Bayes for other text classification tasks

**spam detection**

In the previous section we pointed out that naive Bayes doesn’t require that our classifier use all the words in the training data as features. In fact features in naive Bayes can express any property of the input text we want.

Consider the task of **spam detection**, deciding if a particular piece of email is an example of spam (unsolicited bulk email) — and one of the first applications of naive Bayes to text classification (Sahami et al., 1998).

A common solution here, rather than using all the words as individual features, is to predefine likely sets of words or phrases as features, combined with features that are not purely linguistic. For example the open-source SpamAssassin tool<sup>1</sup> defines features like the phrase “one hundred percent guaranteed”, or the feature *mentions millions of dollars*, which is a regular expression that matches suspiciously large sums of money. But it also includes features like *HTML has a low ratio of text to image area*, that aren’t purely linguistic and might require some sophisticated computation, or totally non-linguistic features about, say, the path that the email took to arrive. More sample SpamAssassin features:

- Email subject line is all capital letters
- Contains phrases of urgency like “urgent reply”
- Email subject line contains “online pharmaceutical”
- HTML has unbalanced “head” tags
- Claims you can be removed from the list

**language ID**

For other tasks, like **language ID**—determining what language a given piece

---

<sup>1</sup> <https://spamassassin.apache.org>

of text is written in—the most effective naive Bayes features are not words at all, but **character n-grams**, 2-grams ('zw') 3-grams ('nya', 'Vo'), or 4-grams ('ie z', 'thei'), or, even simpler **byte n-grams**, where instead of using the multibyte Unicode character representations called codepoints, we just pretend everything is a string of raw bytes. Because spaces count as a byte, byte n-grams can model statistics about the beginning or ending of words. A widely used naive Bayes system, `langid.py` ([Lui and Baldwin, 2012](#)) begins with all possible n-grams of lengths 1-4, using **feature selection** to winnow down to the most informative 7000 final features.

Language ID systems are trained on multilingual text, such as Wikipedia (Wikipedia text in 68 different languages were used in ([Lui and Baldwin, 2011](#))), or newswire. To make sure that this multilingual text correctly reflects different regions, dialects, and socioeconomic classes, systems also add Twitter text in many languages geotagged to many regions (important for getting world English dialects from countries with large Anglophone populations like Nigeria or India), Bible and Quran translations, slang websites like Urban Dictionary, corpora of African American Vernacular English ([Blodgett et al., 2016](#)), and so on ([Jurgens et al., 2017](#)).

## 4.6 Naive Bayes as a Language Model

As we saw in the previous section, naive Bayes classifiers can use any sort of feature: dictionaries, URLs, email addresses, network features, phrases, and so on. But if, as in the previous section, we use only individual word features, and we use all of the words in the text (not a subset), then naive Bayes has an important similarity to language modeling. Specifically, a naive Bayes model can be viewed as a set of class-specific unigram language models, in which the model for each class instantiates a unigram language model.

Since the likelihood features from the naive Bayes model assign a probability to each word  $P(\text{word}|c)$ , the model also assigns a probability to each sentence:

$$P(s|c) = \prod_{i \in \text{positions}} P(w_i|c) \quad (4.15)$$

Thus consider a naive Bayes model with the classes *positive* (+) and *negative* (-) and the following model parameters:

w	P(w +)	P(w -)
I	0.1	0.2
love	0.1	0.001
this	0.01	0.01
fun	0.05	0.005
film	0.1	0.1
...	...	...

Each of the two columns above instantiates a language model that can assign a probability to the sentence "I love this fun film":

$$P(\text{"I love this fun film"}|+) = 0.1 \times 0.1 \times 0.01 \times 0.05 \times 0.1 = 0.0000005$$

$$P(\text{"I love this fun film"}|-) = 0.2 \times 0.001 \times 0.01 \times 0.005 \times 0.1 = .000000010$$

As it happens, the positive model assigns a higher probability to the sentence:  $P(s|pos) > P(s|neg)$ . Note that this is just the likelihood part of the naive Bayes model; once we multiply in the prior a full naive Bayes model might well make a different classification decision.

## 4.7 Evaluation: Precision, Recall, F-measure

To introduce the methods for evaluating text classification, let's first consider some simple binary *detection* tasks. For example, in spam detection, our goal is to label every text as being in the spam category ("positive") or not in the spam category ("negative"). For each item (email document) we therefore need to know whether our system called it spam or not. We also need to know whether the email is actually spam or not, i.e. the human-defined labels for each document that we are trying to match. We will refer to these human labels as the **gold labels**.

Or imagine you're the CEO of the *Delicious Pie Company* and you need to know what people are saying about your pies on social media, so you build a system that detects tweets concerning Delicious Pie. Here the positive class is tweets about Delicious Pie and the negative class is all other tweets.

In both cases, we need a metric for knowing how well our spam detector (or pie-tweet-detector) is doing. To evaluate any system for detecting things, we start by building a **confusion matrix** like the one shown in Fig. 4.4. A confusion matrix is a table for visualizing how an algorithm performs with respect to the human gold labels, using two dimensions (system output and gold labels), and each cell labeling a set of possible outcomes. In the spam detection case, for example, true positives are documents that are indeed spam (indicated by human-created gold labels) that our system correctly said were spam. False negatives are documents that are indeed spam but our system incorrectly labeled as non-spam.

To the bottom right of the table is the equation for *accuracy*, which asks what percentage of all the observations (for the spam or pie examples that means all emails or tweets) our system labeled correctly. Although accuracy might seem a natural metric, we generally don't use it for text classification tasks. That's because accuracy doesn't work well when the classes are unbalanced (as indeed they are with spam, which is a large majority of email, or with tweets, which are mainly not about pie).

		gold standard labels		precision = $\frac{tp}{tp+fp}$
		gold positive	gold negative	
system output labels	system positive	true positive	false positive	recall = $\frac{tp}{tp+fn}$
	system negative	false negative	true negative	
				accuracy = $\frac{tp+tn}{tp+fp+tn+fn}$

**Figure 4.4** A confusion matrix for visualizing how well a binary classification system performs against gold standard labels.

To make this more explicit, imagine that we looked at a million tweets, and let's say that only 100 of them are discussing their love (or hatred) for our pie,

while the other 999,900 are tweets about something completely unrelated. Imagine a simple classifier that stupidly classified every tweet as “not about pie”. This classifier would have 999,900 true negatives and only 100 false negatives for an accuracy of 999,900/1,000,000 or 99.99%! What an amazing accuracy level! Surely we should be happy with this classifier? But of course this fabulous ‘no pie’ classifier would be completely useless, since it wouldn’t find a single one of the customer comments we are looking for. In other words, accuracy is not a good metric when the goal is to discover something that is rare, or at least not completely balanced in frequency, which is a very common situation in the world.

**precision** That’s why instead of accuracy we generally turn to two other metrics shown in Fig. 4.4: **precision** and **recall**. **Precision** measures the percentage of the items that the system detected (i.e., the system labeled as positive) that are in fact positive (i.e., are positive according to the human gold labels). Precision is defined as

$$\text{Precision} = \frac{\text{true positives}}{\text{true positives} + \text{false positives}}$$

**recall** **Recall** measures the percentage of items actually present in the input that were correctly identified by the system. Recall is defined as

$$\text{Recall} = \frac{\text{true positives}}{\text{true positives} + \text{false negatives}}$$

Precision and recall will help solve the problem with the useless “nothing is pie” classifier. This classifier, despite having a fabulous accuracy of 99.99%, has a terrible recall of 0 (since there are no true positives, and 100 false negatives, the recall is 0/100). You should convince yourself that the precision at finding relevant tweets is equally problematic. Thus precision and recall, unlike accuracy, emphasize true positives: finding the things that we are supposed to be looking for.

**F-measure** There are many ways to define a single metric that incorporates aspects of both precision and recall. The simplest of these combinations is the **F-measure** (van Rijsbergen, 1975), defined as:

$$F_\beta = \frac{(\beta^2 + 1)PR}{\beta^2P + R}$$

**F1** The  $\beta$  parameter differentially weights the importance of recall and precision, based perhaps on the needs of an application. Values of  $\beta > 1$  favor recall, while values of  $\beta < 1$  favor precision. When  $\beta = 1$ , precision and recall are equally balanced; this is the most frequently used metric, and is called  $F_{\beta=1}$  or just  $F_1$ :

$$F_1 = \frac{2PR}{P+R} \quad (4.16)$$

F-measure comes from a weighted harmonic mean of precision and recall. The harmonic mean of a set of numbers is the reciprocal of the arithmetic mean of reciprocals:

$$\text{HarmonicMean}(a_1, a_2, a_3, a_4, \dots, a_n) = \frac{n}{\frac{1}{a_1} + \frac{1}{a_2} + \frac{1}{a_3} + \dots + \frac{1}{a_n}} \quad (4.17)$$

and hence F-measure is

$$F = \frac{1}{\alpha \frac{1}{P} + (1 - \alpha) \frac{1}{R}} \quad \text{or} \left( \text{with } \beta^2 = \frac{1 - \alpha}{\alpha} \right) \quad F = \frac{(\beta^2 + 1)PR}{\beta^2P + R} \quad (4.18)$$

Harmonic mean is used because it is a conservative metric; the harmonic mean of two values is closer to the minimum of the two values than the arithmetic mean is. Thus it weighs the lower of the two numbers more heavily.

### 4.7.1 Evaluating with more than two classes

Up to now we have been describing text classification tasks with only two classes. But lots of classification tasks in language processing have more than two classes. For sentiment analysis we generally have 3 classes (positive, negative, neutral) and even more classes are common for tasks like part-of-speech tagging, word sense disambiguation, semantic role labeling, emotion detection, and so on. Luckily the naive Bayes algorithm is already a multi-class classification algorithm.

		gold labels			
		urgent	normal	spam	
system output	urgent	8	10	1	$\text{precision}_u = \frac{8}{8+10+1}$
	normal	5	60	50	$\text{precision}_n = \frac{60}{5+60+50}$
	spam	3	30	200	$\text{precision}_s = \frac{200}{3+30+200}$
		$\text{recall}_u = \frac{8}{8+5+3}$	$\text{recall}_n = \frac{60}{10+60+30}$	$\text{recall}_s = \frac{200}{1+50+200}$	

**Figure 4.5** Confusion matrix for a three-class categorization task, showing for each pair of classes ( $c_1, c_2$ ), how many documents from  $c_1$  were (in)correctly assigned to  $c_2$

macroaveraging  
microaveraging

But we'll need to slightly modify our definitions of precision and recall. Consider the sample confusion matrix for a hypothetical 3-way *one-of* email categorization decision (urgent, normal, spam) shown in Fig. 4.5. The matrix shows, for example, that the system mistakenly labeled one spam document as urgent, and we have shown how to compute a distinct precision and recall value for each class. In order to derive a single metric that tells us how well the system is doing, we can combine these values in two ways. In **macroaveraging**, we compute the performance for each class, and then average over classes. In **microaveraging**, we collect the decisions for all classes into a single confusion matrix, and then compute precision and recall from that table. Fig. 4.6 shows the confusion matrix for each class separately, and shows the computation of microaveraged and macroaveraged precision.

As the figure shows, a microaverage is dominated by the more frequent class (in this case spam), since the counts are pooled. The macroaverage better reflects the statistics of the smaller classes, and so is more appropriate when performance on all the classes is equally important.

## 4.8 Test sets and Cross-validation

development test set  
devset

The training and testing procedure for text classification follows what we saw with language modeling (Section 3.2): we use the training set to train the model, then use the **development test set** (also called a **devset**) to perhaps tune some parameters,

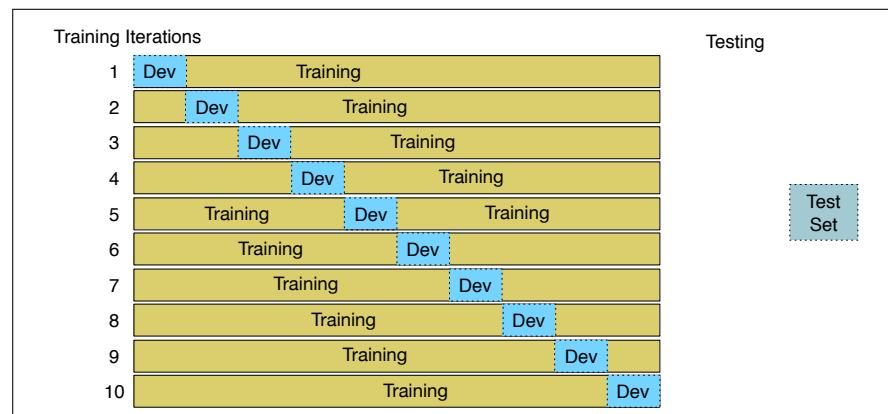
Class 1: Urgent		Class 2: Normal		Class 3: Spam		Pooled	
true	true	true	true	true	true	true	true
urgent	not	normal	not	spam	not	yes	no
system urgent	8	11	system normal	60	55	system spam	200
system not	8	340	system not	40	212	system not	33
				51	83		
precision = $\frac{8}{8+11} = .42$	precision = $\frac{60}{60+55} = .52$	precision = $\frac{200}{200+33} = .86$	microaverage precision = $\frac{.42+.52+.86}{3} = .60$			precision = $\frac{268}{268+99} = .73$	

**Figure 4.6** Separate confusion matrices for the 3 classes from the previous figure, showing the pooled confusion matrix and the microaveraged and macroaveraged precision.

and in general decide what the best model is. Once we come up with what we think is the best model, we run it on the (hitherto unseen) test set to report its performance.

While the use of a devset avoids overfitting the test set, having a fixed training set, devset, and test set creates another problem: in order to save lots of data for training, the test set (or devset) might not be large enough to be representative. Wouldn't it be better if we could somehow use all our data for training and still use all our data for test? We can do this by **cross-validation**: we randomly choose a training and test set division of our data, train our classifier, and then compute the error rate on the test set. Then we repeat with a different randomly selected training set and test set. We do this sampling process 10 times and average these 10 runs to get an average error rate. This is called **10-fold cross-validation**.

The only problem with cross-validation is that because all the data is used for testing, we need the whole corpus to be blind; we can't examine any of the data to suggest possible features and in general see what's going on, because we'd be peeking at the test set, and such cheating would cause us to overestimate the performance of our system. However, looking at the corpus to understand what's going on is important in designing NLP systems! What to do? For this reason, it is common to create a fixed training set and test set, then do 10-fold cross-validation inside the training set, but compute error rate the normal way in the test set, as shown in Fig. 4.7.



**Figure 4.7** 10-fold cross-validation

**cross-validation**

**10-fold cross-validation**

## 4.9 Statistical Significance Testing

In building systems we often need to compare the performance of two systems. How can we know if the new system we just built is better than our old one? Or better than the some other system described in the literature? This is the domain of statistical hypothesis testing, and in this section we introduce tests for statistical significance for NLP classifiers, drawing especially on the work of Dror et al. (2020) and Berg-Kirkpatrick et al. (2012).

Suppose we're comparing the performance of classifiers  $A$  and  $B$  on a metric  $M$  such as  $F_1$ , or accuracy. Perhaps we want to know if our logistic regression sentiment classifier  $A$  (Chapter 5) gets a higher  $F_1$  score than our naive Bayes sentiment classifier  $B$  on a particular test set  $x$ . Let's call  $M(A, x)$  the score that system  $A$  gets on test set  $x$ , and  $\delta(x)$  the performance difference between  $A$  and  $B$  on  $x$ :

$$\delta(x) = M(A, x) - M(B, x) \quad (4.19)$$

We would like to know if  $\delta(x) > 0$ , meaning that our logistic regression classifier has a higher  $F_1$  than our naive Bayes classifier on  $X$ .  $\delta(x)$  is called the **effect size**; a bigger  $\delta$  means that  $A$  seems to be way better than  $B$ ; a small  $\delta$  means  $A$  seems to be only a little better.

Why don't we just check if  $\delta(x)$  is positive? Suppose we do, and we find that the  $F_1$  score of  $A$  is higher than  $B$ s by .04. Can we be certain that  $A$  is better? We cannot! That's because  $A$  might just be accidentally better than  $B$  on this particular  $x$ . We need something more: we want to know if  $A$ 's superiority over  $B$  is likely to hold again if we checked another test set  $x'$ , or under some other set of circumstances.

In the paradigm of statistical hypothesis testing, we test this by formalizing two hypotheses.

$$\begin{aligned} H_0 &: \delta(x) \leq 0 \\ H_1 &: \delta(x) > 0 \end{aligned} \quad (4.20)$$

**null hypothesis** The hypothesis  $H_0$ , called the **null hypothesis**, supposes that  $\delta(x)$  is actually negative or zero, meaning that  $A$  is not better than  $B$ . We would like to know if we can confidently rule out this hypothesis, and instead support  $H_1$ , that  $A$  is better.

**p-value** We do this by creating a random variable  $X$  ranging over all test sets. Now we ask how likely is it, if the null hypothesis  $H_0$  was correct, that among these test sets we would encounter the value of  $\delta(x)$  that we found. We formalize this likelihood as the **p-value**: the probability, assuming the null hypothesis  $H_0$  is true, of seeing the  $\delta(x)$  that we saw or one even greater

$$P(\delta(X) \geq \delta(x) | H_0 \text{ is true}) \quad (4.21)$$

So in our example, this p-value is the probability that we would see  $\delta(x)$  assuming  $A$  is **not** better than  $B$ . If  $\delta(x)$  is huge (let's say  $A$  has a very respectable  $F_1$  of .9 and  $B$  has a terrible  $F_1$  of only .2 on  $x$ ), we might be surprised, since that would be extremely unlikely to occur if  $H_0$  were in fact true, and so the p-value would be low (unlikely to have such a large  $\delta$  if  $A$  is in fact not better than  $B$ ). But if  $\delta(x)$  is very small, it might be less surprising to us even if  $H_0$  were true and  $A$  is not really better than  $B$ , and so the p-value would be higher.

A very small p-value means that the difference we observed is very unlikely under the null hypothesis, and we can reject the null hypothesis. What counts as very

**statistically significant**

small? It is common to use values like .05 or .01 as the thresholds. A value of .01 means that if the p-value (the probability of observing the  $\delta$  we saw assuming  $H_0$  is true) is less than .01, we reject the null hypothesis and assume that  $A$  is indeed better than  $B$ . We say that a result (e.g., “ $A$  is better than  $B$ ”) is **statistically significant** if the  $\delta$  we saw has a probability that is below the threshold and we therefore reject this null hypothesis.

How do we compute this probability we need for the p-value? In NLP we generally don’t use simple parametric tests like t-tests or ANOVAs that you might be familiar with. Parametric tests make assumptions about the distributions of the test statistic (such as normality) that don’t generally hold in our cases. So in NLP we usually use non-parametric tests based on sampling: we artificially create many versions of the experimental setup. For example, if we had lots of different test sets  $x'$  we could just measure all the  $\delta(x')$  for all the  $x'$ . That gives us a distribution. Now we set a threshold (like .01) and if we see in this distribution that 99% or more of those deltas are smaller than the delta we observed, i.e. that  $p\text{-value}(x)$ —the probability of seeing a  $\delta(x)$  as big as the one we saw, is less than .01, then we can reject the null hypothesis and agree that  $\delta(x)$  was a sufficiently surprising difference and  $A$  is really a better algorithm than  $B$ .

**approximate randomization****paired**

There are two common non-parametric tests used in NLP: **approximate randomization** (Noreen, 1989), and the **bootstrap test**. We will describe bootstrap below, showing the paired version of the test, which again is most common in NLP. **Paired** tests are those in which we compare two sets of observations that are aligned: each observation in one set can be paired with an observation in another. This happens naturally when we are comparing the performance of two systems on the same test set; we can pair the performance of system  $A$  on an individual observation  $x_i$  with the performance of system  $B$  on the same  $x_i$ .

### 4.9.1 The Paired Bootstrap Test

**bootstrap test****bootstrapping**

The **bootstrap test** (Efron and Tibshirani, 1993) can apply to any metric; from precision, recall, or F1 to the BLEU metric used in machine translation. The word **bootstrapping** refers to repeatedly drawing large numbers of smaller samples with replacement (called **bootstrap samples**) from an original larger sample. The intuition of the bootstrap test is that we can create many virtual test sets from an observed test set by repeatedly sampling from it. The method only makes the assumption that the sample is representative of the population.

Consider a tiny text classification example with a test set  $x$  of 10 documents. The first row of Fig. 4.8 shows the results of two classifiers (A and B) on this test set, with each document labeled by one of the four possibilities: (A and B both right, both wrong, A right and B wrong, A wrong and B right); a slash through a letter ( $\cancel{B}$ ) means that that classifier got the answer wrong. On the first document both A and B get the correct class ( $AB$ ), while on the second document A got it right but B got it wrong ( $A\cancel{B}$ ). If we assume for simplicity that our metric is accuracy, A has an accuracy of .70 and B of .50, so  $\delta(x)$  is .20.

Now we create a large number  $b$  (perhaps  $10^5$ ) of virtual test sets  $x^{(i)}$ , each of size  $n = 10$ . Fig. 4.8 shows a couple examples. To create each virtual test set  $x^{(i)}$ , we repeatedly ( $n = 10$  times) select a cell from row  $x$  with replacement. For example, to create the first cell of the first virtual test set  $x^{(1)}$ , if we happened to randomly select the second cell of the  $x$  row; we would copy the value  $A\cancel{B}$  into our new cell, and move on to create the second cell of  $x^{(1)}$ , each time sampling (randomly choosing) from the original  $x$  with replacement.

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	A%	B%	$\delta()$
$x$	AB	.70	.50	.20									
$x^{(1)}$	AB	.60	.60	.00									
$x^{(2)}$	AB	.60	.70	-.10									
...													
$x^{(b)}$													

**Figure 4.8** The paired bootstrap test: Examples of  $b$  pseudo test sets  $x^{(i)}$  being created from an initial true test set  $x$ . Each pseudo test set is created by sampling  $n = 10$  times with replacement; thus an individual sample is a single cell, a document with its gold label and the correct or incorrect performance of classifiers A and B. Of course real test sets don't have only 10 examples, and  $b$  needs to be large as well.

Now that we have the  $b$  test sets, providing a sampling distribution, we can do statistics on how often  $A$  has an accidental advantage. There are various ways to compute this advantage; here we follow the version laid out in [Berg-Kirkpatrick et al. \(2012\)](#). Assuming  $H_0$  ( $A$  isn't better than  $B$ ), we would expect that  $\delta(X)$ , estimated over many test sets, would be zero; a much higher value would be surprising, since  $H_0$  specifically assumes  $A$  isn't better than  $B$ . To measure exactly how surprising is our observed  $\delta(x)$  we would in other circumstances compute the p-value by counting over many test sets how often  $\delta(x^{(i)})$  exceeds the expected zero value by  $\delta(x)$  or more:

$$\text{p-value}(x) = \sum_{i=1}^b \mathbb{1}(\delta(x^{(i)}) - \delta(x) \geq 0)$$

However, although it's generally true that the expected value of  $\delta(X)$  over many test sets, (again assuming  $A$  isn't better than  $B$ ) is 0, this **isn't** true for the bootstrapped test sets we created. That's because we didn't draw these samples from a distribution with 0 mean; we happened to create them from the original test set  $x$ , which happens to be biased (by .20) in favor of  $A$ . So to measure how surprising is our observed  $\delta(x)$ , we actually compute the p-value by counting over many test sets how often  $\delta(x^{(i)})$  exceeds the expected value of  $\delta(x)$  by  $\delta(x)$  or more:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{p-value}(x) &= \sum_{i=1}^b \mathbb{1}(\delta(x^{(i)}) - \delta(x) \geq \delta(x)) \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^b \mathbb{1}(\delta(x^{(i)}) \geq 2\delta(x)) \end{aligned} \tag{4.22}$$

So if for example we have 10,000 test sets  $x^{(i)}$  and a threshold of .01, and in only 47 of the test sets do we find that  $\delta(x^{(i)}) \geq 2\delta(x)$ , the resulting p-value of .0047 is smaller than .01, indicating  $\delta(x)$  is indeed sufficiently surprising, and we can reject the null hypothesis and conclude  $A$  is better than  $B$ .

The full algorithm for the bootstrap is shown in Fig. 4.9. It is given a test set  $x$ , a number of samples  $b$ , and counts the percentage of the  $b$  bootstrap test sets in which  $\delta(x^{*(i)}) > 2\delta(x)$ . This percentage then acts as a one-sided empirical p-value

```

function BOOTSTRAP(test set  $x$ , num of samples  $b$ ) returns  $p\text{-value}(x)$ 
    Calculate  $\delta(x)$  # how much better does algorithm A do than B on  $x$ 
     $s = 0$ 
    for  $i = 1$  to  $b$  do
        for  $j = 1$  to  $n$  do # Draw a bootstrap sample  $x^{(i)}$  of size  $n$ 
            Select a member of  $x$  at random and add it to  $x^{(i)}$ 
        Calculate  $\delta(x^{(i)})$  # how much better does algorithm A do than B on  $x^{(i)}$ 
         $s \leftarrow s + 1$  if  $\delta(x^{(i)}) > 2\delta(x)$ 
     $p\text{-value}(x) \approx \frac{s}{b}$  # on what % of the b samples did algorithm A beat expectations?
    return  $p\text{-value}(x)$  # if very few did, our observed  $\delta$  is probably not accidental

```

**Figure 4.9** A version of the paired bootstrap algorithm after Berg-Kirkpatrick et al. (2012).

## 4.10 Avoiding Harms in Classification

It is important to avoid harms that may result from classifiers, harms that exist both for naive Bayes classifiers and for the other classification algorithms we introduce in later chapters.

**representational  
harms**

One class of harms is **representational harms** (Crawford 2017, Blodgett et al. 2020), harms caused by a system that demeans a social group, for example by perpetuating negative stereotypes about them. For example Kiritchenko and Mohammad (2018) examined the performance of 200 sentiment analysis systems on pairs of sentences that were identical except for containing either a common African American first name (like *Shaniqua*) or a common European American first name (like *Stephanie*), chosen from the Caliskan et al. (2017) study discussed in Chapter 6. They found that most systems assigned lower sentiment and more negative emotion to sentences with African American names, reflecting and perpetuating stereotypes that associate African Americans with negative emotions (Popp et al., 2003).

**toxicity  
detection**

In other tasks classifiers may lead to both representational harms and other harms, such as censorship. For example the important text classification task of **toxicity detection** is the task of detecting hate speech, abuse, harassment, or other kinds of toxic language. While the goal of such classifiers is to help reduce societal harm, toxicity classifiers can themselves cause harms. For example, researchers have shown that some widely used toxicity classifiers incorrectly flag as being toxic sentences that are non-toxic but simply mention minority identities like women (Park et al., 2018), blind people (Hutchinson et al., 2020) or gay people (Dixon et al., 2018), or simply use linguistic features characteristic of varieties like African-American Vernacular English (Sap et al. 2019, Davidson et al. 2019). Such false positive errors, if employed by toxicity detection systems without human oversight, could lead to the censoring of discourse by or about these groups.

These model problems can be caused by biases or other problems in the training data; in general, machine learning systems replicate and even amplify the biases in their training data. But these problems can also be caused by the labels (for example caused by biases in the human labelers) by the resources used (like lexicons, or model components like pretrained embeddings), or even by model architecture (like what the model is trained to optimized). While the mitigation of these biases (for example by carefully considering the training data sources) is an important area of research, we currently don't have general solutions. For this reason it's impor-

**model card** tant, when introducing any NLP model, to study these kinds of factors and make them clear. One way to do this is by releasing a **model card** (Mitchell et al., 2019) for each version of a model, that documents a machine learning model with information like:

- training algorithms and parameters
- training data sources, motivation, and preprocessing
- evaluation data sources, motivation, and preprocessing
- intended use and users
- model performance across different demographic or other groups and environmental situations

## 4.11 Summary

This chapter introduced the **naive Bayes** model for **classification** and applied it to the **text categorization** task of **sentiment analysis**.

- Many language processing tasks can be viewed as tasks of **classification**.
- Text categorization, in which an entire text is assigned a class from a finite set, includes such tasks as **sentiment analysis**, **spam detection**, language identification, and authorship attribution.
- Sentiment analysis classifies a text as reflecting the positive or negative orientation (**sentiment**) that a writer expresses toward some object.
- Naive Bayes is a **generative** model that makes the bag of words assumption (position doesn't matter) and the conditional independence assumption (words are conditionally independent of each other given the class)
- Naive Bayes with binarized features seems to work better for many text classification tasks.
- Classifiers are evaluated based on **precision** and **recall**.
- Classifiers are trained using distinct training, dev, and test sets, including the use of **cross-validation** in the training set.
- Statistical significance tests should be used to determine whether we can be confident that one version of a classifier is better than another.
- Designers of classifiers should carefully consider harms that may be caused by the model, including its training data and other components, and report model characteristics in a **model card**.

## Bibliographical and Historical Notes

Multinomial naive Bayes text classification was proposed by Maron (1961) at the RAND Corporation for the task of assigning subject categories to journal abstracts. His model introduced most of the features of the modern form presented here, approximating the classification task with one-of categorization, and implementing add- $\delta$  smoothing and information-based feature selection.

The conditional independence assumptions of naive Bayes and the idea of Bayesian analysis of text seems to have arisen multiple times. The same year as Maron's paper, Minsky (1961) proposed a naive Bayes classifier for vision and other artificial intelligence problems, and Bayesian techniques were also applied to the text

classification task of authorship attribution by [Mosteller and Wallace \(1963\)](#). It had long been known that Alexander Hamilton, John Jay, and James Madison wrote the anonymously-published *Federalist* papers in 1787–1788 to persuade New York to ratify the United States Constitution. Yet although some of the 85 essays were clearly attributable to one author or another, the authorship of 12 were in dispute between Hamilton and Madison. [Mosteller and Wallace \(1963\)](#) trained a Bayesian probabilistic model of the writing of Hamilton and another model on the writings of Madison, then computed the maximum-likelihood author for each of the disputed essays. Naive Bayes was first applied to spam detection in [Heckerman et al. \(1998\)](#).

[Metsis et al. \(2006\)](#), [Pang et al. \(2002\)](#), and [Wang and Manning \(2012\)](#) show that using boolean attributes with multinomial naive Bayes works better than full counts. Binary multinomial naive Bayes is sometimes confused with another variant of naive Bayes that also use a binary representation of whether a term occurs in a document: **Multivariate Bernoulli naive Bayes**. The Bernoulli variant instead estimates  $P(w|c)$  as the fraction of documents that contain a term, and includes a probability for whether a term is *not* in a document. [McCallum and Nigam \(1998\)](#) and [Wang and Manning \(2012\)](#) show that the multivariate Bernoulli variant of naive Bayes doesn't work as well as the multinomial algorithm for sentiment or other text tasks.

There are a variety of sources covering the many kinds of text classification tasks. For sentiment analysis see [Pang and Lee \(2008\)](#), and [Liu and Zhang \(2012\)](#). [Stamatatos \(2009\)](#) surveys authorship attribute algorithms. On language identification see [Jauhainen et al. \(2018\)](#); [Jaech et al. \(2016\)](#) is an important early neural system. The task of newswire indexing was often used as a test case for text classification algorithms, based on the Reuters-21578 collection of newswire articles.

See [Manning et al. \(2008\)](#) and [Aggarwal and Zhai \(2012\)](#) on text classification; classification in general is covered in machine learning textbooks ([Hastie et al. 2001](#), [Witten and Frank 2005](#), [Bishop 2006](#), [Murphy 2012](#)).

Non-parametric methods for computing statistical significance were used first in NLP in the MUC competition ([Chinchor et al., 1993](#)), and even earlier in speech recognition ([Gillick and Cox 1989](#), [Bisani and Ney 2004](#)). Our description of the bootstrap draws on the description in [Berg-Kirkpatrick et al. \(2012\)](#). Recent work has focused on issues including multiple test sets and multiple metrics ([Søgaard et al. 2014](#), [Dror et al. 2017](#)).

Feature selection is a method of removing features that are unlikely to generalize well. Features are generally ranked by how informative they are about the classification decision. A very common metric, **information gain**, tells us how many bits of information the presence of the word gives us for guessing the class. Other feature selection metrics include  $\chi^2$ , pointwise mutual information, and GINI index; see [Yang and Pedersen \(1997\)](#) for a comparison and [Guyon and Elisseeff \(2003\)](#) for an introduction to feature selection.

information  
gain

## Exercises

- 4.1** Assume the following likelihoods for each word being part of a positive or negative movie review, and equal prior probabilities for each class.

	pos	neg
I	0.09	0.16
always	0.07	0.06
like	0.29	0.06
foreign	0.04	0.15
films	0.08	0.11

What class will Naive bayes assign to the sentence “I always like foreign films.”?

- 4.2** Given the following short movie reviews, each labeled with a genre, either comedy or action:

1. fun, couple, love, love **comedy**
2. fast, furious, shoot **action**
3. couple, fly, fast, fun, fun **comedy**
4. furious, shoot, shoot, fun **action**
5. fly, fast, shoot, love **action**

and a new document D:

fast, couple, shoot, fly

compute the most likely class for D. Assume a naive Bayes classifier and use add-1 smoothing for the likelihoods.

- 4.3** Train two models, multinomial naive Bayes and binarized naive Bayes, both with add-1 smoothing, on the following document counts for key sentiment words, with positive or negative class assigned as noted.

doc	“good”	“poor”	“great”	(class)
d1.	3	0	3	pos
d2.	0	1	2	pos
d3.	1	3	0	neg
d4.	1	5	2	neg
d5.	0	2	0	neg

Use both naive Bayes models to assign a class (pos or neg) to this sentence:

A good, good plot and great characters, but poor acting.

Recall from page 60 that with naive Bayes text classification, we simply ignore (throw out) any word that never occurred in the training document. (We don’t throw out words that appear in some classes but not others; that’s what add-one smoothing is for.) Do the two models agree or disagree?

CHAPTER

# 5

# Logistic Regression

*“And how do you know that these fine begonias are not of equal importance?”*

Hercule Poirot, in Agatha Christie’s *The Mysterious Affair at Styles*

Detective stories are as littered with clues as texts are with words. Yet for the poor reader it can be challenging to know how to weigh the author’s clues in order to make the crucial classification task: deciding whodunnit.

logistic regression

In this chapter we introduce an algorithm that is admirably suited for discovering the link between features or cues and some particular outcome: **logistic regression**. Indeed, logistic regression is one of the most important analytic tools in the social and natural sciences. In natural language processing, logistic regression is the baseline supervised machine learning algorithm for classification, and also has a very close relationship with neural networks. As we will see in Chapter 7, a neural network can be viewed as a series of logistic regression classifiers stacked on top of each other. Thus the classification and machine learning techniques introduced here will play an important role throughout the book.

Logistic regression can be used to classify an observation into one of two classes (like ‘positive sentiment’ and ‘negative sentiment’), or into one of many classes. Because the mathematics for the two-class case is simpler, we’ll describe this special case of logistic regression first in the next few sections, and then briefly summarize the use of **multinomial logistic regression** for more than two classes in Section 5.6.

We’ll introduce the mathematics of logistic regression in the next few sections. But let’s begin with some high-level issues.

**Generative and Discriminative Classifiers:** The most important difference between naive Bayes and logistic regression is that logistic regression is a **discriminative** classifier while naive Bayes is a **generative** classifier.

These are two very different frameworks for how to build a machine learning model. Consider a visual metaphor: imagine we’re trying to distinguish dog images from cat images. A generative model would have the goal of understanding what dogs look like and what cats look like. You might literally ask such a model to ‘generate’, i.e., draw, a dog. Given a test image, the system then asks whether it’s the cat model or the dog model that better fits (is less surprised by) the image, and chooses that as its label.



A discriminative model, by contrast, is only trying to learn to distinguish the classes (perhaps without learning much about them). So maybe all the dogs in the training data are wearing collars and the cats aren’t. If that one feature neatly separates the classes, the model is satisfied. If you ask such a model what it knows about cats all it can say is that they don’t wear collars.

More formally, recall that the naive Bayes assigns a class  $c$  to a document  $d$  not by directly computing  $P(c|d)$  but by computing a likelihood and a prior

$$\hat{c} = \underset{c \in C}{\operatorname{argmax}} \frac{\text{likelihood}}{\text{prior}} P(d|c) P(c) \quad (5.1)$$

**generative model**  
**discriminative model**

A **generative model** like naive Bayes makes use of this **likelihood** term, which expresses how to generate the features of a document *if we knew it was of class c*.

By contrast a **discriminative model** in this text categorization scenario attempts to **directly** compute  $P(c|d)$ . Perhaps it will learn to assign a high weight to document features that directly improve its ability to *discriminate* between possible classes, even if it couldn't generate an example of one of the classes.

**Components of a probabilistic machine learning classifier:** Like naive Bayes, logistic regression is a probabilistic classifier that makes use of supervised machine learning. Machine learning classifiers require a training corpus of  $m$  input/output pairs  $(x^{(i)}, y^{(i)})$ . (We'll use superscripts in parentheses to refer to individual instances in the training set—for sentiment classification each instance might be an individual document to be classified). A machine learning system for classification then has four components:

1. A **feature representation** of the input. For each input observation  $x^{(i)}$ , this will be a vector of features  $[x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n]$ . We will generally refer to feature  $i$  for input  $x^{(j)}$  as  $x_i^{(j)}$ , sometimes simplified as  $x_i$ , but we will also see the notation  $f_i$ ,  $f_i(x)$ , or, for multiclass classification,  $f_i(c, x)$ .
2. A classification function that computes  $\hat{y}$ , the estimated class, via  $p(y|x)$ . In the next section we will introduce the **sigmoid** and **softmax** tools for classification.
3. An objective function for learning, usually involving minimizing error on training examples. We will introduce the **cross-entropy loss function**.
4. An algorithm for optimizing the objective function. We introduce the **stochastic gradient descent** algorithm.

Logistic regression has two phases:

**training:** we train the system (specifically the weights  $w$  and  $b$ ) using stochastic gradient descent and the cross-entropy loss.

**test:** Given a test example  $x$  we compute  $p(y|x)$  and return the higher probability label  $y = 1$  or  $y = 0$ .

## 5.1 Classification: the sigmoid

The goal of binary logistic regression is to train a classifier that can make a binary decision about the class of a new input observation. Here we introduce the **sigmoid** classifier that will help us make this decision.

Consider a single input observation  $x$ , which we will represent by a vector of features  $[x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n]$  (we'll show sample features in the next subsection). The classifier output  $y$  can be 1 (meaning the observation is a member of the class) or 0 (the observation is not a member of the class). We want to know the probability  $P(y = 1|x)$  that this observation is a member of the class. So perhaps the decision is “positive

sentiment” versus “negative sentiment”, the features represent counts of words in a document,  $P(y = 1|x)$  is the probability that the document has positive sentiment, and  $P(y = 0|x)$  is the probability that the document has negative sentiment.

Logistic regression solves this task by learning, from a training set, a vector of **weights** and a **bias term**. Each weight  $w_i$  is a real number, and is associated with one of the input features  $x_i$ . The weight  $w_i$  represents how important that input feature is to the classification decision, and can be positive (providing evidence that the instance being classified belongs in the positive class) or negative (providing evidence that the instance being classified belongs in the negative class). Thus we might expect in a sentiment task the word *awesome* to have a high positive weight, and *abysmal* to have a very negative weight. The **bias term**, also called the **intercept**, is another real number that’s added to the weighted inputs.

**bias term**  
**intercept**

To make a decision on a test instance—after we’ve learned the weights in training—the classifier first multiplies each  $x_i$  by its weight  $w_i$ , sums up the weighted features, and adds the bias term  $b$ . The resulting single number  $z$  expresses the weighted sum of the evidence for the class.

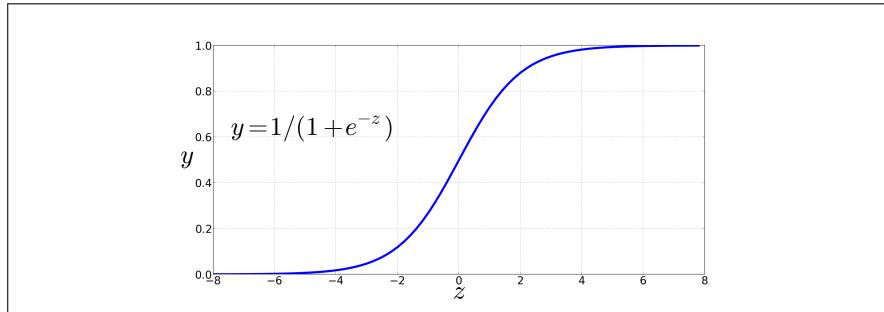
$$z = \left( \sum_{i=1}^n w_i x_i \right) + b \quad (5.2)$$

**dot product**

In the rest of the book we’ll represent such sums using the **dot product** notation from linear algebra. The dot product of two vectors  $a$  and  $b$ , written as  $a \cdot b$  is the sum of the products of the corresponding elements of each vector. Thus the following is an equivalent formation to Eq. 5.2:

$$z = w \cdot x + b \quad (5.3)$$

But note that nothing in Eq. 5.3 forces  $z$  to be a legal probability, that is, to lie between 0 and 1. In fact, since weights are real-valued, the output might even be negative;  $z$  ranges from  $-\infty$  to  $\infty$ .



**Figure 5.1** The sigmoid function  $y = \frac{1}{1+e^{-z}}$  takes a real value and maps it to the range  $[0, 1]$ . It is nearly linear around 0 but outlier values get squashed toward 0 or 1.

**sigmoid**  
**logistic**  
**function**

To create a probability, we’ll pass  $z$  through the **sigmoid** function,  $\sigma(z)$ . The sigmoid function (named because it looks like an  $s$ ) is also called the **logistic function**, and gives logistic regression its name. The sigmoid has the following equation, shown graphically in Fig. 5.1:

$$y = \sigma(z) = \frac{1}{1+e^{-z}} = \frac{1}{1+\exp(-z)} \quad (5.4)$$

(For the rest of the book, we’ll use the notation  $\exp(x)$  to mean  $e^x$ .) The sigmoid has a number of advantages; it takes a real-valued number and maps it into the range

$[0, 1]$ , which is just what we want for a probability. Because it is nearly linear around 0 but flattens toward the ends, it tends to squash outlier values toward 0 or 1. And it's differentiable, which as we'll see in Section 5.8 will be handy for learning.

We're almost there. If we apply the sigmoid to the sum of the weighted features, we get a number between 0 and 1. To make it a probability, we just need to make sure that the two cases,  $p(y = 1)$  and  $p(y = 0)$ , sum to 1. We can do this as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} P(y = 1) &= \sigma(w \cdot x + b) \\ &= \frac{1}{1 + \exp(-(w \cdot x + b))} \\ P(y = 0) &= 1 - \sigma(w \cdot x + b) \\ &= 1 - \frac{1}{1 + \exp(-(w \cdot x + b))} \\ &= \frac{\exp(-(w \cdot x + b))}{1 + \exp(-(w \cdot x + b))} \end{aligned} \tag{5.5}$$

The sigmoid function has the property

$$1 - \sigma(x) = \sigma(-x) \tag{5.6}$$

so we could also have expressed  $P(y = 0)$  as  $\sigma(-(w \cdot x + b))$ .

Now we have an algorithm that given an instance  $x$  computes the probability  $P(y = 1|x)$ . How do we make a decision? For a test instance  $x$ , we say yes if the probability  $P(y = 1|x)$  is more than .5, and no otherwise. We call .5 the **decision boundary**:

$$\hat{y} = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } P(y = 1|x) > 0.5 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

### 5.1.1 Example: sentiment classification

Let's have an example. Suppose we are doing binary sentiment classification on movie review text, and we would like to know whether to assign the sentiment class + or - to a review document  $doc$ . We'll represent each input observation by the 6 features  $x_1 \dots x_6$  of the input shown in the following table; Fig. 5.2 shows the features in a sample mini test document.

Var	Definition	Value in Fig. 5.2
$x_1$	$\text{count}(\text{positive lexicon}) \in doc$	3
$x_2$	$\text{count}(\text{negative lexicon}) \in doc$	2
$x_3$	$\begin{cases} 1 & \text{if "no" } \in doc \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$	1
$x_4$	$\text{count}(1\text{st and 2nd pronouns } \in doc)$	3
$x_5$	$\begin{cases} 1 & \text{if "?" } \in doc \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$	0
$x_6$	$\log(\text{word count of } doc)$	$\ln(66) = 4.19$

Let's assume for the moment that we've already learned a real-valued weight for each of these features, and that the 6 weights corresponding to the 6 features are  $[2.5, -5.0, -1.2, 0.5, 2.0, 0.7]$ , while  $b = 0.1$ . (We'll discuss in the next section how

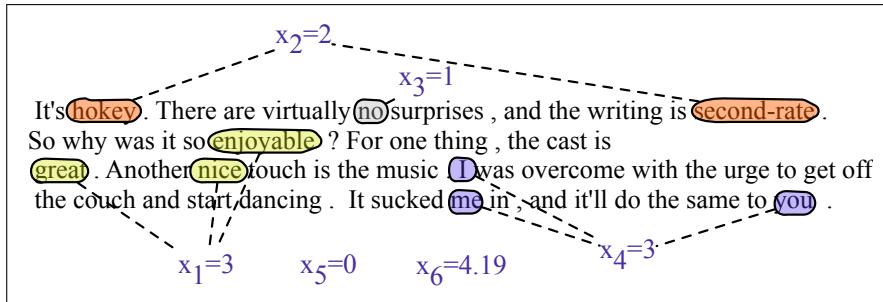


Figure 5.2 A sample mini test document showing the extracted features in the vector  $x$ .

the weights are learned.) The weight  $w_1$ , for example indicates how important a feature the number of positive lexicon words (*great*, *nice*, *enjoyable*, etc.) is to a positive sentiment decision, while  $w_2$  tells us the importance of negative lexicon words. Note that  $w_1 = 2.5$  is positive, while  $w_2 = -5.0$ , meaning that negative words are negatively associated with a positive sentiment decision, and are about twice as important as positive words.

Given these 6 features and the input review  $x$ ,  $P(+|x)$  and  $P(-|x)$  can be computed using Eq. 5.5:

$$\begin{aligned} p(+|x) = P(Y = 1|x) &= \sigma(w \cdot x + b) \\ &= \sigma([2.5, -5.0, -1.2, 0.5, 2.0, 0.7] \cdot [3, 2, 1, 3, 0, 4.19] + 0.1) \\ &= \sigma(.833) \\ &= 0.70 \end{aligned} \tag{5.7}$$

$$\begin{aligned} p(-|x) = P(Y = 0|x) &= 1 - \sigma(w \cdot x + b) \\ &= 0.30 \end{aligned}$$

Logistic regression is commonly applied to all sorts of NLP tasks, and any property of the input can be a feature. Consider the task of **period disambiguation**: deciding if a period is the end of a sentence or part of a word, by classifying each period into one of two classes EOS (end-of-sentence) and not-EOS. We might use features like  $x_1$  below expressing that the current word is lower case and the class is EOS (perhaps with a positive weight), or that the current word is in our abbreviations dictionary (“Prof.”) and the class is EOS (perhaps with a negative weight). A feature can also express a quite complex combination of properties. For example a period following an upper case word is likely to be an EOS, but if the word itself is *St.* and the previous word is capitalized, then the period is likely part of a shortening of the word *street*.

$$\begin{aligned} x_1 &= \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } \text{“Case}(w_i) = \text{Lower”} \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \\ x_2 &= \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } w_i \in \text{AcronymDict} \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \\ x_3 &= \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } w_i = \text{St.} \& \text{Case}(w_{i-1}) = \text{Cap”} \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \end{aligned}$$

**Designing features:** Features are generally designed by examining the training set with an eye to linguistic intuitions and the linguistic literature on the domain. A careful error analysis on the training set or devset of an early version of a system often provides insights into features.

**feature interactions****feature templates****loss**

For some tasks it is especially helpful to build complex features that are combinations of more primitive features. We saw such a feature for period disambiguation above, where a period on the word *St.* was less likely to be the end of the sentence if the previous word was capitalized. For logistic regression and naive Bayes these combination features or **feature interactions** have to be designed by hand.

For many tasks (especially when feature values can reference specific words) we'll need large numbers of features. Often these are created automatically via **feature templates**, abstract specifications of features. For example a bigram template for period disambiguation might create a feature for every pair of words that occurs before a period in the training set. Thus the feature space is sparse, since we only have to create a feature if that n-gram exists in that position in the training set. The feature is generally created as a hash from the string descriptions. A user description of a feature as, "bigram(American breakfast)" is hashed into a unique integer  $i$  that becomes the feature number  $f_i$ .

In order to avoid the extensive human effort of feature design, recent research in NLP has focused on **representation learning**: ways to learn features automatically in an unsupervised way from the input. We'll introduce methods for representation learning in Chapter 6 and Chapter 7.

**Choosing a classifier** Logistic regression has a number of advantages over naive Bayes. Naive Bayes has overly strong conditional independence assumptions. Consider two features which are strongly correlated; in fact, imagine that we just add the same feature  $f_1$  twice. Naive Bayes will treat both copies of  $f_1$  as if they were separate, multiplying them both in, overestimating the evidence. By contrast, logistic regression is much more robust to correlated features; if two features  $f_1$  and  $f_2$  are perfectly correlated, regression will simply assign part of the weight to  $w_1$  and part to  $w_2$ . Thus when there are many correlated features, logistic regression will assign a more accurate probability than naive Bayes. So logistic regression generally works better on larger documents or datasets and is a common default.

Despite the less accurate probabilities, naive Bayes still often makes the correct classification decision. Furthermore, naive Bayes can work extremely well (sometimes even better than logistic regression) on very small datasets ([Ng and Jordan, 2002](#)) or short documents ([Wang and Manning, 2012](#)). Furthermore, naive Bayes is easy to implement and very fast to train (there's no optimization step). So it's still a reasonable approach to use in some situations.

## 5.2 Learning in Logistic Regression

How are the parameters of the model, the weights  $w$  and bias  $b$ , learned? Logistic regression is an instance of supervised classification in which we know the correct label  $y$  (either 0 or 1) for each observation  $x$ . What the system produces via Eq. 5.5 is  $\hat{y}$ , the system's estimate of the true  $y$ . We want to learn parameters (meaning  $w$  and  $b$ ) that make  $\hat{y}$  for each training observation as close as possible to the true  $y$ .

This requires two components that we foreshadowed in the introduction to the chapter. The first is a metric for how close the current label ( $\hat{y}$ ) is to the true gold label  $y$ . Rather than measure similarity, we usually talk about the opposite of this: the *distance* between the system output and the gold output, and we call this distance the **loss function** or the **cost function**. In the next section we'll introduce the loss function that is commonly used for logistic regression and also for neural networks,

the **cross-entropy loss**.

The second thing we need is an optimization algorithm for iteratively updating the weights so as to minimize this loss function. The standard algorithm for this is **gradient descent**; we'll introduce the **stochastic gradient descent** algorithm in the following section.

## 5.3 The cross-entropy loss function

We need a loss function that expresses, for an observation  $x$ , how close the classifier output ( $\hat{y} = \sigma(w \cdot x + b)$ ) is to the correct output ( $y$ , which is 0 or 1). We'll call this:

$$L(\hat{y}, y) = \text{How much } \hat{y} \text{ differs from the true } y \quad (5.8)$$

**cross-entropy loss**

We do this via a loss function that prefers the correct class labels of the training examples to be *more likely*. This is called **conditional maximum likelihood estimation**: we choose the parameters  $w, b$  that **maximize the log probability of the true y labels in the training data** given the observations  $x$ . The resulting loss function is the negative log likelihood loss, generally called the **cross-entropy loss**.

Let's derive this loss function, applied to a single observation  $x$ . We'd like to learn weights that maximize the probability of the correct label  $p(y|x)$ . Since there are only two discrete outcomes (1 or 0), this is a Bernoulli distribution, and we can express the probability  $p(y|x)$  that our classifier produces for one observation as the following (keeping in mind that if  $y=1$ , Eq. 5.9 simplifies to  $\hat{y}$ ; if  $y=0$ , Eq. 5.9 simplifies to  $1 - \hat{y}$ ):

$$p(y|x) = \hat{y}^y (1 - \hat{y})^{1-y} \quad (5.9)$$

Now we take the log of both sides. This will turn out to be handy mathematically, and doesn't hurt us; whatever values maximize a probability will also maximize the log of the probability:

$$\begin{aligned} \log p(y|x) &= \log [\hat{y}^y (1 - \hat{y})^{1-y}] \\ &= y \log \hat{y} + (1 - y) \log (1 - \hat{y}) \end{aligned} \quad (5.10)$$

Eq. 5.10 describes a log likelihood that should be maximized. In order to turn this into loss function (something that we need to minimize), we'll just flip the sign on Eq. 5.10. The result is the cross-entropy loss  $L_{\text{CE}}$ :

$$L_{\text{CE}}(\hat{y}, y) = -\log p(y|x) = -[y \log \hat{y} + (1 - y) \log (1 - \hat{y})] \quad (5.11)$$

Finally, we can plug in the definition of  $\hat{y} = \sigma(w \cdot x + b)$ :

$$L_{\text{CE}}(\hat{y}, y) = -[y \log \sigma(w \cdot x + b) + (1 - y) \log (1 - \sigma(w \cdot x + b))] \quad (5.12)$$

Let's see if this loss function does the right thing for our example from Fig. 5.2. We want the loss to be smaller if the model's estimate is close to correct, and bigger if the model is confused. So first let's suppose the correct gold label for the sentiment example in Fig. 5.2 is positive, i.e.,  $y = 1$ . In this case our model is doing well, since from Eq. 5.7 it indeed gave the example a higher probability of being positive (.69) than negative (.31). If we plug  $\sigma(w \cdot x + b) = .69$  and  $y = 1$  into Eq. 5.12, the right

side of the equation drops out, leading to the following loss (we'll use log to mean natural log when the base is not specified):

$$\begin{aligned} L_{\text{CE}}(\hat{y}, y) &= -[y \log \sigma(w \cdot x + b) + (1 - y) \log(1 - \sigma(w \cdot x + b))] \\ &= -[\log \sigma(w \cdot x + b)] \\ &= -\log(.69) \\ &= .37 \end{aligned}$$

By contrast, let's pretend instead that the example in Fig. 5.2 was actually negative, i.e.,  $y = 0$  (perhaps the reviewer went on to say “But bottom line, the movie is terrible! I beg you not to see it!”). In this case our model is confused and we'd want the loss to be higher. Now if we plug  $y = 0$  and  $1 - \sigma(w \cdot x + b) = .31$  from Eq. 5.7 into Eq. 5.12, the left side of the equation drops out:

$$\begin{aligned} L_{\text{CE}}(\hat{y}, y) &= -[y \log \sigma(w \cdot x + b) + (1 - y) \log(1 - \sigma(w \cdot x + b))] \\ &= -[\log(1 - \sigma(w \cdot x + b))] \\ &= -\log(.31) \\ &= 1.17 \end{aligned}$$

Sure enough, the loss for the first classifier (.37) is less than the loss for the second classifier (1.17).

Why does minimizing this negative log probability do what we want? A perfect classifier would assign probability 1 to the correct outcome ( $y=1$  or  $y=0$ ) and probability 0 to the incorrect outcome. That means the higher  $\hat{y}$  (the closer it is to 1), the better the classifier; the lower  $\hat{y}$  (the closer it is to 0), the worse the classifier. The negative log of this probability is a convenient loss metric since it goes from 0 (negative log of 1, no loss) to infinity (negative log of 0, infinite loss). This loss function also ensures that as the probability of the correct answer is maximized, the probability of the incorrect answer is minimized; since the two sum to one, any increase in the probability of the correct answer is coming at the expense of the incorrect answer. It's called the cross-entropy loss, because Eq. 5.10 is also the formula for the **cross-entropy** between the true probability distribution  $y$  and our estimated distribution  $\hat{y}$ .

Now we know what we want to minimize; in the next section, we'll see how to find the minimum.

## 5.4 Gradient Descent

Our goal with gradient descent is to find the optimal weights: minimize the loss function we've defined for the model. In Eq. 5.13 below, we'll explicitly represent the fact that the loss function  $L$  is parameterized by the weights, which we'll refer to in machine learning in general as  $\theta$  (in the case of logistic regression  $\theta = w, b$ ). So the goal is to find the set of weights which minimizes the loss function, averaged over all examples:

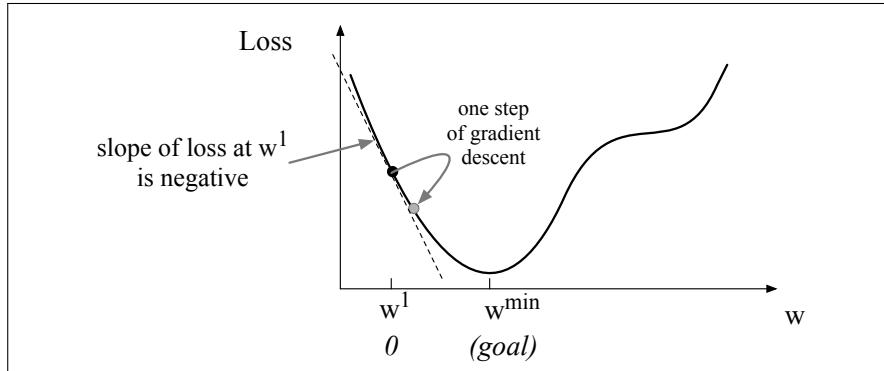
$$\hat{\theta} = \underset{\theta}{\operatorname{argmin}} \frac{1}{m} \sum_{i=1}^m L_{\text{CE}}(f(x^{(i)}; \theta), y^{(i)}) \quad (5.13)$$

How shall we find the minimum of this (or any) loss function? Gradient descent is a method that finds a minimum of a function by figuring out in which direction (in the space of the parameters  $\theta$ ) the function's slope is rising the most steeply, and moving in the opposite direction. The intuition is that if you are hiking in a canyon and trying to descend most quickly down to the river at the bottom, you might look around yourself 360 degrees, find the direction where the ground is sloping the steepest, and walk downhill in that direction.

**convex** For logistic regression, this loss function is conveniently **convex**. A convex function has just one minimum; there are no local minima to get stuck in, so gradient descent starting from any point is guaranteed to find the minimum. (By contrast, the loss for multi-layer neural networks is non-convex, and gradient descent may get stuck in local minima for neural network training and never find the global optimum.)

Although the algorithm (and the concept of gradient) are designed for direction *vectors*, let's first consider a visualization of the case where the parameter of our system is just a single scalar  $w$ , shown in Fig. 5.3.

Given a random initialization of  $w$  at some value  $w^1$ , and assuming the loss function  $L$  happened to have the shape in Fig. 5.3, we need the algorithm to tell us whether at the next iteration we should move left (making  $w^2$  smaller than  $w^1$ ) or right (making  $w^2$  bigger than  $w^1$ ) to reach the minimum.



**Figure 5.3** The first step in iteratively finding the minimum of this loss function, by moving  $w$  in the reverse direction from the slope of the function. Since the slope is negative, we need to move  $w$  in a positive direction, to the right. Here superscripts are used for learning steps, so  $w^1$  means the initial value of  $w$  (which is 0),  $w^2$  at the second step, and so on.

#### gradient

The gradient descent algorithm answers this question by finding the **gradient** of the loss function at the current point and moving in the opposite direction. The gradient of a function of many variables is a vector pointing in the direction of the greatest increase in a function. The gradient is a multi-variable generalization of the slope, so for a function of one variable like the one in Fig. 5.3, we can informally think of the gradient as the slope. The dotted line in Fig. 5.3 shows the slope of this hypothetical loss function at point  $w = w^1$ . You can see that the slope of this dotted line is negative. Thus to find the minimum, gradient descent tells us to go in the opposite direction: moving  $w$  in a positive direction.

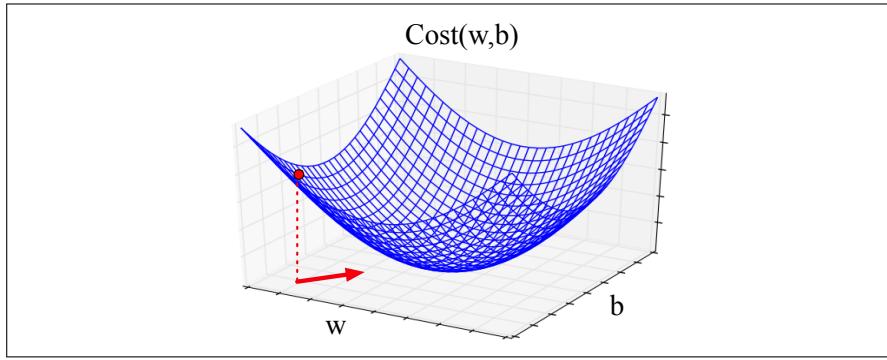
#### learning rate

The magnitude of the amount to move in gradient descent is the value of the slope  $\frac{d}{dw} f(x; w)$  weighted by a **learning rate**  $\eta$ . A higher (faster) learning rate means that we should move  $w$  more on each step. The change we make in our parameter is the

learning rate times the gradient (or the slope, in our single-variable example):

$$w^{t+1} = w^t - \eta \frac{d}{dw} f(x; w) \quad (5.14)$$

Now let's extend the intuition from a function of one scalar variable  $w$  to many variables, because we don't just want to move left or right, we want to know where in the  $N$ -dimensional space (of the  $N$  parameters that make up  $\theta$ ) we should move. The **gradient** is just such a vector; it expresses the directional components of the sharpest slope along each of those  $N$  dimensions. If we're just imagining two weight dimensions (say for one weight  $w$  and one bias  $b$ ), the gradient might be a vector with two orthogonal components, each of which tells us how much the ground slopes in the  $w$  dimension and in the  $b$  dimension. Fig. 5.4 shows a visualization of the value of a 2-dimensional gradient vector taken at the red point.



**Figure 5.4** Visualization of the gradient vector at the red point in two dimensions  $w$  and  $b$ , showing the gradient as a red arrow in the  $x$ - $y$  plane.

In an actual logistic regression, the parameter vector  $w$  is much longer than 1 or 2, since the input feature vector  $x$  can be quite long, and we need a weight  $w_i$  for each  $x_i$ . For each dimension/variable  $w_i$  in  $w$  (plus the bias  $b$ ), the gradient will have a component that tells us the slope with respect to that variable. Essentially we're asking: "How much would a small change in that variable  $w_i$  influence the total loss function  $L$ ?"

In each dimension  $w_i$ , we express the slope as a partial derivative  $\frac{\partial}{\partial w_i}$  of the loss function. The gradient is then defined as a vector of these partials. We'll represent  $\hat{y}$  as  $f(x; \theta)$  to make the dependence on  $\theta$  more obvious:

$$\nabla_{\theta} L(f(x; \theta), y) = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{\partial}{\partial w_1} L(f(x; \theta), y) \\ \frac{\partial}{\partial w_2} L(f(x; \theta), y) \\ \vdots \\ \frac{\partial}{\partial w_n} L(f(x; \theta), y) \end{bmatrix} \quad (5.15)$$

The final equation for updating  $\theta$  based on the gradient is thus

$$\theta_{t+1} = \theta_t - \eta \nabla L(f(x; \theta), y) \quad (5.16)$$

### 5.4.1 The Gradient for Logistic Regression

In order to update  $\theta$ , we need a definition for the gradient  $\nabla L(f(x; \theta), y)$ . Recall that for logistic regression, the cross-entropy loss function is:

$$L_{\text{CE}}(\hat{y}, y) = -[y \log \sigma(w \cdot x + b) + (1 - y) \log(1 - \sigma(w \cdot x + b))] \quad (5.17)$$

It turns out that the derivative of this function for one observation vector  $x$  is Eq. 5.18 (the interested reader can see Section 5.8 for the derivation of this equation):

$$\frac{\partial L_{\text{CE}}(\hat{y}, y)}{\partial w_j} = [\sigma(w \cdot x + b) - y]x_j \quad (5.18)$$

Note in Eq. 5.18 that the gradient with respect to a single weight  $w_j$  represents a very intuitive value: the difference between the true  $y$  and our estimated  $\hat{y} = \sigma(w \cdot x + b)$  for that observation, multiplied by the corresponding input value  $x_j$ .

### 5.4.2 The Stochastic Gradient Descent Algorithm

Stochastic gradient descent is an online algorithm that minimizes the loss function by computing its gradient after each training example, and nudging  $\theta$  in the right direction (the opposite direction of the gradient). Fig. 5.5 shows the algorithm.

```

function STOCHASTIC GRADIENT DESCENT( $L()$ ,  $f()$ ,  $x$ ,  $y$ ) returns  $\theta$ 
    # where: L is the loss function
    # f is a function parameterized by  $\theta$ 
    # x is the set of training inputs  $x^{(1)}$ ,  $x^{(2)}$ , ...,  $x^{(m)}$ 
    # y is the set of training outputs (labels)  $y^{(1)}$ ,  $y^{(2)}$ , ...,  $y^{(m)}$ 

     $\theta \leftarrow 0$ 
    repeat til done # see caption
        For each training tuple  $(x^{(i)}, y^{(i)})$  (in random order)
            1. Optional (for reporting): # How are we doing on this tuple?
                Compute  $\hat{y}^{(i)} = f(x^{(i)}; \theta)$  # What is our estimated output  $\hat{y}$ ?
                Compute the loss  $L(\hat{y}^{(i)}, y^{(i)})$  # How far off is  $\hat{y}^{(i)}$  from the true output  $y^{(i)}$ ?
            2.  $g \leftarrow \nabla_{\theta} L(f(x^{(i)}; \theta), y^{(i)})$  # How should we move  $\theta$  to maximize loss?
            3.  $\theta \leftarrow \theta - \eta g$  # Go the other way instead
        return  $\theta$ 

```

**Figure 5.5** The stochastic gradient descent algorithm. Step 1 (computing the loss) is used to report how well we are doing on the current tuple. The algorithm can terminate when it converges (or when the gradient norm  $< \epsilon$ ), or when progress halts (for example when the loss starts going up on a held-out set).

#### hyperparameter

The learning rate  $\eta$  is a **hyperparameter** that must be adjusted. If it's too high, the learner will take steps that are too large, overshooting the minimum of the loss function. If it's too low, the learner will take steps that are too small, and take too long to get to the minimum. It is common to start with a higher learning rate and then slowly decrease it, so that it is a function of the iteration  $k$  of training; the notation  $\eta_k$  can be used to mean the value of the learning rate at iteration  $k$ .

We'll discuss hyperparameters in more detail in Chapter 7, but briefly they are a special kind of parameter for any machine learning model. Unlike regular parameters of a model (weights like  $w$  and  $b$ ), which are learned by the algorithm from the training set, hyperparameters are special parameters chosen by the algorithm designer that affect how the algorithm works.

### 5.4.3 Working through an example

Let's walk though a single step of the gradient descent algorithm. We'll use a simplified version of the example in Fig. 5.2 as it sees a single observation  $x$ , whose correct value is  $y = 1$  (this is a positive review), and with only two features:

$$\begin{aligned}x_1 &= 3 \quad (\text{count of positive lexicon words}) \\x_2 &= 2 \quad (\text{count of negative lexicon words})\end{aligned}$$

Let's assume the initial weights and bias in  $\theta^0$  are all set to 0, and the initial learning rate  $\eta$  is 0.1:

$$\begin{aligned}w_1 = w_2 = b &= 0 \\ \eta &= 0.1\end{aligned}$$

The single update step requires that we compute the gradient, multiplied by the learning rate

$$\theta^{t+1} = \theta^t - \eta \nabla_{\theta} L(f(x^{(i)}; \theta), y^{(i)})$$

In our mini example there are three parameters, so the gradient vector has 3 dimensions, for  $w_1$ ,  $w_2$ , and  $b$ . We can compute the first gradient as follows:

$$\nabla_{w,b} = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{\partial L_{CE}(\hat{y}, y)}{\partial w_1} \\ \frac{\partial L_{CE}(\hat{y}, y)}{\partial w_2} \\ \frac{\partial L_{CE}(\hat{y}, y)}{\partial b} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} (\sigma(w \cdot x + b) - y)x_1 \\ (\sigma(w \cdot x + b) - y)x_2 \\ \sigma(w \cdot x + b) - y \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} (\sigma(0) - 1)x_1 \\ (\sigma(0) - 1)x_2 \\ \sigma(0) - 1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -0.5x_1 \\ -0.5x_2 \\ -0.5 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -1.5 \\ -1.0 \\ -0.5 \end{bmatrix}$$

Now that we have a gradient, we compute the new parameter vector  $\theta^1$  by moving  $\theta^0$  in the opposite direction from the gradient:

$$\theta^1 = \begin{bmatrix} w_1 \\ w_2 \\ b \end{bmatrix} - \eta \begin{bmatrix} -1.5 \\ -1.0 \\ -0.5 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} .15 \\ .1 \\ .05 \end{bmatrix}$$

So after one step of gradient descent, the weights have shifted to be:  $w_1 = .15$ ,  $w_2 = .1$ , and  $b = .05$ .

Note that this observation  $x$  happened to be a positive example. We would expect that after seeing more negative examples with high counts of negative words, that the weight  $w_2$  would shift to have a negative value.

### 5.4.4 Mini-batch training

Stochastic gradient descent is called stochastic because it chooses a single random example at a time, moving the weights so as to improve performance on that single example. That can result in very choppy movements, so it's common to compute the gradient over batches of training instances rather than a single instance.

For example in **batch training** we compute the gradient over the entire dataset. By seeing so many examples, batch training offers a superb estimate of which direction to move the weights, at the cost of spending a lot of time processing every single example in the training set to compute this perfect direction.

A compromise is **mini-batch** training: we train on a group of  $m$  examples (perhaps 512, or 1024) that is less than the whole dataset. (If  $m$  is the size of the dataset,

**batch training**

**mini-batch**

then we are doing **batch** gradient descent; if  $m = 1$ , we are back to doing stochastic gradient descent). Mini-batch training also has the advantage of computational efficiency. The mini-batches can easily be vectorized, choosing the size of the mini-batch based on the computational resources. This allows us to process all the examples in one mini-batch in parallel and then accumulate the loss, something that's not possible with individual or batch training.

We just need to define mini-batch versions of the cross-entropy loss function we defined in Section 5.3 and the gradient in Section 5.4.1. Let's extend the cross-entropy loss for one example from Eq. 5.11 to mini-batches of size  $m$ . We'll continue to use the notation that  $x^{(i)}$  and  $y^{(i)}$  mean the  $i$ th training features and training label, respectively. We make the assumption that the training examples are independent:

$$\begin{aligned}\log p(\text{training labels}) &= \log \prod_{i=1}^m p(y^{(i)}|x^{(i)}) \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^m \log p(y^{(i)}|x^{(i)}) \\ &= -\sum_{i=1}^m L_{\text{CE}}(\hat{y}^{(i)}, y^{(i)})\end{aligned}\quad (5.19)$$

Now the cost function for the mini-batch of  $m$  examples is the average loss for each example:

$$\begin{aligned}Cost(\hat{y}, y) &= \frac{1}{m} \sum_{i=1}^m L_{\text{CE}}(\hat{y}^{(i)}, y^{(i)}) \\ &= -\frac{1}{m} \sum_{i=1}^m y^{(i)} \log \sigma(w \cdot x^{(i)} + b) + (1 - y^{(i)}) \log (1 - \sigma(w \cdot x^{(i)} + b))\end{aligned}\quad (5.20)$$

The mini-batch gradient is the average of the individual gradients from Eq. 5.18:

$$\frac{\partial Cost(\hat{y}, y)}{\partial w_j} = \frac{1}{m} \sum_{i=1}^m [\sigma(w \cdot x^{(i)} + b) - y^{(i)}] x_j^{(i)}\quad (5.21)$$

## 5.5 Regularization

*Numquam ponenda est pluralitas sine necessitate*  
'Plurality should never be proposed unless needed'  
William of Occam

There is a problem with learning weights that make the model perfectly match the training data. If a feature is perfectly predictive of the outcome because it happens to only occur in one class, it will be assigned a very high weight. The weights for features will attempt to perfectly fit details of the training set, in fact too perfectly, modeling noisy factors that just accidentally correlate with the class. This problem is called **overfitting**. A good model should be able to **generalize** well from the training

overfitting  
generalize

regularization data to the unseen test set, but a model that overfits will have poor generalization.

To avoid overfitting, a new **regularization** term  $R(\theta)$  is added to the objective function in Eq. 5.13, resulting in the following objective for a batch of  $m$  examples (slightly rewritten from Eq. 5.13 to be maximizing log probability rather than minimizing loss, and removing the  $\frac{1}{m}$  term which doesn't affect the argmax):

$$\hat{\theta} = \operatorname{argmax}_{\theta} \sum_{i=1}^m \log P(y^{(i)}|x^{(i)}) - \alpha R(\theta) \quad (5.22)$$

L2 regularization

The new regularization term  $R(\theta)$  is used to penalize large weights. Thus a setting of the weights that matches the training data perfectly—but uses many weights with high values to do so—will be penalized more than a setting that matches the data a little less well, but does so using smaller weights. There are two common ways to compute this regularization term  $R(\theta)$ . **L2 regularization** is a quadratic function of the weight values, named because it uses the (square of the) L2 norm of the weight values. The L2 norm,  $\|\theta\|_2$ , is the same as the **Euclidean distance** of the vector  $\theta$  from the origin. If  $\theta$  consists of  $n$  weights, then:

$$R(\theta) = \|\theta\|_2^2 = \sum_{j=1}^n \theta_j^2 \quad (5.23)$$

The L2 regularized objective function becomes:

$$\hat{\theta} = \operatorname{argmax}_{\theta} \left[ \sum_{i=1}^m \log P(y^{(i)}|x^{(i)}) \right] - \alpha \sum_{j=1}^n \theta_j^2 \quad (5.24)$$

L1 regularization

**L1 regularization** is a linear function of the weight values, named after the L1 norm  $\|W\|_1$ , the sum of the absolute values of the weights, or **Manhattan distance** (the Manhattan distance is the distance you'd have to walk between two points in a city with a street grid like New York):

$$R(\theta) = \|\theta\|_1 = \sum_{i=1}^n |\theta_i| \quad (5.25)$$

The L1 regularized objective function becomes:

$$\hat{\theta} = \operatorname{argmax}_{\theta} \left[ \sum_{i=1}^m \log P(y^{(i)}|x^{(i)}) \right] - \alpha \sum_{j=1}^n |\theta_j| \quad (5.26)$$

lasso  
ridge

These kinds of regularization come from statistics, where L1 regularization is called **lasso regression** (Tibshirani, 1996) and L2 regularization is called **ridge regression**, and both are commonly used in language processing. L2 regularization is easier to optimize because of its simple derivative (the derivative of  $\theta^2$  is just  $2\theta$ ), while L1 regularization is more complex (the derivative of  $|\theta|$  is non-continuous at zero). But where L2 prefers weight vectors with many small weights, L1 prefers sparse solutions with some larger weights but many more weights set to zero. Thus L1 regularization leads to much sparser weight vectors, that is, far fewer features.

Both L1 and L2 regularization have Bayesian interpretations as constraints on the prior of how weights should look. L1 regularization can be viewed as a Laplace prior on the weights. L2 regularization corresponds to assuming that weights are

distributed according to a Gaussian distribution with mean  $\mu = 0$ . In a Gaussian or normal distribution, the further away a value is from the mean, the lower its probability (scaled by the variance  $\sigma$ ). By using a Gaussian prior on the weights, we are saying that weights prefer to have the value 0. A Gaussian for a weight  $\theta_j$  is

$$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi\sigma_j^2}} \exp\left(-\frac{(\theta_j - \mu_j)^2}{2\sigma_j^2}\right) \quad (5.27)$$

If we multiply each weight by a Gaussian prior on the weight, we are thus maximizing the following constraint:

$$\hat{\theta} = \operatorname{argmax}_{\theta} \prod_{i=1}^M P(y^{(i)}|x^{(i)}) \times \prod_{j=1}^n \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi\sigma_j^2}} \exp\left(-\frac{(\theta_j - \mu_j)^2}{2\sigma_j^2}\right) \quad (5.28)$$

which in log space, with  $\mu = 0$ , and assuming  $2\sigma^2 = 1$ , corresponds to

$$\hat{\theta} = \operatorname{argmax}_{\theta} \sum_{i=1}^m \log P(y^{(i)}|x^{(i)}) - \alpha \sum_{j=1}^n \theta_j^2 \quad (5.29)$$

which is in the same form as Eq. 5.24.

## 5.6 Multinomial logistic regression

Sometimes we need more than two classes. Perhaps we might want to do 3-way sentiment classification (positive, negative, or neutral). Or we could be assigning some of the labels we will introduce in Chapter 8, like the part of speech of a word (choosing from 10, 30, or even 50 different parts of speech), or the named entity type of a phrase (choosing from tags like person, location, organization).

**multinomial logistic regression**

In such cases we use **multinomial logistic regression**, also called **softmax regression** (or, historically, the **maxent classifier**). In multinomial logistic regression the target  $y$  is a variable that ranges over more than two classes; we want to know the probability of  $y$  being in each potential class  $c \in C$ ,  $p(y = c|x)$ .

**softmax**

The multinomial logistic classifier uses a generalization of the sigmoid, called the **softmax** function, to compute the probability  $p(y = c|x)$ . The softmax function takes a vector  $z = [z_1, z_2, \dots, z_k]$  of  $k$  arbitrary values and maps them to a probability distribution, with each value in the range (0,1), and all the values summing to 1. Like the sigmoid, it is an exponential function.

For a vector  $z$  of dimensionality  $k$ , the softmax is defined as:

$$\text{softmax}(z_i) = \frac{\exp(z_i)}{\sum_{j=1}^k \exp(z_j)} \quad 1 \leq i \leq k \quad (5.30)$$

The softmax of an input vector  $z = [z_1, z_2, \dots, z_k]$  is thus a vector itself:

$$\text{softmax}(z) = \left[ \frac{\exp(z_1)}{\sum_{i=1}^k \exp(z_i)}, \frac{\exp(z_2)}{\sum_{i=1}^k \exp(z_i)}, \dots, \frac{\exp(z_k)}{\sum_{i=1}^k \exp(z_i)} \right] \quad (5.31)$$

The denominator  $\sum_{i=1}^k \exp(z_i)$  is used to normalize all the values into probabilities. Thus for example given a vector:

$$z = [0.6, 1.1, -1.5, 1.2, 3.2, -1.1]$$

the resulting (rounded) softmax( $z$ ) is

$$[0.055, 0.090, 0.006, 0.099, 0.74, 0.010]$$

Again like the sigmoid, the input to the softmax will be the dot product between a weight vector  $w$  and an input vector  $x$  (plus a bias). But now we'll need separate weight vectors (and bias) for each of the  $K$  classes.

$$p(y=c|x) = \frac{\exp(w_c \cdot x + b_c)}{\sum_{j=1}^k \exp(w_j \cdot x + b_j)} \quad (5.32)$$

Like the sigmoid, the softmax has the property of squashing values toward 0 or 1. Thus if one of the inputs is larger than the others, it will tend to push its probability toward 1, and suppress the probabilities of the smaller inputs.

### 5.6.1 Features in Multinomial Logistic Regression

Features in multinomial logistic regression function similarly to binary logistic regression, with one difference that we'll need separate weight vectors (and biases) for each of the  $K$  classes. Recall our binary exclamation point feature  $x_5$  from page 79:

$$x_5 = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if “!”} \in \text{doc} \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

In binary classification a positive weight  $w_5$  on a feature influences the classifier toward  $y = 1$  (positive sentiment) and a negative weight influences it toward  $y = 0$  (negative sentiment) with the absolute value indicating how important the feature is. For multinomial logistic regression, by contrast, with separate weights for each class, a feature can be evidence for or against each individual class.

In 3-way multiclass sentiment classification, for example, we must assign each document one of the 3 classes +, -, or 0 (neutral). Now a feature related to exclamation marks might have a negative weight for 0 documents, and a positive weight for + or - documents:

Feature	Definition	$w_{5,+}$	$w_{5,-}$	$w_{5,0}$
$f_5(x)$	$\begin{cases} 1 & \text{if “!”} \in \text{doc} \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$	3.5	3.1	-5.3

### 5.6.2 Learning in Multinomial Logistic Regression

The loss function for multinomial logistic regression generalizes the loss function for binary logistic regression from 2 to  $K$  classes. Recall that that the cross-entropy loss for binary logistic regression (repeated from Eq. 5.11) is:

$$L_{\text{CE}}(\hat{y}, y) = -\log p(y|x) = -[y \log \hat{y} + (1-y) \log(1-\hat{y})] \quad (5.33)$$

The loss function for multinomial logistic regression generalizes the two terms in Eq. 5.33 (one that is non-zero when  $y = 1$  and one that is non-zero when  $y = 0$ ) to  $K$  terms. The loss function for a single example  $x$  is thus the sum of the logs of the  $K$  output classes, each weighted by  $y_k$ , the probability of the true class :

$$\begin{aligned} L_{\text{CE}}(\hat{y}, y) &= - \sum_{k=1}^K y_k \log \hat{y}_k \\ &= - \sum_{k=1}^K y_k \log \hat{p}(y = k|x) \end{aligned} \quad (5.34)$$

Because only one class (let's call it  $i$ ) is the correct one, the vector  $y$  takes the value 1 only for this value of  $k$ , i.e., has  $y_i = 1$  and  $y_j = 0 \ \forall j \neq i$ . A vector like this, with one value=1 and the rest 0, is called a **one-hot vector**. The terms in the sum in Eq. 5.34 will thus be 0 except for the term corresponding to the true class, i.e.:

$$\begin{aligned} L_{\text{CE}}(\hat{y}, y) &= - \sum_{k=1}^K \mathbb{1}\{y = k\} \log \hat{p}(y = k|x) \\ &= - \sum_{k=1}^K \mathbb{1}\{y = k\} \log \frac{\exp(w_k \cdot x + b_k)}{\sum_{j=1}^K \exp(w_j \cdot x + b_j)} \end{aligned} \quad (5.35)$$

Hence the cross-entropy loss is simply the log of the output probability corresponding to the correct class, and we therefore also call this the **negative log likelihood loss**:

$$\begin{aligned} L_{\text{CE}}(\hat{y}, y) &= -\log \hat{y}_k, \quad (\text{where } k \text{ is the correct class}) \\ &= -\log \frac{\exp(w_k \cdot x + b_k)}{\sum_{j=1}^K \exp(w_j \cdot x + b_j)} \quad (\text{where } k \text{ is the correct class}) \end{aligned} \quad (5.36)$$

The gradient for a single example turns out to be very similar to the gradient for binary logistic regression, although we don't show the derivation here. It is the difference between the value for the true class  $k$  (which is 1) and the probability the classifier outputs for class  $k$ , weighted by the value of the input  $x_i$  corresponding to the  $i$ th element of the weight for class  $k$   $w_{k,i}$ :

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial L_{\text{CE}}}{\partial w_{k,i}} &= -(\mathbb{1}\{y = k\} - p(y = k|x))x_i \\ &= - \left( \mathbb{1}\{y = k\} - \frac{\exp(w_k \cdot x + b_k)}{\sum_{j=1}^K \exp(w_j \cdot x + b_j)} \right) x_i \end{aligned} \quad (5.37)$$

## 5.7 Interpreting models

Often we want to know more than just the correct classification of an observation. We want to know why the classifier made the decision it did. That is, we want our decision to be **interpretable**. Interpretability can be hard to define strictly, but the core idea is that as humans we should know why our algorithms reach the conclusions they do. Because the features to logistic regression are often human-designed,

one way to understand a classifier's decision is to understand the role each feature plays in the decision. Logistic regression can be combined with statistical tests (the likelihood ratio test, or the Wald test); investigating whether a particular feature is significant by one of these tests, or inspecting its magnitude (how large is the weight  $w$  associated with the feature?) can help us interpret why the classifier made the decision it makes. This is enormously important for building transparent models.

Furthermore, in addition to its use as a classifier, logistic regression in NLP and many other fields is widely used as an analytic tool for testing hypotheses about the effect of various explanatory variables (features). In text classification, perhaps we want to know if logically negative words (*no*, *not*, *never*) are more likely to be associated with negative sentiment, or if negative reviews of movies are more likely to discuss the cinematography. However, in doing so it's necessary to control for potential confounds: other factors that might influence sentiment (the movie genre, the year it was made, perhaps the length of the review in words). Or we might be studying the relationship between NLP-extracted linguistic features and non-linguistic outcomes (hospital readmissions, political outcomes, or product sales), but need to control for confounds (the age of the patient, the county of voting, the brand of the product). In such cases, logistic regression allows us to test whether some feature is associated with some outcome above and beyond the effect of other features.

## 5.8 Advanced: Deriving the Gradient Equation

In this section we give the derivation of the gradient of the cross-entropy loss function  $L_{\text{CE}}$  for logistic regression. Let's start with some quick calculus refreshers. First, the derivative of  $\ln(x)$ :

$$\frac{d}{dx} \ln(x) = \frac{1}{x} \quad (5.38)$$

Second, the (very elegant) derivative of the sigmoid:

$$\frac{d\sigma(z)}{dz} = \sigma(z)(1 - \sigma(z)) \quad (5.39)$$

**chain rule**

Finally, the **chain rule** of derivatives. Suppose we are computing the derivative of a composite function  $f(x) = u(v(x))$ . The derivative of  $f(x)$  is the derivative of  $u(x)$  with respect to  $v(x)$  times the derivative of  $v(x)$  with respect to  $x$ :

$$\frac{df}{dx} = \frac{du}{dv} \cdot \frac{dv}{dx} \quad (5.40)$$

First, we want to know the derivative of the loss function with respect to a single weight  $w_j$  (we'll need to compute it for each weight, and for the bias):

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial L_{\text{CE}}}{\partial w_j} &= \frac{\partial}{\partial w_j} - [y \log \sigma(w \cdot x + b) + (1 - y) \log (1 - \sigma(w \cdot x + b))] \\ &= - \left[ \frac{\partial}{\partial w_j} y \log \sigma(w \cdot x + b) + \frac{\partial}{\partial w_j} (1 - y) \log [1 - \sigma(w \cdot x + b)] \right] \end{aligned} \quad (5.41)$$

Next, using the chain rule, and relying on the derivative of log:

$$\frac{\partial L_{CE}}{\partial w_j} = -\frac{y}{\sigma(w \cdot x + b)} \frac{\partial}{\partial w_j} \sigma(w \cdot x + b) - \frac{1-y}{1-\sigma(w \cdot x + b)} \frac{\partial}{\partial w_j} 1 - \sigma(w \cdot x + b)$$
(5.42)

Rearranging terms:

$$\frac{\partial L_{CE}}{\partial w_j} = -\left[\frac{y}{\sigma(w \cdot x + b)} - \frac{1-y}{1-\sigma(w \cdot x + b)}\right] \frac{\partial}{\partial w_j} \sigma(w \cdot x + b)$$
(5.43)

And now plugging in the derivative of the sigmoid, and using the chain rule one more time, we end up with Eq. 5.44:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial L_{CE}}{\partial w_j} &= -\left[\frac{y - \sigma(w \cdot x + b)}{\sigma(w \cdot x + b)[1 - \sigma(w \cdot x + b)]}\right] \sigma(w \cdot x + b)[1 - \sigma(w \cdot x + b)] \frac{\partial(w \cdot x + b)}{\partial w_j} \\ &= -\left[\frac{y - \sigma(w \cdot x + b)}{\sigma(w \cdot x + b)[1 - \sigma(w \cdot x + b)]}\right] \sigma(w \cdot x + b)[1 - \sigma(w \cdot x + b)]x_j \\ &= -[y - \sigma(w \cdot x + b)]x_j \\ &= [\sigma(w \cdot x + b) - y]x_j \end{aligned}$$
(5.44)

## 5.9 Summary

This chapter introduced the **logistic regression** model of **classification**.

- Logistic regression is a supervised machine learning classifier that extracts real-valued features from the input, multiplies each by a weight, sums them, and passes the sum through a **sigmoid** function to generate a probability. A threshold is used to make a decision.
- Logistic regression can be used with two classes (e.g., positive and negative sentiment) or with multiple classes (**multinomial logistic regression**, for example for n-ary text classification, part-of-speech labeling, etc.).
- Multinomial logistic regression uses the **softmax** function to compute probabilities.
- The weights (vector  $w$  and bias  $b$ ) are learned from a labeled training set via a loss function, such as the **cross-entropy loss**, that must be minimized.
- Minimizing this loss function is a **convex optimization** problem, and iterative algorithms like **gradient descent** are used to find the optimal weights.
- **Regularization** is used to avoid overfitting.
- Logistic regression is also one of the most useful analytic tools, because of its ability to transparently study the importance of individual features.

## Bibliographical and Historical Notes

Logistic regression was developed in the field of statistics, where it was used for the analysis of binary data by the 1960s, and was particularly common in medicine (Cox, 1969). Starting in the late 1970s it became widely used in linguistics as one

of the formal foundations of the study of linguistic variation ([Sankoff and Labov, 1979](#)).

Nonetheless, logistic regression didn't become common in natural language processing until the 1990s, when it seems to have appeared simultaneously from two directions. The first source was the neighboring fields of information retrieval and speech processing, both of which had made use of regression, and both of which lent many other statistical techniques to NLP. Indeed a very early use of logistic regression for document routing was one of the first NLP applications to use (LSI) embeddings as word representations ([Schütze et al., 1995](#)).

**maximum entropy**

At the same time in the early 1990s logistic regression was developed and applied to NLP at IBM Research under the name **maximum entropy** modeling or **maxent** ([Berger et al., 1996](#)), seemingly independent of the statistical literature. Under that name it was applied to language modeling ([Rosenfeld, 1996](#)), part-of-speech tagging ([Ratnaparkhi, 1996](#)), parsing ([Ratnaparkhi, 1997](#)), coreference resolution ([Kehler, 1997b](#)), and text classification ([Nigam et al., 1999](#)).

More on classification can be found in machine learning textbooks ([Hastie et al. 2001](#), [Witten and Frank 2005](#), [Bishop 2006](#), [Murphy 2012](#)).

## Exercises

CHAPTER

# 6

# Vector Semantics and Embeddings

荃者所以在鱼，得鱼而忘荃 Nets are for fish;  
 Once you get the fish, you can forget the net.  
 言者所以在意，得意而忘言 Words are for meaning;  
 Once you get the meaning, you can forget the words  
 庄子(Zhuangzi), Chapter 26

The asphalt that Los Angeles is famous for occurs mainly on its freeways. But in the middle of the city is another patch of asphalt, the La Brea tar pits, and this asphalt preserves millions of fossil bones from the last of the Ice Ages of the Pleistocene Epoch. One of these fossils is the *Smilodon*, or saber-toothed tiger, instantly recognizable by its long canines. Five million years ago or so, a completely different sabre-tooth tiger called *Thylacosmilus* lived in Argentina and other parts of South America. *Thylacosmilus* was a marsupial whereas *Smilodon* was a placental mammal, but *Thylacosmilus* had the same long upper canines and, like *Smilodon*, had a protective bone flange on the lower jaw. The similarity of these two mammals is one of many examples of parallel or convergent evolution, in which particular contexts or environments lead to the evolution of very similar structures in different species (Gould, 1980).



The role of context is also important in the similarity of a less biological kind of organism: the word. Words that occur in *similar contexts* tend to have *similar meanings*. This link between similarity in how words are distributed and similarity in what they mean is called the **distributional hypothesis**. The hypothesis was first formulated in the 1950s by linguists like Joos (1950), Harris (1954), and Firth (1957), who noticed that words which are synonyms (like *oculist* and *eye-doctor*) tended to occur in the same environment (e.g., near words like *eye* or *examined*) with the amount of meaning difference between two words “corresponding roughly to the amount of difference in their environments” (Harris, 1954, 157).

In this chapter we introduce **vector semantics**, which instantiates this linguistic hypothesis by learning representations of the meaning of words, called **embeddings**, directly from their distributions in texts. These representations are used in every natural language processing application that makes use of meaning, and the **static embeddings** we introduce here underlie the more powerful dynamic or **contextualized embeddings** like BERT that we will see in Chapter 10.

These word representations are also the first example in this book of **representation learning**, automatically learning useful representations of the input text. Finding such **self-supervised** ways to learn representations of the input, instead of creating representations by hand via **feature engineering**, is an important focus of NLP research (Bengio et al., 2013).

distributional hypothesis

vector semantics embeddings

representation learning

## 6.1 Lexical Semantics

Let's begin by introducing some basic principles of word meaning. How should we represent the meaning of a word? In the n-gram models of Chapter 3, and in classical NLP applications, our only representation of a word is as a string of letters, or an index in a vocabulary list. This representation is not that different from a tradition in philosophy, perhaps you've seen it in introductory logic classes, in which the meaning of words is represented by just spelling the word with small capital letters; representing the meaning of "dog" as DOG, and "cat" as CAT.

Representing the meaning of a word by capitalizing it is a pretty unsatisfactory model. You might have seen a joke due originally to semanticist Barbara Partee ([Carlson, 1977](#)):

Q: What's the meaning of life?  
A: LIFE'

Surely we can do better than this! After all, we'll want a model of word meaning to do all sorts of things for us. It should tell us that some words have similar meanings (*cat* is similar to *dog*), others are antonyms (*cold* is the opposite of *hot*), some have positive connotations (*happy*) while others have negative connotations (*sad*). It should represent the fact that the meanings of *buy*, *sell*, and *pay* offer differing perspectives on the same underlying purchasing event (If I buy something from you, you've probably sold it to me, and I likely paid you). More generally, a model of word meaning should allow us to draw inferences to address meaning-related tasks like question-answering or dialogue.

**lexical semantics**

In this section we summarize some of these desiderata, drawing on results in the linguistic study of word meaning, which is called **lexical semantics**; we'll return to and expand on this list in Chapter 18 and Chapter 10.

**lemma  
citation form**

**Lemmas and Senses** Let's start by looking at how one word (we'll choose *mouse*) might be defined in a dictionary (simplified from the online dictionary WordNet):

- mouse (N)  
 1. any of numerous small rodents...  
 2. a hand-operated device that controls a cursor...

**wordform**

Here the form *mouse* is the **lemma**, also called the **citation form**. The form *mouse* would also be the lemma for the word *mice*; dictionaries don't have separate definitions for inflected forms like *mice*. Similarly *sing* is the lemma for *sing*, *sang*, *sung*. In many languages the infinitive form is used as the lemma for the verb, so Spanish *dormir* "to sleep" is the lemma for *duermes* "you sleep". The specific forms *sung* or *carpets* or *sing* or *duermes* are called **wordforms**.

As the example above shows, each lemma can have multiple meanings; the lemma *mouse* can refer to the rodent or the cursor control device. We call each of these aspects of the meaning of *mouse* a **word sense**. The fact that lemmas can be **polysemous** (have multiple senses) can make interpretation difficult (is someone who types "mouse info" into a search engine looking for a pet or a tool?). Chapter 18 will discuss the problem of polysemy, and introduce **word sense disambiguation**, the task of determining which sense of a word is being used in a particular context.

**synonym**

**Synonymy** One important component of word meaning is the relationship between word senses. For example when one word has a sense whose meaning is identical to a sense of another word, or nearly identical, we say the two senses of those two words are **synonyms**. Synonyms include such pairs as

*couch/sofa* *vomit/throw up* *filbert/hazelnut* *car/automobile*

A more formal definition of synonymy (between words rather than senses) is that two words are synonymous if they are substitutable for one another in any sentence without changing the *truth conditions* of the sentence, the situations in which the sentence would be true. We often say in this case that the two words have the same **propositional meaning**.

While substitutions between some pairs of words like *car / automobile* or *water / H<sub>2</sub>O* are truth preserving, the words are still not identical in meaning. Indeed, probably no two words are absolutely identical in meaning. One of the fundamental tenets of semantics, called the **principle of contrast** (Girard 1718, Bréal 1897, Clark 1987), states that a difference in linguistic form is always associated with some difference in meaning. For example, the word *H<sub>2</sub>O* is used in scientific contexts and would be inappropriate in a hiking guide—*water* would be more appropriate—and this genre difference is part of the meaning of the word. In practice, the word *synonym* is therefore used to describe a relationship of approximate or rough synonymy.

**Word Similarity** While words don't have many synonyms, most words do have lots of *similar* words. *Cat* is not a synonym of *dog*, but *cats* and *dogs* are certainly similar words. In moving from synonymy to similarity, it will be useful to shift from talking about relations between word senses (like synonymy) to relations between words (like similarity). Dealing with words avoids having to commit to a particular representation of word senses, which will turn out to simplify our task.

The notion of word **similarity** is very useful in larger semantic tasks. Knowing how similar two words are can help in computing how similar the meaning of two phrases or sentences are, a very important component of natural language understanding tasks like question answering, paraphrasing, and summarization. One way of getting values for word similarity is to ask humans to judge how similar one word is to another. A number of datasets have resulted from such experiments. For example the SimLex-999 dataset (Hill et al., 2015) gives values on a scale from 0 to 10, like the examples below, which range from near-synonyms (*vanish, disappear*) to pairs that scarcely seem to have anything in common (*hole, agreement*):

vanish	disappear	9.8
belief	impression	5.95
muscle	bone	3.65
modest	flexible	0.98
hole	agreement	0.3

**Word Relatedness** The meaning of two words can be related in ways other than similarity. One such class of connections is called word **relatedness** (Budanitsky and Hirst, 2006), also traditionally called word **association** in psychology.

Consider the meanings of the words *coffee* and *cup*. Coffee is not similar to cup; they share practically no features (coffee is a plant or a beverage, while a cup is a manufactured object with a particular shape). But coffee and cup are clearly related; they are associated by co-participating in an everyday event (the event of drinking coffee out of a cup). Similarly *scalpel* and *surgeon* are not similar but are related eventively (a surgeon tends to make use of a scalpel).

One common kind of relatedness between words is if they belong to the same **semantic field**. A semantic field is a set of words which cover a particular semantic domain and bear structured relations with each other. For example, words might be related by being in the semantic field of hospitals (*surgeon, scalpel, nurse, anesthetic, hospital*), restaurants (*waiter, menu, plate, food, chef*), or houses (*door, roof,*

**propositional meaning**

**principle of contrast**

**similarity**

**relatedness association**

**semantic field**

**topic models** *kitchen, family, bed*). Semantic fields are also related to **topic models**, like **Latent Dirichlet Allocation, LDA**, which apply unsupervised learning on large sets of texts to induce sets of associated words from text. Semantic fields and topic models are very useful tools for discovering topical structure in documents.

In Chapter 18 we'll introduce more relations between senses like **hyponymy** or **IS-A, antonymy** (opposites) and **meronymy** (part-whole relations).

**Semantic Frames and Roles** Closely related to semantic fields is the idea of a **semantic frame**. A semantic frame is a set of words that denote perspectives or participants in a particular type of event. A commercial transaction, for example, is a kind of event in which one entity trades money to another entity in return for some good or service, after which the good changes hands or perhaps the service is performed. This event can be encoded lexically by using verbs like *buy* (the event from the perspective of the buyer), *sell* (from the perspective of the seller), *pay* (focusing on the monetary aspect), or nouns like *buyer*. Frames have semantic roles (like *buyer, seller, goods, money*), and words in a sentence can take on these roles.

Knowing that *buy* and *sell* have this relation makes it possible for a system to know that a sentence like *Sam bought the book from Ling* could be paraphrased as *Ling sold the book to Sam*, and that Sam has the role of the *buyer* in the frame and Ling the *seller*. Being able to recognize such paraphrases is important for question answering, and can help in shifting perspective for machine translation.

**connotations** **Connotation** Finally, words have *affective meanings* or **connotations**. The word *connotation* has different meanings in different fields, but here we use it to mean the aspects of a word's meaning that are related to a writer or reader's emotions, sentiment, opinions, or evaluations. For example some words have positive connotations (*happy*) while others have negative connotations (*sad*). Even words whose meanings are similar in other ways can vary in connotation; consider the difference in connotations between *fake, knockoff, forgery*, on the one hand, and *copy, replica, reproduction* on the other, or *innocent* (positive connotation) and *naive* (negative connotation). Some words describe positive evaluation (*great, love*) and others negative evaluation (*terrible, hate*). Positive or negative evaluation language is called **sentiment**, as we saw in Chapter 4, and word sentiment plays a role in important tasks like sentiment analysis, stance detection, and applications of NLP to the language of politics and consumer reviews.

Early work on affective meaning (Osgood et al., 1957) found that words varied along three important dimensions of affective meaning:

**valence:** the pleasantness of the stimulus

**arousal:** the intensity of emotion provoked by the stimulus

**dominance:** the degree of control exerted by the stimulus

Thus words like *happy* or *satisfied* are high on valence, while *unhappy* or *annoyed* are low on valence. *Excited* is high on arousal, while *calm* is low on arousal. *Controlling* is high on dominance, while *awed* or *influenced* are low on dominance. Each word is thus represented by three numbers, corresponding to its value on each of the three dimensions:

	Valence	Arousal	Dominance
courageous	8.05	5.5	7.38
music	7.67	5.57	6.5
heartbreak	2.45	5.65	3.58
cub	6.71	3.95	4.24

Osgood et al. (1957) noticed that in using these 3 numbers to represent the meaning of a word, the model was representing each word as a point in a three-dimensional space, a vector whose three dimensions corresponded to the word's rating on the three scales. This revolutionary idea that word meaning could be represented as a point in space (e.g., that part of the meaning of *heartbreak* can be represented as the point [2.45, 5.65, 3.58]) was the first expression of the vector semantics models that we introduce next.

## 6.2 Vector Semantics

### vector semantics

**Vectors semantics** is the standard way to represent word meaning in NLP, helping us model many of the aspects of word meaning we saw in the previous section. The roots of the model lie in the 1950s when two big ideas converged: Osgood's (1957) idea mentioned above to use a point in three-dimensional space to represent the connotation of a word, and the proposal by linguists like Joos (1950), Harris (1954), and Firth (1957) to define the meaning of a word by its **distribution** in language use, meaning its neighboring words or grammatical environments. Their idea was that two words that occur in very similar distributions (whose neighboring words are similar) have similar meanings.

For example, suppose you didn't know the meaning of the word *ongchoi* (a recent borrowing from Cantonese) but you see it in the following contexts:

- (6.1) Ongchoi is delicious sauteed with garlic.
- (6.2) Ongchoi is superb over rice.
- (6.3) ...ongchoi leaves with salty sauces...

And suppose that you had seen many of these context words in other contexts:

- (6.4) ...spinach sauteed with garlic over rice...
- (6.5) ...chard stems and leaves are delicious...
- (6.6) ...collard greens and other salty leafy greens

The fact that *ongchoi* occurs with words like *rice* and *garlic* and *delicious* and *salty*, as do words like *spinach*, *chard*, and *collard greens* might suggest that *ongchoi* is a leafy green similar to these other leafy greens.<sup>1</sup> We can do the same thing computationally by just counting words in the context of *ongchoi*.

### embeddings

The idea of vector semantics is to represent a word as a point in a multidimensional semantic space that is derived (in ways we'll see) from the distributions of word neighbors. Vectors for representing words are called **embeddings** (although the term is sometimes more strictly applied only to dense vectors like word2vec (Section 6.8), rather than sparse tf-idf or PPMI vectors (Section 6.3–Section 6.6)). The word “embedding” derives from its mathematical sense as a mapping from one space or structure to another, although the meaning has shifted; see the end of the chapter.

Fig. 6.1 shows a visualization of embeddings learned for sentiment analysis, showing the location of selected words projected down from 60-dimensional space into a two dimensional space. Notice the distinct regions containing positive words, negative words, and neutral function words.

---

<sup>1</sup> It's in fact *Ipomoea aquatica*, a relative of morning glory sometimes called *water spinach* in English.



**Figure 6.1** A two-dimensional (t-SNE) projection of embeddings for some words and phrases, showing that words with similar meanings are nearby in space. The original 60-dimensional embeddings were trained for sentiment analysis. Simplified from Li et al. (2015) with colors added for explanation.

The fine-grained model of word similarity of vector semantics offers enormous power to NLP applications. NLP applications like the sentiment classifiers of Chapter 4 or Chapter 5 depend on the same words appearing in the training and test sets. But by representing words as embeddings, classifiers can assign sentiment as long as it sees some words with *similar meanings*. And as we'll see, vector semantic models can be learned automatically from text without supervision.

In this chapter we'll introduce the two most commonly used models. In the **tf-idf** model, an important baseline, the meaning of a word is defined by a simple function of the counts of nearby words. We will see that this method results in very long vectors that are **sparse**, i.e. mostly zeros (since most words simply never occur in the context of others). We'll introduce the **word2vec** model family for constructing short, **dense** vectors that have useful semantic properties. We'll also introduce the **cosine**, the standard way to use embeddings to compute *semantic similarity*, between two words, two sentences, or two documents, an important tool in practical applications like question answering, summarization, or automatic essay grading.

## 6.3 Words and Vectors

“The most important attributes of a vector in 3-space are {Location, Location, Location}”

Randall Munroe, <https://xkcd.com/2358/>

Vector or distributional models of meaning are generally based on a **co-occurrence matrix**, a way of representing how often words co-occur. We'll look at two popular matrices: the term-document matrix and the term-term matrix.

### 6.3.1 Vectors and documents

**term-document matrix**

In a **term-document matrix**, each row represents a word in the vocabulary and each column represents a document from some collection of documents. Fig. 6.2 shows a small selection from a term-document matrix showing the occurrence of four words in four plays by Shakespeare. Each cell in this matrix represents the number of times a particular word (defined by the row) occurs in a particular document (defined by the column). Thus *fool* appeared 58 times in *Twelfth Night*.

**vector space model**

The term-document matrix of Fig. 6.2 was first defined as part of the **vector space model** of information retrieval (Salton, 1971). In this model, a document is

	As You Like It	Twelfth Night	Julius Caesar	Henry V
battle	1	0	7	13
good	114	80	62	89
fool	36	58	1	4
wit	20	15	2	3

**Figure 6.2** The term-document matrix for four words in four Shakespeare plays. Each cell contains the number of times the (row) word occurs in the (column) document.

vector

vector space  
dimension

represented as a count vector, a column in Fig. 6.3.

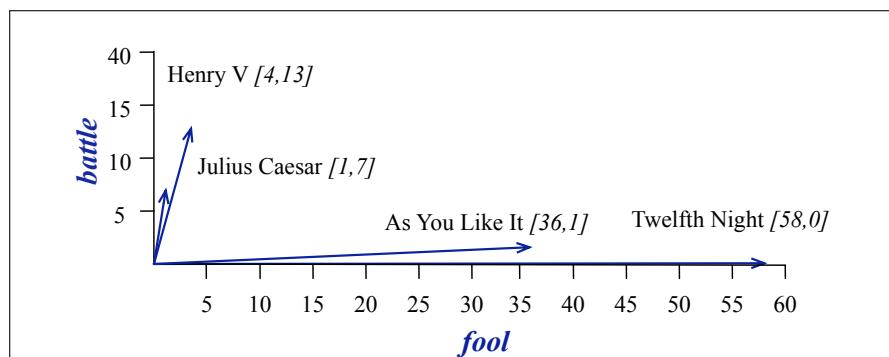
To review some basic linear algebra, a **vector** is, at heart, just a list or array of numbers. So *As You Like It* is represented as the list [1,114,36,20] (the first **column vector** in Fig. 6.3) and *Julius Caesar* is represented as the list [7,62,1,2] (the third column vector). A **vector space** is a collection of vectors, characterized by their **dimension**. In the example in Fig. 6.3, the document vectors are of dimension 4, just so they fit on the page; in real term-document matrices, the vectors representing each document would have dimensionality  $|V|$ , the vocabulary size.

The ordering of the numbers in a vector space indicates different meaningful dimensions on which documents vary. Thus the first dimension for both these vectors corresponds to the number of times the word *battle* occurs, and we can compare each dimension, noting for example that the vectors for *As You Like It* and *Twelfth Night* have similar values (1 and 0, respectively) for the first dimension.

	As You Like It	Twelfth Night	Julius Caesar	Henry V
battle	1	0	7	13
good	114	80	62	89
fool	36	58	1	4
wit	20	15	2	3

**Figure 6.3** The term-document matrix for four words in four Shakespeare plays. The red boxes show that each document is represented as a column vector of length four.

We can think of the vector for a document as a point in  $|V|$ -dimensional space; thus the documents in Fig. 6.3 are points in 4-dimensional space. Since 4-dimensional spaces are hard to visualize, Fig. 6.4 shows a visualization in two dimensions; we've arbitrarily chosen the dimensions corresponding to the words *battle* and *fool*.



**Figure 6.4** A spatial visualization of the document vectors for the four Shakespeare play documents, showing just two of the dimensions, corresponding to the words *battle* and *fool*. The comedies have high values for the *fool* dimension and low values for the *battle* dimension.

Term-document matrices were originally defined as a means of finding similar documents for the task of document **information retrieval**. Two documents that are

similar will tend to have similar words, and if two documents have similar words their column vectors will tend to be similar. The vectors for the comedies *As You Like It* [1,114,36,20] and *Twelfth Night* [0,80,58,15] look a lot more like each other (more fools and wit than battles) than they look like *Julius Caesar* [7,62,1,2] or *Henry V* [13,89,4,3]. This is clear with the raw numbers; in the first dimension (battle) the comedies have low numbers and the others have high numbers, and we can see it visually in Fig. 6.4; we'll see very shortly how to quantify this intuition more formally.

A real term-document matrix, of course, wouldn't just have 4 rows and columns, let alone 2. More generally, the term-document matrix has  $|V|$  rows (one for each word type in the vocabulary) and  $D$  columns (one for each document in the collection); as we'll see, vocabulary sizes are generally in the tens of thousands, and the number of documents can be enormous (think about all the pages on the web).

information retrieval

**Information retrieval** (IR) is the task of finding the document  $d$  from the  $D$  documents in some collection that best matches a query  $q$ . For IR we'll therefore also represent a query by a vector, also of length  $|V|$ , and we'll need a way to compare two vectors to find how similar they are. (Doing IR will also require efficient ways to store and manipulate these vectors by making use of the convenient fact that these vectors are sparse, i.e., mostly zeros).

Later in the chapter we'll introduce some of the components of this vector comparison process: the tf-idf term weighting, and the cosine similarity metric.

row vector

### 6.3.2 Words as vectors: document dimensions

We've seen that documents can be represented as vectors in a vector space. But vector semantics can also be used to represent the meaning of *words*. We do this by associating each word with a word vector—a **row vector** rather than a column vector, hence with different dimensions, as shown in Fig. 6.5. The four dimensions of the vector for *fool*, [36,58,1,4], correspond to the four Shakespeare plays. Word counts in the same four dimensions are used to form the vectors for the other 3 words: *wit*, [20,15,2,3]; *battle*, [1,0,7,13]; and *good* [114,80,62,89].

	As You Like It	Twelfth Night	Julius Caesar	Henry V
battle	1	0	7	13
good	114	80	62	89
fool	36	58	1	4
wit	20	15	2	3

**Figure 6.5** The term-document matrix for four words in four Shakespeare plays. The red boxes show that each word is represented as a row vector of length four.

For documents, we saw that similar documents had similar vectors, because similar documents tend to have similar words. This same principle applies to words: similar words have similar vectors because they tend to occur in similar documents. The term-document matrix thus lets us represent the meaning of a word by the documents it tends to occur in.

word-word matrix

### 6.3.3 Words as vectors: word dimensions

An alternative to using the term-document matrix to represent words as vectors of document counts, is to use the **term-term matrix**, also called the **word-word matrix** or the **term-context matrix**, in which the columns are labeled by words rather than documents. This matrix is thus of dimensionality  $|V| \times |V|$  and each cell records

the number of times the row (target) word and the column (context) word co-occur in some context in some training corpus. The context could be the document, in which case the cell represents the number of times the two words appear in the same document. It is most common, however, to use smaller contexts, generally a window around the word, for example of 4 words to the left and 4 words to the right, in which case the cell represents the number of times (in some training corpus) the column word occurs in such a  $\pm 4$  word window around the row word. For example here is one example each of some words in their windows:

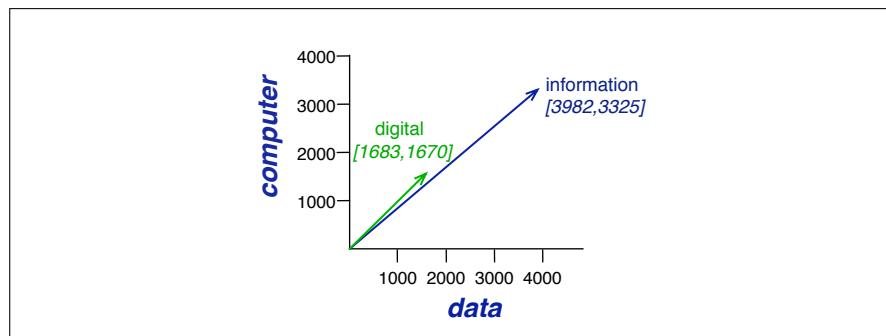
is traditionally followed by	<b>cherry</b>	pie, a traditional dessert
often mixed, such as	<b>strawberry</b>	rhubarb pie. Apple pie
computer peripherals and personal	<b>digital</b>	assistants. These devices usually
a computer. This includes	<b>information</b>	available on the internet

If we then take every occurrence of each word (say **strawberry**) and count the context words around it, we get a word-word co-occurrence matrix. Fig. 6.6 shows a simplified subset of the word-word co-occurrence matrix for these four words computed from the Wikipedia corpus (Davies, 2015).

	aardvark	...	computer	data	result	pie	sugar	...
cherry	0	...	2	8	9	442	25	...
strawberry	0	...	0	0	1	60	19	...
digital	0	...	1670	1683	85	5	4	...
information	0	...	3325	3982	378	5	13	...

**Figure 6.6** Co-occurrence vectors for four words in the Wikipedia corpus, showing six of the dimensions (hand-picked for pedagogical purposes). The vector for *digital* is outlined in red. Note that a real vector would have vastly more dimensions and thus be much sparser.

Note in Fig. 6.6 that the two words *cherry* and *strawberry* are more similar to each other (both *pie* and *sugar* tend to occur in their window) than they are to other words like *digital*; conversely, *digital* and *information* are more similar to each other than, say, to *strawberry*. Fig. 6.7 shows a spatial visualization.



**Figure 6.7** A spatial visualization of word vectors for *digital* and *information*, showing just two of the dimensions, corresponding to the words *data* and *computer*.

Note that  $|V|$ , the length of the vector, is generally the size of the vocabulary, often between 10,000 and 50,000 words (using the most frequent words in the training corpus; keeping words after about the most frequent 50,000 or so is generally not helpful). Since most of these numbers are zero these are **sparse** vector representations; there are efficient algorithms for storing and computing with sparse matrices.

Now that we have some intuitions, let's move on to examine the details of computing word similarity. Afterwards we'll discuss methods for weighting cells.

## 6.4 Cosine for measuring similarity

To measure similarity between two target words  $v$  and  $w$ , we need a metric that takes two vectors (of the same dimensionality, either both with words as dimensions, hence of length  $|V|$ , or both with documents as dimensions as documents, of length  $|D|$ ) and gives a measure of their similarity. By far the most common similarity metric is the **cosine** of the angle between the vectors.

The cosine—like most measures for vector similarity used in NLP—is based on the **dot product** operator from linear algebra, also called the **inner product**:

**inner product**

$$\text{dot product}(\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}) = \mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{w} = \sum_{i=1}^N v_i w_i = v_1 w_1 + v_2 w_2 + \dots + v_N w_N \quad (6.7)$$

As we will see, most metrics for similarity between vectors are based on the dot product. The dot product acts as a similarity metric because it will tend to be high just when the two vectors have large values in the same dimensions. Alternatively, vectors that have zeros in different dimensions—orthogonal vectors—will have a dot product of 0, representing their strong dissimilarity.

This raw dot product, however, has a problem as a similarity metric: it favors **vector length** **long** vectors. The **vector length** is defined as

$$|\mathbf{v}| = \sqrt{\sum_{i=1}^N v_i^2} \quad (6.8)$$

The dot product is higher if a vector is longer, with higher values in each dimension. More frequent words have longer vectors, since they tend to co-occur with more words and have higher co-occurrence values with each of them. The raw dot product thus will be higher for frequent words. But this is a problem; we'd like a similarity metric that tells us how similar two words are regardless of their frequency.

We modify the dot product to normalize for the vector length by dividing the dot product by the lengths of each of the two vectors. This **normalized dot product** turns out to be the same as the cosine of the angle between the two vectors, following from the definition of the dot product between two vectors  $\mathbf{a}$  and  $\mathbf{b}$ :

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} &= |\mathbf{a}| |\mathbf{b}| \cos \theta \\ \frac{\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}}{|\mathbf{a}| |\mathbf{b}|} &= \cos \theta \end{aligned} \quad (6.9)$$

**cosine** The **cosine** similarity metric between two vectors  $\mathbf{v}$  and  $\mathbf{w}$  thus can be computed as:

$$\text{cosine}(\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}) = \frac{\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{w}}{|\mathbf{v}| |\mathbf{w}|} = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^N v_i w_i}{\sqrt{\sum_{i=1}^N v_i^2} \sqrt{\sum_{i=1}^N w_i^2}} \quad (6.10)$$

For some applications we pre-normalize each vector, by dividing it by its length, creating a **unit vector** of length 1. Thus we could compute a unit vector from  $\mathbf{a}$  by dividing it by  $|\mathbf{a}|$ . For unit vectors, the dot product is the same as the cosine.

The cosine value ranges from 1 for vectors pointing in the same direction, through 0 for orthogonal vectors, to -1 for vectors pointing in opposite directions. But since raw frequency values are non-negative, the cosine for these vectors ranges from 0–1.

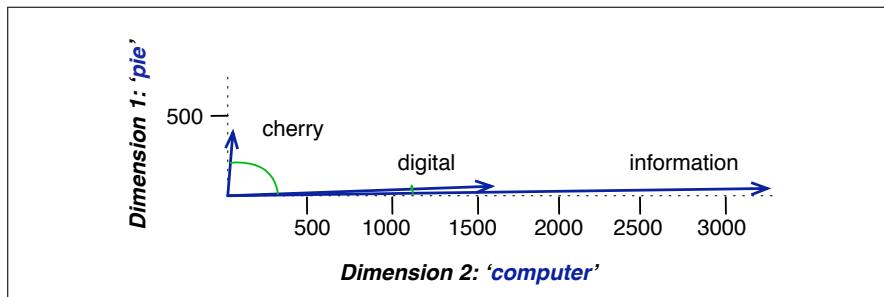
Let's see how the cosine computes which of the words *cherry* or *digital* is closer in meaning to *information*, just using raw counts from the following shortened table:

	pie	data	computer
cherry	442	8	2
digital	5	1683	1670
information	5	3982	3325

$$\cos(\text{cherry}, \text{information}) = \frac{442 * 5 + 8 * 3982 + 2 * 3325}{\sqrt{442^2 + 8^2 + 2^2} \sqrt{5^2 + 3982^2 + 3325^2}} = .017$$

$$\cos(\text{digital}, \text{information}) = \frac{5 * 5 + 1683 * 3982 + 1670 * 3325}{\sqrt{5^2 + 1683^2 + 1670^2} \sqrt{5^2 + 3982^2 + 3325^2}} = .996$$

The model decides that *information* is way closer to *digital* than it is to *cherry*, a result that seems sensible. Fig. 6.8 shows a visualization.



**Figure 6.8** A (rough) graphical demonstration of cosine similarity, showing vectors for three words (*cherry*, *digital*, and *information*) in the two dimensional space defined by counts of the words *computer* and *pie* nearby. Note that the angle between *digital* and *information* is smaller than the angle between *cherry* and *information*. When two vectors are more similar, the cosine is larger but the angle is smaller; the cosine has its maximum (1) when the angle between two vectors is smallest ( $0^\circ$ ); the cosine of all other angles is less than 1.

## 6.5 TF-IDF: Weighing terms in the vector

The co-occurrence matrices above represent each cell by frequencies, either of words with documents (Fig. 6.5), or words with other words (Fig. 6.6). But raw frequency is not the best measure of association between words. Raw frequency is very skewed and not very discriminative. If we want to know what kinds of contexts are shared by *cherry* and *strawberry* but not by *digital* and *information*, we're not going to get good discrimination from words like *the*, *it*, or *they*, which occur frequently with all sorts of words and aren't informative about any particular word. We saw this also in Fig. 6.3 for the Shakespeare corpus; the dimension for the word *good* is not very discriminative between plays; *good* is simply a frequent word and has roughly equivalent high frequencies in each of the plays.

It's a bit of a paradox. Words that occur nearby frequently (maybe *pie* nearby *cherry*) are more important than words that only appear once or twice. Yet words

that are too frequent—ubiquitous, like *the* or *good*—are unimportant. How can we balance these two conflicting constraints?

There are two common solutions to this problem: in this section we'll describe the **tf-idf** algorithm, usually used when the dimensions are documents. In the next we introduce the **PPMI** algorithm (usually used when the dimensions are words).

The **tf-idf** algorithm (the ‘-’ here is a hyphen, not a minus sign) is the product of two terms, each term capturing one of these two intuitions:

**term frequency**

The first is the **term frequency** (Luhn, 1957): the frequency of the word  $t$  in the document  $d$ . We can just use the raw count as the term frequency:

$$\text{tf}_{t,d} = \text{count}(t, d) \quad (6.11)$$

More commonly we squash the raw frequency a bit, by using the  $\log_{10}$  of the frequency instead. The intuition is that a word appearing 100 times in a document doesn't make that word 100 times more likely to be relevant to the meaning of the document. Because we can't take the log of 0, we normally add 1 to the count:<sup>2</sup>

$$\text{tf}_{t,d} = \log_{10}(\text{count}(t, d) + 1) \quad (6.12)$$

If we use log weighting, terms which occur 0 times in a document would have  $\text{tf} = \log_{10}(1) = 0$ , 10 times in a document  $\text{tf} = \log_{10}(11) = 1.4$ , 100 times  $\text{tf} = \log_{10}(101) = 2.004$ , 1000 times  $\text{tf} = 3.00044$ , and so on.

**document frequency**

The second factor in tf-idf is used to give a higher weight to words that occur only in a few documents. Terms that are limited to a few documents are useful for discriminating those documents from the rest of the collection; terms that occur frequently across the entire collection aren't as helpful. The **document frequency**  $\text{df}_t$  of a term  $t$  is the number of documents it occurs in. Document frequency is not the same as the **collection frequency** of a term, which is the total number of times the word appears in the whole collection in any document. Consider in the collection of Shakespeare's 37 plays the two words *Romeo* and *action*. The words have identical collection frequencies (they both occur 113 times in all the plays) but very different document frequencies, since *Romeo* only occurs in a single play. If our goal is to find documents about the romantic tribulations of Romeo, the word *Romeo* should be highly weighted, but not *action*:

	Collection Frequency	Document Frequency
Romeo	113	1
action	113	31

**idf**

We emphasize discriminative words like *Romeo* via the **inverse document frequency** or **idf** term weight (Sparck Jones, 1972). The idf is defined using the fraction  $N/\text{df}_t$ , where  $N$  is the total number of documents in the collection, and  $\text{df}_t$  is the number of documents in which term  $t$  occurs. The fewer documents in which a term occurs, the higher this weight. The lowest weight of 1 is assigned to terms that occur in all the documents. It's usually clear what counts as a document: in Shakespeare we would use a play; when processing a collection of encyclopedia articles like Wikipedia, the document is a Wikipedia page; in processing newspaper articles, the document is a single article. Occasionally your corpus might not have appropriate document divisions and you might need to break up the corpus into documents yourself for the purposes of computing idf.

<sup>2</sup> Or we can use this alternative:  $\text{tf}_{t,d} = \begin{cases} 1 + \log_{10} \text{count}(t, d) & \text{if } \text{count}(t, d) > 0 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$

Because of the large number of documents in many collections, this measure too is usually squashed with a log function. The resulting definition for inverse document frequency (idf) is thus

$$\text{idf}_t = \log_{10} \left( \frac{N}{\text{df}_t} \right) \quad (6.13)$$

Here are some idf values for some words in the Shakespeare corpus, ranging from extremely informative words which occur in only one play like *Romeo*, to those that occur in a few like *salad* or *Falstaff*, to those which are very common like *fool* or so common as to be completely non-discriminative since they occur in all 37 plays like *good* or *sweet*.<sup>3</sup>

Word	df	idf
Romeo	1	1.57
salad	2	1.27
Falstaff	4	0.967
forest	12	0.489
battle	21	0.246
wit	34	0.037
fool	36	0.012
good	37	0
sweet	37	0

**tf-idf** The **tf-idf** weighted value  $w_{t,d}$  for word  $t$  in document  $d$  thus combines term frequency  $\text{tf}_{t,d}$  (defined either by Eq. 6.11 or by Eq. 6.12) with idf from Eq. 6.13:

$$w_{t,d} = \text{tf}_{t,d} \times \text{idf}_t \quad (6.14)$$

Fig. 6.9 applies tf-idf weighting to the Shakespeare term-document matrix in Fig. 6.2, using the tf equation Eq. 6.12. Note that the tf-idf values for the dimension corresponding to the word *good* have now all become 0; since this word appears in every document, the tf-idf algorithm leads it to be ignored. Similarly, the word *fool*, which appears in 36 out of the 37 plays, has a much lower weight.

	As You Like It	Twelfth Night	Julius Caesar	Henry V
<b>battle</b>	0.074	0	0.22	0.28
<b>good</b>	0	0	0	0
<b>fool</b>	0.019	0.021	0.0036	0.0083
<b>wit</b>	0.049	0.044	0.018	0.022

**Figure 6.9** A tf-idf weighted term-document matrix for four words in four Shakespeare plays, using the counts in Fig. 6.2. For example the 0.049 value for *wit* in *As You Like It* is the product of  $\text{tf} = \log_{10}(20 + 1) = 1.322$  and  $\text{idf} = .037$ . Note that the idf weighting has eliminated the importance of the ubiquitous word *good* and vastly reduced the impact of the almost-ubiquitous word *fool*.

The tf-idf weighting is the way for weighting co-occurrence matrices in information retrieval, but also plays a role in many other aspects of natural language processing. It's also a great baseline, the simple thing to try first. We'll look at other weightings like PPMI (Positive Pointwise Mutual Information) in Section 6.6.

<sup>3</sup> *Sweet* was one of Shakespeare's favorite adjectives, a fact probably related to the increased use of sugar in European recipes around the turn of the 16th century (Jurafsky, 2014, p. 175).

## 6.6 Pointwise Mutual Information (PMI)

pointwise  
mutual  
information

An alternative weighting function to tf-idf, PPMI (positive pointwise mutual information), is used for term-term-matrices, when the vector dimensions correspond to words rather than documents. PPMI draws on the intuition that the best way to weigh the association between two words is to ask how much **more** the two words co-occur in our corpus than we would have a priori expected them to appear by chance.

**Pointwise mutual information** (Fano, 1961)<sup>4</sup> is one of the most important concepts in NLP. It is a measure of how often two events  $x$  and  $y$  occur, compared with what we would expect if they were independent:

$$I(x,y) = \log_2 \frac{P(x,y)}{P(x)P(y)} \quad (6.16)$$

The pointwise mutual information between a target word  $w$  and a context word  $c$  (Church and Hanks 1989, Church and Hanks 1990) is then defined as:

$$\text{PMI}(w,c) = \log_2 \frac{P(w,c)}{P(w)P(c)} \quad (6.17)$$

The numerator tells us how often we observed the two words together (assuming we compute probability by using the MLE). The denominator tells us how often we would **expect** the two words to co-occur assuming they each occurred independently; recall that the probability of two independent events both occurring is just the product of the probabilities of the two events. Thus, the ratio gives us an estimate of how much more the two words co-occur than we expect by chance. PMI is a useful tool whenever we need to find words that are strongly associated.

PMI values range from negative to positive infinity. But negative PMI values (which imply things are co-occurring *less often* than we would expect by chance) tend to be unreliable unless our corpora are enormous. To distinguish whether two words whose individual probability is each  $10^{-6}$  occur together less often than chance, we would need to be certain that the probability of the two occurring together is significantly different than  $10^{-12}$ , and this kind of granularity would require an enormous corpus. Furthermore it's not clear whether it's even possible to evaluate such scores of 'unrelatedness' with human judgments. For this reason it is more common to use Positive PMI (called **PPMI**) which replaces all negative PMI values with zero (Church and Hanks 1989, Dagan et al. 1993, Niwa and Nitta 1994)<sup>5</sup>:

$$\text{PPMI}(w,c) = \max\left(\log_2 \frac{P(w,c)}{P(w)P(c)}, 0\right) \quad (6.18)$$

More formally, let's assume we have a co-occurrence matrix  $F$  with  $W$  rows (words) and  $C$  columns (contexts), where  $f_{ij}$  gives the number of times word  $w_i$  occurs in

---

<sup>4</sup> PMI is based on the **mutual information** between two random variables  $X$  and  $Y$ , defined as:

$$I(X,Y) = \sum_x \sum_y P(x,y) \log_2 \frac{P(x,y)}{P(x)P(y)} \quad (6.15)$$

In a confusion of terminology, Fano used the phrase *mutual information* to refer to what we now call *pointwise mutual information* and the phrase *expectation of the mutual information* for what we now call *mutual information*

<sup>5</sup> Positive PMI also cleanly solves the problem of what to do with zero counts, using 0 to replace the  $-\infty$  from  $\log(0)$ .

context  $c_j$ . This can be turned into a PPMI matrix where  $ppmi_{ij}$  gives the PPMI value of word  $w_i$  with context  $c_j$  as follows:

$$p_{ij} = \frac{f_{ij}}{\sum_{i=1}^W \sum_{j=1}^C f_{ij}} \quad p_{i*} = \frac{\sum_{j=1}^C f_{ij}}{\sum_{i=1}^W \sum_{j=1}^C f_{ij}} \quad p_{*j} = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^W f_{ij}}{\sum_{i=1}^W \sum_{j=1}^C f_{ij}} \quad (6.19)$$

$$\text{PPMI}_{ij} = \max(\log_2 \frac{p_{ij}}{p_{i*} p_{*j}}, 0) \quad (6.20)$$

Let's see some PPMI calculations. We'll use Fig. 6.10, which repeats Fig. 6.6 plus all the count marginals, and let's pretend for ease of calculation that these are the only words/context that matter.

	<b>computer</b>	<b>data</b>	<b>result</b>	<b>pie</b>	<b>sugar</b>	<b>count(w)</b>
<b>cherry</b>	2	8	9	442	25	486
<b>strawberry</b>	0	0	1	60	19	80
<b>digital</b>	1670	1683	85	5	4	3447
<b>information</b>	3325	3982	378	5	13	7703
<b>count(context)</b>	4997	5673	473	512	61	11716

**Figure 6.10** Co-occurrence counts for four words in 5 contexts in the Wikipedia corpus, together with the marginals, pretending for the purpose of this calculation that no other words/context matter.

Thus for example we could compute  $\text{PPMI}(w=\text{information}, c=\text{data})$ , assuming we pretended that Fig. 6.6 encompassed all the relevant word contexts/dimensions, as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} P(w=\text{information}, c=\text{data}) &= \frac{3982}{11716} = .3399 \\ P(w=\text{information}) &= \frac{7703}{11716} = .6575 \\ P(c=\text{data}) &= \frac{5673}{11716} = .4842 \\ \text{ppmi}(\text{information}, \text{data}) &= \log_2(.3399 / (.6575 * .4842)) = .0944 \end{aligned}$$

Fig. 6.11 shows the joint probabilities computed from the counts in Fig. 6.10, and Fig. 6.12 shows the PPMI values. Not surprisingly, *cherry* and *strawberry* are highly associated with both *pie* and *sugar*, and *data* is mildly associated with *information*.

	<b>p(w,context)</b>					<b>p(w)</b>
	<b>computer</b>	<b>data</b>	<b>result</b>	<b>pie</b>	<b>sugar</b>	<b>p(w)</b>
<b>cherry</b>	0.0002	0.0007	0.0008	0.0377	0.0021	0.0415
<b>strawberry</b>	0.0000	0.0000	0.0001	0.0051	0.0016	0.0068
<b>digital</b>	0.1425	0.1436	0.0073	0.0004	0.0003	0.2942
<b>information</b>	0.2838	0.3399	0.0323	0.0004	0.0011	0.6575
<b>p(context)</b>	0.4265	0.4842	0.0404	0.0437	0.0052	

**Figure 6.11** Replacing the counts in Fig. 6.6 with joint probabilities, showing the marginals around the outside.

PMI has the problem of being biased toward infrequent events; very rare words tend to have very high PMI values. One way to reduce this bias toward low frequency

	<b>computer</b>	<b>data</b>	<b>result</b>	<b>pie</b>	<b>sugar</b>
<b>cherry</b>	0	0	0	4.38	3.30
<b>strawberry</b>	0	0	0	4.10	5.51
<b>digital</b>	0.18	0.01	0	0	0
<b>information</b>	0.02	0.09	0.28	0	0

**Figure 6.12** The PPMI matrix showing the association between words and context words, computed from the counts in Fig. 6.11. Note that most of the 0 PPMI values are ones that had a negative PMI; for example  $\text{PMI}(\text{cherry}, \text{computer}) = -6.7$ , meaning that *cherry* and *computer* co-occur on Wikipedia less often than we would expect by chance, and with PPMI we replace negative values by zero.

events is to slightly change the computation for  $P(c)$ , using a different function  $P_\alpha(c)$  that raises the probability of the context word to the power of  $\alpha$ :

$$\text{PPMI}_\alpha(w, c) = \max\left(\log_2 \frac{P(w, c)}{P(w)P_\alpha(c)}, 0\right) \quad (6.21)$$

$$P_\alpha(c) = \frac{\text{count}(c)^\alpha}{\sum_c \text{count}(c)^\alpha} \quad (6.22)$$

Levy et al. (2015) found that a setting of  $\alpha = 0.75$  improved performance of embeddings on a wide range of tasks (drawing on a similar weighting used for skipgrams described below in Eq. 6.32). This works because raising the count to  $\alpha = 0.75$  increases the probability assigned to rare contexts, and hence lowers their PMI ( $P_\alpha(c) > P(c)$  when  $c$  is rare).

Another possible solution is Laplace smoothing: Before computing PMI, a small constant  $k$  (values of 0.1-3 are common) is added to each of the counts, shrinking (discounting) all the non-zero values. The larger the  $k$ , the more the non-zero counts are discounted.

## 6.7 Applications of the tf-idf or PPMI vector models

In summary, the vector semantics model we've described so far represents a target word as a vector with dimensions corresponding either to the documents in a large collection (the term-document matrix) or to the counts of words in some neighboring window (the term-term matrix). The values in each dimension are counts, weighted by tf-idf (for term-document matrices) or PPMI (for term-term matrices), and the vectors are sparse (since most values are zero).

The model computes the similarity between two words  $x$  and  $y$  by taking the cosine of their tf-idf or PPMI vectors; high cosine, high similarity. This entire model is sometimes referred to as the **tf-idf** model or the **PPMI** model, after the weighting function.

The tf-idf model of meaning is often used for document functions like deciding if two documents are similar. We represent a document by taking the vectors of all the words in the document, and computing the **centroid** of all those vectors. The centroid is the multidimensional version of the mean; the centroid of a set of vectors is a single vector that has the minimum sum of squared distances to each of the vectors in the set. Given  $k$  word vectors  $w_1, w_2, \dots, w_k$ , the centroid **document vector**  $d$  is:

$$d = \frac{w_1 + w_2 + \dots + w_k}{k} \quad (6.23)$$

Given two documents, we can then compute their document vectors  $d_1$  and  $d_2$ , and estimate the similarity between the two documents by  $\cos(d_1, d_2)$ . Document similarity is also useful for all sorts of applications; information retrieval, plagiarism detection, news recommender systems, and even for digital humanities tasks like comparing different versions of a text to see which are similar to each other.

Either the PPMI model or the tf-idf model can be used to compute word similarity, for tasks like finding word paraphrases, tracking changes in word meaning, or automatically discovering meanings of words in different corpora. For example, we can find the 10 most similar words to any target word  $w$  by computing the cosines between  $w$  and each of the  $V - 1$  other words, sorting, and looking at the top 10.

## 6.8 Word2vec

In the previous sections we saw how to represent a word as a sparse, long vector with dimensions corresponding to words in the vocabulary or documents in a collection. We now introduce a more powerful word representation: **embeddings**, short dense vectors. Unlike the vectors we've seen so far, embeddings are **short**, with number of dimensions  $d$  ranging from 50-1000, rather than the much larger vocabulary size  $|V|$  or number of documents  $D$  we've seen. These  $d$  dimensions don't have a clear interpretation. And the vectors are **dense**: instead of vector entries being sparse, mostly-zero counts or functions of counts, the values will be real-valued numbers that can be negative.

It turns out that dense vectors work better in every NLP task than sparse vectors. While we don't completely understand all the reasons for this, we have some intuitions. Representing words as 300-dimensional dense vectors requires our classifiers to learn far fewer weights than if we represented words as 50,000-dimensional vectors, and the smaller parameter space possibly helps with generalization and avoiding overfitting. Dense vectors may also do a better job of capturing synonymy. For example, in a sparse vector representation, dimensions for synonyms like *car* and *automobile* dimension are distinct and unrelated; sparse vectors may thus fail to capture the similarity between a word with *car* as a neighbor and a word with *automobile* as a neighbor.

**skip-gram**

**SGNS**

**word2vec**

**static  
embeddings**

In this section we introduce one method for computing embeddings: **skip-gram with negative sampling**, sometimes called **SGNS**. The skip-gram algorithm is one of two algorithms in a software package called **word2vec**, and so sometimes the algorithm is loosely referred to as word2vec (Mikolov et al. 2013, Mikolov et al. 2013a). The word2vec methods are fast, efficient to train, and easily available online with code and pretrained embeddings. Word2vec embeddings are **static embeddings**, meaning that the method learns one fixed embedding for each word in the vocabulary. In Chapter 10 we'll introduce methods for learning dynamic **contextual embeddings** like the popular **BERT** or **ELMO** representations, in which the vector for each word is different in different contexts.

The intuition of word2vec is that instead of counting how often each word  $w$  occurs near, say, *apricot*, we'll instead train a classifier on a binary prediction task: “Is word  $w$  likely to show up near *apricot*?” We don't actually care about this prediction task; instead we'll take the learned classifier *weights* as the word embeddings.

The revolutionary intuition here is that we can just use running text as implicitly supervised training data for such a classifier; a word  $c$  that occurs near the target word *apricot* acts as gold ‘correct answer’ to the question “Is word  $c$  likely to show

**self-supervision**

up near *apricot*?” This method, often called **self-supervision**, avoids the need for any sort of hand-labeled supervision signal. This idea was first proposed in the task of neural language modeling, when Bengio et al. (2003) and Collobert et al. (2011) showed that a neural language model (a neural network that learned to predict the next word from prior words) could just use the next word in running text as its supervision signal, and could be used to learn an embedding representation for each word as part of doing this prediction task.

We’ll see how to do neural networks in the next chapter, but word2vec is a much simpler model than the neural network language model, in two ways. First, word2vec simplifies the task (making it binary classification instead of word prediction). Second, word2vec simplifies the architecture (training a logistic regression classifier instead of a multi-layer neural network with hidden layers that demand more sophisticated training algorithms). The intuition of skip-gram is:

1. Treat the target word and a neighboring context word as positive examples.
2. Randomly sample other words in the lexicon to get negative samples.
3. Use logistic regression to train a classifier to distinguish those two cases.
4. Use the learned weights as the embeddings.

### 6.8.1 The classifier

Let’s start by thinking about the classification task, and then turn to how to train. Imagine a sentence like the following, with a target word *apricot*, and assume we’re using a window of  $\pm 2$  context words:

... lemon, a [tablespoon of apricot jam, a] pinch ...  
c1 c2 w c3 c4

Our goal is to train a classifier such that, given a tuple  $(w, c)$  of a target word  $w$  paired with a candidate context word  $c$  (for example  $(\text{apricot}, \text{jam})$ , or perhaps  $(\text{apricot}, \text{aardvark})$ ) it will return the probability that  $c$  is a real context word (true for *jam*, false for *aardvark*):

$$P(+|w, c) \tag{6.24}$$

The probability that word  $c$  is not a real context word for  $w$  is just 1 minus Eq. 6.24:

$$P(-|w, c) = 1 - P(+|w, c) \tag{6.25}$$

How does the classifier compute the probability  $P$ ? The intuition of the skip-gram model is to base this probability on embedding similarity: a word is likely to occur near the target if its embedding is similar to the target embedding. To compute similarity between these dense embeddings, we rely on the intuition that two vectors are similar if they have a high **dot product** (after all, cosine is just a normalized dot product). In other words:

$$\text{Similarity}(w, c) \approx c \cdot w \tag{6.26}$$

The dot product  $c \cdot w$  is not a probability, it’s just a number ranging from  $-\infty$  to  $\infty$  (since the elements in word2vec embeddings can be negative, the dot product can be negative). To turn the dot product into a probability, we’ll use the **logistic** or **sigmoid** function  $\sigma(x)$ , the fundamental core of logistic regression:

$$\sigma(x) = \frac{1}{1 + \exp(-x)} \tag{6.27}$$

We model the probability that word  $c$  is a real context word for target word  $w$  as:

$$P(+|w, c) = \sigma(c \cdot w) = \frac{1}{1 + \exp(-c \cdot w)} \quad (6.28)$$

The sigmoid function returns a number between 0 and 1, but to make it a probability we'll also need the total probability of the two possible events ( $c$  is a context word, and  $c$  isn't a context word) to sum to 1. We thus estimate the probability that word  $c$  is not a real context word for  $w$  as:

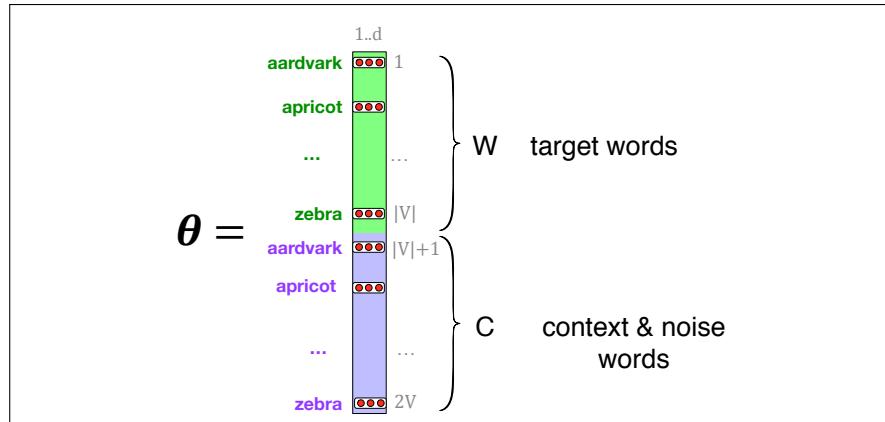
$$\begin{aligned} P(-|w, c) &= 1 - P(+|w, c) \\ &= \sigma(-c \cdot w) = \frac{1}{1 + \exp(c \cdot w)} \end{aligned} \quad (6.29)$$

Equation 6.28 gives us the probability for one word, but there are many context words in the window. Skip-gram makes the simplifying assumption that all context words are independent, allowing us to just multiply their probabilities:

$$P(+|w, c_{1:L}) = \prod_{i=1}^L \sigma(-c_i \cdot w) \quad (6.30)$$

$$\log P(+|w, c_{1:L}) = \sum_{i=1}^L \log \sigma(-c_i \cdot w) \quad (6.31)$$

In summary, skip-gram trains a probabilistic classifier that, given a test target word  $w$  and its context window of  $L$  words  $c_{1:L}$ , assigns a probability based on how similar this context window is to the target word. The probability is based on applying the logistic (sigmoid) function to the dot product of the embeddings of the target word with each context word. To compute this probability, we just need embeddings for each target word and context word in the vocabulary.



**Figure 6.13** The embeddings learned by the skipgram model. The algorithm stores two embeddings for each word, the target embedding (sometimes called the input embedding) and the context embedding (sometimes called the output embedding). The parameter  $\theta$  that the algorithm learns is thus a matrix of  $2|V|$  vectors, each of dimension  $d$ , formed by concatenating two matrices, the target embeddings  $W$  and the context+noise embeddings  $C$ .

Fig. 6.13 shows the intuition of the parameters we'll need. Skip-gram actually stores two embeddings for each word, one for the word as a target, and one for the

word considered as context. Thus the parameters we need to learn are two matrices  $W$  and  $C$ , each containing an embedding for every one of the  $|V|$  words in the vocabulary  $V$ .<sup>6</sup> Let's now turn to learning these embeddings (which is the real goal of training this classifier in the first place).

### 6.8.2 Learning skip-gram embeddings

Skip-gram learns embeddings by starting with random embedding vectors and then iteratively shifting the embedding of each word  $w$  to be more like the embeddings of words that occur nearby in texts, and less like the embeddings of words that don't occur nearby. Let's start by considering a single piece of training data:

... lemon,	a [tablespoon of apricot jam,	a] pinch ...		
c1	c2	w	c3	c4

This example has a target word  $w$  (apricot), and 4 context words in the  $L = \pm 2$  window, resulting in 4 positive training instances (on the left below):

positive examples +		negative examples -	
$w$	$c_{pos}$	$w$	$c_{neg}$
apricot	tablespoon	apricot	aardvark
apricot	of	apricot	my
apricot	jam	apricot	where
apricot	a	apricot	coaxial
		apricot	seven
		apricot	forever
		apricot	dear
		apricot	if

For training a binary classifier we also need negative examples. In fact skip-gram with negative sampling (SGNS) uses more negative examples than positive examples (with the ratio between them set by a parameter  $k$ ). So for each of these  $(w, c_{pos})$  training instances we'll create  $k$  negative samples, each consisting of the target  $w$  plus a 'noise word'  $c_{neg}$ . A noise word is a random word from the lexicon, constrained not to be the target word  $w$ . The right above shows the setting where  $k = 2$ , so we'll have 2 negative examples in the negative training set — for each positive example  $w, c_{pos}$ .

The noise words are chosen according to their weighted unigram frequency  $p_\alpha(w)$ , where  $\alpha$  is a weight. If we were sampling according to unweighted frequency  $p(w)$ , it would mean that with unigram probability  $p("the")$  we would choose the word *the* as a noise word, with unigram probability  $p("aardvark")$  we would choose *aardvark*, and so on. But in practice it is common to set  $\alpha = .75$ , i.e. use the weighting  $p^{\frac{3}{4}}(w)$ :

$$P_\alpha(w) = \frac{\text{count}(w)^\alpha}{\sum_{w'} \text{count}(w')^\alpha} \quad (6.32)$$

Setting  $\alpha = .75$  gives better performance because it gives rare noise words slightly higher probability: for rare words,  $P_\alpha(w) > P(w)$ . To illustrate this intuition, it might help to work out the probabilities for an example with two events,  $P(a) = .99$  and  $P(b) = .01$ :

$$\begin{aligned} P_\alpha(a) &= \frac{.99^{.75}}{.99^{.75} + .01^{.75}} = .97 \\ P_\alpha(b) &= \frac{.01^{.75}}{.99^{.75} + .01^{.75}} = .03 \end{aligned} \quad (6.33)$$

---

<sup>6</sup> In principle the target matrix and the context matrix could use different vocabularies, but we'll simplify by assuming one shared vocabulary  $V$ .

Given the set of positive and negative training instances, and an initial set of embeddings, the goal of the learning algorithm is to adjust those embeddings to

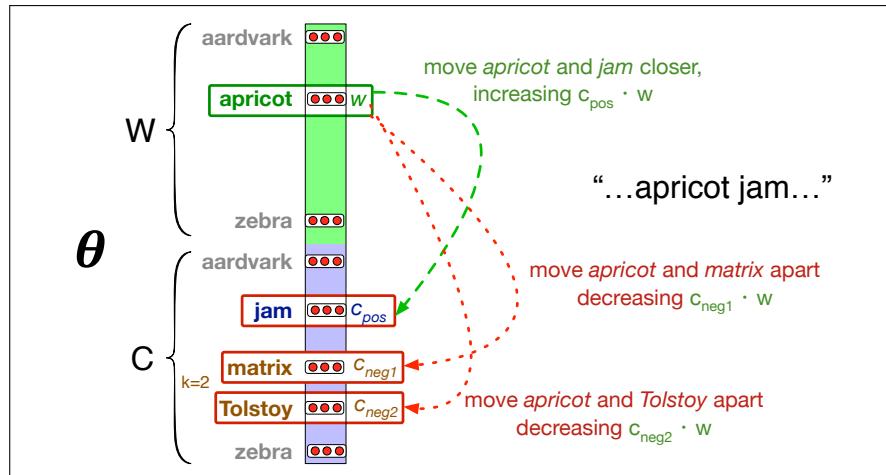
- Maximize the similarity of the target word, context word pairs  $(w, c_{pos})$  drawn from the positive examples
- Minimize the similarity of the  $(w, c_{neg})$  pairs from the negative examples.

If we consider one word/context pair  $(w, c_{pos})$  with its  $k$  noise words  $c_{neg_1} \dots c_{neg_k}$ , we can express these two goals as the following loss function  $L$  to be minimized (hence the  $-$ ); here the first term expresses that we want the classifier to assign the real context word  $c_{pos}$  a high probability of being a neighbor, and the second term expresses that we want to assign each of the noise words  $c_{neg_i}$  a high probability of being a non-neighbor, all multiplied because we assume independence:

$$\begin{aligned}
 L_{CE} &= -\log \left[ P(+|w, c_{pos}) \prod_{i=1}^k P(-|w, c_{neg_i}) \right] \\
 &= - \left[ \log P(+|w, c_{pos}) + \sum_{i=1}^k \log P(-|w, c_{neg_i}) \right] \\
 &= - \left[ \log P(+|w, c_{pos}) + \sum_{i=1}^k \log (1 - P(+|w, c_{neg_i})) \right] \\
 &= - \left[ \log \sigma(c_{pos} \cdot w) + \sum_{i=1}^k \log \sigma(-c_{neg_i} \cdot w) \right]
 \end{aligned} \tag{6.34}$$

That is, we want to maximize the dot product of the word with the actual context words, and minimize the dot products of the word with the  $k$  negative sampled non-neighbor words.

We minimize this loss function using stochastic gradient descent. Fig. 6.14 shows the intuition of one step of learning.



**Figure 6.14** Intuition of one step of gradient descent. The skip-gram model tries to shift embeddings so the target embeddings (here for *apricot*) are closer to (have a higher dot product with) context embeddings for nearby words (here *jam*) and further from (lower dot product with) context embeddings for noise words that don't occur nearby (here *Tolstoy* and *matrix*).

To get the gradient, we need to take the derivative of Eq. 6.34 with respect to the different embeddings. It turns out the derivatives are the following (we leave the

proof as an exercise at the end of the chapter):

$$\frac{\partial L_{CE}}{\partial c_{pos}} = [\sigma(c_{pos} \cdot w) - 1]w \quad (6.35)$$

$$\frac{\partial L_{CE}}{\partial c_{neg}} = [\sigma(c_{neg} \cdot w)]w \quad (6.36)$$

$$\frac{\partial L_{CE}}{\partial w} = [\sigma(c_{pos} \cdot w) - 1]c_{pos} + \sum_{i=1}^k [\sigma(c_{neg_i} \cdot w)]c_{neg_i} \quad (6.37)$$

The update equations going from time step  $t$  to  $t+1$  in stochastic gradient descent are thus:

$$c_{pos}^{t+1} = c_{pos}^t - \eta[\sigma(c_{pos}^t \cdot w) - 1]w \quad (6.38)$$

$$c_{neg}^{t+1} = c_{neg}^t - \eta[\sigma(c_{neg}^t \cdot w)]w \quad (6.39)$$

$$w^{t+1} = w^t - \eta[\sigma(c_{pos} \cdot w^t) - 1]c_{pos} + \sum_{i=1}^k [\sigma(c_{neg_i} \cdot w^t)]c_{neg_i} \quad (6.40)$$

Just as in logistic regression, then, the learning algorithm starts with randomly initialized  $W$  and  $C$  matrices, and then walks through the training corpus using gradient descent to move  $W$  and  $C$  so as to maximize the objective in Eq. 6.34 by making the updates in (Eq. 6.39)-(Eq. 6.40).

target  
embedding  
context  
embedding

Recall that the skip-gram model learns **two** separate embeddings for each word  $i$ : the **target embedding**  $w_i$  and the **context embedding**  $c_i$ , stored in two matrices, the **target matrix**  $W$  and the **context matrix**  $C$ . It's common to just add them together, representing word  $i$  with the vector  $w_i + c_i$ . Alternatively we can throw away the  $C$  matrix and just represent each word  $i$  by the vector  $w_i$ .

As with the simple count-based methods like tf-idf, the context window size  $L$  affects the performance of skip-gram embeddings, and experiments often tune the parameter  $L$  on a devset.

### 6.8.3 Other kinds of static embeddings

fasttext

There are many kinds of static embeddings. An extension of word2vec, **fasttext** (Bojanowski et al., 2017), deals with unknown words and sparsity in languages with rich morphology, by using subword models. Each word in fasttext is represented as itself plus a bag of constituent n-grams, with special boundary symbols < and > added to each word. For example, with  $n = 3$  the word *where* would be represented by the sequence <*where*> plus the character n-grams:

<wh, whe, her, ere, re>

Then a skipgram embedding is learned for each constituent n-gram, and the word *where* is represented by the sum of all of the embeddings of its constituent n-grams. A fasttext open-source library, including pretrained embeddings for 157 languages, is available at <https://fasttext.cc>.

The most widely used static embedding model besides word2vec is GloVe (Pennington et al., 2014), short for Global Vectors, because the model is based on capturing global corpus statistics. GloVe is based on ratios of probabilities from the word-word co-occurrence matrix, combining the intuitions of count-based models like PPMI while also capturing the linear structures used by methods like word2vec.

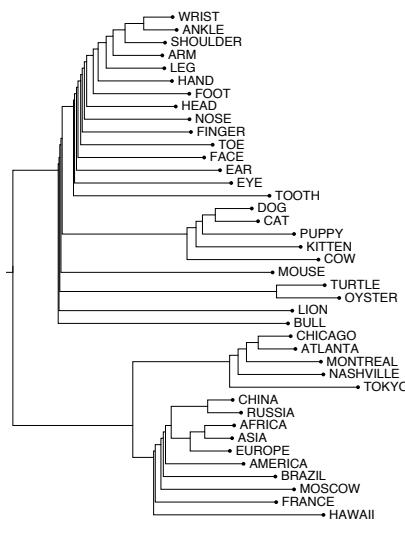
It turns out that dense embeddings like word2vec actually have an elegant mathematical relationships with sparse embeddings like PPMI, in which word2vec can be seen as implicitly optimizing a shifted version of a PPMI matrix (Levy and Goldberg, 2014c).

## 6.9 Visualizing Embeddings

“I see well in many dimensions as long as the dimensions are around two.”

The late economist Martin Shubik

Visualizing embeddings is an important goal in helping understand, apply, and improve these models of word meaning. But how can we visualize a (for example) 100-dimensional vector?



The simplest way to visualize the meaning of a word  $w$  embedded in a space is to list the most similar words to  $w$  by sorting the vectors for all words in the vocabulary by their cosine with the vector for  $w$ . For example the 7 closest words to *frog* using the GloVe embeddings are: *frogs*, *toad*, *litoria*, *leptodactylidae*, *rana*, *lizard*, and *eleutherodactylus* (Pennington et al., 2014).

Yet another visualization method is to use a clustering algorithm to show a hierarchical representation of which words are similar to others in the embedding space. The uncaptioned figure on the left uses hierarchical clustering of some embedding vectors for nouns as a visualization method (Rohde et al., 2006).

Probably the most common visualization method, however, is to project the 100 dimensions of a word down into 2 dimensions. Fig. 6.1 showed one such visualization, as does Fig. 6.16, using a projection method called t-SNE (van der Maaten and Hinton, 2008).

## 6.10 Semantic properties of embeddings

In this section we briefly summarize some of the semantic properties of embeddings that have been studied.

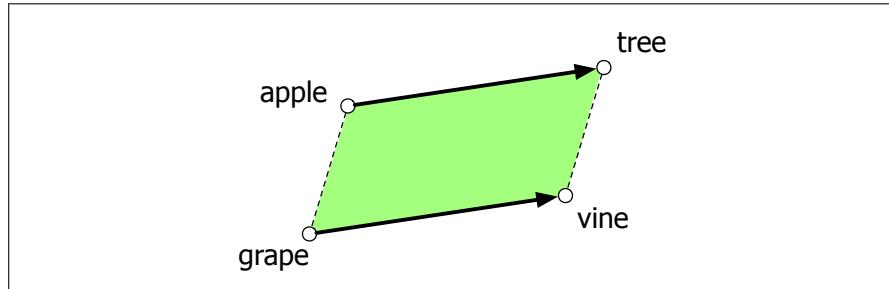
**Different types of similarity or association:** One parameter of vector semantic models that is relevant to both sparse tf-idf vectors and dense word2vec vectors is the size of the context window used to collect counts. This is generally between 1 and 10 words on each side of the target word (for a total context of 2-20 words).

The choice depends on the goals of the representation. Shorter context windows tend to lead to representations that are a bit more syntactic, since the information is coming from immediately nearby words. When the vectors are computed from short context windows, the most similar words to a target word  $w$  tend to be semantically similar words with the same parts of speech. When vectors are computed from long context windows, the highest cosine words to a target word  $w$  tend to be words that are topically related but not similar.

For example Levy and Goldberg (2014a) showed that using skip-gram with a window of  $\pm 2$ , the most similar words to the word *Hogwarts* (from the *Harry Potter* series) were names of other fictional schools: *Sunnydale* (from *Buffy the Vampire Slayer*) or *Evernight* (from a vampire series). With a window of  $\pm 5$ , the most similar words to *Hogwarts* were other words topically related to the *Harry Potter* series: *Dumbledore*, *Malfoy*, and *half-blood*.

It's also often useful to distinguish two kinds of similarity or association between words (Schütze and Pedersen, 1993). Two words have **first-order co-occurrence** (sometimes called **syntagmatic association**) if they are typically nearby each other. Thus *wrote* is a first-order associate of *book* or *poem*. Two words have **second-order co-occurrence** (sometimes called **paradigmatic association**) if they have similar neighbors. Thus *wrote* is a second-order associate of words like *said* or *remarked*.

**Analogy/Relational Similarity:** Another semantic property of embeddings is their ability to capture relational meanings. In an important early vector space model of cognition, Rumelhart and Abrahamson (1973) proposed the **parallelogram model** for solving simple analogy problems of the form  $a$  is to  $b$  as  $a^*$  is to what?. In such problems, a system given a problem like *apple:tree::grape:?*, i.e., *apple* is to *tree* as *grape* is to \_\_\_, must fill in the word *vine*. In the parallelogram model, illustrated in Fig. 6.15, the vector from the word *apple* to the word *tree* ( $\vec{\text{apple}} - \vec{\text{tree}}$ ) is added to the vector for *grape* ( $\vec{\text{grape}}$ ); the nearest word to that point is returned.



**Figure 6.15** The parallelogram model for analogy problems (Rumelhart and Abrahamson, 1973): the location of *vine* can be found by subtracting  $\vec{\text{tree}}$  from  $\vec{\text{apple}}$  and adding  $\vec{\text{grape}}$ .

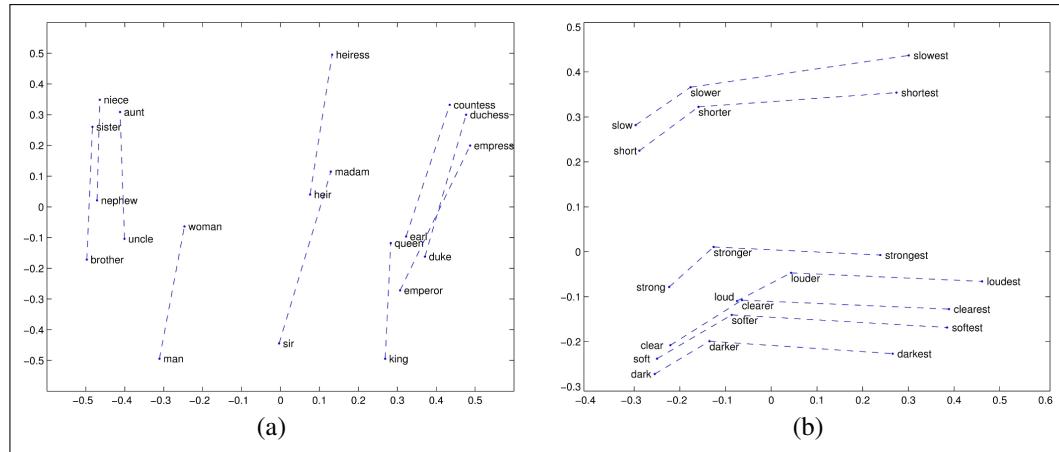
In early work with sparse embeddings, scholars showed that sparse vector models of meaning could solve such analogy problems (Turney and Littman, 2005), but the parallelogram method received more modern attention because of its success with word2vec or GloVe vectors (Mikolov et al. 2013b, Levy and Goldberg 2014b, Pennington et al. 2014). For example, the result of the expression  $(\vec{\text{king}}) - \vec{\text{man}} + \vec{\text{woman}}$  is a vector close to  $\vec{\text{queen}}$ . Similarly,  $(\vec{\text{Paris}} - \vec{\text{France}} + \vec{\text{Italy}})$  results in a vector that is close to Rome. The embedding model thus seems to be extracting representations of relations like MALE-FEMALE, or CAPITAL-CITY-OF, or even COMPARATIVE/SUPERLATIVE, as shown in Fig. 6.16 from GloVe.

For a  $a:b::a^*:b^*$  problem, meaning the algorithm is given  $a$ ,  $b$ , and  $a^*$  and must find  $b^*$ , the parallelogram method is thus:

$$\hat{b}^* = \underset{x}{\operatorname{argmax}} \operatorname{distance}(x, a^* - a + b) \quad (6.41)$$

with the distance function defined either as cosine or as Euclidean distance.

There are some caveats. For example, the closest value returned by the parallelogram algorithm in word2vec or GloVe embedding spaces is usually not in fact  $b^*$  but one of the 3 input words or their morphological variants (i.e., *cherry:red ::*



**Figure 6.16** Relational properties of the GloVe vector space, shown by projecting vectors onto two dimensions. (a)  $(\text{king}) - \overrightarrow{\text{man}} + \overrightarrow{\text{woman}}$  is close to  $\overrightarrow{\text{queen}}$ . (b) offsets seem to capture comparative and superlative morphology (Pennington et al., 2014).

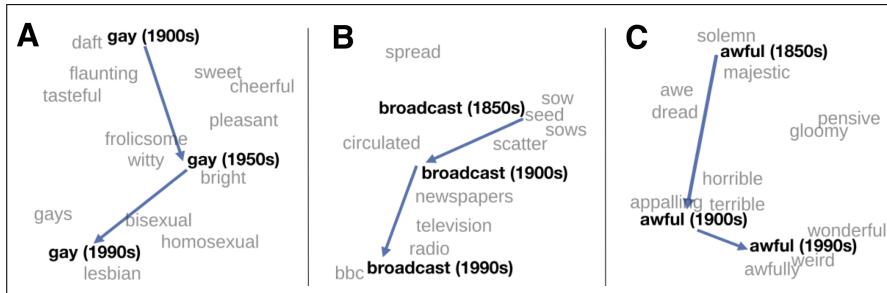
*potato:x* returns *potato* or *potatoes* instead of *brown*), so these must be explicitly excluded. Furthermore while embedding spaces perform well if the task involves frequent words, small distances, and certain relations (like relating countries with their capitals or verbs/nouns with their inflected forms), the parallelogram method with embeddings doesn't work as well for other relations (Linzen 2016, Gladkova et al. 2016, Ethayarajh et al. 2019a), and indeed Peterson et al. (2020) argue that the parallelogram method is in general too simple to model the human cognitive process of forming analogies of this kind.

### 6.10.1 Embeddings and Historical Semantics

Embeddings can also be a useful tool for studying how meaning changes over time, by computing multiple embedding spaces, each from texts written in a particular time period. For example Fig. 6.17 shows a visualization of changes in meaning in English words over the last two centuries, computed by building separate embedding spaces for each decade from historical corpora like Google N-grams (Lin et al., 2012b) and the Corpus of Historical American English (Davies, 2012).

## 6.11 Bias and Embeddings

In addition to their ability to learn word meaning from text, embeddings, alas, also reproduce the implicit biases and stereotypes that were latent in the text. As the prior section just showed, embeddings can roughly model relational similarity: ‘queen’ as the closest word to ‘king’ - ‘man’ + ‘woman’ implies the analogy *man:woman::king:queen*. But these same embedding analogies also exhibit gender stereotypes. For example Bolukbasi et al. (2016) find that the closest occupation to ‘man’ - ‘computer programmer’ + ‘woman’ in word2vec embeddings trained on news text is ‘homemaker’, and that the embeddings similarly suggest the analogy ‘father’ is to ‘doctor’ as ‘mother’ is to ‘nurse’. This could result in what Crawford (2017) and Blodgett et al. (2020) call an **allocational harm**, when a system allocates resources (jobs or credit) unfairly to different groups. For example algorithms



**Figure 6.17** A t-SNE visualization of the semantic change of 3 words in English using word2vec vectors. The modern sense of each word, and the grey context words, are computed from the most recent (modern) time-point embedding space. Earlier points are computed from earlier historical embedding spaces. The visualizations show the changes in the word *gay* from meanings related to “cheerful” or “frolicsome” to referring to homosexuality, the development of the modern “transmission” sense of *broadcast* from its original sense of sowing seeds, and the pejoration of the word *awful* as it shifted from meaning “full of awe” to meaning “terrible or appalling” (Hamilton et al., 2016b).

that use embeddings as part of a search for hiring potential programmers or doctors might thus incorrectly downweight documents with women’s names.

bias amplification

It turns out that embeddings don’t just reflect the statistics of their input, but also **amplify** bias; gendered terms become **more** gendered in embedding space than they were in the input text statistics (Zhao et al. 2017, Ethayarajh et al. 2019b, Jia et al. 2020), and biases are more exaggerated than in actual labor employment statistics (Garg et al., 2018).

representational harm

Embeddings also encode the implicit associations that are a property of human reasoning. The Implicit Association Test (Greenwald et al., 1998) measures people’s associations between concepts (like ‘flowers’ or ‘insects’) and attributes (like ‘pleasantness’ and ‘unpleasantness’) by measuring differences in the latency with which they label words in the various categories.<sup>7</sup> Using such methods, people in the United States have been shown to associate African-American names with unpleasant words (more than European-American names), male names more with mathematics and female names with the arts, and old people’s names with unpleasant words (Greenwald et al. 1998, Nosek et al. 2002a, Nosek et al. 2002b). Caliskan et al. (2017) replicated all these findings of implicit associations using GloVe vectors and cosine similarity instead of human latencies. For example African-American names like ‘Leroy’ and ‘Shaniqua’ had a higher GloVe cosine with unpleasant words while European-American names (‘Brad’, ‘Greg’, ‘Courtney’) had a higher cosine with pleasant words. These problems with embeddings are an example of a **representational harm** (Crawford 2017, Blodgett et al. 2020), which is a harm caused by a system demeaning or even ignoring some social groups. Any embedding-aware algorithm that made use of word sentiment could thus exacerbate bias against African Americans.

Recent research focuses on ways to try to remove these kinds of biases, for example by developing a transformation of the embedding space that removes gender stereotypes but preserves definitional gender (Bolukbasi et al. 2016, Zhao et al. 2017)

<sup>7</sup> Roughly speaking, if humans associate ‘flowers’ with ‘pleasantness’ and ‘insects’ with ‘unpleasantness’, when they are instructed to push a green button for ‘flowers’ (daisy, iris, lilac) and ‘pleasant words’ (love, laughter, pleasure) and a red button for ‘insects’ (flea, spider, mosquito) and ‘unpleasant words’ (abuse, hatred, ugly) they are faster than in an incongruous condition where they push a red button for ‘flowers’ and ‘unpleasant words’ and a green button for ‘insects’ and ‘pleasant words’.

or changing the training procedure (Zhao et al., 2018b). However, although these sorts of **debiasing** may reduce bias in embeddings, they do not eliminate it (Gonen and Goldberg, 2019), and this remains an open problem.

Historical embeddings are also being used to measure biases in the past. Garg et al. (2018) used embeddings from historical texts to measure the association between embeddings for occupations and embeddings for names of various ethnicities or genders (for example the relative cosine similarity of women’s names versus men’s to occupation words like ‘librarian’ or ‘carpenter’) across the 20th century. They found that the cosines correlate with the empirical historical percentages of women or ethnic groups in those occupations. Historical embeddings also replicated old surveys of ethnic stereotypes; the tendency of experimental participants in 1933 to associate adjectives like ‘industrious’ or ‘superstitious’ with, e.g., Chinese ethnicity, correlates with the cosine between Chinese last names and those adjectives using embeddings trained on 1930s text. They also were able to document historical gender biases, such as the fact that embeddings for adjectives related to competence ('smart', 'wise', 'thoughtful', 'resourceful') had a higher cosine with male than female words, and showed that this bias has been slowly decreasing since 1960. We return in later chapters to this question about the role of bias in natural language processing.

## 6.12 Evaluating Vector Models

The most important evaluation metric for vector models is extrinsic evaluation on tasks, i.e., using vectors in an NLP task and seeing whether this improves performance over some other model.

Nonetheless it is useful to have intrinsic evaluations. The most common metric is to test their performance on **similarity**, computing the correlation between an algorithm’s word similarity scores and word similarity ratings assigned by humans. **WordSim-353** (Finkelstein et al., 2002) is a commonly used set of ratings from 0 to 10 for 353 noun pairs; for example (*plane*, *car*) had an average score of 5.77. **SimLex-999** (Hill et al., 2015) is a more difficult dataset that quantifies similarity (*cup*, *mug*) rather than relatedness (*cup*, *coffee*), and including both concrete and abstract adjective, noun and verb pairs. The **TOEFL dataset** is a set of 80 questions, each consisting of a target word with 4 additional word choices; the task is to choose which is the correct synonym, as in the example: *Levied is closest in meaning to: imposed, believed, requested, correlated* (Landauer and Dumais, 1997). All of these datasets present words without context.

Slightly more realistic are intrinsic similarity tasks that include context. The Stanford Contextual Word Similarity (SCWS) dataset (Huang et al., 2012) and the Word-in-Context (WiC) dataset (Pilehvar and Camacho-Collados, 2019) offer richer evaluation scenarios. SCWS gives human judgments on 2,003 pairs of words in their sentential context, while WiC gives target words in two sentential contexts that are either in the same or different senses; see Section 18.5.3. The *semantic textual similarity* task (Agirre et al. 2012, Agirre et al. 2015) evaluates the performance of sentence-level similarity algorithms, consisting of a set of pairs of sentences, each pair with human-labeled similarity scores.

Another task used for evaluation is the analogy task, discussed on page 119, where the system has to solve problems of the form  $a$  is to  $b$  as  $a^*$  is to  $b^*$ , given  $a$ ,  $b$ , and  $a^*$  and having to find  $b^*$  (Turney and Littman, 2005). A number of sets of tuples

have been created for this task, (Mikolov et al. 2013, Mikolov et al. 2013b, Gladkova et al. 2016), covering morphology (*city:cities::child:children*), lexicographic relations (*leg:table::spout::teapot*) and encyclopedia relations (*Beijing:China::Dublin:Ireland*), some drawing from the SemEval-2012 Task 2 dataset of 79 different relations (Jurgen et al., 2012).

All embedding algorithms suffer from inherent variability. For example because of randomness in the initialization and the random negative sampling, algorithms like word2vec may produce different results even from the same dataset, and individual documents in a collection may strongly impact the resulting embeddings (Hellrich and Hahn 2016, Antoniak and Mimno 2018). When embeddings are used to study word associations in particular corpora, therefore, it is best practice to train multiple embeddings with bootstrap sampling over documents and average the results (Antoniak and Mimno, 2018).

## 6.13 Summary

- In vector semantics, a word is modeled as a vector—a point in high-dimensional space, also called an **embedding**. In this chapter we focus on **static embeddings**, in which each word is mapped to a fixed embedding.
- Vector semantic models fall into two classes: **sparse** and **dense**. In sparse models each dimension corresponds to a word in the vocabulary  $V$  and cells are functions of **co-occurrence counts**. The **term-document** matrix has a row for each word (**term**) in the vocabulary and a column for each document. The **word-context** or **term-term** matrix has a row for each (target) word in the vocabulary and a column for each context term in the vocabulary. Two sparse weightings are common: the **tf-idf** weighting which weights each cell by its **term frequency** and **inverse document frequency**, and **PPMI** (pointwise positive mutual information) most common for word-context matrices.
- Dense vector models have dimensionality 50–1000. **Word2vec** algorithms like **skip-gram** are a popular way to compute dense embeddings. Skip-gram trains a logistic regression classifier to compute the probability that two words are ‘likely to occur nearby in text’. This probability is computed from the dot product between the embeddings for the two words.
- Skip-gram uses stochastic gradient descent to train the classifier, by learning embeddings that have a high dot product with embeddings of words that occur nearby and a low dot product with noise words.
- Other important embedding algorithms include **GloVe**, a method based on ratios of word co-occurrence probabilities.
- Whether using sparse or dense vectors, word and document similarities are computed by some function of the **dot product** between vectors. The cosine of two vectors—a normalized dot product—is the most popular such metric.

## Bibliographical and Historical Notes

The idea of vector semantics arose out of research in the 1950s in three distinct fields: linguistics, psychology, and computer science, each of which contributed a

fundamental aspect of the model.

The idea that meaning is related to the distribution of words in context was widespread in linguistic theory of the 1950s, among distributionalists like Zellig Harris, Martin Joos, and J. R. Firth, and semioticians like Thomas Sebeok. As [Joos \(1950\)](#) put it,

the linguist’s “meaning” of a morpheme... is by definition the set of conditional probabilities of its occurrence in context with all other morphemes.

The idea that the meaning of a word might be modeled as a point in a multi-dimensional semantic space came from psychologists like Charles E. Osgood, who had been studying how people responded to the meaning of words by assigning values along scales like *happy/sad* or *hard/soft*. [Osgood et al. \(1957\)](#) proposed that the meaning of a word in general could be modeled as a point in a multidimensional Euclidean space, and that the similarity of meaning between two words could be modeled as the distance between these points in the space.

**mechanical indexing**

A final intellectual source in the 1950s and early 1960s was the field then called **mechanical indexing**, now known as **information retrieval**. In what became known as the **vector space model** for information retrieval ([Salton 1971](#), [Sparck Jones 1986](#)), researchers demonstrated new ways to define the meaning of words in terms of vectors ([Switzer, 1965](#)), and refined methods for word similarity based on measures of statistical association between words like mutual information ([Giuliano, 1965](#)) and idf ([Sparck Jones, 1972](#)), and showed that the meaning of documents could be represented in the same vector spaces used for words.

**semantic feature**

Some of the philosophical underpinning of the distributional way of thinking came from the late writings of the philosopher Wittgenstein, who was skeptical of the possibility of building a completely formal theory of meaning definitions for each word, suggesting instead that “the meaning of a word is its use in the language” ([Wittgenstein, 1953, PI 43](#)). That is, instead of using some logical language to define each word, or drawing on denotations or truth values, Wittgenstein’s idea is that we should define a word by how it is used by people in speaking and understanding in their day-to-day interactions, thus prefiguring the movement toward embodied and experiential models in linguistics and NLP ([Glenberg and Robertson 2000](#), [Lake and Murphy 2020](#), [Bisk et al. 2020](#), [Bender and Koller 2020](#)).

More distantly related is the idea of defining words by a vector of discrete features, which has roots at least as far back as Descartes and Leibniz ([Wierzbicka 1992](#), [Wierzbicka 1996](#)). By the middle of the 20th century, beginning with the work of Hjelmslev ([Hjelmslev, 1969](#)) (originally 1943) and fleshed out in early models of generative grammar ([Katz and Fodor, 1963](#)), the idea arose of representing meaning with **semantic features**, symbols that represent some sort of primitive meaning. For example words like *hen*, *rooster*, or *chick*, have something in common (they all describe chickens) and something different (their age and sex), representable as:

<i>hen</i>	+female, +chicken, +adult
<i>rooster</i>	-female, +chicken, +adult
<i>chick</i>	+chicken, -adult

The dimensions used by vector models of meaning to define words, however, are only abstractly related to this idea of a small fixed number of hand-built dimensions. Nonetheless, there has been some attempt to show that certain dimensions of embedding models do contribute some specific compositional aspect of meaning like these early semantic features.

The use of dense vectors to model word meaning, and indeed the term **embedding**, grew out of the **latent semantic indexing** (LSI) model ([Deerwester et al.,](#)

**SVD** 1988) recast as **LSA (latent semantic analysis)** (Deerwester et al., 1990). In LSA **singular value decomposition—SVD**—is applied to a term-document matrix (each cell weighted by log frequency and normalized by entropy), and then the first 300 dimensions are used as the LSA embedding. Singular Value Decomposition (SVD) is a method for finding the most important dimensions of a data set, those dimensions along which the data varies the most. LSA was then quickly widely applied: as a cognitive model Landauer and Dumais (1997), and for tasks like spell checking (Jones and Martin, 1997), language modeling (Bellegarda 1997, Coccaro and Jurafsky 1998, Bellegarda 2000) morphology induction (Schone and Jurafsky 2000, Schone and Jurafsky 2001b), multiword expressions (MWEs) (Schone and Jurafsky, 2001a), and essay grading (Rehder et al., 1998). Related models were simultaneously developed and applied to word sense disambiguation by Schütze (1992b). LSA also led to the earliest use of embeddings to represent words in a probabilistic classifier, in the logistic regression document router of Schütze et al. (1995). The idea of SVD on the term-term matrix (rather than the term-document matrix) as a model of meaning for NLP was proposed soon after LSA by Schütze (1992b). Schütze applied the low-rank (97-dimensional) embeddings produced by SVD to the task of word sense disambiguation, analyzed the resulting semantic space, and also suggested possible techniques like dropping high-order dimensions. See Schütze (1997a).

A number of alternative matrix models followed on from the early SVD work, including Probabilistic Latent Semantic Indexing (PLSI) (Hofmann, 1999), Latent Dirichlet Allocation (LDA) (Blei et al., 2003), and Non-negative Matrix Factorization (NMF) (Lee and Seung, 1999).

The LSA community seems to have first used the word “embedding” in Landauer et al. (1997), in a variant of its mathematical meaning as a mapping from one space or mathematical structure to another. In LSA, the word embedding seems to have described the mapping from the space of sparse count vectors to the latent space of SVD dense vectors. Although the word thus originally meant the mapping from one space to another, it has metonymically shifted to mean the resulting dense vector in the latent space, and it is in this sense that we currently use the word.

By the next decade, Bengio et al. (2003) and Bengio et al. (2006) showed that neural language models could also be used to develop embeddings as part of the task of word prediction. Collobert and Weston (2007), Collobert and Weston (2008), and Collobert et al. (2011) then demonstrated that embeddings could be used to represent word meanings for a number of NLP tasks. Turian et al. (2010) compared the value of different kinds of embeddings for different NLP tasks. Mikolov et al. (2011) showed that recurrent neural nets could be used as language models. The idea of simplifying the hidden layer of these neural net language models to create the skip-gram (and also CBOW) algorithms was proposed by Mikolov et al. (2013). The negative sampling training algorithm was proposed in Mikolov et al. (2013a). There are numerous surveys of static embeddings and their parameterizations (Bullinaria and Levy 2007, Bullinaria and Levy 2012, Lapesa and Evert 2014, Kiela and Clark 2014, Levy et al. 2015).

See Manning et al. (2008) for a deeper understanding of the role of vectors in information retrieval, including how to compare queries with documents, more details on tf-idf, and issues of scaling to very large datasets. See Kim (2019) for a clear and comprehensive tutorial on word2vec. Cruse (2004) is a useful introductory linguistic text on lexical semantics.

## Exercises

# Neural Networks and Neural Language Models

“[M]achines of this character can behave in a very complicated manner when the number of units is large.”

Alan Turing (1948) “Intelligent Machines”, page 6

Neural networks are a fundamental computational tool for language processing, and a very old one. They are called neural because their origins lie in the **McCulloch-Pitts neuron** (McCulloch and Pitts, 1943), a simplified model of the human neuron as a kind of computing element that could be described in terms of propositional logic. But the modern use in language processing no longer draws on these early biological inspirations.

**feedforward**

**deep learning**

Instead, a modern neural network is a network of small computing units, each of which takes a vector of input values and produces a single output value. In this chapter we introduce the neural net applied to classification. The architecture we introduce is called a **feedforward network** because the computation proceeds iteratively from one layer of units to the next. The use of modern neural nets is often called **deep learning**, because modern networks are often **deep** (have many layers).

Neural networks share much of the same mathematics as logistic regression. But neural networks are a more powerful classifier than logistic regression, and indeed a minimal neural network (technically one with a single ‘hidden layer’) can be shown to learn any function.

Neural net classifiers are different from logistic regression in another way. With logistic regression, we applied the regression classifier to many different tasks by developing many rich kinds of feature templates based on domain knowledge. When working with neural networks, it is more common to avoid most uses of rich hand-derived features, instead building neural networks that take raw words as inputs and learn to induce features as part of the process of learning to classify. We saw examples of this kind of representation learning for embeddings in Chapter 6. Nets that are very deep are particularly good at representation learning. For that reason deep neural nets are the right tool for large scale problems that offer sufficient data to learn features automatically.

In this chapter we’ll introduce feedforward networks as classifiers, and also apply them to the simple task of language modeling: assigning probabilities to word sequences and predicting upcoming words. In subsequent chapters we’ll introduce many other aspects of neural models, such as **recurrent neural networks** and the **Transformer** (Chapter 9), contextual embeddings like **BERT** (Chapter 10), and **encoder-decoder** models and **attention** (Chapter 11).

## 7.1 Units

The building block of a neural network is a single computational unit. A unit takes a set of real valued numbers as input, performs some computation on them, and produces an output.

**bias term** At its heart, a neural unit is taking a weighted sum of its inputs, with one additional term in the sum called a **bias term**. Given a set of inputs  $x_1 \dots x_n$ , a unit has a set of corresponding weights  $w_1 \dots w_n$  and a bias  $b$ , so the weighted sum  $z$  can be represented as:

$$z = b + \sum_i w_i x_i \quad (7.1)$$

**vector** Often it's more convenient to express this weighted sum using vector notation; recall from linear algebra that a **vector** is, at heart, just a list or array of numbers. Thus we'll talk about  $z$  in terms of a weight vector  $w$ , a scalar bias  $b$ , and an input vector  $x$ , and we'll replace the sum with the convenient **dot product**:

$$z = w \cdot x + b \quad (7.2)$$

As defined in Eq. 7.2,  $z$  is just a real valued number.

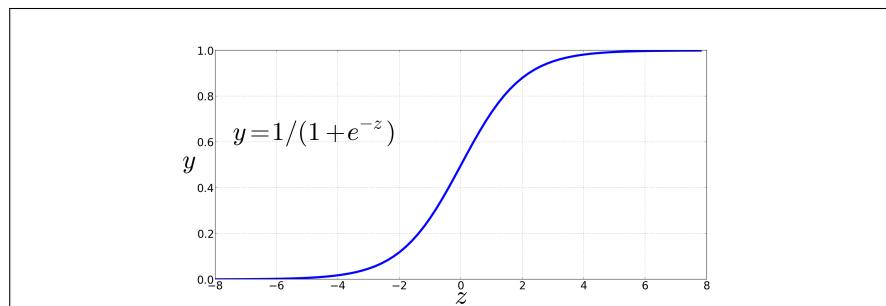
**activation** Finally, instead of using  $z$ , a linear function of  $x$ , as the output, neural units apply a non-linear function  $f$  to  $z$ . We will refer to the output of this function as the **activation** value for the unit,  $a$ . Since we are just modeling a single unit, the activation for the node is in fact the final output of the network, which we'll generally call  $y$ . So the value  $y$  is defined as:

$$y = a = f(z)$$

We'll discuss three popular non-linear functions  $f()$  below (the sigmoid, the tanh, and the rectified linear ReLU) but it's pedagogically convenient to start with the **sigmoid** function since we saw it in Chapter 5:

$$y = \sigma(z) = \frac{1}{1 + e^{-z}} \quad (7.3)$$

The sigmoid (shown in Fig. 7.1) has a number of advantages; it maps the output into the range  $[0, 1]$ , which is useful in squashing outliers toward 0 or 1. And it's differentiable, which as we saw in Section 5.8 will be handy for learning.

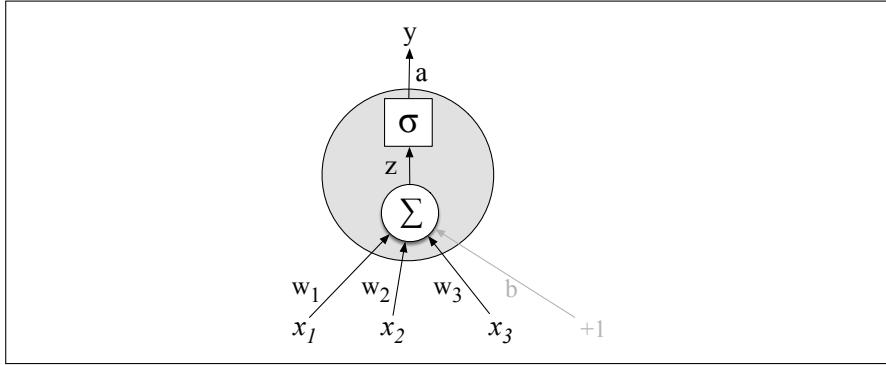


**Figure 7.1** The sigmoid function takes a real value and maps it to the range  $[0, 1]$ . It is nearly linear around 0 but outlier values get squashed toward 0 or 1.

Substituting Eq. 7.2 into Eq. 7.3 gives us the output of a neural unit:

$$y = \sigma(w \cdot x + b) = \frac{1}{1 + \exp(-(w \cdot x + b))} \quad (7.4)$$

Fig. 7.2 shows a final schematic of a basic neural unit. In this example the unit takes 3 input values  $x_1, x_2$ , and  $x_3$ , and computes a weighted sum, multiplying each value by a weight ( $w_1, w_2$ , and  $w_3$ , respectively), adds them to a bias term  $b$ , and then passes the resulting sum through a sigmoid function to result in a number between 0 and 1.



**Figure 7.2** A neural unit, taking 3 inputs  $x_1, x_2$ , and  $x_3$  (and a bias  $b$  that we represent as a weight for an input clamped at +1) and producing an output  $y$ . We include some convenient intermediate variables: the output of the summation,  $z$ , and the output of the sigmoid,  $a$ . In this case the output of the unit  $y$  is the same as  $a$ , but in deeper networks we'll reserve  $y$  to mean the final output of the entire network, leaving  $a$  as the activation of an individual node.

Let's walk through an example just to get an intuition. Let's suppose we have a unit with the following weight vector and bias:

$$\begin{aligned} w &= [0.2, 0.3, 0.9] \\ b &= 0.5 \end{aligned}$$

What would this unit do with the following input vector:

$$x = [0.5, 0.6, 0.1]$$

The resulting output  $y$  would be:

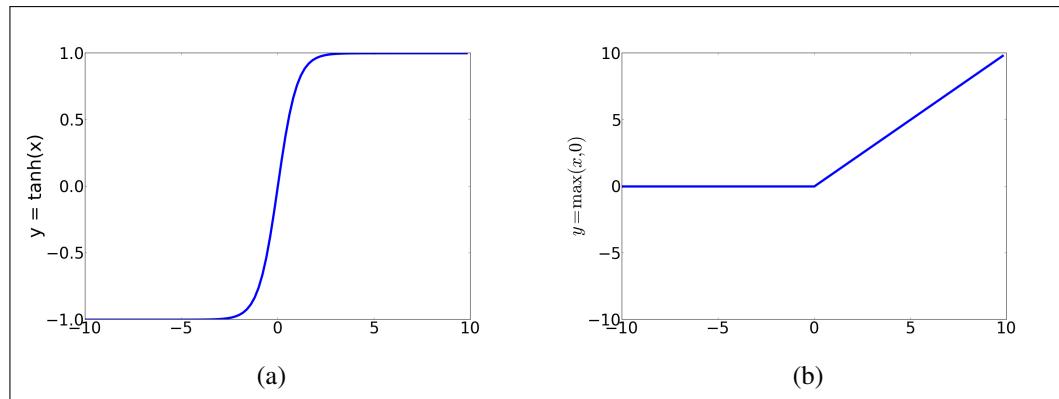
$$y = \sigma(w \cdot x + b) = \frac{1}{1 + e^{-(w \cdot x + b)}} = \frac{1}{1 + e^{-(.5*.2+.6*.3+.1*.9+.5)}} = \frac{1}{1 + e^{-0.87}} = .70$$

**tanh** In practice, the sigmoid is not commonly used as an activation function. A function that is very similar but almost always better is the **tanh** function shown in Fig. 7.3a; tanh is a variant of the sigmoid that ranges from -1 to +1:

$$y = \frac{e^z - e^{-z}}{e^z + e^{-z}} \quad (7.5)$$

**ReLU** The simplest activation function, and perhaps the most commonly used, is the rectified linear unit, also called the **ReLU**, shown in Fig. 7.3b. It's just the same as  $x$  when  $x$  is positive, and 0 otherwise:

$$y = \max(x, 0) \quad (7.6)$$



**Figure 7.3** The tanh and ReLU activation functions.

**saturated** high values of  $z$  result in values of  $y$  that are **saturated**, i.e., extremely close to 1, and have derivatives very close to 0. Zero derivatives cause problems for learning, because as we'll see in Section 7.4, we'll train networks by propagating an error signal backwards, multiplying gradients (partial derivatives) from each layer of the network; gradients that are almost 0 cause the error signal to get smaller and smaller until it is too small to be used for training, a problem called the **vanishing gradient** problem. Rectifiers don't have this problem, since the derivative of ReLU for high values of  $z$  is 1 rather than very close to 0.

## 7.2 The XOR problem

Early in the history of neural networks it was realized that the power of neural networks, as with the real neurons that inspired them, comes from combining these units into larger networks.

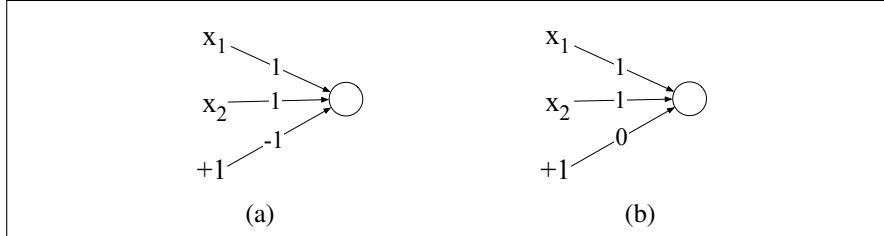
One of the most clever demonstrations of the need for multi-layer networks was the proof by [Minsky and Papert \(1969\)](#) that a single neural unit cannot compute some very simple functions of its input. Consider the task of computing elementary logical functions of two inputs, like AND, OR, and XOR. As a reminder, here are the truth tables for those functions:

This example was first shown for the **perceptron**, which is a very simple neural unit that has a binary output and does **not** have a non-linear activation function. The

output  $y$  of a perceptron is 0 or 1, and is computed as follows (using the same weight  $w$ , input  $x$ , and bias  $b$  as in Eq. 7.2):

$$y = \begin{cases} 0, & \text{if } w \cdot x + b \leq 0 \\ 1, & \text{if } w \cdot x + b > 0 \end{cases} \quad (7.7)$$

It's very easy to build a perceptron that can compute the logical AND and OR functions of its binary inputs; Fig. 7.4 shows the necessary weights.



**Figure 7.4** The weights  $w$  and bias  $b$  for perceptrons for computing logical functions. The inputs are shown as  $x_1$  and  $x_2$  and the bias as a special node with value +1 which is multiplied with the bias weight  $b$ . (a) logical AND, showing weights  $w_1 = 1$  and  $w_2 = 1$  and bias weight  $b = -1$ . (b) logical OR, showing weights  $w_1 = 1$  and  $w_2 = 1$  and bias weight  $b = 0$ . These weights/biases are just one from an infinite number of possible sets of weights and biases that would implement the functions.

It turns out, however, that it's not possible to build a perceptron to compute logical XOR! (It's worth spending a moment to give it a try!)

The intuition behind this important result relies on understanding that a perceptron is a linear classifier. For a two-dimensional input  $x_1$  and  $x_2$ , the perception equation,  $w_1x_1 + w_2x_2 + b = 0$  is the equation of a line. (We can see this by putting it in the standard linear format:  $x_2 = (-w_1/w_2)x_1 + (-b/w_2)$ .) This line acts as a **decision boundary** in two-dimensional space in which the output 0 is assigned to all inputs lying on one side of the line, and the output 1 to all input points lying on the other side of the line. If we had more than 2 inputs, the decision boundary becomes a hyperplane instead of a line, but the idea is the same, separating the space into two categories.

decision boundary

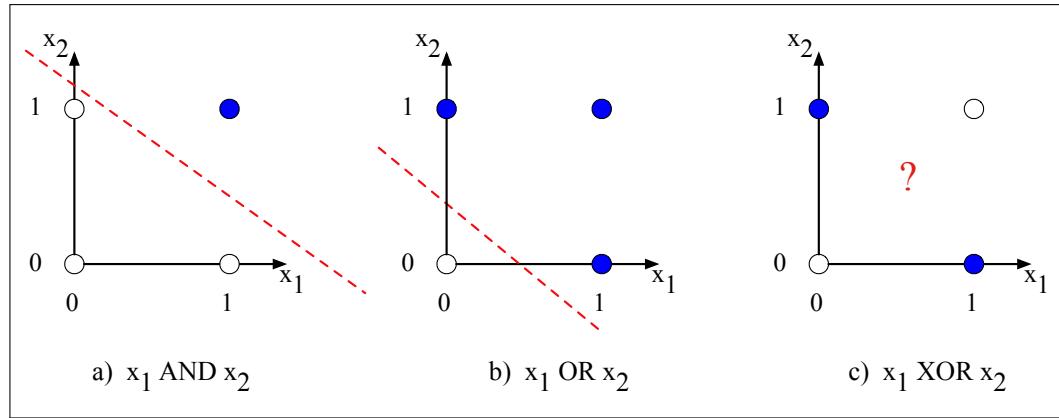
linearly separable

Fig. 7.5 shows the possible logical inputs (00, 01, 10, and 11) and the line drawn by one possible set of parameters for an AND and an OR classifier. Notice that there is simply no way to draw a line that separates the positive cases of XOR (01 and 10) from the negative cases (00 and 11). We say that XOR is not a **linearly separable** function. Of course we could draw a boundary with a curve, or some other function, but not a single line.

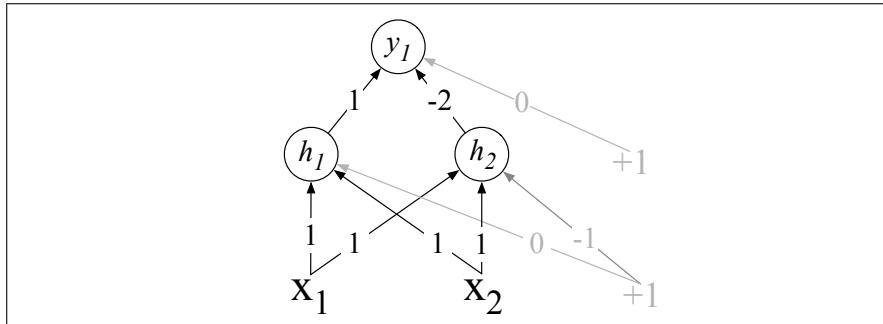
### 7.2.1 The solution: neural networks

While the XOR function cannot be calculated by a single perceptron, it can be calculated by a layered network of units. Let's see an example of how to do this from Goodfellow et al. (2016) that computes XOR using two layers of ReLU-based units. Fig. 7.6 shows a figure with the input being processed by two layers of neural units. The middle layer (called  $h$ ) has two units, and the output layer (called  $y$ ) has one unit. A set of weights and biases are shown for each ReLU that correctly computes the XOR function.

Let's walk through what happens with the input  $x = [0\ 0]$ . If we multiply each input value by the appropriate weight, sum, and then add the bias  $b$ , we get the



**Figure 7.5** The functions AND, OR, and XOR, represented with input  $x_1$  on the x-axis and input  $x_2$  on the y axis. Filled circles represent perceptron outputs of 1, and white circles represent perceptron outputs of 0. There is no way to draw a line that correctly separates the two categories for XOR. Figure styled after Russell and Norvig (2002).

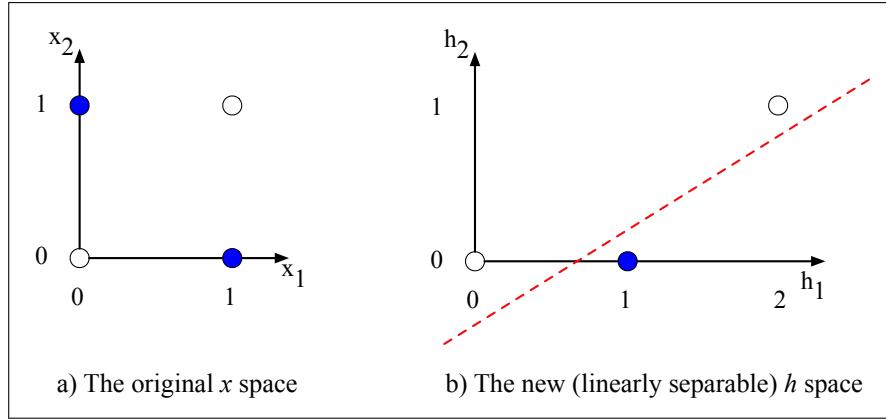


**Figure 7.6** XOR solution after Goodfellow et al. (2016). There are three ReLU units, in two layers; we've called them  $h_1$ ,  $h_2$  ( $h$  for “hidden layer”) and  $y_1$ . As before, the numbers on the arrows represent the weights  $w$  for each unit, and we represent the bias  $b$  as a weight on a unit clamped to  $+1$ , with the bias weights/units in gray.

vector  $[0 \ 1]$ , and we then apply the rectified linear transformation to give the output of the  $h$  layer as  $[0 \ 0]$ . Now we once again multiply by the weights, sum, and add the bias (0 in this case) resulting in the value 0. The reader should work through the computation of the remaining 3 possible input pairs to see that the resulting  $y$  values are 1 for the inputs  $[0 \ 1]$  and  $[1 \ 0]$  and 0 for  $[0 \ 0]$  and  $[1 \ 1]$ .

It's also instructive to look at the intermediate results, the outputs of the two hidden nodes  $h_1$  and  $h_2$ . We showed in the previous paragraph that the  $h$  vector for the inputs  $x = [0 \ 0]$  was  $[0 \ 0]$ . Fig. 7.7b shows the values of the  $h$  layer for all 4 inputs. Notice that hidden representations of the two input points  $x = [0 \ 1]$  and  $x = [1 \ 0]$  (the two cases with XOR output = 1) are merged to the single point  $h = [1 \ 0]$ . The merger makes it easy to linearly separate the positive and negative cases of XOR. In other words, we can view the hidden layer of the network as forming a representation for the input.

In this example we just stipulated the weights in Fig. 7.6. But for real examples the weights for neural networks are learned automatically using the error backpropagation algorithm to be introduced in Section 7.4. That means the hidden layers will learn to form useful representations. This intuition, that neural networks can automatically learn useful representations of the input, is one of their key advantages,



**Figure 7.7** The hidden layer forming a new representation of the input. (b) shows the representation of the hidden layer,  $h$ , compared to the original input representation  $x$  in (a). Notice that the input point  $[0\ 1]$  has been collapsed with the input point  $[1\ 0]$ , making it possible to linearly separate the positive and negative cases of XOR. After Goodfellow et al. (2016).

and one that we will return to again and again in later chapters.

Note that the solution to the XOR problem requires a network of units with non-linear activation functions. A network made up of simple linear (perceptron) units cannot solve the XOR problem. This is because a network formed by many layers of purely linear units can always be reduced (i.e., shown to be computationally identical to) a single layer of linear units with appropriate weights, and we've already shown (visually, in Fig. 7.5) that a single unit cannot solve the XOR problem.

## 7.3 Feed-Forward Neural Networks

feedforward  
network

Let's now walk through a slightly more formal presentation of the simplest kind of neural network, the **feedforward network**. A feedforward network is a multilayer network in which the units are connected with no cycles; the outputs from units in each layer are passed to units in the next higher layer, and no outputs are passed back to lower layers. (In Chapter 9 we'll introduce networks with cycles, called **recurrent neural networks**.)

multi-layer  
perceptrons  
MLP

For historical reasons multilayer networks, especially feedforward networks, are sometimes called **multi-layer perceptrons** (or MLPs); this is a technical misnomer, since the units in modern multilayer networks aren't perceptrons (perceptrons are purely linear, but modern networks are made up of units with non-linearities like sigmoids), but at some point the name stuck.

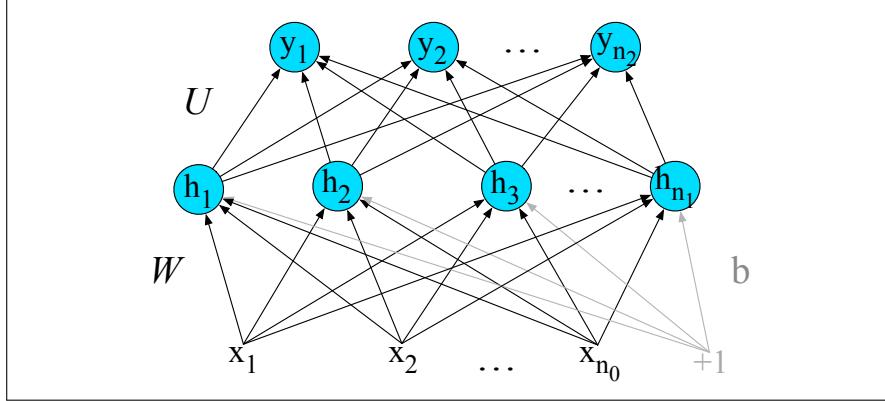
Simple feedforward networks have three kinds of nodes: input units, hidden units, and output units. Fig. 7.8 shows a picture.

hidden layer

The input units are simply scalar values just as we saw in Fig. 7.2.

fully-connected

The core of the neural network is the **hidden layer** formed of **hidden units**, each of which is a neural unit as described in Section 7.1, taking a weighted sum of its inputs and then applying a non-linearity. In the standard architecture, each layer is **fully-connected**, meaning that each unit in each layer takes as input the outputs from all the units in the previous layer, and there is a link between every pair of units from two adjacent layers. Thus each hidden unit sums over all the input units.



**Figure 7.8** A simple 2-layer feedforward network, with one hidden layer, one output layer, and one input layer (the input layer is usually not counted when enumerating layers).

Recall that a single hidden unit has parameters  $w$  (the weight vector) and  $b$  (the bias scalar). We represent the parameters for the entire hidden layer by combining the weight vector  $w_i$  and bias  $b_i$  for each unit  $i$  into a single weight matrix  $W$  and a single bias vector  $b$  for the whole layer (see Fig. 7.8). Each element  $W_{ji}$  of the weight matrix  $W$  represents the weight of the connection from the  $i$ th input unit  $x_i$  to the  $j$ th hidden unit  $h_j$ .

The advantage of using a single matrix  $W$  for the weights of the entire layer is that now the hidden layer computation for a feedforward network can be done very efficiently with simple matrix operations. In fact, the computation only has three steps: multiplying the weight matrix by the input vector  $x$ , adding the bias vector  $b$ , and applying the activation function  $g$  (such as the sigmoid, tanh, or ReLU activation function defined above).

The output of the hidden layer, the vector  $h$ , is thus the following, using the sigmoid function  $\sigma$ :

$$h = \sigma(Wx + b) \quad (7.8)$$

Notice that we're applying the  $\sigma$  function here to a vector, while in Eq. 7.3 it was applied to a scalar. We're thus allowing  $\sigma(\cdot)$ , and indeed any activation function  $g(\cdot)$ , to apply to a vector element-wise, so  $g[z_1, z_2, z_3] = [g(z_1), g(z_2), g(z_3)]$ .

Let's introduce some constants to represent the dimensionalities of these vectors and matrices. We'll refer to the input layer as layer 0 of the network, and have  $n_0$  represent the number of inputs, so  $x$  is a vector of real numbers of dimension  $n_0$ , or more formally  $x \in \mathbb{R}^{n_0}$ , a column vector of dimensionality  $[n_0, 1]$ . Let's call the hidden layer layer 1 and the output layer layer 2. The hidden layer has dimensionality  $n_1$ , so  $h \in \mathbb{R}^{n_1}$  and also  $b \in \mathbb{R}^{n_1}$  (since each hidden unit can take a different bias value). And the weight matrix  $W$  has dimensionality  $W \in \mathbb{R}^{n_1 \times n_0}$ , i.e.  $[n_1, n_0]$ .

Take a moment to convince yourself that the matrix multiplication in Eq. 7.8 will compute the value of each  $h_j$  as  $\sigma\left(\sum_{i=1}^{n_0} W_{ji}x_i + b_j\right)$ .

As we saw in Section 7.2, the resulting value  $h$  (for *hidden* but also for *hypothesis*) forms a *representation* of the input. The role of the output layer is to take this new representation  $h$  and compute a final output. This output could be a real-valued number, but in many cases the goal of the network is to make some sort of classification decision, and so we will focus on the case of classification.

If we are doing a binary task like sentiment classification, we might have a single output node, and its value  $y$  is the probability of positive versus negative sentiment.

If we are doing multinomial classification, such as assigning a part-of-speech tag, we might have one output node for each potential part-of-speech, whose output value is the probability of that part-of-speech, and the values of all the output nodes must sum to one. The output layer thus gives a probability distribution across the output nodes.

Let's see how this happens. Like the hidden layer, the output layer has a weight matrix (let's call it  $U$ ), but some models don't include a bias vector  $b$  in the output layer, so we'll simplify by eliminating the bias vector in this example. The weight matrix is multiplied by its input vector ( $h$ ) to produce the intermediate output  $z$ .

$$z = Uh$$

There are  $n_2$  output nodes, so  $z \in \mathbb{R}^{n_2}$ , weight matrix  $U$  has dimensionality  $U \in \mathbb{R}^{n_2 \times n_1}$ , and element  $U_{ij}$  is the weight from unit  $j$  in the hidden layer to unit  $i$  in the output layer.

**normalizing**  
**softmax**

However,  $z$  can't be the output of the classifier, since it's a vector of real-valued numbers, while what we need for classification is a vector of probabilities. There is a convenient function for **normalizing** a vector of real values, by which we mean converting it to a vector that encodes a probability distribution (all the numbers lie between 0 and 1 and sum to 1): the **softmax** function that we saw on page 90 of Chapter 5. For a vector  $z$  of dimensionality  $d$ , the softmax is defined as:

$$\text{softmax}(z_i) = \frac{e^{z_i}}{\sum_{j=1}^d e^{z_j}} \quad 1 \leq i \leq d \quad (7.9)$$

Thus for example given a vector  $z=[0.6, 1.1, -1.5, 1.2, 3.2, -1.1]$ ,  $\text{softmax}(z)$  is  $[0.055, 0.090, 0.0067, 0.10, 0.74, 0.010]$ .

You may recall that softmax was exactly what is used to create a probability distribution from a vector of real-valued numbers (computed from summing weights times features) in logistic regression in Chapter 5.

That means we can think of a neural network classifier with one hidden layer as building a vector  $h$  which is a hidden layer representation of the input, and then running standard logistic regression on the features that the network develops in  $h$ . By contrast, in Chapter 5 the features were mainly designed by hand via feature templates. So a neural network is like logistic regression, but (a) with many layers, since a deep neural network is like layer after layer of logistic regression classifiers, and (b) rather than forming the features by feature templates, the prior layers of the network induce the feature representations themselves.

Here are the final equations for a feedforward network with a single hidden layer, which takes an input vector  $x$ , outputs a probability distribution  $y$ , and is parameterized by weight matrices  $W$  and  $U$  and a bias vector  $b$ :

$$\begin{aligned} h &= \sigma(Wx + b) \\ z &= Uh \\ y &= \text{softmax}(z) \end{aligned} \quad (7.10)$$

We'll call this network a 2-layer network (we traditionally don't count the input layer when numbering layers, but do count the output layer). So by this terminology logistic regression is a 1-layer network.

Let's now set up some notation to make it easier to talk about deeper networks of depth more than 2. We'll use superscripts in square brackets to mean layer numbers, starting at 0 for the input layer. So  $W^{[1]}$  will mean the weight matrix for the

(first) hidden layer, and  $b^{[1]}$  will mean the bias vector for the (first) hidden layer.  $n_j$  will mean the number of units at layer  $j$ . We'll use  $g(\cdot)$  to stand for the activation function, which will tend to be ReLU or tanh for intermediate layers and softmax for output layers. We'll use  $a^{[i]}$  to mean the output from layer  $i$ , and  $z^{[i]}$  to mean the combination of weights and biases  $W^{[i]}a^{[i-1]} + b^{[i]}$ . The 0th layer is for inputs, so the inputs  $x$  we'll refer to more generally as  $a^{[0]}$ .

Thus we can re-represent our 2-layer net from Eq. 7.10 as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} z^{[1]} &= W^{[1]}a^{[0]} + b^{[1]} \\ a^{[1]} &= g^{[1]}(z^{[1]}) \\ z^{[2]} &= W^{[2]}a^{[1]} + b^{[2]} \\ a^{[2]} &= g^{[2]}(z^{[2]}) \\ \hat{y} &= a^{[2]} \end{aligned} \tag{7.11}$$

Note that with this notation, the equations for the computation done at each layer are the same. The algorithm for computing the forward step in an  $n$ -layer feedforward network, given the input vector  $a^{[0]}$  is thus simply:

```
for i in 1..n
    z^{[i]} = W^{[i]} a^{[i-1]} + b^{[i]}
    a^{[i]} = g^{[i]}(z^{[i]})
```

 $\hat{y} = a^{[n]}$ 

The activation functions  $g(\cdot)$  are generally different at the final layer. Thus  $g^{[2]}$  might be softmax for multinomial classification or sigmoid for binary classification, while ReLU or tanh might be the activation function  $g(\cdot)$  at the internal layers.

**Replacing the bias unit** In describing networks, we will often use a slightly simplified notation that represents exactly the same function without referring to an explicit bias node  $b$ . Instead, we add a dummy node  $a_0$  to each layer whose value will always be 1. Thus layer 0, the input layer, will have a dummy node  $a_0^{[0]} = 1$ , layer 1 will have  $a_0^{[1]} = 1$ , and so on. This dummy node still has an associated weight, and that weight represents the bias value  $b$ . For example instead of an equation like

$$h = \sigma(Wx + b) \tag{7.12}$$

we'll use:

$$h = \sigma(Wx) \tag{7.13}$$

But now instead of our vector  $x$  having  $n$  values:  $x = x_1, \dots, x_n$ , it will have  $n + 1$  values, with a new 0th dummy value  $x_0 = 1$ :  $x = x_0, \dots, x_{n_0}$ . And instead of computing each  $h_j$  as follows:

$$h_j = \sigma \left( \sum_{i=1}^{n_0} W_{ji}x_i + b_j \right), \tag{7.14}$$

we'll instead use:

$$\sigma \left( \sum_{i=0}^{n_0} W_{ji}x_i \right), \tag{7.15}$$

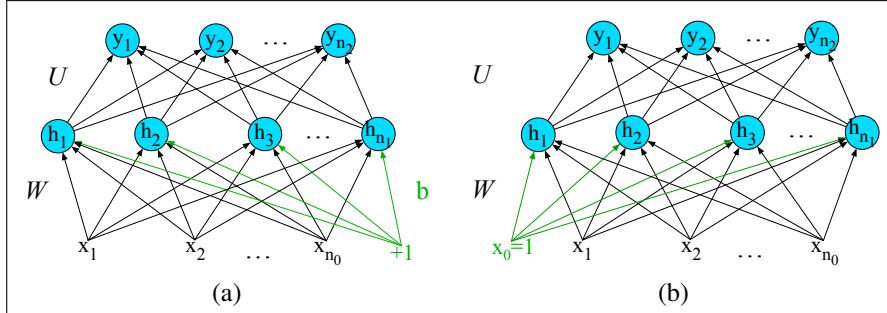


Figure 7.9 Replacing the bias node (shown in a) with  $x_0$  (b).

where the value  $W_{j0}$  replaces what had been  $b_j$ . Fig. 7.9 shows a visualization.

We'll continue showing the bias as  $b$  for the learning example in the next section, but then we'll switch to this simplified notation without explicit bias terms for the rest of the book.

## 7.4 Training Neural Nets

A feedforward neural net is an instance of supervised machine learning in which we know the correct output  $y$  for each observation  $x$ . What the system produces, via Eq. 7.11, is  $\hat{y}$ , the system's estimate of the true  $y$ . The goal of the training procedure is to learn parameters  $W^{[i]}$  and  $b^{[i]}$  for each layer  $i$  that make  $\hat{y}$  for each training observation as close as possible to the true  $y$ .

In general, we do all this by drawing on the methods we introduced in Chapter 5 for logistic regression, so the reader should be comfortable with that chapter before proceeding.

First, we'll need a **loss function** that models the distance between the system output and the gold output, and it's common to use the loss function used for logistic regression, the **cross-entropy loss**.

Second, to find the parameters that minimize this loss function, we'll use the **gradient descent** optimization algorithm introduced in Chapter 5.

Third, gradient descent requires knowing the **gradient** of the loss function, the vector that contains the partial derivative of the loss function with respect to each of the parameters. Here is one part where learning for neural networks is more complex than for logistic regression. In logistic regression, for each observation we could directly compute the derivative of the loss function with respect to an individual  $w$  or  $b$ . But for neural networks, with millions of parameters in many layers, it's much harder to see how to compute the partial derivative of some weight in layer 1 when the loss is attached to some much later layer. How do we partial out the loss over all those intermediate layers?

The answer is the algorithm called **error backpropagation** or **reverse differentiation**.

### 7.4.1 Loss function

#### cross-entropy loss

The **cross-entropy loss** that is used in neural networks is the same one we saw for logistic regression.

In fact, if the neural network is being used as a binary classifier, with the sig-

moid at the final layer, the loss function is exactly the same as we saw with logistic regression in Eq. 5.11:

$$L_{CE}(\hat{y}, y) = -\log p(y|x) = -[y \log \hat{y} + (1-y) \log(1-\hat{y})] \quad (7.16)$$

What about if the neural network is being used as a multinomial classifier? Let  $y$  be a vector over the  $C$  classes representing the true output probability distribution. The cross-entropy loss here is

$$L_{CE}(\hat{y}, y) = -\sum_{i=1}^C y_i \log \hat{y}_i \quad (7.17)$$

We can simplify this equation further. Assume this is a **hard classification** task, meaning that only one class is the correct one, and that there is one output unit in  $y$  for each class. If the true class is  $i$ , then  $y$  is a vector where  $y_i = 1$  and  $y_j = 0 \ \forall j \neq i$ . A vector like this, with one value=1 and the rest 0, is called a **one-hot vector**. The terms in the sum in Eq. 7.17 will be 0 except for the term corresponding to the true class, i.e.:

$$\begin{aligned} L_{CE}(\hat{y}, y) &= -\sum_{k=1}^K \mathbb{1}\{y=k\} \log \hat{y}_i \\ &= -\sum_{k=1}^K \mathbb{1}\{y=k\} \log \hat{p}(y=k|x) \\ &= -\sum_{k=1}^K \mathbb{1}\{y=k\} \log \frac{e^{z_k}}{\sum_{j=1}^K e^{z_j}} \end{aligned} \quad (7.18)$$

**negative log likelihood loss**

Hence the cross-entropy loss is simply the log of the output probability corresponding to the correct class, and we therefore also call this the **negative log likelihood loss**:

$$L_{CE}(\hat{y}, y) = -\log \hat{y}_i, \quad (\text{where } i \text{ is the correct class}) \quad (7.19)$$

Plugging in the softmax formula from Eq. 7.9, and with  $K$  the number of classes:

$$L_{CE}(\hat{y}, y) = -\log \frac{e^{z_i}}{\sum_{j=1}^K e^{z_j}} \quad (\text{where } i \text{ is the correct class}) \quad (7.20)$$

### 7.4.2 Computing the Gradient

How do we compute the gradient of this loss function? Computing the gradient requires the partial derivative of the loss function with respect to each parameter. For a network with one weight layer and sigmoid output (which is what logistic regression is), we could simply use the derivative of the loss that we used for logistic regression in Eq. 7.21 (and derived in Section 5.8):

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial L_{CE}(w, b)}{\partial w_j} &= (\hat{y} - y) x_j \\ &= (\sigma(w \cdot x + b) - y) x_j \end{aligned} \quad (7.21)$$

Or for a network with one hidden layer and softmax output, we could use the derivative of the softmax loss from Eq. 5.37:

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{\partial L_{CE}}{\partial w_k} &= (\mathbb{1}\{y=k\} - p(y=k|x))x_k \\ &= \left( \mathbb{1}\{y=k\} - \frac{\exp(w_k \cdot x + b_k)}{\sum_{j=1}^K \exp(w_j \cdot x + b_j)} \right) x_k\end{aligned}\quad (7.22)$$

But these derivatives only give correct updates for one weight layer: the last one! For deep networks, computing the gradients for each weight is much more complex, since we are computing the derivative with respect to weight parameters that appear all the way back in the very early layers of the network, even though the loss is computed only at the very end of the network.

The solution to computing this gradient is an algorithm called **error backpropagation** or **backprop** (Rumelhart et al., 1986). While backprop was invented specifically for neural networks, it turns out to be the same as a more general procedure called **backward differentiation**, which depends on the notion of **computation graphs**. Let's see how that works in the next subsection.

### 7.4.3 Computation Graphs

A computation graph is a representation of the process of computing a mathematical expression, in which the computation is broken down into separate operations, each of which is modeled as a node in a graph.

Consider computing the function  $L(a, b, c) = c(a + 2b)$ . If we make each of the component addition and multiplication operations explicit, and add names ( $d$  and  $e$ ) for the intermediate outputs, the resulting series of computations is:

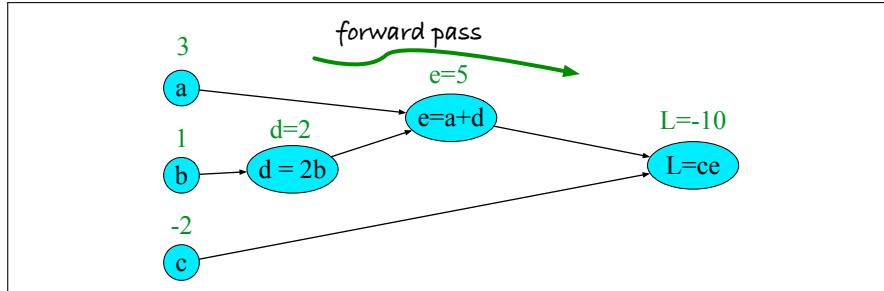
$$\begin{aligned}d &= 2 * b \\ e &= a + d \\ L &= c * e\end{aligned}$$

We can now represent this as a graph, with nodes for each operation, and directed edges showing the outputs from each operation as the inputs to the next, as in Fig. 7.10. The simplest use of computation graphs is to compute the value of the function with some given inputs. In the figure, we've assumed the inputs  $a = 3$ ,  $b = 1$ ,  $c = -2$ , and we've shown the result of the **forward pass** to compute the result  $L(3, 1, -2) = -10$ . In the forward pass of a computation graph, we apply each operation left to right, passing the outputs of each computation as the input to the next node.

### 7.4.4 Backward differentiation on computation graphs

The importance of the computation graph comes from the **backward pass**, which is used to compute the derivatives that we'll need for the weight update. In this example our goal is to compute the derivative of the output function  $L$  with respect to each of the input variables, i.e.,  $\frac{\partial L}{\partial a}$ ,  $\frac{\partial L}{\partial b}$ , and  $\frac{\partial L}{\partial c}$ . The derivative  $\frac{\partial L}{\partial a}$ , tells us how much a small change in  $a$  affects  $L$ .

Backwards differentiation makes use of the **chain rule** in calculus. Suppose we are computing the derivative of a composite function  $f(x) = u(v(x))$ . The derivative



**Figure 7.10** Computation graph for the function  $L(a, b, c) = c(a + 2b)$ , with values for input nodes  $a = 3, b = 1, c = -2$ , showing the forward pass computation of  $L$ .

of  $f(x)$  is the derivative of  $u(x)$  with respect to  $v(x)$  times the derivative of  $v(x)$  with respect to  $x$ :

$$\frac{df}{dx} = \frac{du}{dv} \cdot \frac{dv}{dx} \quad (7.23)$$

The chain rule extends to more than two functions. If computing the derivative of a composite function  $f(x) = u(v(w(x)))$ , the derivative of  $f(x)$  is:

$$\frac{df}{dx} = \frac{du}{dv} \cdot \frac{dv}{dw} \cdot \frac{dw}{dx} \quad (7.24)$$

Let's now compute the 3 derivatives we need. Since in the computation graph  $L = ce$ , we can directly compute the derivative  $\frac{\partial L}{\partial c}$ :

$$\frac{\partial L}{\partial c} = e \quad (7.25)$$

For the other two, we'll need to use the chain rule:

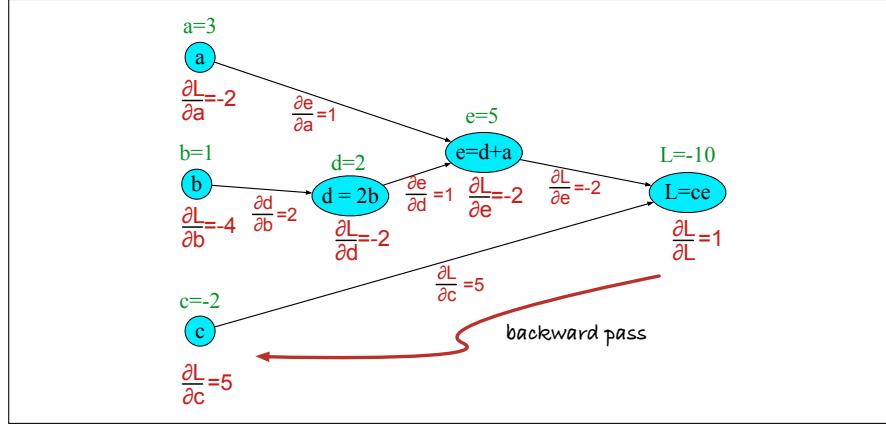
$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial L}{\partial a} &= \frac{\partial L}{\partial e} \frac{\partial e}{\partial a} \\ \frac{\partial L}{\partial b} &= \frac{\partial L}{\partial e} \frac{\partial e}{\partial d} \frac{\partial d}{\partial b} \end{aligned} \quad (7.26)$$

Eq. 7.26 thus requires five intermediate derivatives:  $\frac{\partial L}{\partial e}$ ,  $\frac{\partial L}{\partial c}$ ,  $\frac{\partial e}{\partial a}$ ,  $\frac{\partial e}{\partial d}$ , and  $\frac{\partial d}{\partial b}$ , which are as follows (making use of the fact that the derivative of a sum is the sum of the derivatives):

$$\begin{aligned} L = ce &: \quad \frac{\partial L}{\partial e} = c, \frac{\partial L}{\partial c} = e \\ e = a + d &: \quad \frac{\partial e}{\partial a} = 1, \frac{\partial e}{\partial d} = 1 \\ d = 2b &: \quad \frac{\partial d}{\partial b} = 2 \end{aligned}$$

In the backward pass, we compute each of these partials along each edge of the graph from right to left, multiplying the necessary partials to result in the final derivative we need. Thus we begin by annotating the final node with  $\frac{\partial L}{\partial L} = 1$ . Moving to the left, we then compute  $\frac{\partial L}{\partial c}$  and  $\frac{\partial L}{\partial e}$ , and so on, until we have annotated the graph all the way to the input variables. The forward pass conveniently already will have computed the values of the forward intermediate variables we need (like  $d$  and  $e$ )

to compute these derivatives. Fig. 7.11 shows the backward pass. At each node we need to compute the local partial derivative with respect to the parent, multiply it by the partial derivative that is being passed down from the parent, and then pass it to the child.



**Figure 7.11** Computation graph for the function  $L(a, b, c) = c(a + 2b)$ , showing the backward pass computation of  $\frac{\partial L}{\partial a}$ ,  $\frac{\partial L}{\partial b}$ , and  $\frac{\partial L}{\partial c}$ .

### Backward differentiation for a neural network

Of course computation graphs for real neural networks are much more complex. Fig. 7.12 shows a sample computation graph for a 2-layer neural network with  $n_0 = 2$ ,  $n_1 = 2$ , and  $n_2 = 1$ , assuming binary classification and hence using a sigmoid output unit for simplicity. The function that the computation graph is computing is:

$$\begin{aligned} z^{[1]} &= W^{[1]} \mathbf{x} + b^{[1]} \\ a^{[1]} &= \text{ReLU}(z^{[1]}) \\ z^{[2]} &= W^{[2]} a^{[1]} + b^{[2]} \\ a^{[2]} &= \sigma(z^{[2]}) \\ \hat{y} &= a^{[2]} \end{aligned} \tag{7.27}$$

The weights that need updating (those for which we need to know the partial derivative of the loss function) are shown in orange. In order to do the backward pass, we'll need to know the derivatives of all the functions in the graph. We already saw in Section 5.8 the derivative of the sigmoid  $\sigma$ :

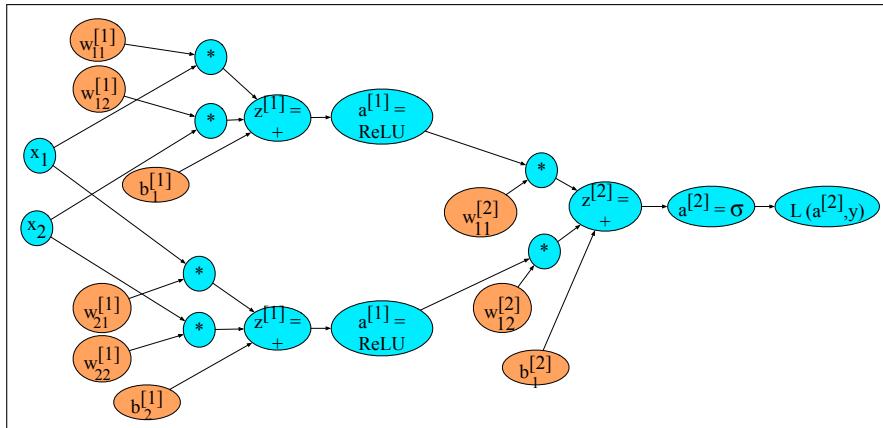
$$\frac{d\sigma(z)}{dz} = \sigma(z)(1 - \sigma(z)) \tag{7.28}$$

We'll also need the derivatives of each of the other activation functions. The derivative of tanh is:

$$\frac{d \tanh(z)}{dz} = 1 - \tanh^2(z) \tag{7.29}$$

The derivative of the ReLU is

$$\frac{d \text{ReLU}(z)}{dz} = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{for } z < 0 \\ 1 & \text{for } z \geq 0 \end{cases} \tag{7.30}$$



**Figure 7.12** Sample computation graph for a simple 2-layer neural net (= 1 hidden layer) with two input dimensions and 2 hidden dimensions.

### 7.4.5 More details on learning

Optimization in neural networks is a non-convex optimization problem, more complex than for logistic regression, and for that and other reasons there are many best practices for successful learning.

For logistic regression we can initialize gradient descent with all the weights and biases having the value 0. In neural networks, by contrast, we need to initialize the weights with small random numbers. It's also helpful to normalize the input values to have 0 mean and unit variance.

Various forms of regularization are used to prevent overfitting. One of the most important is **dropout**: randomly dropping some units and their connections from the network during training (Hinton et al. 2012, Srivastava et al. 2014). Tuning of **hyperparameters** is also important. The parameters of a neural network are the weights  $W$  and biases  $b$ ; those are learned by gradient descent. The hyperparameters are things that are chosen by the algorithm designer; optimal values are tuned on a devset rather than by gradient descent learning on the training set. Hyperparameters include the learning rate  $\eta$ , the mini-batch size, the model architecture (the number of layers, the number of hidden nodes per layer, the choice of activation functions), how to regularize, and so on. Gradient descent itself also has many architectural variants such as Adam (Kingma and Ba, 2015).

Finally, most modern neural networks are built using computation graph formalisms that make it easy and natural to do gradient computation and parallelization onto vector-based GPUs (Graphic Processing Units). PyTorch (Paszke et al., 2017) and TensorFlow (Abadi et al., 2015) are two of the most popular. The interested reader should consult a neural network textbook for further details; some suggestions are at the end of the chapter.

## 7.5 Neural Language Models

As our first application of neural networks, let's consider **language modeling**: predicting upcoming words from prior word context.

Neural net-based language models turn out to have many advantages over the n-gram language models of Chapter 3. Among these are that neural language models

don't need smoothing, they can handle much longer histories, and they can generalize over contexts of similar words. For a training set of a given size, a neural language model has much higher predictive accuracy than an n-gram language model. Furthermore, neural language models underlie many of the models we'll introduce for tasks like machine translation, dialog, and language generation.

On the other hand, there is a cost for this improved performance: neural net language models are strikingly slower to train than traditional language models, and so for many tasks an n-gram language model is still the right tool.

In this chapter we'll describe simple feedforward neural language models, first introduced by [Bengio et al. \(2003\)](#). Modern neural language models are generally not feedforward but recurrent, using the technology that we will introduce in Chapter 9.

A feedforward neural LM is a standard feedforward network that takes as input at time  $t$  a representation of some number of previous words ( $w_{t-1}, w_{t-2}$ , etc.) and outputs a probability distribution over possible next words. Thus—like the n-gram LM—the feedforward neural LM approximates the probability of a word given the entire prior context  $P(w_t | w_1 : t - 1)$  by approximating based on the  $N$  previous words:

$$P(w_t | w_1, \dots, w_{t-1}) \approx P(w_t | w_{t-N+1}, \dots, w_{t-1}) \quad (7.31)$$

In the following examples we'll use a 4-gram example, so we'll show a net to estimate the probability  $P(w_t = i | w_{t-1}, w_{t-2}, w_{t-3})$ .

### 7.5.1 Embeddings

In neural language models, the prior context is represented by embeddings of the previous words. Representing the prior context as embeddings, rather than by exact words as used in n-gram language models, allows neural language models to generalize to unseen data much better than n-gram language models. For example, suppose we've seen this sentence in training:

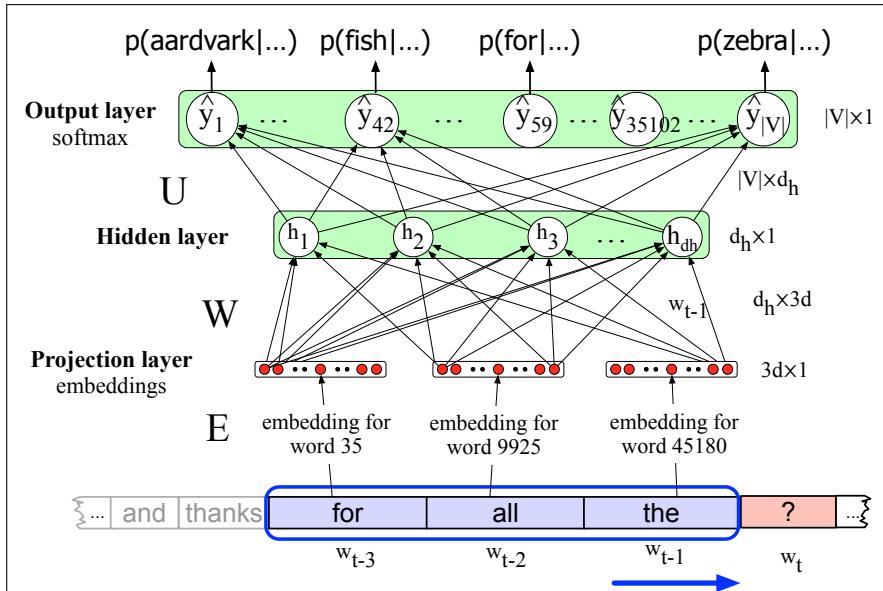
I have to make sure that the cat gets fed.

but have never seen the words “gets fed” after the word “dog”. Our test set has the prefix “I forgot to make sure that the dog gets”. What's the next word? An n-gram language model will predict “fed” after “that the cat gets”, but not after “that the dog gets”. But a neural LM, knowing that “cat” and “dog” have similar embeddings, will be able to generalize from the “cat” context to assign a high enough probability to “fed” even after seeing “dog”.

Let's see how this works in practice. For now we'll assume we already have an embedding dictionary  $E$  that gives us, for each word in our vocabulary  $V$ , the embedding for that word.

Fig. 7.13 shows a sketch of this simplified feedforward neural language model with  $N=3$ ; we have a moving window at time  $t$  with an embedding vector representing each of the 3 previous words (words  $w_{t-1}, w_{t-2}$ , and  $w_{t-3}$ ). These 3 vectors are concatenated together to produce  $x$ , the input layer of a neural network whose output is a softmax with a probability distribution over words. Thus  $y_{42}$ , the value of output node 42 is the probability of the next word  $w_t$  being  $V_{42}$ , the vocabulary word with index 42.

The model shown in Fig. 7.13 is quite sufficient, assuming we have already learned the embeddings separately by a method like the word2vec methods of Chapter 6. Relying on another algorithm to have already learned an embedding represen-



**Figure 7.13** A simplified view of a feedforward neural language model moving through a text. At each timestep  $t$  the network takes the 3 context words, converts each to a  $d$ -dimensional embedding, and concatenates the 3 embeddings together to get the  $1 \times Nd$  unit input layer  $x$  for the network. These units are multiplied by a weight matrix  $W$  and then an activation function is applied element-wise to produce the hidden layer  $h$ , which is then multiplied by another weight matrix  $U$ . Finally, a softmax output layer predicts at each node  $i$  the probability that the next word  $w_t$  will be vocabulary word  $V_i$ . (This picture is simplified because it assumes we just look up in an embedding dictionary  $E$  the  $d$ -dimensional embedding vector for each word, precomputed by an algorithm like word2vec.)

#### pretraining

tation for input words is called **pretraining**. If those pretrained embeddings are sufficient for your purposes, then this is all you need.

However, often we'd like to learn the embeddings simultaneously with training the network. This is true when the task the network is designed for (sentiment classification, or translation, or parsing) places strong constraints on what makes a good representation.

Let's therefore show an architecture that allows the embeddings to be learned. To do this, we'll add an extra layer to the network, and propagate the error all the way back to the embedding vectors, starting with embeddings with random values and slowly moving toward sensible representations.

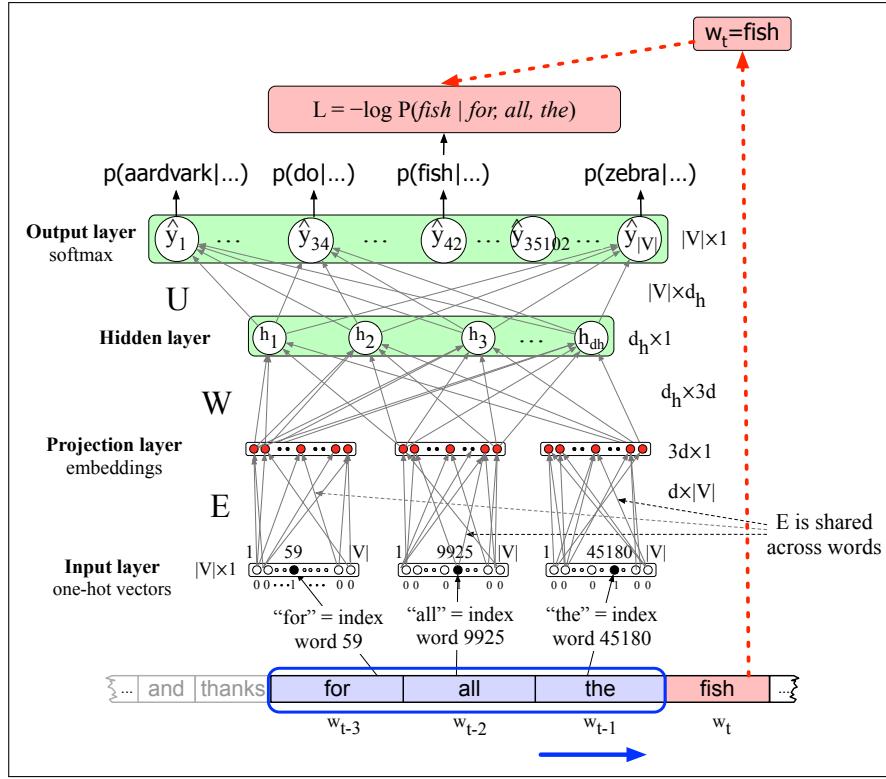
#### one-hot vector

For this to work at the input layer, instead of pretrained embeddings, we're going to represent each of the  $N$  previous words as a one-hot vector of length  $|V|$ , i.e., with one dimension for each word in the vocabulary. A **one-hot vector** is a vector that has one element equal to 1—in the dimension corresponding to that word's index in the vocabulary—while all the other elements are set to zero.

Thus in a one-hot representation for the word “toothpaste”, supposing it is index 5 in the vocabulary,  $x_5 = 1$ , and  $x_i = 0 \ \forall i \neq 5$ , as shown here:

$$\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & \dots & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \\ 1 \ 2 \ 3 \ 4 \ 5 \ 6 \ 7 \ \dots \ \dots \ |V|$$

Fig. 7.14 shows the additional layers needed to learn the embeddings during LM training. Here the  $N=3$  context words are represented as 3 one-hot vectors, fully connected to the embedding layer via 3 instantiations of the embedding matrix  $E$ .



**Figure 7.14** Learning all the way back to embeddings. Notice that the embedding matrix  $E$  is shared among the 3 context words.

Note that we don't want to learn separate weight matrices for mapping each of the 3 previous words to the projection layer, we want one single embedding dictionary  $E$  that's shared among these three. That's because over time, many different words will appear as  $w_{t-2}$  or  $w_{t-1}$ , and we'd like to just represent each word with one vector, whichever context position it appears in. The embedding weight matrix  $E$  thus has a column for each word, each a column vector of  $d$  dimensions, and hence has dimensionality  $d \times |V|$ .

Let's walk through the forward pass of Fig. 7.14.

#### projection layer

- Select three embeddings from  $E$ :** Given the three previous words, we look up their indices, create 3 one-hot vectors, and then multiply each by the embedding matrix  $E$ . Consider  $w_{t-3}$ . The one-hot vector for 'the' (index 35) is multiplied by the embedding matrix  $E$ , to give the first part of the first hidden layer, called the **projection layer**. Since each row of the input matrix  $E$  is just an embedding for a word, and the input is a one-hot column vector  $x_i$  for word  $V_i$ , the projection layer for input  $w$  will be  $Ex_i = e_i$ , the embedding for word  $i$ . We now concatenate the three embeddings for the context words.
- Multiply by  $W$ :** We now multiply by  $W$  (and add  $b$ ) and pass through the rectified linear (or other) activation function to get the hidden layer  $h$ .
- Multiply by  $U$ :**  $h$  is now multiplied by  $U$
- Apply softmax:** After the softmax, each node  $i$  in the output layer estimates the probability  $P(w_t = i | w_{t-1}, w_{t-2}, w_{t-3})$

In summary, if we use  $e$  to represent the projection layer, formed by concatenating the 3 embeddings for the three context vectors, the equations for a neural

language model become:

$$e = (Ex_1, Ex_2, \dots, Ex) \quad (7.32)$$

$$h = \sigma(We + b) \quad (7.33)$$

$$z = Uh \quad (7.34)$$

$$\hat{y} = \text{softmax}(z) \quad (7.35)$$

### 7.5.2 Training the neural language model

To train the model, i.e. to set all the parameters  $\theta = E, W, U, b$ , we do gradient descent (Fig. 5.5), using error backpropagation on the computation graph to compute the gradient. Training thus not only sets the weights  $W$  and  $U$  of the network, but also as we're predicting upcoming words, we're learning the embeddings  $E$  for each words that best predict upcoming words.

Generally training proceeds by taking as input a very long text, concatenating all the sentences, starting with random weights, and then iteratively moving through the text predicting each word  $w_t$ . At each word  $w_t$ , we use the cross-entropy (negative log likelihood) loss. Recall that the general form for this (repeated from Eq. 7.19) is:

$$L_{CE}(\hat{y}, y) = -\log \hat{y}_i, \quad (\text{where } i \text{ is the correct class}) \quad (7.36)$$

For language modeling, the classes are the word in the vocabulary, so  $\hat{y}_i$  here means the probability that the model assigns to the correct next word  $w_t$ :

$$L_{CE} = -\log p(w_t | w_{t-1}, \dots, w_{t-n+1}) \quad (7.37)$$

The parameter update for stochastic gradient descent for this loss from step  $s$  to  $s+1$  is then:

$$\theta^{s+1} = \theta^s - \eta \frac{\partial -\log p(w_t | w_{t-1}, \dots, w_{t-n+1})}{\partial \theta} \quad (7.38)$$

This gradient can be computed in any standard neural network framework which will then backpropagate through  $\theta = E, W, U, b$ .

Training the parameters to minimize loss will result both in an algorithm for language modeling (a word predictor) but also a new set of embeddings  $E$  that can be used as word representations for other tasks.

## 7.6 Summary

- Neural networks are built out of **neural units**, originally inspired by human neurons but now simply an abstract computational device.
- Each neural unit multiplies input values by a weight vector, adds a bias, and then applies a non-linear activation function like sigmoid, tanh, or rectified linear.
- In a **fully-connected, feedforward** network, each unit in layer  $i$  is connected to each unit in layer  $i+1$ , and there are no cycles.
- The power of neural networks comes from the ability of early layers to learn representations that can be utilized by later layers in the network.
- Neural networks are trained by optimization algorithms like **gradient descent**.

- **Error backpropagation**, backward differentiation on a **computation graph**, is used to compute the gradients of the loss function for a network.
- **Neural language models** use a neural network as a probabilistic classifier, to compute the probability of the next word given the previous  $n$  words.
- Neural language models can use pretrained **embeddings**, or can learn embeddings from scratch in the process of language modeling.

## Bibliographical and Historical Notes

The origins of neural networks lie in the 1940s **McCulloch-Pitts neuron** ([McCulloch and Pitts, 1943](#)), a simplified model of the human neuron as a kind of computing element that could be described in terms of propositional logic. By the late 1950s and early 1960s, a number of labs (including Frank Rosenblatt at Cornell and Bernard Widrow at Stanford) developed research into neural networks; this phase saw the development of the perceptron ([Rosenblatt, 1958](#)), and the transformation of the threshold into a bias, a notation we still use ([Widrow and Hoff, 1960](#)).

[connectionist](#)

The field of neural networks declined after it was shown that a single perceptron unit was unable to model functions as simple as XOR ([Minsky and Papert, 1969](#)). While some small amount of work continued during the next two decades, a major revival for the field didn't come until the 1980s, when practical tools for building deeper networks like error backpropagation became widespread ([Rumelhart et al., 1986](#)). During the 1980s a wide variety of neural network and related architectures were developed, particularly for applications in psychology and cognitive science ([Rumelhart and McClelland 1986b](#), [McClelland and Elman 1986](#), [Rumelhart and McClelland 1986a](#), [Elman 1990](#)), for which the term **connectionist** or **parallel distributed processing** was often used ([Feldman and Ballard 1982](#), [Smolensky 1988](#)). Many of the principles and techniques developed in this period are foundational to modern work, including the ideas of distributed representations ([Hinton, 1986](#)), recurrent networks ([Elman, 1990](#)), and the use of tensors for compositionality ([Smolensky, 1990](#)).

By the 1990s larger neural networks began to be applied to many practical language processing tasks as well, like handwriting recognition ([LeCun et al. 1989](#)) and speech recognition ([Morgan and Bourlard 1990](#)). By the early 2000s, improvements in computer hardware and advances in optimization and training techniques made it possible to train even larger and deeper networks, leading to the modern term **deep learning** ([Hinton et al. 2006](#), [Bengio et al. 2007](#)). We cover more related history in Chapter 9 and Chapter 26.

There are a number of excellent books on the subject. [Goldberg \(2017\)](#) has superb coverage of neural networks for natural language processing. For neural networks in general see [Goodfellow et al. \(2016\)](#) and [Nielsen \(2015\)](#).

## CHAPTER

## 8

# Sequence Labeling for Parts of Speech and Named Entities

To each word a warbling note  
*A Midsummer Night's Dream, V.I*

## parts of speech

Dionysius Thrax of Alexandria (*c.* 100 B.C.), or perhaps someone else (it was a long time ago), wrote a grammatical sketch of Greek (a “*technē*”) that summarized the linguistic knowledge of his day. This work is the source of an astonishing proportion of modern linguistic vocabulary, including the words *syntax*, *diphthong*, *clitic*, and *analogy*. Also included are a description of eight **parts of speech**: noun, verb, pronoun, preposition, adverb, conjunction, participle, and article. Although earlier scholars (including Aristotle as well as the Stoics) had their own lists of parts of speech, it was Thrax’s set of eight that became the basis for descriptions of European languages for the next 2000 years. (All the way to the *Schoolhouse Rock* educational television shows of our childhood, which had songs about 8 parts of speech, like the late great Bob Dorough’s *Conjunction Junction*.) The durability of parts of speech through two millennia speaks to their centrality in models of human language.

Proper names are another important and anciently studied linguistic category. While parts of speech are generally assigned to individual words or morphemes, a proper name is often an entire multiword phrase, like the name “Marie Curie”, the location “New York City”, or the organization “Stanford University”. We’ll use the term **named entity** for, roughly speaking, anything that can be referred to with a proper name: a person, a location, an organization, although as we’ll see the term is commonly extended to include things that aren’t entities per se.

## POS

Parts of speech (also known as **POS**) and named entities are useful clues to sentence structure and meaning. Knowing whether a word is a noun or a verb tells us about likely neighboring words (nouns in English are preceded by determiners and adjectives, verbs by nouns) and syntactic structure (verbs have dependency links to nouns), making part-of-speech tagging a key aspect of parsing. Knowing if a named entity like *Washington* is a name of a person, a place, or a university is important to many natural language understanding tasks like question answering, stance detection, or information extraction.

In this chapter we’ll introduce the task of **part-of-speech tagging**, taking a sequence of words and assigning each word a part of speech like **NOUN** or **VERB**, and the task of **named entity recognition (NER)**, assigning words or phrases tags like **PERSON**, **LOCATION**, or **ORGANIZATION**.

## sequence labeling

Such tasks in which we assign, to each word  $x_i$  in an input word sequence, a label  $y_i$ , so that the output sequence  $Y$  has the same length as the input sequence  $X$  are called **sequence labeling** tasks. We’ll introduce classic sequence labeling algorithms, one generative—the Hidden Markov Model (HMM)—and one discriminative—the Conditional Random Field (CRF). In following chapters we’ll introduce modern sequence labelers based on RNNs and Transformers.

## 8.1 (Mostly) English Word Classes

Until now we have been using part-of-speech terms like **noun** and **verb** rather freely. In this section we give more complete definitions. While word classes do have semantic tendencies—adjectives, for example, often describe *properties* and nouns *people*—parts of speech are defined instead based on their grammatical relationship with neighboring words or the morphological properties about their affixes.

Tag	Description	Example
Open Class	<b>ADJ</b> Adjective: noun modifiers describing properties	<i>red, young, awesome</i>
	<b>ADV</b> Adverb: verb modifiers of time, place, manner	<i>very, slowly, home, yesterday</i>
	<b>NOUN</b> words for persons, places, things, etc.	<i>algorithm, cat, mango, beauty</i>
	<b>VERB</b> words for actions and processes	<i>draw, provide, go</i>
	<b>PROPN</b> Proper noun: name of a person, organization, place, etc..	<i>Regina, IBM, Colorado</i>
	<b>INTJ</b> Interjection: exclamation, greeting, yes/no response, etc.	<i>oh, um, yes, hello</i>
Closed Class Words	<b>ADP</b> Adposition (Preposition/Postposition): marks a noun's spacial, temporal, or other relation	<i>in, on, by under</i>
	<b>AUX</b> Auxiliary: helping verb marking tense, aspect, mood, etc.,	<i>can, may, should, are</i>
	<b>CCONJ</b> Coordinating Conjunction: joins two phrases/clauses	<i>and, or, but</i>
	<b>DET</b> Determiner: marks noun phrase properties	<i>a, an, the, this</i>
	<b>NUM</b> Numeral	<i>one, two, first, second</i>
	<b>PART</b> Particle: a preposition-like form used together with a verb	<i>up, down, on, off, in, out, at, by</i>
	<b>PRON</b> Pronoun: a shorthand for referring to an entity or event	<i>she, who, I, others</i>
Other	<b>SCONJ</b> Subordinating Conjunction: joins a main clause with a subordinate clause such as a sentential complement	<i>that, which</i>
	<b>PUNCT</b> Punctuation	<i>;, , 0</i>
	<b>SYM</b> Symbols like \$ or emoji	<i>\$, %</i>
	<b>X</b> Other	<i>asdf, qwfg</i>

**Figure 8.1** The 17 parts of speech in the Universal Dependencies tagset (Nivre et al., 2016a). Features can be added to make finer-grained distinctions (with properties like number, case, definiteness, and so on).

**closed class** Parts of speech fall into two broad categories: **closed class** and **open class**.

**open class** Closed classes are those with relatively fixed membership, such as prepositions—new prepositions are rarely coined. By contrast, nouns and verbs are open classes—new nouns and verbs like *iPhone* or *to fax* are continually being created or borrowed. Closed class words are generally **function words** like *of, it, and, or you*, which tend to be very short, occur frequently, and often have structuring uses in grammar.

Four major open classes occur in the languages of the world: **nouns** (including proper nouns), **verbs**, **adjectives**, and **adverbs**, as well as the smaller open class of **interjections**. English has all five, although not every language does.

**Nouns** are words for people, places, or things, but include others as well. **Common nouns** include concrete terms like *cat* and *mango*, abstractions like *algorithm* and *beauty*, and verb-like terms like *pacing* as in *His pacing to and fro became quite annoying*. Nouns in English can occur with determiners (*a goat, its bandwidth*) take possessives (*IBM's annual revenue*), and may occur in the plural (*goats, abaci*).

Many languages, including English, divide common nouns into **count nouns** and **mass nouns**. Count nouns can occur in the singular and plural (*goat/goats, relationship/relationships*) and can be counted (*one goat, two goats*). Mass nouns are used when something is conceptualized as a homogeneous group. So *snow, salt, and communism* are not counted (i.e., \**two snows* or \**two communisms*). **Proper nouns**, like *Regina, Colorado*, and *IBM*, are names of specific persons or entities.

**proper noun**

<b>verb</b>	<b>Verbs</b> refer to actions and processes, including main verbs like <i>draw</i> , <i>provide</i> , and <i>go</i> . English verbs have inflections (non-third-person-singular ( <i>eat</i> ), third-person-singular ( <i>eats</i> ), progressive ( <i>eating</i> ), past participle ( <i>eaten</i> )). While many scholars believe that all human languages have the categories of noun and verb, others have argued that some languages, such as Riau Indonesian and Tongan, don't even make this distinction (Broschart 1997; Evans 2000; Gil 2000).
<b>adjective</b>	<b>Adjectives</b> often describe properties or qualities of nouns, like color ( <i>white</i> , <i>black</i> ), age ( <i>old</i> , <i>young</i> ), and value ( <i>good</i> , <i>bad</i> ), but there are languages without adjectives. In Korean, for example, the words corresponding to English adjectives act as a subclass of verbs, so what is in English an adjective “beautiful” acts in Korean like a verb meaning “to be beautiful”.
<b>adverb</b>	<b>Adverbs</b> are a hodge-podge. All the italicized words in this example are adverbs:
	<i>Actually</i> , I ran <i>home</i> <i>extremely</i> <i>quickly</i> <i>yesterday</i>
<b>locative degree</b>	Adverbs generally modify something (often verbs, hence the name “adverb”, but also other adverbs and entire verb phrases). <b>Directional adverbs</b> or <b>locative adverbs</b> ( <i>home</i> , <i>here</i> , <i>downhill</i> ) specify the direction or location of some action; <b>degree adverbs</b> ( <i>extremely</i> , <i>very</i> , <i>somewhat</i> ) specify the extent of some action, process, or property; <b>manner adverbs</b> ( <i>slowly</i> , <i>slinkily</i> , <i>delicately</i> ) describe the manner of some action or process; and <b>temporal adverbs</b> describe the time that some action or event took place ( <i>yesterday</i> , <i>Monday</i> ).
<b>interjection</b>	<b>Interjections</b> ( <i>oh</i> , <i>hey</i> , <i>alas</i> , <i>uh</i> , <i>um</i> ), are a smaller open class, that also includes greetings ( <i>hello</i> , <i>goodbye</i> ), and question responses ( <i>yes</i> , <i>no</i> , <i>uh-huh</i> ).
<b>preposition</b>	English adpositions occur before nouns, hence are called <b>prepositions</b> . They can indicate spatial or temporal relations, whether literal ( <i>on it</i> , <i>before then</i> , <i>by the house</i> ) or metaphorical ( <i>on time</i> , <i>with gusto</i> , <i>beside herself</i> ), and relations like marking the agent in <i>Hamlet was written by Shakespeare</i> .
<b>particle</b>	A <b>particle</b> resembles a preposition or an adverb and is used in combination with a verb. Particles often have extended meanings that aren't quite the same as the prepositions they resemble, as in the particle <i>over</i> in <i>she turned the paper over</i> . A verb and a particle acting as a single unit is called a <b>phrasal verb</b> . The meaning of phrasal verbs is often <b>non-compositional</b> —not predictable from the individual meanings of the verb and the particle. Thus, <i>turn down</i> means ‘reject’, <i>rule out</i> ‘eliminate’, and <i>go on</i> ‘continue’.
<b>phrasal verb</b>	
<b>determiner article</b>	<b>Determiners</b> like <i>this</i> and <i>that</i> ( <i>this chapter</i> , <i>that page</i> ) can mark the start of an English noun phrase. <b>Articles</b> like <i>a</i> , <i>an</i> , and <i>the</i> , are a type of determiner that mark discourse properties of the noun and are quite frequent; <i>the</i> is the most common word in written English, with <i>a</i> and <i>an</i> right behind.
<b>conjunction</b>	<b>Conjunctions</b> join two phrases, clauses, or sentences. Coordinating conjunctions like <i>and</i> , <i>or</i> , and <i>but</i> join two elements of equal status. Subordinating conjunctions are used when one of the elements has some embedded status. For example, the subordinating conjunction <i>that</i> in “ <i>I thought that you might like some milk</i> ” links the main clause <i>I thought</i> with the subordinate clause <i>you might like some milk</i> . This clause is called subordinate because this entire clause is the “content” of the main verb <i>thought</i> . Subordinating conjunctions like <i>that</i> which link a verb to its argument in this way are also called <b>complementizers</b> .
<b>complementizer pronoun</b>	<b>Pronouns</b> act as a shorthand for referring to an entity or event. Personal <b>pronouns</b> refer to persons or entities ( <i>you</i> , <i>she</i> , <i>I</i> , <i>it</i> , <i>me</i> , etc.). Possessive <b>pronouns</b> are forms of personal pronouns that indicate either actual possession or more often just an abstract relation between the person and some object ( <i>my</i> , <i>your</i> , <i>his</i> , <i>her</i> , <i>its</i> , <i>one's</i> , <i>our</i> , <i>their</i> ). <b>Wh-pronouns</b> ( <i>what</i> , <i>who</i> , <i>whom</i> , <i>whoever</i> ) are used in certain
<b>wh</b>	

question forms, or act as complementizers (*Frida, who married Diego...*).

**auxiliary**

**Auxiliary** verbs mark semantic features of a main verb such as its tense, whether it is completed (aspect), whether it is negated (polarity), and whether an action is necessary, possible, suggested, or desired (mood). English auxiliaries include the **copula** verb *be*, the two verbs *do* and *have*, forms, as well as **modal verbs** used to mark the mood associated with the event depicted by the main verb: *can* indicates ability or possibility, *may* permission or possibility, *must* necessity.

**copula**

**modal**

An English-specific tagset, the 45-tag Penn Treebank tagset (Marcus et al., 1993), shown in Fig. 8.2, has been used to label many syntactically annotated corpora like the Penn Treebank corpora, so is worth knowing about.

Tag	Description	Example	Tag	Description	Example	Tag	Description	Example
CC	coord. conj.	<i>and, but, or</i>	NNP	proper noun, sing.	<i>IBM</i>	TO	“to”	<i>to</i>
CD	cardinal number	<i>one, two</i>	NNPS	proper noun, plu.	<i>Carolinas</i>	UH	interjection	<i>ah, oops</i>
DT	determiner	<i>a, the</i>	NNS	noun, plural	<i>llamas</i>	VB	verb base	<i>eat</i>
EX	existential ‘there’	<i>there</i>	PDT	predeterminer	<i>all, both</i>	VBD	verb past tense	<i>ate</i>
FW	foreign word	<i>mea culpa</i>	POS	possessive ending	<i>'s</i>	VBG	verb gerund	<i>eating</i>
IN	preposition/ subordin-conj	<i>of, in, by</i>	PRP	personal pronoun	<i>I, you, he</i>	VBN	verb past participle	<i>eaten</i>
JJ	adjective	<i>yellow</i>	PRP\$	possess. pronoun	<i>your, one's</i>	VBP	verb non-3sg-pr	<i>eat</i>
JJR	comparative adj	<i>bigger</i>	RB	adverb	<i>quickly</i>	VBZ	verb 3sg pres	<i>eats</i>
JJS	superlative adj	<i>wildest</i>	RBR	comparative adv	<i>faster</i>	WDT	wh-determ.	<i>which, that</i>
LS	list item marker	<i>1, 2, One</i>	RBS	superlatv. adv	<i>fastest</i>	WP	wh-pronoun	<i>what, who</i>
MD	modal	<i>can, should</i>	RP	particle	<i>up, off</i>	WP\$	wh-possess.	<i>whose</i>
NN	sing or mass noun	<i>llama</i>	SYM	symbol	<i>+, %, &amp;</i>	WRB	wh-adverb	<i>how, where</i>

Figure 8.2 Penn Treebank part-of-speech tags.

Below we show some examples with each word tagged according to both the UD and Penn tagsets. Notice that the Penn tagset distinguishes tense and participles on verbs, and has a special tag for the existential *there* construction in English. Note that since *New England Journal of Medicine* is a proper noun, both tagsets mark its component nouns as NNP, including *journal* and *medicine*, which might otherwise be labeled as common nouns (NOUN/NN).

- (8.1) There/PRO/EX are/VERB/VBP 70/NUM/CD children/NOUN/NNS  
there/ADV/RB ./PUNC/.
- (8.2) Preliminary/ADJ/JJ findings/NOUN/NNS were/AUX/VBD reported/VERB/VBN  
in/ADP/IN today/NOUN/NN 's/PART/POS New/PROPN/NNP  
England/PROPN/NNP Journal/PROPN/NNP of/ADP/IN Medicine/PROPN/NNP

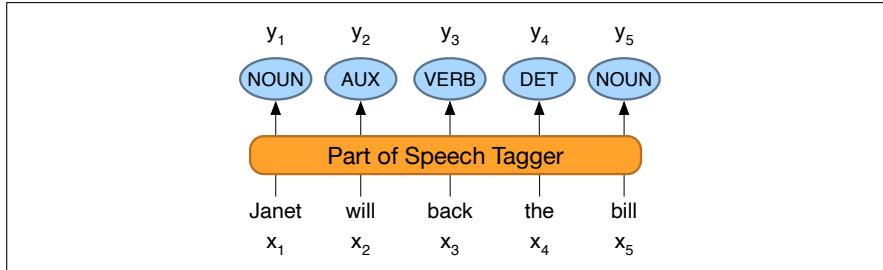
## 8.2 Part-of-Speech Tagging

**part-of-speech tagging**

**Part-of-speech tagging** is the process of assigning a part-of-speech to each word in a text. The input is a sequence  $x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n$  of (tokenized) words and a tagset, and the output is a sequence  $y_1, y_2, \dots, y_n$  of tags, each output  $y_i$  corresponding exactly to one input  $x_i$ , as shown in the intuition in Fig. 8.3.

**ambiguous**

Tagging is a **disambiguation** task; words are **ambiguous**—have more than one possible part-of-speech—and the goal is to find the correct tag for the situation. For example, *book* can be a verb (*book that flight*) or a noun (*hand me that book*). *That* can be a determiner (*Does that flight serve dinner*) or a complementizer (*I*



**Figure 8.3** The task of part-of-speech tagging: mapping from input words  $x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n$  to output POS tags  $y_1, y_2, \dots, y_n$ .

ambiguity  
resolution  
accuracy

thought *that your flight was earlier*). The goal of POS-tagging is to **resolve** these ambiguities, choosing the proper tag for the context.

The **accuracy** of part-of-speech tagging algorithms (the percentage of test set tags that match human gold labels) is extremely high. One study found accuracies over 97% across 15 languages from the Universal Dependency (UD) treebank ([Wu and Dredze, 2019](#)). Accuracies on various English treebanks are also 97% (no matter the algorithm; HMMs, CRFs, BERT perform similarly). This 97% number is also about the human performance on this task, at least for English ([Manning, 2011](#)).

	<b>WSJ</b>	<b>Brown</b>
<b>Types:</b>		
Unambiguous (1 tag)	44,432 (86%)	45,799 (85%)
Ambiguous (2+ tags)	7,025 (14%)	8,050 (15%)
<b>Tokens:</b>		
Unambiguous (1 tag)	577,421 (45%)	384,349 (33%)
Ambiguous (2+ tags)	711,780 (55%)	786,646 (67%)

**Figure 8.4** Tag ambiguity in the Brown and WSJ corpora (Treebank-3 45-tag tagset).

We'll introduce algorithms for the task in the next few sections, but first let's explore the task. Exactly how hard is it? Fig. 8.4 shows that most word types (85-86%) are unambiguous (*Janet* is always NNP, *hesitantly* is always RB). But the ambiguous words, though accounting for only 14-15% of the vocabulary, are very common, and 55-67% of word tokens in running text are ambiguous. Particularly ambiguous common words include *that*, *back*, *down*, *put* and *set*; here are some examples of the 6 different parts of speech for the word *back*:

earnings growth took a **back/JJ** seat  
 a small building in the **back/NN**  
 a clear majority of senators **back/VBP** the bill  
 Dave began to **back/VB** toward the door  
 enable the country to buy **back/RP** debt  
 I was twenty-one **back/RB** then

Nonetheless, many words are easy to disambiguate, because their different tags aren't equally likely. For example, *a* can be a determiner or the letter *a*, but the determiner sense is much more likely.

This idea suggests a useful **baseline**: given an ambiguous word, choose the tag which is **most frequent** in the training corpus. This is a key concept:

**Most Frequent Class Baseline:** Always compare a classifier against a baseline at least as good as the most frequent class baseline (assigning each token to the class it occurred in most often in the training set).

The most-frequent-tag baseline has an accuracy of about 92%<sup>1</sup>. The baseline thus differs from the state-of-the-art and human ceiling (97%) by only 5%.

## 8.3 Named Entities and Named Entity Tagging

Part of speech tagging can tell us that words like *Janet*, *Stanford University*, and *Colorado* are all proper nouns; being a proper noun is a grammatical property of these words. But viewed from a semantic perspective, these proper nouns refer to different kinds of entities: Janet is a person, Stanford University is an organization,.. and Colorado is a location.

A **named entity** is, roughly speaking, anything that can be referred to with a proper name: a person, a location, an organization. The task of **named entity recognition (NER)** is to find spans of text that constitute proper names and tag the type of the entity. Four entity tags are most common: **PER** (person), **LOC** (location), **ORG** (organization), or **GPE** (geo-political entity). However, the term **named entity** is commonly extended to include things that aren't entities per se, including dates, times, and other kinds of temporal expressions, and even numerical expressions like prices. Here's an example of the output of an NER tagger:

Citing high fuel prices, [ORG United Airlines] said [TIME Friday] it has increased fares by [MONEY \$6] per round trip on flights to some cities also served by lower-cost carriers. [ORG American Airlines], a unit of [ORG AMR Corp.], immediately matched the move, spokesman [PER Tim Wagner] said. [ORG United], a unit of [ORG UAL Corp.], said the increase took effect [TIME Thursday] and applies to most routes where it competes against discount carriers, such as [LOC Chicago] to [LOC Dallas] and [LOC Denver] to [LOC San Francisco].

The text contains 13 mentions of named entities including 5 organizations, 4 locations, 2 times, 1 person, and 1 mention of money. Figure 8.5 shows typical generic named entity types. Many applications will also need to use specific entity types like proteins, genes, commercial products, or works of art.

Type	Tag	Sample Categories	Example sentences
People	PER	people, characters	Turing is a giant of computer science.
Organization	ORG	companies, sports teams	The IPCC warned about the cyclone.
Location	LOC	regions, mountains, seas	Mt. Sanitas is in Sunshine Canyon.
Geo-Political Entity	GPE	countries, states	Palo Alto is raising the fees for parking.

**Figure 8.5** A list of generic named entity types with the kinds of entities they refer to.

Named entity tagging is a useful first step in lots of natural language understanding tasks. In sentiment analysis we might want to know a consumer's sentiment toward a particular entity. Entities are a useful first stage in question answering, or for linking text to information in structured knowledge sources like Wikipedia. And named entity tagging is also central to natural language understanding tasks of building semantic representations, like extracting events and the relationship between participants.

Unlike part-of-speech tagging, where there is no segmentation problem since each word gets one tag, the task of named entity recognition is to find and label

<sup>1</sup> In English, on the WSJ corpus, tested on sections 22-24.

*spans* of text, and is difficult partly because of the ambiguity of segmentation; we need to decide what's an entity and what isn't, and where the boundaries are. Indeed, most words in a text will not be named entities. Another difficulty is caused by type ambiguity. The mention JFK can refer to a person, the airport in New York, or any number of schools, bridges, and streets around the United States. Some examples of this kind of cross-type confusion are given in Figure 8.6.

[PER Washington] was born into slavery on the farm of James Burroughs.  
 [ORG Washington] went up 2 games to 1 in the four-game series.  
 Blair arrived in [LOC Washington] for what may well be his last state visit.  
 In June, [GPE Washington] passed a primary seatbelt law.

**Figure 8.6** Examples of type ambiguities in the use of the name *Washington*.

The standard approach to sequence labeling for a span-recognition problem like NER is **BIO** tagging (Ramshaw and Marcus, 1995). This is a method that allows us to treat NER like a word-by-word sequence labeling task, via tags that capture both the boundary and the named entity type. Consider the following sentence:

[PER Jane Villanueva ] of [ORG United] , a unit of [ORG United Airlines Holding] , said the fare applies to the [LOC Chicago ] route.

#### BIO

Figure 8.7 shows the same excerpt represented with **BIO** tagging, as well as variants called **IO** tagging and **BIOES** tagging. In BIO tagging we label any token that *begins* a span of interest with the label **B**, tokens that occur *inside* a span are tagged with an **I**, and any tokens outside of any span of interest are labeled **O**. While there is only one **O** tag, we'll have distinct **B** and **I** tags for each named entity class. The number of tags is thus  $2n + 1$  tags, where  $n$  is the number of entity types. BIO tagging can represent exactly the same information as the bracketed notation, but has the advantage that we can represent the task in the same simple sequence modeling way as part-of-speech tagging: assigning a single label  $y_i$  to each input word  $x_i$ :

Words	IO Label	BIO Label	BIOES Label
Jane	I-PER	B-PER	B-PER
Villanueva	I-PER	I-PER	E-PER
of	O	O	O
United	I-ORG	B-ORG	B-ORG
Airlines	I-ORG	I-ORG	I-ORG
Holding	I-ORG	I-ORG	E-ORG
discussed	O	O	O
the	O	O	O
Chicago	I-LOC	B-LOC	S-LOC
route	O	O	O
.	O	O	O

**Figure 8.7** NER as a sequence model, showing IO, BIO, and BIOES taggings.

We've also shown two variant tagging schemes: **IO** tagging, which loses some information by eliminating the **B** tag, and **BIOES** tagging, which adds an end tag **E** for the end of a span, and a span tag **S** for a span consisting of only one word. A sequence labeler (HMM, CRF, RNN, Transformer, etc.) is trained to label each token in a text with tags that indicate the presence (or absence) of particular kinds of named entities.

## 8.4 HMM Part-of-Speech Tagging

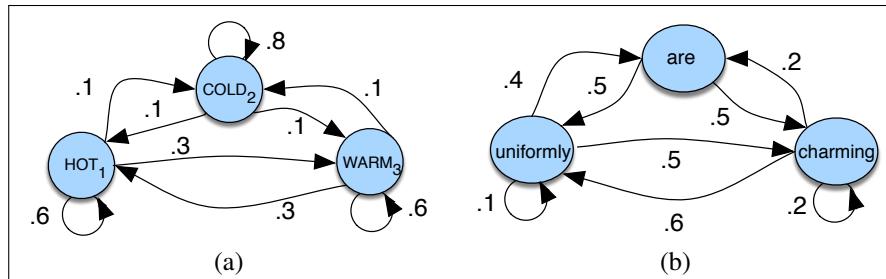
In this section we introduce our first sequence labeling algorithm, the Hidden Markov Model, and show how to apply it to part-of-speech tagging. Recall that a sequence labeler is a model whose job is to assign a label to each unit in a sequence, thus mapping a sequence of observations to a sequence of labels of the same length. HMMs are a classic model that introduces many of the key concepts of sequence modeling that we will see again in more modern models.

An HMM is a probabilistic sequence model: given a sequence of units (words, letters, morphemes, sentences, whatever), it computes a probability distribution over possible sequences of labels and chooses the best label sequence.

### 8.4.1 Markov Chains

#### Markov chain

The HMM is based on augmenting the Markov chain. A **Markov chain** is a model that tells us something about the probabilities of sequences of random variables, *states*, each of which can take on values from some set. These sets can be words, or tags, or symbols representing anything, for example the weather. A Markov chain makes a very strong assumption that if we want to predict the future in the sequence, all that matters is the current state. All the states before the current state have no impact on the future except via the current state. It's as if to predict tomorrow's weather you could examine today's weather but you weren't allowed to look at yesterday's weather.



**Figure 8.8** A Markov chain for weather (a) and one for words (b), showing states and transitions. A start distribution  $\pi$  is required; setting  $\pi = [0.1, 0.7, 0.2]$  for (a) would mean a probability 0.7 of starting in state 2 (cold), probability 0.1 of starting in state 1 (hot), etc.

#### Markov assumption

More formally, consider a sequence of state variables  $q_1, q_2, \dots, q_i$ . A Markov model embodies the **Markov assumption** on the probabilities of this sequence: that when predicting the future, the past doesn't matter, only the present.

$$\text{Markov Assumption: } P(q_i = a | q_1 \dots q_{i-1}) = P(q_i = a | q_{i-1}) \quad (8.3)$$

Figure 8.8a shows a Markov chain for assigning a probability to a sequence of weather events, for which the vocabulary consists of HOT, COLD, and WARM. The states are represented as nodes in the graph, and the transitions, with their probabilities, as edges. The transitions are probabilities: the values of arcs leaving a given state must sum to 1. Figure 8.8b shows a Markov chain for assigning a probability to a sequence of words  $w_1 \dots w_t$ . This Markov chain should be familiar; in fact, it represents a bigram language model, with each edge expressing the probability  $p(w_i | w_j)$ ! Given the two models in Fig. 8.8, we can assign a probability to any sequence from our vocabulary.

Formally, a Markov chain is specified by the following components:

$Q = q_1 q_2 \dots q_N$	a set of $N$ states
$A = a_{11} a_{12} \dots a_{N1} \dots a_{NN}$	a <b>transition probability matrix</b> $A$ , each $a_{ij}$ representing the probability of moving from state $i$ to state $j$ , s.t. $\sum_{j=1}^n a_{ij} = 1 \quad \forall i$
$\pi = \pi_1, \pi_2, \dots, \pi_N$	an <b>initial probability distribution</b> over states. $\pi_i$ is the probability that the Markov chain will start in state $i$ . Some states $j$ may have $\pi_j = 0$ , meaning that they cannot be initial states. Also, $\sum_{i=1}^n \pi_i = 1$

Before you go on, use the sample probabilities in Fig. 8.8a (with  $\pi = [0.1, 0.7, 0.2]$ ) to compute the probability of each of the following sequences:

- (8.4) hot hot hot hot
- (8.5) cold hot cold hot

What does the difference in these probabilities tell you about a real-world weather fact encoded in Fig. 8.8a?

### 8.4.2 The Hidden Markov Model

A Markov chain is useful when we need to compute a probability for a sequence of observable events. In many cases, however, the events we are interested in are **hidden**: we don't observe them directly. For example we don't normally observe part-of-speech tags in a text. Rather, we see words, and must infer the tags from the word sequence. We call the tags **hidden** because they are not observed.

A **hidden Markov model** (HMM) allows us to talk about both *observed* events (like words that we see in the input) and *hidden* events (like part-of-speech tags) that we think of as causal factors in our probabilistic model. An HMM is specified by the following components:

$Q = q_1 q_2 \dots q_N$	a set of $N$ states
$A = a_{11} \dots a_{ij} \dots a_{NN}$	a <b>transition probability matrix</b> $A$ , each $a_{ij}$ representing the probability of moving from state $i$ to state $j$ , s.t. $\sum_{j=1}^N a_{ij} = 1 \quad \forall i$
$O = o_1 o_2 \dots o_T$	a sequence of $T$ <b>observations</b> , each one drawn from a vocabulary $V = v_1, v_2, \dots, v_V$
$B = b_i(o_t)$	a sequence of <b>observation likelihoods</b> , also called <b>emission probabilities</b> , each expressing the probability of an observation $o_t$ being generated from a state $q_i$
$\pi = \pi_1, \pi_2, \dots, \pi_N$	an <b>initial probability distribution</b> over states. $\pi_i$ is the probability that the Markov chain will start in state $i$ . Some states $j$ may have $\pi_j = 0$ , meaning that they cannot be initial states. Also, $\sum_{i=1}^n \pi_i = 1$

A first-order hidden Markov model instantiates two simplifying assumptions. First, as with a first-order Markov chain, the probability of a particular state depends only on the previous state:

$$\text{Markov Assumption: } P(q_i|q_1, \dots, q_{i-1}) = P(q_i|q_{i-1}) \quad (8.6)$$

Second, the probability of an output observation  $o_i$  depends only on the state that produced the observation  $q_i$  and not on any other states or any other observations:

$$\text{Output Independence: } P(o_i|q_1, \dots, q_i, \dots, q_T, o_1, \dots, o_i, \dots, o_T) = P(o_i|q_i) \quad (8.7)$$

### 8.4.3 The components of an HMM tagger

Let's start by looking at the pieces of an HMM tagger, and then we'll see how to use it to tag. An HMM has two components, the  $A$  and  $B$  probabilities.

The  $A$  matrix contains the tag transition probabilities  $P(t_i|t_{i-1})$  which represent the probability of a tag occurring given the previous tag. For example, modal verbs like *will* are very likely to be followed by a verb in the base form, a VB, like *race*, so we expect this probability to be high. We compute the maximum likelihood estimate of this transition probability by counting, out of the times we see the first tag in a labeled corpus, how often the first tag is followed by the second:

$$P(t_i|t_{i-1}) = \frac{C(t_{i-1}, t_i)}{C(t_{i-1})} \quad (8.8)$$

In the WSJ corpus, for example, MD occurs 13124 times of which it is followed by VB 10471, for an MLE estimate of

$$P(VB|MD) = \frac{C(MD, VB)}{C(MD)} = \frac{10471}{13124} = .80 \quad (8.9)$$

Let's walk through an example, seeing how these probabilities are estimated and used in a sample tagging task, before we return to the algorithm for decoding.

In HMM tagging, the probabilities are estimated by counting on a tagged training corpus. For this example we'll use the tagged WSJ corpus.

The  $B$  emission probabilities,  $P(w_i|t_i)$ , represent the probability, given a tag (say MD), that it will be associated with a given word (say *will*). The MLE of the emission probability is

$$P(w_i|t_i) = \frac{C(t_i, w_i)}{C(t_i)} \quad (8.10)$$

Of the 13124 occurrences of MD in the WSJ corpus, it is associated with *will* 4046 times:

$$P(will|MD) = \frac{C(MD, will)}{C(MD)} = \frac{4046}{13124} = .31 \quad (8.11)$$

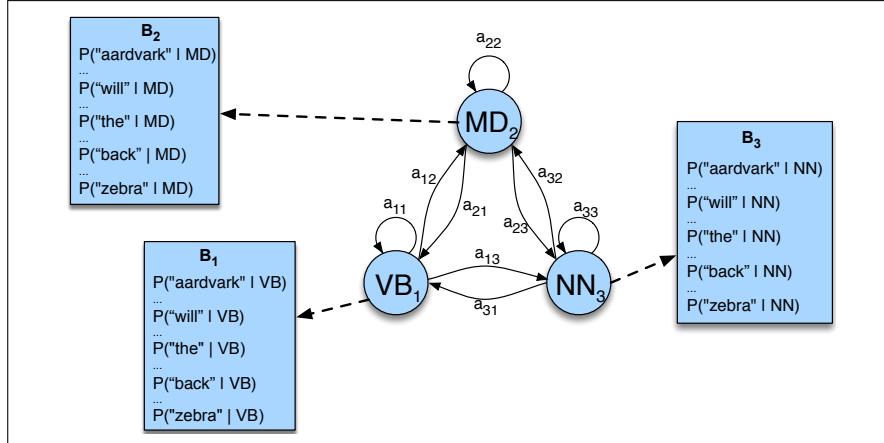
We saw this kind of Bayesian modeling in Chapter 4; recall that this likelihood term is not asking “which is the most likely tag for the word *will*?” That would be the posterior  $P(MD|will)$ . Instead,  $P(will|MD)$  answers the slightly counterintuitive question “If we were going to generate a MD, how likely is it that this modal would be *will*?”

The  $A$  transition probabilities, and  $B$  observation likelihoods of the HMM are illustrated in Fig. 8.9 for three states in an HMM part-of-speech tagger; the full tagger would have one state for each tag.

### 8.4.4 HMM tagging as decoding

For any model, such as an HMM, that contains hidden variables, the task of determining the hidden variables sequence corresponding to the sequence of observations is called **decoding**. More formally,

**Decoding:** Given as input an HMM  $\lambda = (A, B)$  and a sequence of observations  $O = o_1, o_2, \dots, o_T$ , find the most probable sequence of states  $Q = q_1 q_2 q_3 \dots q_T$ .



**Figure 8.9** An illustration of the two parts of an HMM representation: the  $A$  transition probabilities used to compute the prior probability, and the  $B$  observation likelihoods that are associated with each state, one likelihood for each possible observation word.

For part-of-speech tagging, the goal of HMM decoding is to choose the tag sequence  $t_1 \dots t_n$  that is most probable given the observation sequence of  $n$  words  $w_1 \dots w_n$ :

$$\hat{t}_{1:n} = \operatorname{argmax}_{t_1 \dots t_n} P(t_1 \dots t_n | w_1 \dots w_n) \quad (8.12)$$

The way we'll do this in the HMM is to use Bayes' rule to instead compute:

$$\hat{t}_{1:n} = \operatorname{argmax}_{t_1 \dots t_n} \frac{P(w_1 \dots w_n | t_1 \dots t_n) P(t_1 \dots t_n)}{P(w_1 \dots w_n)} \quad (8.13)$$

Furthermore, we simplify Eq. 8.13 by dropping the denominator  $P(w_1^n)$ :

$$\hat{t}_{1:n} = \operatorname{argmax}_{t_1 \dots t_n} P(w_1 \dots w_n | t_1 \dots t_n) P(t_1 \dots t_n) \quad (8.14)$$

HMM taggers make two further simplifying assumptions. The first is that the probability of a word appearing depends only on its own tag and is independent of neighboring words and tags:

$$P(w_1 \dots w_n | t_1 \dots t_n) \approx \prod_{i=1}^n P(w_i | t_i) \quad (8.15)$$

The second assumption, the **bigram** assumption, is that the probability of a tag is dependent only on the previous tag, rather than the entire tag sequence;

$$P(t_1 \dots t_n) \approx \prod_{i=1}^n P(t_i | t_{i-1}) \quad (8.16)$$

Plugging the simplifying assumptions from Eq. 8.15 and Eq. 8.16 into Eq. 8.14 results in the following equation for the most probable tag sequence from a bigram tagger:

$$\hat{t}_{1:n} = \operatorname{argmax}_{t_1 \dots t_n} P(t_1 \dots t_n | w_1 \dots w_n) \approx \operatorname{argmax}_{t_1 \dots t_n} \prod_{i=1}^n \overbrace{P(w_i | t_i)}^{\text{emission transition}} \overbrace{P(t_i | t_{i-1})}^{(8.17)}$$

The two parts of Eq. 8.17 correspond neatly to the **B emission probability** and **A transition probability** that we just defined above!

### 8.4.5 The Viterbi Algorithm

Viterbi algorithm

The decoding algorithm for HMMs is the **Viterbi algorithm** shown in Fig. 8.10. As an instance of **dynamic programming**, Viterbi resembles the dynamic programming **minimum edit distance** algorithm of Chapter 2.

```

function VITERBI(observations of len  $T$ ,state-graph of len  $N$ ) returns best-path, path-prob
    create a path probability matrix viterbi[ $N, T$ ]
    for each state  $s$  from 1 to  $N$  do ; initialization step
        viterbi[ $s, 1$ ]  $\leftarrow \pi_s * b_s(o_1)$ 
        backpointer[ $s, 1$ ]  $\leftarrow 0$ 
    for each time step  $t$  from 2 to  $T$  do ; recursion step
        for each state  $s$  from 1 to  $N$  do
             $viterbi[s, t] \leftarrow \max_{s'=1}^N viterbi[s', t-1] * a_{s', s} * b_s(o_t)$ 
            backpointer[ $s, t$ ]  $\leftarrow \operatorname{argmax}_{s'=1}^N viterbi[s', t-1] * a_{s', s} * b_s(o_t)$ 
    bestpathprob  $\leftarrow \max_{s=1}^N viterbi[s, T]$  ; termination step
    bestpathpointer  $\leftarrow \operatorname{argmax}_{s=1}^N viterbi[s, T]$  ; termination step
    bestpath  $\leftarrow$  the path starting at state bestpathpointer, that follows backpointer[] to states back in time
    return bestpath, bestpathprob

```

**Figure 8.10** Viterbi algorithm for finding the optimal sequence of tags. Given an observation sequence and an HMM  $\lambda = (A, B)$ , the algorithm returns the state path through the HMM that assigns maximum likelihood to the observation sequence.

The Viterbi algorithm first sets up a probability matrix or **lattice**, with one column for each observation  $o_t$  and one row for each state in the state graph. Each column thus has a cell for each state  $q_i$  in the single combined automaton. Figure 8.11 shows an intuition of this lattice for the sentence *Janet will back the bill*.

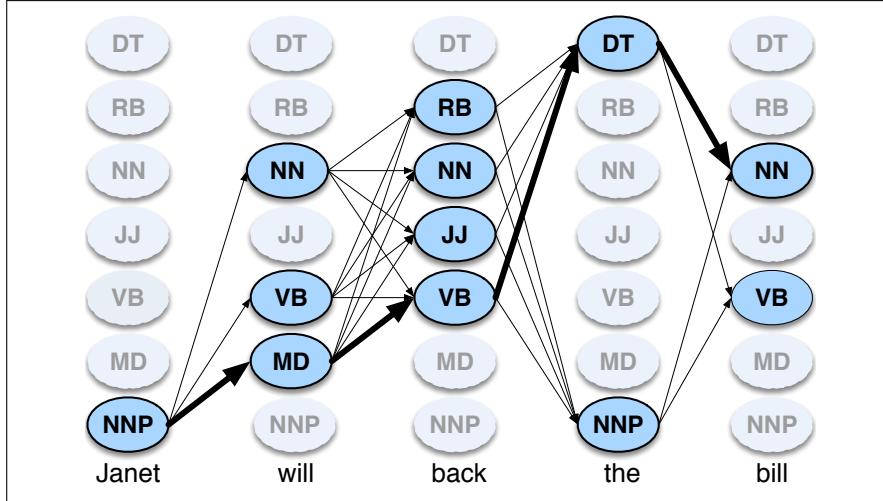
Each cell of the lattice,  $v_t(j)$ , represents the probability that the HMM is in state  $j$  after seeing the first  $t$  observations and passing through the most probable state sequence  $q_1, \dots, q_{t-1}$ , given the HMM  $\lambda$ . The value of each cell  $v_t(j)$  is computed by recursively taking the most probable path that could lead us to this cell. Formally, each cell expresses the probability

$$v_t(j) = \max_{q_1, \dots, q_{t-1}} P(q_1 \dots q_{t-1}, o_1, o_2 \dots o_t, q_t = j | \lambda) \quad (8.18)$$

We represent the most probable path by taking the maximum over all possible previous state sequences  $\max_{q_1, \dots, q_{t-1}}$ . Like other dynamic programming algorithms, Viterbi fills each cell recursively. Given that we had already computed the probability of being in every state at time  $t - 1$ , we compute the Viterbi probability by taking the most probable of the extensions of the paths that lead to the current cell. For a given state  $q_j$  at time  $t$ , the value  $v_t(j)$  is computed as

$$v_t(j) = \max_{i=1}^N v_{t-1}(i) a_{ij} b_j(o_t) \quad (8.19)$$

The three factors that are multiplied in Eq. 8.19 for extending the previous paths to compute the Viterbi probability at time  $t$  are



**Figure 8.11** A sketch of the lattice for *Janet will back the bill*, showing the possible tags ( $q_i$ ) for each word and highlighting the path corresponding to the correct tag sequence through the hidden states. States (parts of speech) which have a zero probability of generating a particular word according to the  $B$  matrix (such as the probability that a determiner DT will be realized as *Janet*) are greyed out.

$v_{t-1}(i)$	the previous Viterbi path probability from the previous time step
$a_{ij}$	the transition probability from previous state $q_i$ to current state $q_j$
$b_j(o_t)$	the state observation likelihood of the observation symbol $o_t$ given the current state $j$

#### 8.4.6 Working through an example

Let's tag the sentence *Janet will back the bill*; the goal is the correct series of tags (see also Fig. 8.11):

(8.20) Janet/NNP will/MD back/VB the/DT bill/NN

	NNP	MD	VB	JJ	NN	RB	DT
$< s >$	0.2767	0.0006	0.0031	0.0453	0.0449	0.0510	0.2026
<b>NNP</b>	0.3777	0.0110	0.0009	0.0084	0.0584	0.0090	0.0025
<b>MD</b>	0.0008	0.0002	0.7968	0.0005	0.0008	0.1698	0.0041
<b>VB</b>	0.0322	0.0005	0.0050	0.0837	0.0615	0.0514	0.2231
<b>JJ</b>	0.0366	0.0004	0.0001	0.0733	0.4509	0.0036	0.0036
<b>NN</b>	0.0096	0.0176	0.0014	0.0086	0.1216	0.0177	0.0068
<b>RB</b>	0.0068	0.0102	0.1011	0.1012	0.0120	0.0728	0.0479
<b>DT</b>	0.1147	0.0021	0.0002	0.2157	0.4744	0.0102	0.0017

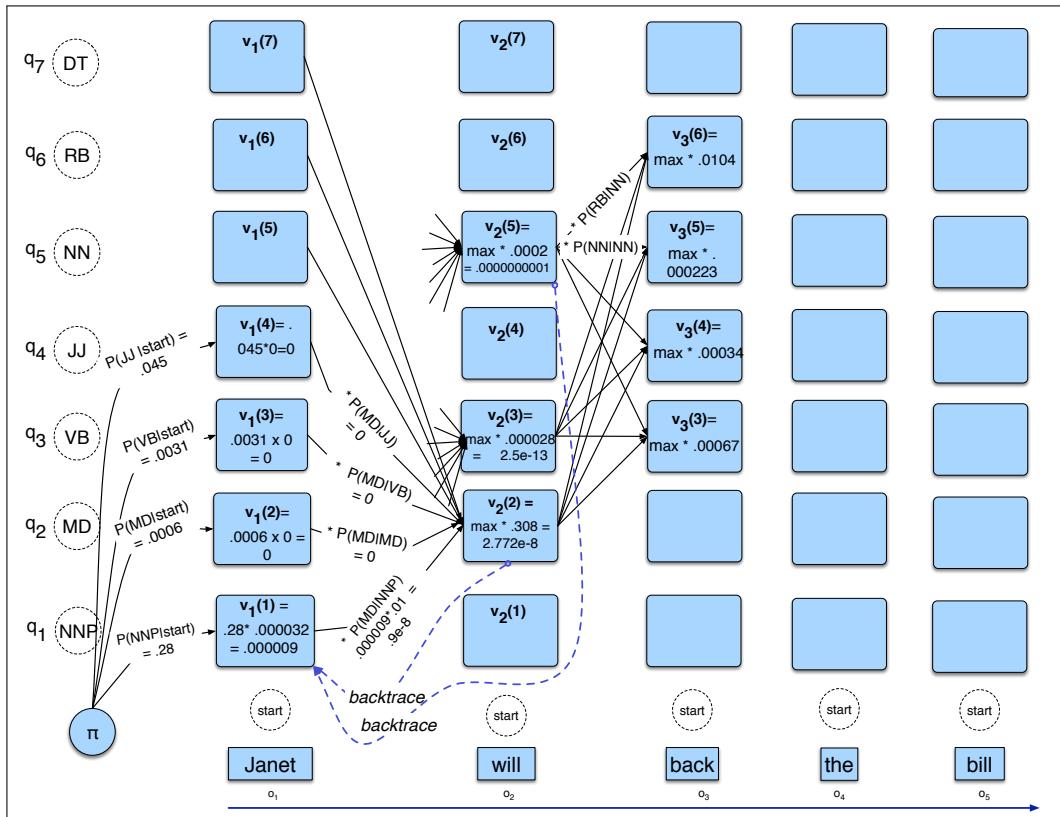
**Figure 8.12** The  $A$  transition probabilities  $P(t_i|t_{i-1})$  computed from the WSJ corpus without smoothing. Rows are labeled with the conditioning event; thus  $P(VB|MD)$  is 0.7968.

Let the HMM be defined by the two tables in Fig. 8.12 and Fig. 8.13. Figure 8.12 lists the  $a_{ij}$  probabilities for transitioning between the hidden states (part-of-speech tags). Figure 8.13 expresses the  $b_i(o_t)$  probabilities, the *observation likelihood* of words given tags. This table is (slightly simplified) from counts in the WSJ corpus. So the word *Janet* only appears as an NNP, *back* has 4 possible parts of speech, and

	<b>Janet</b>	<b>will</b>	<b>back</b>	<b>the</b>	<b>bill</b>
<b>NNP</b>	0.000032	0	0	0.000048	0
<b>MD</b>	0	0.308431	0	0	0
<b>VB</b>	0	0.000028	0.000672	0	0.000028
<b>JJ</b>	0	0	0.000340	0	0
<b>NN</b>	0	0.000200	0.000223	0	0.002337
<b>RB</b>	0	0	0.010446	0	0
<b>DT</b>	0	0	0	0.506099	0

**Figure 8.13** Observation likelihoods  $B$  computed from the WSJ corpus without smoothing, simplified slightly.

the word *the* can appear as a determiner or as an NNP (in titles like “Somewhere Over the Rainbow” all words are tagged as NNP).



**Figure 8.14** The first few entries in the individual state columns for the Viterbi algorithm. Each cell keeps the probability of the best path so far and a pointer to the previous cell along that path. We have only filled out columns 1 and 2; to avoid clutter most cells with value 0 are left empty. The rest is left as an exercise for the reader. After the cells are filled in, backtracing from the *end* state, we should be able to reconstruct the correct state sequence NNP MD VB DT NN.

Figure 8.14 shows a fleshed-out version of the sketch we saw in Fig. 8.11, the Viterbi lattice for computing the best hidden state sequence for the observation sequence *Janet will back the bill*.

There are  $N = 5$  state columns. We begin in column 1 (for the word *Janet*) by setting the Viterbi value in each cell to the product of the  $\pi$  transition probability (the start probability for that state  $i$ , which we get from the  $\langle s \rangle$  entry of Fig. 8.12),

and the observation likelihood of the word *Janet* given the tag for that cell. Most of the cells in the column are zero since the word *Janet* cannot be any of those tags. The reader should find this in Fig. 8.14.

Next, each cell in the *will* column gets updated. For each state, we compute the value  $viterbi[s, t]$  by taking the maximum over the extensions of all the paths from the previous column that lead to the current cell according to Eq. 8.19. We have shown the values for the MD, VB, and NN cells. Each cell gets the max of the 7 values from the previous column, multiplied by the appropriate transition probability; as it happens in this case, most of them are zero from the previous column. The remaining value is multiplied by the relevant observation probability, and the (trivial) max is taken. In this case the final value, 2.772e-8, comes from the NNP state at the previous column. The reader should fill in the rest of the lattice in Fig. 8.14 and backtrace to see whether or not the Viterbi algorithm returns the gold state sequence NNP MD VB DT NN.

## 8.5 Conditional Random Fields (CRFs)

**unknown words**

While the HMM is a useful and powerful model, it turns out that HMMs need a number of augmentations to achieve high accuracy. For example, in POS tagging as in other tasks, we often run into **unknown words**: proper names and acronyms are created very often, and even new common nouns and verbs enter the language at a surprising rate. It would be great to have ways to add arbitrary features to help with this, perhaps based on capitalization or morphology (words starting with capital letters are likely to be proper nouns, words ending with *-ed* tend to be past tense (VBD or VBN), etc.) Or knowing the previous or following words might be a useful feature (if the previous word is *the*, the current tag is unlikely to be a verb).

Although we could try to hack the HMM to find ways to incorporate some of these, in general it's hard for generative models like HMMs to add arbitrary features directly into the model in a clean way. We've already seen a model for combining arbitrary features in a principled way: log-linear models like the logistic regression model of Chapter 5! But logistic regression isn't a sequence model; it assigns a class to a single observation.

**CRF**

Luckily, there is a discriminative sequence model based on log-linear models: the **conditional random field (CRF)**. We'll describe here the **linear chain CRF**, the version of the CRF most commonly used for language processing, and the one whose conditioning closely matches the HMM.

Assuming we have a sequence of input words  $X = x_1^n = x_1 \dots x_n$  and want to compute a sequence of output tags  $Y = y_1^n = y_1 \dots y_n$ . In an HMM to compute the best tag sequence that maximizes  $P(Y|X)$  we rely on Bayes' rule and the likelihood  $P(X|Y)$ :

$$\begin{aligned}\hat{Y} &= \operatorname{argmax}_Y p(Y|X) \\ &= \operatorname{argmax}_Y p(X|Y)p(Y) \\ &= \operatorname{argmax}_Y \prod_i p(x_i|y_i) \prod_i p(y_i|y_{i-1})\end{aligned}\tag{8.21}$$

In a CRF, by contrast, we compute the posterior  $p(Y|X)$  directly, training the

CRF to discriminate among the possible tag sequences:

$$\hat{Y} = \operatorname{argmax}_{Y \in \mathcal{Y}} P(Y|X) \quad (8.22)$$

However, the CRF does not compute a probability for each tag at each time step. Instead, at each time step the CRF computes log-linear functions over a set of relevant features, and these local features are aggregated and normalized to produce a global probability for the whole sequence.

Let's introduce the CRF more formally, again using  $X$  and  $Y$  as the input and output sequences. A CRF is a log-linear model that assigns a probability to an entire output (tag) sequence  $Y$ , out of all possible sequences  $\mathcal{Y}$ , given the entire input (word) sequence  $X$ . We can think of a CRF as like a giant version of what multinomial logistic regression does for a single token. Recall that the feature function  $f$  in regular multinomial logistic regression maps a tuple of a token  $x$  and a label  $y$  into a feature vector. In a CRF, the function  $F$  maps an entire input sequence  $X$  and an entire output sequence  $Y$  to a feature vector. Let's assume we have  $K$  features, with a weight  $w_k$  for each feature  $F_k$ :

$$p(Y|X) = \frac{\exp\left(\sum_{k=1}^K w_k F_k(X, Y)\right)}{\sum_{Y' \in \mathcal{Y}} \exp\left(\sum_{k=1}^K w_k F_k(X, Y')\right)} \quad (8.23)$$

It's common to also describe the same equation by pulling out the denominator into a function  $Z(X)$ :

$$p(Y|X) = \frac{1}{Z(X)} \exp\left(\sum_{k=1}^K w_k F_k(X, Y)\right) \quad (8.24)$$

$$Z(X) = \sum_{Y' \in \mathcal{Y}} \exp\left(\sum_{k=1}^K w_k F_k(X, Y')\right) \quad (8.25)$$

We'll call these  $K$  functions  $F_k(X, Y)$  **global features**, since each one is a property of the entire input sequence  $X$  and output sequence  $Y$ . We compute them by decomposing into a sum of **local** features for each position  $i$  in  $Y$ :

$$F_k(X, Y) = \sum_{i=1}^n f_k(y_{i-1}, y_i, X, i) \quad (8.26)$$

**linear chain  
CRF**

Each of these local features  $f_k$  in a linear-chain CRF is allowed to make use of the current output token  $y_i$ , the previous output token  $y_{i-1}$ , the entire input string  $X$  (or any subpart of it), and the current position  $i$ . This constraint to only depend on the current and previous output tokens  $y_i$  and  $y_{i-1}$  are what characterizes a **linear chain CRF**. As we will see, this limitation makes it possible to use versions of the efficient Viterbi and Forward-Backwards algorithms from the HMM. A general CRF, by contrast, allows a feature to make use of any output token, and are thus necessary for tasks in which the decision depend on distant output tokens, like  $y_{i-4}$ . General CRFs require more complex inference, and are less commonly used for language processing.

### 8.5.1 Features in a CRF POS Tagger

Let's look at some of these features in detail, since the reason to use a discriminative sequence model is that it's easier to incorporate a lot of features.<sup>2</sup>

Again, in a linear-chain CRF, each local feature  $f_k$  at position  $i$  can depend on any information from:  $(y_{i-1}, y_i, X, i)$ . So some legal features representing common situations might be the following:

$$\begin{aligned} & \mathbb{1}\{x_i = \text{the}, y_i = \text{DET}\} \\ & \mathbb{1}\{y_i = \text{PROPN}, x_{i+1} = \text{Street}, y_{i-1} = \text{NUM}\} \\ & \mathbb{1}\{y_i = \text{VERB}, y_{i-1} = \text{AUX}\} \end{aligned}$$

For simplicity, we'll assume all CRF features take on the value 1 or 0. Above, we explicitly use the notation  $\mathbb{1}\{x\}$  to mean "1 if  $x$  is true, and 0 otherwise". From now on, we'll leave off the  $\mathbb{1}$  when we define features, but you can assume each feature has it there implicitly.

**feature templates**

Although the idea of what features to use is done by the system designer by hand, the specific features are automatically populated by using **feature templates** as we briefly mentioned in Chapter 5. Here are some templates that only use information from  $y_{i-1}, y_i, X, i$ :

$$\langle y_i, x_i \rangle, \langle y_i, y_{i-1} \rangle, \langle y_i, x_{i-1}, x_{i+2} \rangle$$

These templates automatically populate the set of features from every instance in the training and test set. Thus for our example *Janet/NNP will/MD back/VB the/DT bill/NN*, when  $x_i$  is the word *back*, the following features would be generated and have the value 1 (we've assigned them arbitrary feature numbers):

$$\begin{aligned} f_{3743}: & y_i = \text{VB} \text{ and } x_i = \text{back} \\ f_{156}: & y_i = \text{VB} \text{ and } y_{i-1} = \text{MD} \\ f_{99732}: & y_i = \text{VB} \text{ and } x_{i-1} = \text{will} \text{ and } x_{i+2} = \text{bill} \end{aligned}$$

**word shape**

It's also important to have features that help with unknown words. One of the most important is **word shape** features, which represent the abstract letter pattern of the word by mapping lower-case letters to 'x', upper-case to 'X', numbers to 'd', and retaining punctuation. Thus for example I.M.F would map to X.X.X. and DC10-30 would map to XXdd-dd. A second class of shorter word shape features is also used. In these features consecutive character types are removed, so words in all caps map to X, words with initial-caps map to Xx, DC10-30 would be mapped to Xd-d but I.M.F would still map to X.X.X. Prefix and suffix features are also useful. In summary, here are some sample feature templates that help with unknown words:

$$\begin{aligned} x_i & \text{ contains a particular prefix (perhaps from all prefixes of length } \leq 2) \\ x_i & \text{ contains a particular suffix (perhaps from all suffixes of length } \leq 2) \\ x_i & \text{ 's word shape} \\ x_i & \text{ 's short word shape} \end{aligned}$$

For example the word *well-dressed* might generate the following non-zero valued feature values:

<sup>2</sup> Because in HMMs all computation is based on the two probabilities  $P(\text{tag}|\text{tag})$  and  $P(\text{word}|\text{tag})$ , if we want to include some source of knowledge into the tagging process, we must find a way to encode the knowledge into one of these two probabilities. Each time we add a feature we have to do a lot of complicated conditioning which gets harder and harder as we have more and more such features.

```

prefix( $x_i$ ) = w
prefix( $x_i$ ) = we
suffix( $x_i$ ) = ed
suffix( $x_i$ ) = d
word-shape( $x_i$ ) = xxxx-xxxxxxxx
short-word-shape( $x_i$ ) = x-x

```

The known-word templates are computed for every word seen in the training set; the unknown word features can also be computed for all words in training, or only on training words whose frequency is below some threshold. The result of the known-word templates and word-signature features is a very large set of features. Generally a feature cutoff is used in which features are thrown out if they have count  $< 5$  in the training set.

Remember that in a CRF we don't learn weights for each of these local features  $f_k$ . Instead, we first sum the values of each local feature (for example feature  $f_{3743}$ ) over the entire sentence, to create each global feature (for example  $F_{3743}$ ). It is those global features that will then be multiplied by weight  $w_{3743}$ . Thus for training and inference there is always a fixed set of  $K$  features with  $K$  weights, even though the length of each sentence is different.

### 8.5.2 Features for CRF Named Entity Recognizers

A CRF for NER makes use of very similar features to a POS tagger, as shown in Figure 8.15.

identity of $w_i$ , identity of neighboring words
embeddings for $w_i$ , embeddings for neighboring words
part of speech of $w_i$ , part of speech of neighboring words
presence of $w_i$ in a <b>gazetteer</b>
$w_i$ contains a particular prefix (from all prefixes of length $\leq 4$ )
$w_i$ contains a particular suffix (from all suffixes of length $\leq 4$ )
word shape of $w_i$ , word shape of neighboring words
short word shape of $w_i$ , short word shape of neighboring words
gazetteer features

**Figure 8.15** Typical features for a feature-based NER system.

#### gazetteer

One feature that is especially useful for locations is a **gazetteer**, a list of place names, often providing millions of entries for locations with detailed geographical and political information.<sup>3</sup> This can be implemented as a binary feature indicating a phrase appears in the list. Other related resources like **name-lists**, for example from the United States Census Bureau<sup>4</sup>, can be used, as can other entity dictionaries like lists of corporations or products, although they may not be as helpful as a gazetteer (Mikheev et al., 1999).

The sample named entity token *L'Occitane* would generate the following non-zero valued feature values (assuming that *L'Occitane* is neither in the gazetteer nor the census).

<sup>3</sup> [www.geonames.org](http://www.geonames.org)

<sup>4</sup> [www.census.gov](http://www.census.gov)

$\text{prefix}(x_i) = \text{L}$	$\text{suffix}(x_i) = \text{tane}$
$\text{prefix}(x_i) = \text{L}'$	$\text{suffix}(x_i) = \text{ane}$
$\text{prefix}(x_i) = \text{L}'\text{O}$	$\text{suffix}(x_i) = \text{ne}$
$\text{prefix}(x_i) = \text{L}'\text{Oc}$	$\text{suffix}(x_i) = \text{e}$
$\text{word-shape}(x_i) = \text{X'XXXXXXXX}$	$\text{short-word-shape}(x_i) = \text{X'Xx}$

Figure 8.16 illustrates the result of adding part-of-speech tags and some shape information to our earlier example.

Words	POS	Short shape	Gazetteer	BIO Label
Jane	NNP	Xx	0	B-PER
Villanueva	NNP	Xx	1	I-PER
of	IN	x	0	O
United	NNP	Xx	0	B-ORG
Airlines	NNP	Xx	0	I-ORG
Holding	NNP	Xx	0	I-ORG
discussed	VBD	x	0	O
the	DT	x	0	O
Chicago	NNP	Xx	1	B-LOC
route	NN	x	0	O
.	.	.	0	O

**Figure 8.16** Some NER features for a sample sentence, assuming that Chicago and Villanueva are listed as locations in a gazetteer. We assume features only take on the values 0 or 1, so the first POS feature, for example, would be represented as  $\mathbb{1}\{\text{POS} = \text{NNP}\}$ .

### 8.5.3 Inference and Training for CRFs

How do we find the best tag sequence  $\hat{Y}$  for a given input  $X$ ? We start with Eq. 8.22:

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{Y} &= \underset{Y \in \mathcal{Y}}{\operatorname{argmax}} P(Y|X) \\ &= \underset{Y \in \mathcal{Y}}{\operatorname{argmax}} \frac{1}{Z(X)} \exp \left( \sum_{k=1}^K w_k F_k(X, Y) \right) \end{aligned} \quad (8.27)$$

$$= \underset{Y \in \mathcal{Y}}{\operatorname{argmax}} \exp \left( \sum_{k=1}^K w_k \sum_{i=1}^n f_k(y_{i-1}, y_i, X, i) \right) \quad (8.28)$$

$$= \underset{Y \in \mathcal{Y}}{\operatorname{argmax}} \sum_{k=1}^K w_k \sum_{i=1}^n f_k(y_{i-1}, y_i, X, i) \quad (8.29)$$

$$= \underset{Y \in \mathcal{Y}}{\operatorname{argmax}} \sum_{i=1}^n \sum_{k=1}^K w_k f_k(y_{i-1}, y_i, X, i) \quad (8.30)$$

We can ignore the  $\exp$  function and the denominator  $Z(X)$ , as we do above, because  $\exp$  doesn't change the  $\operatorname{argmax}$ , and the denominator  $Z(X)$  is constant for a given observation sequence  $X$ .

How should we decode to find this optimal tag sequence  $\hat{y}$ ? Just as with HMMs, we'll turn to the Viterbi algorithm, which works because, like the HMM, the linear-chain CRF depends at each timestep on only one previous output token  $y_{i-1}$ .

Concretely, this involves filling an  $N \times T$  array with the appropriate values, maintaining backpointers as we proceed. As with HMM Viterbi, when the table is filled, we simply follow pointers back from the maximum value in the final column to retrieve the desired set of labels.

The requisite changes from HMM Viterbi have to do only with how we fill each cell. Recall from Eq. 8.19 that the recursive step of the Viterbi equation computes the Viterbi value of time  $t$  for state  $j$  as

$$v_t(j) = \max_{i=1}^N v_{t-1}(i) a_{ij} b_j(o_t); \quad 1 \leq j \leq N, 1 < t \leq T \quad (8.31)$$

which is the HMM implementation of

$$v_t(j) = \max_{i=1}^N v_{t-1}(i) P(s_j|s_i) P(o_t|s_j) \quad 1 \leq j \leq N, 1 < t \leq T \quad (8.32)$$

The CRF requires only a slight change to this latter formula, replacing the  $a$  and  $b$  prior and likelihood probabilities with the CRF features:

$$v_t(j) = \max_{i=1}^N v_{t-1}(i) \sum_{k=1}^K w_k f_k(y_{t-1}, y_t, X, t) \quad 1 \leq j \leq N, 1 < t \leq T \quad (8.33)$$

Learning in CRFs relies on the same supervised learning algorithms we presented for logistic regression. Given a sequence of observations, feature functions, and corresponding outputs, we use stochastic gradient descent to train the weights to maximize the log-likelihood of the training corpus. The local nature of linear-chain CRFs means that a CRF version of the forward-backward algorithm (see Appendix A) can be used to efficiently compute the necessary derivatives. As with logistic regression, L1 or L2 regularization is important,

## 8.6 Evaluation of Named Entity Recognition

Part-of-speech taggers are evaluated by the standard metric of **accuracy**. Named entity recognizers are evaluated by **recall**, **precision**, and **F<sub>1</sub> measure**. Recall that recall is the ratio of the number of correctly labeled responses to the total that should have been labeled; precision is the ratio of the number of correctly labeled responses to the total labeled; and *F*-measure is the harmonic mean of the two.

To know if the difference between the F<sub>1</sub> scores of two MT systems is a significant difference, we use the paired bootstrap test, or the similar randomization test (Section 4.9).

For named entities, the *entity* rather than the word is the unit of response. Thus in the example in Fig. 8.16, the two entities *Jane Villanueva* and *United Airlines Holding* and the non-entity *discussed* would each count as a single response.

The fact that named entity tagging has a segmentation component which is not present in tasks like text categorization or part-of-speech tagging causes some problems with evaluation. For example, a system that labeled *Jane* but not *Jane Villanueva* as a person would cause two errors, a false positive for O and a false negative for I-PER. In addition, using entities as the unit of response but words as the unit of training means that there is a mismatch between the training and test conditions.

## 8.7 Further Details

In this section we summarize a few remaining details of the data and models, beginning with data. Since the algorithms we have presented are supervised, hav-

ing labeled data is essential for training and test. A wide variety of datasets exist for part-of-speech tagging and/or NER. The Universal Dependencies (UD) dataset ([Nivre et al., 2016b](#)) has POS tagged corpora in 92 languages at the time of this writing, as do the Penn Treebanks in English, Chinese, and Arabic. OntoNotes has corpora labeled for named entities in English, Chinese, and Arabic ([Hovy et al., 2006](#)). Named entity tagged corpora also available in particular domains, such as for biomedical ([Bada et al., 2012](#)) and literary text ([Bamman et al., 2019](#)).

### 8.7.1 Bidirectionality

One problem with the CRF and HMM architectures as presented is that the models are exclusively run left-to-right. While the Viterbi algorithm still allows present decisions to be influenced indirectly by future decisions, it would help even more if a decision about word  $w_i$  could directly use information about future tags  $t_{i+1}$  and  $t_{i+2}$ .

Alternatively, any sequence model can be turned into a bidirectional model by using multiple passes. For example, the first pass would use only part-of-speech features from already-disambiguated words on the left. In the second pass, tags for all words, including those on the right, can be used. Alternately, the tagger can be run twice, once left-to-right and once right-to-left. In Viterbi decoding, the labeler would choose the higher scoring of the two sequences (left-to-right or right-to-left). Bidirectional models are quite standard for neural models, as we will see with the biLSTM models to be introduced in Chapter 9.

### 8.7.2 Rule-based Methods

While machine learned (neural or CRF) sequence models are the norm in academic research, commercial approaches to NER are often based on pragmatic combinations of lists and rules, with some smaller amount of supervised machine learning ([Chiticariu et al., 2013](#)). For example in the IBM System T architecture, a user specifies declarative constraints for tagging tasks in a formal query language that includes regular expressions, dictionaries, semantic constraints, and other operators, which the system compiles into an efficient extractor ([Chiticariu et al., 2018](#)).

One common approach is to make repeated rule-based passes over a text, starting with rules with very high precision but low recall, and, in subsequent stages, using machine learning methods that take the output of the first pass into account.

1. First, use high-precision rules to tag unambiguous entity mentions.
2. Then, search for substring matches of the previously detected names.
3. Use application-specific name lists to find likely domain-specific mentions.
4. Finally, apply supervised sequence labeling techniques that use tags from previous stages as additional features.

Rule-based methods were also the earliest methods for part-of-speech tagging. Rule-based taggers like the English Constraint Grammar system ([Karlsson et al. 1995, Voutilainen 1999](#)), use the two-stage formalism that was invented in the 1950s and 1960s: a morphological analyzer with tens of thousands of word stem entries returns all parts of speech for a word. Then a large set of thousands of constraints are applied to the input sentence to rule out parts of speech inconsistent with the context.

### 8.7.3 POS Tagging for Morphologically Rich Languages

Augmentations to tagging algorithms become necessary when dealing with languages with rich morphology like Czech, Hungarian and Turkish.

These productive word-formation processes result in a large vocabulary for these languages: a 250,000 word token corpus of Hungarian has more than twice as many word types as a similarly sized corpus of English (Oravecz and Dienes, 2002), while a 10 million word token corpus of Turkish contains four times as many word types as a similarly sized English corpus (Hakkani-Tür et al., 2002). Large vocabularies mean many unknown words, and these unknown words cause significant performance degradations in a wide variety of languages (including Czech, Slovene, Estonian, and Romanian) (Hajič, 2000).

Highly inflectional languages also have much more information than English coded in word morphology, like **case** (nominative, accusative, genitive) or **gender** (masculine, feminine). Because this information is important for tasks like parsing and coreference resolution, part-of-speech taggers for morphologically rich languages need to label words with case and gender information. Tagsets for morphologically rich languages are therefore sequences of morphological tags rather than a single primitive tag. Here's a Turkish example, in which the word *izin* has three possible morphological/part-of-speech tags and meanings (Hakkani-Tür et al., 2002):

- |  |                           |
|--|---------------------------|
| 1. Yerdeki <b>izin</b> temizlenmesi gerek.<br>The <b>trace</b> on the floor should be cleaned. | iz + Noun+A3sg+Pnon+Gen   |
| 2. Üzerinde parmak <b>izin</b> kalmış<br><b>Your finger print</b> is left on (it).             | iz + Noun+A3sg+P2sg+Nom   |
| 3. İçeri girmek için <b>izin</b> alman gerekiyor.<br>You need <b>permission</b> to enter.      | izin + Noun+A3sg+Pnon+Nom |

Using a morphological parse sequence like Noun+A3sg+Pnon+Gen as the part-of-speech tag greatly increases the number of parts of speech, and so tagsets can be 4 to 10 times larger than the 50–100 tags we have seen for English. With such large tagsets, each word needs to be morphologically analyzed to generate the list of possible morphological tag sequences (part-of-speech tags) for the word. The role of the tagger is then to disambiguate among these tags. This method also helps with unknown words since morphological parsers can accept unknown stems and still segment the affixes properly.

## 8.8 Summary

This chapter introduced **parts of speech** and **named entities**, and the tasks of **part-of-speech tagging** and **named entity recognition**:

- Languages generally have a small set of **closed class** words that are highly frequent, ambiguous, and act as **function words**, and **open-class** words like **nouns, verbs, adjectives**. Various part-of-speech **tagsets** exist, of between 40 and 200 tags.
- **Part-of-speech tagging** is the process of assigning a part-of-speech label to each of a sequence of words.
- **Named entities** are words for proper nouns referring mainly to people, places, and organizations, but extended to many other types that aren't strictly entities or even proper nouns.

- Two common approaches to **sequence modeling** are a **generative** approach, **HMM** tagging, and a **discriminative** approach, **CRF** tagging. We will see a neural approach in following chapters.
- The probabilities in HMM taggers are estimated by maximum likelihood estimation on tag-labeled training corpora. The Viterbi algorithm is used for **decoding**, finding the most likely tag sequence
- **Conditional Random Fields** or **CRF taggers** train a log-linear model that can choose the best tag sequence given an observation sequence, based on features that condition on the output tag, the prior output tag, the entire input sequence, and the current timestep. They use the Viterbi algorithm for inference, to choose the best sequence of tags, and a version of the Forward-Backward algorithm (see Appendix A) for training,

## Bibliographical and Historical Notes

What is probably the earliest part-of-speech tagger was part of the parser in Zellig Harris's Transformations and Discourse Analysis Project (TDAP), implemented between June 1958 and July 1959 at the University of Pennsylvania (Harris, 1962), although earlier systems had used part-of-speech dictionaries. TDAP used 14 handwritten rules for part-of-speech disambiguation; the use of part-of-speech tag sequences and the relative frequency of tags for a word prefigures modern algorithms. The parser was implemented essentially as a cascade of finite-state transducers; see Joshi and Hopely (1999) and Karttunen (1999) for a reimplementations.

The Computational Grammar Coder (CGC) of Klein and Simmons (1963) had three components: a lexicon, a morphological analyzer, and a context disambiguator. The small 1500-word lexicon listed only function words and other irregular words. The morphological analyzer used inflectional and derivational suffixes to assign part-of-speech classes. These were run over words to produce candidate parts of speech which were then disambiguated by a set of 500 context rules by relying on surrounding islands of unambiguous words. For example, one rule said that between an ARTICLE and a VERB, the only allowable sequences were ADJ-NOUN, NOUN-ADVERB, or NOUN-NOUN. The TAGGIT tagger (Greene and Rubin, 1971) used the same architecture as Klein and Simmons (1963), with a bigger dictionary and more tags (87). TAGGIT was applied to the Brown corpus and, according to Francis and Kučera (1982, p. 9), accurately tagged 77% of the corpus; the remainder of the Brown corpus was then tagged by hand. All these early algorithms were based on a two-stage architecture in which a dictionary was first used to assign each word a set of potential parts of speech, and then lists of handwritten disambiguation rules winnowed the set down to a single part of speech per word.

Probabilities were used in tagging by Stolz et al. (1965) and a complete probabilistic tagger with Viterbi decoding was sketched by Bahl and Mercer (1976). The Lancaster-Oslo/Bergen (LOB) corpus, a British English equivalent of the Brown corpus, was tagged in the early 1980's with the CLAWS tagger (Marshall 1983; Marshall 1987; Garside 1987), a probabilistic algorithm that approximated a simplified HMM tagger. The algorithm used tag bigram probabilities, but instead of storing the word likelihood of each tag, the algorithm marked tags either as *rare* ( $P(\text{tag}|\text{word}) < .01$ ) *infrequent* ( $P(\text{tag}|\text{word}) < .10$ ) or *normally frequent* ( $P(\text{tag}|\text{word}) > .10$ ).

DeRose (1988) developed a quasi-HMM algorithm, including the use of dynamic programming, although computing  $P(t|w)P(w)$  instead of  $P(w|t)P(w)$ . The same year, the probabilistic PARTS tagger of Church (1988), (1989) was probably

the first implemented HMM tagger, described correctly in Church (1989), although Church (1988) also described the computation incorrectly as  $P(t|w)P(w)$  instead of  $P(w|t)P(w)$ . Church (p.c.) explained that he had simplified for pedagogical purposes because using the probability  $P(t|w)$  made the idea seem more understandable as “storing a lexicon in an almost standard form”.

Later taggers explicitly introduced the use of the hidden Markov model (Kupiec 1992; Weischedel et al. 1993; Schütze and Singer 1994). Merialdo (1994) showed that fully unsupervised EM didn’t work well for the tagging task and that reliance on hand-labeled data was important. Charniak et al. (1993) showed the importance of the most frequent tag baseline; the 92.3% number we give above was from Abney et al. (1999). See Brants (2000) for HMM tagger implementation details, including the extension to trigram contexts, and the use of sophisticated unknown word features; its performance is still close to state of the art taggers.

Log-linear models for POS tagging were introduced by Ratnaparkhi (1996), who introduced a system called MXPOST which implemented a maximum entropy Markov model (MEMM), a slightly simpler version of a CRF. Around the same time, sequence labelers were applied to the task of named entity tagging, first with HMMs (Bikel et al., 1997) and MEMMs (McCallum et al., 2000), and then once CRFs were developed (Lafferty et al. 2001), they were also applied to NER (McCallum and Li, 2003). A wide exploration of features followed (Zhou et al., 2005). Neural approaches to NER mainly follow from the pioneering results of Collobert et al. (2011), who applied a CRF on top of a convolutional net. BiLSTMs with word and character-based embeddings as input followed shortly and became a standard neural algorithm for NER (Huang et al. 2015, Ma and Hovy 2016, Lample et al. 2016) followed by the more recent use of Transformers and BERT.

The idea of using letter suffixes for unknown words is quite old; the early Klein and Simmons (1963) system checked all final letter suffixes of lengths 1-5. The unknown word features described on page 164 come mainly from Ratnaparkhi (1996), with augmentations from Toutanova et al. (2003) and Manning (2011).

State of the art POS taggers use neural algorithms, either bidirectional RNNs or Transformers like BERT; see Chapter 9 and Chapter 10. HMM (Brants 2000; Thede and Harper 1999) and CRF tagger accuracies are likely just a tad lower.

Manning (2011) investigates the remaining 2.7% of errors in a high-performing tagger (Toutanova et al., 2003). He suggests that a third or half of these remaining errors are due to errors or inconsistencies in the training data, a third might be solvable with richer linguistic models, and for the remainder the task is underspecified or unclear.

Supervised tagging relies heavily on in-domain training data hand-labeled by experts. Ways to relax this assumption include unsupervised algorithms for clustering words into part-of-speech-like classes, summarized in Christodoulopoulos et al. (2010), and ways to combine labeled and unlabeled data, for example by co-training (Clark et al. 2003; Søgaard 2010).

See Householder (1995) for historical notes on parts of speech, and Sampson (1987) and Garside et al. (1997) on the provenance of the Brown and other tagsets.

## Exercises

**8.1** Find one tagging error in each of the following sentences that are tagged with the Penn Treebank tagset:

1. I/PRP need/VBP a/DT flight/NN from/IN Atlanta/NN

2. Does/VBZ this/DT flight/NN serve/VB dinner/NNS  
 3. I/PRP have/VB a/DT friend/NN living/VBG in/IN Denver/NNP  
 4. Can/VBP you/PRP list/VB the/DT nonstop/JJ afternoon/NN flights/NNS
- 8.2** Use the Penn Treebank tagset to tag each word in the following sentences from Damon Runyon's short stories. You may ignore punctuation. Some of these are quite difficult; do your best.
1. It is a nice night.
  2. This crap game is over a garage in Fifty-second Street...
  3. ...Nobody ever takes the newspapers she sells ...
  4. He is a tall, skinny guy with a long, sad, mean-looking kisser, and a mournful voice.
  5. ...I am sitting in Mindy's restaurant putting on the gefillte fish, which is a dish I am very fond of, ...
  6. When a guy and a doll get to taking peeks back and forth at each other, why there you are indeed.
- 8.3** Now compare your tags from the previous exercise with one or two friend's answers. On which words did you disagree the most? Why?
- 8.4** Implement the “most likely tag” baseline. Find a POS-tagged training set, and use it to compute for each word the tag that maximizes  $p(t|w)$ . You will need to implement a simple tokenizer to deal with sentence boundaries. Start by assuming that all unknown words are NN and compute your error rate on known and unknown words. Now write at least five rules to do a better job of tagging unknown words, and show the difference in error rates.
- 8.5** Build a bigram HMM tagger. You will need a part-of-speech-tagged corpus. First split the corpus into a training set and test set. From the labeled training set, train the transition and observation probabilities of the HMM tagger directly on the hand-tagged data. Then implement the Viterbi algorithm so you can decode a test sentence. Now run your algorithm on the test set. Report its error rate and compare its performance to the most frequent tag baseline.
- 8.6** Do an error analysis of your tagger. Build a confusion matrix and investigate the most frequent errors. Propose some features for improving the performance of your tagger on these errors.
- 8.7** Develop a set of regular expressions to recognize the character shape features described on page 164.
- 8.8** The BIO and other labeling schemes given in this chapter aren't the only possible one. For example, the B tag can be reserved only for those situations where an ambiguity exists between adjacent entities. Propose a new set of BIO tags for use with your NER system. Experiment with it and compare its performance with the schemes presented in this chapter.
- 8.9** Names of works of art (books, movies, video games, etc.) are quite different from the kinds of named entities we've discussed in this chapter. Collect a list of names of works of art from a particular category from a Web-based source (e.g., gutenberg.org, amazon.com, imdb.com, etc.). Analyze your list and give examples of ways that the names in it are likely to be problematic for the techniques described in this chapter.
- 8.10** Develop an NER system specific to the category of names that you collected in the last exercise. Evaluate your system on a collection of text likely to contain instances of these named entities.

# Deep Learning Architectures for Sequence Processing

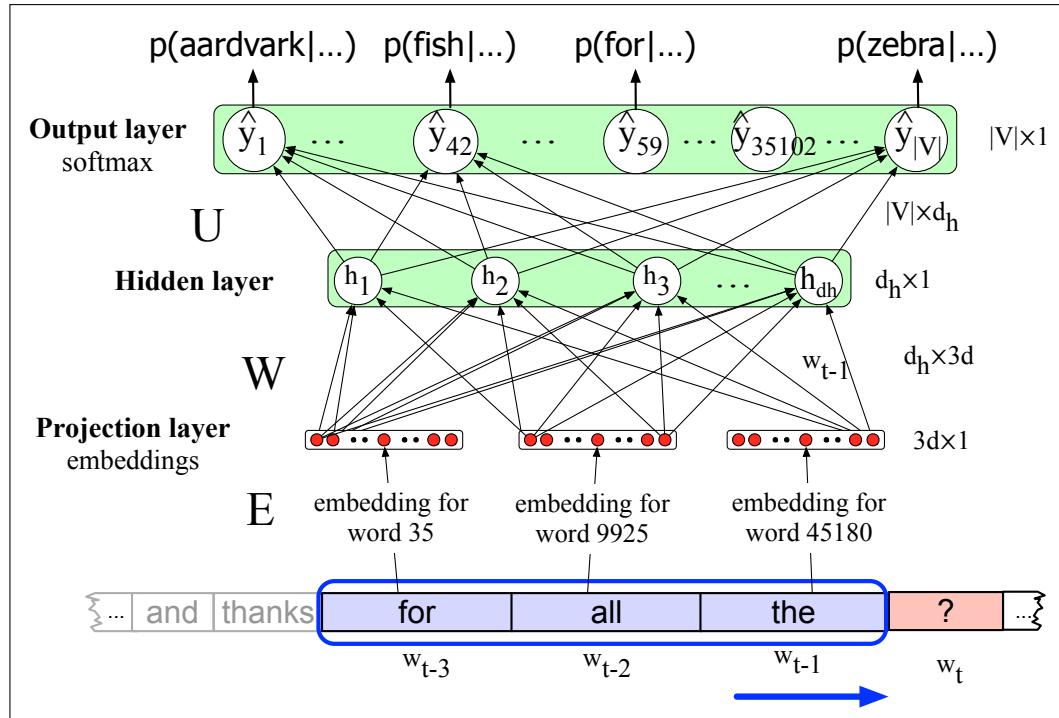
*Time will explain.*  
Jane Austen, *Persuasion*

Language is an inherently temporal phenomenon. When we comprehend and produce spoken language, we process continuous input streams of indefinite length. Even when dealing with written text, we normally process it sequentially. The temporal nature of language is reflected in the metaphors we use; we talk of the *flow of conversations*, *news feeds*, and *twitter streams*, all of which call out the notion that language is a sequence that unfolds in time.

This temporal nature is reflected in the algorithms we use to process language. For example, when applied to the problem of part-of-speech tagging, the Viterbi algorithm works its way incrementally through the input a word at a time, carrying forward information gleaned along the way. On the other hand, the machine learning approaches we've studied for sentiment analysis and other text classification tasks don't have this temporal nature – they assume simultaneous access to all aspects of their input. This is especially true of feedforward neural networks, including their application to neural language models. These fully-connected networks use fixed-size inputs, along with associated weights, to capture all the relevant aspects of an example at once. This makes it difficult to deal with sequences of varying length and fails to capture important temporal aspects of language.

A work-around for these problems is the sliding window approach employed with neural language models. These models operate by accepting fixed-sized windows of tokens as input; sequences longer than the window size are processed by walking through the input making predictions along the way, with the end result being a sequence of predictions spanning the input. Importantly, decisions made in one window have no impact on subsequent decisions. Fig. 9.1, reproduced here from Chapter 7, depicts the operation of a neural language model using this approach with a window of size 3. Here, we're predicting which word will come next given the input *for all the*. Subsequent words are predicted by sliding the window forward a word at a time.

This general approach is problematic for a number of reasons. First, it shares the primary weakness of our earlier Markov  $N$ -gram approaches in that it limits the context from which information can be extracted; anything outside the context window has no impact on the decision being made. This is an issue since there are many tasks that require access to information that can be arbitrarily distant from the point at which processing is happening. Second, the use of windows makes it difficult for networks to learn systematic patterns arising from phenomena like constituency. For example, in Fig. 9.1 the phrase *all the* appears in two separate windows: first as the second and third positions in the window, and again in the next step where it appears as the first and second positions, thus forcing the network to



**Figure 9.1** A simplified view of a feedforward neural language model moving through a text. At each time step  $t$  the network takes the 3 context words, converts each to a  $d$ -dimensional embedding, and concatenates the 3 embeddings together to get the  $1 \times Nd$  unit input layer  $x$  for the network. The output of the network is a probability distribution over the vocabulary representing the models belief with respect to each word being the next possible word.

learn two separate patterns for what should be the same item.

This chapter covers two closely related deep learning architectures designed to address these challenges: recurrent neural networks and transformer networks. Both approaches have mechanisms to deal directly with the sequential nature of language that allow them to handle variable length inputs without the use of arbitrary fixed-sized windows, and to capture and exploit the temporal nature of language.

## 9.1 Language Models Revisited

In this chapter, we'll explore these two architectures primarily through the lens of probabilistic language models. Recall from Chapter 3 that probabilistic language models predict the next word in a sequence given some preceding context. For example, if the preceding context is “*Thanks for all the*” and we want to know how likely the next word is “*fish*” we would compute:

$$P(\text{fish}|\text{Thanks for all the})$$

Language models give us the ability to assign such a conditional probability to every possible next word, giving us a distribution over the entire vocabulary. We can also assign probabilities to entire sequences by using these conditional probabilities in

combination with the chain rule:

$$P(w_{1:n}) = \prod_{i=1}^n P(w_i | w_{<i})$$

This formulation gives rise to a wide range of sequence labeling applications, and as we'll see, it provides a clear training objective based on how well a model is predicting the next word in a sequence.

We've already seen two ways to instantiate probabilistic language models with the  $N$ -gram models from Chapter 3 and the feedforward neural networks with sliding windows from Chapter 7. Unfortunately, both of these methods are constrained by the Markov assumption embodied in the following equation.

$$P(w_n | w_{1:n-1}) \approx P(w_n | w_{(n-N+1):(n-1)})$$

That is, the prediction is based on a fixed preceding context of size  $N$ ; any input that occurred earlier than that has no bearing on the outcome. The methods we explore in this chapter will relax this assumption, allowing the models to make use of much larger contexts.

We evaluate language models by examining how well they predict unseen data drawn from the same source as the training data. Intuitively, good models are those that assign higher probabilities to unseen data. To make this intuition concrete, we use **perplexity** as a measure of model quality. The perplexity ( $PP$ ) of a model  $\theta$  with respect to an unseen test set is the probability the model assigns to it, normalized by its length.

$$PP_\theta(w_{1:n}) = P(w_{1:n})^{\frac{1}{n}}$$

An alternative way of viewing perplexity, inspired by information theory, is in terms of entropy.

$$\begin{aligned} PP(w_{1:n}) &= 2^{H(w_{1:n})} \\ &= 2^{-\frac{1}{n} \sum_1^n \log_2 m(w_n)} \end{aligned}$$

In this formulation, the value in the exponent is the cross-entropy of our current model with respect to the true distribution.

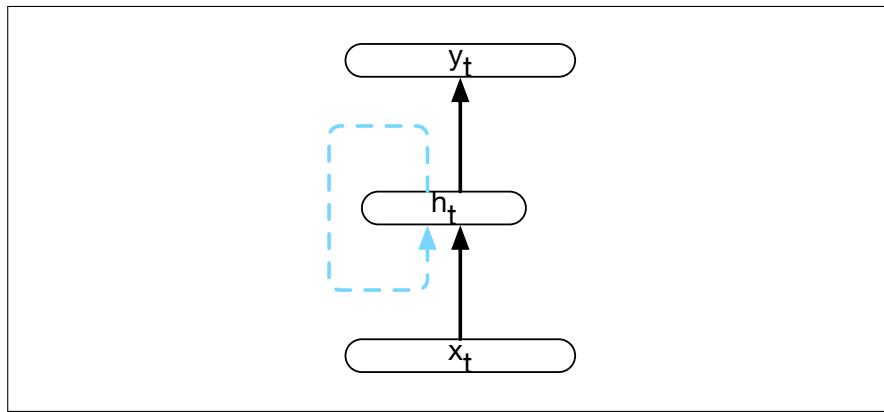
**autoregressive generation**

Another way to assess a language model is to use it to generate novel sequences. The extent to which a generated sequence mirrors the training data is an indication of the quality of the model. We saw how to do this in Chapter 3 by adapting a technique suggested contemporaneously by Claude Shannon (Shannon, 1951) and the psychologists George Miller and Selfridge (Miller and Selfridge, 1950). To get started, we randomly sample a word to begin a sequence based on its suitability as the start of a sequence. Having sampled the first word, we sample further words *conditioned on our previous choices* until we reach a pre-determined length, or an end of sequence token is generated. Today, this approach is called **autoregressive generation** and we'll cover its practical application in problems like machine translation and text summarization in this and later chapters.

## 9.2 Recurrent Neural Networks

Elman  
Networks

A recurrent neural network (RNN) is any network that contains a cycle within its network connections. That is, any network where the value of a unit is directly, or indirectly, dependent on its own earlier outputs as an input. While powerful, such networks are difficult to reason about and to train. However, within the general class of recurrent networks there are constrained architectures that have proven to be extremely effective when applied to spoken and written language. In this section, we consider a class of recurrent networks referred to as **Elman Networks** (Elman, 1990) or **simple recurrent networks**. These networks are useful in their own right and serve as the basis for more complex approaches like the Long Short-Term Memory (LSTM) networks discussed later in this chapter. Going forward, when we use the term RNN we'll be referring to these simpler more constrained networks.



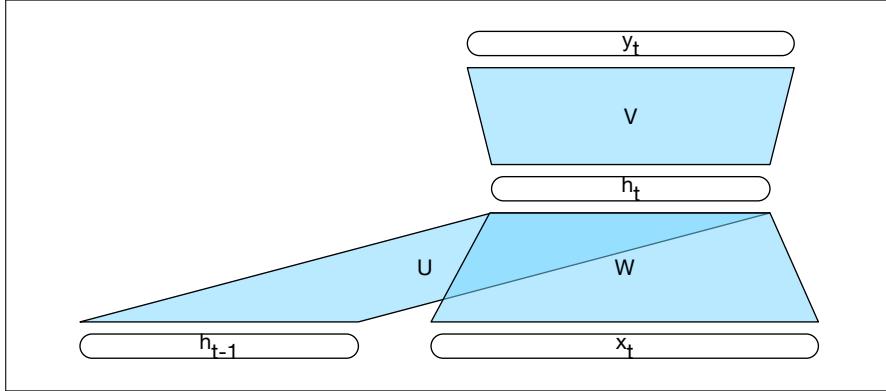
**Figure 9.2** Simple recurrent neural network after Elman (Elman, 1990). The hidden layer includes a recurrent connection as part of its input. That is, the activation value of the hidden layer depends on the current input as well as the activation value of the hidden layer from the previous time step.

Fig. 9.2 illustrates the structure of an RNN. As with ordinary feedforward networks, an input vector representing the current input,  $x_t$ , is multiplied by a weight matrix and then passed through a non-linear activation function to compute the values for a layer of hidden units. This hidden layer is then used to calculate a corresponding output,  $y_t$ . In a departure from our earlier window-based approach, sequences are processed by presenting one item at a time to the network. The key difference from a feedforward network lies in the recurrent link shown in the figure with the dashed line. This link augments the input to the computation at the hidden layer with the value of the hidden layer *from the preceding point in time*.

The hidden layer from the previous time step provides a form of memory, or context, that encodes earlier processing and informs the decisions to be made at later points in time. Critically, this approach does not impose a fixed-length limit on this prior context; the context embodied in the previous hidden layer includes information extending back to the beginning of the sequence.

Adding this temporal dimension makes RNNs appear to be more complex than non-recurrent architectures. But in reality, they're not all that different. Given an input vector and the values for the hidden layer from the previous time step, we're still performing the standard feedforward calculation introduced in Chapter 7. To see this, consider Fig. 9.3 which clarifies the nature of the recurrence and how it

factors into the computation at the hidden layer. The most significant change lies in the new set of weights,  $U$ , that connect the hidden layer from the previous time step to the current hidden layer. These weights determine how the network makes use of past context in calculating the output for the current input. As with the other weights in the network, these connections are trained via backpropagation.



**Figure 9.3** Simple recurrent neural network illustrated as a feedforward network.

### 9.2.1 Inference in RNNs

Forward inference (mapping a sequence of inputs to a sequence of outputs) in an RNN is nearly identical to what we've already seen with feedforward networks. To compute an output  $y_t$  for an input  $x_t$ , we need the activation value for the hidden layer  $h_t$ . To calculate this, we multiply the input  $x_t$  with the weight matrix  $W$ , and the hidden layer from the previous time step  $h_{t-1}$  with the weight matrix  $U$ . We add these values together and pass them through a suitable activation function,  $g$ , to arrive at the activation value for the current hidden layer,  $h_t$ . Once we have the values for the hidden layer, we proceed with the usual computation to generate the output vector.

$$\begin{aligned} h_t &= g(Uh_{t-1} + Wx_t) \\ y_t &= f(Vh_t) \end{aligned}$$

It's worthwhile here to be careful about specifying the dimensions of the input, hidden and output layers, as well as the weight matrices to make sure these calculations are correct. Let's refer to the input, hidden and output layer dimensions as  $d_{in}$ ,  $d_h$ , and  $d_{out}$  respectively. Given this, our three parameter matrices are:  $W \in \mathbb{R}^{d_h \times d_{in}}$ ,  $U \in \mathbb{R}^{d_h \times d_h}$ , and  $V \in \mathbb{R}^{d_{out} \times d_h}$ .

In the commonly encountered case of soft classification, computing  $y_t$  consists of a softmax computation that provides a probability distribution over the possible output classes.

$$y_t = \text{softmax}(Vh_t)$$

The fact that the computation at time  $t$  requires the value of the hidden layer from time  $t - 1$  mandates an incremental inference algorithm that proceeds from the start of the sequence to the end as illustrated in Fig. 9.4. The sequential nature of simple recurrent networks can also be seen by *unrolling* the network in time as is shown in Fig. 9.5. In this figure, the various layers of units are copied for each time

step to illustrate that they will have differing values over time. However, the various weight matrices are shared across time.

```
function FORWARDRNN( $x, network$ ) returns output sequence  $y$ 
     $h_0 \leftarrow 0$ 
    for  $i \leftarrow 1$  to LENGTH( $x$ ) do
         $h_i \leftarrow g(U h_{i-1} + W x_i)$ 
         $y_i \leftarrow f(V h_i)$ 
    return  $y$ 
```

**Figure 9.4** Forward inference in a simple recurrent network. The matrices  $U$ ,  $V$  and  $W$  are shared across time, while new values for  $h$  and  $y$  are calculated with each time step.

### 9.2.2 Training

As with feedforward networks, we'll use a training set, a loss function, and backpropagation to obtain the gradients needed to adjust the weights in these recurrent networks. As shown in Fig. 9.3, we now have 3 sets of weights to update:  $W$ , the weights from the input layer to the hidden layer,  $U$ , the weights from the previous hidden layer to the current hidden layer, and finally  $V$ , the weights from the hidden layer to the output layer.

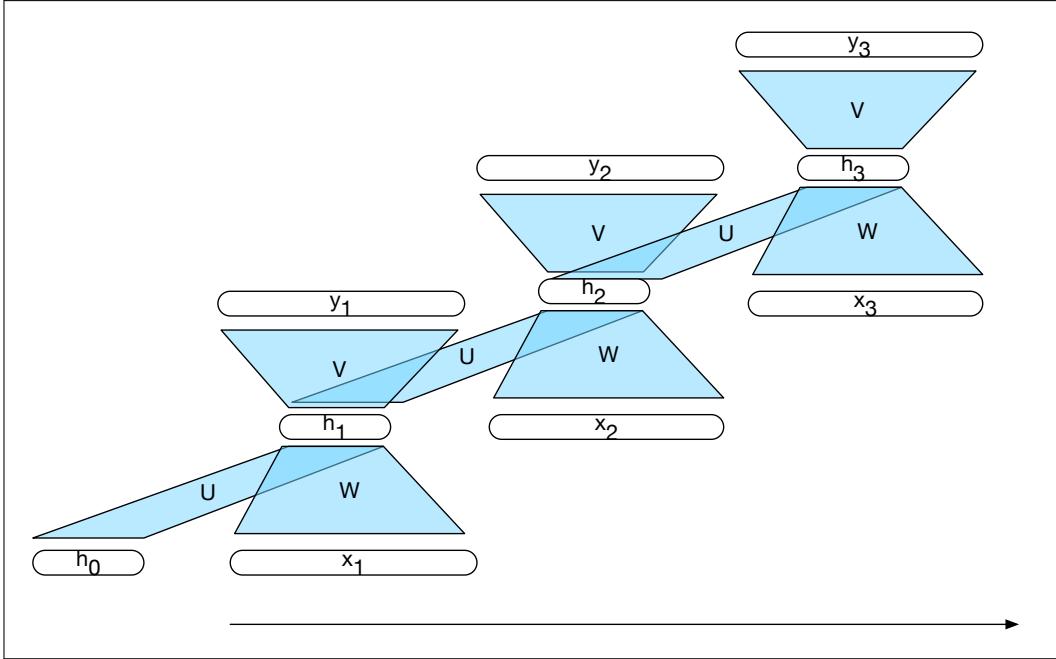
Fig. 9.5 highlights two considerations that we didn't have to worry about with backpropagation in feedforward networks. First, to compute the loss function for the output at time  $t$  we need the hidden layer from time  $t - 1$ . Second, the hidden layer at time  $t$  influences both the output at time  $t$  and the hidden layer at time  $t + 1$  (and hence the output and loss at  $t + 1$ ). It follows from this that to assess the error accruing to  $h_t$ , we'll need to know its influence on both the current output *as well as the ones that follow*.

Tailoring the backpropagation algorithm to this situation leads to a two-pass algorithm for training the weights in RNNs. In the first pass, we perform forward inference, computing  $h_t$ ,  $y_t$ , accumulating the loss at each step in time, saving the value of the hidden layer at each step for use at the next time step. In the second phase, we process the sequence in reverse, computing the required gradients as we go, computing and saving the error term for use in the hidden layer for each step backward in time. This general approach is commonly referred to as **Backpropagation Through Time** (Werbos 1974, Rumelhart et al. 1986, Werbos 1990).

Backpropagation Through Time

Fortunately, with modern computational frameworks and adequate computing resources, there is no need for a specialized approach to training RNNs. As illustrated in Fig. 9.5, explicitly unrolling a recurrent network into a feedforward computational graph eliminates any explicit recurrences, allowing the network weights to be trained directly. In such an approach, we provide a template that specifies the basic structure of the network, including all the necessary parameters for the input, output, and hidden layers, the weight matrices, as well as the activation and output functions to be used. Then, when presented with a specific input sequence, we can generate an unrolled feedforward network specific to that input, and use that graph to perform forward inference or training via ordinary backpropagation.

For applications that involve much longer input sequences, such as speech recognition, character-level processing, or streaming of continuous inputs, unrolling an entire input sequence may not be feasible. In these cases, we can unroll the input



**Figure 9.5** A simple recurrent neural network shown unrolled in time. Network layers are copied for each time step, while the weights  $U$ ,  $V$  and  $W$  are shared in common across all time steps.

into manageable fixed-length segments and treat each segment as a distinct training item.

### 9.2.3 RNNs as Language Models

RNN-based language models process sequences a word at a time, attempting to predict the next word in a sequence by using the current word and the previous hidden state as inputs (Mikolov et al., 2010). The limited context constraint inherent in  $N$ -gram models is avoided since the hidden state embodies information about all of the preceding words all the way back to the beginning of the sequence.

Forward inference in a recurrent language model proceeds exactly as described in Section 9.2.1. The input sequence  $x$  consists of word embeddings represented as one-hot vectors of size  $|V| \times 1$ , and the output predictions,  $y$ , are represented as vectors representing a probability distribution over the vocabulary. At each step, the model uses the word embedding matrix  $E$  to retrieve the embedding for the current word, and then combines it with the hidden layer from the previous step to compute a new hidden layer. This hidden layer is then used to generate an output layer which is passed through a softmax layer to generate a probability distribution over the entire vocabulary. That is, at time  $t$ :

$$\begin{aligned} e_t &= E^T x_t \\ h_t &= g(Uh_{t-1} + We_t) \\ y_t &= \text{softmax}(Vh_t) \end{aligned}$$

The vector resulting from  $Vh$  can be thought of as a set of scores over the vocabulary given the evidence provided in  $h$ . Passing these scores through the softmax normalizes the scores into a probability distribution. Given  $y$ , the probability of a particular

word in the vocabulary,  $i$ , as the next word is just its corresponding component of  $y$ .

$$P(w_{t+1} = i | w_{1:t}) = y_t^i$$

It follows from this that the probability of an entire sequence is just the product of the probabilities of each item in the sequence.

$$\begin{aligned} P(w_{1:n}) &= \prod_{i=1}^n P(w_i | w_{1:i-1}) \\ &= \prod_{i=1}^n y_{w_i}^i \end{aligned}$$

To train an RNN as a language model, we use a corpus of text as training material in combination with a training regimen called **teacher forcing**. The task is to minimize the error in predicting the next word in the training sequence, using cross-entropy as the loss function. Recall that the cross-entropy loss measures the difference between a predicted probability distribution and the correct distribution.

$$L_{CE} = - \sum_{w \in V} y_w^t \log \hat{y}_w^t$$

In the case of language modeling, the correct distribution  $y$  comes from knowing the next word. This is represented as a one-hot vector corresponding to the vocabulary where the entry for the actual next word is 1, and all the other entries are 0. Thus, the cross-entropy loss for language modeling is determined by the probability the model assigns to the correct next word. To be specific, at time  $t$  the CE loss is the negative log probability assigned to the next word in the training sequence.

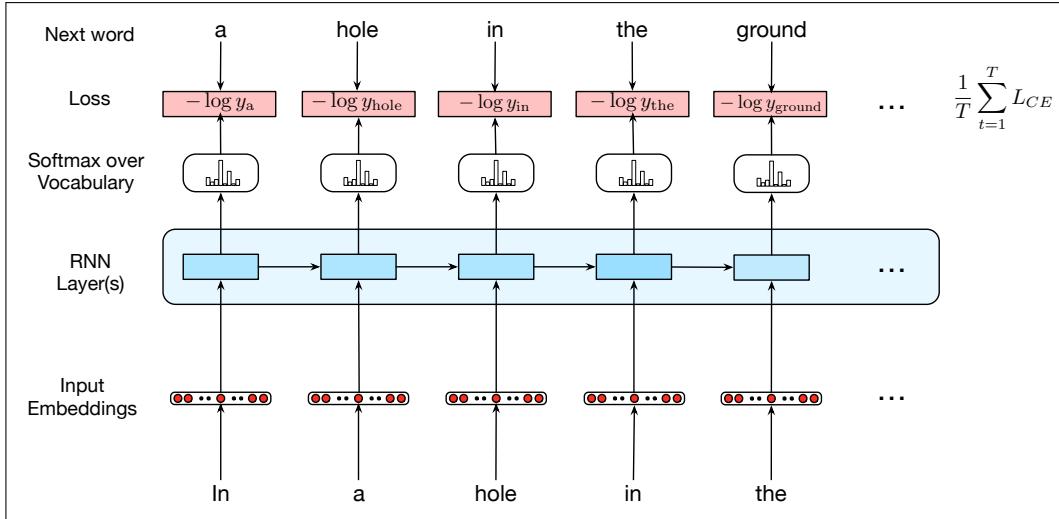
$$L_{CE}(\hat{y}^t, y^t) = -\log \hat{y}_{w_{t+1}}^t \quad (9.1)$$

In practice, the weights in the network are adjusted to minimize the average CE loss over the training sequence via gradient descent. Fig. 9.6 illustrates this training regimen.

Careful readers may have noticed that the input embedding matrix  $E$  and the final layer matrix  $V$ , which feeds the output softmax, are quite similar. The rows of  $E$  represent the word embeddings for each word in the vocabulary learned during the training process with the goal that words that have similar meaning and function will have similar embeddings. And, since the length of these embeddings corresponds to the size of the hidden layer  $d_h$ , the embedding matrix shape  $E$  is  $|V| \times d_h$ .

#### Weight Tying

The final layer matrix  $V$  provides a way to score the likelihood of each word in the vocabulary given the evidence present in the final hidden layer of the network through the calculation of  $Vh$ . This entails that it also has the dimensionality  $|V| \times d_h$ . That is, the rows of  $V$  provide a *second set* of learned word embeddings that capture relevant aspects of word meaning and function. This leads to an obvious question – is it even necessary to have both? **Weight Tying** is a method that dispenses with this redundancy and uses a single set of embeddings at the input and softmax layers. That is,  $E = V$ . To do this, we set the dimensionality of the final hidden layer to be the same  $d_h$ , (or add an additional projection layer to do the same thing), and simply use the same matrix for both layers. In addition to providing improved perplexity results, this approach significantly reduces the number of parameters required for the model.



**Figure 9.6** Training RNNs as language models.

### Generation with RNN-Based Language Models

As with the probabilistic Shakespeare generator from Chapter 3, a useful way to gain insight into a language model is to use a trained model to generate random novel sentences. The procedure is basically the same as that described on 38.

- To begin, sample a word in the output from the softmax distribution that results from using the beginning of sentence marker,  $\langle s \rangle$ , as the first input.
- Use the word embedding for that first word as the input to the network at the next time step, and then sample the next word in the same fashion.
- Continue generating until the end of sentence marker,  $\langle /s \rangle$ , is sampled or a fixed length limit is reached.

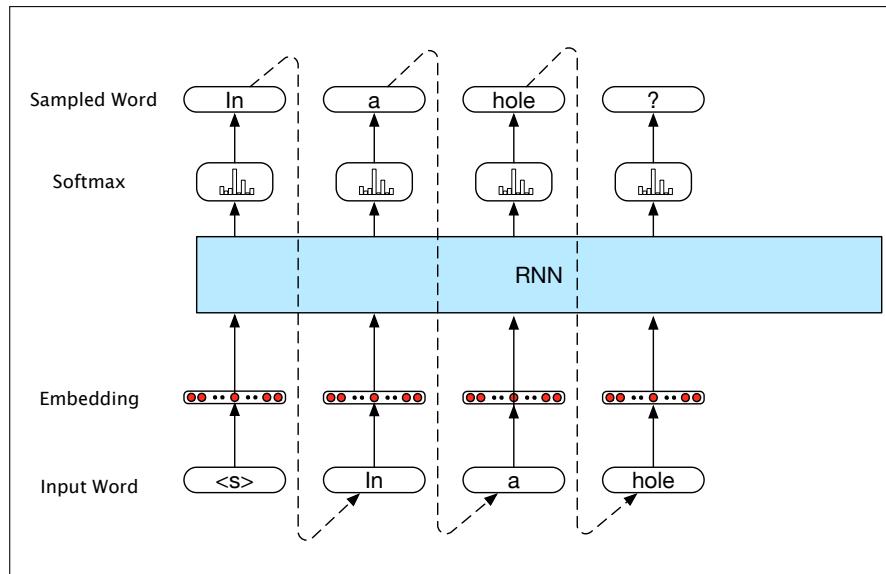
#### autoregressive generation

This technique is called **autoregressive generation** since the word generated at each time step is conditioned on the word selected by the network from the previous step. Fig. 9.7 illustrates this approach. In this figure, the details of the RNN’s hidden layers and recurrent connections are hidden within the blue block.

While this is an entertaining exercise, this architecture has inspired state-of-the-art approaches to applications such as machine translation, summarization, and question answering. The key to these approaches is to prime the generation component with an appropriate context. That is, instead of simply using  $\langle s \rangle$  to get things started we can provide a richer task-appropriate context. We’ll discuss the application of contextual generation to the problem of summarization in Section ?? in the context of Transformer-based language models.

#### 9.2.4 Other Applications of RNNs

Recurrent neural networks have proven to be an effective approach to language modeling, sequence labeling tasks such as part-of-speech tagging, as well as sequence classification tasks such as sentiment analysis and topic classification. And as we’ll see in Chapter 11 and Chapter 11, they form the basis for sequence-to-sequence approaches to summarization, machine translation, and question answering.

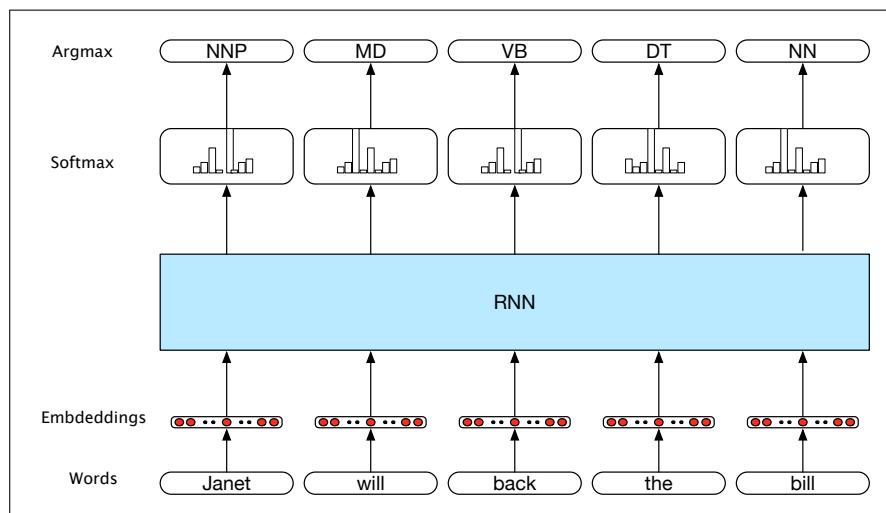


**Figure 9.7** Autoregressive generation with an RNN-based neural language model.

### Sequence Labeling

In sequence labeling, the network's task is to assign a label chosen from a small fixed set of labels to each element of a sequence. Canonical examples of sequence labeling include part-of-speech tagging and named entity recognition discussed in detail in Chapter 8. In an RNN approach to sequence labeling, inputs are word embeddings and the outputs are tag probabilities generated by a softmax layer over the given tagset, as illustrated in Fig. 9.8.

In this figure, the inputs at each time step are pre-trained word embeddings corresponding to the input tokens. The RNN block is an abstraction that represents



**Figure 9.8** Part-of-speech tagging as sequence labeling with a simple RNN. Pre-trained word embeddings serve as inputs and a softmax layer provides a probability distribution over the part-of-speech tags as output at each time step.

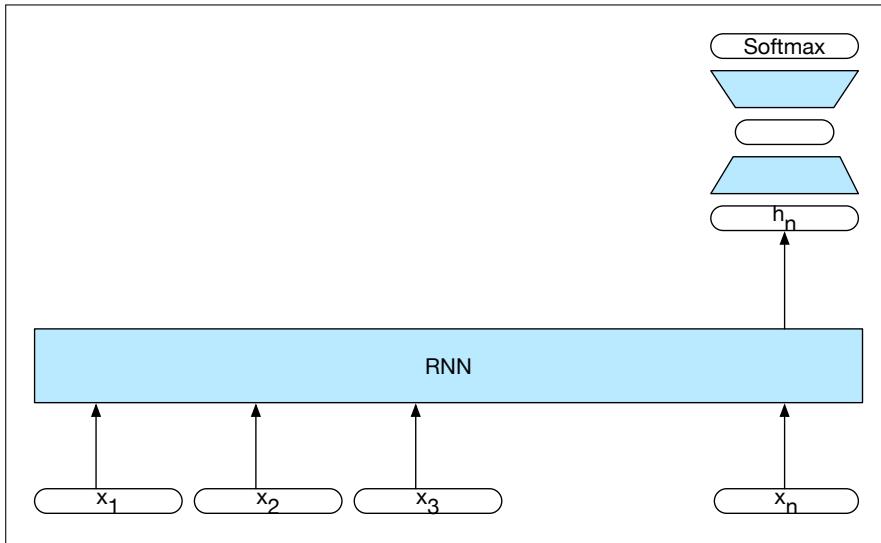
an unrolled simple recurrent network consisting of an input layer, hidden layer, and output layer at each time step, as well as the shared  $U$ ,  $V$  and  $W$  weight matrices that comprise the network. The outputs of the network at each time step represent the distribution over the POS tagset generated by a softmax layer.

To generate a sequence of tags for a given input, we run forward inference over the input sequence and select the most likely tag from the softmax at each step. Since we're using a softmax layer to generate the probability distribution over the output tagset at each time step, we will again employ the cross-entropy loss during training.

### 9.2.5 RNNs for Sequence Classification

Another use of RNNs is to classify entire sequences rather than the tokens within them. We've already encountered this task in Chapter 4 with our discussion of sentiment analysis. Other examples include document-level topic classification, spam detection, message routing for customer service applications, and deception detection. In all of these applications, sequences of text are classified as belonging to one of a small number of categories.

To apply RNNs in this setting, the text to be classified is passed through the RNN a word at a time generating a new hidden layer at each time step. The hidden layer for the final element of the text,  $h_n$ , is taken to constitute a compressed representation of the entire sequence. In the simplest approach to classification,  $h_n$ , serves as the input to a subsequent feedforward network that chooses a class via a softmax over the possible classes. Fig. 9.9 illustrates this approach.



**Figure 9.9** Sequence classification using a simple RNN combined with a feedforward network. The final hidden state from the RNN is used as the input to a feedforward network that performs the classification.

Note that in this approach there are no intermediate outputs for the words in the sequence preceding the last element. Therefore, there are no loss terms associated with those elements. Instead, the loss function used to train the weights in the network is based entirely on the final text classification task. Specifically, the output from the softmax output from the feedforward classifier together with a cross-entropy loss drives the training. The error signal from the classification is backprop-

**end-to-end training**

agated all the way through the weights in the feedforward classifier through, to its input, and then through to the three sets of weights in the RNN as described earlier in Section 9.2.2. This combination of a simple recurrent network with a feedforward classifier is our first example of a *deep neural network*. And the training regimen that uses the loss from a downstream application to adjust the weights all the way through the network is referred to as **end-to-end training**.

## 9.2.6 Stacked and Bidirectional RNNs

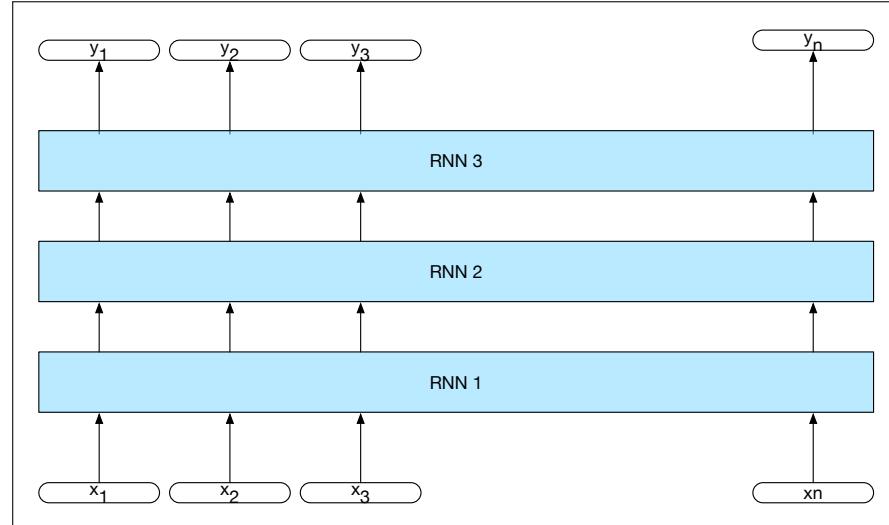
As suggested by the sequence classification architecture shown in Fig. 9.9, recurrent networks are quite flexible. By combining the feedforward nature of unrolled computational graphs with vectors as common inputs and outputs, complex networks can be treated as modules that can be combined in creative ways. This section introduces two of the more common network architectures used in language processing with RNNs.

### Stacked RNNs

In our examples thus far, the inputs to our RNNs have consisted of sequences of word or character embeddings (vectors) and the outputs have been vectors useful for predicting words, tags or sequence labels. However, nothing prevents us from using the entire sequence of outputs from one RNN as an input sequence to another one.

**Stacked RNNs**

**Stacked RNNs** consist of multiple networks where the output of one layer serves as the input to a subsequent layer, as shown in Fig. 9.10.



**Figure 9.10** Stacked recurrent networks. The output of a lower level serves as the input to higher levels with the output of the last network serving as the final output.

It has been demonstrated across numerous tasks that stacked RNNs can outperform single-layer networks. One reason for this success has to do with the network’s ability to induce representations at differing levels of abstraction across layers. Just as the early stages of the human visual system detect edges that are then used for finding larger regions and shapes, the initial layers of stacked networks can induce representations that serve as useful abstractions for further layers — representations that might prove difficult to induce in a single RNN.

The optimal number of stacked RNNs is specific to each application and to each training set. However, as the number of stacks is increased the training costs rise quickly.

### Bidirectional RNNs

In a simple recurrent network, the hidden state at a given time  $t$  represents everything the network knows about the sequence up to that point in the sequence. That is, the hidden state at time  $t$  is the result of a function of the inputs from the start up through time  $t$ . We can think of this as the context of the network to the left of the current time.

$$h_t^f = \text{RNN}_{\text{forward}}(x_1^t)$$

Where  $h_t^f$  corresponds to the normal hidden state at time  $t$ , and represents everything the network has gleaned from the sequence to that point.

In many applications we have access to the entire input sequence all at once. We might ask whether it is helpful to take advantage of the context to the right of the current input as well. One way to recover such information is to train an RNN on an input sequence in reverse, using exactly the same kind of networks that we've been discussing. With this approach, the hidden state at time  $t$  now represents information about the sequence to the right of the current input.

$$h_t^b = \text{RNN}_{\text{backward}}(x_t^n)$$

Here, the hidden state  $h_t^b$  represents all the information we have discerned about the sequence from  $t$  to the end of the sequence.

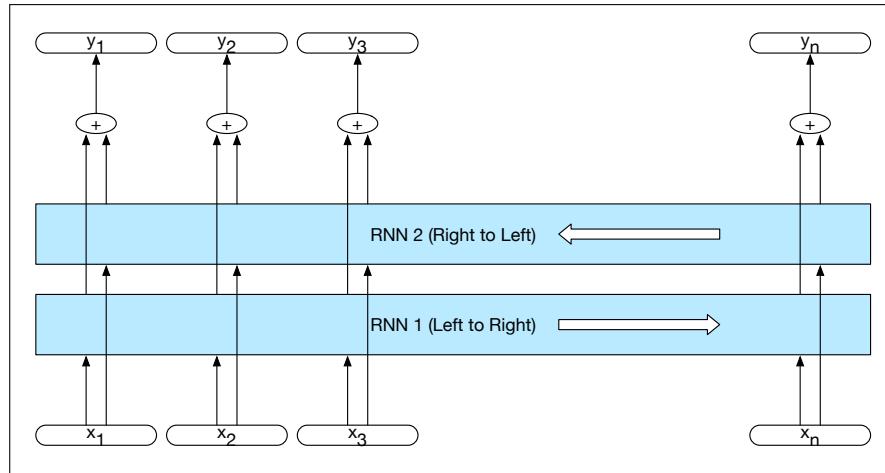
**bidirectional RNN**

Combining the forward and backward networks results in a **bidirectional RNN** (Schuster and Paliwal, 1997). A Bi-RNN consists of two independent RNNs, one where the input is processed from the start to the end, and the other from the end to the start. We then combine the outputs of the two networks into a single representation that captures both the left and right contexts of an input at each point in time.

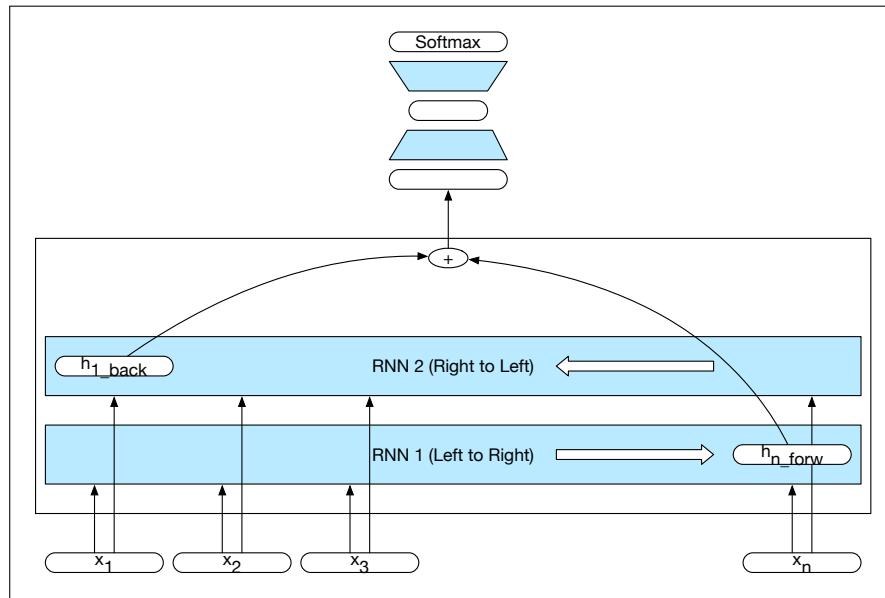
$$h_t = h_t^f \oplus h_t^b$$

Fig. 9.11 illustrates a bidirectional network where the outputs of the forward and backward pass are concatenated. Other simple ways to combine the forward and backward contexts include element-wise addition or multiplication. The output at each step in time thus captures information to the left and to the right of the current input. In sequence labeling applications, these concatenated outputs can serve as the basis for a local labeling decision.

Bidirectional RNNs have also proven to be quite effective for sequence classification. Recall from Fig. 9.10, that for sequence classification we used the final hidden state of the RNN as the input to a subsequent feedforward classifier. A difficulty with this approach is that the final state naturally reflects more information about the end of the sentence than its beginning. Bidirectional RNNs provide a simple solution to this problem; as shown in Fig. 9.12, we simply combine the final hidden states from the forward and backward passes and use that as input for follow-on processing. Again, concatenation is a common approach to combining the two outputs but element-wise summation, multiplication or averaging are also used.



**Figure 9.11** A bidirectional RNN. Separate models are trained in the forward and backward directions with the output of each model at each time point concatenated to represent the state of affairs at that point in time. The box wrapped around the forward and backward network emphasizes the modular nature of this architecture.



**Figure 9.12** A bidirectional RNN for sequence classification. The final hidden units from the forward and backward passes are combined to represent the entire sequence. This combined representation serves as input to the subsequent classifier.

### 9.3 Managing Context in RNNs: LSTMs and GRUs

In practice, it is quite difficult to train RNNs for tasks that require a network to make use of information distant from the current point of processing. Despite having access to the entire preceding sequence, the information encoded in hidden states tends to be fairly local, more relevant to the most recent parts of the input sequence and recent decisions. It is often the case, however, that distant information is critical

to many language applications. To see this, consider the following example in the context of language modeling.

(9.2) The flights the airline was cancelling were full.

Assigning a high probability to *was* following *airline* is straightforward since *airline* provides a strong local context for the singular agreement. However, assigning an appropriate probability to *were* is quite difficult, not only because the plural *flights* is quite distant, but also because the intervening context involves singular constituents. Ideally, a network should be able to retain the distant information about plural *flights* until it is needed, while still processing the intermediate parts of the sequence correctly.

One reason for the inability of RNNs to carry forward critical information is that the hidden layers, and, by extension, the weights that determine the values in the hidden layer, are being asked to perform two tasks simultaneously: provide information useful for the current decision, and updating and carrying forward information required for future decisions.

A second difficulty with training SRNs arises from the need to backpropagate the error signal back through time. Recall from Section 9.2.2 that the hidden layer at time  $t$  contributes to the loss at the next time step since it takes part in that calculation. As a result, during the backward pass of training, the hidden layers are subject to repeated multiplications, as determined by the length of the sequence. A frequent result of this process is that the gradients are eventually driven to zero – the so-called **vanishing gradients** problem.

To address these issues, more complex network architectures have been designed to explicitly manage the task of maintaining relevant context over time. More specifically, the network needs to learn to forget information that is no longer needed and to remember information required for decisions still to come.

**vanishing gradients**

**Long short-term memory**

**forget gate**

### 9.3.1 Long Short-Term Memory

**Long short-term memory** (LSTM) networks (Hochreiter and Schmidhuber, 1997) divide the context management problem into two sub-problems: removing information no longer needed from the context, and adding information likely to be needed for later decision making. The key to solving both problems is to learn how to manage this context rather than hard-coding a strategy into the architecture. LSTMs accomplish this by first adding an explicit context layer to the architecture (in addition to the usual recurrent hidden layer), and through the use of specialized neural units that make use of *gates* to control the flow of information into and out of the units that comprise the network layers. These gates are implemented through the use of additional weights that operate sequentially on the input, and previous hidden layer, and previous context layers.

The gates in an LSTM share a common design pattern; each consists of a feed-forward layer, followed by a sigmoid activation function, followed by a pointwise multiplication with the layer being gated. The choice of the sigmoid as the activation function arises from its tendency to push its outputs to either 0 or 1. Combining this with a pointwise multiplication has an effect similar to that of a binary mask. Values in the layer being gated that align with values near 1 in the mask are passed through nearly unchanged; values corresponding to lower values are essentially erased.

The first gate we'll consider is the **forget gate**. The purpose of this gate to delete information from the context that is no longer needed. The forget gate computes a weighted sum of the previous state's hidden layer and the current input and passes

that through a sigmoid. This mask is then multiplied by the context vector to remove the information from context that is no longer required.

$$\begin{aligned} f_t &= \sigma(U_f h_{t-1} + W_f x_t) \\ k_t &= c_{t-1} \odot f_t \end{aligned}$$

The next task is compute the actual information we need to extract from the previous hidden state and current inputs — the same basic computation we've been using for all our recurrent networks.

$$g_t = \tanh(U_g h_{t-1} + W_g x_t) \quad (9.3)$$

**add gate** Next, we generate the mask for the **add gate** to select the information to add to the current context.

$$i_t = \sigma(U_i h_{t-1} + W_i x_t) \quad (9.4)$$

$$j_t = g_t \odot i_t \quad (9.5)$$

Next, we add this to the modified context vector to get our new context vector.

$$c_t = j_t + k_t \quad (9.6)$$

**output gate** The final gate we'll use is the **output gate** which is used to decide what information is required for the current hidden state (as opposed to what information needs to be preserved for future decisions).

$$o_t = \sigma(U_o h_{t-1} + W_o x_t) \quad (9.7)$$

$$h_t = o_t \odot \tanh(c_t) \quad (9.8)$$

$$(9.9)$$

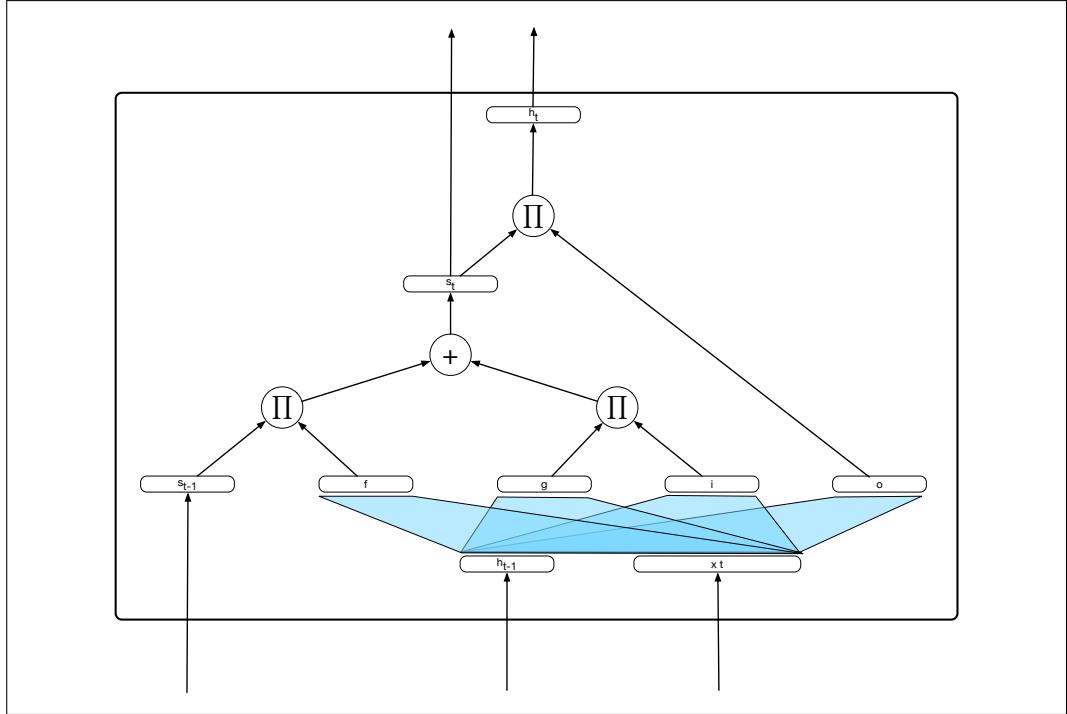
Fig. 9.13 illustrates the complete computation for a single LSTM unit. Given the appropriate weights for the various gates, an LSTM accepts as input the context layer, and hidden layer from the previous time step, along with the current input vector. It then generates updated context and hidden vectors as output. The hidden layer,  $h_t$ , can be used as input to subsequent layers in a stacked RNN, or to generate an output for the final layer of a network.

### 9.3.2 Gated Recurrent Units

LSTMs introduce a considerable number of additional parameters to our recurrent networks. We now have 8 sets of weights to learn (i.e., the  $U$  and  $W$  for each of the 4 gates within each unit), whereas with simple recurrent units we only had 2. Training these additional parameters imposes a much significantly higher training cost. Gated Recurrent Units (GRUs)(Cho et al., 2014) ease this burden by dispensing with the use of a separate context vector, and by reducing the number of gates to 2 — a reset gate,  $r$  and an update gate,  $z$ .

$$r_t = \sigma(U_r h_{t-1} + W_r x_t) \quad (9.10)$$

$$z_t = \sigma(U_z h_{t-1} + W_z x_t) \quad (9.11)$$



**Figure 9.13** A single LSTM unit displayed as a computation graph. The inputs to each unit consists of the current input,  $x$ , the previous hidden state,  $h_{t-1}$ , and the previous context,  $c_{t-1}$ . The outputs are a new hidden state,  $h_t$  and an updated context,  $c_t$ .

As with LSTMs, the use of the sigmoid in the design of these gates results in a binary-like mask that either blocks information with values near zero or allows information to pass through unchanged with values near one. The purpose of the reset gate is to decide which aspects of the previous hidden state are relevant to the current context and what can be ignored. This is accomplished by performing an element-wise multiplication of  $r$  with the value of the previous hidden state. We then use this masked value in computing an intermediate representation for the new hidden state at time  $t$ .

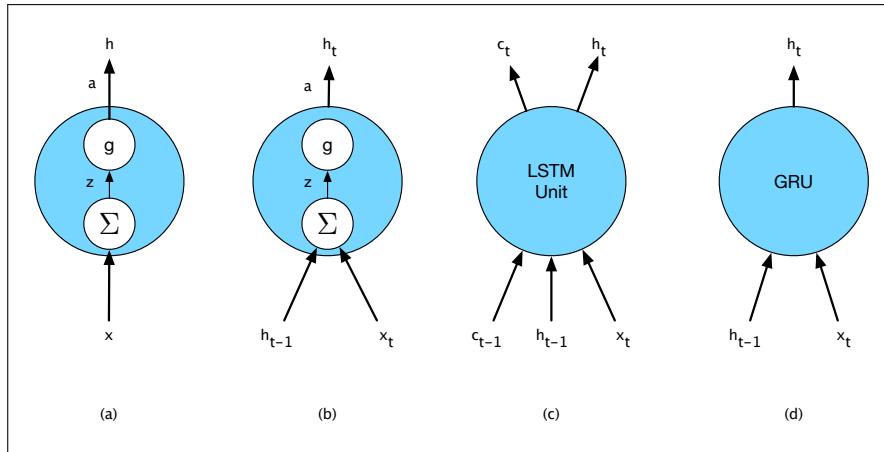
$$\tilde{h}_t = \tanh(U(r_t \odot h_{t-1}) + Wx_t) \quad (9.12)$$

The job of the update gate  $z$  is to determine which aspects of this new state will be used directly in the new hidden state and which aspects of the previous state need to be preserved for future use. This is accomplished by using the values in  $z$  to interpolate between the old hidden state and the new one.

$$h_t = (1 - z_t)h_{t-1} + z_t\tilde{h}_t \quad (9.13)$$

### 9.3.3 Gated Units, Layers and Networks

The neural units used in LSTMs and GRUs are obviously much more complex than those used in basic feedforward networks. Fortunately, this complexity is encapsulated within the basic processing units, allowing us to maintain modularity and to



**Figure 9.14** Basic neural units used in feedforward, simple recurrent networks (SRN), long short-term memory (LSTM) and gate recurrent units.

easily experiment with different architectures. To see this, consider Fig. 9.14 which illustrates the inputs and outputs associated with each kind of unit.

At the far left, (a) is the basic feedforward unit where a single set of weights and a single activation function determine its output, and when arranged in a layer there are no connections among the units in the layer. Next, (b) represents the unit in a simple recurrent network. Now there are two inputs and an additional set of weights to go with it. However, there is still a single activation function and output.

The increased complexity of the LSTM (c) and GRU (d) units on the right is encapsulated within the units themselves. The only additional external complexity for the LSTM over the basic recurrent unit (b) is the presence of the additional context vector as an input and output. The GRU units have the same input and output architecture as the simple recurrent unit.

This modularity is key to the power and widespread applicability of LSTM and GRU units. LSTM and GRU units can be substituted into any of the network architectures described in Section 9.2.6. And, as with simple RNNs, multi-layered networks making use of gated units can be unrolled into deep feedforward networks and trained in the usual fashion with backpropagation.

## 9.4 Self-Attention Networks: Transformers

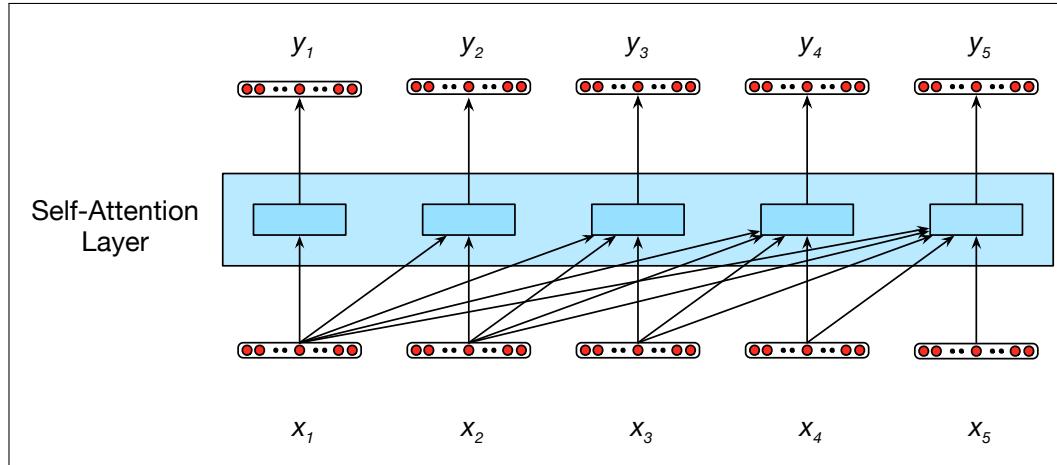
### Transformers

Despite the ability of LSTMs to mitigate the loss of distant information due to the recurrence in RNNs, the underlying problem remains. Passing information forward through an extended series of recurrent connections leads to a loss of relevant information and to difficulties in training. Moreover, the inherently sequential nature of recurrent networks inhibits the use of parallel computational resources. These considerations led to the development of **Transformers** – an approach to sequence processing that eliminates recurrent connections and returns to architectures reminiscent of the fully connected networks described earlier in Chapter 7.

Transformers map sequences of input vectors  $(x_1, \dots, x_n)$  to sequences of output vectors  $(y_1, \dots, y_n)$  of the same length. Transformers are made up of stacks of network layers consisting of simple linear layers, feedforward networks, and custom

**self-attention** connections around them. In addition to these standard components, the key innovation of transformers is the use of **self-attention** layers. We'll start by describing how self-attention works and then return to how it fits into larger transformer blocks. Self-attention allows a network to directly extract and use information from arbitrarily large contexts without the need to pass it through intermediate recurrent connections as in RNNs. In this chapter, we'll focus on the application of self-attention to the problems of language modeling and autoregressive generation where the context to be used lies in the past. We'll return to wider applications of self-attention and Transformers in later chapters.

Fig. 9.15 illustrates the flow of information in a single causal, or backward looking, self-attention layer. As with the overall Transformer, a self-attention layer maps input sequences  $(x_1, \dots, x_n)$  to output sequences of the same length  $(y_1, \dots, y_n)$ . When processing each item in the input, the model has access to all of the inputs up to and including the one under consideration, but no access to information about inputs beyond the current one. In addition, the computation performed for each item is independent of all the other computations. The first point ensures that we can use this approach to create language models and use them for autoregressive generation, and the second point means that we can easily parallelize both forward inference and training of such models.



**Figure 9.15** Information flow in a causal (or masked) self-attention model. In processing each element of the sequence, the model attends to all the inputs up to, and including, the current one. Unlike RNNs, the computations at each time step are independent of all the other steps and therefore can be performed in parallel.

At the core of an attention-based approach is the ability to *compare* an item of interest to a collection of other items in way that reveals their relevance in the current context. In the case of self-attention, the set of comparisons are to other elements within a given sequence. The result of these comparisons is then used to compute an output for the current input. For example, returning to Fig. 9.15, the computation of  $y_3$  is based on a set of comparisons between the input  $x_3$  and its preceding elements  $x_1$  and  $x_2$ , and to  $x_3$  itself. The simplest form of comparison between elements in a self-attention layer is a dot product. To allow for other possible comparisons, let's refer to the result of these comparisons as scores.

$$\text{score}(x_i, x_j) = x_i \cdot x_j \quad (9.14)$$

The result of a dot product is a scalar value ranging from  $-\infty$  to  $\infty$ , the larger the value the more similar the vectors that are being compared. Continuing with our

example, the first step in computing  $y_3$  would be to compute three scores:  $x_3 \cdot x_1$ ,  $x_3 \cdot x_2$  and  $x_3 \cdot x_3$ . Then to make effective use of these scores, we'll normalize them with a softmax to create a vector of weights,  $\alpha_{ij}$ , that indicates the proportional relevance of each input to the input element  $i$  that is the current focus of attention.

$$\alpha_{ij} = \text{softmax(score}(x_i, x_j)) \quad \forall j \leq i \quad (9.15)$$

$$= \frac{\exp(\text{score}(x_i, x_j))}{\sum_{k=1}^i \exp(\text{score}(x_i, x_k))} \quad \forall j \leq i \quad (9.16)$$

Given the proportional scores in  $\alpha$ , we then generate an output value  $y_i$  by taking the sum of the inputs seen so far, weighted by their respective  $\alpha$  value.

$$y_i = \sum_{j \leq i} \alpha_{ij} x_j \quad (9.17)$$

The steps embodied in Equations 9.14 through 9.17 represent the core of an attention-based approach: a set of comparisons to relevant items in some context, a normalization of those scores to provide a probability distribution, followed by a weighted sum using this distribution. The output  $y$  is the result of this straightforward computation over the inputs.

Unfortunately, this simple mechanism provides no opportunity for learning, everything is directly based on the original input values  $x$ . In particular, there are no opportunities to learn the diverse ways that words can contribute to the representation of longer inputs. To allow for this kind of learning, Transformers include additional parameters in the form of a set of weight matrices that operate over the input embeddings. To motivate these new parameters, consider the different roles that each input embedding plays during the course of the attention process.

- As the *current focus of attention* when being compared to all of the other preceding inputs. We'll refer to this role as a *query*.
- In its role as a *preceding input* being compared to the current focus of attention. We'll refer to this role as a *key*.
- And finally, as a *value* used to compute the output for the current focus of attention.

To capture the different roles that input embeddings play in each of these steps, Transformers introduce three sets of weights which we'll call  $W^Q$ ,  $W^K$ , and  $W^V$ . These weights will be used to compute linear transformations of each input  $x$  with the resulting values being used in their respective roles in subsequent calculations.

$$q_i = W^Q x_i; \quad k_i = W^K x_i; \quad v_i = W^V x_i$$

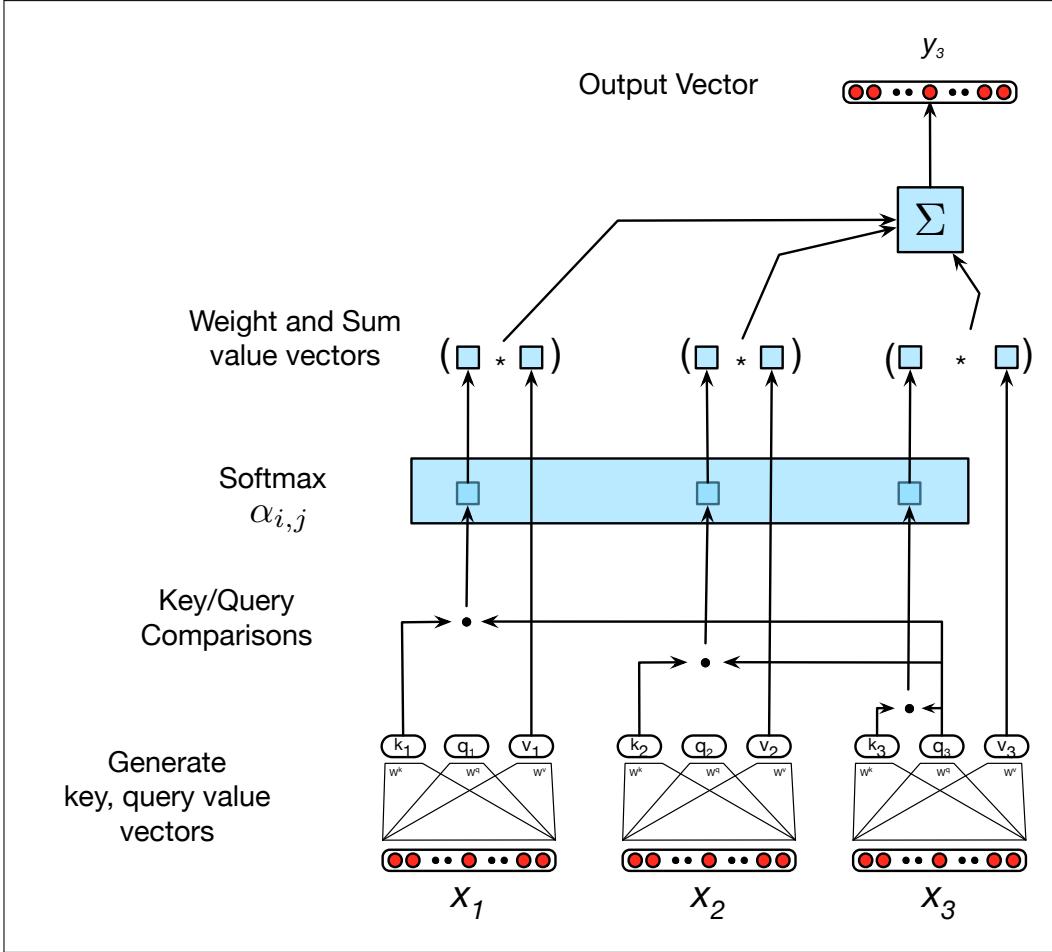
Given input embeddings of size  $d_m$ , the dimensionality of these matrices are  $d_q \times d_m$ ,  $d_k \times d_m$  and  $d_v \times d_m$ , respectively. In the original Transformer work (Vaswani et al., 2017),  $d_m$  was 1024 and 64 for  $d_k$ ,  $d_q$  and  $d_v$ .

Given these projections, the score between a current focus of attention,  $x_i$  and an element in the preceding context,  $x_j$  consists of a dot product between its query vector  $q_i$  and the preceding elements key vectors  $k_j$ . Let's update our previous comparison calculation to reflect this.

$$\text{score}(x_i, x_j) = q_i \cdot k_j \quad (9.18)$$

The ensuing softmax calculation resulting in  $\alpha_{i,j}$  remains the same, but the output calculation for  $y_i$  is now based on a weighted sum over the value vectors  $v$ .

$$y_i = \sum_{j \leq i} \alpha_{ij} v_j \quad (9.19)$$



**Figure 9.16** Calculation of the value of the third element of a sequence using causal self-attention.

Fig. 9.16 illustrates this calculation in the case of computing the third output  $y_3$  in a sequence.

A practical consideration that arises in computing  $\alpha_{i,j}$  arises from the use of a dot product as a comparison in combination with the exponential in the softmax. The result of dot product can be an arbitrarily large (positive or negative) value. Exponentiating such large values can lead to numerical issues and to an effective loss of gradients during training. To avoid this, the dot product needs to be scaled in a suitable fashion. A scaled dot-product approach divides the result of the dot product by a factor related to the size of the embeddings before passing them through the softmax. A typical approach is to divide the dot product by the square root of the dimensionality of the query and key vectors, leading us to update our scoring function one more time.

$$\text{score}(x_i, x_j) = \frac{q_i \cdot k_j}{\sqrt{d_k}} \quad (9.20)$$

This description of the self-attention process has been from the perspective of computing a single output at a particular point in time. However, since each output,  $y_i$ , is computed independently this entire process can be parallelized by taking advantage of efficient matrix multiplication routines by packing the input embed-

dings into a single matrix and multiplying it by the key, query and value matrices to produce matrices containing all the key, query and value vectors.

$$Q = W^Q X; \quad K = W^K X; \quad V = W^V X$$

Given these matrices we can compute all the requisite query-key comparisons simultaneously by multiplying  $K$  and  $Q$  in a single matrix multiplication. Taking this one step further, we can scale these scores, take the softmax, and then multiply the result by  $V$ , thus reducing the entire self-attention step for an entire sequence to the following computation.

$$\text{SelfAttention}(Q, K, V) = \text{softmax}\left(\frac{QK^T}{\sqrt{d_k}}\right)V \quad (9.21)$$

Unfortunately, this process goes a bit too far since the calculation of the comparisons in  $QK^T$  results in a score for each query value to every key value, *including those that follow the query*. This is inappropriate in the setting of language modeling since guessing the next word is pretty simple if you already know it. To fix this, the elements in the upper-triangular portion of the comparisons matrix are zeroed out (set to  $-\infty$ ), thus eliminating any knowledge of words that follow in the sequence.

### Transformer Blocks

The self-attention calculation lies at the core of what's called a transformer block, which, in addition to the self-attention layer, includes additional feedforward layers, residual connections, and normalizing layers. Fig. 9.17 illustrates a typical transformer block consisting of a single attention layer followed by a fully-connected feedforward layer with residual connections and layer normalizations following each. These blocks can then be stacked just as was the case for stacked RNNs.

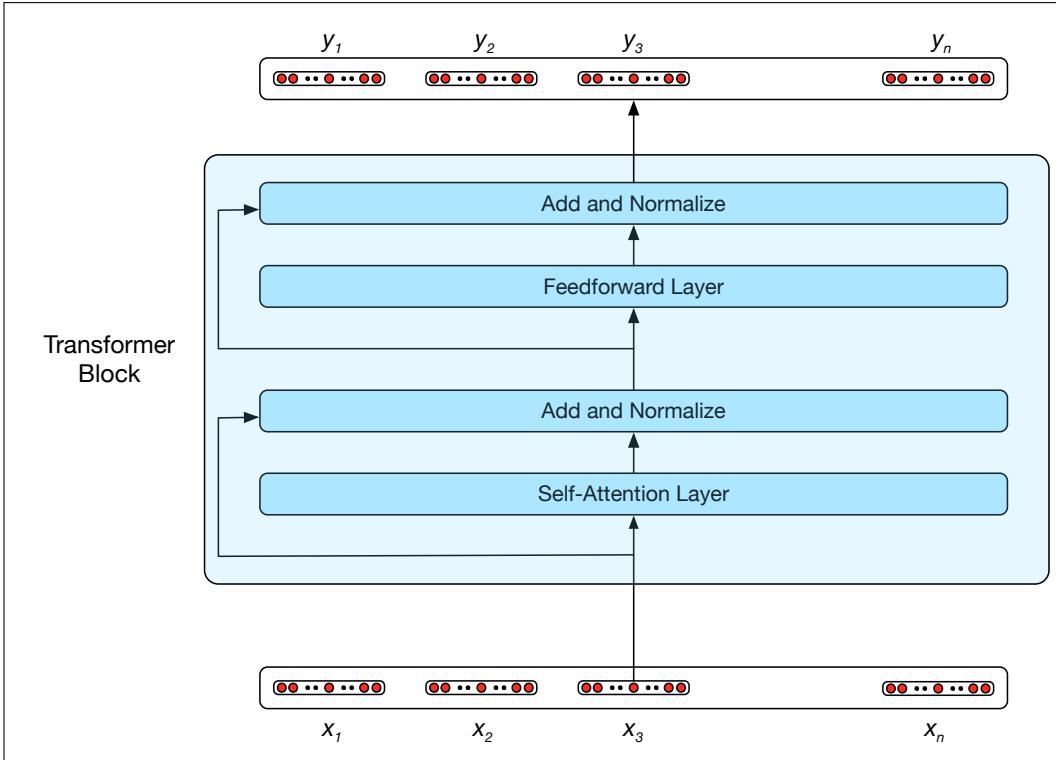
### Multihed Attention

multihead  
self-attention  
layers

The different words in a sentence can relate to each other in many different ways simultaneously. For example, distinct syntactic, semantic, and discourse relationships can hold between verbs and their arguments in a sentence. It would be difficult for a single transformer block to learn to capture all of the different kinds of parallel relations among its inputs. Transformers address this issue with **multihed self-attention layers**. These are sets of self-attention layers, called heads, that reside in parallel layers at the same depth in a model, each with its own set of parameters. Given these distinct sets of parameters, each head can learn different aspects of the relationships that exist among inputs at the same level of abstraction.

To implement this notion, each head,  $i$ , in a self-attention layer is provided with its own set of key, query and value matrices:  $W_i^K$ ,  $W_i^Q$  and  $W_i^V$ . These are used to project the inputs to the layer,  $x_i$ , separately for each head, with the rest of the self-attention computation remaining unchanged. The output of a multi-head layer with  $h$  heads consists of  $h$  vectors of the same length. To make use of these vectors in further processing, they are combined and then reduced down to the original input dimension  $d_m$ . This is accomplished by concatenating the outputs from each head and then using yet another linear projection to reduce it to the original output dimension.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{MultiHeadAttn}(Q, K, V) &= W^O(\text{head}_1 \oplus \text{head}_2 \dots \oplus \text{head}_h) \\ \text{head}_i &= \text{SelfAttention}(W_i^Q X, W_i^K X, W_i^V X) \end{aligned}$$



**Figure 9.17** with all the layers

Fig. 9.18 illustrates this approach with 4 self-attention heads. This multihead layer replaces the single self-attention layer in the transformer block shown earlier in Fig. 9.17, the rest of the Transformer block with its feedforward layer, residual connections, and layer norms remains the same.

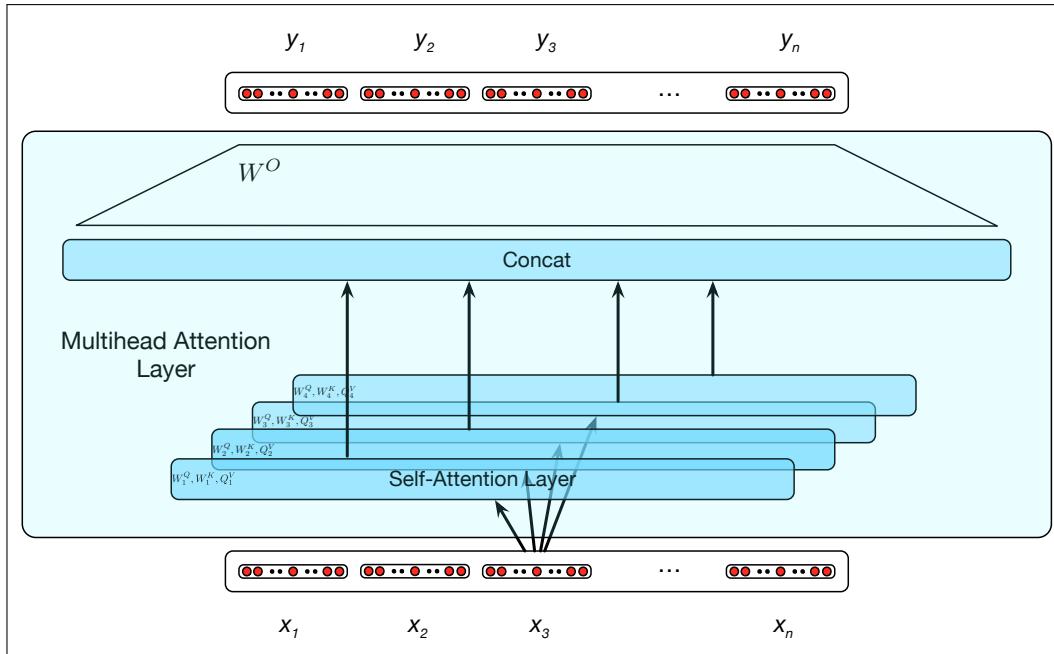
### Positional Embeddings

position  
embeddings

With RNNs information about the order of the inputs was baked into the nature of the models. Unfortunately, the same isn't true for Transformers; there's nothing that would allow such models to make use of information about the relative, or absolute, positions of the elements of an input sequence. This can be seen from the fact that if you scramble the order of inputs in the attention computation illustrated earlier you get exactly the same answer. To address this issue, Transformer inputs are combined with **positional embeddings** specific to each position in an input sequence.

Where do we get these positional embeddings? A simple and effective approach is to start with randomly initialized embeddings corresponding to each possible input position up to some maximum length. For example, just as we have an embedding for the word *fish*, we'll have an embedding for the position 3. As with word embeddings, these positional embeddings are learned along with other parameters during training. To produce an input embedding that captures positional information, we just add the word embedding for each input to its corresponding positional embedding. This new embedding serves as the input for further processing.

A potential problem with this approach is that there will be plenty of training examples for the initial positions in our inputs and correspondingly fewer at the outer length limits. These latter embeddings may be poorly trained and may not



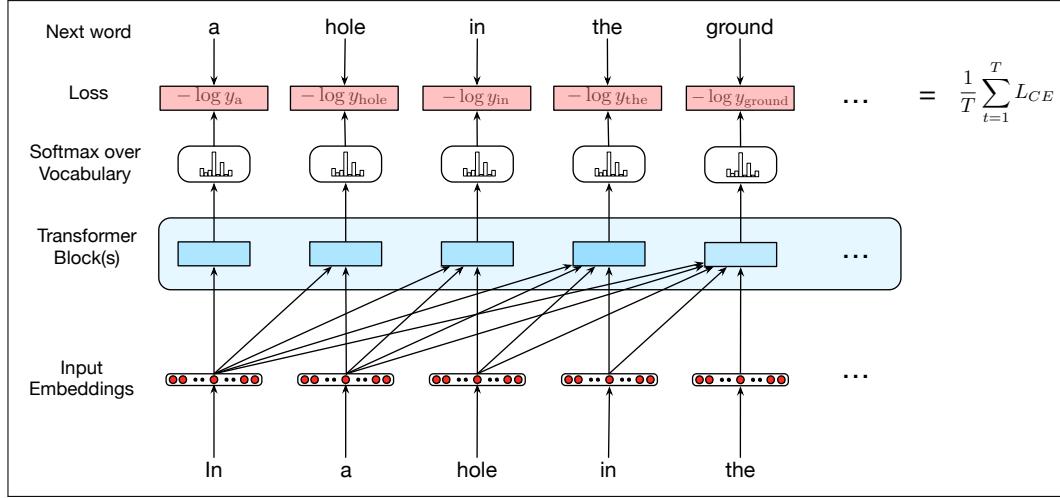
**Figure 9.18** Multihead self-attention: Each of the multihead self-attention layers is provided with its own set of key, query and value weight matrices. The outputs from each of the layers are concatenated and then projected down to  $d_{model}$ , thus producing an output of the right size.

generalize well during testing. An alternative approach to positional embeddings is to choose a static function that maps an integer inputs to real-valued vectors in a way that captures the inherent relationships among the positions. That is, it captures the fact that position 4 in an input is more closely related to position 5 than it is to position 17. A combination of sine and cosine functions with differing frequencies was used in the original Transformer work.

### 9.4.1 Transformers as Autoregressive Language Models

Now that we've seen all the major components of Transformers, let's examine how to deploy them as language models via semi-supervised learning. To do this, we'll proceed just as we did with the RNN-based approach: given a training corpus of plain text we'll train a model to predict the next word in a sequence using teacher forcing. Fig. 9.19 illustrates the general approach. At each step, given all the preceding words, the final Transformer layer produces an output distribution over the entire vocabulary. During training, the probability assigned to the correct word is used to calculate the cross-entropy loss for each item in the sequence. As with RNNs, the loss for a training sequence is the average cross-entropy loss over the entire sequence.

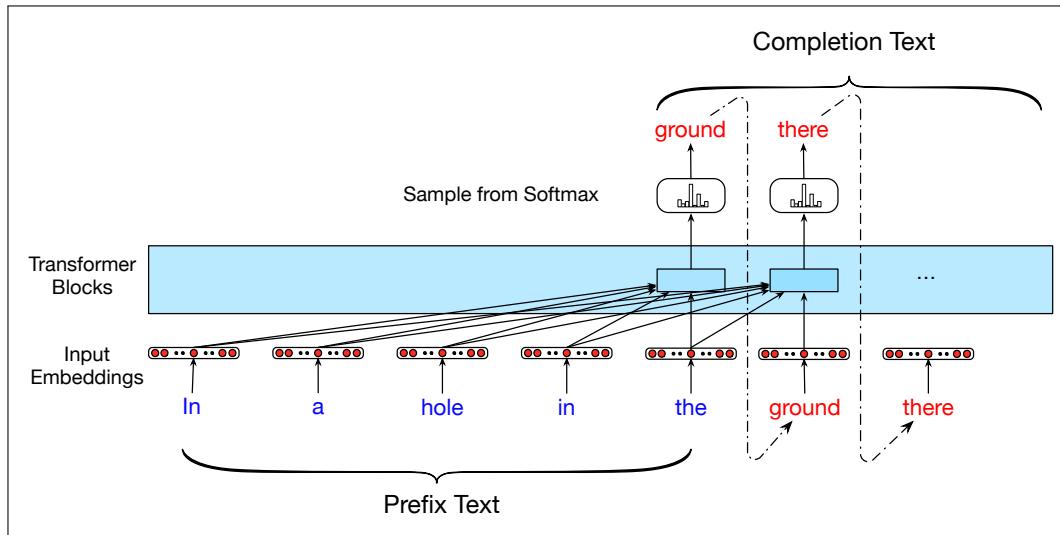
Note the key difference between this figure and the earlier RNN-based version for shown in Fig. 9.6. There the calculation of the outputs and the losses at each step was inherently serial given the recurrence in the calculation of the hidden states. With Transformers, each training item can be processed in parallel since the output for each element in the sequence is computed separately. Once trained, we can compute the perplexity of the resulting model, or autoregressively generate novel text just as with RNN-based models.



**Figure 9.19** Training a Transformer as a language model.

### Contextual Generation and Summarization

A simple variation on autoregressive generation that underlies a number of practical applications uses a prior context to prime the autoregressive generation process. Fig. 9.20 illustrates this with the task of text completion. Here a standard language model is given the prefix to some text and is asked to generate a possible completion to it. Note that as the generation process proceeds, the model has direct access to the priming context as well as to all of its own subsequently generated outputs. This ability to incorporate the entirety of the earlier context and generated outputs at each time step is the key to the power of these models.



**Figure 9.20** Autoregressive text completion with Transformers.

**Text summarization**

**Text summarization** is a practical application of context-based autoregressive generation. Here, the task is to take a full-length article and produce an effective summary of it. To train a Transformer-based autoregressive model to perform this task, we start with a corpus consisting of full-length articles accompanied by their

corresponding summaries. Fig. 9.21 shows an example of this kind of data from a widely used summarization corpus consisting of CNN and Daily Mirror news articles.

#### Original Article

The only thing crazier than a guy in snowbound Massachusetts boxing up the powdery white stuff and offering it for sale online? People are actually buying it. For \$89, self-styled entrepreneur Kyle Waring will ship you 6 pounds of Boston-area snow in an insulated Styrofoam box – enough for 10 to 15 snowballs, he says.

But not if you live in New England or surrounding states. “We will not ship snow to any states in the northeast!” says Waring’s website, ShipSnowYo.com. “We’re in the business of expunging snow!”

His website and social media accounts claim to have filled more than 133 orders for snow – more than 30 on Tuesday alone, his busiest day yet. With more than 45 total inches, Boston has set a record this winter for the snowiest month in its history. Most residents see the huge piles of snow choking their yards and sidewalks as a nuisance, but Waring saw an opportunity.

According to Boston.com, it all started a few weeks ago, when Waring and his wife were shoveling deep snow from their yard in Manchester-by-the-Sea, a coastal suburb north of Boston. He joked about shipping the stuff to friends and family in warmer states, and an idea was born. His business slogan: “Our nightmare is your dream!” At first, ShipSnowYo sold snow packed into empty 16.9-ounce water bottles for \$19.99, but the snow usually melted before it reached its destination...

#### Summary

Kyle Waring will ship you 6 pounds of Boston-area snow in an insulated Styrofoam box – enough for 10 to 15 snowballs, he says. But not if you live in New England or surrounding states.

**Figure 9.21** Examples of articles and summaries from the CNN/Daily Mail corpus (Hermann et al., 2015b), (Nallapati et al., 2016).

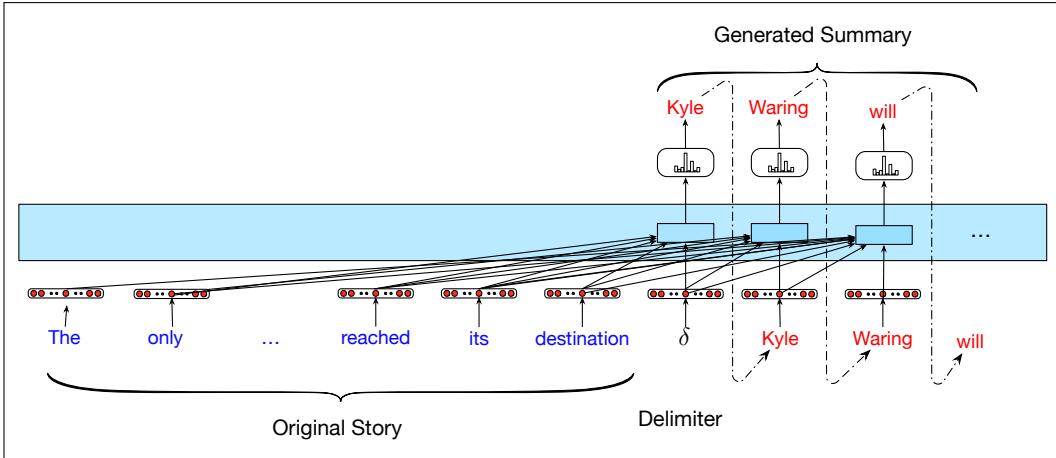
A surprisingly effective approach to applying Transformers to summarization is to append a summary to each full-length article in a corpus, with a unique marker separating the two. More formally, each article-summary pair  $(x_1, \dots, x_m), (y_1, \dots, y_n)$  in a training corpus is converted into a single training instance  $(x_1, \dots, x_m, \delta, y_1, \dots, y_n)$  with an overall length of  $n + m + 1$ . These training instances are treated as long sentences and then used to train an autoregressive language model using teacher forcing, *exactly as we did earlier*.

Once trained, full articles ending with the special marker are used as the context to prime the generation process to produce a summary as illustrated in Fig. 9.22. Note that, in contrast to RNNs, the model has access to the original article as well as to the newly generated text throughout the process.

As we’ll see in later chapters, variations on this simple scheme are the basis for successful text-to-text applications including machine translation, summarization and question answering.

## 9.5 Potential Harms from Language Models

Large neural language models exhibit many of the potential harms discussed in Chapter 4 and Chapter 6. Problems may occur whenever language models are used for text generation, such as in assistive technologies like web search query completion or predictive typing for email (Olteanu et al., 2020).



**Figure 9.22** Summarization with Transformers.

For example, language models can generate toxic language. Gehman et al. (2020) show that many kinds of completely non-toxic prompts can nonetheless lead large language models to output hate speech and abuse. Brown et al. (2020) and Sheng et al. (2019) showed that large language models generate sentences displaying negative attitudes toward minority identities such as being Black or gay.

Indeed, language models are biased in a number of ways by the distributions of their training data. Gehman et al. (2020) shows that large language model training datasets include toxic text scraped from banned sites. In addition to problems of toxicity, internet data is disproportionately generated by authors from developed countries, and many large language models train on data from Reddit, whose authors skew male and young. Such biased population samples likely skew the resulting generation away from the perspectives or topics of underrepresented populations. Furthermore, language models can amplify demographic and other biases in training data, just as we saw for embedding models in Chapter 6.

Language models can also be a tool for generating text for misinformation, phishing, radicalization, and other socially harmful activities (Brown et al., 2020). (McGuffie and Newhouse, 2020) show how large language models generate text that emulates online extremists, with the risk of amplifying extremist movements and their attempt to radicalize and recruit.

Finally, there are important privacy issues. Language models, like other machine learning models, can **leak** information about their training data. It is thus possible for an adversary to extract individual training-data phrases from a language model such as an individual person's name, phone number, and address (Carlini et al. 2020, using the techniques introduced by Henderson et al. 2017). This is a problem if large language models are trained on private datasets such as electronic health records (EHRs).

Mitigating all these harms is an important but unsolved research question in NLP. Extra pre-training (Gururangan et al., 2020) on non-toxic subcorpora seems to reduce a language model's tendency to generate toxic language somewhat (Gehman et al., 2020). And analyzing the data used to pretrain large language models is important to understand toxicity and bias in generation, as well as privacy, making it extremely important that language models include **datasheets** (page ??) or **model cards** (page 73) giving full replicable information on the corpora used to train them.

## 9.6 Summary

This chapter has introduced the concept of recurrent neural networks and how they can be applied to language problems. Here's a summary of the main points that we covered:

- In simple Recurrent Neural Networks sequences are processed naturally as an element at a time.
- The output of a neural unit at a particular point in time is based both on the current input and value of the hidden layer from the previous time step.
- RNNs can be trained with a straightforward extension of the backpropagation algorithm, known as backpropagation through time (BPTT).
- Common language-based applications for RNNs include:
  - Probabilistic language modeling, where the model assigns a probability to a sequence, or to the next element of a sequence given the preceding words.
  - Auto-regressive generation using a trained language model.
  - Sequence labeling, where each element of a sequence is assigned a label, as with part-of-speech tagging.
  - Sequence classification, where an entire text is assigned to a category, as in spam detection, sentiment analysis or topic classification.
- Simple recurrent networks often fail since it is extremely difficult to successfully train them due to problems maintaining useful gradients over time.
- More complex gated architectures such as LSTMs and GRUs are designed to overcome these issues by explicitly managing the task of deciding what to remember and forget in their hidden and context layers.

## Bibliographical and Historical Notes

Influential investigations of the kind of simple RNNs discussed here were conducted in the context of the Parallel Distributed Processing (PDP) group at UC San Diego in the 1980's. Much of this work was directed at human cognitive modeling rather than practical NLP applications [Rumelhart and McClelland 1986](#) [McClelland and Rumelhart 1986](#). Models using recurrence at the hidden layer in a feedforward network (Elman networks) were introduced by [Elman \(1990\)](#). Similar architectures were investigated by [Jordan \(1986\)](#) with a recurrence from the output layer, and [Mathis and Mozer \(1995\)](#) with the addition of a recurrent context layer prior to the hidden layer. The possibility of unrolling a recurrent network into an equivalent feedforward network is discussed in [\(Rumelhart and McClelland, 1986\)](#).

In parallel with work in cognitive modeling, RNNs were investigated extensively in the continuous domain in the signal processing and speech communities ([Giles et al., 1994](#)). [Schuster and Paliwal \(1997\)](#) introduced bidirectional RNNs and described results on the TIMIT phoneme transcription task.

While theoretically interesting, the difficulty with training RNNs and managing context over long sequences impeded progress on practical applications. This situation changed with the introduction of LSTMs in [Hochreiter and Schmidhuber](#)

(1997). Impressive performance gains were demonstrated on tasks at the boundary of signal processing and language processing including phoneme recognition (Graves and Schmidhuber, 2005), handwriting recognition (Graves et al., 2007) and most significantly speech recognition (Graves et al., 2013b).

Interest in applying neural networks to practical NLP problems surged with the work of Collobert and Weston (2008) and Collobert et al. (2011). These efforts made use of learned word embeddings, convolutional networks, and end-to-end training. They demonstrated near state-of-the-art performance on a number of standard shared tasks including part-of-speech tagging, chunking, named entity recognition and semantic role labeling without the use of hand-engineered features.

Approaches that married LSTMs with pre-trained collections of word-embeddings based on word2vec (Mikolov et al., 2013) and GLOVE (Pennington et al., 2014), quickly came to dominate many common tasks: part-of-speech tagging (Ling et al., 2015), syntactic chunking (Søgaard and Goldberg, 2016), and named entity recognition via IOB tagging Chiu and Nichols 2016, Ma and Hovy 2016, opinion mining (Irsoy and Cardie, 2014), semantic role labeling (Zhou and Xu, 2015a) and AMR parsing (Foland and Martin, 2016). As with the earlier surge of progress involving statistical machine learning, these advances were made possible by the availability of training data provided by CONLL, SemEval, and other shared tasks, as well as shared resources such as Ontonotes (Pradhan et al., 2007b), and PropBank (Palmer et al., 2005).

CHAPTER

# 10

Placeholder

## Contextual Embeddings

## 11

# Machine Translation and Encoder-Decoder Models

“I want to talk the dialect of your people. It’s no use of talking unless people understand what you say.”

Zora Neale Hurston, *Moses, Man of the Mountain* 1939, p. 121

machine  
translation  
MT

This chapter introduces **machine translation (MT)**, the use of computers to translate from one language to another.

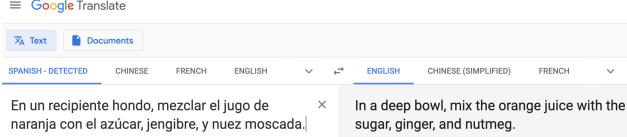
Of course translation, in its full generality, such as the translation of literature, or poetry, is a difficult, fascinating, and intensely human endeavor, as rich as any other area of human creativity.

information  
access

Machine translation in its present form therefore focuses on a number of very practical tasks. Perhaps the most common current use of machine translation is for **information access**. We might want to translate some instructions on the web, perhaps the recipe for a favorite dish, or the steps for putting together some furniture. Or we might want to read an article in a newspaper, or get information from an online resource like Wikipedia or a government webpage in a foreign language.

MT for information

access is probably  
one of the most com-  
mon uses of NLP  
technology, and Google



Translate alone (shown above) translates hundreds of billions of words a day between over 100 languages.

post-editing

Another common use of machine translation is to aid human translators. MT systems are routinely used to produce a draft translation that is fixed up in a **post-editing** phase by a human translator. This task is often called **computer-aided translation** or **CAT**. CAT is commonly used as part of **localization**: the task of adapting content or a product to a particular language community.

CAT  
localization

Finally, a more recent application of MT is to in-the-moment human communication needs. This includes incremental translation, translating speech on-the-fly before the entire sentence is complete, as is commonly used in simultaneous interpretation. Image-centric translation can be used for example to use OCR of the text on a phone camera image as input to an MT system to translate menus or street signs.

encoder-  
decoder

The standard algorithm for MT is the **encoder-decoder** network, also called the **sequence to sequence** network, an architecture that can be implemented with RNNs or with Transformers. We’ve seen in prior chapters that RNN or Transformer architecture can be used to do **classification** (for example to map a sentence to a positive or negative sentiment tag for sentiment analysis), or can be used to do **sequence labeling** (for example to assign each word in an input sentence with a part-of-speech, or with a named entity tag). For part-of-speech tagging, recall that the output tag is associated directly with each input word, and so we can just model the tag as output  $y_t$  for each input word  $x_t$ .

Encoder-decoder or sequence-to-sequence models are used for a different kind of sequence modeling in which the output sequence is a complex function of the entire input sequence; we must map from a sequence of input words or tokens to a sequence of tags that are not merely direct mappings from individual words.

Machine translation is exactly such a task: the words of the target language don't necessarily agree with the words of the source language in number or order. Consider translating the following made-up English sentence into Japanese.

(11.1) English: *He wrote a letter to a friend*

Japanese: *tomodachi ni tegami-o kaita*  
friend to letter wrote

Note that the elements of the sentences are in very different places in the different languages. In English, the verb is in the middle of the sentence, while in Japanese, the verb *kaita* comes at the end. The Japanese sentence doesn't require the pronoun *he*, while English does.

Such differences between languages can be quite complex. In the following actual sentence from the United Nations, notice the many changes between the Chinese sentence (we've given in red a word-by-word gloss of the Chinese characters) and its English equivalent.

(11.2) 大会/General Assembly 在/on 1982年/1982 12月/December 10日/10 通过了/adopted 第37号/37th 决议/resolution，核准了/approved 第二次/second 探索/exploration 及/and 和平/peaceful 利用/using 外层空间/outer space 会议/conference 的/of 各项/various 建议/suggestions。

On 10 December 1982 , the General Assembly adopted resolution 37 in which it endorsed the recommendations of the Second United Nations Conference on the Exploration and Peaceful Uses of Outer Space .

Note the many ways the English and Chinese differ. For example the ordering differs in major ways; the Chinese order of the noun phrase is “peaceful using outer space conference of suggestions” while the English has “suggestions of the ... conference on peaceful use of outer space”). And the order differs in minor ways (the date is ordered differently). English requires *the* in many places that Chinese doesn't, and adds some details (like “in which” and “it”) that aren't necessary in Chinese. Chinese doesn't grammatically mark plurality on nouns (unlike English, which has the “-s” in “recommendations”), and so the Chinese must use the modifier *各项/various* to make it clear that there is not just one recommendation. English capitalizes some words but not others.

Encoder-decoder networks are very successful at handling these sorts of complicated cases of sequence mappings. Indeed, the encoder-decoder algorithm is not just for MT; it's the state of the art for many other tasks where complex mappings between two sequences are involved. These include **summarization** (where we map from a long text to its summary, like a title or an abstract), **dialogue** (where we map from what the user said to what our dialogue system should respond), **semantic parsing** (where we map from a string of words to a semantic representation like logic or SQL), and many others.

We'll introduce the algorithm in sections Section 11.2, and in following sections give important components of the model like **beam search decoding**, and we'll discuss how MT is **evaluated**, introducing the popular BLEU metric.

But first, in the next section, we begin by summarizing the linguistic background to MT: key differences among languages that are important to consider when considering the task of translation.

## 11.1 Language Divergences and Typology

- universal** Some aspects of human language seem to be **universal**, holding true for every language, or are statistical universals, holding true for most languages. Many universals arise from the functional role of language as a communicative system by humans. Every language, for example, seems to have words for referring to people, for talking about eating and drinking, for being polite or not. There are also structural linguistic universals; for example, every language seems to have nouns and verbs (Chapter 8), has ways to ask questions, or issue commands, linguistic mechanisms for indicating agreement or disagreement.
- translation divergence** Yet languages also **differ** in many ways, and an understanding of what causes such **translation divergences** will help us build better MT models. We often distinguish the **idiosyncratic** and lexical differences that must be dealt with one by one (the word for "dog" differs wildly from language to language), from **systematic** differences that we can model in a general way (many languages put the verb before the direct object; others put the verb after the direct object). The study of these systematic cross-linguistic similarities and differences is called **linguistic typology**. This section sketches some typological facts that impact machine translation; the interested reader should also look into WALS, the World Atlas of Language Structures, which gives many typological facts about languages ([Dryer and Haspelmath, 2013](#)).
- typology**

### 11.1.1 Word Order Typology

- As we hinted it in our example above comparing English and Japanese, languages differ in the basic word order of verbs, subjects, and objects in simple declarative clauses. German, French, English, and Mandarin, for example, are all **SVO** (**Subject-Verb-Object**) languages, meaning that the verb tends to come between the subject and object. Hindi and Japanese, by contrast, are **SOV** languages, meaning that the verb tends to come at the end of basic clauses, and Irish and Arabic are **VSO** languages. Two languages that share their basic word order type often have other similarities. For example, **VO** languages generally have **prepositions**, whereas **OV** languages generally have **postpositions**.

Let's look in more detail at the example we saw above. In this SVO English sentence, the verb *wrote* is followed by its object *a letter* and the prepositional phrase *to a friend*, in which the preposition *to* is followed by its argument *a friend*. Arabic, with a VSO order, also has the verb before the object and prepositions. By contrast, in the Japanese example that follows, each of these orderings is reversed; the verb is *preceded* by its arguments, and the postposition follows its argument.

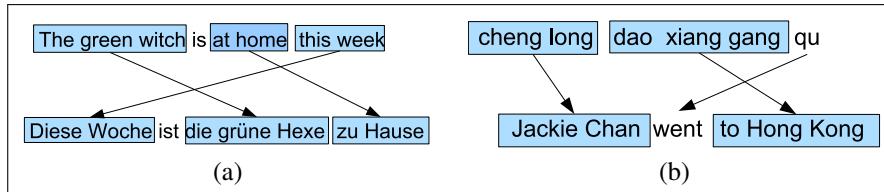
(11.3) English: *He wrote a letter to a friend*

Japanese: *tomodachi ni tegami-o kaita*  
friend to letter wrote

Arabic: *katabt risāla li šadq*  
wrote letter to friend

Other kinds of ordering preferences vary idiosyncratically from language to language. In some SVO languages (like English and Mandarin) adjectives tend to appear before verbs, while in others languages like Spanish and Modern Hebrew, adjectives appear after the noun:

(11.4) Spanish *bruja verde*      English *green witch*



**Figure 11.1** Examples of other word order differences: (a) In German, adverbs occur in initial position that in English are more natural later, and tensed verbs occur in second position. (b) In Mandarin, preposition phrases expressing goals often occur pre-verbally, unlike in English.

Fig. 11.1 shows examples of other word order differences. All of these word order differences between languages can cause problems for translation, requiring the system to do huge structural reorderings as it generates the output.

### 11.1.2 Lexical Divergences

Of course we also need to translate the individual words from one language to another. For any translation, the appropriate word can vary depending on the context. The English source-language word *bass*, for example, can appear in Spanish as the fish *lubina* or the musical instrument *bajo*. German uses two distinct words for what in English would be called a *wall*: *Wand* for walls inside a building, and *Mauer* for walls outside a building. Where English uses the word *brother* for any male sibling, Chinese and many other languages have distinct words for *older brother* and *younger brother* (Mandarin *gege* and *didi*, respectively). In all these cases, translating *bass*, *wall*, or *brother* from English would require a kind of specialization, disambiguating the different uses of a word. For this reason the fields of MT and Word Sense Disambiguation (Chapter 18) are closely linked.

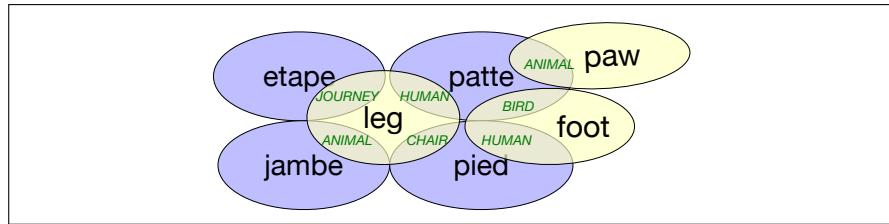
Sometimes one language places more grammatical constraints on word choice than another. We saw above that English marks nouns for whether they are singular or plural. Mandarin doesn't. Or French and Spanish, for example, mark grammatical gender on adjectives, so an English translation into French requires specifying adjective gender.

The way that languages differ in lexically dividing up conceptual space may be more complex than this one-to-many translation problem, leading to many-to-many mappings. For example, Fig. 11.2 summarizes some of the complexities discussed by [Hutchins and Somers \(1992\)](#) in translating English *leg*, *foot*, and *paw*, to French. For example, when *leg* is used about an animal it's translated as French *jambe*; but about the leg of a journey, as French *etape*; if the leg is of a chair, we use French *pied*.

#### lexical gap

Further, one language may have a **lexical gap**, where no word or phrase, short of an explanatory footnote, can express the exact meaning of a word in the other language. For example, English does not have a word that corresponds neatly to Mandarin *xiào* or Japanese *oyakōkōo* (in English one has to make do with awkward phrases like *filial piety* or *loving child*, or *good son/daughter* for both).

Finally, languages differ systematically in how the conceptual properties of an event are mapped onto specific words. [Talmy \(1985, 1991\)](#) noted that languages can be characterized by whether direction of motion and manner of motion are marked on the verb or on the “satellites”: particles, prepositional phrases, or adverbial phrases. For example, a bottle floating out of a cave would be described in English with the direction marked on the particle *out*, while in Spanish the direction



**Figure 11.2** The complex overlap between English *leg*, *foot*, etc., and various French translations as discussed by [Hutchins and Somers \(1992\)](#).

would be marked on the verb:

- (11.5) English: *The bottle floated out.*  
 Spanish: La botella salió flotando.  
 The bottle exited floating.

verb-framed

satellite-framed

**Verb-framed** languages mark the direction of motion on the verb (leaving the satellites to mark the manner of motion), like Spanish *acerca* ‘approach’, *alcanzar* ‘reach’, *entrar* ‘enter’, *salir* ‘exit’. **Satellite-framed** languages mark the direction of motion on the satellite (leaving the verb to mark the manner of motion), like English *crawl out*, *float off*, *jump down*, *run after*. Languages like Japanese, Tamil, and the many languages in the Romance, Semitic, and Mayan language families, are verb-framed; Chinese as well as non-Romance Indo-European languages like English, Swedish, Russian, Hindi, and Farsi are satellite framed ([Talmy 1991](#), [Slobin 1996](#)).

isolating

polysynthetic

agglutinative

fusion

### 11.1.3 Morphological Typology

**Morphologically**, languages are often characterized along two dimensions of variation. The first is the number of morphemes per word, ranging from **isolating** languages like Vietnamese and Cantonese, in which each word generally has one morpheme, to **polysynthetic** languages like Siberian Yupik (“Eskimo”), in which a single word may have very many morphemes, corresponding to a whole sentence in English. The second dimension is the degree to which morphemes are segmentable, ranging from **agglutinative** languages like Turkish, in which morphemes have relatively clean boundaries, to **fusion** languages like Russian, in which a single affix may conflate multiple morphemes, like *-om* in the word *stolom* (table-SG-INST-DECL1), which fuses the distinct morphological categories instrumental, singular, and first declension.

Translating between languages with rich morphology requires dealing with structure below the word level, and for this reason modern systems generally use subword models like the wordpiece or BPE models of Section 11.7.1.

### 11.1.4 Referential density

Finally, languages vary along a typological dimension related to the things they tend to omit. Some languages, like English, require that we use an explicit pronoun when talking about a referent that is given in the discourse. In other languages, however, we can sometimes omit pronouns altogether, as the following example from Spanish shows<sup>1</sup>:

<sup>1</sup> Here we use the Ø-notation; we'll introduce this and discuss this issue further in Chapter 22

- (11.6) [El jefe]<sub>i</sub> dio con un libro. Ø<sub>i</sub> Mostró a un descifrador ambulante.  
 [The boss] came upon a book. [He] showed it to a wandering decoder.

**pro-drop**

Languages that can omit pronouns are called **pro-drop** languages. Even among the pro-drop languages, there are marked differences in frequencies of omission. Japanese and Chinese, for example, tend to omit far more than does Spanish. This dimension of variation across languages is called the dimension of **referential density**. We say that languages that tend to use more pronouns are more **referentially dense** than those that use more zeros. Referentially sparse languages, like Chinese or Japanese, that require the hearer to do more inferential work to recover antecedents are also called **cold** languages. Languages that are more explicit and make it easier for the hearer are called **hot** languages. The terms *hot* and *cold* are borrowed from Marshall McLuhan's (1964) distinction between hot media like movies, which fill in many details for the viewer, versus cold media like comics, which require the reader to do more inferential work to fill out the representation (Bickel, 2003).

**cold language**

**hot language**

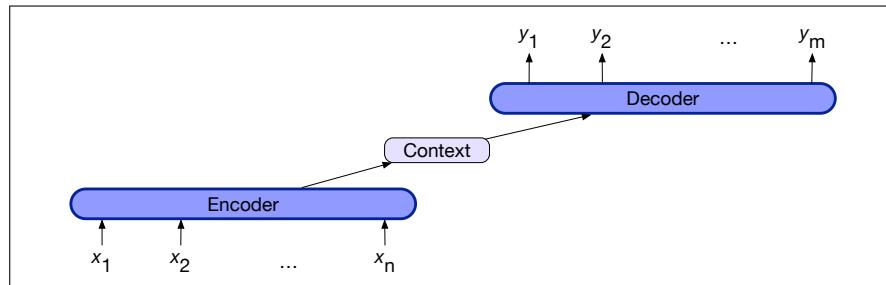
Translating from languages with extensive pro-drop, like Chinese or Japanese, to non-pro-drop languages like English can be difficult since the model must somehow identify each zero and recover who or what is being talked about in order to insert the proper pronoun.

## 11.2 The Encoder-Decoder Model

**encoder-decoder**

**Encoder-decoder** networks, or **sequence-to-sequence** networks, are models capable of generating contextually appropriate, arbitrary length, output sequences. Encoder-decoder networks have been applied to a very wide range of applications including machine translation, summarization, question answering, and dialogue.

The key idea underlying these networks is the use of an **encoder** network that takes an input sequence and creates a contextualized representation of it, often called the **context**. This representation is then passed to a **decoder** which generates a task-specific output sequence. Fig. 11.3 illustrates the architecture



**Figure 11.3** The encoder-decoder architecture. The context is a function of the hidden representations of the input, and may be used by the decoder in a variety of ways.

Encoder-decoder networks consist of three components:

1. An **encoder** that accepts an input sequence,  $x_1^n$ , and generates a corresponding sequence of contextualized representations,  $h_1^n$ . LSTMs, GRUs, convolutional networks, and Transformers can all be employed as encoders.
2. A **context vector**,  $c$ , which is a function of  $h_1^n$ , and conveys the essence of the input to the decoder.

3. A **decoder**, which accepts  $c$  as input and generates an arbitrary length sequence of hidden states  $h_1^m$ , from which a corresponding sequence of output states  $y_1^m$ , can be obtained. Just as with encoders, decoders can be realized by any kind of sequence architecture.

## 11.3 Encoder-Decoder with RNNs

Let's begin by describing an encoder-decoder network based on a pair of RNNs.<sup>2</sup> Recall the conditional RNN language model from Chapter 9 for computing  $p(y)$ , the probability of a sequence  $y$ . Like any language model, we can break down the probability as follows:

$$p(y) = p(y_1)p(y_2|y_1)p(y_3|y_1, y_2)\dots P(y_m|y_1, \dots, y_{m-1}) \quad (11.7)$$

At a particular time  $t$ , we pass the prefix of  $t - 1$  tokens through the language model, using forward inference to produce a sequence of hidden states, ending with the hidden state corresponding to the last word of the prefix. We then use the final hidden state of the prefix as our starting point to generate the next token.

More formally, if  $g$  is an activation function like *tanh* or ReLU, a function of the input at time  $t$  and the hidden state at time  $t - 1$ , and  $f$  is a softmax over the set of possible vocabulary items, then at time  $t$  the output  $y_t$  and hidden state  $h_t$  are computed as:

$$h_t = g(h_{t-1}, x_t) \quad (11.8)$$

$$y_t = f(h_t) \quad (11.9)$$

We only have to make one slight change to turn this language model with autoregressive generation into a translation model that can translate from a **source** text in one language to a **target** text in a second: add an sentence separation marker at the end of the source text, and then simply concatenate the target text. We briefly introduced this idea of a sentence separator token in Chapter 9 when we considered using a Transformer language model to do summarization, by training a conditional language model.

If we call the source text  $x$  and the target text  $y$ , we are computing the probability  $p(y|x)$  as follows:

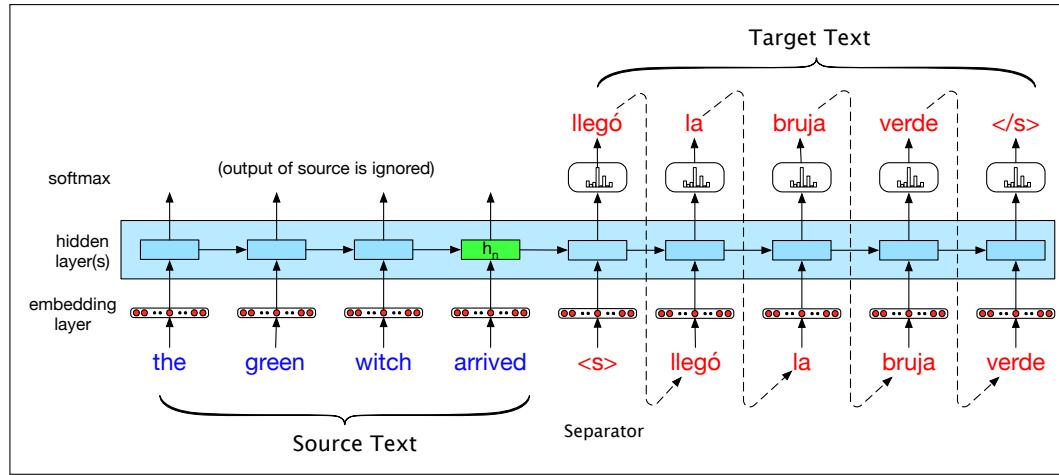
$$p(y|x) = p(y_1|x)p(y_2|y_1, x)p(y_3|y_1, y_2, x)\dots P(y_m|y_1, \dots, y_{m-1}, x) \quad (11.10)$$

Fig. 11.4 shows the setup for a simplified version of the encoder-decoder model (we'll see the full model, which requires **attention**, in the next section).

Fig. 11.4 shows an English source text (“the green witch arrived”), a sentence separator token ( $<\text{s}>$ , and a Spanish target text (“*llegó la bruja verde*”). To translate a source text, we run it through the network performing forward inference to generate hidden states until we get to the end of the source. Then we begin autoregressive generation, asking for a word in the context of the hidden layer from the end of the source input as well as the end-of-sentence marker. Subsequent words are conditioned on the previous hidden state and the embedding for the last word generated.

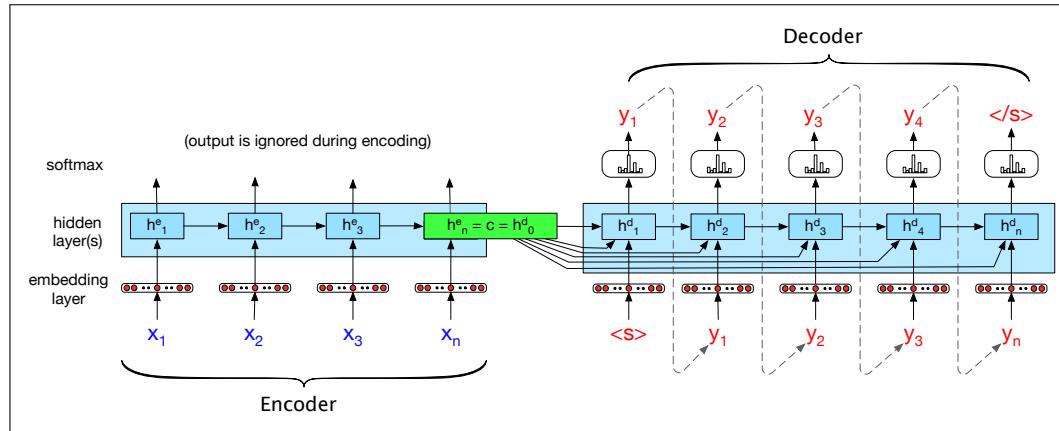
---

<sup>2</sup> Later we'll see how to use pairs of Transformers as well; it's even possible to use separate architectures for the encoder and decoder.



**Figure 11.4** Translating a single sentence (inference time) in the basic RNN version of encoder-decoder approach to machine translation. Source and target sentences are concatenated with a separator token in between, and the decoder uses context information from the encoder’s last hidden state.

Let’s formalize and generalize this model a bit in Fig. 11.5. (To help keep things straight, we’ll use the superscripts  $e$  and  $d$  where needed to distinguish the hidden states of the encoder and the decoder.) The elements of the network on the left process the input sequence  $x$  and comprise the **encoder**. While our simplified figure shows only a single network layer for the encoder, stacked architectures are the norm, where the output states from the top layer of the stack are taken as the final representation. A widely used encoder design makes use of stacked biLSTMs where the hidden states from top layers from the forward and backward passes are concatenated as described in Chapter 9 to provide the contextualized representations for each time step.

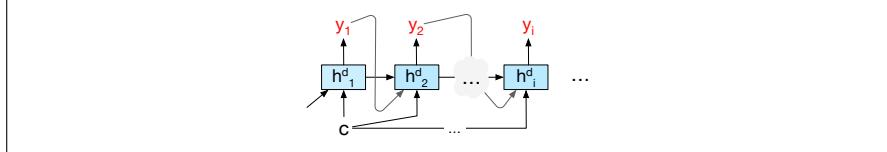


**Figure 11.5** A more formal version of translating a sentence at inference time in the basic RNN-based encoder-decoder architecture. The final hidden state of the encoder RNN,  $h_n^e$ , serves as the context for the decoder in its role as  $h_0^d$  in the decoder RNN.

The entire purpose of the encoder is to generate a contextualized representation of the input. This representation is embodied in the final hidden state of the encoder,  $h_n^e$ . This representation, also called  $c$  for **context**, is then passed to the decoder.

The **decoder** network on the right takes this state and uses it to initialize the first

hidden state of the decoder. That is, the first decoder RNN cell uses  $c$  as its prior hidden state  $h_0^d$ . The decoder autoregressively generates a sequence of outputs, an element at a time, until an end-of-sequence marker is generated. Each hidden state is conditioned on the previous hidden state and the output generated in the previous state.



**Figure 11.6** Allowing every hidden state of the decoder (not just the first decoder state) to be influenced by the context  $c$  produced by the encoder.

One weakness of this approach as described so far is that the influence of the context vector,  $c$ , will wane as the output sequence is generated. A solution is to make the context vector  $c$  available at each step in the decoding process by adding it as a parameter to the computation of the current hidden state, using the following equation (illustrated in Fig. 11.6):

$$h_t^d = g(\hat{y}_{t-1}, h_{t-1}^d, c) \quad (11.11)$$

Now we’re ready to see the full equations for this version of the decoder in the basic encoder-decoder model, with context available at each decoding timestep. Recall that  $g$  is a stand-in for some flavor of RNN and  $\hat{y}_{t-1}$  is the embedding for the output sampled from the softmax at the previous step:

$$\begin{aligned} c &= h_n^e \\ h_0^d &= c \\ h_t^d &= g(\hat{y}_{t-1}, h_{t-1}^d, c) \\ z_t &= f(h_t^d) \\ y_t &= \text{softmax}(z_t) \end{aligned} \quad (11.12)$$

Finally, as shown earlier, the output  $y$  at each time step consists of a softmax computation over the set of possible outputs (the vocabulary, in the case of language modeling or MT). We compute the most likely output at each time step by taking the argmax over the softmax output:

$$\hat{y}_t = \text{argmax}_{w \in V} P(w|x, y_1 \dots y_{t-1}) \quad (11.13)$$

There are also various ways to make the model a bit more powerful. For example, we can help the model keep track of what has already been generated and what hasn’t by conditioning the output layer  $y$  not just solely on the hidden state  $h_t^d$  and the context  $c$  but also on the output  $y_{t-1}$  generated at the previous timestep:

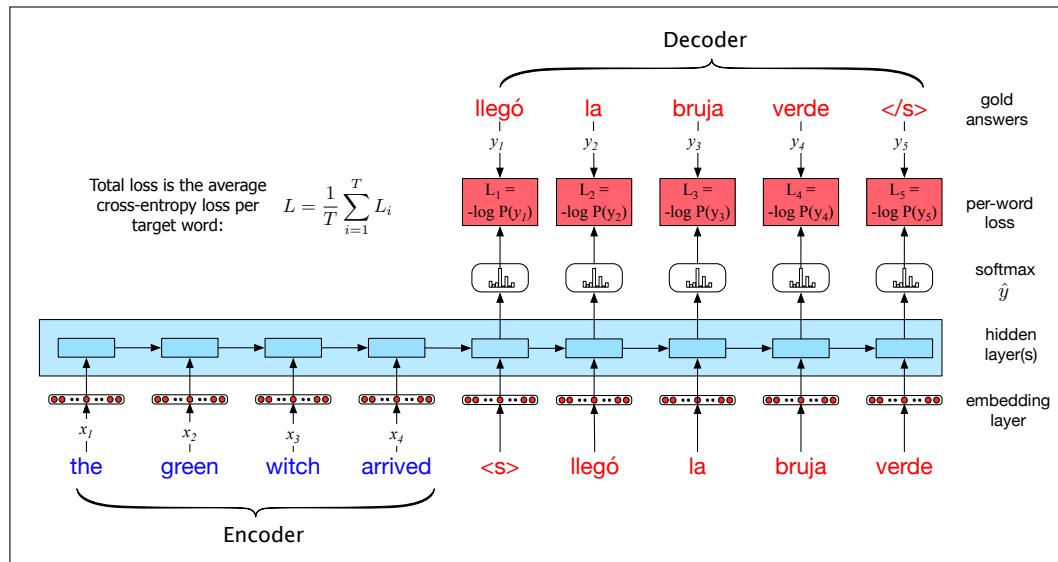
$$y_t = \text{softmax}(\hat{y}_{t-1}, z_t, c) \quad (11.14)$$

### 11.3.1 Training the Encoder-Decoder Model

Encoder-decoder architectures are trained end-to-end, just as with the RNN language models of Chapter 9. Each training example is a tuple of paired strings, a source and

a target. Concatenated with a separator token, these source-target pairs can now serve as training data.

For MT, the training data typically consists of sets of sentences and their translations. These can be drawn from standard datasets of aligned sentence pairs, as we'll discuss in Section 11.7.2. Once we have a training set, the training itself proceeds as with any RNN-based language model. The network is given the source text and then starting with the separator token is trained autoregressively to predict the next word, as shown in Fig. 11.7.



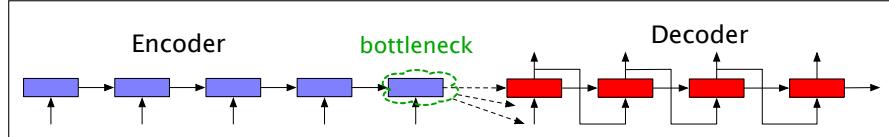
**Figure 11.7** Training the basic RNN encoder-decoder approach to machine translation. Note that in the decoder we usually don't propagate the model's softmax outputs  $\hat{y}_t$ , but use **teacher forcing** to force each input to the correct gold value for training. We compute the softmax output distribution over  $\hat{y}$  in the decoder in order to compute the loss at each token, which can then be averaged to compute a loss for the sentence.

Note the differences between training (Fig. 11.7) and inference (Fig. 11.4) with respect to the outputs at each time step. The decoder during inference uses its own estimated output  $\hat{y}_t$  as the input for the next time step  $x_{t+1}$ . Thus the decoder will tend to deviate more and more from the gold target sentence as it keeps generating more tokens. In training, therefore, it is more common to use **teacher forcing** in the decoder. Teacher forcing means that we force the system to use the gold target token from training as the next input  $x_{t+1}$ , rather than allowing it to rely on the (possibly erroneous) decoder output  $\hat{y}_t$ . This speeds up training.

## 11.4 Attention

The simplicity of the encoder-decoder model is its clean separation of the encoder — which builds a representation of the source text — from the decoder, which uses this context to generate a target text. In the model as we've described it so far, this context vector is  $h_n$ , the hidden state of the last (n<sup>th</sup>) time step of the source text. This final hidden state is thus acting as a **bottleneck**: it must represent absolutely everything about the meaning of the source text, since the only thing the decoder knows about the source text is what's in this context vector. Information at the

beginning of the sentence, especially for long sentences, may not be equally well represented in the context vector.



**Figure 11.8** Requiring the context  $c$  to be only the encoder’s final hidden state forces all the information from the entire source sentence to pass through this representational bottleneck.

#### attention mechanism

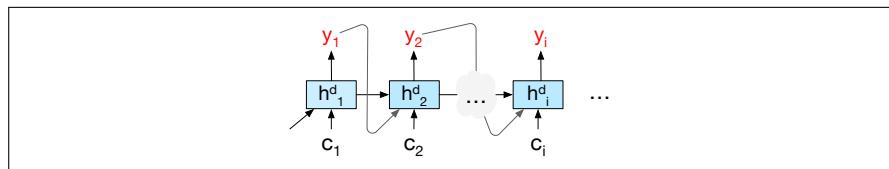
The **attention mechanism** is a solution to the bottleneck problem, a way of allowing the decoder to get information from *all* the hidden states of the encoder, not just the last hidden state.

In the attention mechanism, as in the vanilla encoder-decoder model, the context vector  $c$  is a single vector that is a function of the hidden states of the encoder, that is,  $c = f(h_1^n)$ . Because the number of hidden states varies with the size of the input, we can’t use the entire tensor of encoder hidden state vectors directly as the context for the decoder. The idea of attention is instead to create the single fixed-length vector  $c$  by taking a weighted sum of all the encoder hidden states  $h_j^n$ .

The weights are used to focus on a particular part of the source text that is relevant for the token currently being produced by the decoder. The context vector produced by the attention mechanism is thus dynamic, different for each token in decoding.

Attention thus replaces the static context vector with one that is dynamically derived from the encoder hidden states at each point during decoding. This context vector,  $c_i$ , is generated anew with each decoding step  $i$  and takes all of the encoder hidden states into account in its derivation. We then make this context available during decoding by conditioning the computation of the current decoder hidden state on it (along with the prior hidden state and the previous output generated by the decoder); and the equation (and Fig. 11.9):

$$h_i^d = g(\hat{y}_{i-1}, h_{i-1}^d, c_i)$$



**Figure 11.9** The attention mechanism allows each hidden state of the decoder to see a different, dynamic, context, which is a function of all the encoder hidden states.

#### dot-product attention

The first step in computing  $c_i$  is to compute how much to focus on each encoder state, how *relevant* each encoder state is to the decoder state captured in  $h_{i-1}^d$ . We capture relevance by computing—at each state  $i$  during decoding—a  $\text{score}(h_{i-1}^d, h_j^e)$  for each encoder state  $j$ .

The simplest such score, called **dot-product attention**, implements relevance as similarity: measuring how similar the decoder hidden state is to an encoder hidden state, by computing the dot product between them:

$$\text{score}(h_{i-1}^d, h_j^e) = h_{i-1}^d \cdot h_j^e \quad (11.15)$$

The score that results from this dot product is a scalar that reflects the degree of similarity between the two vectors. The vector of these scores across all the encoder hidden states gives us the relevance of each encoder state to the current step of the decoder.

To make use of these scores, we'll normalize them with a softmax to create a vector of weights,  $\alpha_{ij}$ , that tells us the proportional relevance of each encoder hidden state  $j$  to the prior hidden decoder state,  $h_{i-1}^d$ .

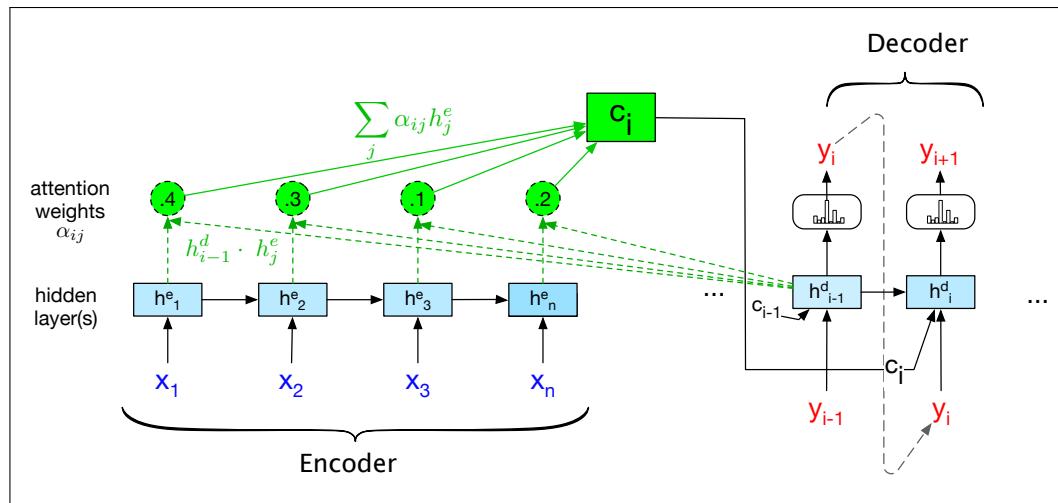
$$\alpha_{ij} = \text{softmax(score}(h_{i-1}^d, h_j^e) \forall j \in e) \quad (11.16)$$

$$= \frac{\exp(score(h_{i-1}^d, h_j^e))}{\sum_k \exp(score(h_{i-1}^d, h_k^e))} \quad (11.17)$$

Finally, given the distribution in  $\alpha$ , we can compute a fixed-length context vector for the current decoder state by taking a weighted average over all the encoder hidden states.

$$c_i = \sum_j \alpha_{ij} h_j^e \quad (11.18)$$

With this, we finally have a fixed-length context vector that takes into account information from the entire encoder state that is dynamically updated to reflect the needs of the decoder at each step of decoding. Fig. 11.10 illustrates an encoder-decoder network with attention, focusing on the computation of one context vector  $c_i$ .



**Figure 11.10** A sketch of the encoder-decoder network with attention, focusing on the computation of  $c_i$ . The context value  $c_i$  is one of the inputs to the computation of  $h_i^d$ . It is computed by taking the weighted sum of all the encoder hidden states, each weighted by their dot product with the prior decoder hidden state  $h_{i-1}^d$ .

It's also possible to create more sophisticated scoring functions for attention models. Instead of simple dot product attention, we can get a more powerful function that computes the relevance of each encoder hidden state to the decoder hidden state by parameterizing the score with its own set of weights,  $W_s$ .

$$\text{score}(h_{i-1}^d, h_j^e) = h_{i-1}^d W_s h_j^e$$

The weights  $W_s$ , which are then trained during normal end-to-end training, give the network the ability to learn which aspects of similarity between the decoder and encoder states are important to the current application. This bilinear model also allows the encoder and decoder to use different dimensional vectors, whereas the simple dot-product attention requires the encoder and decoder hidden states have the same dimensionality.

## 11.5 Beam Search

The decoding algorithm we gave above for generating translations has a problem (as does the autoregressive generation we introduced in Chapter 9 for generating from a conditional language model). Recall that algorithm: at each time step in decoding, the output  $y_t$  is chosen by computing a softmax over the set of possible outputs (the vocabulary, in the case of language modeling or MT), and then choosing the highest probability token (the argmax):

$$\hat{y}_t = \text{argmax}_{w \in V} P(w|x, y_1 \dots y_{t-1}) \quad (11.19)$$

### greedy

Choosing the single most probable token to generate at each step is called **greedy** decoding; a greedy algorithm is one that make a choice that is locally optimal, whether or not it will turn out to have been the best choice with hindsight.

Indeed, greedy search is not optimal, and may not find the highest probability translation. The problem is that the token that looks good to the decoder now might turn out later to have been the wrong choice!

### search tree

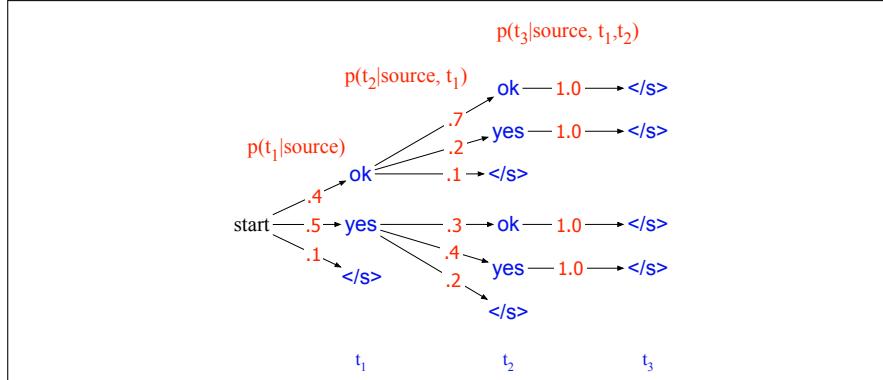
Let's see this by looking at the **search tree**, a graphical representation of the choices the decoder makes in searching for the best translation, in which we view the decoding problem as a heuristic state-space search and systematically explore the space of possible outputs. In such a search tree, the branches are the actions, in this case the action of generating a token, and the nodes are the states, in this case the state of having generated a particular prefix. We are searching for the best action sequence, i.e. the target string with the highest probability. Fig. 11.11 demonstrates the problem, using a made-up example. Notice that the most probable sequence is *ok ok yes* (with a probability of  $.4 * .7 * 1.0$ ), but a greedy search algorithm will fail to find it, because it incorrectly chooses *yes* as the first word since it has the highest local probability.

Recall from Chapter 8 that for part-of-speech tagging we used dynamic programming search (the Viterbi algorithm) to address this problem. Unfortunately, dynamic programming is not applicable to generation problems with long-distance dependencies between the output decisions. The only method guaranteed to find the best solution is exhaustive search: computing the probability of every one of the  $V^T$  possible sentences (for some length value  $T$ ) which is obviously too slow.

### beam search

Instead, decoding in MT and other sequence generation problems generally uses a method called **beam search**. In beam search, instead of choosing the best token to generate at each timestep, we keep  $k$  possible tokens at each step. This fixed-size memory footprint  $k$  is called the **beam width**, on the metaphor of a flashlight beam that can be parameterized to be wider or narrower.

Thus at the first step of decoding, we compute a softmax over the entire vocabulary, assigning a probability to each word. We then select the  $k$ -best options from this softmax output. These initial  $k$  outputs are the search frontier and these  $k$  initial



**Figure 11.11** A search tree for generating the target string  $T = t_1, t_2, \dots$  from the vocabulary  $V = \{\text{yes}, \text{ok}, \langle \text{s} \rangle\}$ , given the source string, showing the probability of generating each token from that state. Greedy search would choose *yes* at the first time step followed by *yes*, instead of the globally most probable sequence *ok ok*.

words are called **hypotheses**. A hypothesis is an output sequence, a translation-so-far, together with its probability.

At subsequent steps, each of the  $k$  best hypotheses is extended incrementally by being passed to distinct decoders, which each generate a softmax over the entire vocabulary to extend the hypothesis to every possible next token. Each of these  $k * V$  hypotheses is scored by  $P(y_i|x, y_{<i})$ : the product of the probability of current word choice multiplied by the probability of the path that led to it. We then prune the  $k * V$  hypotheses down to the  $k$  best hypotheses, so there are never more than  $k$  hypotheses at the frontier of the search, and never more than  $k$  decoders.

Fig. 11.12 illustrates this process with a beam width of 2.

This process continues until a  $\langle \text{s} \rangle$  is generated indicating that a complete candidate output has been found. At this point, the completed hypothesis is removed from the frontier and the size of the beam is reduced by one. The search continues until the beam has been reduced to 0. The result will be  $k$  hypotheses.

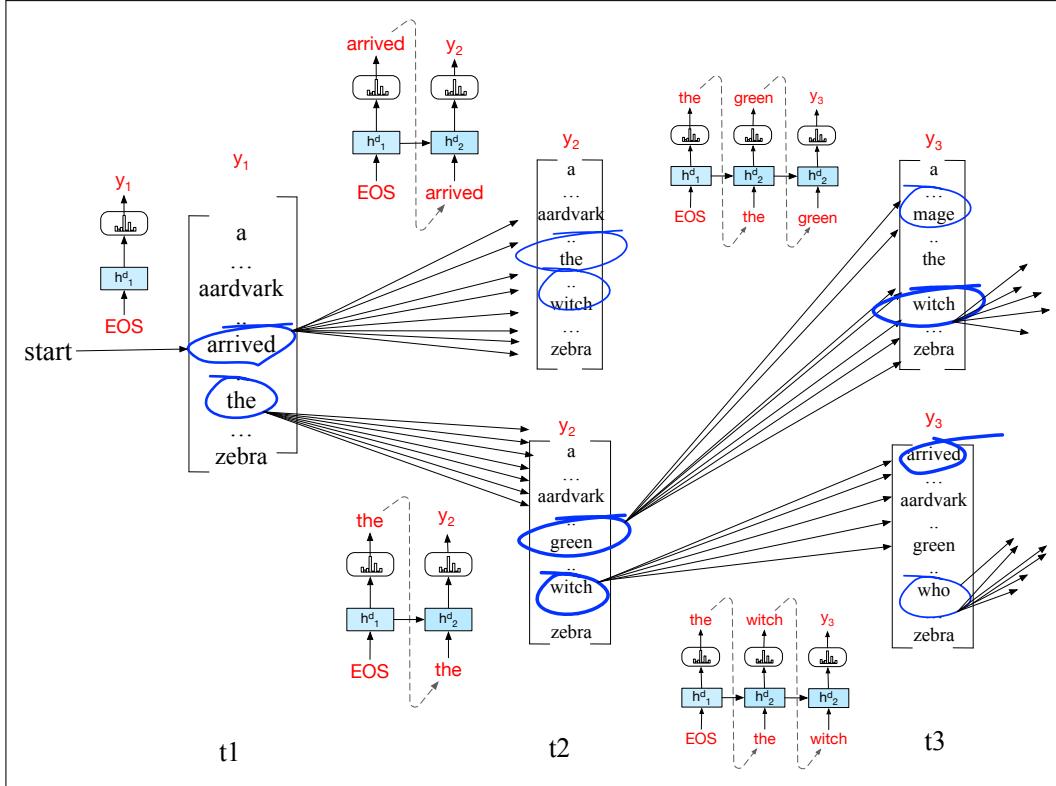
Let's see how the scoring works in detail, scoring each node by its log probability. Recall from Eq. 11.10 that we can use the chain rule of probability to break down  $p(y|x)$  into the product of the probability of each word given its prior context, which we can turn into a sum of logs (for an output string of length  $t$ ):

$$\begin{aligned} score(y) &= \log P(y|x) \\ &= \log(P(y_1|x)P(y_2|y_1,x)P(y_3|y_1,y_2,x)\dots P(y_t|y_1,\dots,y_{t-1},x)) \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^t \log P(y_i|y_1,\dots,y_{i-1},x) \end{aligned} \tag{11.20}$$

Thus at each step, to compute the probability of a partial translation, we simply add the log probability of the prefix translation so far to the log probability of generating the next token. Fig. 11.13 shows the scoring for the example sentence shown in Fig. 11.12, using some simple made-up probabilities. Log probabilities are negative or 0, and the max of two log probabilities is the one that is greater (closer to 0).

Fig. 11.14 gives the algorithm.

One problem arises from the fact that the completed hypotheses may have different lengths. Because models generally assign lower probabilities to longer strings, a naive algorithm would also choose shorter strings for  $y$ . This was not an issue during the earlier steps of decoding; due to the breadth-first nature of beam search



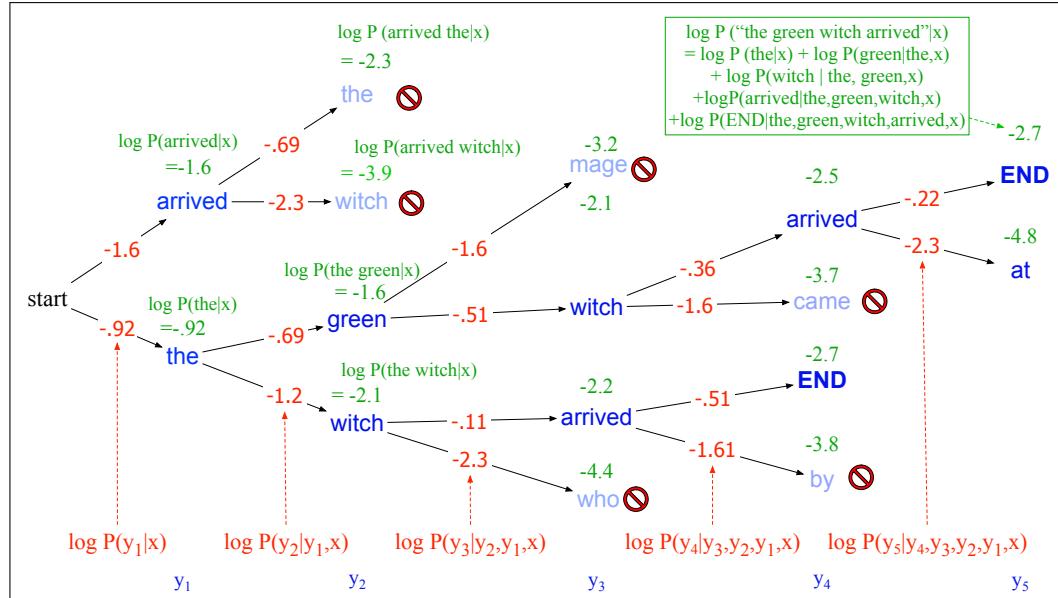
**Figure 11.12** Beam search decoding with a beam width of  $k = 2$ . At each time step, we choose the  $k$  best hypotheses, compute the  $V$  possible extensions of each hypothesis, score the resulting  $k * V$  possible hypotheses and choose the best  $k$  to continue. At time 1, the frontier is filled with the best 2 options from the initial state of the decoder: *arrived* and *the*. We then extend each of those, compute the probability of all the hypotheses so far (*arrived the*, *arrived aardvark*, *the green*, *the witch*) and compute the best 2 (in this case *the green* and *the witch*) to be the search frontier to extend on the next step. On the arcs we show the decoders that we run to score the extension words (although for simplicity we haven't shown the context value  $c_i$  that is input at each step).

all the hypotheses being compared had the same length. The usual solution to this is to apply some form of length normalization to each of the hypotheses, for example simply dividing the negative log probability by the number of words:

$$\text{score}(y) = -\log P(y|x) = \frac{1}{T} \sum_{i=1}^t -\log P(y_i|y_1, \dots, y_{i-1}, x) \quad (11.21)$$

Beam search is common in large production MT systems, generally with beam widths  $k$  between 5 and 10. What do we do with the resulting  $k$  hypotheses? In some cases, all we need from our MT algorithm is the single best hypothesis, so we can return that. In other cases our downstream application might want to look at all  $k$  hypotheses, so we can pass them all (or a subset) to the downstream application with their respective scores.

## 11.6 Encoder-Decoder with Transformers



**Figure 11.13** Scoring for beam search decoding with a beam width of  $k = 2$ . We maintain the log probability of each hypothesis in the beam by incrementally adding the logprob of generating each next token. Only the top  $k$  paths are extended to the next step.

## 11.7 Some practical details on building MT systems

### 11.7.1 Tokenization

Machine translation systems generally use a fixed vocabulary. A common way to generate this vocabulary is with the **BPE** or **wordpiece** algorithms sketched in Chapter 2. Generally a shared vocabulary is used for the source and target languages, which makes it easy to copy tokens (like names) from source to target, so we build the wordpiece/BPE lexicon on a corpus that contains both source and target language data. Wordpieces use a special symbol at the beginning of each token; here's a resulting tokenization from the Google MT system (Wu et al., 2016):

**words:** Jet makers feud over seat width with big orders at stake  
**wordpieces:** \_J et \_makers \_fe ud \_over \_seat \_width \_with \_big \_orders \_at \_stake

We gave the BPE algorithm in detail in Chapter 2; here's more details on the wordpiece algorithm, which is given a training corpus and a desired vocabulary size  $V$ , and proceeds as follows:

1. Initialize the wordpiece lexicon with characters (for example a subset of Unicode characters, collapsing all the remaining characters to a special unknown character token).
2. Repeat until there are  $V$  wordpieces:
  - (a) Train an  $n$ -gram language model on the training corpus, using the current set of wordpieces.
  - (b) Consider the set of possible new wordpieces made by concatenating two wordpieces from the current lexicon. Choose the one new wordpiece that most increases the language model probability of the training corpus.

A vocabulary of 8K to 32K word pieces is commonly used.

```

function BEAMDECODE( $c, beam\_width$ ) returns best paths
     $y_0, h_0 \leftarrow 0$ 
     $path \leftarrow ()$ 
     $complete\_paths \leftarrow ()$ 
     $state \leftarrow (c, y_0, h_0, path)$  ;initial state
     $frontier \leftarrow \langle state \rangle$  ;initial frontier

    while  $frontier$  contains incomplete paths and  $beamwidth > 0$ 
         $extended\_frontier \leftarrow \langle \rangle$ 
        for each  $state \in frontier$  do
             $y \leftarrow DECODE(state)$ 
            for each word  $i \in Vocabulary$  do
                 $successor \leftarrow NEWSTATE(state, i, y_i)$ 
                 $new\_agenda \leftarrow ADDTOBEAM(successor, extended\_frontier, beam\_width)$ 

            for each  $state$  in  $extended\_frontier$  do
                if  $state$  is complete do
                     $complete\_paths \leftarrow APPEND(complete\_paths, state)$ 
                     $extended\_frontier \leftarrow REMOVE(extended\_frontier, state)$ 
                     $beam\_width \leftarrow beam\_width - 1$ 
                 $frontier \leftarrow extended\_frontier$ 

            return  $completed\_paths$ 

function NEWSTATE( $state, word, word\_prob$ ) returns new state
function ADDTOBEAM( $state, frontier, width$ ) returns updated frontier

    if LENGTH( $frontier$ ) <  $width$  then
         $frontier \leftarrow INSERT(state, frontier)$ 
    else if SCORE( $state$ ) > SCORE(WORSTOF( $frontier$ ))
         $frontier \leftarrow REMOVE(WORSTOF(frontier))$ 
         $frontier \leftarrow INSERT(state, frontier)$ 
    return  $frontier$ 

```

**Figure 11.14** Beam search decoding.

### 11.7.2 MT corpora

#### parallel corpus

#### Europarl

Machine translation models are trained on a **parallel corpus**, sometimes called a **bitext**, a text that appears in two (or more) languages. Large numbers of parallel corpora are available. Some are governmental; the **Europarl** corpus (Koehn, 2005), extracted from the proceedings of the European Parliament, contains between 400,000 and 2 million sentences each from 21 European languages. The United Nations Parallel Corpus contains on the order of 10 million sentences in the six official languages of the United Nations (Arabic, Chinese, English, French, Russian, Spanish) Ziemska et al. (2016). Other parallel corpora have been made from movie and TV subtitles, like the **OpenSubtitles** corpus (Lison and Tiedemann, 2016), or from general web text, like the **ParaCrawl** corpus of with 223 million sentence pairs between 23 EU languages and English extracted from the CommonCrawl Bañón et al. (2020).

### Sentence alignment

Standard training corpora for MT come as aligned pairs of sentences. When creating new corpora, for example for underresourced languages or new domains, these sentence alignments must be created. Fig. 11.15 gives a sample hypothetical sentence alignment.

E1: "Good morning," said the little prince.	F1: -Bonjour, dit le petit prince.
E2: "Good morning," said the merchant.	F2: -Bonjour, dit le marchand de pilules perfectionnées qui apaisent la soif.
E3: This was a merchant who sold pills that had been perfected to quench thirst.	F3: On en avale une par semaine et l'on n'éprouve plus le besoin de boire.
E4: You just swallow one pill a week and you won't feel the need for anything to drink.	F4: -C'est une grosse économie de temps, dit le marchand.
E5: "They save a huge amount of time," said the merchant.	F5: Les experts ont fait des calculs.
E6: "Fifty-three minutes a week."	F6: On épargne cinquante-trois minutes par semaine.
E7: "If I had fifty-three minutes to spend?" said the little prince to himself.	F7: "Moi, se dit le petit prince, si j'avais cinquante-trois minutes à dépenser, je marcherais tout doucement vers une fontaine..."
E8: "I would take a stroll to a spring of fresh water"	

**Figure 11.15** A sample alignment between sentences in English and French, with sentences extracted from Antoine de Saint-Exupéry's *Le Petit Prince* and a hypothetical translation. Sentence alignment takes sentences  $e_1, \dots, e_n$ , and  $f_1, \dots, f_n$  and finds minimal sets of sentences that are translations of each other, including single sentence mappings like  $(e_1, f_1)$ ,  $(e_4, f_3)$ ,  $(e_5, f_4)$ ,  $(e_6, f_6)$  as well as 2-1 alignments  $(e_2/e_3, f_2)$ ,  $(e_7/e_8, f_7)$ , and null alignments ( $f_5$ ).

Given two documents that are translations of each other, we generally need two steps to produce sentence alignments:

- a cost function that takes a span of source sentences and a span of target sentences and returns a score measuring how likely these spans are to be translations.
- an alignment algorithm that takes these scores to find a good alignment between the documents.

Since it is possible to induce multilingual sentence embeddings (Artetxe and Schwenk, 2019), cosine similarity of such embeddings provides a natural scoring function (Schwenk, 2018). Thompson and Koehn (2019) give the following cost function between two sentences or spans  $x, y$  from the source and target documents respectively:

$$c(x, y) = \frac{1 - \cos(x, y)}{\sum_{s=1}^S 1 - \cos(x, y_s) + \sum_{s=1}^S 1 - \cos(x_s, y)} \quad (11.22)$$

where  $nSents()$  gives the number of sentences (this biases the metric toward many alignments of single sentences instead of aligning very large spans). The denominator helps to normalize the similarities, and so  $x_1, \dots, x_S, y_1, \dots, y_S$ , are randomly selected sentences sampled from the respective documents.

Usually dynamic programming is used as the alignment algorithm (Gale and Church, 1993), in a simple extension of the the minimum edit distance algorithm we introduced in Chapter 2.

Finally, it's helpful to do some corpus cleanup by removing noisy sentence pairs. This can involve handwritten rules to remove low-precision pairs (for example removing sentences that are too long, too short, have different URLs, or even pairs

that are too similar, suggesting that they were copies rather than translations). Or pairs can be ranked by their multilingual embedding cosine score and low-scoring pairs discarded.

### 11.7.3 Backtranslation

We're often short of data for training MT models, since parallel corpora may be limited for particular languages or domains. However, often we can find a large monolingual corpus, to add to the smaller parallel corpora that are available.

**backtranslation**

**Backtranslation** is a way of making use of monolingual corpora in the target language by creating synthetic bitexts. In backtranslation, we train an intermediate target-to-source MT system on the small bitext to translate the monolingual target data to the source language. Now we can add this synthetic bitext (natural target sentences, aligned with MT-produced source sentences) to our training data, and retrain our source-to-target MT model. For example suppose we want to translate from Navajo to English but only have a small Navajo-English bitext, although of course we can find lots of monolingual English data. We use the small bitext to build an MT engine going the other way (from English to Navajo). Once we translate the monolingual English text to Navajo, we can add this synthetic Navajo/English bitext to our training data.

**Monte Carlo search**

Backtranslation has various parameters. One is how we generate the backtranslated data; we can run the decoder in greedy inference, or use beam search. Or we can do sampling, or **Monte Carlo search**. In Monte Carlo decoding, at each timestep, instead of always generating the word with the highest softmax probability, we roll a weighted die, and use it to choose the next word according to its softmax probability. This works just like the sampling algorithm we saw in Chapter 3 for generating random sentences from n-gram language models. Imagine there are only 4 words and the softmax probability distribution at time  $t$  is (*the*: 0.6, *green*: 0.2, *a*: 0.1, *witch*: 0.1). We roll a weighted die, with the 4 sides weighted 0.6, 0.2, 0.1, and 0.1, and chose the word based on which side comes up. Another parameter is the ratio of backtranslated data to natural bitext data; we can choose to upsample the bitext data (include multiple copies of each sentence).

In general backtranslation works surprisingly well; one estimate suggests that a system trained on backtranslated text gets about 2/3 of the gain as would training on the same amount of natural bitext (Edunov et al., 2018).

## 11.8 MT Evaluation

Translations can be evaluated along two dimensions, **adequacy** and **fluency**.

**adequacy**

**adequacy:** how well the translation captures the exact meaning of the source sentence. Sometimes called **faithfulness** or **fidelity**.

**fluency**

**fluency:** how fluent the translation is in the target language (is it grammatical, clear, readable, natural).

Both human and automatic evaluation metrics are used.

### 11.8.1 Using Human Raters to Evaluate MT

The most accurate evaluations use human raters to evaluate each translation along the two dimensions (often these raters are online crowdworkers hired specifically to

evaluate).

For example, along the dimension of **fluency**, we can ask how intelligible, how clear, how readable, or how natural the MT output (the target text) is. We can give the raters a scale, for example, from 1 (totally unintelligible) to 5 (totally intelligible), or 1 to 100, and ask them to rate each sentence or paragraph of the MT output.

We can do the same thing to judge the second dimension, **adequacy**, using raters to assign scores on a scale. If we have bilingual raters, we can give them the source sentence and a proposed target sentence, and rate, on a 5-point or 100-point scale, how much of the information in the source was preserved in the target. If we only have monolingual raters but we have a good human translation of the source text, we can give the monolingual raters the human reference translation and a target machine translation and again rate how much information is preserved. If we use a fine-grained enough scale, we can normalize raters by subtracting the mean from their scores and dividing by the variance.

#### ranking

An alternative is to do **ranking**: give the raters a pair of candidate translations, and ask them which one they prefer.

While humans produce the best evaluations of machine translation output, running a human evaluation can be time consuming and expensive. In the next section we introduce an automatic metric that, while less accurate than human evaluation, is widely used because it can quickly evaluate potential system improvements, or even be used as an automatic loss function for training.

### 11.8.2 Automatic Evaluation: BLEU

The most popular automatic metric for machine translation is called **BLEU** (for BiLingual Evaluation Understudy). BLEU (along with the many alternative metrics (e.g., **NIST**, **TER**, **Precision and Recall**, and **METEOR**) is based on a simple intuition derived from the pioneering work of [Miller and Beebe-Center \(1958\)](#): a good machine translation will tend to contain words and phrases that occur in a human translation of the same sentence.

Consider a test set from a parallel corpus, in which each source sentence has both a gold human target translation and a candidate MT translation we'd like to evaluate. The BLEU metric ranks each MT target sentence by function of the number of *n*-gram overlaps with the human translation.

Figure 11.16 shows an intuition from two candidate translations of a Spanish source sentence, shown with a human reference translation. Note that Candidate 1 shares many more n-grams (in boxes) and especially longer n-grams (in darker boxes) with the reference translations than does Candidate 2.

The intuition in Fig. 11.16 shows a single sentence, but BLEU is actually not a score for a single sentence; it's a score for an entire corpus of candidate translation sentences. More formally, the BLEU score for a corpus of candidate translation sentences is a function of the **n-gram precision** over all the sentences combined with a brevity penalty computed over the corpus as a whole.

What do we mean by n-gram precision? Consider a corpus composed of a single sentence. The unigram precision for this corpus is the percentage of unigram tokens in the candidate translation that also occur in the reference translation, and ditto for bigrams and so on, up to 4-grams. Candidate 1 in Fig. 11.16 has 19 unique unigrams, some of which occur multiple times, for a total of 26 tokens. Of these, 16 unique unigrams, totaling 23 tokens, also occur in the reference translation (3 don't: *voice*, *deposit*, and *actions*). Thus the unigram precision for the Candidate 1 corpus is  $23/26 = .88$ .

<p><b>Source</b></p> <p>la verdad, cuya madre es la historia, émula del tiempo, depósito de las acciones, testigo de lo pasado, ejemplo y aviso de lo presente, advertencia de lo por venir.</p>
<p><b>Reference</b></p> <p>truth, whose mother is history, rival of time, storehouse of deeds, witness for the past, example and counsel for the present, and warning for the future.</p>
<p><b>Candidate 1</b></p> <p>truth, whose mother is history, voice of time, deposit of actions, witness for the past, example and warning for the present, and warning for the future</p>
<p><b>Candidate 2</b></p> <p>the truth which mother is the history émula of the time, deposition of the shares, witness of the past, example and notice of the present, warning of it for coming</p>

**Figure 11.16** Intuition for BLEU: One of two candidate translations of a Spanish sentence shares more n-grams, and especially longer n-grams, with the reference human translation.

We extend this unigram metric to a whole corpus of many sentences as follows. For the numerator, we sum for each sentence the counts of all the unigram types that also occur in the reference translation, and then sum those counts over all sentences. The denominator is the total of the counts of all unigrams in all candidate sentences. We compute this n-gram precision for unigrams, bigrams, trigrams, and 4-grams. The n-gram precisions  $\text{prec}_n$  of a whole corpus of candidate sentences are thus:

$$\text{prec}_n = \frac{\sum_{C \in \{\text{Candidates}\}} \sum_{n\text{-gram} \in C} \text{Count}_{\text{match}}(n\text{-gram})}{\sum_{C' \in \{\text{Candidates}\}} \sum_{n\text{-gram}' \in C'} \text{Count}(n\text{-gram}')} \quad (11.23)$$

BLEU combines these four  $n$ -gram precisions by taking their geometric mean.

In addition, BLEU penalizes candidate translations that are too short. Imagine our machine translation engine returned the following terrible candidate translation 3 for the example in Fig. 11.16:

(11.24) *for the*

Because the words *for* and *the* and the bigram *for the* all appear in the human reference, n-gram precision alone will assign candidate 3 a great score, since it has perfect unigram and bigram precisions of 1.0!

One option for dealing with this problem is to combine *recall* with precision, but BLEU chooses another option: adding a brevity penalty over the whole corpus, penalizing a system that produces translations that are on average shorter than the reference translations. Let  $\text{sys\_len}$  be the sum of the length of all the candidate translation sentences, and  $\text{ref\_len}$  be the sum of the length of all the reference translation sentences. If the candidate translations are shorter than the reference, we assign a brevity penalty BP that is a function of their ratio:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{BP} &= \min \left( 1, \exp \left( 1 - \frac{\text{ref\_len}}{\text{sys\_len}} \right) \right) \\ \text{BLEU} &= \text{BP} \times \left( \prod_{n=1}^4 \text{prec}_n \right)^{\frac{1}{4}} \end{aligned} \quad (11.25)$$

### Advanced details of BLEU

The above description was simplified in a number of ways. BLEU actually uses a slightly different version of n-gram precision than the one in Eq. 11.23. Eq. 11.23 has a flaw that rewards candidates that have extra repeated words. Figure 11.17 shows an example of a pathological candidate sentence composed of 7 instances of the single word *the*, leading to a unigram precision of 7/7!

<b>Candidate:</b>	the	the	the	the	the	the	the
<b>Reference 1:</b>	the	cat	is	on	the	mat	
<b>Reference 2:</b>	there	is	a	cat	on	the	mat

**Figure 11.17** A pathological example showing why BLEU uses a modified precision metric. Unigram precision would be unreasonably high (7/7). Modified unigram precision is appropriately low (2/7).

modified  
n-gram  
precision

To avoid this problem, BLEU uses a **modified n-gram precision** metric. We first count the maximum number of times a word is used in any single reference translation. The count of each *candidate* word is then clipped by this maximum *reference* count. Thus, the modified unigram precision in the example in Fig. 11.17 would be 2/7, since Reference 1 has a maximum of 2 *thes*.

To compute a score over the whole test set, BLEU first computes the  $N$ -gram matches for each sentence and sums the clipped counts over all the candidate sentences, then divides by the total number of candidate  $N$ -grams in the test set. If we define the function  $\text{Count}_{\text{match\_clipped}}$  to mean “the clipped count of all n-grams that match the reference,” the real  $\text{prec}_n$  of a whole corpus of candidate sentences that BLEU uses are:

$$\text{prec}_n = \frac{\sum_{C \in \{\text{Candidates}\}} \sum_{n\text{-gram} \in C} \text{Count}_{\text{match\_clipped}}(n\text{-gram})}{\sum_{C' \in \{\text{Candidates}\}} \sum_{n\text{-gram}' \in C'} \text{Count}(n\text{-gram}') \quad (11.26)}$$

BLEU also works fine if we have multiple human reference translations for a source sentence. In fact BLEU works better in this situation, since a source sentence can be legitimately translated in many ways and n-gram precision will hence be more robust. We just match an n-gram if it occurs in any of the references. And for the brevity penalty, we choose for each candidate sentence the reference sentence that is the closest in length to compute the `ref_len`. But in practice most translation corpora only have a single human translation to compare against.

Finally, implementing BLEU requires standardizing on many details of smoothing and tokenization; for this reason it is recommended to use standard implementations like SACREBLEU (Post, 2018) rather than trying to implement BLEU from scratch.

### Statistical Significance Testing for BLEU

BLEU scores are mainly used to compare two systems, with the goal of answering questions like: did the special new algorithm we invented improve our MT system? To know if the difference between the BLEU scores of two MT systems is a significant difference, we use the paired bootstrap test, or the similar randomization test.

To get a confidence interval on a single BLEU score using the bootstrap test, recall from Section 4.9 that we take our test set (or devset) and create thousands of pseudo-testsets by repeatedly sampling with replacement from the original test set. We now compute the BLEU score of each of the pseudo-testsets. If we drop the top 2.5% and bottom 2.5% of the scores, the remaining scores will give us the 95% confidence interval for the BLEU score of our system.

To compare two MT systems A and B, we draw the same set of pseudo-testsets, and compute the BLEU scores for each of them. We then compute the percentage of pseudo-test-sets in which A has a higher BLEU score than B.

### BLEU: Limitations

While automatic metrics like BLEU are useful, they have important limitations. BLEU is very local: a large phrase that is moved around might not change the BLEU score at all, and BLEU can't evaluate cross-sentence properties of a document like its discourse coherence (Chapter 22). BLEU and similar automatic metrics also do poorly at comparing very different kinds of systems, such as comparing human-aided translation against machine translation, or different machine translation architectures against each other (Callison-Burch et al., 2006). Such automatic metrics are probably most appropriate when evaluating changes to a single system.

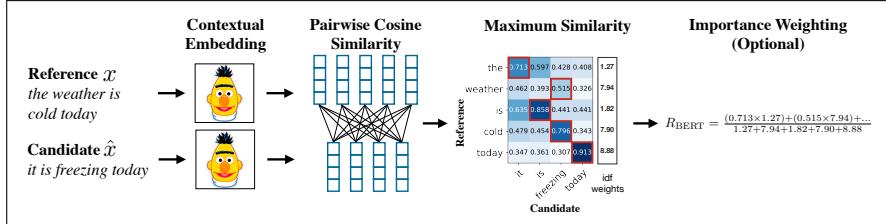
### 11.8.3 Automatic Evaluation: Embedding-Based Methods

The BLEU metric is based on measuring the exact word or n-grams a human reference and candidate machine translation have in common. However, this criterion is overly strict, since a good translation may use alternate words or paraphrases. A solution pioneered in early metrics like METEOR (Banerjee and Lavie, 2005) was to allow synonyms to match between the reference  $x$  and candidate  $\tilde{x}$ . More recent metrics use BERT or other embeddings to implement this intuition.

For example, in some situations we might have datasets that have human assessments of translation quality. Such datasets consists of tuples  $(x, \tilde{x}, r)$ , where  $x = (x_1, \dots, x_n)$  is a reference translation,  $\tilde{x} = (\tilde{x}_1, \dots, \tilde{x}_m)$  is a candidate machine translation, and  $r \in \mathbb{R}$  is a human rating that expresses the quality of  $\tilde{x}$  with respect to  $x$ . Given such data, algorithms like BLEURT (Sellam et al., 2020) train a predictor on the human-labeled datasets, by passing  $x$  and  $\tilde{x}$  through a version of BERT (trained with extra pretraining, and then fine-tuned on the human-labeled sentences), followed by a linear layer that is trained to predict  $r$ . The output of such models correlates highly with human labels.

In other cases, however, we don't have such human-labeled datasets. In that case we can measure the similarity of  $x$  and  $\tilde{x}$  by the similarity of their embeddings. The BERTSCORE algorithm (Zhang et al., 2020) shown in Fig. 11.18, for example, passes the reference  $x$  and the candidate  $\tilde{x}$  through BERT, computing a BERT embedding for each token  $x_i$  and  $\tilde{x}_j$ . Each pair of tokens  $(x_i, \tilde{x}_j)$  is scored by its cosine  $\frac{x_i \cdot \tilde{x}_j}{\|x_i\| \|\tilde{x}_j\|}$ . Each token in  $x$  is matched to a token in  $\tilde{x}$  to compute recall, and each token in  $\tilde{x}$  is matched to a token in  $x$  to compute precision (with each token greedily matched to the most similar token in the corresponding sentence). BERTSCORE provides precision and recall (and hence  $F_1$ ):

$$R_{\text{BERT}} = \frac{1}{|x|} \sum_{x_i \in x} \max_{\tilde{x}_j \in \tilde{x}} x_i \cdot \tilde{x}_j \quad P_{\text{BERT}} = \frac{1}{|\tilde{x}|} \sum_{\tilde{x}_j \in \tilde{x}} \max_{x_i \in x} x_i \cdot \tilde{x}_j \quad (11.27)$$



**Figure 11.18** The computation of BERTSCORE recall from reference  $x$  and candidate  $\hat{x}$ , from Figure 1 in Zhang et al. (2020). This version shows an extended version of the metric in which tokens are also weighted by their idf values.

## 11.9 Bias and Ethical Issues

Machine translation raises many of the same ethical issues that we've discussed in earlier chapters. For example, consider MT systems translating from Hungarian (which has the gender neutral pronoun  $\tilde{o}$ ) or Spanish (which often drops pronouns) into English (in which pronouns are obligatory, and they have grammatical gender). When translating a reference to a person described without specified gender, MT systems often default to male gender (Schiebinger 2014, Prates et al. 2019). And MT systems often assign gender according to culture stereotypes of the sort we saw in Section 6.11. Fig. 11.19 shows examples from (Prates et al., 2019), in which Hungarian gender-neutral  $\tilde{o}$  is a nurse is translated with *she*, but gender-neutral  $\tilde{o}$  is a CEO is translated with *he*. Prates et al. (2019) find that these stereotypes can't completely be accounted for by gender bias in US labor statistics, because the biases are **amplified** by MT systems, with pronouns being mapped to male or female gender with a probability higher than if the mapping was based on actual labor employment statistics.

Hungarian (gender neutral) source	English MT output
$\tilde{o}$ egy ápoló	she is a nurse
$\tilde{o}$ egy tudós	he is a scientist
$\tilde{o}$ egy mérnök	he is an engineer
$\tilde{o}$ egy pék	he is a baker
$\tilde{o}$ egy tanár	she is a teacher
$\tilde{o}$ egy vesküvőszervező	she is a wedding organizer
$\tilde{o}$ egy vezérigazgató	he is a CEO

**Figure 11.19** When translating from gender-neutral languages like Hungarian into English, current MT systems interpret people from traditionally male-dominated occupations as male, and traditionally female-dominated occupations as female (Prates et al., 2019).

Similarly, a recent challenge set, the WinoMT dataset (Stanovsky et al., 2019) shows that MT systems perform worse when they are asked to translate sentences that describe people with non-stereotypical gender roles, like "The doctor asked the nurse to help her in the operation".

Many open ethical issues in MT require further research. One is the need for better metrics for knowing what our systems don't know. MT systems can be used in urgent situations where human translators may be unavailable or delayed: in medical domains, to help translate when patients and doctors don't speak the same language, or in legal domains, to help judges or lawyers communicate with witnesses or defendants. In order to 'do no harm', systems need ways to assign **confidence** values

confidence

to candidate translations, so they can abstain from giving incorrect translations that may cause harm.

**low-resourced languages**

Another is the need for low-resource algorithms that can do translation to and from the vast majority of the world's languages, which do not have large parallel texts available for training. This problem is exacerbated by the fact that cross-lingual transfer and multilingual approaches to MT tend to focus on the case where one of the languages is English ([Anastasopoulos and Neubig, 2020](#)). [V et al. \(2020\)](#) propose a participatory design process to encourage content creators, curators, and language technologists who speak these **low-resourced languages** to participate in development of MT algorithms. Their method uses online groups, mentoring, and online infrastructure, and they report on a case study on developing MT algorithms for low-resource African languages.

## 11.10 Summary

**Machine translation** is one of the most widely used applications of NLP, and the encoder-decoder model, first developed for MT is a key tool that has applications throughout NLP.

- Languages have **divergences**, both structural and lexical, that make translation difficult.
- The linguistic field of **typology** investigates some of these differences; languages can be classified by their position along typological dimensions like whether verbs precede their objects.
- **Encoder-decoder** networks are composed of an **encoder** network that takes an input sequence and creates a contextualized representation of it, the **context**. This context representation is then passed to a **decoder** which generates a task-specific output sequence.
- The **attention mechanism** enriches the context vector to allowing the decoder to view information from all the hidden states of the encoder, not just the last hidden state.
- The encoder-decoder architecture can be implemented by RNNs or by Transformers.
- For the decoder, choosing the single most probable token to generate at each step is called **greedy** decoding.
- In **beam search**, instead of choosing the best token to generate at each timestep, we keep  $k$  possible tokens at each step. This fixed-size memory footprint  $k$  is called the **beam width**.
- Machine translation models are trained on a **parallel corpus**, sometimes called a **bitext**, a text that appears in two (or more) languages.
- **Backtranslation** is a way of making use of monolingual corpora in the target language by running a pilot MT engine backwards to create synthetic bitexts.
- MT is evaluated by measuring a translation's **adequacy** (how well it captures the meaning of the source sentence) and **fluency** (how fluent or natural it is in the target language). Human evaluation is the gold standard, but automatic evaluation metrics like **BLEU**, which measure word or n-gram overlap with human translations, or more recent metrics based on embedding similarity, are also commonly used.

## Bibliographical and Historical Notes

MT was proposed seriously by the late 1940s, soon after the birth of the computer ([Weaver, 1955](#)). In 1954, the first public demonstration of an MT system prototype ([Dostert, 1955](#)) led to great excitement in the press ([Hutchins, 1997](#)). The next decade saw a great flowering of ideas, prefiguring most subsequent developments. But this work was ahead of its time—implementations were limited by, for example, the fact that pending the development of disks there was no good way to store dictionary information.

As high-quality MT proved elusive ([Bar-Hillel, 1960](#)), there grew a consensus on the need for better evaluation and more basic research in the new fields of formal and computational linguistics. This consensus culminated in the famous ALPAC (Automatic Language Processing Advisory Committee) report of 1966 ([Pierce et al., 1966](#)) that led in the mid 1960s to a dramatic cut in funding for MT in the US. As MT research lost academic respectability, the Association for Machine Translation and Computational Linguistics dropped MT from its name. Some MT developers, however, persevered, and there were early industrial engines like Systran, as well as early MT systems like Météo, which translated weather forecasts from English to French ([Chandioux, 1976](#)).

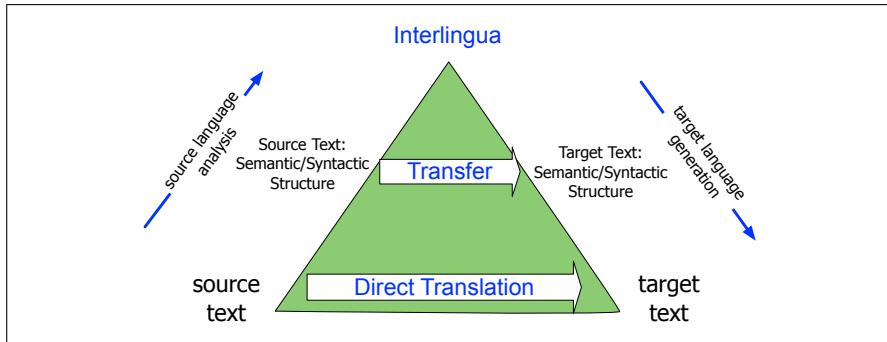
In early years, the space of MT architectures spanned three general models. In perhaps the earliest developed method, **direct translation**, the system proceeds word-by-word through the source-language text, translating each word incrementally. Direct translation uses a large bilingual dictionary, each of whose entries is a small program with the job of translating one word. In **transfer** approaches, we first parse the input text and then apply rules to transform the source-language parse into a target language parse. We then generate the target language sentence from the parse tree. In **interlingua** approaches, we analyze the source language text into some abstract meaning representation, called an **interlingua**. We then generate into the target language from this interlingual representation. A common way to visualize these three early approaches was the **Vauquois triangle** shown in Fig. 11.20. The triangle shows the increasing depth of analysis required (on both the analysis and generation end) as we move from the direct approach through transfer approaches to interlingual approaches. In addition, it shows the decreasing amount of transfer knowledge needed as we move up the triangle, from huge amounts of transfer at the direct level (almost all knowledge is transfer knowledge for each word) through transfer (transfer rules only for parse trees or thematic roles) through interlingua (no specific transfer knowledge). We can view the encoder-decoder network as an interlingual approach, with attention acting as an integration of direct and transfer, allowing words or their representations to be directly accessed by the decoder.

Statistical methods began to be applied around 1990, enabled first by the development of large bilingual corpora like the **Hansard** corpus of the proceedings of the Canadian Parliament, which are kept in both French and English, and then by the growth of the Web. Early on, a number of researchers showed that it was possible to extract pairs of aligned sentences from bilingual corpora, using words or simple cues like sentence length ([Kay and Röscheisen 1988](#), [Gale and Church 1991](#), [Gale and Church 1993](#), [Kay and Röscheisen 1993](#)).

At the same time, the IBM group, drawing directly on the **noisy channel** model for speech recognition, proposed algorithms for statistical MT, algorithms that became known as **IBM Models 1 through 5**, implemented in the **Candide** system.

Vauquois  
triangle

IBM Models  
Candide



**Figure 11.20** The Vauquois (1968) triangle.

The algorithms (except for the decoder) were published in full detail—encouraged by the US government which had partially funded the work—which gave them a huge impact on the research community (Brown et al. 1990, Brown et al. 1993). By the turn of the century, most academic research on machine translation used the statistical noisy channel model. Progress was made hugely easier by the development of publicly available toolkits, like the GIZA toolkit (Och and Ney, 2003) which implements IBM models 1–5 as well as the HMM alignment model.

Around the turn of the century, an extended approach, called **phrase-based translation** was developed, which was based on inducing translations for phrase-pairs (Och 1998, Marcu and Wong 2002, Koehn et al. (2003), Och and Ney 2004, Deng and Byrne 2005, *inter alia*). A log linear formulation (Och and Ney, 2004) was trained to directly optimize evaluation metrics like BLEU in a method known as **Minimum Error Rate Training**, or **MERT** (Och, 2003), also drawing from speech recognition models (Chou et al., 1993). Popular toolkits were developed like **Moses** (Koehn et al. 2006, Zens and Ney 2007).

There were also approaches around the turn of the century that were based on syntactic structure (Chapter 12). Models based on **transduction grammars** (also called **synchronous grammars**) assign a parallel syntactic tree structure to a pair of sentences in different languages, with the goal of translating the sentences by applying reordering operations on the trees. From a generative perspective, we can view a transduction grammar as generating pairs of aligned sentences in two languages. Some of the most widely used models included the **inversion transduction grammar** (Wu, 1996) and synchronous context-free grammars (Chiang, 2005),

**MODERN HISTORY OF encoder-decoder approach HERE; (Kalchbrenner and Blunsom, 2013), (Cho et al., 2014), (Sutskever et al., 2014)**, etc

Beam-search has an interesting relationship with human language processing; (Meister et al., 2020) show that beam search enforces the cognitive property of **uniform information density** in text. Uniform information density is the hypothesis that human language processors tend to prefer to distribute information equally across the sentence (Jaeger and Levy, 2007).

Research on evaluation of machine translation began quite early. Miller and Beebe-Center (1958) proposed a number of methods drawing on work in psycholinguistics. These included the use of cloze and Shannon tasks to measure intelligibility as well as a metric of edit distance from a human translation, the intuition that underlies all modern automatic evaluation metrics like BLEU. The ALPAC report included an early evaluation study conducted by John Carroll that was extremely influential (Pierce et al., 1966, Appendix 10). Carroll proposed distinct measures for fidelity and intelligibility, and had raters score them subjectively on 9-point scales.

More recent work on evaluation has focused on coming up with automatic metrics, include the work on BLEU discussed in Section 11.8.2 (Papineni et al., 2002), as well as related measures like **NIST** (Doddington, 2002), **TER** (**T**ranslation **E**rror **R**ate) (Snover et al., 2006), **Precision and Recall** (Turian et al., 2003), and **METEOR** (Banerjee and Lavie, 2005).

Good surveys of the early history of MT are Hutchins (1986) and (1997). Nirenburg et al. (2002) is a collection of early readings in MT.

See Croft (1990) or Comrie (1989) for introductions to typology.

## Exercises

*If on a winter's night a traveler* by Italo Calvino  
*Nuclear and Radiochemistry* by Gerhart Friedlander et al.  
*The Fire Next Time* by James Baldwin  
*A Tad Overweight, but Violet Eyes to Die For* by G. B. Trudeau  
*Sometimes a Great Notion* by Ken Kesey  
*Dancer from the Dance* by Andrew Holleran

Six books in English whose titles are not constituents, from [Pullum \(1991, p. 195\)](#)

The study of grammar has an ancient pedigree; Panini's grammar of Sanskrit was written over two thousand years ago and is still referenced today in teaching **syntax**. And our word **syntax** comes from the Greek *sýntaxis*, meaning “setting out together or arrangement”, and refers to the way words are arranged together. We have seen various syntactic notions in previous chapters: ordering of sequences of words (Chapter 2), probabilities for these word sequences (Chapter 3), and the use of part-of-speech categories as a grammatical equivalence class for words (Chapter 8). In this chapter and the next three we introduce a variety of syntactic phenomena that go well beyond these simpler approaches, together with formal models for capturing them in a computationally useful manner.

The bulk of this chapter is devoted to context-free grammars. Context-free grammars are the backbone of many formal models of the syntax of natural language (and, for that matter, of computer languages). As such, they play a role in many computational applications, including grammar checking, semantic interpretation, dialogue understanding, and machine translation. They are powerful enough to express sophisticated relations among the words in a sentence, yet computationally tractable enough that efficient algorithms exist for parsing sentences with them (as we show in Chapter 13). And in Chapter 16 we show how they provide a systematic framework for semantic interpretation. Here we also introduce the concept of lexicalized grammars, focusing on one example, **combinatory categorial grammar**, or CCG.

In Chapter 14 we introduce a formal model of grammar called **syntactic dependencies** that is an alternative to these constituency grammars, and we'll give algorithms for **dependency parsing**. Both constituency and dependency formalisms are important for language processing.

Finally, we provide a brief overview of the grammar of English, illustrated from a domain with relatively simple sentences called ATIS (Air Traffic Information System) ([Hemphill et al., 1990](#)). ATIS systems were an early spoken language system for users to book flights, by expressing sentences like *I'd like to fly to Atlanta*.

## 12.1 Constituency

**noun phrase**

Syntactic constituency is the idea that groups of words can behave as single units, or constituents. Part of developing a grammar involves building an inventory of the constituents in the language. How do words group together in English? Consider the **noun phrase**, a sequence of words surrounding at least one noun. Here are some examples of noun phrases (thanks to Damon Runyon):

Harry the Horse	a high-class spot such as Mindy's
the Broadway coppers	the reason he comes into the Hot Box
they	three parties from Brooklyn

What evidence do we have that these words group together (or “form constituents”)? One piece of evidence is that they can all appear in similar syntactic environments, for example, before a verb.

three parties from Brooklyn *arrive*...  
 a high-class spot such as Mindy's *attracts*...  
 the Broadway coppers *love*...  
 they *sit*

But while the whole noun phrase can occur before a verb, this is not true of each of the individual words that make up a noun phrase. The following are not grammatical sentences of English (recall that we use an asterisk (\*) to mark fragments that are not grammatical English sentences):

\*from *arrive*...   \*as *attracts*...  
 \*the *is*...        \*spot *sat*...

Thus, to correctly describe facts about the ordering of these words in English, we must be able to say things like “*Noun Phrases can occur before verbs*”.

**preposed**  
**postposed**

Other kinds of evidence for constituency come from what are called **preposed** or **postposed** constructions. For example, the prepositional phrase *on September seventeenth* can be placed in a number of different locations in the following examples, including at the beginning (preposed) or at the end (postposed):

*On September seventeenth*, I'd like to fly from Atlanta to Denver  
 I'd like to fly *on September seventeenth* from Atlanta to Denver  
 I'd like to fly from Atlanta to Denver *on September seventeenth*

But again, while the entire phrase can be placed differently, the individual words making up the phrase cannot be:

\*On September, I'd like to fly seventeenth from Atlanta to Denver  
 \*On I'd like to fly September seventeenth from Atlanta to Denver  
 \*I'd like to fly on September from Atlanta to Denver seventeenth

## 12.2 Context-Free Grammars

**CFG**

The most widely used formal system for modeling constituent structure in English and other natural languages is the **Context-Free Grammar**, or **CFG**. Context-

free grammars are also called **Phrase-Structure Grammars**, and the formalism is equivalent to **Backus-Naur Form**, or **BNF**. The idea of basing a grammar on constituent structure dates back to the psychologist Wilhelm Wundt (1900) but was not formalized until Chomsky (1956) and, independently, Backus (1959).

**rules**

A context-free grammar consists of a set of **rules** or **productions**, each of which expresses the ways that symbols of the language can be grouped and ordered together, and a **lexicon** of words and symbols. For example, the following productions express that an **NP** (or **noun phrase**) can be composed of either a *ProperNoun* or a determiner (*Det*) followed by a *Nominal*; a *Nominal* in turn can consist of one or more *Nouns*.

$$\begin{aligned} NP &\rightarrow Det \ Nominal \\ NP &\rightarrow ProperNoun \\ Nominal &\rightarrow Noun \mid Nominal\ Noun \end{aligned}$$

Context-free rules can be hierarchically embedded, so we can combine the previous rules with others, like the following, that express facts about the lexicon:

$$\begin{aligned} Det &\rightarrow a \\ Det &\rightarrow the \\ Noun &\rightarrow flight \end{aligned}$$

The symbols that are used in a CFG are divided into two classes. The symbols that correspond to words in the language (“the”, “nightclub”) are called **terminal** symbols; the lexicon is the set of rules that introduce these terminal symbols. The symbols that express abstractions over these terminals are called **non-terminals**. In each context-free rule, the item to the right of the arrow ( $\rightarrow$ ) is an ordered list of one or more terminals and non-terminals; to the left of the arrow is a single non-terminal symbol expressing some cluster or generalization. The non-terminal associated with each word in the lexicon is its lexical category, or part of speech.

A CFG can be thought of in two ways: as a device for generating sentences and as a device for assigning a structure to a given sentence. Viewing a CFG as a generator, we can read the  $\rightarrow$  arrow as “rewrite the symbol on the left with the string of symbols on the right”.

So starting from the symbol:

we can use our first rule to rewrite *NP* as:

and then rewrite *Nominal* as:

and finally rewrite these parts-of-speech as:

*NP*

*Det Nominal*

*Det Noun*

*a flight*

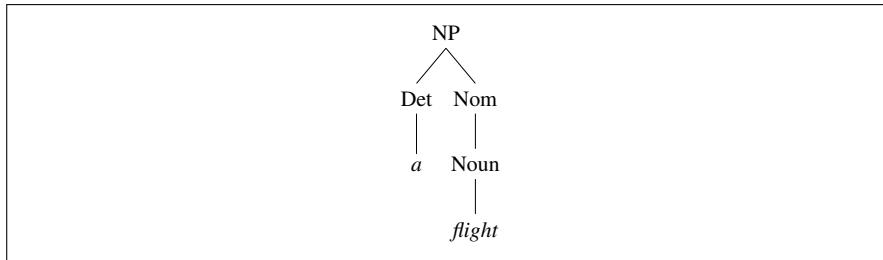
We say the string *a flight* can be derived from the non-terminal *NP*. Thus, a CFG can be used to generate a set of strings. This sequence of rule expansions is called a **derivation** of the string of words. It is common to represent a derivation by a **parse tree** (commonly shown inverted with the root at the top). Figure 12.1 shows the tree representation of this derivation.

**dominates**

In the parse tree shown in Fig. 12.1, we can say that the node *NP* **dominates** all the nodes in the tree (*Det*, *Nom*, *Noun*, *a*, *flight*). We can say further that it immediately dominates the nodes *Det* and *Nom*.

**start symbol**

The formal language defined by a CFG is the set of strings that are derivable from the designated **start symbol**. Each grammar must have one designated start symbol, which is often called *S*. Since context-free grammars are often used to define sentences, *S* is usually interpreted as the “sentence” node, and the set of strings that are derivable from *S* is the set of sentences in some simplified version of English.

**Figure 12.1** A parse tree for “a flight”.

**verb phrase** Let’s add a few additional rules to our inventory. The following rule expresses the fact that a sentence can consist of a noun phrase followed by a **verb phrase**:

$$S \rightarrow NP\ VP \quad I \text{ prefer a morning flight}$$

A verb phrase in English consists of a verb followed by assorted other things; for example, one kind of verb phrase consists of a verb followed by a noun phrase:

$$VP \rightarrow Verb\ NP \quad \text{prefer a morning flight}$$

Or the verb may be followed by a noun phrase and a prepositional phrase:

$$VP \rightarrow Verb\ NP\ PP \quad \text{leave Boston in the morning}$$

Or the verb phrase may have a verb followed by a prepositional phrase alone:

$$VP \rightarrow Verb\ PP \quad \text{leaving on Thursday}$$

A prepositional phrase generally has a preposition followed by a noun phrase. For example, a common type of prepositional phrase in the ATIS corpus is used to indicate location or direction:

$$PP \rightarrow Preposition\ NP \quad \text{from Los Angeles}$$

The *NP* inside a *PP* need not be a location; *PPs* are often used with times and dates, and with other nouns as well; they can be arbitrarily complex. Here are ten examples from the ATIS corpus:

to Seattle	on these flights
in Minneapolis	about the ground transportation in Chicago
on Wednesday	of the round trip flight on United Airlines
in the evening	of the AP fifty seven flight
on the ninth of July	with a stopover in Nashville

Figure 12.2 gives a sample lexicon, and Fig. 12.3 summarizes the grammar rules we’ve seen so far, which we’ll call  $\mathcal{L}_0$ . Note that we can use the or-symbol | to indicate that a non-terminal has alternate possible expansions.

We can use this grammar to generate sentences of this “ATIS-language”. We start with *S*, expand it to *NP VP*, then choose a random expansion of *NP* (let’s say, to *I*), and a random expansion of *VP* (let’s say, to *Verb NP*), and so on until we generate the string *I prefer a morning flight*. Figure 12.4 shows a parse tree that represents a complete derivation of *I prefer a morning flight*.

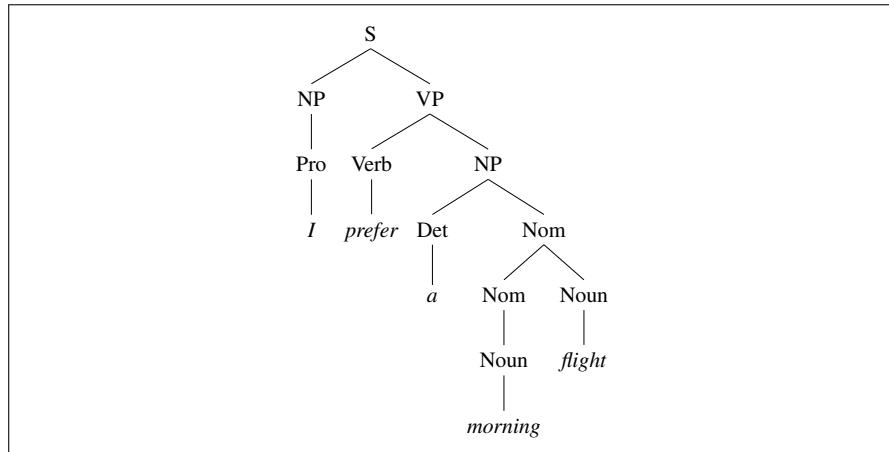
**bracketed notation**

We can also represent a parse tree in a more compact format called **bracketed notation**; here is the bracketed representation of the parse tree of Fig. 12.4:

<i>Noun</i> → flights   breeze   trip   morning
<i>Verb</i> → is   prefer   like   need   want   fly
<i>Adjective</i> → cheapest   non-stop   first   latest   other   direct
<i>Pronoun</i> → me   I   you   it
<i>Proper-Noun</i> → Alaska   Baltimore   Los Angeles   Chicago   United   American
<i>Determiner</i> → the   a   an   this   these   that
<i>Preposition</i> → from   to   on   near
<i>Conjunction</i> → and   or   but

**Figure 12.2** The lexicon for  $\mathcal{L}_0$ .

Grammar Rules	Examples
$S \rightarrow NP VP$	I + want a morning flight
$NP \rightarrow Pronoun$	I
Proper-Noun	Los Angeles
Det Nominal	a + flight
$Nominal \rightarrow Nominal Noun$	morning + flight
Noun	flights
$VP \rightarrow Verb$	do
Verb NP	want + a flight
Verb NP PP	leave + Boston + in the morning
Verb PP	leaving + on Thursday
$PP \rightarrow Preposition NP$	from + Los Angeles

**Figure 12.3** The grammar for  $\mathcal{L}_0$ , with example phrases for each rule.**Figure 12.4** The parse tree for “I prefer a morning flight” according to grammar  $\mathcal{L}_0$ .

(12.1) [S [NP [Pro I]] [VP [V prefer] [NP [Det a] [Nom [N morning] [Nom [N flight]]]]]]]

A CFG like that of  $\mathcal{L}_0$  defines a formal language. We saw in Chapter 2 that a formal language is a set of strings. Sentences (strings of words) that can be derived by a grammar are in the formal language defined by that grammar, and are called **grammatical** sentences. Sentences that cannot be derived by a given formal grammar are not in the language defined by that grammar and are referred to as **ungrammatical**.

grammatical  
ungrammatical

generative grammar

This hard line between “in” and “out” characterizes all formal languages but is only a very simplified model of how natural languages really work. This is because determining whether a given sentence is part of a given natural language (say, English) often depends on the context. In linguistics, the use of formal languages to model natural languages is called **generative grammar** since the language is defined by the set of possible sentences “generated” by the grammar.

### 12.2.1 Formal Definition of Context-Free Grammar

We conclude this section with a quick, formal description of a context-free grammar and the language it generates. A context-free grammar  $G$  is defined by four parameters:  $N, \Sigma, R, S$  (technically this is a “4-tuple”).

$N$	a set of <b>non-terminal symbols</b> (or <b>variables</b> )
$\Sigma$	a set of <b>terminal symbols</b> (disjoint from $N$ )
$R$	a set of <b>rules</b> or productions, each of the form $A \rightarrow \beta$ , where $A$ is a non-terminal, $\beta$ is a string of symbols from the infinite set of strings $(\Sigma \cup N)^*$
$S$	a designated <b>start symbol</b> and a member of $N$

For the remainder of the book we adhere to the following conventions when discussing the formal properties of context-free grammars (as opposed to explaining particular facts about English or other languages).

Capital letters like $A, B$ , and $S$	Non-terminals
$S$	The start symbol
Lower-case Greek letters like $\alpha, \beta$ , and $\gamma$	Strings drawn from $(\Sigma \cup N)^*$
Lower-case Roman letters like $u, v$ , and $w$	Strings of terminals

A language is defined through the concept of derivation. One string derives another one if it can be rewritten as the second one by some series of rule applications. More formally, following [Hopcroft and Ullman \(1979\)](#),

**directly derives** if  $A \rightarrow \beta$  is a production of  $R$  and  $\alpha$  and  $\gamma$  are any strings in the set  $(\Sigma \cup N)^*$ , then we say that  $\alpha A \gamma$  **directly derives**  $\alpha \beta \gamma$ , or  $\alpha A \gamma \Rightarrow \alpha \beta \gamma$ .

Derivation is then a generalization of direct derivation:

Let  $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_m$  be strings in  $(\Sigma \cup N)^*$ ,  $m \geq 1$ , such that

$$\alpha_1 \Rightarrow \alpha_2, \alpha_2 \Rightarrow \alpha_3, \dots, \alpha_{m-1} \Rightarrow \alpha_m$$

**derives** We say that  $\alpha_1$  **derives**  $\alpha_m$ , or  $\alpha_1 \stackrel{*}{\Rightarrow} \alpha_m$ .

We can then formally define the language  $\mathcal{L}_G$  generated by a grammar  $G$  as the set of strings composed of terminal symbols that can be derived from the designated start symbol  $S$ .

$$\mathcal{L}_G = \{w | w \text{ is in } \Sigma^* \text{ and } S \stackrel{*}{\Rightarrow} w\}$$

syntactic parsing

The problem of mapping from a string of words to its parse tree is called **syntactic parsing**; we define algorithms for constituency parsing in Chapter 13.

## 12.3 Some Grammar Rules for English

In this section, we introduce a few more aspects of the phrase structure of English; for consistency we will continue to focus on sentences from the ATIS domain. Because of space limitations, our discussion is necessarily limited to highlights. Readers are strongly advised to consult a good reference grammar of English, such as Huddleston and Pullum (2002).

### 12.3.1 Sentence-Level Constructions

In the small grammar  $\mathcal{L}_0$ , we provided only one sentence-level construction for declarative sentences like *I prefer a morning flight*. Among the large number of constructions for English sentences, four are particularly common and important: declaratives, imperatives, yes-no questions, and wh-questions.

**declarative**

Sentences with **declarative** structure have a subject noun phrase followed by a verb phrase, like “I prefer a morning flight”. Sentences with this structure have a great number of different uses that we follow up on in Chapter 24. Here are a number of examples from the ATIS domain:

I want a flight from Ontario to Chicago  
 The flight should be eleven a.m. tomorrow  
 The return flight should leave at around seven p.m.

**imperative**

Sentences with **imperative** structure often begin with a verb phrase and have no subject. They are called imperative because they are almost always used for commands and suggestions; in the ATIS domain they are commands to the system.

Show the lowest fare  
 Give me Sunday’s flights arriving in Las Vegas from New York City  
 List all flights between five and seven p.m.

We can model this sentence structure with another rule for the expansion of  $S$ :

$$S \rightarrow VP$$

**yes-no question**

Sentences with **yes-no question** structure are often (though not always) used to ask questions; they begin with an auxiliary verb, followed by a subject  $NP$ , followed by a  $VP$ . Here are some examples. Note that the third example is not a question at all but a request; Chapter 24 discusses the uses of these question forms to perform different **pragmatic** functions such as asking, requesting, or suggesting.

Do any of these flights have stops?  
 Does American’s flight eighteen twenty five serve dinner?  
 Can you give me the same information for United?

Here’s the rule:

$$S \rightarrow Aux\ NP\ VP$$

**wh-phrase**  
**wh-word**

The most complex sentence-level structures we examine here are the various **wh-** structures. These are so named because one of their constituents is a **wh-phrase**, that is, one that includes a **wh-word** (*who, whose, when, where, what, which, how, why*). These may be broadly grouped into two classes of sentence-level structures. The **wh-subject-question** structure is identical to the declarative structure, except that the first noun phrase contains some wh-word.

What airlines fly from Burbank to Denver?  
 Which flights depart Burbank after noon and arrive in Denver by six p.m?  
 Whose flights serve breakfast?

Here is a rule. Exercise 12.7 discusses rules for the constituents that make up the *Wh-NP*.

$$S \rightarrow Wh\text{-}NP VP$$

#### **wh-non-subject-question**

In the **wh-non-subject-question** structure, the wh-phrase is not the subject of the sentence, and so the sentence includes another subject. In these types of sentences the auxiliary appears before the subject *NP*, just as in the yes-no question structures. Here is an example followed by a sample rule:

What flights do you have from Burbank to Tacoma Washington?

$$S \rightarrow Wh\text{-}NP Aux NP VP$$

#### **long-distance dependencies**

Constructions like the **wh-non-subject-question** contain what are called **long-distance dependencies** because the *Wh-NP what flights* is far away from the predicate that it is semantically related to, the main verb *have* in the *VP*. In some models of parsing and understanding compatible with the grammar rule above, long-distance dependencies like the relation between *flights* and *have* are thought of as a semantic relation. In such models, the job of figuring out that *flights* is the argument of *have* is done during semantic interpretation. Other models of parsing represent the relationship between *flights* and *have* as a syntactic relation, and the grammar is modified to insert a small marker called a **trace** or **empty category** after the verb. We discuss empty-category models when we introduce the Penn Treebank on page 245.

### 12.3.2 Clauses and Sentences

Before we move on, we should clarify the status of the *S* rules in the grammars we just described. *S* rules are intended to account for entire sentences that stand alone as fundamental units of discourse. However, *S* can also occur on the right-hand side of grammar rules and hence can be embedded within larger sentences. Clearly then, there's more to being an *S* than just standing alone as a unit of discourse.

#### **clause**

What differentiates sentence constructions (i.e., the *S* rules) from the rest of the grammar is the notion that they are in some sense *complete*. In this way they correspond to the notion of a **clause**, which traditional grammars often describe as forming a complete thought. One way of making this notion of “complete thought” more precise is to say an *S* is a node of the parse tree below which the main verb of the *S* has all of its **arguments**. We define verbal arguments later, but for now let's just see an illustration from the tree for *I prefer a morning flight* in Fig. 12.4 on page 235. The verb *prefer* has two arguments: the subject *I* and the object *a morning flight*. One of the arguments appears below the *VP* node, but the other one, the subject *NP*, appears only below the *S* node.

### 12.3.3 The Noun Phrase

Our  $\mathcal{L}_0$  grammar introduced three of the most frequent types of noun phrases that occur in English: pronouns, proper nouns and the  $NP \rightarrow Det\ Nominal$  construction. The central focus of this section is on the last type since that is where the bulk of the syntactic complexity resides. These noun phrases consist of a head, the central noun in the noun phrase, along with various modifiers that can occur before or after the head noun. Let's take a close look at the various parts.

### The Determiner

Noun phrases can begin with simple lexical determiners:

a stop	the flights	this flight
those flights	any flights	some flights

The role of the determiner can also be filled by more complex expressions:

United's flight		
United's pilot's union		
Denver's mayor's mother's canceled flight		

In these examples, the role of the determiner is filled by a possessive expression consisting of a noun phrase followed by an 's as a possessive marker, as in the following rule.

$$Det \rightarrow NP\ 's$$

The fact that this rule is recursive (since an *NP* can start with a *Det*) helps us model the last two examples above, in which a sequence of possessive expressions serves as a determiner.

Under some circumstances determiners are optional in English. For example, determiners may be omitted if the noun they modify is plural:

(12.2) Show me *flights* from San Francisco to Denver on weekdays

As we saw in Chapter 8, **mass nouns** also don't require determination. Recall that mass nouns often (not always) involve something that is treated like a substance (including e.g., *water* and *snow*), don't take the indefinite article "a", and don't tend to pluralize. Many abstract nouns are mass nouns (*music*, *homework*). Mass nouns in the ATIS domain include *breakfast*, *lunch*, and *dinner*:

(12.3) Does this flight serve dinner?

### The Nominal

The nominal construction follows the determiner and contains any pre- and post-head noun modifiers. As indicated in grammar  $\mathcal{L}_0$ , in its simplest form a nominal can consist of a single noun.

$$Nominal \rightarrow Noun$$

As we'll see, this rule also provides the basis for the bottom of various recursive rules used to capture more complex nominal constructions.

### Before the Head Noun

cardinal  
numbers  
ordinal  
numbers  
quantifiers

A number of different kinds of word classes can appear before the head noun but after the determiner (the "postdeterminers") in a nominal. These include **cardinal numbers**, **ordinal numbers**, **quantifiers**, and adjectives. Examples of cardinal numbers:

two friends	one stop
-------------	----------

Ordinal numbers include *first*, *second*, *third*, and so on, but also words like *next*, *last*, *past*, *other*, and *another*:

the first one	the next day	the second leg
the last flight	the other American flight	

Some quantifiers (*many*, *(a) few*, *several*) occur only with plural count nouns:

many fares

Adjectives occur after quantifiers but before nouns.

a <i>first-class</i> fare	a <i>non-stop</i> flight
the <i>longest</i> layover	the <i>earliest</i> lunch flight

**adjective phrase**

Adjectives can also be grouped into a phrase called an **adjective phrase** or AP. APs can have an adverb before the adjective (see Chapter 8 for definitions of adjectives and adverbs):

the *least expensive* fare

### After the Head Noun

A head noun can be followed by **postmodifiers**. Three kinds of nominal postmodifiers are common in English:

prepositional phrases	all flights <i>from Cleveland</i>
non-finite clauses	any flights <i>arriving after eleven a.m.</i>
relative clauses	a flight <i>that serves breakfast</i>

They are especially common in the ATIS corpus since they are used to mark the origin and destination of flights.

Here are some examples of prepositional phrase postmodifiers, with brackets inserted to show the boundaries of each PP; note that two or more PPs can be strung together within a single NP:

- all flights [*from Cleveland*] [*to Newark*]
- arrival [*in San Jose*] [*before seven p.m.*]
- a reservation [*on flight six oh six*] [*from Tampa*] [*to Montreal*]

Here's a new nominal rule to account for postnominal PPs:

$$\text{Nominal} \rightarrow \text{Nominal PP}$$

**non-finite**

The three most common kinds of **non-finite** postmodifiers are the gerundive (-ing), -ed, and infinitive forms.

**gerundive**

**Gerundive** postmodifiers are so called because they consist of a verb phrase that begins with the gerundive (-ing) form of the verb. Here are some examples:

- any of those [*leaving on Thursday*]
- any flights [*arriving after eleven a.m.*]
- flights [*arriving within thirty minutes of each other*]

We can define the *Nominals* with gerundive modifiers as follows, making use of a new non-terminal *GerundVP*:

$$\text{Nominal} \rightarrow \text{Nominal GerundVP}$$

We can make rules for *GerundVP* constituents by duplicating all of our VP productions, substituting *GerundV* for V.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{GerundVP} &\rightarrow \text{GerundV NP} \\ &\mid \text{GerundV PP} \mid \text{GerundV} \mid \text{GerundV NP PP} \end{aligned}$$

*GerundV* can then be defined as

$$\text{GerundV} \rightarrow \text{being} \mid \text{arriving} \mid \text{leaving} \mid \dots$$

The phrases in italics below are examples of the two other common kinds of non-finite clauses, infinitives and -ed forms:

the last flight *to arrive in Boston*  
 I need to have dinner *served*  
 Which is the aircraft *used by this flight?*

**relative pronoun** A postnominal relative clause (more correctly a **restrictive relative clause**), is a clause that often begins with a **relative pronoun** (*that* and *who* are the most common). The relative pronoun functions as the subject of the embedded verb in the following examples:

a flight *that serves breakfast*  
 flights *that leave in the morning*  
 the one *that leaves at ten thirty five*

We might add rules like the following to deal with these:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Nominal} &\rightarrow \text{Nominal RelClause} \\ \text{RelClause} &\rightarrow (\text{who} \mid \text{that}) \text{ VP} \end{aligned}$$

The relative pronoun may also function as the object of the embedded verb, as in the following example; we leave for the reader the exercise of writing grammar rules for more complex relative clauses of this kind.

the earliest American Airlines flight *that I can get*

Various postnominal modifiers can be combined:

a flight [*from Phoenix to Detroit*] [*leaving Monday evening*]  
 evening flights [*from Nashville to Houston*] [*that serve dinner*]  
 a friend [*living in Denver*] [*that would like to visit me in DC*]

### Before the Noun Phrase

**predeterminers** Word classes that modify and appear before *NPs* are called **predeterminers**. Many of these have to do with number or amount; a common predeterminer is *all*:

all the flights      all flights      all non-stop flights

The example noun phrase given in Fig. 12.5 illustrates some of the complexity that arises when these rules are combined.

### 12.3.4 The Verb Phrase

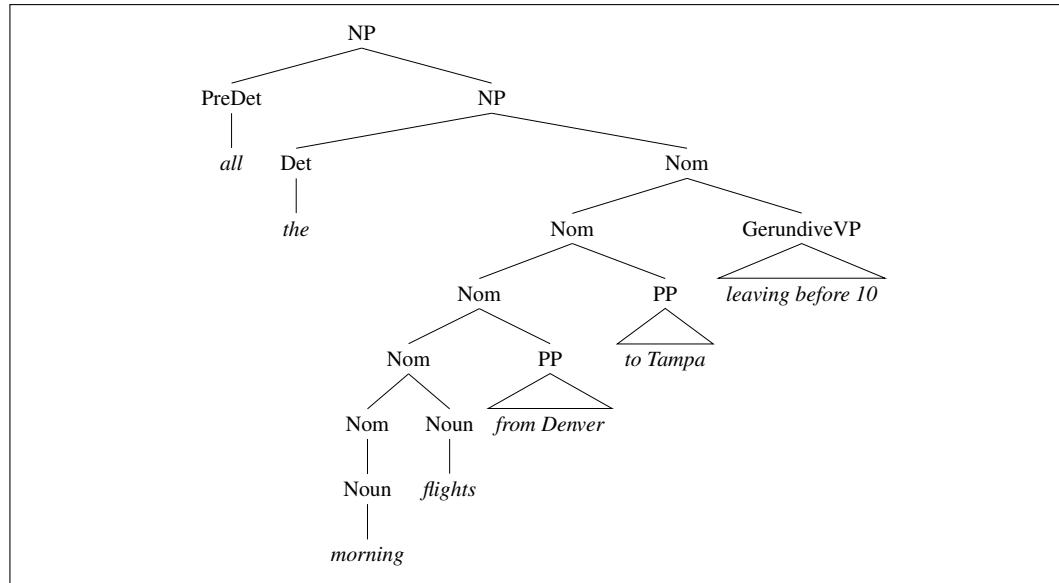
The verb phrase consists of the verb and a number of other constituents. In the simple rules we have built so far, these other constituents include *NPs* and *PPs* and combinations of the two:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{VP} &\rightarrow \text{Verb disappear} \\ \text{VP} &\rightarrow \text{Verb NP prefer a morning flight} \\ \text{VP} &\rightarrow \text{Verb NP PP leave Boston in the morning} \\ \text{VP} &\rightarrow \text{Verb PP leaving on Thursday} \end{aligned}$$

**sentential complements**

Verb phrases can be significantly more complicated than this. Many other kinds of constituents, such as an entire embedded sentence, can follow the verb. These are called **sentential complements**:

You [VP [V said [S you had a two hundred sixty-six dollar fare]]]  
 [VP [V Tell] [NP me] [S how to get from the airport to downtown]]  
 I [VP [V think [S I would like to take the nine thirty flight]]]



**Figure 12.5** A parse tree for “all the morning flights from Denver to Tampa leaving before 10”.

Here's a rule for these:

$$VP \rightarrow Verb\ S$$

Similarly, another potential constituent of the *VP* is another *VP*. This is often the case for verbs like *want*, *would like*, *try*, *intend*, *need*:

I want [*VP* to fly from Milwaukee to Orlando]  
 Hi, I want [*VP* to arrange three flights]

While a verb phrase can have many possible kinds of constituents, not every verb is compatible with every verb phrase. For example, the verb *want* can be used either with an *NP* complement (*I want a flight ...*) or with an infinitive *VP* complement (*I want to fly to ...*). By contrast, a verb like *find* cannot take this sort of *VP* complement (\**I found to fly to Dallas*).

This idea that verbs are compatible with different kinds of complements is a very old one; traditional grammar distinguishes between **transitive** verbs like *find*, which take a direct object *NP* (*I found a flight*), and **intransitive** verbs like *disappear*, which do not (\**I disappeared a flight*).

Where traditional grammars **subcategorize** verbs into these two categories (transitive and intransitive), modern grammars distinguish as many as 100 subcategories. We say that a verb like *find* **subcategorizes for** an *NP*, and a verb like *want* subcategorizes for either an *NP* or a non-finite *VP*. We also call these constituents the **complements** of the verb (hence our use of the term **sentential complement** above). So we say that *want* can take a *VP* complement. These possible sets of complements are called the **subcategorization frame** for the verb. Another way of talking about the relation between the verb and these other constituents is to think of the verb as a logical predicate and the constituents as logical arguments of the predicate. So we can think of such predicate-argument relations as *FIND(I, A FLIGHT)* or *WANT(I, TO FLY)*. We talk more about this view of verbs and arguments in Chapter 15 when we talk about predicate calculus representations of verb semantics. Subcategorization frames for a set of example verbs are given in Fig. 12.6.

Frame	Verb	Example
$\emptyset$	eat, sleep	I ate
$NP$	prefer, find, leave	Find [ $NP$ the flight from Pittsburgh to Boston]
$NP\ NP$	show, give	Show [ $NP$ me] [ $NP$ airlines with flights from Pittsburgh]
$PP_{from}\ PP_{to}$	fly, travel	I would like to fly [ $PP$ from Boston] [ $PP$ to Philadelphia]
$NP\ PP_{with}$	help, load	Can you help [ $NP$ me] [ $PP$ with a flight]
$VP_{to}$	prefer, want, need	I would prefer [ $VP_{to}$ to go by United Airlines]
$S$	mean	Does this mean [ $S$ AA has a hub in Boston]

Figure 12.6 Subcategorization frames for a set of example verbs.

We can capture the association between verbs and their complements by making separate subtypes of the class Verb (e.g., *Verb-with-NP-complement*, *Verb-with-Inf-VP-complement*, *Verb-with-S-complement*, and so on):

$$\begin{aligned} \textit{Verb-with-NP-complement} &\rightarrow \textit{find} \mid \textit{leave} \mid \textit{repeat} \mid \dots \\ \textit{Verb-with-S-complement} &\rightarrow \textit{think} \mid \textit{believe} \mid \textit{say} \mid \dots \\ \textit{Verb-with-Inf-VP-complement} &\rightarrow \textit{want} \mid \textit{try} \mid \textit{need} \mid \dots \end{aligned}$$

Each  $VP$  rule could then be modified to require the appropriate verb subtype:

$$\begin{aligned} VP &\rightarrow \textit{Verb-with-no-complement} \quad \text{disappear} \\ VP &\rightarrow \textit{Verb-with-NP-comp} \ NP \quad \text{prefer a morning flight} \\ VP &\rightarrow \textit{Verb-with-S-comp} \ S \quad \text{said there were two flights} \end{aligned}$$

A problem with this approach is the significant increase in the number of rules and the associated loss of generality.

### 12.3.5 Coordination

**conjunctions**  
**coordinate** The major phrase types discussed here can be conjoined with **conjunctions** like *and*, *or*, and *but* to form larger constructions of the same type. For example, a **coordinate** noun phrase can consist of two other noun phrases separated by a conjunction:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Please repeat } [NP \ [NP \ \text{the flights}] \ and \ [NP \ \text{the costs}]] \\ \text{I need to know } [NP \ [NP \ \text{the aircraft}] \ and \ [NP \ \text{the flight number}]] \end{aligned}$$

Here's a rule that allows these structures:

$$NP \rightarrow NP \ and \ NP$$

Note that the ability to form coordinate phrases through conjunctions is often used as a test for constituency. Consider the following examples, which differ from the ones given above in that they lack the second determiner.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Please repeat the } [Nom \ [Nom \ \text{flights}] \ and \ [Nom \ \text{costs}]] \\ \text{I need to know the } [Nom \ [Nom \ \text{aircraft}] \ and \ [Nom \ \text{flight number}]] \end{aligned}$$

The fact that these phrases can be conjoined is evidence for the presence of the underlying *Nominal* constituent we have been making use of. Here's a rule for this:

$$Nominal \rightarrow Nominal \ and \ Nominal$$

The following examples illustrate conjunctions involving  $VPs$  and  $Ss$ .

What flights do you have [ $VP$  [ $VP$  leaving Denver] *and* [ $VP$  arriving in San Francisco]]

[ $S$  [ $S$  I'm interested in a flight from Dallas to Washington] *and* [ $S$  I'm also interested in going to Baltimore]]

The rules for  $VP$  and  $S$  conjunctions mirror the  $NP$  one given above.

$$VP \rightarrow VP \text{ and } VP$$

$$S \rightarrow S \text{ and } S$$

Since all the major phrase types can be conjoined in this fashion, it is also possible to represent this conjunction fact more generally; a number of grammar formalisms such as GPSG (Gazdar et al., 1985) do this using **metarules** like:

$$X \rightarrow X \text{ and } X$$

This metarule states that any non-terminal can be conjoined with the same non-terminal to yield a constituent of the same type; the variable  $X$  must be designated as a variable that stands for any non-terminal rather than a non-terminal itself.

## 12.4 Treebanks

**treebank**

Sufficiently robust grammars consisting of context-free grammar rules can be used to assign a parse tree to any sentence. This means that it is possible to build a corpus where every sentence in the collection is paired with a corresponding parse tree. Such a syntactically annotated corpus is called a **treebank**. Treebanks play an important role in parsing, as we discuss in Chapter 13, as well as in linguistic investigations of syntactic phenomena.

**Penn Treebank**

A wide variety of treebanks have been created, generally through the use of parsers (of the sort described in the next few chapters) to automatically parse each sentence, followed by the use of humans (linguists) to hand-correct the parses. The **Penn Treebank** project (whose POS tagset we introduced in Chapter 8) has produced treebanks from the Brown, Switchboard, ATIS, and *Wall Street Journal* corpora of English, as well as treebanks in Arabic and Chinese. A number of treebanks use the dependency representation we will introduce in Chapter 14, including many that are part of the **Universal Dependencies** project (Nivre et al., 2016b).

### 12.4.1 Example: The Penn Treebank Project

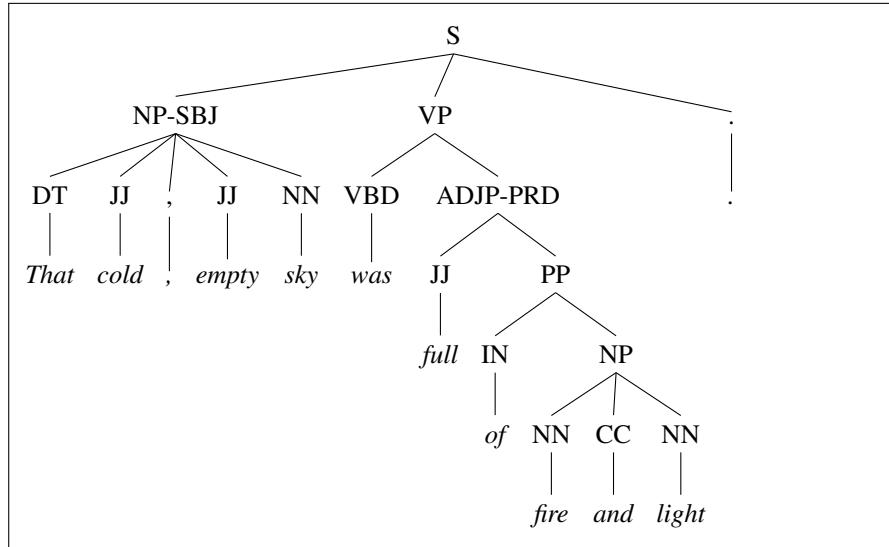
Figure 12.7 shows sentences from the Brown and ATIS portions of the Penn Treebank.<sup>1</sup> Note the formatting differences for the part-of-speech tags; such small differences are common and must be dealt with in processing treebanks. The Penn Treebank part-of-speech tagset was defined in Chapter 8. The use of LISP-style parenthesized notation for trees is extremely common and resembles the bracketed notation we saw earlier in (12.1). For those who are not familiar with it we show a standard node-and-line tree representation in Fig. 12.8.

Figure 12.9 shows a tree from the *Wall Street Journal*. This tree shows another feature of the Penn Treebanks: the use of **traces** (-NONE- nodes) to mark

<sup>1</sup> The Penn Treebank project released treebanks in multiple languages and in various stages; for example, there were Treebank I (Marcus et al., 1993), Treebank II (Marcus et al., 1994), and Treebank III releases of English treebanks. We use Treebank III for our examples.

<pre>((S   (NP-SBJ (DT That)     (JJ cold) (, ,)     (JJ empty) (NN sky) )   (VP (VBD was)     (ADJP-PRD (JJ full)       (PP (IN of)         (NP (NN fire)           (CC and)           (NN light) )))))   (. .) )) </pre> <p style="text-align: center;">(a)</p>	<pre>((S   (NP-SBJ The/DT flight/NN )   (VP should/MD     (VP arrive/VB       (PP-TMP at/IN         (NP eleven/CD a.m/RB ))         (NP-TMP tomorrow/NN ))))) </pre> <p style="text-align: center;">(b)</p>
---	---

**Figure 12.7** Parsed sentences from the LDC Treebank3 version of the (a) Brown and (b) ATIS corpora.



**Figure 12.8** The tree corresponding to the Brown corpus sentence in the previous figure.

## syntactic movement

long-distance dependencies or **syntactic movement**. For example, quotations often follow a quotative verb like *say*. But in this example, the quotation “We would have to wait until we have collected on those assets” precedes the words *he said*. An empty *S* containing only the node -NONE- marks the position after *said* where the quotation sentence often occurs. This empty node is marked (in Treebanks II and III) with the index 2, as is the quotation *S* at the beginning of the sentence. Such co-indexing may make it easier for some parsers to recover the fact that this fronted or topicalized quotation is the complement of the verb *said*. A similar -NONE- node marks the fact that there is no syntactic subject right before the verb *to wait*; instead, the subject is the earlier *NP We*. Again, they are both co-indexed with the index 1.

The Penn Treebank II and Treebank III releases added further information to make it easier to recover the relationships between predicates and arguments. Certain phrases were marked with tags indicating the grammatical function of the phrase (as surface subject, logical topic, cleft, non-VP predicates) its presence in particular text categories (headlines, titles), and its semantic function (temporal phrases, lo-

```

( (S (‘ ‘ ‘)
  (S-TPC-2
    (NP-SBJ-1 (PRP We) )
    (VP (MD would)
      (VP (VB have)
        (S
          (NP-SBJ (-NONE- *-1) )
          (VP (TO to)
            (VP (VB wait)
              (SBAR-TMP (IN until)
                (S
                  (NP-SBJ (PRP we) )
                  (VP (VBP have)
                    (VP (VBN collected)
                      (PP-CLR (IN on)
                        (NP (DT those)(NNS assets))))))))))))
        (, ,) (‘ ‘ ‘)
        (NP-SBJ (PRP he) )
        (VP (VBD said)
          (S (-NONE- *T*-2) ))
        (. .) )
      )
    )
  )
)

```

**Figure 12.9** A sentence from the *Wall Street Journal* portion of the LDC Penn Treebank. Note the use of the empty -NONE- nodes.

cations) (Marcus et al. 1994, Bies et al. 1995). Figure 12.9 shows examples of the -SBJ (surface subject) and -TMP (temporal phrase) tags. Figure 12.8 shows in addition the -PRD tag, which is used for predicates that are not VPs (the one in Fig. 12.8 is an ADJP). We’ll return to the topic of grammatical function when we consider dependency grammars and parsing in Chapter 14.

### 12.4.2 Treebanks as Grammars

The sentences in a treebank implicitly constitute a grammar of the language represented by the corpus being annotated. For example, from the three parsed sentences in Fig. 12.7 and Fig. 12.9, we can extract each of the CFG rules in them. For simplicity, let’s strip off the rule suffixes (-SBJ and so on). The resulting grammar is shown in Fig. 12.10.

The grammar used to parse the Penn Treebank is relatively flat, resulting in very many and very long rules. For example, among the approximately 4,500 different rules for expanding VPs are separate rules for PP sequences of any length and every possible arrangement of verb arguments:

```

VP → VBD PP
VP → VBD PP PP
VP → VBD PP PP PP
VP → VBD PP PP PP PP
VP → VB ADVP PP
VP → VB PP ADVP
VP → ADVB VB PP

```

as well as even longer rules, such as

```
VP → VBP PP PP PP PP PP ADVP PP
```

Grammar	Lexicon
$S \rightarrow NP VP.$	$PRP \rightarrow we   he$
$S \rightarrow NP VP$	$DT \rightarrow the   that   those$
$S \rightarrow "S", NP VP.$	$JJ \rightarrow cold   empty   full$
$S \rightarrow -NONE-$	$NN \rightarrow sky   fire   light   flight   tomorrow$
$NP \rightarrow DT NN$	$NN \rightarrow assets$
$NP \rightarrow DT NNS$	$CC \rightarrow and$
$NP \rightarrow NN CC NN$	$IN \rightarrow of   at   until   on$
$NP \rightarrow CD RB$	$CD \rightarrow eleven$
$NP \rightarrow DT JJ, JJ NN$	$RB \rightarrow a.m.$
$NP \rightarrow PRP$	$VB \rightarrow arrive   have   wait$
$NP \rightarrow -NONE-$	$VBD \rightarrow was   said$
$VP \rightarrow MD VP$	$VBP \rightarrow have$
$VP \rightarrow VBD ADJP$	$VBN \rightarrow collected$
$VP \rightarrow VBD S$	$MD \rightarrow should   would$
$VP \rightarrow VBN PP$	$TO \rightarrow to$
$VP \rightarrow VB S$	
$VP \rightarrow VB SBAR$	
$VP \rightarrow VBP VP$	
$VP \rightarrow VBN PP$	
$VP \rightarrow TO VP$	
$SBAR \rightarrow IN S$	
$ADJP \rightarrow JJ PP$	
$PP \rightarrow IN NP$	

**Figure 12.10** A sample of the CFG grammar rules and lexical entries that would be extracted from the three treebank sentences in Fig. 12.7 and Fig. 12.9.

which comes from the *VP* marked in italics:

This mostly happens because we *go from football in the fall to lifting in the winter to football again in the spring*.

Some of the many thousands of *NP* rules include

```

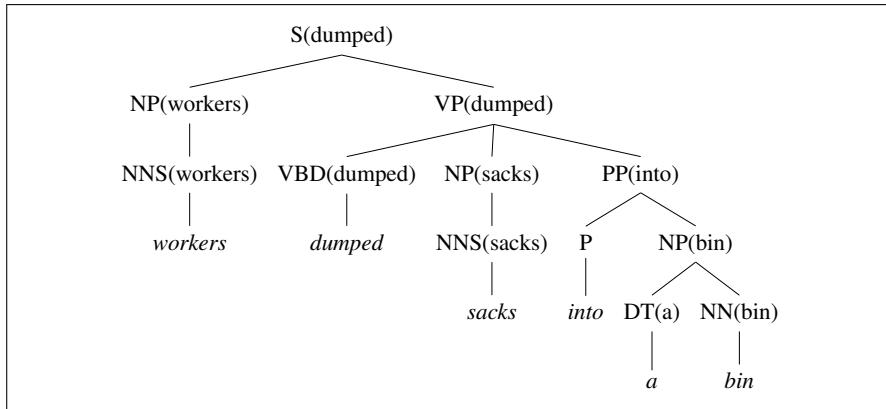
NP → DT JJ NN
NP → DT JJ NNS
NP → DT JJ NN NN
NP → DT JJ JJ NN
NP → DT JJ CD NNS
NP → RB DT JJ NN NN
NP → RB DT JJ JJ NNS
NP → DT JJ JJ NNP NNS
NP → DT NNP NNP NNP NNP JJ NN
NP → DT JJ NNP CC JJ JJ NN NNS
NP → RB DT JJS NN NN SBAR
NP → DT VBG JJ NNP NNP CC NNP
NP → DT JJ NNS , NNS CC NN NNS NN
NP → DT JJ JJ VBG NN NNP NNP FW NNP
NP → NP JJ , JJ " SBAR " NNS

```

The last two of those rules, for example, come from the following two noun phrases:

[<sub>DT</sub> The] [<sub>JJ</sub> state-owned] [<sub>JJ</sub> industrial] [<sub>VBG</sub> holding] [<sub>NN</sub> company] [<sub>NNP</sub> Instituto] [<sub>NNP</sub> Nacional]  
 [<sub>FW</sub> de] [<sub>NNP</sub> Industria]  
 [<sub>NP</sub> Shearson's] [<sub>JJ</sub> easy-to-film], [<sub>JJ</sub> black-and-white] “[<sub>SBAR</sub> Where We Stand]” [<sub>NNS</sub> commercials]

Viewed as a large grammar in this way, the Penn Treebank III *Wall Street Journal* corpus, which contains about 1 million words, also has about 1 million non-lexical rule tokens, consisting of about 17,500 distinct rule types.



**Figure 12.11** A lexicalized tree from [Collins \(1999\)](#).

Various facts about the treebank grammars, such as their large numbers of flat rules, pose problems for probabilistic parsing algorithms. For this reason, it is common to make various modifications to a grammar extracted from a treebank. We discuss these further in Appendix C.

### 12.4.3 Heads and Head Finding

We suggested informally earlier that syntactic constituents could be associated with a lexical **head**; *N* is the head of an *NP*, *V* is the head of a *VP*. This idea of a head for each constituent dates back to Bloomfield (1914), and is central to the dependency grammars and dependency parsing we'll introduce in Chapter 14. Heads are also important in probabilistic parsing (Appendix C) and in constituent-based grammar formalisms like Head-Driven Phrase Structure Grammar ([Pollard and Sag, 1994](#))..

In one simple model of lexical heads, each context-free rule is associated with a head ([Charniak 1997, Collins 1999](#)). The head is the word in the phrase that is grammatically the most important. Heads are passed up the parse tree; thus, each non-terminal in a parse tree is annotated with a single word, which is its lexical head. Figure 12.11 shows an example of such a tree from [Collins \(1999\)](#), in which each non-terminal is annotated with its head.

For the generation of such a tree, each CFG rule must be augmented to identify one right-side constituent to be the head child. The headword for a node is then set to the headword of its head child. Choosing these head children is simple for textbook examples (*NN* is the head of *NP*) but is complicated and indeed controversial for most phrases. (Should the complementizer *to* or the verb be the head of an infinite verb phrase?) Modern linguistic theories of syntax generally include a component that defines heads (see, e.g., [\(Pollard and Sag, 1994\)](#)).

An alternative approach to finding a head is used in most practical computational systems. Instead of specifying head rules in the grammar itself, heads are identified dynamically in the context of trees for specific sentences. In other words, once a sentence is parsed, the resulting tree is walked to decorate each node with the appropriate head. Most current systems rely on a simple set of handwritten rules, such as a practical one for Penn Treebank grammars given in [Collins \(1999\)](#) but developed originally by [Magerman \(1995\)](#). For example, the rule for finding the head of an *NP* is as follows ([Collins, 1999, p. 238](#)):

- If the last word is tagged POS, return last-word.

- Else search from right to left for the first child which is an NN, NNP, NNPS, NX, POS, or JJR.
- Else search from left to right for the first child which is an NP.
- Else search from right to left for the first child which is a \$, ADJP, or PRN.
- Else search from right to left for the first child which is a CD.
- Else search from right to left for the first child which is a JJ, JJS, RB or QP.
- Else return the last word

Selected other rules from this set are shown in Fig. 12.12. For example, for  $VP$  rules of the form  $VP \rightarrow Y_1 \dots Y_n$ , the algorithm would start from the left of  $Y_1 \dots Y_n$  looking for the first  $Y_i$  of type TO; if no TOs are found, it would search for the first  $Y_i$  of type VBD; if no VBDs are found, it would search for a VBN, and so on. See [Collins \(1999\)](#) for more details.

Parent	Direction	Priority List
ADJP	Left	NNS QP NN \$ ADVP JJ VBN VBG ADJP JJR NP JJS DT FW RBR RBS SBAR RB
ADVP	Right	RB RBR RBS FW ADVP TO CD JJR JJ IN NP JJS NN
PRN	Left	
PRT	Right	RP
QP	Left	\$ IN NNS NN JJ RB DT CD NCD QP JJR JJS
S	Left	TO IN VP S SBAR ADJP UCP NP
SBAR	Left	WHNP WHPP WHADVP WHADJP IN DT S SQ SINV SBAR FRAG
VP	Left	TO VBD VBN MD VBZ VB VBG VBP VP ADJP NN NNS NP

**Figure 12.12** Some head rules from [Collins \(1999\)](#). The head rules are also called a **head percolation table**.

## 12.5 Grammar Equivalence and Normal Form

A formal language is defined as a (possibly infinite) set of strings of words. This suggests that we could ask if two grammars are equivalent by asking if they generate the same set of strings. In fact, it is possible to have two distinct context-free grammars generate the same language.

We usually distinguish two kinds of grammar equivalence: **weak equivalence** and **strong equivalence**. Two grammars are strongly equivalent if they generate the same set of strings *and* if they assign the same phrase structure to each sentence (allowing merely for renaming of the non-terminal symbols). Two grammars are weakly equivalent if they generate the same set of strings but do not assign the same phrase structure to each sentence.

It is sometimes useful to have a **normal form** for grammars, in which each of the productions takes a particular form. For example, a context-free grammar is in **Chomsky normal form** (CNF) ([Chomsky, 1963](#)) if it is  $\epsilon$ -free and if in addition each production is either of the form  $A \rightarrow B C$  or  $A \rightarrow a$ . That is, the right-hand side of each rule either has two non-terminal symbols or one terminal symbol. Chomsky normal form grammars are **binary branching**, that is they have binary trees (down to the prelexical nodes). We make use of this binary branching property in the CKY parsing algorithm in Chapter 13.

Any context-free grammar can be converted into a weakly equivalent Chomsky normal form grammar. For example, a rule of the form

$$A \rightarrow B C D$$

**normal form**

**Chomsky normal form**

**binary branching**

can be converted into the following two CNF rules (Exercise 12.8 asks the reader to formulate the complete algorithm):

$$\begin{aligned} A &\rightarrow B \ X \\ X &\rightarrow C \ D \end{aligned}$$

Sometimes using binary branching can actually produce smaller grammars. For example, the sentences that might be characterized as

$$VP \rightarrow VBD \ NP \ PP^*$$

are represented in the Penn Treebank by this series of rules:

$$\begin{aligned} VP &\rightarrow VBD \ NP \ PP \\ VP &\rightarrow VBD \ NP \ PP \ PP \\ VP &\rightarrow VBD \ NP \ PP \ PP \ PP \\ VP &\rightarrow VBD \ NP \ PP \ PP \ PP \ PP \\ &\dots \end{aligned}$$

but could also be generated by the following two-rule grammar:

$$\begin{aligned} VP &\rightarrow VBD \ NP \ PP \\ VP &\rightarrow VP \ PP \end{aligned}$$

The generation of a symbol A with a potentially infinite sequence of symbols B with a rule of the form  $A \rightarrow A \ B$  is known as **Chomsky-adjunction**.

## 12.6 Lexicalized Grammars

The approach to grammar presented thus far emphasizes phrase-structure rules while minimizing the role of the lexicon. However, as we saw in the discussions of agreement, subcategorization, and long-distance dependencies, this approach leads to solutions that are cumbersome at best, yielding grammars that are redundant, hard to manage, and brittle. To overcome these issues, numerous alternative approaches have been developed that all share the common theme of making better use of the lexicon. Among the more computationally relevant approaches are Lexical-Functional Grammar (LFG) (Bresnan, 1982), Head-Driven Phrase Structure Grammar (HPSG) (Pollard and Sag, 1994), Tree-Adjoining Grammar (TAG) (Joshi, 1985), and Combinatory Categorial Grammar (CCG). These approaches differ with respect to how *lexicalized* they are — the degree to which they rely on the lexicon as opposed to phrase structure rules to capture facts about the language.

The following section provides an introduction to CCG, a heavily lexicalized approach motivated by both syntactic and semantic considerations, which we will return to in Chapter 15. Chapter 14 discusses dependency grammars, an approach that eliminates phrase-structure rules entirely.

### 12.6.1 Combinatory Categorial Grammar

categorial grammar

combinatory categorial grammar

In this section, we provide an overview of **categorial grammar** (Ajdukiewicz 1935, Bar-Hillel 1953), an early lexicalized grammar model, as well as an important modern extension, **combinatory categorial grammar**, or CCG (Steedman 1996, Steedman 1989, Steedman 2000).

The categorial approach consists of three major elements: a set of categories, a lexicon that associates words with categories, and a set of rules that govern how categories combine in context.

### Categories

Categories are either atomic elements or single-argument functions that return a category as a value when provided with a desired category as argument. More formally, we can define  $\mathcal{C}$ , a set of categories for a grammar as follows:

- $\mathcal{A} \subseteq \mathcal{C}$ , where  $\mathcal{A}$  is a given set of atomic elements
- $(X/Y), (X\backslash Y) \in \mathcal{C}$ , if  $X, Y \in \mathcal{C}$

The slash notation shown here is used to define the functions in the grammar. It specifies the type of the expected argument, the direction it is expected be found, and the type of the result. Thus,  $(X/Y)$  is a function that seeks a constituent of type  $Y$  to its right and returns a value of  $X$ ;  $(X\backslash Y)$  is the same except it seeks its argument to the left.

The set of atomic categories is typically very small and includes familiar elements such as sentences and noun phrases. Functional categories include verb phrases and complex noun phrases among others.

### The Lexicon

The lexicon in a categorial approach consists of assignments of categories to words. These assignments can either be to atomic or functional categories, and due to lexical ambiguity words can be assigned to multiple categories. Consider the following sample lexical entries.

<i>flight</i> :	<i>N</i>
<i>Miami</i> :	<i>NP</i>
<i>cancel</i> :	$(S\backslash NP)/NP$

Nouns and proper nouns like *flight* and *Miami* are assigned to atomic categories, reflecting their typical role as arguments to functions. On the other hand, a transitive verb like *cancel* is assigned the category  $(S\backslash NP)/NP$ : a function that seeks an *NP* on its right and returns as its value a function with the type  $(S\backslash NP)$ . This function can, in turn, combine with an *NP* on the left, yielding an *S* as the result. This captures the kind of subcategorization information discussed in Section 12.3.4, however here the information has a rich, computationally useful, internal structure.

Ditransitive verbs like *give*, which expect two arguments after the verb, would have the category  $((S\backslash NP)/NP)/NP$ : a function that combines with an *NP* on its right to yield yet another function corresponding to the transitive verb  $(S\backslash NP)/NP$  category such as the one given above for *cancel*.

### Rules

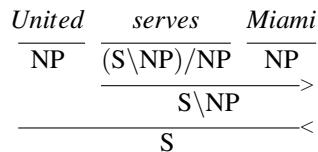
The rules of a categorial grammar specify how functions and their arguments combine. The following two rule templates constitute the basis for all categorial grammars.

$$X/Y \ Y \Rightarrow X \tag{12.4}$$

$$Y \ X\backslash Y \Rightarrow X \tag{12.5}$$

The first rule applies a function to its argument on the right, while the second looks to the left for its argument. We'll refer to the first as **forward function application**, and the second as **backward function application**. The result of applying either of these rules is the category specified as the value of the function being applied.

Given these rules and a simple lexicon, let's consider an analysis of the sentence *United serves Miami*. Assume that *serves* is a transitive verb with the category  $(S \setminus NP)/NP$  and that *United* and *Miami* are both simple *NPs*. Using both forward and backward function application, the derivation would proceed as follows:

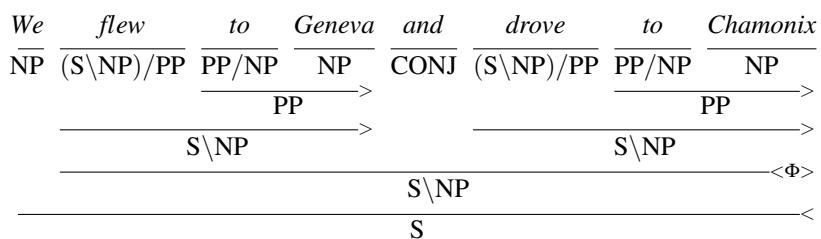


Categorial grammar derivations are illustrated growing down from the words, rule applications are illustrated with a horizontal line that spans the elements involved, with the type of the operation indicated at the right end of the line. In this example, there are two function applications: one forward function application indicated by the  $>$  that applies the verb *serves* to the *NP* on its right, and one backward function application indicated by the  $<$  that applies the result of the first to the *NP United* on its left.

With the addition of another rule, the categorial approach provides a straightforward way to implement the coordination metarule described earlier on page 244. Recall that English permits the coordination of two constituents of the same type, resulting in a new constituent of the same type. The following rule provides the mechanism to handle such examples.

$$X \text{ CONJ } X \Rightarrow X \quad (12.6)$$

This rule states that when two constituents of the same category are separated by a constituent of type *CONJ* they can be combined into a single larger constituent of the same type. The following derivation illustrates the use of this rule.



Here the two  $S \setminus NP$  constituents are combined via the conjunction operator  $\langle\Phi\rangle$  to form a larger constituent of the same type, which can then be combined with the subject  $NP$  via backward function application.

These examples illustrate the lexical nature of the categorial grammar approach. The grammatical facts about a language are largely encoded in the lexicon, while the rules of the grammar are boiled down to a set of three rules. Unfortunately, the basic categorial approach does not give us any more expressive power than we had with traditional CFG rules; it just moves information from the grammar to the lexicon. To move beyond these limitations CCG includes operations that operate over functions.

The first pair of operators permit us to **compose** adjacent functions.

$$X/Y \ Y/Z \Rightarrow X/Z \quad (12.7)$$

$$Y\backslash Z \ X\backslash Y \Rightarrow X\backslash Z \quad (12.8)$$

**forward composition**

The first rule, called **forward composition**, can be applied to adjacent constituents where the first is a function seeking an argument of type  $Y$  to its right, and the second is a function that provides  $Y$  as a result. This rule allows us to compose these two functions into a single one with the type of the first constituent and the argument of the second. Although the notation is a little awkward, the second rule, **backward composition** is the same, except that we're looking to the left instead of to the right for the relevant arguments. Both kinds of composition are signalled by a **B** in CCG diagrams, accompanied by a  $<$  or  $>$  to indicate the direction.

**backward composition**

**type raising**

The next operator is **type raising**. Type raising elevates simple categories to the status of functions. More specifically, type raising takes a category and converts it to function that seeks as an argument a function that takes the original category as its argument. The following schema show two versions of type raising: one for arguments to the right, and one for the left.

$$X \Rightarrow T/(T\backslash X) \quad (12.9)$$

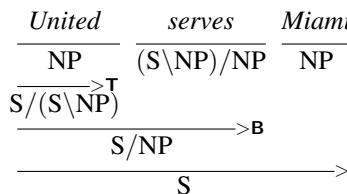
$$X \Rightarrow T\backslash(T/X) \quad (12.10)$$

The category  $T$  in these rules can correspond to any of the atomic or functional categories already present in the grammar.

A particularly useful example of type raising transforms a simple  $NP$  argument in subject position to a function that can compose with a following  $VP$ . To see how this works, let's revisit our earlier example of *United serves Miami*. Instead of classifying *United* as an  $NP$  which can serve as an argument to the function attached to *serves*, we can use type raising to reinvent it as a function in its own right as follows.

$$NP \Rightarrow S/(S\backslash NP)$$

Combining this type-raised constituent with the forward composition rule (12.7) permits the following alternative to our previous derivation.

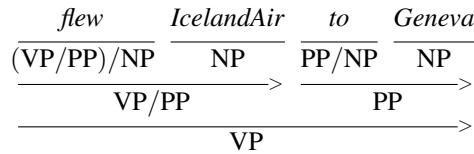


By type raising *United* to  $S/(S\backslash NP)$ , we can compose it with the transitive verb *serves* to yield the  $(S/NP)$  function needed to complete the derivation.

There are several interesting things to note about this derivation. First, it provides a left-to-right, word-by-word derivation that more closely mirrors the way humans process language. This makes CCG a particularly apt framework for psycholinguistic studies. Second, this derivation involves the use of an intermediate unit of analysis, *United serves*, that does not correspond to a traditional constituent in English. This ability to make use of such non-constituent elements provides CCG with the ability to handle the coordination of phrases that are not proper constituents, as in the following example.

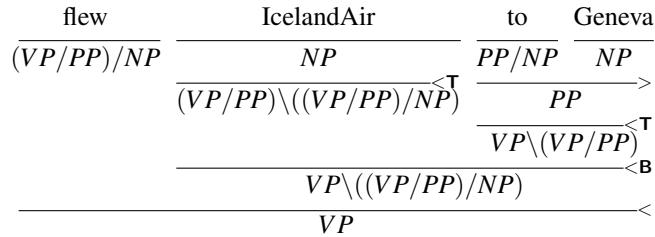
(12.11) We flew IcelandAir to Geneva and SwissAir to London.

Here, the segments that are being coordinated are *IcelandAir to Geneva* and *SwissAir to London*, phrases that would not normally be considered constituents, as can be seen in the following standard derivation for the verb phrase *flew IcelandAir to Geneva*.

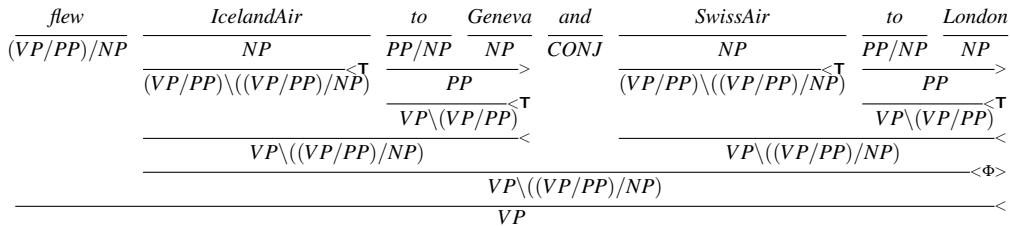


In this derivation, there is no single constituent that corresponds to *IcelandAir to Geneva*, and hence no opportunity to make use of the  $\langle\Phi\rangle$  operator. Note that complex CCG categories can get a little cumbersome, so we'll use *VP* as a shorthand for  $(S\backslash NP)$  in this and the following derivations.

The following alternative derivation provides the required element through the use of both backward type raising (12.10) and backward function composition (12.8).



Applying the same analysis to *SwissAir to London* satisfies the requirements for the  $\langle\Phi\rangle$  operator, yielding the following derivation for our original example (12.11).

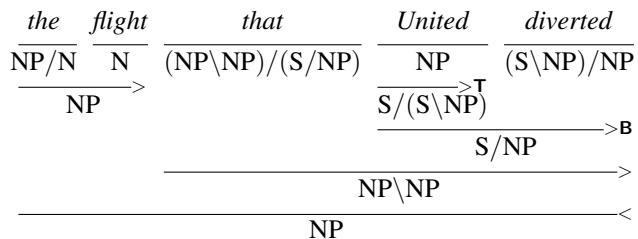


Finally, let's examine how these advanced operators can be used to handle **long-distance dependencies** (also referred to as syntactic movement or extraction). As mentioned in Section 12.3.1, long-distance dependencies arise from many English constructions including wh-questions, relative clauses, and topicalization. What these constructions have in common is a constituent that appears somewhere distant from its usual, or expected, location. Consider the following relative clause as an example.

the flight that United diverted

Here, *divert* is a transitive verb that expects two *NP* arguments, a subject *NP* to its left and a direct object *NP* to its right; its category is therefore  $(S\backslash NP)/NP$ . However, in this example the direct object *the flight* has been “moved” to the beginning of the clause, while the subject *United* remains in its normal position. What is needed is a way to incorporate the subject argument, while dealing with the fact that *the flight* is not in its expected location.

The following derivation accomplishes this, again through the combined use of type raising and function composition.



As we saw with our earlier examples, the first step of this derivation is type raising *United* to the category  $S/(S\backslash NP)$  allowing it to combine with *diverted* via forward composition. The result of this composition is  $S/NP$  which preserves the fact that we are still looking for an  $NP$  to fill the missing direct object. The second critical piece is the lexical category assigned to the word *that*:  $(NP\backslash NP)/(S/NP)$ . This function seeks a verb phrase missing an argument to its right, and transforms it into an  $NP$  seeking a missing element to its left, precisely where we find *the flight*.

CCGBank

As with phrase-structure approaches, treebanks play an important role in CCG-based approaches to parsing. CCGBank ([Hockenmaier and Steedman, 2007](#)) is the largest and most widely used CCG treebank. It was created by automatically translating phrase-structure trees from the Penn Treebank via a rule-based approach. The method produced successful translations of over 99% of the trees in the Penn Treebank resulting in 48,934 sentences paired with CCG derivations. It also provides a lexicon of 44,000 words with over 1200 categories. Appendix C will discuss how these resources can be used to train CCG parsers.

## 12.7 Summary

This chapter has introduced a number of fundamental concepts in syntax through the use of **context-free grammars**.

- In many languages, groups of consecutive words act as a group or a **constituent**, which can be modeled by **context-free grammars** (which are also known as **phrase-structure grammars**).
  - A context-free grammar consists of a set of **rules** or **productions**, expressed over a set of **non-terminal** symbols and a set of **terminal** symbols. Formally, a particular **context-free language** is the set of strings that can be **derived** from a particular **context-free grammar**.
  - A **generative grammar** is a traditional name in linguistics for a formal language that is used to model the grammar of a natural language.
  - There are many sentence-level grammatical constructions in English; **declarative**, **imperative**, **yes-no question**, and **wh-question** are four common types; these can be modeled with context-free rules.
  - An English **noun phrase** can have **determiners**, **numbers**, **quantifiers**, and **adjective phrases** preceding the **head noun**, which can be followed by a number of **postmodifiers**; **gerundive** and **infinitive** VPs are common possibilities.
  - **Subjects** in English **agree** with the main verb in person and number.

- Verbs can be **subcategorized** by the types of **complements** they expect. Simple subcategories are **transitive** and **intransitive**; most grammars include many more categories than these.
- **Treebanks** of parsed sentences exist for many genres of English and for many languages. Treebanks can be searched with tree-search tools.
- Any context-free grammar can be converted to **Chomsky normal form**, in which the right-hand side of each rule has either two non-terminals or a single terminal.
- Lexicalized grammars place more emphasis on the structure of the lexicon, lessening the burden on pure phrase-structure rules.
- Combinatorial categorial grammar (CCG) is an important computationally relevant lexicalized approach.

## Bibliographical and Historical Notes

According to [Percival \(1976\)](#), the idea of breaking up a sentence into a hierarchy of constituents appeared in the *Völkerpsychologie* of the groundbreaking psychologist Wilhelm Wundt ([Wundt, 1900](#)):

*...den sprachlichen Ausdruck für die willkürliche Gliederung einer Gesamtvorstellung in ihre in logische Beziehung zueinander gesetzten Bestandteile*

[the linguistic expression for the arbitrary division of a total idea into its constituent parts placed in logical relations to one another]

Wundt's idea of constituency was taken up into linguistics by Leonard Bloomfield in his early book *An Introduction to the Study of Language* ([Bloomfield, 1914](#)). By the time of his later book, *Language* ([Bloomfield, 1933](#)), what was then called “immediate-constituent analysis” was a well-established method of syntactic study in the United States. By contrast, traditional European grammar, dating from the Classical period, defined relations between *words* rather than constituents, and European syntacticians retained this emphasis on such **dependency** grammars, the subject of Chapter 14.

American Structuralism saw a number of specific definitions of the immediate constituent, couched in terms of their search for a “discovery procedure”: a methodological algorithm for describing the syntax of a language. In general, these attempt to capture the intuition that “The primary criterion of the immediate constituent is the degree in which combinations behave as simple units” ([Bazell, 1966, p. 284](#)). The most well known of the specific definitions is Harris' idea of distributional similarity to individual units, with the *substitutability* test. Essentially, the method proceeded by breaking up a construction into constituents by attempting to substitute simple structures for possible constituents—if a substitution of a simple form, say, *man*, was substitutable in a construction for a more complex set (like *intense young man*), then the form *intense young man* was probably a constituent. Harris's test was the beginning of the intuition that a constituent is a kind of equivalence class.

The first formalization of this idea of hierarchical constituency was the **phrase-structure grammar** defined in [Chomsky \(1956\)](#) and further expanded upon (and argued against) in [Chomsky \(1957\)](#) and [Chomsky \(1975\)](#). From this time on, most generative linguistic theories were based at least in part on context-free grammars or

**X-bar  
schemata**

generalizations of them (such as Head-Driven Phrase Structure Grammar ([Pollard and Sag, 1994](#)), Lexical-Functional Grammar ([Bresnan, 1982](#)), the Minimalist Program ([Chomsky, 1995](#)), and Construction Grammar ([Kay and Fillmore, 1999](#)), inter alia); many of these theories used schematic context-free templates known as **X-bar schemata**, which also relied on the notion of syntactic head.

Shortly after Chomsky's initial work, the context-free grammar was reinvented by [Backus \(1959\)](#) and independently by [Naur et al. \(1960\)](#) in their descriptions of the ALGOL programming language; [Backus \(1996\)](#) noted that he was influenced by the productions of Emil Post and that Naur's work was independent of his (Backus') own. After this early work, a great number of computational models of natural language processing were based on context-free grammars because of the early development of efficient algorithms to parse these grammars (see Chapter 13).

There are various classes of extensions to CFGs, many designed to handle long-distance dependencies in the syntax. (Other grammars instead treat long-distance-dependent items as being related semantically rather than syntactically ([Kay and Fillmore 1999](#), [Culicover and Jackendoff 2005](#)).

One extended formalism is **Tree Adjoining Grammar** (TAG) ([Joshi, 1985](#)). The primary TAG data structure is the tree, rather than the rule. Trees come in two kinds: **initial trees** and **auxiliary trees**. Initial trees might, for example, represent simple sentential structures, and auxiliary trees add recursion into a tree. Trees are combined by two operations called **substitution** and **adjunction**. The adjunction operation handles long-distance dependencies. See [Joshi \(1985\)](#) for more details. Tree Adjoining Grammar is a member of the family of **mildly context-sensitive languages**.

We mentioned on page [245](#) another way of handling long-distance dependencies, based on the use of empty categories and co-indexing. The Penn Treebank uses this model, which draws (in various Treebank corpora) from the Extended Standard Theory and Minimalism ([Radford, 1997](#)).

Readers interested in the grammar of English should get one of the three large reference grammars of English: [Huddleston and Pullum \(2002\)](#), [Biber et al. \(1999\)](#), and [Quirk et al. \(1985\)](#).

**generative**

There are many good introductory textbooks on syntax from different perspectives. [Sag et al. \(2003\)](#) is an introduction to syntax from a **generative** perspective, focusing on the use of phrase-structure rules, unification, and the type hierarchy in Head-Driven Phrase Structure Grammar. [Van Valin, Jr. and La Polla \(1997\)](#) is an introduction from a **functional** perspective, focusing on cross-linguistic data and on the functional motivation for syntactic structures.

**functional**

## Exercises

### 12.1 Draw tree structures for the following ATIS phrases:

1. Dallas
2. from Denver
3. after five p.m.
4. arriving in Washington
5. early flights
6. all redeye flights
7. on Thursday
8. a one-way fare

9. any delays in Denver

**12.2** Draw tree structures for the following ATIS sentences:

1. Does American Airlines have a flight between five a.m. and six a.m.?
2. I would like to fly on American Airlines.
3. Please repeat that.
4. Does American 487 have a first-class section?
5. I need to fly between Philadelphia and Atlanta.
6. What is the fare from Atlanta to Denver?
7. Is there an American Airlines flight from Philadelphia to Dallas?

**12.3** Assume a grammar that has many *VP* rules for different subcategorizations, as expressed in Section 12.3.4, and differently subcategorized verb rules like *Verb-with-NP-complement*. How would the rule for postnominal relative clauses (12.4) need to be modified if we wanted to deal properly with examples like *the earliest flight that you have*? Recall that in such examples the pronoun *that* is the object of the verb *get*. Your rules should allow this noun phrase but should correctly rule out the ungrammatical *S \*I get*.

**12.4** Does your solution to the previous problem correctly model the NP *the earliest flight that I can get*? How about *the earliest flight that I think my mother wants me to book for her*? Hint: this phenomenon is called **long-distance dependency**.

**12.5** Write rules expressing the verbal subcategory of English auxiliaries; for example, you might have a rule *verb-with-bare-stem-VP-complement → can*.

**12.6** *NPs* like *Fortune's office* or *my uncle's marks* are called **possessive** or **genitive** noun phrases. We can model possessive noun phrases by treating the sub-NP like *Fortune's* or *my uncle's* as a determiner of the following head noun. Write grammar rules for English possessives. You may treat 's as if it were a separate word (i.e., as if there were always a space before 's).

**12.7** Page 238 discussed the need for a *Wh-NP* constituent. The simplest *Wh-NP* is one of the *Wh-pronouns* (*who*, *whom*, *whose*, *which*). The *Wh*-words *what* and *which* can be determiners: *which four will you have?*, *what credit do you have with the Duke?* Write rules for the different types of *Wh-NPs*.

**12.8** Write an algorithm for converting an arbitrary context-free grammar into Chomsky normal form.

*One morning I shot an elephant in my pajamas.*

*How he got into my pajamas I don't know.*

Groucho Marx, *Animal Crackers*, 1930

Syntactic parsing is the task of assigning a syntactic structure to a sentence. This chapter focuses on constituency structures, those assigned by context-free grammars of the kind described in Chapter 12. In the next chapter we'll introduce dependency parses, an alternative kind of parse structure,

Parse trees can be used in applications such as **grammar checking**: sentence that cannot be parsed may have grammatical errors (or at least be hard to read). Parse trees can be an intermediate stage of representation for **semantic analysis** (as we show in Chapter 16) and thus play a role in applications like **question answering**. For example to answer the question

*Which flights to Denver depart before the Seattle flight?*

we'll need to know that the questioner wants a list of flights going to Denver, not flights going to Seattle, and parse structure (knowing that *to Denver* modifies *flights*, and *which flights to Denver* is the subject of the *depart*) can help us.

We begin by discussing ambiguity and the problems it presents, and then give the Cocke-Kasami-Younger (CKY) algorithm (Kasami 1965, Younger 1967), the standard dynamic programming approach to syntactic parsing. We've already seen other dynamic programming algorithms like minimum edit distance (Chapter 2) and Viterbi (Chapter 8).

The vanilla CKY algorithm returns an efficient representation of the set of parse trees for a sentence, but doesn't tell us **which** parse tree is the right one. For that, we need to augment CKY with scores for each possible constituent. We'll see how to do this with neural span-based parsers. And we'll introduce other methods like **supertagging** for parsing CCG, **partial parsing methods**, for use in situations in which a superficial syntactic analysis of an input may be sufficient, and the standard set of metrics for evaluating parser accuracy.

## 13.1 Ambiguity

structural  
ambiguity

Ambiguity is the most serious problem faced by syntactic parsers. Chapter 8 introduced the notions of **part-of-speech ambiguity** and **part-of-speech disambiguation**. Here, we introduce a new kind of ambiguity, called **structural ambiguity**, illustrated with a new toy grammar  $\mathcal{L}_1$ , shown in Figure 13.1, which adds a few rules to the  $\mathcal{L}_0$  grammar from the last chapter.

Structural ambiguity occurs when the grammar can assign more than one parse to a sentence. Groucho Marx's well-known line as Captain Spaulding in *Animal Crackers* is ambiguous because the phrase *in my pajamas* can be part of the *NP*

Grammar	Lexicon
$S \rightarrow NP VP$	$Det \rightarrow that   this   the   a$
$S \rightarrow Aux NP VP$	$Noun \rightarrow book   flight   meal   money$
$S \rightarrow VP$	$Verb \rightarrow book   include   prefer$
$NP \rightarrow Pronoun$	$Pronoun \rightarrow I   she   me$
$NP \rightarrow Proper-Noun$	$Proper-Noun \rightarrow Houston   NWA$
$NP \rightarrow Det Nominal$	$Aux \rightarrow does$
$Nominal \rightarrow Noun$	$Preposition \rightarrow from   to   on   near   through$
$Nominal \rightarrow Nominal Noun$	
$Nominal \rightarrow Nominal PP$	
$VP \rightarrow Verb$	
$VP \rightarrow Verb NP$	
$VP \rightarrow Verb NP PP$	
$VP \rightarrow Verb PP$	
$VP \rightarrow VP PP$	
$PP \rightarrow Preposition NP$	

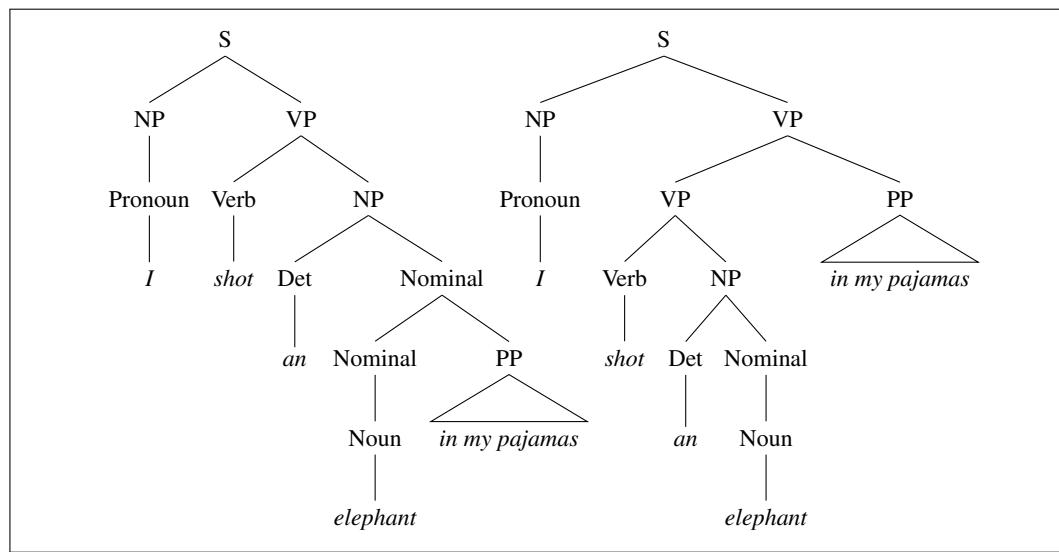
Figure 13.1 The  $\mathcal{L}_1$  miniature English grammar and lexicon.

Figure 13.2 Two parse trees for an ambiguous sentence. The parse on the left corresponds to the humorous reading in which the elephant is in the pajamas, the parse on the right corresponds to the reading in which Captain Spaulding did the shooting in his pajamas.

headed by *elephant* or a part of the verb phrase headed by *shot*. Figure 13.2 illustrates these two analyses of Marx's line using rules from  $\mathcal{L}_1$ .

Structural ambiguity, appropriately enough, comes in many forms. Two common kinds of ambiguity are **attachment ambiguity** and **coordination ambiguity**. A sentence has an **attachment ambiguity** if a particular constituent can be attached to the parse tree at more than one place. The Groucho Marx sentence is an example of PP-attachment ambiguity. Various kinds of adverbial phrases are also subject to this kind of ambiguity. For instance, in the following example the gerundive-VP *flying to Paris* can be part of a gerundive sentence whose subject is *the Eiffel Tower* or it can be an adjunct modifying the VP headed by *saw*:

- (13.1) We saw the Eiffel Tower flying to Paris.

attachment ambiguity

In **coordination ambiguity** phrases can be conjoined by a conjunction like *and*.

coordination ambiguity

For example, the phrase *old men and women* can be bracketed as *[old [men and women]]*, referring to *old men* and *old women*, or as *[old men] and [women]*, in which case it is only the men who are old. These ambiguities combine in complex ways in real sentences, like the following news sentence from the Brown corpus:

- (13.2) President Kennedy today pushed aside other White House business to devote all his time and attention to working on the Berlin crisis address he will deliver tomorrow night to the American people over nationwide television and radio.

This sentence has a number of ambiguities, although since they are semantically unreasonable, it requires a careful reading to see them. The last noun phrase could be parsed *[nationwide [television and radio]]* or *[[nationwide television] and radio]*. The direct object of *pushed aside* should be *other White House business* but could also be the bizarre phrase *[other White House business to devote all his time and attention to working]* (i.e., a structure like *Kennedy affirmed [his intention to propose a new budget to address the deficit]*). Then the phrase *on the Berlin crisis address he will deliver tomorrow night to the American people* could be an adjunct modifying the verb *pushed*. A PP like *over nationwide television and radio* could be attached to any of the higher VPs or NPs (e.g., it could modify *people* or *night*).

The fact that there are many grammatically correct but semantically unreasonable parses for naturally occurring sentences is an irksome problem that affects all parsers. Fortunately, the CKY algorithm below is designed to efficiently handle structural ambiguities. And as we'll see in the following section, we can augment CKY with neural methods to choose a single correct parse by **syntactic disambiguation**.

syntactic  
disambiguation

## 13.2 CKY Parsing: A Dynamic Programming Approach

**Dynamic programming** provides a powerful framework for addressing the problems caused by ambiguity in grammars. Recall that a dynamic programming approach systematically fills in a table of solutions to sub-problems. The complete table has the solution to all the sub-problems needed to solve the problem as a whole. In the case of syntactic parsing, these sub-problems represent parse trees for all the constituents detected in the input.

chart parsing

The dynamic programming advantage arises from the context-free nature of our grammar rules — once a constituent has been discovered in a segment of the input we can record its presence and make it available for use in any subsequent derivation that might require it. This provides both time and storage efficiencies since subtrees can be looked up in a table, not reanalyzed. This section presents the Cocke-Kasami-Younger (CKY) algorithm, the most widely used dynamic-programming based approach to parsing. **Chart parsing** (Kaplan 1973, Kay 1982) is a related approach, and dynamic programming methods are often referred to as **chart parsing** methods.

### 13.2.1 Conversion to Chomsky Normal Form

The CKY algorithm requires grammars to first be in Chomsky Normal Form (CNF). Recall from Chapter 12 that grammars in CNF are restricted to rules of the form  $A \rightarrow B C$  or  $A \rightarrow w$ . That is, the right-hand side of each rule must expand either to two non-terminals or to a single terminal. Restricting a grammar to CNF does not

lead to any loss in expressiveness, since any context-free grammar can be converted into a corresponding CNF grammar that accepts exactly the same set of strings as the original grammar.

Let's start with the process of converting a generic CFG into one represented in CNF. Assuming we're dealing with an  $\epsilon$ -free grammar, there are three situations we need to address in any generic grammar: rules that mix terminals with non-terminals on the right-hand side, rules that have a single non-terminal on the right-hand side, and rules in which the length of the right-hand side is greater than 2.

The remedy for rules that mix terminals and non-terminals is to simply introduce a new dummy non-terminal that covers only the original terminal. For example, a rule for an infinitive verb phrase such as  $INF\text{-}VP \rightarrow to VP$  would be replaced by the two rules  $INF\text{-}VP \rightarrow TO VP$  and  $TO \rightarrow to$ .

### Unit productions

Rules with a single non-terminal on the right are called **unit productions**. We can eliminate unit productions by rewriting the right-hand side of the original rules with the right-hand side of all the non-unit production rules that they ultimately lead to. More formally, if  $A \xrightarrow{*} B$  by a chain of one or more unit productions and  $B \rightarrow \gamma$  is a non-unit production in our grammar, then we add  $A \rightarrow \gamma$  for each such rule in the grammar and discard all the intervening unit productions. As we demonstrate with our toy grammar, this can lead to a substantial *flattening* of the grammar and a consequent promotion of terminals to fairly high levels in the resulting trees.

Rules with right-hand sides longer than 2 are normalized through the introduction of new non-terminals that spread the longer sequences over several new rules. Formally, if we have a rule like

$$A \rightarrow BC\gamma$$

we replace the leftmost pair of non-terminals with a new non-terminal and introduce a new production, resulting in the following new rules:

$$\begin{aligned} A &\rightarrow X1\gamma \\ X1 &\rightarrow BC \end{aligned}$$

In the case of longer right-hand sides, we simply iterate this process until the offending rule has been replaced by rules of length 2. The choice of replacing the leftmost pair of non-terminals is purely arbitrary; any systematic scheme that results in binary rules would suffice.

In our current grammar, the rule  $S \rightarrow Aux\ NP\ VP$  would be replaced by the two rules  $S \rightarrow X1\ VP$  and  $X1 \rightarrow Aux\ NP$ .

The entire conversion process can be summarized as follows:

1. Copy all conforming rules to the new grammar unchanged.
2. Convert terminals within rules to dummy non-terminals.
3. Convert unit productions.
4. Make all rules binary and add them to new grammar.

Figure 13.3 shows the results of applying this entire conversion procedure to the  $L_1$  grammar introduced earlier on page 260. Note that this figure doesn't show the original lexical rules; since these original lexical rules are already in CNF, they all carry over unchanged to the new grammar. Figure 13.3 does, however, show the various places where the process of eliminating unit productions has, in effect, created new lexical rules. For example, all the original verbs have been promoted to both *VPs* and to *Ss* in the converted grammar.

$\mathcal{L}_1$ Grammar	$\mathcal{L}_1$ in CNF
$S \rightarrow NP VP$	$S \rightarrow NP VP$
$S \rightarrow Aux NP VP$	$S \rightarrow X1 VP$
$S \rightarrow VP$	$X1 \rightarrow Aux NP$
	$S \rightarrow book   include   prefer$
	$S \rightarrow Verb NP$
	$S \rightarrow X2 PP$
	$S \rightarrow Verb PP$
	$S \rightarrow VP PP$
$NP \rightarrow Pronoun$	$NP \rightarrow I   she   me$
$NP \rightarrow Proper-Noun$	$NP \rightarrow TWA   Houston$
$NP \rightarrow Det Nominal$	$NP \rightarrow Det Nominal$
$Nominal \rightarrow Noun$	$Nominal \rightarrow book   flight   meal   money$
$Nominal \rightarrow Nominal Noun$	$Nominal \rightarrow Nominal Noun$
$Nominal \rightarrow Nominal PP$	$Nominal \rightarrow Nominal PP$
$VP \rightarrow Verb$	$VP \rightarrow book   include   prefer$
$VP \rightarrow Verb NP$	$VP \rightarrow Verb NP$
$VP \rightarrow Verb NP PP$	$VP \rightarrow X2 PP$
$VP \rightarrow Verb PP$	$X2 \rightarrow Verb NP$
$VP \rightarrow VP PP$	$VP \rightarrow Verb PP$
$PP \rightarrow Preposition NP$	$VP \rightarrow VP PP$
	$PP \rightarrow Preposition NP$

**Figure 13.3**  $\mathcal{L}_1$  Grammar and its conversion to CNF. Note that although they aren't shown here, all the original lexical entries from  $\mathcal{L}_1$  carry over unchanged as well.

### 13.2.2 CKY Recognition

With our grammar now in CNF, each non-terminal node above the part-of-speech level in a parse tree will have exactly two daughters. A two-dimensional matrix can be used to encode the structure of an entire tree. For a sentence of length  $n$ , we will work with the upper-triangular portion of an  $(n+1) \times (n+1)$  matrix. Each cell  $[i, j]$  in this matrix contains the set of non-terminals that represent all the constituents that span positions  $i$  through  $j$  of the input. Since our indexing scheme begins with 0, it's natural to think of the indexes as pointing at the gaps between the input words (as in `0 Book 1 that 2 flight 3`). These gaps are often called **fenceposts**, on the metaphor of the posts between segments of fencing. It follows then that the cell that represents the entire input resides in position  $[0, n]$  in the matrix.

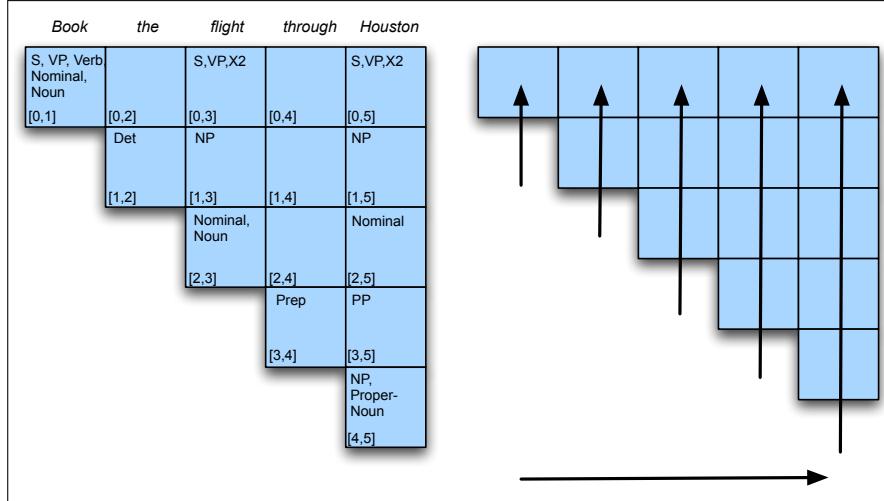
Since each non-terminal entry in our table has two daughters in the parse, it follows that for each constituent represented by an entry  $[i, j]$ , there must be a position in the input,  $k$ , where it can be split into two parts such that  $i < k < j$ . Given such a position  $k$ , the first constituent  $[i, k]$  must lie to the left of entry  $[i, j]$  somewhere along row  $i$ , and the second entry  $[k, j]$  must lie beneath it, along column  $j$ .

To make this more concrete, consider the following example with its completed parse matrix, shown in Fig. 13.4.

(13.3) Book the flight through Houston.

The superdiagonal row in the matrix contains the parts of speech for each word in the input. The subsequent diagonals above that superdiagonal contain constituents that cover all the spans of increasing length in the input.

Given this setup, CKY recognition consists of filling the parse table in the right way. To do this, we'll proceed in a bottom-up fashion so that at the point where we are filling any cell  $[i, j]$ , the cells containing the parts that could contribute to

Figure 13.4 Completed parse table for *Book the flight through Houston*.

this entry (i.e., the cells to the left and the cells below) have already been filled. The algorithm given in Fig. 13.5 fills the upper-triangular matrix a column at a time working from left to right, with each column filled from bottom to top, as the right side of Fig. 13.4 illustrates. This scheme guarantees that at each point in time we have all the information we need (to the left, since all the columns to the left have already been filled, and below since we’re filling bottom to top). It also mirrors online processing, since filling the columns from left to right corresponds to processing each word one at a time.

```

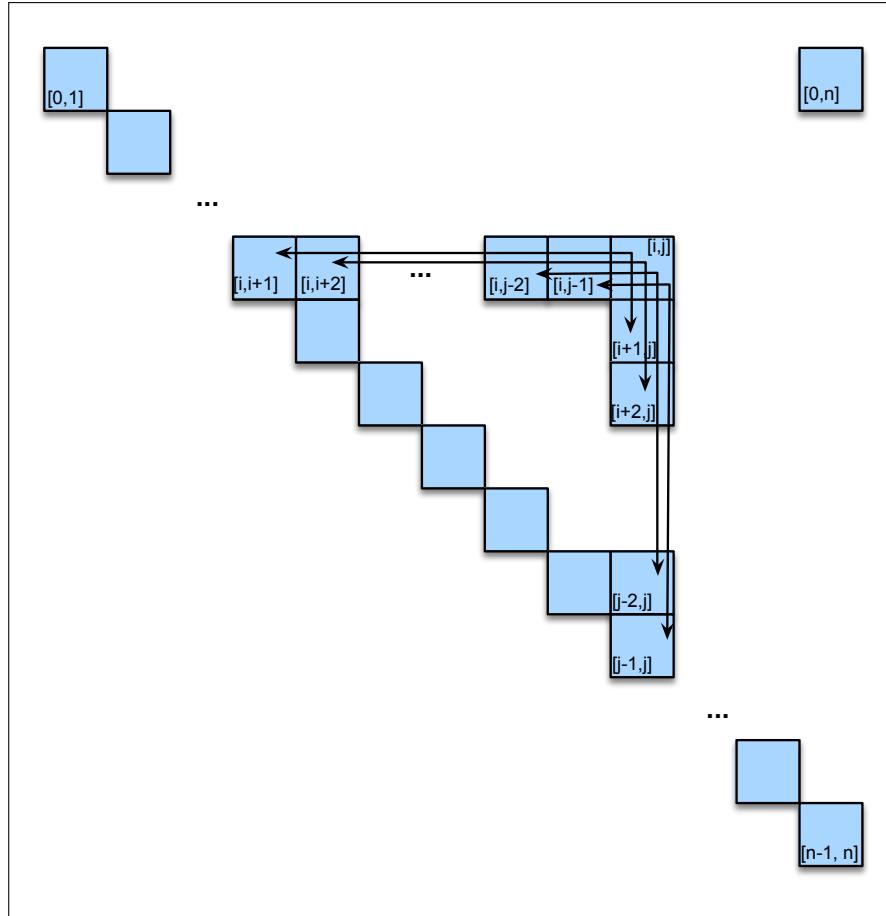
function CKY-PARSE(words, grammar) returns table
    for j ← from 1 to LENGTH(words) do
        for all {A | A → words[j] ∈ grammar} do
            table[j - 1, j] ← table[j - 1, j] ∪ A
    for i ← from j - 2 down to 0 do
        for k ← i + 1 to j - 1 do
            for all {A | A → BC ∈ grammar and B ∈ table[i, k] and C ∈ table[k, j]} do
                table[i, j] ← table[i, j] ∪ A

```

Figure 13.5 The CKY algorithm.

The outermost loop of the algorithm given in Fig. 13.5 iterates over the columns, and the second loop iterates over the rows, from the bottom up. The purpose of the innermost loop is to range over all the places where a substring spanning *i* to *j* in the input might be split in two. As *k* ranges over the places where the string can be split, the pairs of cells we consider move, in lockstep, to the right along row *i* and down along column *j*. Figure 13.6 illustrates the general case of filling cell [*i, j*]. At each such split, the algorithm considers whether the contents of the two cells can be combined in a way that is sanctioned by a rule in the grammar. If such a rule exists, the non-terminal on its left-hand side is entered into the table.

Figure 13.7 shows how the five cells of column 5 of the table are filled after the word *Houston* is read. The arrows point out the two spans that are being used to add an entry to the table. Note that the action in cell [0, 5] indicates the presence of three alternative parses for this input, one where the *PP* modifies the *flight*, one where



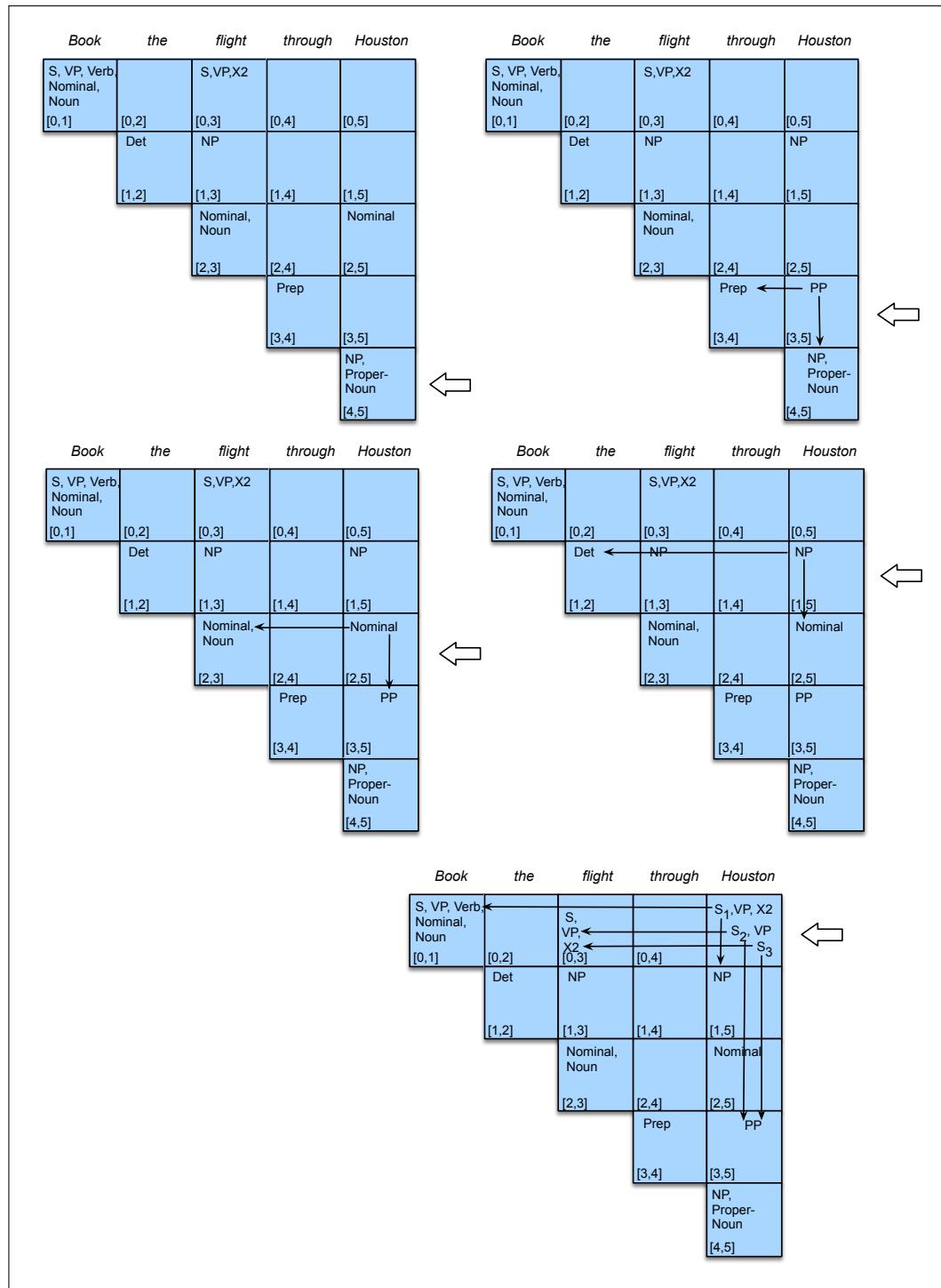
**Figure 13.6** All the ways to fill the  $[i, j]$ th cell in the CKY table.

it modifies the booking, and one that captures the second argument in the original  $VP \rightarrow Verb\ NP\ PP$  rule, now captured indirectly with the  $VP \rightarrow X2\ PP$  rule.

### 13.2.3 CKY Parsing

The algorithm given in Fig. 13.5 is a recognizer, not a parser; for it to succeed, it simply has to find an  $S$  in cell  $[0, n]$ . To turn it into a parser capable of returning all possible parses for a given input, we can make two simple changes to the algorithm: the first change is to augment the entries in the table so that each non-terminal is paired with pointers to the table entries from which it was derived (more or less as shown in Fig. 13.7), the second change is to permit multiple versions of the same non-terminal to be entered into the table (again as shown in Fig. 13.7). With these changes, the completed table contains all the possible parses for a given input. Returning an arbitrary single parse consists of choosing an  $S$  from cell  $[0, n]$  and then recursively retrieving its component constituents from the table.

Returning every parse for a sentence may not be useful, since there may be an exponential number of parses. We'll see in the next section how to retrieve only the best parse.


 Figure 13.7 Filling the cells of column 5 after reading the word *Houston*.

### 13.2.4 CKY in Practice

Finally, we should note that while the restriction to CNF does not pose a problem theoretically, it does pose some non-trivial problems in practice. Obviously, as things stand now, our parser isn't returning trees that are consistent with the grammar given to us by our friendly syntacticians. In addition to making our grammar developers unhappy, the conversion to CNF will complicate any syntax-driven approach to semantic analysis.

One approach to getting around these problems is to keep enough information around to transform our trees back to the original grammar as a post-processing step of the parse. This is trivial in the case of the transformation used for rules with length greater than 2. Simply deleting the new dummy non-terminals and promoting their daughters restores the original tree.

In the case of unit productions, it turns out to be more convenient to alter the basic CKY algorithm to handle them directly than it is to store the information needed to recover the correct trees. Exercise 13.3 asks you to make this change. Many of the probabilistic parsers presented in Appendix C use the CKY algorithm altered in just this manner.

## 13.3 Span-Based Neural Constituency Parsing

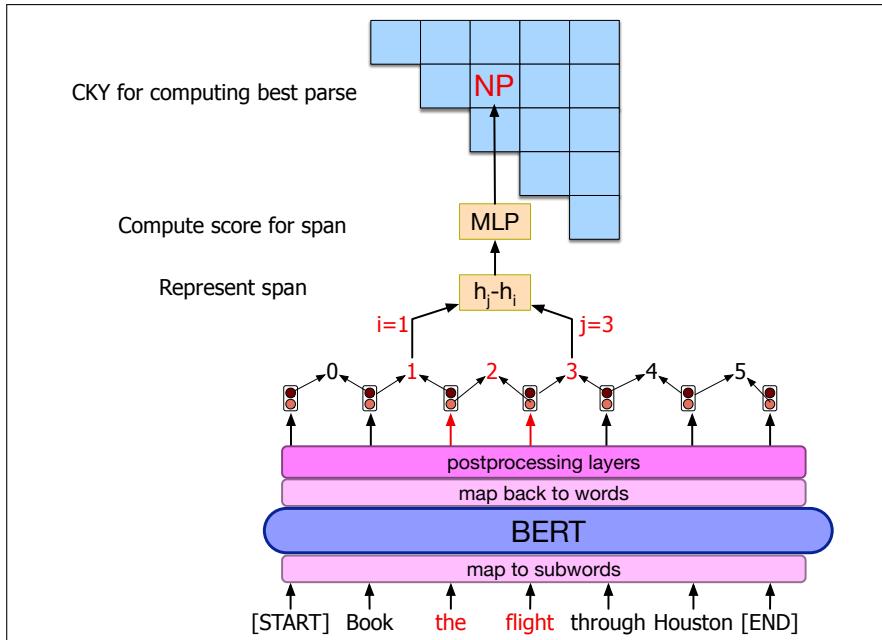
While the CKY parsing algorithm we've seen so far does great at enumerating all the possible parse trees for a sentence, it has a large problem: it doesn't tell us which parse is the correct one! That is, it doesn't **disambiguate** among the possible parses. To solve the disambiguation problem we'll use a simple neural extension of the CKY algorithm. The intuition of such parsing algorithms (often called **span-based constituency parsing**, or **neural CKY**), is to train a neural classifier to assign a score to each constituent, and then use a modified version of CKY to combine these constituent scores to find the best-scoring parse tree. Here we'll describe a version of the algorithm from [Kitaev et al. \(2019\)](#).

### 13.3.1 Computing Scores for a Span

**span** Let's begin by considering just the constituent (we'll call it a **span**) that lies between fencepost positions  $i$  and  $j$  with non-terminal symbol label  $l$ . We'll build a classifier to assign a score  $s(i, j, l)$  to this constituent span.

Fig. 13.8 sketches the architecture. The input word tokens are embedded by passing them through a pretrained language model like BERT. Because BERT operates on the level of subword (wordpiece) tokens rather than words, we'll first need to convert the BERT outputs to word representations. One standard way of doing this is to simply use the last subword unit as the representation for the word (using the first subword unit seems to work equivalently well). The embeddings can then be passed through some postprocessing layers; [Kitaev et al. \(2019\)](#), for example, use 8 Transformer layers.

The resulting word encoder outputs  $y_t$  are then used to compute a span score. First, we must map the word encodings (indexed by word positions) to span encodings (indexed by fenceposts). We do this by representing each fencepost with two separate values; the intuition is that a span endpoint to the right of a word represents different information than a span endpoint to the left of a word. We convert each



**Figure 13.8** A simplified outline of computing the span score for the span *the flight* with the label NP.

word output  $y_t$  into a (leftward-pointing) value for spans ending at this fencepost,  $\vec{y}_t$ , and a (rightward-pointing) value  $\overleftarrow{y}_t$  for spans beginning at this fencepost, by splitting  $y_t$  into two halves. Each span then stretches from one double-vector fencepost to another, as in the following representation of *the flight*, which is  $\text{span}(1, 3)$ :

START<sub>0</sub>      Book      the      flight      through  
 $y_0 \quad \overrightarrow{y_0} \overleftarrow{y_1}$      $y_1 \quad \overrightarrow{y_1} \overleftarrow{y_2}$      $y_2 \quad \overrightarrow{y_2} \overleftarrow{y_3}$      $y_3 \quad \overrightarrow{y_3} \overleftarrow{y_4}$      $y_4 \quad \overrightarrow{y_4} \overleftarrow{y_5}$     ...  
 $\textcircled{①} \quad \textcircled{②} \quad \textcircled{③} \quad \textcircled{④}$   
span(1,3)

A traditional way to represent a span, developed originally for RNN-based models ([Wang and Chang, 2016](#)), but extended also to Transformers, is to take the difference between the embeddings of its start and end, i.e., representing span  $(i, j)$  by subtracting the embedding of  $i$  from the embedding of  $j$ . Here we represent a span by concatenating the difference of each of its fencepost components:

$$v(i,j) = [\overrightarrow{y_j} - \overrightarrow{y_i} ; \overleftarrow{y_{j+1}} - \overleftarrow{y_{i+1}}] \quad (13.4)$$

The span vector  $v$  is then passed through an MLP span classifier, with two fully-connected layers and one ReLU activation function, whose output dimensionality is the number of possible non-terminal labels:

$$s(i, j, \cdot) = \mathbf{W}_2 \text{ReLU}(\text{LayerNorm}(\mathbf{W}_1 \mathbf{v}(i, j))) \quad (13.5)$$

The MLP then outputs a score for each possible non-terminal.

### 13.3.2 Integrating Span Scores into a Parse

Now we have a score for each labeled constituent span  $s(i, j, l)$ . But we need a score for an entire parse tree. Formally a tree  $T$  is represented as a set of  $|T|$  such labeled

spans, with the  $t^{\text{th}}$  span starting at position  $i_t$  and ending at position  $j_t$ , with label  $l_t$ :

$$T = \{(i_t, j_t, l_t) : t = 1, \dots, |T|\} \quad (13.6)$$

Thus once we have a score for each span, the parser can compute a score for the whole tree  $s(T)$  simply by summing over the scores of its constituent spans:

$$s(T) = \sum_{(i,j,l) \in T} s(i, j, l) \quad (13.7)$$

And we can choose the final parse tree as the tree with the maximum score:

$$\hat{T} = \underset{T}{\operatorname{argmax}} s(T) \quad (13.8)$$

The simplest method to produce the most likely parse is to greedily choose the highest scoring label for each span. This greedy method is not guaranteed to produce a tree, since the best label for a span might not fit into a complete tree. In practice, however, the greedy method tends to find trees; in their experiments [Gaddy et al. \(2018\)](#) finds that 95% of predicted bracketings form valid trees.

Nonetheless it is more common to use a variant the CKY algorithm to find the full parse. The variant defined in [Gaddy et al. \(2018\)](#) works as follows. Let's define  $s_{\text{best}}(i, j)$  as the score of the best subtree spanning  $(i, j)$ . For spans of length one, we choose the best label:

$$s_{\text{best}}(i, i+1) = \max_l s(i, i+1, l) \quad (13.9)$$

For other spans  $(i, j)$ , the recursion is:

$$\begin{aligned} s_{\text{best}}(i, j) &= \max_l s(i, j, l) \\ &+ \max_k [s_{\text{best}}(i, k) + s_{\text{best}}(k, j)] \end{aligned} \quad (13.10)$$

For more details on span-based parsing, including the margin-based training algorithm, see [Stern et al. \(2017\)](#), [Gaddy et al. \(2018\)](#), [Kitaev and Klein \(2018\)](#), and [Kitaev et al. \(2019\)](#).

## 13.4 Evaluating Parsers

**PARSEVAL** The standard tool for evaluating parsers that assign a single parse tree to a sentence is the **PARSEVAL** metrics ([Black et al., 1991](#)). The PARSEVAL metric measures how much the **constituents** in the hypothesis parse tree look like the constituents in a hand-labeled, **reference** parse. PARSEVAL thus requires a human-labeled reference (or “gold standard”) parse tree for each sentence in the test set; we generally draw these reference parses from a treebank like the Penn Treebank.

A constituent in a hypothesis parse  $C_h$  of a sentence  $s$  is labeled correct if there is a constituent in the reference parse  $C_r$  with the same starting point, ending point, and non-terminal symbol. We can then measure the precision and recall just as for tasks we've seen already like named entity tagging:

$$\text{labeled recall: } = \frac{\# \text{ of correct constituents in hypothesis parse of } s}{\# \text{ of correct constituents in reference parse of } s}$$

$$\text{labeled precision:} = \frac{\# \text{ of correct constituents in hypothesis parse of } s}{\# \text{ of total constituents in hypothesis parse of } s}$$

As usual, we often report a combination of the two,  $F_1$ :

$$F_1 = \frac{2PR}{P+R} \quad (13.11)$$

We additionally use a new metric, crossing brackets, for each sentence  $s$ :

**cross-brackets:** the number of constituents for which the reference parse has a bracketing such as ((A B) C) but the hypothesis parse has a bracketing such as (A (B C)).

For comparing parsers that use different grammars, the PARSEVAL metric includes a canonicalization algorithm for removing information likely to be grammar-specific (auxiliaries, pre-infinitival “to”, etc.) and for computing a simplified score (Black et al., 1991). The canonical implementation of the PARSEVAL metrics is called evalb (Sekine and Collins, 1997).

## 13.5 Partial Parsing

**partial parse**  
**shallow parse**

Many language processing tasks do not require complex, complete parse trees for all inputs. For these tasks, a **partial parse**, or **shallow parse**, of input sentences may be sufficient. For example, information extraction systems generally do not extract *all* the possible information from a text: they simply identify and classify the segments in a text that are likely to contain valuable information.

**chunking**

One kind of partial parsing is known as **chunking**. Chunking is the process of identifying and classifying the flat, non-overlapping segments of a sentence that constitute the basic non-recursive phrases corresponding to the major content-word parts-of-speech: noun phrases, verb phrases, adjective phrases, and prepositional phrases. The task of finding all the base noun phrases in a text is particularly common. Since chunked texts lack a hierarchical structure, a simple bracketing notation is sufficient to denote the location and the type of the chunks in a given example:

(13.12) [NP The morning flight] [PP from] [NP Denver] [VP has arrived.]

This bracketing notation makes clear the two fundamental tasks that are involved in chunking: segmenting (finding the non-overlapping extents of the chunks) and labeling (assigning the correct tag to the discovered chunks). Some input words may not be part of any chunk, particularly in tasks like base *NP*:

(13.13) [NP The morning flight] from [NP Denver] has arrived.

What constitutes a syntactic base phrase depends on the application (and whether the phrases come from a treebank). Nevertheless, some standard guidelines are followed in most systems. First and foremost, base phrases of a given type do not recursively contain any constituents of the same type. Eliminating this kind of recursion leaves us with the problem of determining the boundaries of the non-recursive phrases. In most approaches, base phrases include the headword of the phrase, along with any pre-head material within the constituent, while crucially excluding any post-head material. Eliminating post-head modifiers obviates the need to resolve attachment ambiguities. This exclusion does lead to certain oddities, such as *PPs* and *VPs* often consisting solely of their heads. Thus *a flight from Indianapolis to Houston* would be reduced to the following:

(13.14) [NP a flight] [PP from] [NP Indianapolis][PP to][NP Houston]

**Chunking Algorithms** Chunking is generally done via supervised learning, training a BIO sequence labeler of the sort we saw in Chapter 8 from annotated training data. Recall that in BIO tagging, we have a tag for the beginning (B) and inside (I) of each chunk type, and one for tokens outside (O) any chunk. The following example shows the bracketing notation of (13.12) on page 270 reframed as a tagging task:

(13.15) *The morning flight from Denver has arrived*  
 B\_NP I\_NP I\_NP B\_PP B\_NP B\_VP I\_VP

The same sentence with only the base-NPs tagged illustrates the role of the O tags.

(13.16) *The morning flight from Denver has arrived.*  
 B\_NP I\_NP I\_NP O B\_NP O O

Since annotation efforts are expensive and time consuming, chunkers usually rely on existing treebanks like the Penn Treebank, extracting syntactic phrases from the full parse constituents of a sentence, finding the appropriate heads and then including the material to the left of the head, ignoring the text to the right. This is somewhat error-prone since it relies on the accuracy of the head-finding rules described in Chapter 12.

Given a training set, any sequence model can be used to chunk: CRF, RNN, Transformer, etc. As with the evaluation of named-entity taggers, the evaluation of chunkers proceeds by comparing chunker output with gold-standard answers provided by human annotators, using precision, recall, and  $F_1$ .

## 13.6 CCG Parsing

Lexicalized grammar frameworks such as CCG pose problems for which the phrase-based methods we've been discussing are not particularly well-suited. To quickly review, CCG consists of three major parts: a set of categories, a lexicon that associates words with categories, and a set of rules that govern how categories combine in context. Categories can be either atomic elements, such as *S* and *NP*, or functions such as  $(S \setminus NP)/NP$  which specifies the transitive verb category. Rules specify how functions, their arguments, and other functions combine. For example, the following rule templates, **forward** and **backward function application**, specify the way that functions apply to their arguments.

$$\begin{aligned} X/Y \ Y &\Rightarrow X \\ Y \ X \setminus Y &\Rightarrow X \end{aligned}$$

The first rule applies a function to its argument on the right, while the second looks to the left for its argument. The result of applying either of these rules is the category specified as the value of the function being applied. For the purposes of this discussion, we'll rely on these two rules along with the **forward** and **backward composition** rules and **type-raising**, as described in Chapter 12.

### 13.6.1 Ambiguity in CCG

As is always the case in parsing, managing ambiguity is the key to successful CCG parsing. The difficulties with CCG parsing arise from the ambiguity caused by the large number of complex lexical categories combined with the very general nature of

the grammatical rules. To see some of the ways that ambiguity arises in a categorial framework, consider the following example.

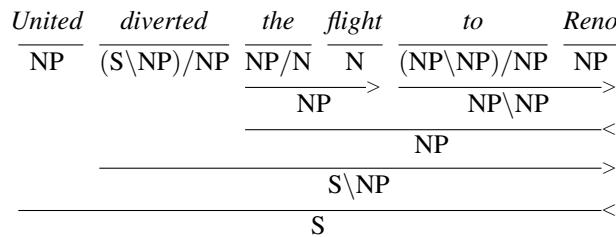
- (13.17) United diverted the flight to Reno.

Our grasp of the role of *the flight* in this example depends on whether the prepositional phrase *to Reno* is taken as a modifier of *the flight*, as a modifier of the entire verb phrase, or as a potential second argument to the verb *divert*. In a context-free grammar approach, this ambiguity would manifest itself as a choice among the following rules in the grammar.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Nominal} &\rightarrow \text{Nominal } PP \\ VP &\rightarrow VP \; PP \\ VP &\rightarrow \text{Verb } NP \; PP \end{aligned}$$

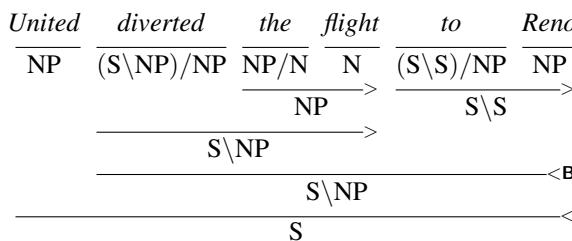
In a phrase-structure approach we would simply assign the word *to* to the category *P* allowing it to combine with *Reno* to form a prepositional phrase. The subsequent choice of grammar rules would then dictate the ultimate derivation. In the categorial approach, we can associate *to* with distinct categories to reflect the ways in which it might interact with other elements in a sentence. The fairly abstract combinatoric rules would then sort out which derivations are possible. Therefore, the source of ambiguity arises not from the grammar but rather from the lexicon.

Let's see how this works by considering several possible derivations for this example. To capture the case where the prepositional phrase *to Reno* modifies *the flight*, we assign the preposition *to* the category  $(NP \setminus NP)/NP$ , which gives rise to the following derivation.

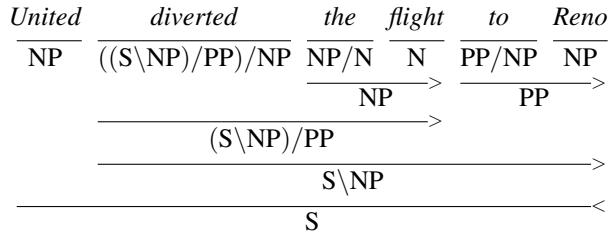


Here, the category assigned to *to* expects to find two arguments: one to the right as with a traditional preposition, and one to the left that corresponds to the *NP* to be modified.

Alternatively, we could assign *to* to the category  $(S \setminus S)/NP$ , which permits the following derivation where *to Reno* modifies the preceding verb phrase.



A third possibility is to view *divert* as a ditransitive verb by assigning it to the category  $((S \setminus NP)/PP)/NP$ , while treating *to Reno* as a simple prepositional phrase.



While CCG parsers are still subject to ambiguity arising from the choice of grammar rules, including the kind of spurious ambiguity discussed in Chapter 12, it should be clear that the choice of lexical categories is the primary problem to be addressed in CCG parsing.

### 13.6.2 CCG Parsing Frameworks

Since the rules in combinatorial grammars are either binary or unary, a bottom-up, tabular approach based on the CKY algorithm should be directly applicable to CCG parsing. Unfortunately, the large number of lexical categories available for each word, combined with the promiscuity of CCG's combinatoric rules, leads to an explosion in the number of (mostly useless) constituents added to the parsing table. The key to managing this explosion of zombie constituents is to accurately assess and exploit the most likely lexical categories possible for each word — a process called supertagging.

The following sections describe two approaches to CCG parsing that make use of supertags. Section 13.6.4, presents an approach that structures the parsing process as a heuristic search through the use of the A\* algorithm. The following section then briefly describes a more traditional classifier-based approach that manages the search space complexity through the use of **adaptive supertagging** — a process that iteratively considers more and more tags until a parse is found.

### 13.6.3 Supertagging

**supertagging** Chapter 8 introduced the task of part-of-speech tagging, the process of assigning the correct lexical category to each word in a sentence. **Supertagging** is the corresponding task for highly lexicalized grammar frameworks, where the assigned tags often dictate much of the derivation for a sentence.

CCG supertaggers rely on treebanks such as CCGbank to provide both the overall set of lexical categories as well as the allowable category assignments for each word in the lexicon. CCGbank includes over 1000 lexical categories, however, in practice, most supertaggers limit their tagsets to those tags that occur at least 10 times in the training corpus. This results in a total of around 425 lexical categories available for use in the lexicon. Note that even this smaller number is large in contrast to the 45 POS types used by the Penn Treebank tagset.

As with traditional part-of-speech tagging, the standard approach to building a CCG supertagger is to use supervised machine learning to build a sequence labeler from hand-annotated training data. To find the most likely sequence of tags given a sentence, it is most common to use a neural sequence model, either RNN or Transformer.

It's also possible, however, to use the CRF tagging model described in Chapter 8, using similar features; the current word  $w_i$ , its surrounding words within  $l$  words, local POS tags and character suffixes, and the supertag from the prior timestep,

training by maximizing log-likelihood of the training corpus and decoding via the Viterbi algorithm as described in Chapter 8.

Unfortunately the large number of possible supertags combined with high per-word ambiguity leads the naive CRF algorithm to error rates that are too high for practical use in a parser. The single best tag sequence  $\hat{T}$  will typically contain too many incorrect tags for effective parsing to take place. To overcome this, we instead return a probability distribution over the possible supertags for each word in the input. The following table illustrates an example distribution for a simple sentence, in which each column represents the probability of each supertag for a given word *in the context of the input sentence*. The “...” represent all the remaining supertags possible for each word.

United	serves	Denver
$N/N: 0.4$	$(S \setminus NP)/NP: 0.8$	$NP: 0.9$
$NP: 0.3$	$N: 0.1$	$N/N: 0.05$
$S/S: 0.1$	...	...
$S \setminus S: .05$		
...		

To get the probability of each possible word/tag pair, we'll need to sum the probabilities of all the supertag sequences that contain that tag at that location. This can be done with the forward-backward algorithm that is also used to train the CRF, described in Appendix A.

### 13.6.4 CCG Parsing using the A\* Algorithm

The A\* algorithm is a heuristic search method that employs an agenda to find an optimal solution. Search states representing partial solutions are added to an agenda based on a cost function, with the least-cost option being selected for further exploration at each iteration. When a state representing a complete solution is first selected from the agenda, it is guaranteed to be optimal and the search terminates.

The A\* cost function,  $f(n)$ , is used to efficiently guide the search to a solution. The  $f$ -cost has two components:  $g(n)$ , the exact cost of the partial solution represented by the state  $n$ , and  $h(n)$  a heuristic approximation of the cost of a solution that makes use of  $n$ . When  $h(n)$  satisfies the criteria of not overestimating the actual cost, A\* will find an optimal solution. Not surprisingly, the closer the heuristic can get to the actual cost, the more effective A\* is at finding a solution without having to explore a significant portion of the solution space.

When applied to parsing, search states correspond to edges representing completed constituents. Each edge specifies a constituent's start and end positions, its grammatical category, and its  $f$ -cost. Here, the  $g$  component represents the current cost of an edge and the  $h$  component represents an estimate of the cost to complete a derivation that makes use of that edge. The use of A\* for phrase structure parsing originated with [Klein and Manning \(2003\)](#), while the CCG approach presented here is based on the work of [Lewis and Steedman \(2014\)](#).

Using information from a supertagger, an agenda and a parse table are initialized with states representing all the possible lexical categories for each word in the input, along with their  $f$ -costs. The main loop removes the lowest cost edge from the agenda and tests to see if it is a complete derivation. If it reflects a complete derivation it is selected as the best solution and the loop terminates. Otherwise, new states based on the applicable CCG rules are generated, assigned costs, and entered

into the agenda to await further processing. The loop continues until a complete derivation is discovered, or the agenda is exhausted, indicating a failed parse. The algorithm is given in Fig. 13.9.

```

function CCG-ASTAR-PARSE(words) returns table or failure

    supertags  $\leftarrow$  SUPERTAGGER(words)
    for i  $\leftarrow$  from 1 to LENGTH(words) do
        for all {A | (words[i], A, score)  $\in$  supertags} do
            edge  $\leftarrow$  MAKEEDGE(i − 1, i, A, score)
            table  $\leftarrow$  INSERTEDGE(table, edge)
            agenda  $\leftarrow$  INSERTEDGE(agenda, edge)
    loop do
        if EMPTY?(agenda) return failure
        current  $\leftarrow$  POP(agenda)
        if COMPLETEDPARSE?(current) return table
        table  $\leftarrow$  INSERTEDGE(chart, edge)
        for each rule in APPLICABLERULES(edge) do
            successor  $\leftarrow$  APPLY(rule, edge)
            if successor  $\notin$  agenda or chart
                agenda  $\leftarrow$  INSERTEDGE(agenda, successor)
            else if successor  $\in$  agenda with higher cost
                agenda  $\leftarrow$  REPLACEEDGE(agenda, successor)

```

**Figure 13.9** A\*-based CCG parsing.

### Heuristic Functions

Before we can define a heuristic function for our A\* search, we need to decide how to assess the quality of CCG derivations. We'll make the simplifying assumption that the probability of a CCG derivation is just the product of the probability of the supertags assigned to the words in the derivation, ignoring the rules used in the derivation. More formally, given a sentence *S* and derivation *D* that contains supertag sequence *T*, we have:

$$P(D, S) = P(T, S) \quad (13.18)$$

$$= \prod_{i=1}^n P(t_i | s_i) \quad (13.19)$$

To better fit with the traditional A\* approach, we'd prefer to have states scored by a cost function where lower is better (i.e., we're trying to minimize the cost of a derivation). To achieve this, we'll use negative log probabilities to score derivations; this results in the following equation, which we'll use to score completed CCG derivations.

$$P(D, S) = P(T, S) \quad (13.20)$$

$$= \sum_{i=1}^n -\log P(t_i | s_i) \quad (13.21)$$

Given this model, we can define our *f*-cost as follows. The *f*-cost of an edge is the sum of two components: *g*(*n*), the cost of the span represented by the edge, and

$h(n)$ , the estimate of the cost to complete a derivation containing that edge (these are often referred to as the **inside** and **outside costs**). We'll define  $g(n)$  for an edge using Equation 13.21. That is, it is just the sum of the costs of the supertags that comprise the span.

For  $h(n)$ , we need a score that approximates but *never overestimates* the actual cost of the final derivation. A simple heuristic that meets this requirement assumes that each of the words in the outside span will be assigned its *most probable supertag*. If these are the tags used in the final derivation, then its score will equal the heuristic. If any other tags are used in the final derivation the  $f$ -cost will be higher since the new tags must have higher costs, thus guaranteeing that we will not overestimate.

Putting this all together, we arrive at the following definition of a suitable  $f$ -cost for an edge.

$$\begin{aligned} f(w_{i,j}, t_{i,j}) &= g(w_{i,j}) + h(w_{i,j}) \\ &= \sum_{k=i}^j -\log P(t_k | w_k) + \\ &\quad \sum_{k=1}^{i-1} \min_{t \in \text{tags}} (-\log P(t | w_k)) + \sum_{k=j+1}^N \min_{t \in \text{tags}} (-\log P(t | w_k)) \end{aligned} \tag{13.22}$$

As an example, consider an edge representing the word *serves* with the supertag  $N$  in the following example.

(13.23) United serves Denver.

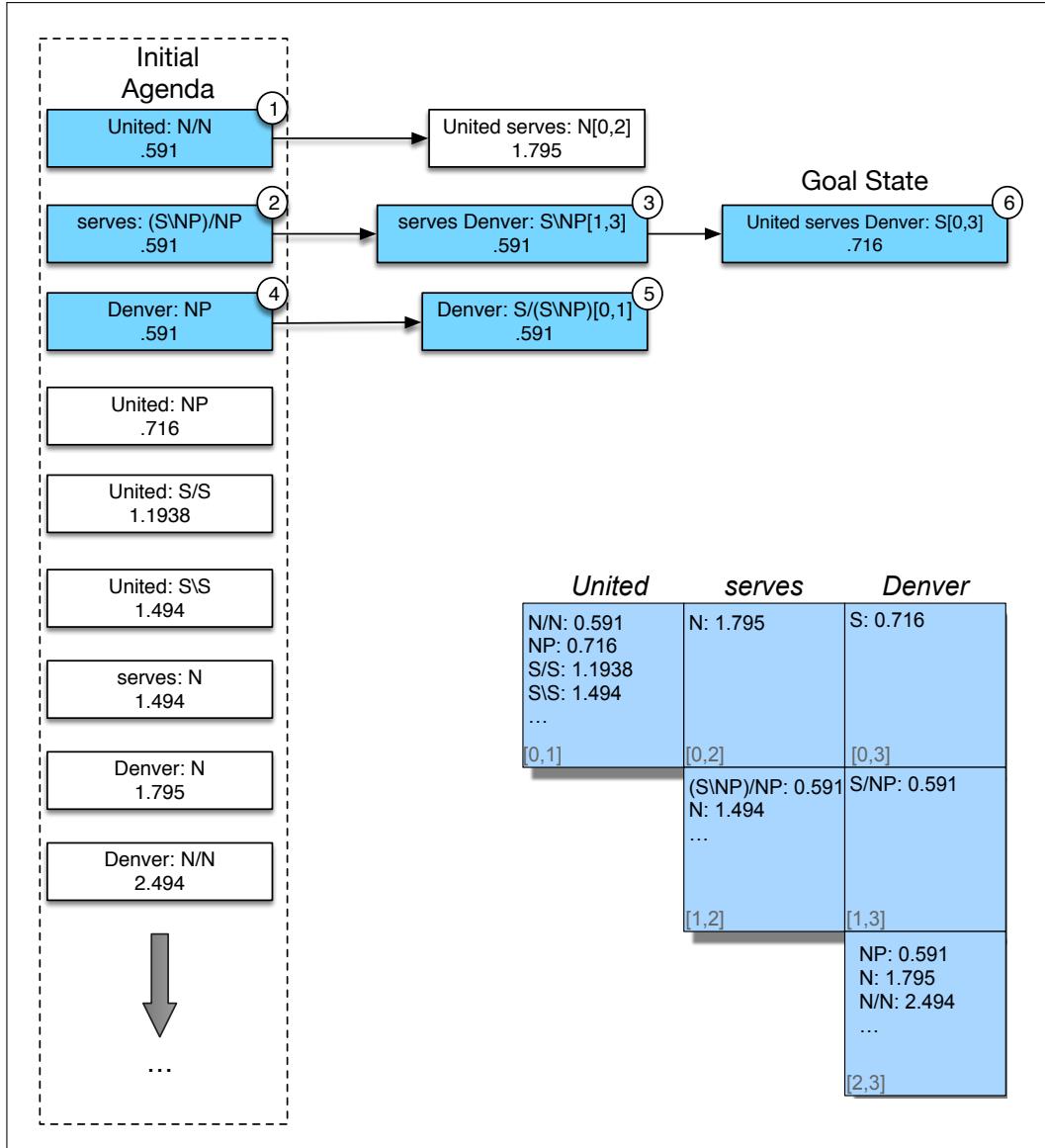
The  $g$ -cost for this edge is just the negative log probability of this tag,  $-\log_{10}(0.1)$ , or 1. The outside  $h$ -cost consists of the most optimistic supertag assignments for *United* and *Denver*, which are  $N/N$  and  $NP$  respectively. The resulting  $f$ -cost for this edge is therefore 1.443.

### An Example

Fig. 13.10 shows the initial agenda and the progress of a complete parse for this example. After initializing the agenda and the parse table with information from the supertagger, it selects the best edge from the agenda — the entry for *United* with the tag  $N/N$  and  $f$ -cost 0.591. This edge does not constitute a complete parse and is therefore used to generate new states by applying all the relevant grammar rules. In this case, applying forward application to *United: N/N* and *serves: N* results in the creation of the edge *United serves: N[0,2], 1.795* to the agenda.

Skipping ahead, at the third iteration an edge representing the complete derivation *United serves Denver, S[0,3], .716* is added to the agenda. However, the algorithm does not terminate at this point since the cost of this edge (.716) does not place it at the top of the agenda. Instead, the edge representing *Denver* with the category  $NP$  is popped. This leads to the addition of another edge to the agenda (type-raising *Denver*). Only after this edge is popped and dealt with does the earlier state representing a complete derivation rise to the top of the agenda where it is popped, goal tested, and returned as a solution.

The effectiveness of the  $A^*$  approach is reflected in the coloring of the states in Fig. 13.10 as well as the final parsing table. The edges shown in blue (including all the initial lexical category assignments not explicitly shown) reflect states in the search space that never made it to the top of the agenda and, therefore, never



**Figure 13.10** Example of an A\* search for the example “United serves Denver”. The circled numbers on the blue boxes indicate the order in which the states are popped from the agenda. The costs in each state are based on f-costs using negative  $\log_{10}$  probabilities.

contributed any edges to the final table. This is in contrast to the PCKY approach where the parser systematically fills the parse table with all possible constituents for all possible spans in the input, filling the table with myriad constituents that do not contribute to the final analysis.

## 13.7 Summary

This chapter introduced constituency parsing. Here’s a summary of the main points:

- **Structural ambiguity** is a significant problem for parsers. Common sources of structural ambiguity include **PP-attachment**, **coordination ambiguity**, and **noun-phrase bracketing ambiguity**.
- **Dynamic programming** parsing algorithms, such as **CKY**, use a table of partial parses to efficiently parse ambiguous sentences.
- **CKY** restricts the form of the grammar to Chomsky normal form (CNF).
- 
- Parsers are evaluated with three metrics: **labeled recall**, **labeled precision**, and **cross-brackets**.
- **Partial parsing** and **chunking** are methods for identifying shallow syntactic constituents in a text. They are solved by sequence models trained on syntactically-annotated data.

## Bibliographical and Historical Notes

Writing about the history of compilers, Knuth notes:

In this field there has been an unusual amount of parallel discovery of the same technique by people working independently.

Well, perhaps not unusual, since multiple discovery is the norm in science (see page ??). But there has certainly been enough parallel publication that this history errs on the side of succinctness in giving only a characteristic early mention of each algorithm; the interested reader should see [Aho and Ullman \(1972\)](#).

WFST

Bottom-up parsing seems to have been first described by [Yngve \(1955\)](#), who gave a breadth-first, bottom-up parsing algorithm as part of an illustration of a machine translation procedure. Top-down approaches to parsing and translation were described (presumably independently) by at least [Glennie \(1960\)](#), [Irons \(1961\)](#), and [Kuno and Oettinger \(1963\)](#). Dynamic programming parsing, once again, has a history of independent discovery. According to Martin Kay (personal communication), a dynamic programming parser containing the roots of the CKY algorithm was first implemented by John Cocke in 1960. Later work extended and formalized the algorithm, as well as proving its time complexity ([Kay 1967](#), [Younger 1967](#), [Kasami 1965](#)). The related **well-formed substring table** (WFST) seems to have been independently proposed by [Kuno \(1965\)](#) as a data structure that stores the results of all previous computations in the course of the parse. Based on a generalization of Cocke's work, a similar data structure had been independently described in [Kay \(1967\)](#) (and [Kay 1973](#)). The top-down application of dynamic programming to parsing was described in Earley's Ph.D. dissertation ([Earley 1968](#), [Earley 1970](#)). [Sheil \(1976\)](#) showed the equivalence of the WFST and the Earley algorithm. [Norvig \(1991\)](#) shows that the efficiency offered by dynamic programming can be captured in any language with a *memoization* function (such as in LISP) simply by wrapping the *memoization* operation around a simple top-down parser.

While parsing via cascades of finite-state automata had been common in the early history of parsing ([Harris, 1962](#)), the focus shifted to full CFG parsing quite soon afterward. [Church \(1980\)](#) argued for a return to finite-state grammars as a processing model for natural language understanding; other early finite-state parsing models include [Ejherhed \(1988\)](#).

The classic reference for parsing algorithms is [Aho and Ullman \(1972\)](#); although the focus of that book is on computer languages, most of the algorithms have been applied to natural language. A good programming languages textbook such as [Aho et al. \(1986\)](#) is also useful.

## Exercises

- 13.1** Implement the algorithm to convert arbitrary context-free grammars to CNF. Apply your program to the  $\mathcal{L}_1$  grammar.
- 13.2** Implement the CKY algorithm and test it with your converted  $\mathcal{L}_1$  grammar.
- 13.3** Rewrite the CKY algorithm given in Fig. 13.5 on page 264 so that it can accept grammars that contain unit productions.
- 13.4** Discuss the relative advantages and disadvantages of partial versus full parsing.
- 13.5** Discuss how to augment a parser to deal with input that may be incorrect, for example, containing spelling errors or mistakes arising from automatic speech recognition.
- 13.6** Implement the PARSEVAL metrics described in Section 13.4. Next, use a parser and a treebank, compare your metrics against a standard implementation. Analyze the errors in your approach.

CHAPTER

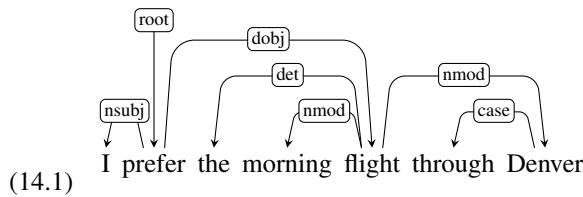
## 14

## Dependency Parsing

dependency grammars

The focus of the two previous chapters has been on context-free grammars and their use in automatically generating constituent-based representations. Here we present another family of grammar formalisms called **dependency grammars** that are quite important in contemporary speech and language processing systems. In these formalisms, phrasal constituents and phrase-structure rules do not play a direct role. Instead, the syntactic structure of a sentence is described solely in terms of the words (or lemmas) in a sentence and an associated set of directed binary grammatical relations that hold among the words.

The following diagram illustrates a dependency-style analysis using the standard graphical method favored in the dependency-parsing community.



typed dependency

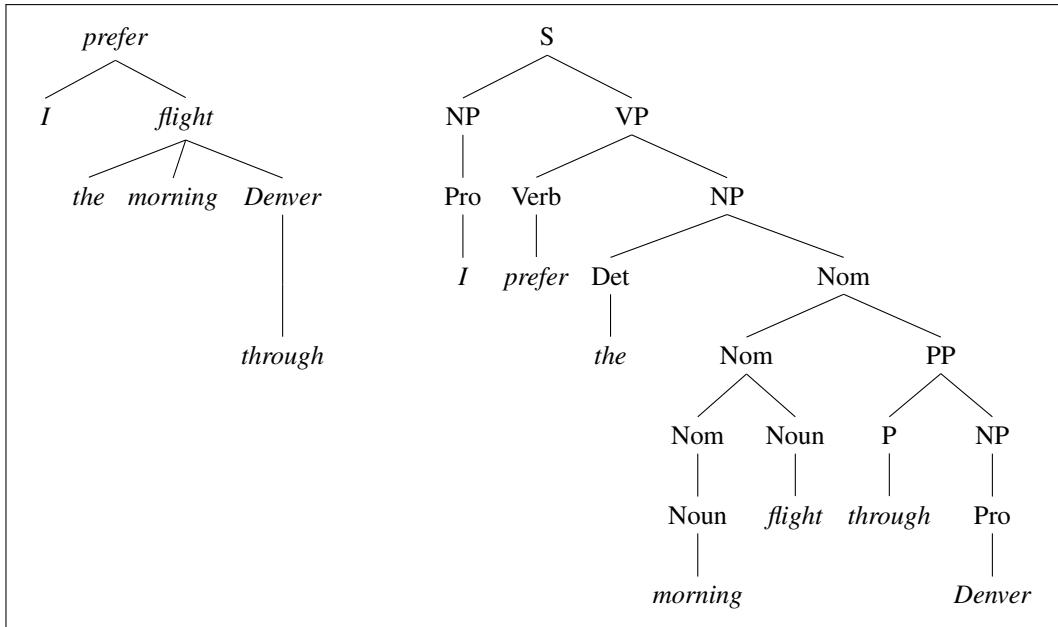
Relations among the words are illustrated above the sentence with directed, labeled arcs from heads to dependents. We call this a **typed dependency structure** because the labels are drawn from a fixed inventory of grammatical relations. It also includes a *root* node that explicitly marks the root of the tree, the head of the entire structure.

Figure 14.1 shows the same dependency analysis as a tree alongside its corresponding phrase-structure analysis of the kind given in Chapter 12. Note the absence of nodes corresponding to phrasal constituents or lexical categories in the dependency parse; the internal structure of the dependency parse consists solely of directed relations between lexical items in the sentence. These relationships directly encode important information that is often buried in the more complex phrase-structure parses. For example, the arguments to the verb *prefer* are directly linked to it in the dependency structure, while their connection to the main verb is more distant in the phrase-structure tree. Similarly, *morning* and *Denver*, modifiers of *flight*, are linked to it directly in the dependency structure.

free word order

A major advantage of dependency grammars is their ability to deal with languages that are morphologically rich and have a relatively **free word order**. For example, word order in Czech can be much more flexible than in English; a grammatical *object* might occur before or after a *location adverbial*. A phrase-structure grammar would need a separate rule for each possible place in the parse tree where such an adverbial phrase could occur. A dependency-based approach would just have one link type representing this particular adverbial relation. Thus, a dependency grammar approach abstracts away from word order information, representing only the information that is necessary for the parse.

An additional practical motivation for a dependency-based approach is that the head-dependent relations provide an approximation to the semantic relationship be-



**Figure 14.1** A dependency-style parse alongside the corresponding constituent-based analysis for *I prefer the morning flight through Denver*.

tween predicates and their arguments that makes them directly useful for many applications such as coreference resolution, question answering and information extraction. Constituent-based approaches to parsing provide similar information, but it often has to be distilled from the trees via techniques such as the head-finding rules discussed in Chapter 12.

In the following sections, we'll discuss in more detail the inventory of relations used in dependency parsing, as well as the formal basis for these dependency structures. We'll then move on to discuss the dominant families of algorithms that are used to automatically produce these structures. Finally, we'll discuss how to evaluate dependency parsers and point to some of the ways they are used in language processing applications.

## 14.1 Dependency Relations

### grammatical relation

The traditional linguistic notion of **grammatical relation** provides the basis for the binary relations that comprise these dependency structures. The arguments to these relations consist of a **head** and a **dependent**. We've already discussed the notion of heads in Chapter 12 and Appendix C in the context of constituent structures. There, the head word of a constituent was the central organizing word of a larger constituent (e.g., the primary noun in a noun phrase, or verb in a verb phrase). The remaining words in the constituent are either direct, or indirect, dependents of their head. In dependency-based approaches, the head-dependent relationship is made explicit by directly linking heads to the words that are immediately dependent on them, bypassing the need for constituent structures.

### head dependent

### grammatical function

In addition to specifying the head-dependent pairs, dependency grammars allow us to further classify the kinds of grammatical relations, or **grammatical function**,

Clausal Argument Relations	Description
NSUBJ	Nominal subject
DOBJ	Direct object
IOBJ	Indirect object
CCOMP	Clausal complement
XCOMP	Open clausal complement
Nominal Modifier Relations	Description
NMOD	Nominal modifier
AMOD	Adjectival modifier
NUMMOD	Numeric modifier
APPOS	Appositional modifier
DET	Determiner
CASE	Prepositions, postpositions and other case markers
Other Notable Relations	Description
CONJ	Conjunct
CC	Coordinating conjunction

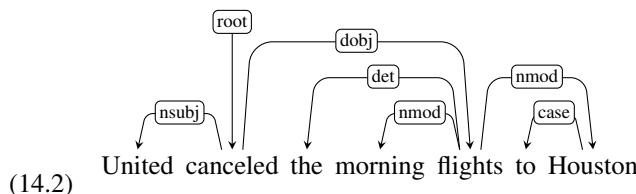
**Figure 14.2** Selected dependency relations from the Universal Dependency set. ([de Marneffe et al., 2014](#))

in terms of the role that the dependent plays with respect to its head. Familiar notions such as *subject*, *direct object* and *indirect object* are among the kind of relations we have in mind. In English these notions strongly correlate with, but by no means determine, both position in a sentence and constituent type and are therefore somewhat redundant with the kind of information found in phrase-structure trees. However, in more flexible languages the information encoded directly in these grammatical relations is critical since phrase-based constituent syntax provides little help.

Not surprisingly, linguists have developed taxonomies of relations that go well beyond the familiar notions of subject and object. While there is considerable variation from theory to theory, there is enough commonality that efforts to develop a computationally useful standard are now possible. The **Universal Dependencies** project ([Nivre et al., 2016b](#)) provides an inventory of dependency relations that are linguistically motivated, computationally useful, and cross-linguistically applicable. Fig. 14.2 shows a subset of the relations from this effort. Fig. 14.3 provides some example sentences illustrating selected relations.

The motivation for all of the relations in the Universal Dependency scheme is beyond the scope of this chapter, but the core set of frequently used relations can be broken into two sets: clausal relations that describe syntactic roles with respect to a predicate (often a verb), and modifier relations that categorize the ways that words that can modify their heads.

Consider the following example sentence:



The clausal relations NSUBJ and DOBJ identify the subject and direct object of the predicate *cancel*, while the NMOD, DET, and CASE relations denote modifiers of the nouns *flights* and *Houston*.

Relation	Examples with <i>head</i> and <i>dependent</i>
NSUBJ	<b>United</b> canceled the flight.
DOBJ	United diverted the <b>flight</b> to Reno.
IOBJ	We booked her the first <b>flight</b> to Miami.
NMOD	We booked <b>her</b> the flight to Miami.
AMOD	We took the <b>morning</b> flight.
NUMMOD	Book the <b>cheapest</b> flight.
APPOS	Before the storm JetBlue canceled <b>1000 flights</b> .
DET	<b>United</b> , a <b>unit</b> of UAL, matched the fares.
CONJ	The <b>flight</b> was canceled.
CC	<b>Which</b> flight was delayed?
CASE	We flew to Denver and <b>drove</b> to Steamboat.
	We flew to Denver <b>and drove</b> to Steamboat.
	Book the flight <b>through</b> Houston.

Figure 14.3 Examples of core Universal Dependency relations.

## 14.2 Dependency Formalisms

In their most general form, the dependency structures we’re discussing are simply directed graphs. That is, structures  $G = (V, A)$  consisting of a set of vertices  $V$ , and a set of ordered pairs of vertices  $A$ , which we’ll refer to as arcs.

For the most part we will assume that the set of vertices,  $V$ , corresponds exactly to the set of words in a given sentence. However, they might also correspond to punctuation, or when dealing with morphologically complex languages the set of vertices might consist of stems and affixes. The set of arcs,  $A$ , captures the head-dependent and grammatical function relationships between the elements in  $V$ .

dependency tree

Further constraints on these dependency structures are specific to the underlying grammatical theory or formalism. Among the more frequent restrictions are that the structures must be connected, have a designated root node, and be acyclic or planar. Of most relevance to the parsing approaches discussed in this chapter is the common, computationally-motivated, restriction to rooted trees. That is, a **dependency tree** is a directed graph that satisfies the following constraints:

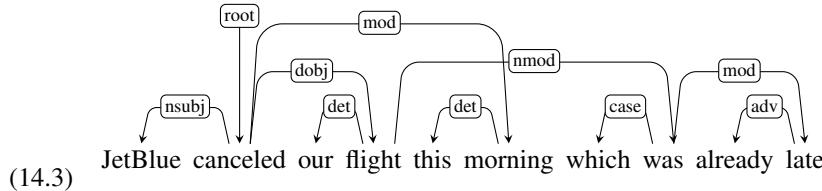
1. There is a single designated root node that has no incoming arcs.
2. With the exception of the root node, each vertex has exactly one incoming arc.
3. There is a unique path from the root node to each vertex in  $V$ .

Taken together, these constraints ensure that each word has a single head, that the dependency structure is connected, and that there is a single root node from which one can follow a unique directed path to each of the words in the sentence.

### 14.2.1 Projectivity

The notion of projectivity imposes an additional constraint that is derived from the order of the words in the input. An arc from a head to a dependent is said to be projective if there is a path from the head to every word that lies between the head and the dependent in the sentence. A dependency tree is then said to be projective if all the arcs that make it up are projective. All the dependency trees we’ve seen thus far have been projective. There are, however, many perfectly valid constructions which lead to non-projective trees, particularly in languages with a relatively flexible word order.

Consider the following example.



In this example, the arc from *flight* to its modifier *was* is non-projective since there is no path from *flight* to the intervening words *this* and *morning*. As we can see from this diagram, projectivity (and non-projectivity) can be detected in the way we've been drawing our trees. A dependency tree is projective if it can be drawn with no crossing edges. Here there is no way to link *flight* to its dependent *was* without crossing the arc that links *morning* to its head.

Our concern with projectivity arises from two related issues. First, the most widely used English dependency treebanks were automatically derived from phrase-structure treebanks through the use of head-finding rules (Chapter 12). The trees generated in such a fashion are guaranteed to be projective since they're generated from context-free grammars.

Second, there are computational limitations to the most widely used families of parsing algorithms. The transition-based approaches discussed in Section 14.4 can only produce projective trees, hence any sentences with non-projective structures will necessarily contain some errors. This limitation is one of the motivations for the more flexible graph-based parsing approach described in Section 14.5.

## 14.3 Dependency Treebanks

As with constituent-based methods, treebanks play a critical role in the development and evaluation of dependency parsers. Dependency treebanks have been created using similar approaches to those discussed in Chapter 12 — having human annotators directly generate dependency structures for a given corpus, or using automatic parsers to provide an initial parse and then having annotators hand correct those parsers. We can also use a deterministic process to translate existing constituent-based treebanks into dependency trees through the use of head rules.

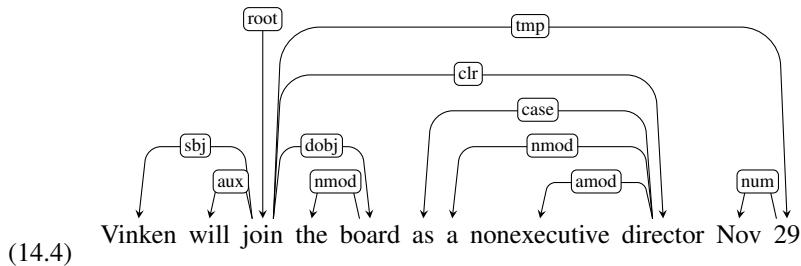
For the most part, directly annotated dependency treebanks have been created for morphologically rich languages such as Czech, Hindi and Finnish that lend themselves to dependency grammar approaches, with the Prague Dependency Treebank (Bejček et al., 2013) for Czech being the most well-known effort. The major English dependency treebanks have largely been extracted from existing resources such as the Wall Street Journal sections of the Penn Treebank (Marcus et al., 1993). The more recent OntoNotes project (Hovy et al. 2006, Weischedel et al. 2011) extends this approach going beyond traditional news text to include conversational telephone speech, weblogs, usenet newsgroups, broadcasts, and talk shows in English, Chinese and Arabic.

The translation process from constituent to dependency structures has two sub-tasks: identifying all the head-dependent relations in the structure and identifying the correct dependency relations for these relations. The first task relies heavily on the use of head rules discussed in Chapter 12 first developed for use in lexicalized probabilistic parsers (Magerman 1994, Collins 1999, Collins 2003). Here's a simple

and effective algorithm from [Xia and Palmer \(2001\)](#).

1. Mark the head child of each node in a phrase structure, using the appropriate head rules.
2. In the dependency structure, make the head of each non-head child depend on the head of the head-child.

When a phrase-structure parse contains additional information in the form of grammatical relations and function tags, as in the case of the Penn Treebank, these tags can be used to label the edges in the resulting tree. When applied to the parse tree in Fig. 14.4, this algorithm would produce the dependency structure in example 14.4.



The primary shortcoming of these extraction methods is that they are limited by the information present in the original constituent trees. Among the most important issues are the failure to integrate morphological information with the phrase-structure trees, the inability to easily represent non-projective structures, and the lack of internal structure to most noun-phrases, as reflected in the generally flat rules used in most treebank grammars. For these reasons, outside of English, most dependency treebanks are developed directly using human annotators.

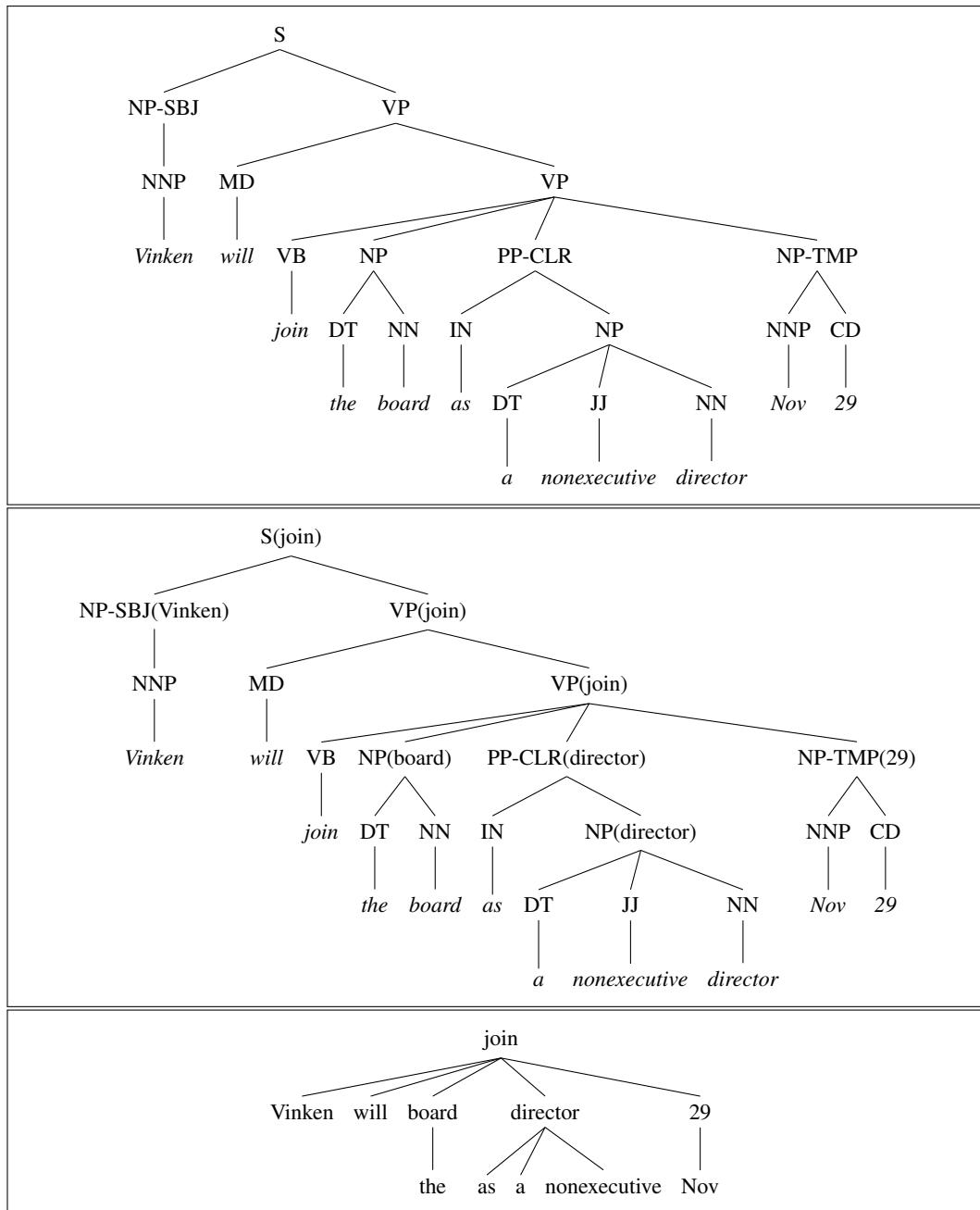
## 14.4 Transition-Based Dependency Parsing

### shift-reduce parsing

Our first approach to dependency parsing is motivated by a stack-based approach called **shift-reduce parsing** originally developed for analyzing programming languages ([Aho and Ullman, 1972](#)). This classic approach is simple and elegant, employing a context-free grammar, a stack, and a list of tokens to be parsed. Input tokens are successively shifted onto the stack and the top two elements of the stack are matched against the right-hand side of the rules in the grammar; when a match is found the matched elements are replaced on the stack (reduced) by the non-terminal from the left-hand side of the rule being matched. In adapting this approach for dependency parsing, we forgo the explicit use of a grammar and alter the reduce operation so that instead of adding a non-terminal to a parse tree, it introduces a dependency relation between a word and its head. More specifically, the reduce action is replaced with two possible actions: assert a head-dependent relation between the word at the top of the stack and the word below it, or vice versa. Figure 14.5 illustrates the basic operation of such a parser.

### configuration

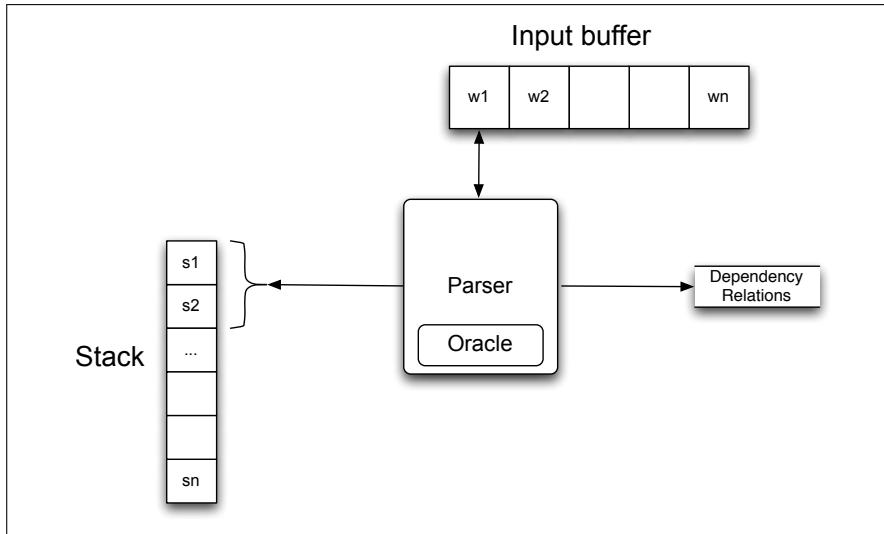
A key element in transition-based parsing is the notion of a **configuration** which consists of a stack, an input buffer of words, or tokens, and a set of relations representing a dependency tree. Given this framework, the parsing process consists of a sequence of transitions through the space of possible configurations. The goal of



**Figure 14.4** A phrase-structure tree from the *Wall Street Journal* component of the Penn Treebank 3.

this process is to find a final configuration where all the words have been accounted for and an appropriate dependency tree has been synthesized.

To implement such a search, we'll define a set of transition operators, which when applied to a configuration produce new configurations. Given this setup, we can view the operation of a parser as a search through a space of configurations for a sequence of transitions that leads from a start state to a desired goal state. At the start of this process we create an initial configuration in which the stack contains the ROOT node, the word list is initialized with the set of the words or lemmatized tokens



**Figure 14.5** Basic transition-based parser. The parser examines the top two elements of the stack and selects an action based on consulting an oracle that examines the current configuration.

in the sentence, and an empty set of relations is created to represent the parse. In the final goal state, the stack and the word list should be empty, and the set of relations will represent the final parse.

In the standard approach to transition-based parsing, the operators used to produce new configurations are surprisingly simple and correspond to the intuitive actions one might take in creating a dependency tree by examining the words in a single pass over the input from left to right (Covington, 2001):

- Assign the current word as the head of some previously seen word,
- Assign some previously seen word as the head of the current word,
- Or postpone doing anything with the current word, adding it to a store for later processing.

To make these actions more precise, we'll create three transition operators that will operate on the top two elements of the stack:

- LEFTARC: Assert a head-dependent relation between the word at the top of the stack and the word directly beneath it; remove the lower word from the stack.
- RIGHTARC: Assert a head-dependent relation between the second word on the stack and the word at the top; remove the word at the top of the stack;
- SHIFT: Remove the word from the front of the input buffer and push it onto the stack.

#### arc standard

This particular set of operators implements what is known as the **arc standard** approach to transition-based parsing (Covington 2001, Nivre 2003). There are two notable characteristics to this approach: the transition operators only assert relations between elements at the top of the stack, and once an element has been assigned its head it is removed from the stack and is not available for further processing. As we'll see, there are alternative transition systems which demonstrate different parsing behaviors, but the arc standard approach is quite effective and is simple to implement.

To assure that these operators are used properly we'll need to add some pre-conditions to their use. First, since, by definition, the ROOT node cannot have any incoming arcs, we'll add the restriction that the LEFTARC operator cannot be applied when ROOT is the second element of the stack. Second, both reduce operators require two elements to be on the stack to be applied. Given these transition operators and preconditions, the specification of a transition-based parser is quite simple. Fig. 14.6 gives the basic algorithm.

```
function DEPENDENCYPARSE(words) returns dependency tree
    state  $\leftarrow \{[\text{root}], [\text{words}], []\}$  ; initial configuration
    while state not final
        t  $\leftarrow \text{ORACLE}(\text{state})$  ; choose a transition operator to apply
        state  $\leftarrow \text{APPLY}(t, \text{state})$  ; apply it, creating a new state
    return state
```

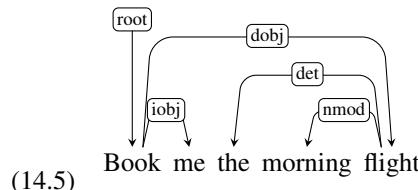
Figure 14.6 A generic transition-based dependency parser

At each step, the parser consults an oracle (we'll come back to this shortly) that provides the correct transition operator to use given the current configuration. It then applies that operator to the current configuration, producing a new configuration. The process ends when all the words in the sentence have been consumed and the ROOT node is the only element remaining on the stack.

The efficiency of transition-based parsers should be apparent from the algorithm. The complexity is linear in the length of the sentence since it is based on a single left to right pass through the words in the sentence. More specifically, each word must first be shifted onto the stack and then later reduced.

Note that unlike the dynamic programming and search-based approaches discussed in Chapters 12 and 13, this approach is a straightforward greedy algorithm — the oracle provides a single choice at each step and the parser proceeds with that choice, no other options are explored, no backtracking is employed, and a single parse is returned in the end.

Figure 14.7 illustrates the operation of the parser with the sequence of transitions leading to a parse for the following example.



Let's consider the state of the configuration at Step 2, after the word *me* has been pushed onto the stack.

Stack	Word List	Relations
[root, book, me]	[the, morning, flight]	

The correct operator to apply here is RIGHTARC which assigns *book* as the head of *me* and pops *me* from the stack resulting in the following configuration.

Stack	Word List	Relations
[root, book]	[the, morning, flight]	(book → me)

Step	Stack	Word List	Action	Relation Added
0	[root]	[book, me, the, morning, flight]	SHIFT	
1	[root, book]	[me, the, morning, flight]	SHIFT	
2	[root, book, me]	[the, morning, flight]	RIGHTARC	(book → me)
3	[root, book]	[the, morning, flight]	SHIFT	
4	[root, book, the]	[morning, flight]	SHIFT	
5	[root, book, the, morning]	[flight]	SHIFT	
6	[root, book, the, morning, flight]	[]	LEFTARC	(morning ← flight)
7	[root, book, the, flight]	[]	LEFTARC	(the ← flight)
8	[root, book, flight]	[]	RIGHTARC	(book → flight)
9	[root, book]	[]	RIGHTARC	(root → book)
10	[root]	[]	Done	

**Figure 14.7** Trace of a transition-based parse.

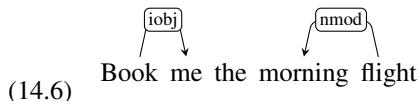
After several subsequent applications of the SHIFT and LEFTARC operators, the configuration in Step 6 looks like the following:

Stack	Word List	Relations
[root, book, the, morning, flight]	[]	(book → me)

Here, all the remaining words have been passed onto the stack and all that is left to do is to apply the appropriate reduce operators. In the current configuration, we employ the LEFTARC operator resulting in the following state.

Stack	Word List	Relations
[root, book, the, flight]	[]	(book → me) (morning ← flight)

At this point, the parse for this sentence consists of the following structure.



There are several important things to note when examining sequences such as the one in Figure 14.7. First, the sequence given is not the only one that might lead to a reasonable parse. In general, there may be more than one path that leads to the same result, and due to ambiguity, there may be other transition sequences that lead to different equally valid parses.

Second, we are assuming that the oracle always provides the correct operator at each point in the parse — an assumption that is unlikely to be true in practice. As a result, given the greedy nature of this algorithm, incorrect choices will lead to incorrect parses since the parser has no opportunity to go back and pursue alternative choices. Section 14.4.2 will introduce several techniques that allow transition-based approaches to explore the search space more fully.

Finally, for simplicity, we have illustrated this example without the labels on the dependency relations. To produce labeled trees, we can parameterize the LEFTARC and RIGHTARC operators with dependency labels, as in LEFTARC(NSUBJ) or RIGHTARC(DOBJ). This is equivalent to expanding the set of transition operators from our original set of three to a set that includes LEFTARC and RIGHTARC operators for each relation in the set of dependency relations being used, plus an additional one for the SHIFT operator. This, of course, makes the job of the oracle more difficult since it now has a much larger set of operators from which to choose.

### 14.4.1 Creating an Oracle

State-of-the-art transition-based systems use supervised machine learning methods to train classifiers that play the role of the oracle. Given appropriate training data, these methods learn a function that maps from configurations to transition operators.

As with all supervised machine learning methods, we will need access to appropriate training data and we will need to extract features useful for characterizing the decisions to be made. The source for this training data will be representative treebanks containing dependency trees. The features will consist of many of the same features we encountered in Chapter 8 for part-of-speech tagging, as well as those used in Appendix C for statistical parsing models.

#### Generating Training Data

Let's revisit the oracle from the algorithm in Fig. 14.6 to fully understand the learning problem. The oracle takes as input a configuration and returns as output a transition operator. Therefore, to train a classifier, we will need configurations paired with transition operators (i.e., LEFTARC, RIGHTARC, or SHIFT). Unfortunately, treebanks pair entire sentences with their corresponding trees, and therefore they don't directly provide what we need.

To generate the required training data, we will employ the oracle-based parsing algorithm in a clever way. We will supply our oracle with the training sentences to be parsed *along with* their corresponding reference parses from the treebank. To produce training instances, we will then *simulate* the operation of the parser by running the algorithm and relying on a new **training oracle** to give us correct transition operators for each successive configuration.

To see how this works, let's first review the operation of our parser. It begins with a default initial configuration where the stack contains the ROOT, the input list is just the list of words, and the set of relations is empty. The LEFTARC and RIGHTARC operators each add relations between the words at the top of the stack to the set of relations being accumulated for a given sentence. Since we have a gold-standard reference parse for each training sentence, we know which dependency relations are valid for a given sentence. Therefore, we can use the reference parse to guide the selection of operators as the parser steps through a sequence of configurations.

To be more precise, given a reference parse and a configuration, the training oracle proceeds as follows:

- Choose LEFTARC if it produces a correct head-dependent relation given the reference parse and the current configuration,
- Otherwise, choose RIGHTARC if (1) it produces a correct head-dependent relation given the reference parse and (2) all of the dependents of the word at the top of the stack have already been assigned,
- Otherwise, choose SHIFT.

The restriction on selecting the RIGHTARC operator is needed to ensure that a word is not popped from the stack, and thus lost to further processing, before all its dependents have been assigned to it.

More formally, during training the oracle has access to the following information:

- A current configuration with a stack  $S$  and a set of dependency relations  $R_c$
- A reference parse consisting of a set of vertices  $V$  and a set of dependency relations  $R_p$

Step	Stack	Word List	Predicted Action
0	[root]	[book, the, flight, through, houston]	SHIFT
1	[root, book]	[the, flight, through, houston]	SHIFT
2	[root, book, the]	[flight, through, houston]	SHIFT
3	[root, book, the, flight]	[through, houston]	LEFTARC
4	[root, book, flight]	[through, houston]	SHIFT
5	[root, book, flight, through]	[houston]	SHIFT
6	[root, book, flight, through, houston]	[]	LEFTARC
7	[root, book, flight, houston]	[]	RIGHTARC
8	[root, book, flight]	[]	RIGHTARC
9	[root, book]	[]	RIGHTARC
10	[root]	[]	Done

**Figure 14.8** Generating training items consisting of configuration/predicted action pairs by simulating a parse with a given reference parse.

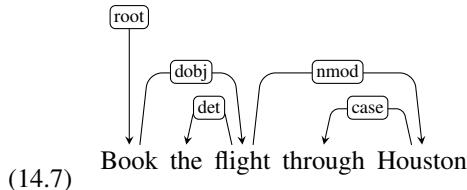
Given this information, the oracle chooses transitions as follows:

LEFTARC(r): **if**  $(S_1 r S_2) \in R_p$

RIGHTARC(r): **if**  $(S_2 r S_1) \in R_p$  **and**  $\forall r', w \text{ s.t. } (S_1 r' w) \in R_p \text{ then } (S_1 r' w) \in R_c$

SHIFT: **otherwise**

Let's walk through the steps of this process with the following example as shown in Fig. 14.8.



At Step 1, LEFTARC is not applicable in the initial configuration since it asserts a relation,  $(\text{root} \leftarrow \text{book})$ , not in the reference answer; RIGHTARC does assert a relation contained in the final answer  $(\text{root} \rightarrow \text{book})$ , however *book* has not been attached to any of its dependents yet, so we have to defer, leaving SHIFT as the only possible action. The same conditions hold in the next two steps. In step 3, LEFTARC is selected to link *the* to its head.

Now consider the situation in Step 4.

Stack	Word buffer	Relations
[root, book, flight]	[through, Houston]	$(\text{the} \leftarrow \text{flight})$

Here, we might be tempted to add a dependency relation between *book* and *flight*, which is present in the reference parse. But doing so now would prevent the later attachment of *Houston* since *flight* would have been removed from the stack. Fortunately, the precondition on choosing RIGHTARC prevents this choice and we're again left with SHIFT as the only viable option. The remaining choices complete the set of operators needed for this example.

To recap, we derive appropriate training instances consisting of configuration-transition pairs from a treebank by simulating the operation of a parser in the context of a reference dependency tree. We can deterministically record correct parser actions at each step as we progress through each training example, thereby creating the training set we require.

### Features

Having generated appropriate training instances (configuration-transition pairs), we need to extract useful features from the configurations so we can train classifiers. The features that are used to train transition-based systems vary by language, genre, and the kind of classifier being employed. For example, morphosyntactic features such as case marking on subjects or direct objects may be more or less important depending on the language being processed. That said, the basic features that we have already seen with part-of-speech tagging and partial parsing have proven to be useful in training dependency parsers across a wide range of languages. Word forms, lemmas and parts of speech are all powerful features, as are the head, and dependency relation to the head.

In the transition-based parsing framework, such features need to be extracted from the configurations that make up the training data. Recall that configurations consist of three elements: the stack, the buffer and the current set of relations. In principle, any property of any or all of these elements can be represented as features in the usual way for training. However, to avoid sparsity and encourage generalization, it is best to focus the learning algorithm on the most useful aspects of decision making at each point in the parsing process. The focus of feature extraction for transition-based parsing is, therefore, on the top levels of the stack, the words near the front of the buffer, and the dependency relations already associated with any of those elements.

**feature template** By combining simple features, such as word forms or parts of speech, with specific locations in a configuration, we can employ the notion of a **feature template** that we've already encountered with sentiment analysis and part-of-speech tagging. Feature templates allow us to automatically generate large numbers of specific features from a training set. As an example, consider the following feature templates that are based on single positions in a configuration.

$$\begin{aligned} & \langle s_1.w, op \rangle, \langle s_2.w, op \rangle \langle s_1.t, op \rangle, \langle s_2.t, op \rangle \\ & \langle b_1.w, op \rangle, \langle b_1.t, op \rangle \langle s_1.wt, op \rangle \end{aligned} \tag{14.8}$$

In these examples, individual features are denoted as *location.property*, where *s* denotes the stack, *b* the word buffer, and *r* the set of relations. Individual properties of locations include *w* for word forms, *l* for lemmas, and *t* for part-of-speech. For example, the feature corresponding to the word form at the top of the stack would be denoted as  $s_1.w$ , and the part of speech tag at the front of the buffer  $b_1.t$ . We can also combine individual features via concatenation into more specific features that may prove useful. For example, the feature designated by  $s_1.wt$  represents the word form concatenated with the part of speech of the word at the top of the stack. Finally, *op* stands for the transition operator for the training example in question (i.e., the label for the training instance).

Let's consider the simple set of single-element feature templates given above in the context of the following intermediate configuration derived from a training oracle for Example 14.2.

Stack	Word buffer	Relations
[root, canceled, flights]	[to Houston]	(canceled → United) (flights → morning) (flights → the)

The correct transition here is SHIFT (you should convince yourself of this before

proceeding). The application of our set of feature templates to this configuration would result in the following set of instantiated features.

$$\begin{aligned} & \langle s_1.w = flights, op = shift \rangle \\ & \langle s_2.w = canceled, op = shift \rangle \\ & \langle s_1.t = NNS, op = shift \rangle \\ & \langle s_2.t = VBD, op = shift \rangle \\ & \langle b_1.w = to, op = shift \rangle \\ & \langle b_1.t = TO, op = shift \rangle \\ & \langle s_1.wt = flightsNNS, op = shift \rangle \end{aligned} \tag{14.9}$$

Given that the left and right arc transitions operate on the top two elements of the stack, features that *combine* properties from these positions are even more useful. For example, a feature like  $s_1.t \circ s_2.t$  concatenates the part of speech tag of the word at the top of the stack with the tag of the word beneath it.

$$\langle s_1.t \circ s_2.t = NNSVBD, op = shift \rangle \tag{14.10}$$

Not surprisingly, if two properties are useful then three or more should be even better. Figure 14.9 gives a baseline set of feature templates that have been employed (Zhang and Clark 2008, Huang and Sagae 2010, Zhang and Nivre 2011).

Note that some of these features make use of *dynamic* features — features such as head words and dependency relations that have been predicted at earlier steps in the parsing process, as opposed to features that are derived from static properties of the input.

Source	Feature templates		
<b>One word</b>	$s_1.w$	$s_1.t$	$s_1.wt$
	$s_2.w$	$s_2.t$	$s_2.wt$
	$b_1.w$	$b_1.w$	$b_0.wt$
<b>Two word</b>	$s_1.w \circ s_2.w$	$s_1.t \circ s_2.t$	$s_1.t \circ b_1.w$
	$s_1.t \circ s_2.wt$	$s_1.w \circ s_2.w \circ s_2.t$	$s_1.w \circ s_1.t \circ s_2.t$
	$s_1.w \circ s_1.t \circ s_2.t$	$s_1.w \circ s_1.t$	

**Figure 14.9** Standard feature templates for training transition-based dependency parsers. In the template specifications  $s_n$  refers to a location on the stack,  $b_n$  refers to a location in the word buffer,  $w$  refers to the wordform of the input, and  $t$  refers to the part of speech of the input.

### Learning

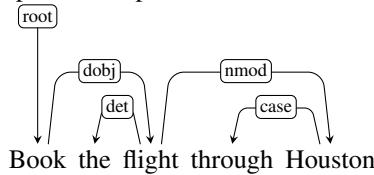
Over the years, the dominant approaches to training transition-based dependency parsers have been multinomial logistic regression and support vector machines, both of which can make effective use of large numbers of sparse features of the kind described in the last section. More recently, neural network, or deep learning, approaches of the kind described in Chapter 8 have been applied successfully to transition-based parsing (Chen and Manning, 2014). These approaches eliminate the need for complex, hand-crafted features and have been particularly effective at overcoming the data sparsity issues normally associated with training transition-based parsers.

### 14.4.2 Advanced Methods in Transition-Based Parsing

The basic transition-based approach can be elaborated in a number of ways to improve performance by addressing some of the most obvious flaws in the approach.

#### Alternative Transition Systems

**arc eager** The arc-standard transition system described above is only one of many possible systems. A frequently used alternative is the **arc eager** transition system. The arc eager approach gets its name from its ability to assert rightward relations much sooner than in the arc standard approach. To see this, let's revisit the arc standard trace of Example 14.7, repeated here.



Consider the dependency relation between *book* and *flight* in this analysis. As is shown in Fig. 14.8, an arc-standard approach would assert this relation at Step 8, despite the fact that *book* and *flight* first come together on the stack much earlier at Step 4. The reason this relation can't be captured at this point is due to the presence of the postnominal modifier *through Houston*. In an arc-standard approach, dependents are removed from the stack as soon as they are assigned their heads. If *flight* had been assigned *book* as its head in Step 4, it would no longer be available to serve as the head of *Houston*.

While this delay doesn't cause any issues in this example, in general the longer a word has to wait to get assigned its head the more opportunities there are for something to go awry. The arc-eager system addresses this issue by allowing words to be attached to their heads as early as possible, before all the subsequent words dependent on them have been seen. This is accomplished through minor changes to the LEFTARC and RIGHTARC operators and the addition of a new REDUCE operator.

- **LEFTARC:** Assert a head-dependent relation between the word at the front of the input buffer and the word at the top of the stack; pop the stack.
- **RIGHTARC:** Assert a head-dependent relation between the word on the top of the stack and the word at front of the input buffer; shift the word at the front of the input buffer to the stack.
- **SHIFT:** Remove the word from the front of the input buffer and push it onto the stack.
- **REDUCE:** Pop the stack.

The LEFTARC and RIGHTARC operators are applied to the top of the stack and the front of the input buffer, instead of the top two elements of the stack as in the arc-standard approach. The RIGHTARC operator now moves the dependent to the stack from the buffer rather than removing it, thus making it available to serve as the head of following words. The new REDUCE operator removes the top element from the stack. Together these changes permit a word to be eagerly assigned its head and still allow it to serve as the head for later dependents. The trace shown in Fig. 14.10 illustrates the new decision sequence for this example.

In addition to demonstrating the arc-eager transition system, this example demonstrates the power and flexibility of the overall transition-based approach. We were able to swap in a new transition system without having to make any changes to the

Step	Stack	Word List	Action	Relation Added
0	[root]	[book, the, flight, through, houston]	RIGHTARC	(root → book)
1	[root, book]	[the, flight, through, houston]	SHIFT	
2	[root, book, the]	[flight, through, houston]	LEFTARC	(the ← flight)
3	[root, book]	[flight, through, houston]	RIGHTARC	(book → flight)
4	[root, book, flight]	[through, houston]	SHIFT	
5	[root, book, flight, through]	[houston]	LEFTARC	(through ← houston)
6	[root, book, flight]	[houston]	RIGHTARC	(flight → houston)
7	[root, book, flight, houston]	[]	REDUCE	
8	[root, book, flight]	[]	REDUCE	
9	[root, book]	[]	REDUCE	
10	[root]	[]	Done	

**Figure 14.10** A processing trace of *Book the flight through Houston* using the arc-eager transition operators.

underlying parsing algorithm. This flexibility has led to the development of a diverse set of transition systems that address different aspects of syntax and semantics including: assigning part of speech tags (Choi and Palmer, 2011a), allowing the generation of non-projective dependency structures (Nivre, 2009), assigning semantic roles (Choi and Palmer, 2011b), and parsing texts containing multiple languages (Bhat et al., 2017).

### Beam Search

The computational efficiency of the transition-based approach discussed earlier derives from the fact that it makes a single pass through the sentence, greedily making decisions without considering alternatives. Of course, this is also the source of its greatest weakness – once a decision has been made it can not be undone, even in the face of overwhelming evidence arriving later in a sentence. Another approach is to systematically explore alternative decision sequences, selecting the best among those alternatives. The key problem for such a search is to manage the large number of potential sequences. **Beam search** accomplishes this by combining a breadth-first search strategy with a heuristic filter that prunes the search frontier to stay within a fixed-size **beam width**.

**beam search**  
**beam width**

In applying beam search to transition-based parsing, we'll elaborate on the algorithm given in Fig. 14.6. Instead of choosing the single best transition operator at each iteration, we'll apply all applicable operators to each state on an agenda and then score the resulting configurations. We then add each of these new configurations to the frontier, subject to the constraint that there has to be room within the beam. As long as the size of the agenda is within the specified beam width, we can add new configurations to the agenda. Once the agenda reaches the limit, we only add new configurations that are better than the worst configuration on the agenda (removing the worst element so that we stay within the limit). Finally, to insure that we retrieve the best possible state on the agenda, the while loop continues as long as there are non-final states on the agenda.

The beam search approach requires a more elaborate notion of scoring than we used with the greedy algorithm. There, we assumed that a classifier trained using supervised machine learning would serve as an oracle, selecting the best transition operator based on features extracted from the current configuration. Regardless of the specific learning approach, this choice can be viewed as assigning a score to all the possible transitions and picking the best one.

$$\hat{T}(c) = \text{argmaxScore}(t, c)$$

With a beam search we are now searching through the space of decision sequences, so it makes sense to base the score for a configuration on its entire history. More specifically, we can define the score for a new configuration as the score of its predecessor plus the score of the operator used to produce it.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{ConfigScore}(c_0) &= 0.0 \\ \text{ConfigScore}(c_i) &= \text{ConfigScore}(c_{i-1}) + \text{Score}(t_i, c_{i-1}) \end{aligned}$$

This score is used both in filtering the agenda and in selecting the final answer. The new beam search version of transition-based parsing is given in Fig. 14.11.

```

function DEPENDENCYBEAMPARSE(words, width) returns dependency tree
    state  $\leftarrow \{\text{[root]}, [\text{words}], [], 0.0\}$  ;initial configuration
    agenda  $\leftarrow \langle \text{state} \rangle$  ;initial agenda

    while agenda contains non-final states
        newagenda  $\leftarrow \langle \rangle$ 
        for each state  $\in$  agenda do
            for all  $\{t \mid t \in \text{VALIDOPERATORS}(\text{state})\}$  do
                child  $\leftarrow \text{APPLY}(t, \text{state})
                newagenda  $\leftarrow \text{ADDTOBEAM}(\text{child}, \text{newagenda}, \text{width})$ 
            agenda  $\leftarrow \text{newagenda}$ 
        return BESTOF(agenda)

function ADDTOBEAM(state, agenda, width) returns updated agenda
    if LENGTH(agenda)  $<$  width then
        agenda  $\leftarrow \text{INSERT}(\text{state}, \text{agenda})$ 
    else if SCORE(state)  $>$  SCORE(WORSTOF(agenda))
        agenda  $\leftarrow \text{REMOVE}(\text{WORSTOF}(\text{agenda}))$ 
        agenda  $\leftarrow \text{INSERT}(\text{state}, \text{agenda})$ 
    return agenda$ 
```

**Figure 14.11** Beam search applied to transition-based dependency parsing.

## 14.5 Graph-Based Dependency Parsing

Graph-based approaches to dependency parsing search through the space of possible trees for a given sentence for a tree (or trees) that maximize some score. These methods encode the search space as directed graphs and employ methods drawn from graph theory to search the space for optimal solutions. More formally, given a sentence  $S$  we're looking for the best dependency tree in  $\mathcal{G}_S$ , the space of all possible trees for that sentence, that maximizes some score.

$$\hat{T}(S) = \underset{t \in \mathcal{G}_S}{\operatorname{argmax}} \text{score}(t, S)$$

As with the probabilistic approaches to context-free parsing discussed in Appendix C, the overall score for a tree can be viewed as a function of the scores of the parts of the tree. The focus of this section is on **edge-factored** approaches where the

score for a tree is based on the scores of the edges that comprise the tree.

$$\text{score}(t, S) = \sum_{e \in t} \text{score}(e)$$

There are several motivations for the use of graph-based methods. First, unlike transition-based approaches, these methods are capable of producing non-projective trees. Although projectivity is not a significant issue for English, it is definitely a problem for many of the world’s languages. A second motivation concerns parsing accuracy, particularly with respect to longer dependencies. Empirically, transition-based methods have high accuracy on shorter dependency relations but accuracy declines significantly as the distance between the head and dependent increases (McDonald and Nivre, 2011). Graph-based methods avoid this difficulty by scoring entire trees, rather than relying on greedy local decisions.

maximum spanning tree

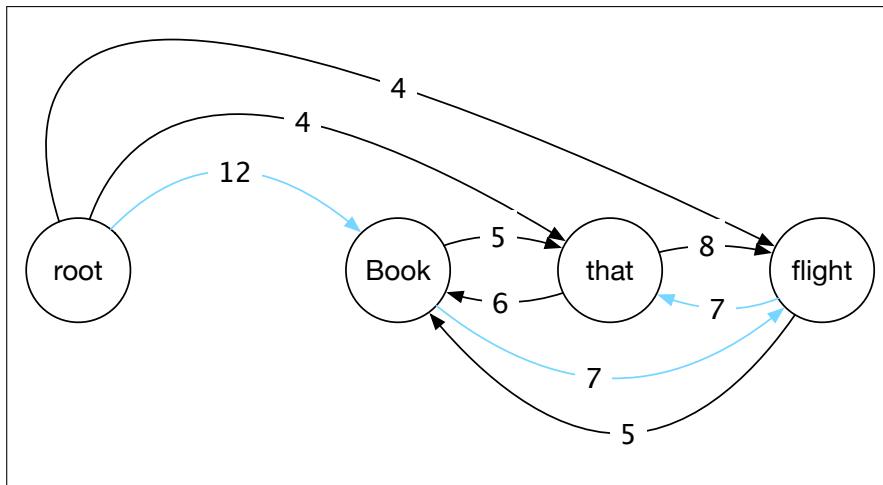
The following section examines a widely-studied approach based on the use of a **maximum spanning tree** (MST) algorithm for weighted, directed graphs. We then discuss features that are typically used to score trees, as well as the methods used to train the scoring models.

### 14.5.1 Parsing

The approach described here uses an efficient greedy algorithm to search for optimal spanning trees in directed graphs. Given an input sentence, it begins by constructing a fully-connected, weighted, directed graph where the vertices are the input words and the directed edges represent *all possible* head-dependent assignments. An additional ROOT node is included with outgoing edges directed at all of the other vertices. The weights in the graph reflect the score for each possible head-dependent relation as provided by a model generated from training data. Given these weights, a maximum spanning tree of this graph emanating from the ROOT represents the preferred dependency parse for the sentence. A directed graph for the example *Book that flight* is shown in Fig. 14.12, with the maximum spanning tree corresponding to the desired parse shown in blue. For ease of exposition, we’ll focus here on unlabeled dependency parsing. Graph-based approaches to labeled parsing are discussed in Section 14.5.3.

Before describing the algorithm it’s useful to consider two intuitions about directed graphs and their spanning trees. The first intuition begins with the fact that every vertex in a spanning tree has exactly one incoming edge. It follows from this that every *connected component* of a spanning tree will also have one incoming edge. The second intuition is that the absolute values of the edge scores are not critical to determining its maximum spanning tree. Instead, it is the relative weights of the edges entering each vertex that matters. If we were to subtract a constant amount from each edge entering a given vertex it would have no impact on the choice of the maximum spanning tree since every possible spanning tree would decrease by exactly the same amount.

The first step of the algorithm itself is quite straightforward. For each vertex in the graph, an incoming edge (representing a possible head assignment) with the highest score is chosen. If the resulting set of edges produces a spanning tree then we’re done. More formally, given the original fully-connected graph  $G = (V, E)$ , a subgraph  $T = (V, F)$  is a spanning tree if it has no cycles and each vertex (other than the root) has exactly one edge entering it. If the greedy selection process produces such a tree then it is the best possible one.



**Figure 14.12** Initial rooted, directed graph for *Book that flight*.

Unfortunately, this approach doesn't always lead to a tree since the set of edges selected may contain cycles. Fortunately, in yet another case of multiple discovery, there is a straightforward way to eliminate cycles generated during the greedy selection phase. [Chu and Liu \(1965\)](#) and [Edmonds \(1967\)](#) independently developed an approach that begins with greedy selection and follows with an elegant recursive cleanup phase that eliminates cycles.

The cleanup phase begins by adjusting all the weights in the graph by subtracting the score of the maximum edge entering each vertex from the score of all the edges entering that vertex. This is where the intuitions mentioned earlier come into play. We have scaled the values of the edges so that the weight of the edges in the cycle have no bearing on the weight of *any* of the possible spanning trees. Subtracting the value of the edge with maximum weight from each edge entering a vertex results in a weight of zero for all of the edges selected during the greedy selection phase, *including all of the edges involved in the cycle*.

Having adjusted the weights, the algorithm creates a new graph by selecting a cycle and collapsing it into a single new node. Edges that enter or leave the cycle are altered so that they now enter or leave the newly collapsed node. Edges that do not touch the cycle are included and edges within the cycle are dropped.

Now, if we knew the maximum spanning tree of this new graph, we would have what we need to eliminate the cycle. The edge of the maximum spanning tree directed towards the vertex representing the collapsed cycle tells us which edge to delete to eliminate the cycle. How do we find the maximum spanning tree of this new graph? We recursively apply the algorithm to the new graph. This will either result in a spanning tree or a graph with a cycle. The recursions can continue as long as cycles are encountered. When each recursion completes we expand the collapsed vertex, restoring all the vertices and edges from the cycle *with the exception of the single edge to be deleted*.

Putting all this together, the maximum spanning tree algorithm consists of greedy edge selection, re-scoring of edge costs and a recursive cleanup phase when needed. The full algorithm is shown in Fig. 14.13.

Fig. 14.14 steps through the algorithm with our *Book that flight* example. The first row of the figure illustrates greedy edge selection with the edges chosen shown in blue (corresponding to the set  $F$  in the algorithm). This results in a cycle between

```

function MAXSPANNINGTREE( $G=(V,E)$ ,  $root$ ,  $score$ ) returns spanning tree
   $F \leftarrow []$ 
   $T' \leftarrow []$ 
   $score' \leftarrow []$ 
  for each  $v \in V$  do
     $bestInEdge \leftarrow \operatorname{argmax}_{e=(u,v) \in E} score[e]$ 
     $F \leftarrow F \cup bestInEdge$ 
    for each  $e=(u,v) \in E$  do
       $score'[e] \leftarrow score[e] - score[bestInEdge]$ 
  if  $T=(V,F)$  is a spanning tree then return it
  else
     $C \leftarrow$  a cycle in  $F$ 
     $G' \leftarrow \operatorname{CONTRACT}(G, C)$ 
     $T' \leftarrow \operatorname{MAXSPANNINGTREE}(G', root, score')$ 
     $T \leftarrow \operatorname{EXPAND}(T', C)$ 
  return  $T$ 

function CONTRACT( $G, C$ ) returns contracted graph
function EXPAND( $T, C$ ) returns expanded graph

```

**Figure 14.13** The Chu-Liu Edmonds algorithm for finding a maximum spanning tree in a weighted directed graph.

*that* and *flight*. The scaled weights using the maximum value entering each node are shown in the graph to the right.

Collapsing the cycle between *that* and *flight* to a single node (labelled *tf*) and recursing with the newly scaled costs is shown in the second row. The greedy selection step in this recursion yields a spanning tree that links *root* to *book*, as well as an edge that links *book* to the contracted node. Expanding the contracted node, we can see that this edge corresponds to the edge from *book* to *flight* in the original graph. This in turn tells us which edge to drop to eliminate the cycle

On arbitrary directed graphs, this version of the CLE algorithm runs in  $O(mn)$  time, where  $m$  is the number of edges and  $n$  is the number of nodes. Since this particular application of the algorithm begins by constructing a fully connected graph  $m = n^2$  yielding a running time of  $O(n^3)$ . Gabow et al. (1986) present a more efficient implementation with a running time of  $O(m + n\log n)$ .

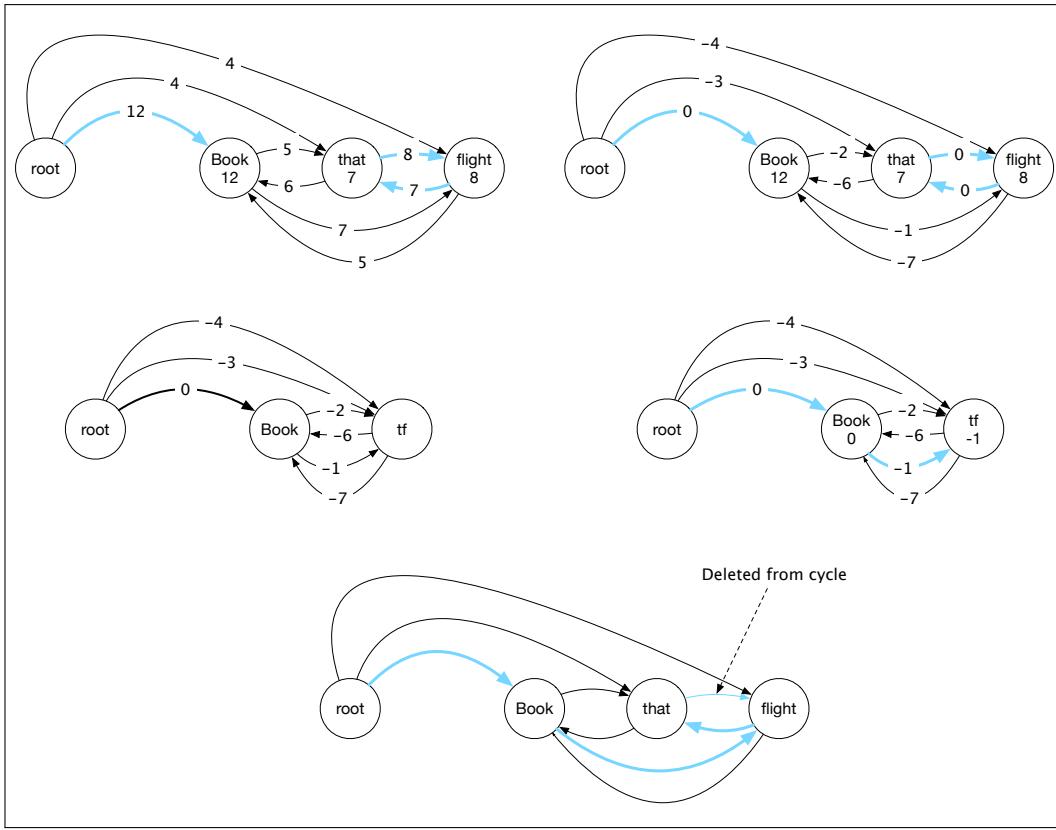
### 14.5.2 Features and Training

Given a sentence,  $S$ , and a candidate tree,  $T$ , edge-factored parsing models reduce the score for the tree to a sum of the scores of the edges that comprise the tree.

$$\operatorname{score}(S, T) = \sum_{e \in T} \operatorname{score}(S, e)$$

Each edge score can, in turn, be reduced to a weighted sum of features extracted from it.

$$\operatorname{score}(S, e) = \sum_{i=1}^N w_i f_i(S, e)$$



**Figure 14.14** Chu-Liu-Edmonds graph-based example for *Book that flight*

Or more succinctly.

$$\text{score}(S, e) = w \cdot f$$

Given this formulation, we are faced with two problems in training our parser: identifying relevant features and finding the weights used to score those features.

The features used to train edge-factored models mirror those used in training transition-based parsers (as shown in Fig. 14.9). This is hardly surprising since in both cases we’re trying to capture information about the relationship between heads and their dependents in the context of a single relation. To summarize this earlier discussion, commonly used features include:

- Wordforms, lemmas, and parts of speech of the headword and its dependent.
- Corresponding features derived from the contexts before, after and between the words.
- Word embeddings.
- The dependency relation itself.
- The direction of the relation (to the right or left).
- The distance from the head to the dependent.

As with transition-based approaches, pre-selected combinations of these features are often used as well.

Given a set of features, our next problem is to learn a set of weights corresponding to each. Unlike many of the learning problems discussed in earlier chapters,

**inference-based learning**

here we are not training a model to associate training items with class labels, or parser actions. Instead, we seek to train a model that assigns higher scores to correct trees than to incorrect ones. An effective framework for problems like this is to use **inference-based learning** combined with the perceptron learning rule. In this framework, we parse a sentence (i.e, perform inference) from the training set using some initially random set of initial weights. If the resulting parse matches the corresponding tree in the training data, we do nothing to the weights. Otherwise, we find those features in the incorrect parse that are *not* present in the reference parse and we lower their weights by a small amount based on the learning rate. We do this incrementally for each sentence in our training data until the weights converge.

State-of-the-art algorithms in multilingual parsing are based on recurrent neural networks (RNNs) (Zeman et al. 2017, Dozat et al. 2017).

### 14.5.3 Advanced Issues in Graph-Based Parsing

## 14.6 Evaluation

As with phrase structure-based parsing, the evaluation of dependency parsers proceeds by measuring how well they work on a test set. An obvious metric would be exact match (EM) — how many sentences are parsed correctly. This metric is quite pessimistic, with most sentences being marked wrong. Such measures are not fine-grained enough to guide the development process. Our metrics need to be sensitive enough to tell if actual improvements are being made.

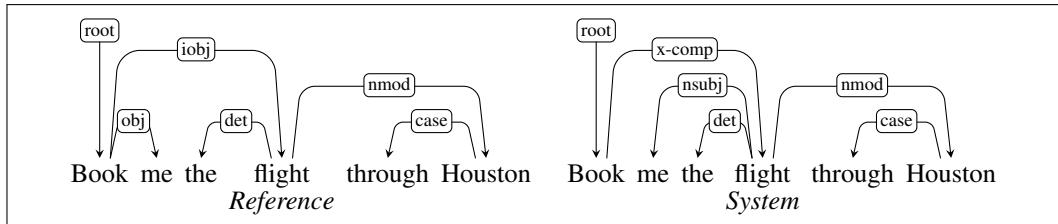
For these reasons, the most common method for evaluating dependency parsers are labeled and unlabeled attachment accuracy. Labeled attachment refers to the proper assignment of a word to its head along with the correct dependency relation. Unlabeled attachment simply looks at the correctness of the assigned head, ignoring the dependency relation. Given a system output and a corresponding reference parse, accuracy is simply the percentage of words in an input that are assigned the correct head with the correct relation. These metrics are usually referred to as the labeled attachment score (LAS) and unlabeled attachment score (UAS). Finally, we can make use of a label accuracy score (LS), the percentage of tokens with correct labels, ignoring where the relations are coming from.

As an example, consider the reference parse and system parse for the following example shown in Fig. 14.15.

(14.11) Book me the flight through Houston.

The system correctly finds 4 of the 6 dependency relations present in the reference parse and receives an LAS of 2/3. However, one of the 2 incorrect relations found by the system holds between *book* and *flight*, which are in a head-dependent relation in the reference parse; the system therefore achieves a UAS of 5/6.

Beyond attachment scores, we may also be interested in how well a system is performing on a particular kind of dependency relation, for example NSUBJ, across a development corpus. Here we can make use of the notions of precision and recall introduced in Chapter 8, measuring the percentage of relations labeled NSUBJ by the system that were correct (precision), and the percentage of the NSUBJ relations present in the development set that were in fact discovered by the system (recall). We can employ a confusion matrix to keep track of how often each dependency type was confused for another.



**Figure 14.15** Reference and system parses for *Book me the flight through Houston*, resulting in an LAS of 2/3 and an UAS of 5/6.

## 14.7 Summary

This chapter has introduced the concept of dependency grammars and dependency parsing. Here's a summary of the main points that we covered:

- In dependency-based approaches to syntax, the structure of a sentence is described in terms of a set of binary relations that hold between the words in a sentence. Larger notions of constituency are not directly encoded in dependency analyses.
- The relations in a dependency structure capture the head-dependent relationship among the words in a sentence.
- Dependency-based analysis provides information directly useful in further language processing tasks including information extraction, semantic parsing and question answering.
- Transition-based parsing systems employ a greedy stack-based algorithm to create dependency structures.
- Graph-based methods for creating dependency structures are based on the use of maximum spanning tree methods from graph theory.
- Both transition-based and graph-based approaches are developed using supervised machine learning techniques.
- Treebanks provide the data needed to train these systems. Dependency treebanks can be created directly by human annotators or via automatic transformation from phrase-structure treebanks.
- Evaluation of dependency parsers is based on labeled and unlabeled accuracy scores as measured against withheld development and test corpora.

## Bibliographical and Historical Notes

The dependency-based approach to grammar is much older than the relatively recent phrase-structure or constituency grammars that have been the primary focus of both theoretical and computational linguistics for years. It has its roots in the ancient Greek and Indian linguistic traditions. Contemporary theories of dependency grammar all draw heavily on the work of [Tesnière \(1959\)](#). The most influential dependency grammar frameworks include Meaning-Text Theory (MTT) ([Mel'čuk, 1988](#)), Word Grammar ([Hudson, 1984](#)), Functional Generative Description (FDG) ([Sgall et al., 1986](#)). These frameworks differ along a number of dimensions including the degree and manner in which they deal with morphological, syntactic,

semantic and pragmatic factors, their use of multiple layers of representation, and the set of relations used to categorize dependency relations.

Automatic parsing using dependency grammars was first introduced into computational linguistics by early work on machine translation at the RAND Corporation led by David Hays. This work on dependency parsing closely paralleled work on constituent parsing and made explicit use of grammars to guide the parsing process. After this early period, computational work on dependency parsing remained intermittent over the following decades. Notable implementations of dependency parsers for English during this period include Link Grammar ([Sleator and Temperley, 1993](#)), Constraint Grammar ([Karlsson et al., 1995](#)), and MINIPAR ([Lin, 2003](#)).

Dependency parsing saw a major resurgence in the late 1990's with the appearance of large dependency-based treebanks and the associated advent of data driven approaches described in this chapter. [Eisner \(1996\)](#) developed an efficient dynamic programming approach to dependency parsing based on bilexical grammars derived from the Penn Treebank. [Covington \(2001\)](#) introduced the deterministic word by word approach underlying current transition-based approaches. [Yamada and Matsumoto \(2003\)](#) and [Kudo and Matsumoto \(2002\)](#) introduced both the shift-reduce paradigm and the use of supervised machine learning in the form of support vector machines to dependency parsing.

[Nivre \(2003\)](#) defined the modern, deterministic, transition-based approach to dependency parsing. Subsequent work by Nivre and his colleagues formalized and analyzed the performance of numerous transition systems, training methods, and methods for dealing with non-projective language [Nivre and Scholz 2004](#), [Nivre 2006](#), [Nivre and Nilsson 2005](#), [Nivre et al. 2007](#), [Nivre 2007](#).

The graph-based maximum spanning tree approach to dependency parsing was introduced by [McDonald et al. 2005](#), [McDonald et al. 2005](#).

The earliest source of data for training and evaluating dependency English parsers came from the WSJ Penn Treebank ([Marcus et al., 1993](#)) described in Chapter 12. The use of head-finding rules developed for use with probabilistic parsing facilitated the automatic extraction of dependency parses from phrase-based ones ([Xia and Palmer, 2001](#)).

The long-running Prague Dependency Treebank project ([Hajič, 1998](#)) is the most significant effort to directly annotate a corpus with multiple layers of morphological, syntactic and semantic information. The current PDT 3.0 now contains over 1.5 M tokens ([Bejček et al., 2013](#)).

Universal Dependencies (UD) ([Nivre et al., 2016b](#)) is a project directed at creating a consistent framework for dependency treebank annotation across languages with the goal of advancing parser development across the world's languages. The UD annotation scheme evolved out of several distinct efforts including Stanford dependencies ([de Marneffe et al. 2006](#), [de Marneffe and Manning 2008](#), [de Marneffe et al. 2014](#)), Google's universal part-of-speech tags ([Petrov et al., 2012](#)), and the Intertertset interlingua for morphosyntactic tagsets ([Zeman, 2008](#)). Under the auspices of this effort, treebanks for over 90 languages have been annotated and made available in a single consistent format ([Nivre et al., 2016b](#)).

The Conference on Natural Language Learning (CoNLL) has conducted an influential series of shared tasks related to dependency parsing over the years ([Buchholz and Marsi 2006](#), [Nilsson et al. 2007](#), [Surdeanu et al. 2008](#), [Hajič et al. 2009](#)). More recent evaluations have focused on parser robustness with respect to morphologically rich languages ([Seddah et al., 2013](#)), and non-canonical language forms such as social media, texts, and spoken language ([Petrov and McDonald, 2012](#)).

[Choi et al. \(2015\)](#) presents a performance analysis of 10 dependency parsers across a range of metrics, as well as DEPENDABLE, a robust parser evaluation tool.

## Exercises

# 15 | Logical Representations of Sentence Meaning

ISHMAEL: *Surely all this is not without meaning.*  
Herman Melville, *Moby Dick*

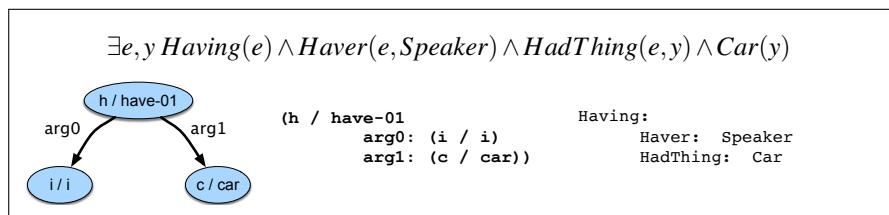
meaning representations

semantic parsing

computational semantics

In this chapter we introduce the idea that the meaning of linguistic expressions can be captured in formal structures called **meaning representations**. Consider tasks that require some form of semantic processing, like learning to use a new piece of software by reading the manual, deciding what to order at a restaurant by reading a menu, or following a recipe. Accomplishing these tasks requires representations that link the linguistic elements to the necessary non-linguistic *knowledge of the world*. Reading a menu and deciding what to order, giving advice about where to go to dinner, following a recipe, and generating new recipes all require knowledge about food and its preparation, what people like to eat, and what restaurants are like. Learning to use a piece of software by reading a manual, or giving advice on using software, requires knowledge about the software and similar apps, computers, and users in general.

In this chapter, we assume that linguistic expressions have meaning representations that are made up of the *same kind of stuff* that is used to represent this kind of everyday common-sense knowledge of the world. The process whereby such representations are created and assigned to linguistic inputs is called **semantic parsing** or **semantic analysis**, and the entire enterprise of designing meaning representations and associated semantic parsers is referred to as **computational semantics**.



**Figure 15.1** A list of symbols, two directed graphs, and a record structure: a sampler of meaning representations for *I have a car*.

Consider Fig. 15.1, which shows example meaning representations for the sentence *I have a car* using four commonly used meaning representation languages. The top row illustrates a sentence in **First-Order Logic**, covered in detail in Section 15.3; the directed graph and its corresponding textual form is an example of an **Abstract Meaning Representation (AMR)** form (Banarescu et al., 2013), and on the right is a **frame-based** or **slot-filler** representation, discussed in Section 15.5 and again in Chapter 17.

While there are non-trivial differences among these approaches, they all share the notion that a meaning representation consists of structures composed from a set of symbols, or representational vocabulary. When appropriately arranged, these symbol structures are taken to *correspond* to objects, properties of objects, and relations among objects in some state of affairs being represented or reasoned about. In this case, all four representations make use of symbols corresponding to the speaker, a car, and a relation denoting the possession of one by the other.

Importantly, these representations can be viewed from at least two distinct perspectives in all of these approaches: as representations of the meaning of the particular linguistic input *I have a car*, and as representations of the state of affairs in some world. It is this dual perspective that allows these representations to be used to link linguistic inputs to the world and to our knowledge of it.

In the next sections we give some background: our desiderata for a meaning representation language and some guarantees that these representations will actually do what we need them to do—provide a correspondence to the state of affairs being represented. In Section 15.3 we introduce First-Order Logic, historically the primary technique for investigating natural language semantics, and see in Section 15.4 how it can be used to capture the semantics of events and states in English. Chapter 16 then introduces techniques for **semantic parsing**: generating these formal meaning representations given linguistic inputs.

## 15.1 Computational Desiderata for Representations

Let's consider why meaning representations are needed and what they should do for us. To focus this discussion, let's consider a system that gives restaurant advice to tourists based on a knowledge base.

### Verifiability

Consider the following simple question:

(15.1) Does Maharani serve vegetarian food?

**verifiability**

To answer this question, we have to know what it's asking, and know whether what it's asking is true of Maharani or not. **verifiability** is a system's ability to compare the state of affairs described by a representation to the state of affairs in some world as modeled in a knowledge base. For example we'll need some sort of representation like *Serves(Maharani, VegetarianFood)*, which a system can match against its knowledge base of facts about particular restaurants, and if it finds a representation matching this proposition, it can answer yes. Otherwise, it must either say *No* if its knowledge of local restaurants is complete, or say that it doesn't know if it knows its knowledge is incomplete.

### Unambiguous Representations

Semantics, like all the other domains we have studied, is subject to ambiguity. Words and sentences have different meaning representations in different contexts. Consider the following example:

(15.2) I wanna eat someplace that's close to ICSI.

This sentence can either mean that the speaker wants to eat *at* some nearby location, or under a Godzilla-as-speaker interpretation, the speaker may want to devour some

nearby location. The sentence is ambiguous; a single linguistic expression can have one of two meanings. But our *meaning representations* itself cannot be ambiguous. The representation of an input's meaning should be free from any ambiguity, so that the system can reason over a representation that means either one thing or the other in order to decide how to answer.

#### vagueness

A concept closely related to ambiguity is **vagueness**: in which a meaning representation leaves some parts of the meaning underspecified. Vagueness does not give rise to multiple representations. Consider the following request:

(15.3) I want to eat Italian food.

While *Italian food* may provide enough information to provide recommendations, it is nevertheless *vague* as to what the user really wants to eat. A vague representation of the meaning of this phrase may be appropriate for some purposes, while a more specific representation may be needed for other purposes.

#### Canonical Form

#### canonical form

The doctrine of **canonical form** says that distinct inputs that mean the same thing should have the same meaning representation. This approach greatly simplifies reasoning, since systems need only deal with a single meaning representation for a potentially wide range of expressions.

Consider the following alternative ways of expressing (15.1):

- (15.4) Does Maharani have vegetarian dishes?
- (15.5) Do they have vegetarian food at Maharani?
- (15.6) Are vegetarian dishes served at Maharani?
- (15.7) Does Maharani serve vegetarian fare?

Despite the fact these alternatives use different words and syntax, we want them to map to a single canonical meaning representations. If they were all different, assuming the system's knowledge base contains only a single representation of this fact, most of the representations wouldn't match. We could, of course, store all possible alternative representations of the same fact in the knowledge base, but doing so would lead to enormous difficult in keeping the knowledge base consistent.

Canonical form does complicate the task of semantic parsing. Our system must conclude that *vegetarian fare*, *vegetarian dishes*, and *vegetarian food* refer to the same thing, that *having* and *serving* are equivalent here, and that all these parse structures still lead to the same meaning representation. Or consider this pair of examples:

- (15.8) Maharani serves vegetarian dishes.
- (15.9) Vegetarian dishes are served by Maharani.

Despite the different placement of the arguments to *serve*, a system must still assign *Maharani* and *vegetarian dishes* to the same roles in the two examples by drawing on grammatical knowledge, such as the relationship between active and passive sentence constructions.

#### Inference and Variables

What about more complex requests such as:

- (15.10) Can vegetarians eat at Maharani?

This request results in the same answer as the others not because they mean the same thing, but because there is a common-sense connection between what vegetarians eat

and what vegetarian restaurants serve. This is a fact about the world. We'll need to connect the meaning representation of this request with this fact about the world in a knowledge base. A system must be able to use **inference**—to draw valid conclusions based on the meaning representation of inputs and its background knowledge. It must be possible for the system to draw conclusions about the truth of propositions that are not explicitly represented in the knowledge base but that are nevertheless logically derivable from the propositions that are present.

Now consider the following somewhat more complex request:

(15.11) I'd like to find a restaurant where I can get vegetarian food.

This request does not make reference to any particular restaurant; the user wants information about an unknown restaurant that serves vegetarian food. Since no restaurants are named, simple matching is not going to work. Answering this request requires the use of **variables**, using some representation like the following:

$$\text{Serves}(x, \text{VegetarianFood}) \quad (15.12)$$

Matching succeeds only if the variable  $x$  can be replaced by some object in the knowledge base in such a way that the entire proposition will then match. The concept that is substituted for the variable can then be used to fulfill the user's request. It is critical for any meaning representation language to be able to handle these kinds of indefinite references.

### Expressiveness

Finally, a meaning representation scheme must be expressive enough to handle a wide range of subject matter, ideally any sensible natural language utterance. Although this is probably too much to expect from any single representational system, First-Order Logic, as described in Section 15.3, is expressive enough to handle quite a lot of what needs to be represented.

## 15.2 Model-Theoretic Semantics

What is it about meaning representation languages that allows them to fulfill these desiderata, bridging the gap from formal representations to representations that tell us something about some state of affairs in the world?

The answer is a **model**. A model is a formal construct that stands for the particular state of affairs in the world. Expressions in a meaning representation language can be mapped to elements of the model, like objects, properties of objects, and relations among objects. If the model accurately captures the facts we're interested in, then a consistent mapping between the meaning representation and the model provides the bridge between meaning representation and world. Models provide a surprisingly simple and powerful way to ground the expressions in meaning representation languages.

**non-logical vocabulary**

First, some terminology. The vocabulary of a meaning representation consists of two parts: the non-logical vocabulary and the logical vocabulary. The **non-logical vocabulary** consists of the open-ended set of names for the objects, properties, and relations that make up the world we're trying to represent. These appear in various schemes as predicates, nodes, labels on links, or labels in slots in frames. The **logical vocabulary** consists of the closed set of symbols, operators, quantifiers, links,

**logical vocabulary**

etc., that provide the formal means for composing expressions in a given meaning representation language.

**denotation**

Each element of the non-logical vocabulary must have a **denotation** in the model, meaning that every element corresponds to a fixed, well-defined part of the model. Let's start with objects. The **domain** of a model is the set of objects that are being represented. Each distinct concept, category, or individual denotes a unique element in the domain.

**extensional**

We represent *properties* of objects in a model by denoting the domain elements that have the property; that is, properties denote sets. The denotation of the property *red* is the set of things we think are red. Similarly, a relations among object denote a set of ordered lists, or tuples, of domain elements that take part in the relations: the denotation of the relation *Married* is set of pairs of domain objects that are married. This approach to properties and relations is called **extensional**, because we define concepts by their extension, their denotations. To summarize:

- Objects denote *elements* of the domain
- Properties denote *sets of elements* of the domain
- Relations denote *sets of tuples of elements* of the domain

**interpretation**

We now need a mapping that gets us from our meaning representation to the corresponding denotations: a function that maps from the non-logical vocabulary of our meaning representation to the proper denotations in the model. We'll call such a mapping an **interpretation**.

Let's return to our restaurant advice application, and let its domain consist of sets of restaurants, patrons, facts about the likes and dislikes of the patrons, and facts about the restaurants such as their cuisine, typical cost, and noise level. To begin populating our domain,  $\mathcal{D}$ , let's assume that we're dealing with four patrons designated by the non-logical symbols *Matthew*, *Franco*, *Katie*, and *Caroline*, denoting four unique domain elements. We'll use the constants  $a, b, c$  and,  $d$  to stand for these domain elements. We're deliberately using meaningless, non-mnemonic names for our domain elements to emphasize the fact that whatever it is that we know about these entities has to come from the formal properties of the model and not from the names of the symbols. Continuing, let's assume that our application includes three restaurants, designated as *Frasca*, *Med*, and *Rio* in our meaning representation, that denote the domain elements  $e, f$ , and  $g$ . Finally, let's assume that we're dealing with the three cuisines *Italian*, *Mexican*, and *Eclectic*, denoted by  $h, i$ , and  $j$  in our model.

Properties like *Noisy* denote the subset of restaurants from our domain that are known to be noisy. Two-place relational notions, such as which restaurants individual patrons *Like*, denote ordered pairs, or tuples, of the objects from the domain. And, since we decided to represent cuisines as objects in our model, we can capture which restaurants *Serve* which cuisines as a set of tuples. One possible state of affairs using this scheme is given in Fig. 15.2.

Given this simple scheme, we can ground our meaning representations by consulting the appropriate denotations in the corresponding model. For example, we can evaluate a representation claiming that *Matthew likes the Rio*, or that *The Med serves Italian* by mapping the objects in the meaning representations to their corresponding domain elements and mapping any links, predicates, or slots in the meaning representation to the appropriate relations in the model. More concretely, we can verify a representation asserting that *Matthew likes Frasca* by first using our interpretation function to map the symbol *Matthew* to its denotation  $a$ , *Frasca* to  $e$ , and the *Likes* relation to the appropriate set of tuples. We then check that set of tuples for the

<b>Domain</b>	$\mathcal{D} = \{a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j\}$
Matthew, Franco, Katie and Caroline	$a, b, c, d$
Frasca, Med, Rio	$e, f, g$
Italian, Mexican, Eclectic	$h, i, j$
<b>Properties</b>	
Noisy	$Noisy = \{e, f, g\}$
Frasca, Med, and Rio are noisy	
<b>Relations</b>	
Likes	$Likes = \{\langle a, f \rangle, \langle c, f \rangle, \langle c, g \rangle, \langle b, e \rangle, \langle d, f \rangle, \langle d, g \rangle\}$
Matthew likes the Med	
Katie likes the Med and Rio	
Franco likes Frasca	
Caroline likes the Med and Rio	
Serves	$Serves = \{\langle f, j \rangle, \langle g, i \rangle, \langle e, h \rangle\}$
Med serves eclectic	
Rio serves Mexican	
Frasca serves Italian	

**Figure 15.2** A model of the restaurant world.

presence of the tuple  $\langle a, e \rangle$ . If, as it is in this case, the tuple is present in the model, then we can conclude that *Matthew likes Frasca* is true; if it isn't then we can't.

This is all pretty straightforward—we're using sets and operations on sets to ground the expressions in our meaning representations. Of course, the more interesting part comes when we consider more complex examples such as the following:

- (15.13) Katie likes the Rio and Matthew likes the Med.
- (15.14) Katie and Caroline like the same restaurants.
- (15.15) Franco likes noisy, expensive restaurants.
- (15.16) Not everybody likes Frasca.

Our simple scheme for grounding the meaning of representations is not adequate for examples such as these. Plausible meaning representations for these examples will not map directly to individual entities, properties, or relations. Instead, they involve complications such as conjunctions, equality, quantified variables, and negations. To assess whether these statements are consistent with our model, we'll have to tear them apart, assess the parts, and then determine the meaning of the whole from the meaning of the parts.

Consider the first example above. A meaning representation for this example will include two distinct propositions expressing the individual patron's preferences, conjoined with some kind of implicit or explicit conjunction operator. Our model doesn't have a relation that encodes pairwise preferences for all of the patrons and restaurants in our model, nor does it need to. We know from our model that *Matthew likes the Med* and separately that *Katie likes the Rio* (that is, the tuples  $\langle a, f \rangle$  and  $\langle c, g \rangle$  are members of the set denoted by the *Likes* relation). All we really need to know is how to deal with the semantics of the conjunction operator. If we assume the simplest possible semantics for the English word *and*, the whole statement is true if it is the case that each of the components is true in our model. In this case, both components are true since the appropriate tuples are present and therefore the sentence as a whole is true.

What we've done with this example is provide a **truth-conditional semantics**

<i>Formula</i>	$\rightarrow$	<i>AtomicFormula</i>
		<i>Formula Connective Formula</i>
		<i>Quantifier Variable, ... Formula</i>
		$\neg$ <i>Formula</i>
		( <i>Formula</i> )
<i>AtomicFormula</i>	$\rightarrow$	<i>Predicate(Term, ...)</i>
<i>Term</i>	$\rightarrow$	<i>Function(Term, ...)</i>
		<i>Constant</i>
		<i>Variable</i>
<i>Connective</i>	$\rightarrow$	$\wedge$   $\vee$   $\Rightarrow$
<i>Quantifier</i>	$\rightarrow$	$\forall$   $\exists$
<i>Constant</i>	$\rightarrow$	<i>A</i>   <i>VegetarianFood</i>   <i>Maharani</i> ...
<i>Variable</i>	$\rightarrow$	<i>x</i>   <i>y</i>   ...
<i>Predicate</i>	$\rightarrow$	<i>Serves</i>   <i>Near</i>   ...
<i>Function</i>	$\rightarrow$	<i>LocationOf</i>   <i>CuisineOf</i>   ...

**Figure 15.3** A context-free grammar specification of the syntax of First-Order Logic representations. Adapted from Russell and Norvig (2002).

for the assumed conjunction operator in some meaning representation. That is, we've provided a method for determining the truth of a complex expression from the meanings of the parts (by consulting a model) and the meaning of an operator by consulting a truth table. Meaning representation languages are truth-conditional to the extent that they give a formal specification as to how we can determine the meaning of complex sentences from the meaning of their parts. In particular, we need to know the semantics of the entire logical vocabulary of the meaning representation scheme being used.

Note that although the details of how this happens depend on details of the particular meaning representation being used, it should be clear that assessing the truth conditions of examples like these involves nothing beyond the simple set operations we've been discussing. We return to these issues in the next section in the context of the semantics of First-Order Logic.

## 15.3 First-Order Logic

First-Order Logic (FOL) is a flexible, well-understood, and computationally tractable meaning representation language that satisfies many of the desiderata given in Section 15.1. It provides a sound computational basis for the verifiability, inference, and expressiveness requirements, as well as a sound model-theoretic semantics.

An additional attractive feature of FOL is that it makes few specific commitments as to how things ought to be represented, and those it does are shared by many of the schemes mentioned earlier: the represented world consists of objects, properties of objects, and relations among objects.

The remainder of this section introduces the basic syntax and semantics of FOL and then describes the application of FOL to the representation of events.

### 15.3.1 Basic Elements of First-Order Logic

Let's explore FOL by first examining its various atomic elements and then showing how they can be composed to create larger meaning representations. Figure 15.3,

which provides a complete context-free grammar for the particular syntax of FOL that we will use, is our roadmap for this section.

**term** Let's begin by examining the notion of a **term**, the FOL device for representing objects. As can be seen from Fig. 15.3, FOL provides three ways to represent these basic building blocks: constants, functions, and variables. Each of these devices can be thought of as designating an object in the world under consideration.

**constant** **Constants** in FOL refer to specific objects in the world being described. Such constants are conventionally depicted as either single capitalized letters such as *A* and *B* or single capitalized words that are often reminiscent of proper nouns such as *Maharani* and *Harry*. Like programming language constants, FOL constants refer to exactly one object. Objects can, however, have multiple constants that refer to them.

**function** **Functions** in FOL correspond to concepts that are often expressed in English as genitives such as *Frasca's location*. A FOL translation of such an expression might look like the following.

$$\text{LocationOf}(\text{Frasca}) \quad (15.17)$$

FOL functions are syntactically the same as single argument predicates. It is important to remember, however, that while they have the appearance of predicates, they are in fact *terms* in that they refer to unique objects. Functions provide a convenient way to refer to specific objects without having to associate a named constant with them. This is particularly convenient in cases in which many named objects, like restaurants, have a unique concept such as a location associated with them.

**variable** **Variables** are our final FOL mechanism for referring to objects. Variables, depicted as single lower-case letters, let us make assertions and draw inferences about objects without having to make reference to any particular named object. This ability to make statements about anonymous objects comes in two flavors: making statements about a particular unknown object and making statements about all the objects in some arbitrary world of objects. We return to the topic of variables after we have presented quantifiers, the elements of FOL that make variables useful.

Now that we have the means to refer to objects, we can move on to the FOL mechanisms that are used to state relations that hold among objects. Predicates are symbols that refer to, or name, the relations that hold among some fixed number of objects in a given domain. Returning to the example introduced informally in Section 15.1, a reasonable FOL representation for *Maharani serves vegetarian food* might look like the following formula:

$$\text{Serves}(\text{Maharani}, \text{VegetarianFood}) \quad (15.18)$$

This FOL sentence asserts that *Serves*, a two-place predicate, holds between the objects denoted by the constants *Maharani* and *VegetarianFood*.

A somewhat different use of predicates is illustrated by the following fairly typical representation for a sentence like *Maharani is a restaurant*:

$$\text{Restaurant}(\text{Maharani}) \quad (15.19)$$

This is an example of a one-place predicate that is used, not to relate multiple objects, but rather to assert a property of a single object. In this case, it encodes the category membership of *Maharani*.

With the ability to refer to objects, to assert facts about objects, and to relate objects to one another, we can create rudimentary composite representations. These representations correspond to the atomic formula level in Fig. 15.3. This ability

## logical connectives

to compose complex representations is, however, not limited to the use of single predicates. Larger composite representations can also be put together through the use of **logical connectives**. As can be seen from Fig. 15.3, logical connectives let us create larger representations by conjoining logical formulas using one of three operators. Consider, for example, the following BERP sentence and one possible representation for it:

(15.20) I only have five dollars and I don't have a lot of time.

$$\text{Have}(\text{Speaker}, \text{FiveDollars}) \wedge \neg \text{Have}(\text{Speaker}, \text{LotOfTime}) \quad (15.21)$$

The semantic representation for this example is built up in a straightforward way from the semantics of the individual clauses through the use of the  $\wedge$  and  $\neg$  operators. Note that the recursive nature of the grammar in Fig. 15.3 allows an infinite number of logical formulas to be created through the use of these connectives. Thus, as with syntax, we can use a finite device to create an infinite number of representations.

## quantifiers

### 15.3.2 Variables and Quantifiers

We now have all the machinery necessary to return to our earlier discussion of variables. As noted above, variables are used in two ways in FOL: to refer to particular anonymous objects and to refer generically to all objects in a collection. These two uses are made possible through the use of operators known as **quantifiers**. The two operators that are basic to FOL are the existential quantifier, which is denoted  $\exists$  and is pronounced as “there exists”, and the universal quantifier, which is denoted  $\forall$  and is pronounced as “for all”.

The need for an existentially quantified variable is often signaled by the presence of an indefinite noun phrase in English. Consider the following example:

(15.22) a restaurant that serves Mexican food near ICSI.

Here, reference is being made to an anonymous object of a specified category with particular properties. The following would be a reasonable representation of the meaning of such a phrase:

$$\begin{aligned} \exists x \text{Restaurant}(x) \wedge \text{Serves}(x, \text{MexicanFood}) \\ \wedge \text{Near}((\text{LocationOf}(x), \text{LocationOf}(\text{ICSI})) \end{aligned} \quad (15.23)$$

The existential quantifier at the head of this sentence instructs us on how to interpret the variable  $x$  in the context of this sentence. Informally, it says that for this sentence to be true there must be at least one object such that if we were to substitute it for the variable  $x$ , the resulting sentence would be true. For example, if *AyCaramba* is a Mexican restaurant near ICSI, then substituting *AyCaramba* for  $x$  results in the following logical formula:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Restaurant}(\text{AyCaramba}) \wedge \text{Serves}(\text{AyCaramba}, \text{MexicanFood}) \\ \wedge \text{Near}((\text{LocationOf}(\text{AyCaramba}), \text{LocationOf}(\text{ICSI})) \end{aligned} \quad (15.24)$$

Based on the semantics of the  $\wedge$  operator, this sentence will be true if all of its three component atomic formulas are true. These in turn will be true if they are either present in the system’s knowledge base or can be inferred from other facts in the knowledge base.

The use of the universal quantifier also has an interpretation based on substitution of known objects for variables. The substitution semantics for the universal

quantifier takes the expression *for all* quite literally; the  $\forall$  operator states that for the logical formula in question to be true, the substitution of *any* object in the knowledge base for the universally quantified variable should result in a true formula. This is in marked contrast to the  $\exists$  operator, which only insists on a single valid substitution for the sentence to be true.

Consider the following example:

(15.25) All vegetarian restaurants serve vegetarian food.

A reasonable representation for this sentence would be something like the following:

$$\forall x \text{VegetarianRestaurant}(x) \implies \text{Serves}(x, \text{VegetarianFood}) \quad (15.26)$$

For this sentence to be true, every substitution of a known object for  $x$  must result in a sentence that is true. We can divide the set of all possible substitutions into the set of objects consisting of vegetarian restaurants and the set consisting of everything else. Let us first consider the case in which the substituted object actually is a vegetarian restaurant; one such substitution would result in the following sentence:

$$\text{VegetarianRestaurant}(\text{Maharani}) \implies \text{Serves}(\text{Maharani}, \text{VegetarianFood}) \quad (15.27)$$

If we assume that we know that the consequent clause

$$\text{Serves}(\text{Maharani}, \text{VegetarianFood}) \quad (15.28)$$

is true, then this sentence as a whole must be true. Both the antecedent and the consequent have the value *True* and, therefore, according to the first two rows of Fig. 15.4 on page 316 the sentence itself can have the value *True*. This result will be the same for all possible substitutions of *Terms* representing vegetarian restaurants for  $x$ .

Remember, however, that for this sentence to be true, it must be true for all possible substitutions. What happens when we consider a substitution from the set of objects that are not vegetarian restaurants? Consider the substitution of a non-vegetarian restaurant such as *AyCaramba* for the variable  $x$ :

$$\text{VegetarianRestaurant}(\text{AyCaramba}) \implies \text{Serves}(\text{AyCaramba}, \text{VegetarianFood})$$

Since the antecedent of the implication is *False*, we can determine from Fig. 15.4 that the sentence is always *True*, again satisfying the  $\forall$  constraint.

Note that it may still be the case that *AyCaramba* serves vegetarian food without actually being a vegetarian restaurant. Note also that, despite our choice of examples, there are no implied categorical restrictions on the objects that can be substituted for  $x$  by this kind of reasoning. In other words, there is no restriction of  $x$  to restaurants or concepts related to them. Consider the following substitution:

$$\text{VegetarianRestaurant}(\text{Carburetor}) \implies \text{Serves}(\text{Carburetor}, \text{VegetarianFood})$$

Here the antecedent is still false so the rule remains true under this kind of irrelevant substitution.

To review, variables in logical formulas must be either existentially ( $\exists$ ) or universally ( $\forall$ ) quantified. To satisfy an existentially quantified variable, at least one substitution must result in a true sentence. To satisfy a universally quantified variable, all substitutions must result in true sentences.

### 15.3.3 Lambda Notation

**lambda notation** The final element we need to complete our discussion of FOL is called the **lambda notation** (Church, 1940). This notation provides a way to abstract from fully specified FOL formulas in a way that will be particularly useful for semantic analysis. The lambda notation extends the syntax of FOL to include expressions of the following form:

$$\lambda x.P(x) \quad (15.29)$$

Such expressions consist of the Greek symbol  $\lambda$ , followed by one or more variables, followed by a FOL formula that makes use of those variables.

**$\lambda$ -reduction**

The usefulness of these  $\lambda$ -expressions is based on the ability to apply them to logical terms to yield new FOL expressions where the formal parameter variables are bound to the specified terms. This process is known as  **$\lambda$ -reduction**, and consists of a simple textual replacement of the  $\lambda$  variables and the removal of the  $\lambda$ . The following expressions illustrate the application of a  $\lambda$ -expression to the constant  $A$ , followed by the result of performing a  $\lambda$ -reduction on this expression:

$$\begin{aligned} \lambda x.P(x)(A) \\ P(A) \end{aligned} \quad (15.30)$$

An important and useful variation of this technique is the use of one  $\lambda$ -expression as the body of another as in the following expression:

$$\lambda x.\lambda y.Near(x,y) \quad (15.31)$$

This fairly abstract expression can be glossed as the state of something being near something else. The following expressions illustrate a single  $\lambda$ -application and subsequent reduction with this kind of embedded  $\lambda$ -expression:

$$\begin{aligned} \lambda x.\lambda y.Near(x,y)(Bacaro) \\ \lambda y.Near(Bacaro,y) \end{aligned} \quad (15.32)$$

The important point here is that the resulting expression is still a  $\lambda$ -expression; the first reduction bound the variable  $x$  and removed the outer  $\lambda$ , thus revealing the inner expression. As might be expected, this resulting  $\lambda$ -expression can, in turn, be applied to another term to arrive at a fully specified logical formula, as in the following:

$$\begin{aligned} \lambda y.Near(Bacaro,y)(Centro) \\ Near(Bacaro,Centro) \end{aligned} \quad (15.33)$$

**currying**

This general technique, called **currying**<sup>1</sup> (Schönfinkel, 1924) is a way of converting a predicate with multiple arguments into a sequence of single-argument predicates.

As we show in Chapter 16, the  $\lambda$ -notation provides a way to incrementally gather arguments to a predicate when they do not all appear together as daughters of the predicate in a parse tree.

### 15.3.4 The Semantics of First-Order Logic

The various objects, properties, and relations represented in a FOL knowledge base acquire their meanings by virtue of their correspondence to objects, properties, and

---

<sup>1</sup> Currying is the standard term, although Heim and Kratzer (1998) present an interesting argument for the term *Schönfinkelization* over currying, since Curry later built on Schönfinkel's work.

relations out in the external world being modeled. We can accomplish this by employing the model-theoretic approach introduced in Section 15.2. Recall that this approach employs simple set-theoretic notions to provide a truth-conditional mapping from the expressions in a meaning representation to the state of affairs being modeled. We can apply this approach to FOL by going through all the elements in Fig. 15.3 on page 311 and specifying how each should be accounted for.

We can start by asserting that the objects in our world, FOL terms, denote elements in a domain, and asserting that atomic formulas are captured either as sets of domain elements for properties, or as sets of tuples of elements for relations. As an example, consider the following:

(15.34) Centro is near Bacaro.

Capturing the meaning of this example in FOL involves identifying the *Terms* and *Predicates* that correspond to the various grammatical elements in the sentence and creating logical formulas that capture the relations implied by the words and syntax of the sentence. For this example, such an effort might yield something like the following:

$$\text{Near}(\text{Centro}, \text{Bacaro}) \quad (15.35)$$

The meaning of this logical formula is based on whether the domain elements denoted by the terms *Centro* and *Bacaro* are contained among the tuples denoted by the relation denoted by the predicate *Near* in the current model.

The interpretation of formulas involving logical connectives is based on the meanings of the components in the formulas combined with the meanings of the connectives they contain. Figure 15.4 gives interpretations for each of the logical operators shown in Fig. 15.3.

$P$	$Q$	$\neg P$	$P \wedge Q$	$P \vee Q$	$P \Rightarrow Q$
<i>False</i>	<i>False</i>	<i>True</i>	<i>False</i>	<i>False</i>	<i>True</i>
<i>False</i>	<i>True</i>	<i>True</i>	<i>False</i>	<i>True</i>	<i>True</i>
<i>True</i>	<i>False</i>	<i>False</i>	<i>False</i>	<i>True</i>	<i>False</i>
<i>True</i>	<i>True</i>	<i>False</i>	<i>True</i>	<i>True</i>	<i>True</i>

**Figure 15.4** Truth table giving the semantics of the various logical connectives.

The semantics of the  $\wedge$  (and) and  $\neg$  (not) operators are fairly straightforward, and are correlated with at least some of the senses of the corresponding English terms. However, it is worth pointing out that the  $\vee$  (or) operator is not disjunctive in the same way that the corresponding English word is, and that the  $\Rightarrow$  (implies) operator is only loosely based on any common-sense notions of implication or causation.

The final bit we need to address involves variables and quantifiers. Recall that there are no variables in our set-based models, only elements of the domain and relations that hold among them. We can provide a model-based account for formulas with variables by employing the notion of a substitution introduced earlier on page 313. Formulas involving  $\exists$  are true if a substitution of terms for variables results in a formula that is true in the model. Formulas involving  $\forall$  must be true under all possible substitutions.

### 15.3.5 Inference

A meaning representation language must support inference to add valid new propositions to a knowledge base or to determine the truth of propositions not explicitly

contained within a knowledge base (Section 15.1). This section briefly discusses **modus ponens**, the most widely implemented inference method provided by FOL.

### Modus ponens

**Modus ponens** is a form of inference that corresponds to what is informally known as *if-then* reasoning. We can abstractly define modus ponens as follows, where  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  should be taken as FOL formulas:

$$\frac{\alpha \quad \alpha \implies \beta}{\beta} \quad (15.36)$$

A schema like this indicates that the formula below the line can be inferred from the formulas above the line by some form of inference. Modus ponens states that if the left-hand side of an implication rule is true, then the right-hand side of the rule can be inferred. In the following discussions, we will refer to the left-hand side of an implication as the **antecedent** and the right-hand side as the **consequent**.

For a typical use of modus ponens, consider the following example, which uses a rule from the last section:

$$\frac{\begin{array}{c} \text{VegetarianRestaurant}(Leaf) \\ \forall x \text{VegetarianRestaurant}(x) \implies \text{Serves}(x, \text{VegetarianFood}) \end{array}}{\text{Serves}(Leaf, \text{VegetarianFood})} \quad (15.37)$$

Here, the formula  $\text{VegetarianRestaurant}(Leaf)$  matches the antecedent of the rule, thus allowing us to use modus ponens to conclude  $\text{Serves}(Leaf, \text{VegetarianFood})$ .

### forward chaining

Modus ponens can be put to practical use in one of two ways: forward chaining and backward chaining. In **forward chaining** systems, modus ponens is used in precisely the manner just described. As individual facts are added to the knowledge base, modus ponens is used to fire all applicable implication rules. In this kind of arrangement, as soon as a new fact is added to the knowledge base, all applicable implication rules are found and applied, each resulting in the addition of new facts to the knowledge base. These new propositions in turn can be used to fire implication rules applicable to them. The process continues until no further facts can be deduced.

The forward chaining approach has the advantage that facts will be present in the knowledge base when needed, because, in a sense all inference is performed in advance. This can substantially reduce the time needed to answer subsequent queries since they should all amount to simple lookups. The disadvantage of this approach is that facts that will never be needed may be inferred and stored.

### backward chaining

In **backward chaining**, modus ponens is run in reverse to prove specific propositions called queries. The first step is to see if the query formula is true by determining if it is present in the knowledge base. If it is not, then the next step is to search for applicable implication rules present in the knowledge base. An applicable rule is one whereby the consequent of the rule matches the query formula. If there are any such rules, then the query can be proved if the antecedent of any one them can be shown to be true. This can be performed recursively by backward chaining on the antecedent as a new query. The Prolog programming language is a backward chaining system that implements this strategy.

To see how this works, let's assume that we have been asked to verify the truth of the proposition  $\text{Serves}(Leaf, \text{VegetarianFood})$ , assuming the facts given above the line in (15.37). Since this proposition is not present in the knowledge base, a search for an applicable rule is initiated resulting in the rule given above. After substituting

the constant *Leaf* for the variable *x*, our next task is to prove the antecedent of the rule, *VegetarianRestaurant(Leaf)*, which, of course, is one of the facts we are given.

Note that it is critical to distinguish between reasoning by backward chaining from queries to known facts and reasoning backwards from known consequents to unknown antecedents. To be specific, by reasoning backwards we mean that if the consequent of a rule is known to be true, we assume that the antecedent will be as well. For example, let's assume that we know that *Serves(Leaf, VegetarianFood)* is true. Since this fact matches the consequent of our rule, we might reason backwards to the conclusion that *VegetarianRestaurant(Leaf)*.

While backward chaining is a sound method of reasoning, reasoning backwards is an invalid, though frequently useful, form of *plausible reasoning*. Plausible reasoning from consequents to antecedents is known as **abduction**, and as we show in Chapter 22, is often useful in accounting for many of the inferences people make while analyzing extended discourses.

**complete** While forward and backward reasoning are sound, neither is **complete**. This means that there are valid inferences that cannot be found by systems using these methods alone. Fortunately, there is an alternative inference technique called **resolution**

**resolution** that is sound and complete. Unfortunately, inference systems based on resolution are far more computationally expensive than forward or backward chaining systems. In practice, therefore, most systems use some form of chaining and place a burden on knowledge base developers to encode the knowledge in a fashion that permits the necessary inferences to be drawn.

## 15.4 Event and State Representations

Much of the semantics that we wish to capture consists of representations of states and events. States are conditions, or properties, that remain unchanged over an extended period of time, and events denote changes in some state of affairs. The representation of both states and events may involve a host of participants, props, times and locations.

The representations for events and states that we have used thus far have consisted of single predicates with as many arguments as are needed to incorporate all the roles associated with a given example. For example, the representation for *Leaf serves vegetarian fare* consists of a single predicate with arguments for the entity doing the serving and the thing served.

$$\text{Serves}(\text{Leaf}, \text{VegetarianFare}) \quad (15.38)$$

This approach assumes that the predicate used to represent an event verb has the same number of arguments as are present in the verb's syntactic subcategorization frame. Unfortunately, this is clearly not always the case. Consider the following examples of the verb *eat*:

- (15.39) I ate.
- (15.40) I ate a turkey sandwich.
- (15.41) I ate a turkey sandwich at my desk.
- (15.42) I ate at my desk.
- (15.43) I ate lunch.
- (15.44) I ate a turkey sandwich for lunch.

(15.45) I ate a turkey sandwich for lunch at my desk.

Clearly, choosing the correct number of arguments for the predicate representing the meaning of *eat* is a tricky problem. These examples introduce five distinct arguments, or roles, in an array of different syntactic forms, locations, and combinations. Unfortunately, predicates in FOL have fixed **arity** – they take a fixed number of arguments.

**event variable** To address this problem, we introduce the notion of an **event variable** to allow us to make assertions about particular events. To do this, we can refactor our event predicates to have an existentially quantified variable as their first, *and only*, argument. Using this event variable, we can introduce additional predicates to represent the other information we have about the event. These predicates take an event variable as their first argument and related FOL terms as their second argument. The following formula illustrates this scheme with the meaning representation of 15.40 from our earlier discussion.

$$\exists e \text{ Eating}(e) \wedge \text{Eater}(e, \text{Speaker}) \wedge \text{Eaten}(e, \text{TurkeySandwich})$$

Here, the quantified variable *e* stands for the eating event and is used to bind the event predicate with the core information provided via the named roles *Eater* and *Eaten*. To handle the more complex examples, we simply add additional relations to capture the provided information, as in the following for 15.45.

$$\begin{aligned} \exists e \text{ Eating}(e) \wedge \text{Eater}(e, \text{Speaker}) \wedge \text{Eaten}(e, \text{TurkeySandwich}) \quad (15.46) \\ \wedge \text{Meal}(e, \text{Lunch}) \wedge \text{Location}(e, \text{Desk}) \end{aligned}$$

**neo-Davidsonian** Event representations of this sort are referred to as **neo-Davidsonian** event representations (Davidson 1967, Parsons 1990) after the philosopher Donald Davidson who introduced the notion of an event variable (Davidson, 1967). To summarize, in the neo-Davidsonian approach to event representations:

- Events are captured with predicates that take a single event variable as an argument.
- There is no need to specify a fixed number of arguments for a given FOL predicate; rather, as many roles and fillers can be glued on as are provided in the input.
- No more roles are postulated than are mentioned in the input.
- The logical connections among closely related inputs that share the same predicate are satisfied without the need for additional inference.

This approach still leaves us with the problem of determining the set of predicates needed to represent roles associated with specific events like *Eater* and *Eaten*, as well as more general concepts like *Location* and *Time*. We'll return to this problem in more detail in Chapter 10.

### 15.4.1 Representing Time

**temporal logic** In our discussion of events, we did not seriously address the issue of capturing the time when the represented events are supposed to have occurred. The representation of such information in a useful form is the domain of **temporal logic**. This discussion introduces the most basic concerns of temporal logic and briefly discusses the means by which human languages convey temporal information, which, among other things, includes **tense logic**, the ways that verb tenses convey temporal infor-

**tense logic**

mation. A more detailed discussion of robust approaches to the representation and analysis of temporal expressions is presented in Chapter 17.

The most straightforward theory of time holds that it flows inexorably forward and that events are associated with either points or intervals in time, as on a timeline. We can order distinct events by situating them on the timeline; one event *precedes* another if the flow of time leads from the first event to the second. Accompanying these notions in most theories is the idea of the current moment in time. Combining this notion with the idea of a temporal ordering relationship yields the familiar notions of past, present, and future.

Many schemes can represent this kind of temporal information. The one presented here is a fairly simple one that stays within the FOL framework of reified events that we have been pursuing. Consider the following examples:

- (15.47) I arrived in New York.
- (15.48) I am arriving in New York.
- (15.49) I will arrive in New York.

These sentences all refer to the same kind of event and differ solely in the tense of the verb. In our current scheme for representing events, all three would share the following kind of representation, which lacks any temporal information:

$$\exists e \text{Arriving}(e) \wedge \text{Arriver}(e, \text{Speaker}) \wedge \text{Destination}(e, \text{NewYork}) \quad (15.50)$$

The temporal information provided by the tense of the verbs can be exploited by predicing additional information about the event variable  $e$ . Specifically, we can add temporal variables representing the interval corresponding to the event, the end point of the event, and temporal predicates relating this end point to the current time as indicated by the tense of the verb. Such an approach yields the following representations for our *arriving* examples:

$$\begin{aligned} & \exists e, i, n \text{Arriving}(e) \wedge \text{Arriver}(e, \text{Speaker}) \wedge \text{Destination}(e, \text{NewYork}) \\ & \quad \wedge \text{IntervalOf}(e, i) \wedge \text{EndPoint}(i, n) \wedge \text{Precedes}(n, \text{Now}) \\ & \exists e, i, n \text{Arriving}(e) \wedge \text{Arriver}(e, \text{Speaker}) \wedge \text{Destination}(e, \text{NewYork}) \\ & \quad \wedge \text{IntervalOf}(e, i) \wedge \text{MemberOf}(i, \text{Now}) \\ & \exists e, i, n \text{Arriving}(e) \wedge \text{Arriver}(e, \text{Speaker}) \wedge \text{Destination}(e, \text{NewYork}) \\ & \quad \wedge \text{IntervalOf}(e, i) \wedge \text{EndPoint}(i, n) \wedge \text{Precedes}(\text{Now}, n) \end{aligned}$$

This representation introduces a variable to stand for the interval of time associated with the event and a variable that stands for the end of that interval. The two-place predicate *Precedes* represents the notion that the first time-point argument precedes the second in time; the constant *Now* refers to the current time. For past events, the end point of the interval must precede the current time. Similarly, for future events the current time must precede the end of the event. For events happening in the present, the current time is contained within the event interval.

Unfortunately, the relation between simple verb tenses and points in time is by no means straightforward. Consider the following examples:

- (15.51) Ok, we fly from San Francisco to Boston at 10.
- (15.52) Flight 1390 will be at the gate an hour now.

In the first example, the present tense of the verb *fly* is used to refer to a future event, while in the second the future tense is used to refer to a past event.

More complications occur when we consider some of the other verb tenses. Consider the following examples:

(15.53) Flight 1902 arrived late.

(15.54) Flight 1902 had arrived late.

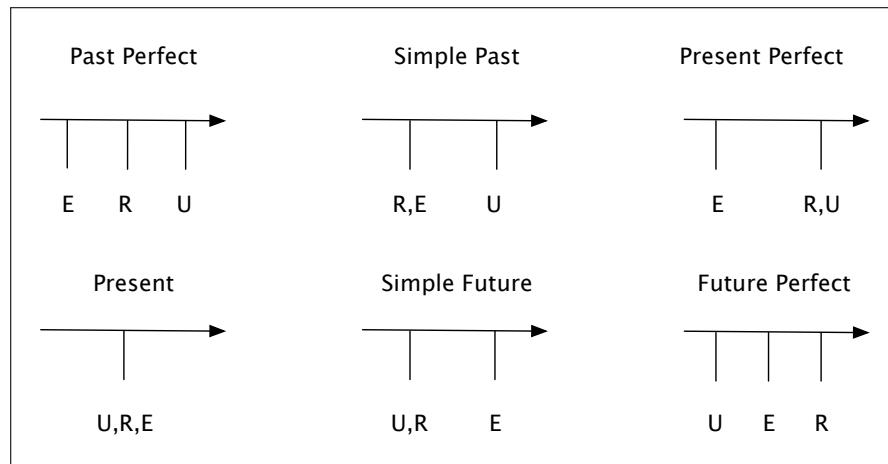
**reference point**

Although both refer to events in the past, representing them in the same way seems wrong. The second example seems to have another unnamed event lurking in the background (e.g., Flight 1902 had already arrived late *when* something else happened). To account for this phenomena, [Reichenbach \(1947\)](#) introduced the notion of a **reference point**. In our simple temporal scheme, the current moment in time is equated with the time of the utterance and is used as a reference point for when the event occurred (before, at, or after). In Reichenbach's approach, the notion of the reference point is separated from the utterance time and the event time. The following examples illustrate the basics of this approach:

(15.55) When Mary's flight departed, I ate lunch.

(15.56) When Mary's flight departed, I had eaten lunch.

In both of these examples, the eating event has happened in the past, that is, prior to the utterance. However, the verb tense in the first example indicates that the eating event began when the flight departed, while the second example indicates that the eating was accomplished prior to the flight's departure. Therefore, in Reichenbach's terms the *departure* event specifies the reference point. These facts can be accommodated by additional constraints relating the *eating* and *departure* events. In the first example, the reference point precedes the *eating* event, and in the second example, the *eating* precedes the reference point. Figure 15.5 illustrates Reichenbach's approach with the primary English tenses. Exercise 15.6 asks you to represent these examples in FOL.



**Figure 15.5** Reichenbach's approach applied to various English tenses. In these diagrams, time flows from left to right, **E** denotes the time of the event, **R** denotes the reference time, and **U** denotes the time of the utterance.

This discussion has focused narrowly on the broad notions of past, present, and future and how they are signaled by various English verb tenses. Of course, languages have many other ways to convey temporal information, including temporal expressions:

(15.57) I'd like to go at 6:45 in the morning.

(15.58) Somewhere around noon, please.

As we show in Chapter 17, grammars for such temporal expressions are of considerable practical importance to information extraction and question-answering applications.

Finally, we should note that a systematic conceptual organization is reflected in examples like these. In particular, temporal expressions in English are frequently expressed in spatial terms, as is illustrated by the various uses of *at*, *in*, *somewhere*, and *near* in these examples (Lakoff and Johnson 1980, Jackendoff 1983). Metaphorical organizations such as these, in which one domain is systematically expressed in terms of another, are very common in languages of the world.

### 15.4.2 Aspect

In the last section, we discussed ways to represent the time of an event with respect to the time of an utterance describing it. In this section, we address the notion of aspect, which concerns a cluster of related topics, including whether an event has ended or is ongoing, whether it is conceptualized as happening at a point in time or over some interval, and whether any particular state in the world comes about because of it. Based on these and related notions, event expressions have traditionally been divided into four general classes illustrated in the following examples:

**Stative:** I know my departure gate.

**Activity:** John is flying.

**Accomplishment:** Sally booked her flight.

**Achievement:** She found her gate.

Although the earliest versions of this classification were discussed by Aristotle, the one presented here is due to Vendler (1967).

stative      **Stative expressions** represent the notion of an event participant having a particular property, or being in a state, at a given point in time. As such, these expressions can be thought of as capturing an aspect of a world at a single point in time. Consider the following ATIS examples.

(15.59) I like Flight 840 arriving at 10:06.

(15.60) I need the cheapest fare.

(15.61) I want to go first class.

In examples like these, the event participant denoted by the subject can be seen as experiencing something at a specific point in time. Whether or not the experiencer was in the same state earlier or will be in the future is left unspecified.

activity      **Activity expressions** describe events undertaken by a participant and have no particular end point. Unlike statives, activities are seen as occurring over some span of time and are therefore not associated with single points in time. Consider the following examples:

(15.62) She drove a Mazda.

(15.63) I live in Brooklyn.

These examples both specify that the subject is engaged in, or has engaged in, the activity specified by the verb for some period of time.

The final aspectual class, **achievement expressions**, is similar to accomplishments in that these expressions result in a state. Consider the following:

(15.64) She found her gate.

(15.65) I reached New York.

achievement  
expressions

Unlike accomplishments, achievement events are thought of as happening in an instant and are not equated with any particular activity leading up to the state. To be more specific, the events in these examples may have been preceded by extended *searching* or *traveling* events, but the events corresponding directly to *found* and *reach* are conceived of as points, not intervals.

Note that since both accomplishments and achievements are events that result in a state, they are sometimes characterized as subtypes of a single aspectual class. Members of this combined class are known as **telic eventualities**.

**telic  
eventualities**

## 15.5 Description Logics

As noted at the beginning of this chapter, a fair number of representational schemes have been invented to capture the meaning of linguistic utterances. It is now widely accepted that meanings represented in these various approaches can, in principle, be translated into equivalent statements in FOL with relative ease. The difficulty is that in many of these approaches the semantics of a statement are defined procedurally. That is, the meaning arises from whatever the system that interprets it does with it.

Description logics are an effort to better specify the semantics of these earlier structured network representations and to provide a conceptual framework that is especially well suited to certain kinds of domain modeling. Formally, the term Description Logics refers to a family of logical approaches that correspond to varying subsets of FOL. The restrictions placed on the expressiveness of Description Logics serve to guarantee the tractability of various critical kinds of inference. Our focus here, however, will be on the modeling aspects of DLs rather than on computational complexity issues.

**terminology**  
**TBox**  
**ABox**  
**ontology**

When using Description Logics to model an application domain, the emphasis is on the representation of knowledge about categories, individuals that belong to those categories, and the relationships that can hold among these individuals. The set of categories, or concepts, that make up a particular application domain is called its **terminology**. The portion of a knowledge base that contains the terminology is traditionally called the **TBox**; this is in contrast to the **ABox** that contains facts about individuals. The terminology is typically arranged into a hierarchical organization called an **ontology** that captures the subset/superset relations among the categories.

Returning to our earlier culinary domain, we represented domain concepts using unary predicates such as *Restaurant*(*x*); the DL equivalent omits the variable, so the restaurant category is simply written as **Restaurant**.<sup>2</sup> To capture the fact that a particular domain element, such as *Frasca*, is a restaurant, we assert **Restaurant(Frasca)** in much the same way we would in FOL. The semantics of these categories are specified in precisely the same way that was introduced earlier in Section 15.2: a category like **Restaurant** simply denotes the set of domain elements that are restaurants.

Once we've specified the categories of interest in a particular domain, the next step is to arrange them into a hierarchical structure. There are two ways to capture the hierarchical relationships present in a terminology: we can directly assert relations between categories that are related hierarchically, or we can provide complete definitions for our concepts and then rely on inference to provide hierarchical

<sup>2</sup> DL statements are conventionally typeset with a sans serif font. We'll follow that convention here, reverting to our standard mathematical notation when giving FOL equivalents of DL statements.

relationships. The choice between these methods hinges on the use to which the resulting categories will be put and the feasibility of formulating precise definitions for many naturally occurring categories. We'll discuss the first option here and return to the notion of definitions later in this section.

#### subsumption

To directly specify a hierarchical structure, we can assert **subsumption** relations between the appropriate concepts in a terminology. The subsumption relation is conventionally written as  $C \sqsubseteq D$  and is read as  $C$  is subsumed by  $D$ ; that is, all members of the category  $C$  are also members of the category  $D$ . Not surprisingly, the formal semantics of this relation are provided by a simple set relation; any domain element that is in the set denoted by  $C$  is also in the set denoted by  $D$ .

Adding the following statements to the TBox asserts that all restaurants are commercial establishments and, moreover, that there are various subtypes of restaurants.

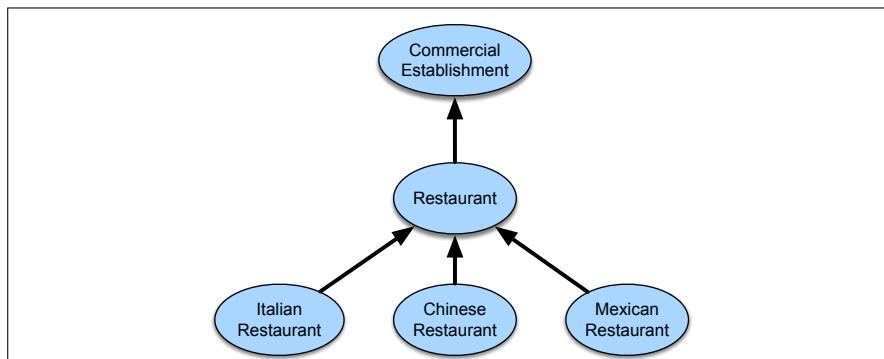
$$\text{Restaurant} \sqsubseteq \text{CommercialEstablishment} \quad (15.66)$$

$$\text{ItalianRestaurant} \sqsubseteq \text{Restaurant} \quad (15.67)$$

$$\text{ChineseRestaurant} \sqsubseteq \text{Restaurant} \quad (15.68)$$

$$\text{MexicanRestaurant} \sqsubseteq \text{Restaurant} \quad (15.69)$$

Ontologies such as this are conventionally illustrated with diagrams such as the one shown in Fig. 15.6, where subsumption relations are denoted by links between the nodes representing the categories.



**Figure 15.6** A graphical network representation of a set of subsumption relations in the restaurant domain.

Note, that it was precisely the vague nature of semantic network diagrams like this that motivated the development of Description Logics. For example, from this diagram we can't tell whether the given set of categories is exhaustive or disjoint. That is, we can't tell if these are all the kinds of restaurants that we'll be dealing with in our domain or whether there might be others. We also can't tell if an individual restaurant must fall into only *one* of these categories, or if it is possible, for example, for a restaurant to be *both* Italian and Chinese. The DL statements given above are more transparent in their meaning; they simply assert a set of subsumption relations between categories and make no claims about coverage or mutual exclusion.

If an application requires coverage and disjointness information, then such information must be made explicitly. The simplest ways to capture this kind of information is through the use of negation and disjunction operators. For example, the following assertion would tell us that Chinese restaurants can't also be Italian restaurants.

$$\text{ChineseRestaurant} \sqsubseteq \text{not ItalianRestaurant} \quad (15.70)$$

Specifying that a set of subconcepts covers a category can be achieved with disjunction, as in the following:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Restaurant} &\sqsubseteq \\ (\text{or } &\text{ItalianRestaurant ChineseRestaurant MexicanRestaurant}) \end{aligned} \tag{15.71}$$

Having a hierarchy such as the one given in Fig. 15.6 tells us next to nothing about the concepts in it. We certainly don't know anything about what makes a restaurant a restaurant, much less Italian, Chinese, or expensive. What is needed are additional assertions about what it means to be a member of any of these categories. In Description Logics such statements come in the form of relations between the concepts being described and other concepts in the domain. In keeping with its origins in structured network representations, relations in Description Logics are typically binary and are often referred to as roles, or role-relations.

To see how such relations work, let's consider some of the facts about restaurants discussed earlier in the chapter. We'll use the `hasCuisine` relation to capture information as to what kinds of food restaurants serve and the `hasPriceRange` relation to capture how pricey particular restaurants tend to be. We can use these relations to say something more concrete about our various classes of restaurants. Let's start with our `ItalianRestaurant` concept. As a first approximation, we might say something uncontroversial like Italian restaurants serve Italian cuisine. To capture these notions, let's first add some new concepts to our terminology to represent various kinds of cuisine.

$$\begin{array}{ll} \text{MexicanCuisine} \sqsubseteq \text{Cuisine} & \text{ExpensiveRestaurant} \sqsubseteq \text{Restaurant} \\ \text{ItalianCuisine} \sqsubseteq \text{Cuisine} & \text{ModerateRestaurant} \sqsubseteq \text{Restaurant} \\ \text{ChineseCuisine} \sqsubseteq \text{Cuisine} & \text{CheapRestaurant} \sqsubseteq \text{Restaurant} \\ \text{VegetarianCuisine} \sqsubseteq \text{Cuisine} & \end{array}$$

Next, let's revise our earlier version of `ItalianRestaurant` to capture cuisine information.

$$\text{ItalianRestaurant} \sqsubseteq \text{Restaurant} \sqcap \exists \text{hasCuisine}.\text{ItalianCuisine} \tag{15.72}$$

The correct way to read this expression is that individuals in the category `ItalianRestaurant` are subsumed both by the category `Restaurant` and by an unnamed class defined by the existential clause—the set of entities that serve Italian cuisine. An equivalent statement in FOL would be

$$\begin{aligned} \forall x \text{ItalianRestaurant}(x) \rightarrow \text{Restaurant}(x) \\ \wedge (\exists y \text{Serves}(x,y) \wedge \text{ItalianCuisine}(y)) \end{aligned} \tag{15.73}$$

This FOL translation should make it clear what the DL assertions given above do and do not entail. In particular, they don't say that domain entities classified as Italian restaurants can't engage in other relations like being expensive or even serving Chinese cuisine. And critically, they don't say much about domain entities that we know do serve Italian cuisine. In fact, inspection of the FOL translation makes it clear that we cannot *infer* that any new entities belong to this category based on their characteristics. The best we can do is infer new facts about restaurants that we're explicitly told are members of this category.

Of course, inferring the category membership of individuals given certain characteristics is a common and critical reasoning task that we need to support. This brings us back to the alternative approach to creating hierarchical structures in a terminology: actually providing a definition of the categories we're creating in the form of necessary and sufficient conditions for category membership. In this case, we might explicitly provide a definition for `ItalianRestaurant` as being those restaurants that serve Italian cuisine, and `ModerateRestaurant` as being those whose price range is moderate.

$$\text{ItalianRestaurant} \equiv \text{Restaurant} \sqcap \exists \text{hasCuisine.ItalianCuisine} \quad (15.74)$$

$$\text{ModerateRestaurant} \equiv \text{Restaurant} \sqcap \text{hasPriceRange.ModeratePrices} \quad (15.75)$$

While our earlier statements provided necessary conditions for membership in these categories, these statements provide both necessary and sufficient conditions.

Finally, let's now consider the superficially similar case of vegetarian restaurants. Clearly, vegetarian restaurants are those that serve vegetarian cuisine. But they don't merely serve vegetarian fare, that's all they serve. We can accommodate this kind of constraint by adding an additional restriction in the form of a universal quantifier to our earlier description of `VegetarianRestaurants`, as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{VegetarianRestaurant} &\equiv \text{Restaurant} \\ &\sqcap \exists \text{hasCuisine.VegetarianCuisine} \\ &\sqcap \forall \text{hasCuisine.VegetarianCuisine} \end{aligned} \quad (15.76)$$

### Inference

Paralleling the focus of Description Logics on categories, relations, and individuals is a processing focus on a restricted subset of logical inference. Rather than employing the full range of reasoning permitted by FOL, DL reasoning systems emphasize the closely coupled problems of subsumption and instance checking.

**subsumption**

**instance checking**

**Subsumption**, as a form of inference, is the task of determining, based on the facts asserted in a terminology, whether a superset/subset relationship exists between two concepts. Correspondingly, **instance checking** asks if an individual can be a member of a particular category given the facts we know about both the individual and the terminology. The inference mechanisms underlying subsumption and instance checking go beyond simply checking for explicitly stated subsumption relations in a terminology. They must explicitly reason using the relational information asserted about the terminology to infer appropriate subsumption and membership relations.

Returning to our restaurant domain, let's add a new kind of restaurant using the following statement:

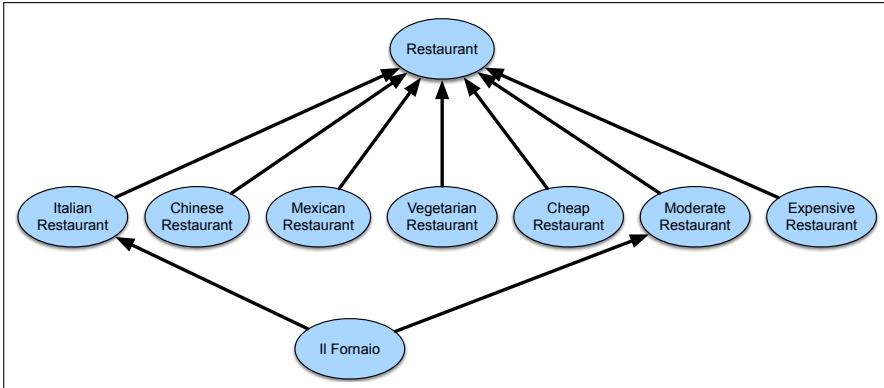
$$\text{IlFornaio} \sqsubseteq \text{ModerateRestaurant} \sqcap \exists \text{hasCuisine.ItalianCuisine} \quad (15.77)$$

Given this assertion, we might ask whether the `IlFornaio` chain of restaurants might be classified as an Italian restaurant or a vegetarian restaurant. More precisely, we can pose the following questions to our reasoning system:

$$\text{IlFornaio} \sqsubseteq \text{ItalianRestaurant} \quad (15.78)$$

$$\text{IlFornaio} \sqsubseteq \text{VegetarianRestaurant} \quad (15.79)$$

The answer to the first question is positive since `IlFornaio` meets the criteria we specified for the category `ItalianRestaurant`: it's a `Restaurant` since we explicitly



**Figure 15.7** A graphical network representation of the complete set of subsumption relations in the restaurant domain given the current set of assertions in the TBox.

classified it as a `ModerateRestaurant`, which is a subtype of `Restaurant`, and it meets the `has.Cuisine` class restriction since we've asserted that directly.

The answer to the second question is negative. Recall, that our criteria for vegetarian restaurants contains two requirements: it has to serve vegetarian fare, and that's all it can serve. Our current definition for `IlFornaio` fails on both counts since we have not asserted any relations that state that `IlFornaio` serves vegetarian fare, and the relation we have asserted, `hasCuisine.ItalianCuisine`, contradicts the second criteria.

implied hierarchy

A related reasoning task, based on the basic subsumption inference, is to derive the **implied hierarchy** for a terminology given facts about the categories in the terminology. This task roughly corresponds to a repeated application of the subsumption operator to pairs of concepts in the terminology. Given our current collection of statements, the expanded hierarchy shown in Fig. 15.7 can be inferred. You should convince yourself that this diagram contains all and only the subsumption links that should be present given our current knowledge.

Instance checking is the task of determining whether a particular individual can be classified as a member of a particular category. This process takes what is known about a given individual, in the form of relations and explicit categorical statements, and then compares that information with what is known about the current terminology. It then returns a list of *the most specific* categories to which the individual can belong.

As an example of a categorization problem, consider an establishment that we're told is a restaurant and serves Italian cuisine.

```
Restaurant(Gondolier)
hasCuisine(Gondolier,ItalianCuisine)
```

Here, we're being told that the entity denoted by the term `Gondolier` is a restaurant and serves Italian food. Given this new information and the contents of our current TBox, we might reasonably like to ask if this is an Italian restaurant, if it is a vegetarian restaurant, or if it has moderate prices.

Assuming the definitional statements given earlier, we can indeed categorize the `Gondolier` as an Italian restaurant. That is, the information we've been given about it meets the necessary and sufficient conditions required for membership in this category. And as with the `IlFornaio` category, this individual fails to match the stated criteria for the `VegetarianRestaurant`. Finally, the `Gondolier` might also

turn out to be a moderately priced restaurant, but we can't tell at this point since we don't know anything about its prices. What this means is that given our current knowledge the answer to the query `ModerateRestaurant(Gondolier)` would be false since it lacks the required `hasPriceRange` relation.

The implementation of subsumption, instance checking, as well as other kinds of inferences needed for practical applications, varies according to the expressivity of the Description Logic being used. However, for a Description Logic of even modest power, the primary implementation techniques are based on satisfiability methods that in turn rely on the underlying model-based semantics introduced earlier in this chapter.

### OWL and the Semantic Web

The highest-profile role for Description Logics, to date, has been as a part of the development of the Semantic Web. The Semantic Web is an ongoing effort to provide a way to formally specify the semantics of the contents of the Web (Fensel et al., 2003). A key component of this effort involves the creation and deployment of ontologies for various application areas of interest. The meaning representation language used to represent this knowledge is the **Web Ontology Language** (OWL) (McGuiness and van Harmelen, 2004). OWL embodies a Description Logic that corresponds roughly to the one we've been describing here.

**Web Ontology Language**

## 15.6 Summary

This chapter has introduced the representational approach to meaning. The following are some of the highlights of this chapter:

- A major approach to meaning in computational linguistics involves the creation of **formal meaning representations** that capture the meaning-related content of linguistic inputs. These representations are intended to bridge the gap from language to common-sense knowledge of the world.
- The frameworks that specify the syntax and semantics of these representations are called **meaning representation languages**. A wide variety of such languages are used in natural language processing and artificial intelligence.
- Such representations need to be able to support the practical computational requirements of semantic processing. Among these are the need to determine **the truth of propositions**, to support **unambiguous representations**, to represent **variables**, to support **inference**, and to be sufficiently **expressive**.
- Human languages have a wide variety of features that are used to convey meaning. Among the most important of these is the ability to convey a **predicate-argument structure**.
- **First-Order Logic** is a well-understood, computationally tractable meaning representation language that offers much of what is needed in a meaning representation language.
- Important elements of semantic representation including **states** and **events** can be captured in FOL.
- **Semantic networks** and **frames** can be captured within the FOL framework.
- Modern **Description Logics** consist of useful and computationally tractable subsets of full First-Order Logic. The most prominent use of a description

logic is the **Web Ontology Language** (OWL), used in the specification of the Semantic Web.

## Bibliographical and Historical Notes

The earliest computational use of declarative meaning representations in natural language processing was in the context of question-answering systems ([Green et al. 1961](#), [Raphael 1968](#), [Lindsey 1963](#)). These systems employed ad hoc representations for the facts needed to answer questions. Questions were then translated into a form that could be matched against facts in the knowledge base. [Simmons \(1965\)](#) provides an overview of these early efforts.

[Woods \(1967\)](#) investigated the use of FOL-like representations in question answering as a replacement for the ad hoc representations in use at the time. [Woods \(1973\)](#) further developed and extended these ideas in the landmark Lunar system. Interestingly, the representations used in Lunar had both truth-conditional and procedural semantics. [Winograd \(1972\)](#) employed a similar representation based on the Micro-Planner language in his SHRDLU system.

During this same period, researchers interested in the cognitive modeling of language and memory had been working with various forms of associative network representations. [Masterman \(1957\)](#) was the first to make computational use of a semantic network-like knowledge representation, although semantic networks are generally credited to [Quillian \(1968\)](#). A considerable amount of work in the semantic network framework was carried out during this era ([Norman and Rumelhart 1975](#), [Schank 1972](#), [Wilks 1975c](#), [Wilks 1975b](#), [Kintsch 1974](#)). It was during this period that a number of researchers began to incorporate Fillmore's notion of case roles ([Fillmore, 1968](#)) into their representations. [Simmons \(1973\)](#) was the earliest adopter of case roles as part of representations for natural language processing.

Detailed analyses by [Woods \(1975\)](#) and [Brachman \(1979\)](#) aimed at figuring out what semantic networks actually mean led to the development of a number of more sophisticated network-like languages including KRL ([Bobrow and Winograd, 1977](#)) and KL-ONE ([Brachman and Schmolze, 1985](#)). As these frameworks became more sophisticated and well defined, it became clear that they were restricted variants of FOL coupled with specialized indexing inference procedures. A useful collection of papers covering much of this work can be found in [Brachman and Levesque \(1985\)](#). [Russell and Norvig \(2002\)](#) describe a modern perspective on these representational efforts.

Linguistic efforts to assign semantic structures to natural language sentences in the generative era began with the work of [Katz and Fodor \(1963\)](#). The limitations of their simple feature-based representations and the natural fit of logic to many of the linguistic problems of the day quickly led to the adoption of a variety of predicate-argument structures as preferred semantic representations ([Lakoff 1972a](#), [McCawley 1968](#)). The subsequent introduction by [Montague \(1973\)](#) of the truth-conditional model-theoretic framework into linguistic theory led to a much tighter integration between theories of formal syntax and a wide range of formal semantic frameworks. Good introductions to Montague semantics and its role in linguistic theory can be found in [Dowty et al. \(1981\)](#) and [Partee \(1976\)](#).

The representation of events as reified objects is due to [Davidson \(1967\)](#). The approach presented here, which explicitly reifies event participants, is due to [Parsons](#)

(1990).

Most current computational approaches to temporal reasoning are based on Allen's notion of temporal intervals (Allen, 1984); see Chapter 17. ter Meulen (1995) provides a modern treatment of tense and aspect. Davis (1990) describes the use of FOL to represent knowledge across a wide range of common-sense domains including quantities, space, time, and beliefs.

A recent comprehensive treatment of logic and language can be found in van Benthem and ter Meulen (1997). A classic semantics text is Lyons (1977). McCawley (1993) is an indispensable textbook covering a wide range of topics concerning logic and language. Chierchia and McConnell-Ginet (1991) also broadly covers semantic issues from a linguistic perspective. Heim and Kratzer (1998) is a more recent text written from the perspective of current generative theory.

## Exercises

- 15.1** Peruse your daily newspaper for three examples of ambiguous sentences or headlines. Describe the various sources of the ambiguities.
- 15.2** Consider a domain in which the word *coffee* can refer to the following concepts in a knowledge-based system: a caffeinated or decaffeinated beverage, ground coffee used to make either kind of beverage, and the beans themselves. Give arguments as to which of the following uses of coffee are ambiguous and which are vague.

1. I've had my coffee for today.
2. Buy some coffee on your way home.
3. Please grind some more coffee.

- 15.3** The following rule, which we gave as a translation for Example 15.25, is not a reasonable definition of what it means to be a vegetarian restaurant.

$$\forall x \text{VegetarianRestaurant}(x) \implies \text{Serves}(x, \text{VegetarianFood})$$

Give a FOL rule that better defines vegetarian restaurants in terms of what they serve.

- 15.4** Give FOL translations for the following sentences:
1. Vegetarians do not eat meat.
  2. Not all vegetarians eat eggs.
- 15.5** Give a set of facts and inferences necessary to prove the following assertions:
1. McDonald's is not a vegetarian restaurant.
  2. Some vegetarians can eat at McDonald's.

Don't just place these facts in your knowledge base. Show that they can be inferred from some more general facts about vegetarians and McDonald's.

- 15.6** For the following sentences, give FOL translations that capture the temporal relationships between the events.
1. When Mary's flight departed, I ate lunch.
  2. When Mary's flight departed, I had eaten lunch.
- 15.7** On page 316, we gave the representation *Near(Centro, Bacaro)* as a translation for the sentence *Centro is near Bacaro*. In a truth-conditional semantics, this formula is either true or false given some model. Critique this truth-conditional approach with respect to the meaning of words like *near*.

CHAPTER

# 16

# Computational Semantics and Semantic Parsing

Placeholder

## CHAPTER

## 17

# Information Extraction

*I am the very model of a modern Major-General,  
 I've information vegetable, animal, and mineral,  
 I know the kings of England, and I quote the fights historical  
 From Marathon to Waterloo, in order categorical...*  
 Gilbert and Sullivan, *Pirates of Penzance*

Imagine that you are an analyst with an investment firm that tracks airline stocks. You're given the task of determining the relationship (if any) between airline announcements of fare increases and the behavior of their stocks the next day. Historical data about stock prices is easy to come by, but what about the airline announcements? You will need to know at least the name of the airline, the nature of the proposed fare hike, the dates of the announcement, and possibly the response of other airlines. Fortunately, these can be all found in news articles like this one:

Citing high fuel prices, United Airlines said Friday it has increased fares by \$6 per round trip on flights to some cities also served by lower-cost carriers. American Airlines, a unit of AMR Corp., immediately matched the move, spokesman Tim Wagner said. United, a unit of UAL Corp., said the increase took effect Thursday and applies to most routes where it competes against discount carriers, such as Chicago to Dallas and Denver to San Francisco.

This chapter presents techniques for extracting limited kinds of semantic content from text. This process of **information extraction** (IE) turns the unstructured information embedded in texts into structured data, for example for populating a relational database to enable further processing.

We begin with the task of **relation extraction**: finding and classifying semantic relations among the text entities. These are often binary relations like child-of, employment, part-whole, and geospatial relations. Relation extraction has close links to populating a relational database. Indeed, **knowledge graphs**, datasets of structured relational knowledge, are a common way that search engines present information to users.

Next, we discuss three tasks related to *events*. **Event extraction** is finding events in which these entities participate, like, in our sample text, the fare increases by *United* and *American* and the reporting events *said* and *cite*. **Event coreference** (Chapter 22) is needed to figure out which event mentions in a text refer to the same event; in our running example the two instances of *increase* and the phrase *the move* all refer to the same event.

To figure out *when* the events in a text happened we extract **temporal expressions** like days of the week (*Friday* and *Thursday*), relative expressions like *two days from now* or *next year* and times such as *3:30 P.M.*. These expressions must be **normalized** onto specific calendar dates or times of day to situate events in time. In

information  
extraction

relation  
extraction

knowledge  
graphs

event  
extraction

temporal  
expression

our sample task, this will allow us to link *Friday* to the time of United's announcement, and *Thursday* to the previous day's fare increase, and produce a timeline in which United's announcement follows the fare increase and American's announcement follows both of those events.

#### template filling

Finally, many texts describe recurring stereotypical events or situations. The task of **template filling** is to find such situations in documents and fill in the template slots. These slot-fillers may consist of text segments extracted directly from the text, or concepts like times, amounts, or ontology entities that have been inferred from text elements through additional processing.

Our airline text is an example of this kind of stereotypical situation since airlines often raise fares and then wait to see if competitors follow along. In this situation, we can identify *United* as a lead airline that initially raised its fares, \$6 as the amount, *Thursday* as the increase date, and *American* as an airline that followed along, leading to a filled template like the following.

FARE-RAISE ATTEMPT:	[	LEAD AIRLINE:	UNITED AIRLINES	]
		AMOUNT:	\$6	
		EFFECTIVE DATE:	2006-10-26	
		FOLLOWER:	AMERICAN AIRLINES	

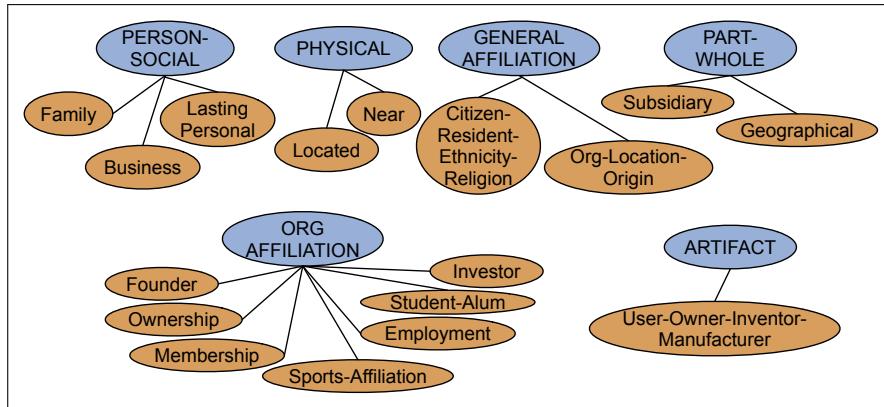
## 17.1 Relation Extraction

Let's assume that we have detected the named entities in our sample text (perhaps using the techniques of Chapter 8), and would like to discern the relationships that exist among the detected entities:

Citing high fuel prices, [ORG **United Airlines**] said [TIME **Friday**] it has increased fares by [MONEY **\$6**] per round trip on flights to some cities also served by lower-cost carriers. [ORG **American Airlines**], a unit of [ORG **AMR Corp.**], immediately matched the move, spokesman [PER **Tim Wagner**] said. [ORG **United**], a unit of [ORG **UAL Corp.**], said the increase took effect [TIME **Thursday**] and applies to most routes where it competes against discount carriers, such as [LOC **Chicago**] to [LOC **Dallas**] and [LOC **Denver**] to [LOC **San Francisco**].

The text tells us, for example, that *Tim Wagner* is a spokesman for *American Airlines*, that *United* is a unit of *UAL Corp.*, and that *American* is a unit of *AMR*. These binary relations are instances of more generic relations such as **part-of** or **employs** that are fairly frequent in news-style texts. Figure 17.1 lists the 17 relations used in the ACE relation extraction evaluations and Fig. 17.2 shows some sample relations. We might also extract more domain-specific relation such as the notion of an airline route. For example from this text we can conclude that United has routes to Chicago, Dallas, Denver, and San Francisco.

These relations correspond nicely to the model-theoretic notions we introduced in Chapter 15 to ground the meanings of the logical forms. That is, a relation consists of a set of ordered tuples over elements of a domain. In most standard information-extraction applications, the domain elements correspond to the named entities that occur in the text, to the underlying entities that result from coreference resolution, or to entities selected from a domain ontology. Figure 17.3 shows a model-based view of the set of entities and relations that can be extracted from our running example.

**Figure 17.1** The 17 relations used in the ACE relation extraction task.

Relations	Types	Examples
Physical-Located	PER-GPE	He was in Tennessee
Part-Whole-Subsidiary	ORG-ORG	XYZ, the parent company of ABC
Person-Social-Family	PER-PER	Yoko's husband John
Org-AFF-Founder	PER-ORG	Steve Jobs, co-founder of Apple...

**Figure 17.2** Semantic relations with examples and the named entity types they involve.

Domain	$\mathcal{D} = \{a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i\}$
United, UAL, American Airlines, AMR	$a, b, c, d$
Tim Wagner	$e$
Chicago, Dallas, Denver, and San Francisco	$f, g, h, i$
Classes	
United, UAL, American, and AMR are organizations	$Org = \{a, b, c, d\}$
Tim Wagner is a person	$Pers = \{e\}$
Chicago, Dallas, Denver, and San Francisco are places	$Loc = \{f, g, h, i\}$
Relations	
United is a unit of UAL	$PartOf = \{\langle a, b \rangle, \langle c, d \rangle\}$
American is a unit of AMR	
Tim Wagner works for American Airlines	$OrgAff = \{\langle c, e \rangle\}$
United serves Chicago, Dallas, Denver, and San Francisco	$Serves = \{\langle a, f \rangle, \langle a, g \rangle, \langle a, h \rangle, \langle a, i \rangle\}$

**Figure 17.3** A model-based view of the relations and entities in our sample text.

Notice how this model-theoretic view subsumes the NER task as well; named entity recognition corresponds to the identification of a class of unary relations.

Sets of relations have been defined for many other domains as well. For example UMLS, the Unified Medical Language System from the US National Library of Medicine has a network that defines 134 broad subject categories, entity types, and 54 relations between the entities, such as the following:

Entity	Relation	Entity
Injury	disrupts	Physiological Function
Bodily Location	location-of	Biologic Function
Anatomical Structure	part-of	Organism
Pharmacologic Substance	causes	Pathological Function
Pharmacologic Substance	treats	Pathologic Function

Given a medical sentence like this one:

(17.1) Doppler echocardiography can be used to diagnose left anterior descending artery stenosis in patients with type 2 diabetes

We could thus extract the UMLS relation:

*Echocardiography, Doppler Diagnoses Acquired stenosis*

**infoboxes**

Wikipedia also offers a large supply of relations, drawn from **infoboxes**, structured tables associated with certain Wikipedia articles. For example, the Wikipedia infobox for **Stanford** includes structured facts like **state** = "California" or **president** = "Marc Tessier-Lavigne". These facts can be turned into relations like *president-of* or *located-in*. or into relations in a metalanguage called **RDF** (Resource Description Framework). An **RDF triple** is a tuple of entity-relation-entity, called a subject-predicate-object expression. Here's a sample RDF triple:

subject	predicate	object
Golden Gate Park	location	San Francisco

**Freebase**

For example the crowdsourced DBpedia (Bizer et al., 2009) is an ontology derived from Wikipedia containing over 2 billion RDF triples. Another dataset from Wikipedia infoboxes, **Freebase** (Bollacker et al., 2008), now part of Wikidata (Vrandečić and Krötzsch, 2014), has relations between people and their nationality, or locations, and other locations they are contained in.

**is-a**  
**hypernym**

WordNet or other ontologies offer useful ontological relations that express hierarchical relations between words or concepts. For example WordNet has the **is-a** or **hypernym** relation between classes,

Giraffe is-a ruminant is-a ungulate is-a mammal is-a vertebrate ...

WordNet also has *Instance-of* relation between individuals and classes, so that for example *San Francisco* is in the *Instance-of* relation with *city*. Extracting these relations is an important step in extending or building ontologies.

Finally, there are large datasets that contain sentences hand-labeled with their relations, designed for training and testing relation extractors. The TACRED dataset (Zhang et al., 2017) contains 106,264 examples of relation triples about particular people or organizations, labeled in sentences from news and web text drawn from the annual TAC Knowledge Base Population (TAC KBP) challenges. TACRED contains 41 relation types (like *per:city\_of\_birth*, *org:subsidiaries*, *org:member\_of*, *per:spouse*), plus a no relation tag; examples are shown in Fig. 17.4. About 80% of all examples are annotated as no relation; having sufficient negative data is important for training supervised classifiers.

Example	Entity Types & Label
Carey will succeed <b>Cathleen P. Black</b> , who held the position for 15 years and will take on a new role as <b>chairwoman</b> of Hearst Magazines, the company said.	<b>PERSON/TITLE</b> Relation: <i>per:title</i>
Irene Morgan Kirkaldy, who was born and reared in <b>Baltimore</b> , lived on Long Island and ran a child-care center in Queens with her second husband, Stanley Kirkaldy.	<b>PERSON/CITY</b> Relation: <i>per:city_of_birth</i>
Baldwin declined further comment, and said JetBlue chief <b>executive</b> Dave Barger was unavailable.	Types: <b>PERSON/TITLE</b> Relation: <i>no_relation</i>

**Figure 17.4** Example sentences and labels from the TACRED dataset (Zhang et al., 2017).

A standard dataset was also produced for the SemEval 2010 Task 8, detecting relations between nominals (Hendrickx et al., 2009). The dataset has 10,717 examples, each with a pair of nominals (untyped) hand-labeled with one of 9 directed

relations like *product-producer* (a factory manufactures *suits*) or *component-whole* (my apartment has a large *kitchen*).

## 17.2 Relation Extraction Algorithms

There are five main classes of algorithms for relation extraction: **handwritten patterns**, **supervised machine learning**, **semi-supervised** (via **bootstrapping** and via **distant supervision**), and **unsupervised**. We'll introduce each of these in the next sections.

### 17.2.1 Using Patterns to Extract Relations

The earliest and still common algorithm for relation extraction is lexico-syntactic patterns, first developed by Hearst (1992a), and therefore often called **Hearst patterns**. Consider the following sentence:

Agar is a substance prepared from a mixture of red algae, such as Gelidium, for laboratory or industrial use.

Hearst points out that most human readers will not know what *Gelidium* is, but that they can readily infer that it is a kind of (a **hyponym** of) *red algae*, whatever that is. She suggests that the following **lexico-syntactic pattern**

$$NP_0 \text{ such as } NP_1 \{, NP_2 \dots, (\text{and}|\text{or})NP_i\}, i \geq 1 \quad (17.2)$$

implies the following semantics

$$\forall NP_i, i \geq 1, \text{hyponym}(NP_i, NP_0) \quad (17.3)$$

allowing us to infer

$$\text{hyponym}(\text{Gelidium}, \text{red algae}) \quad (17.4)$$

$NP \{, NP\}^* \{, \}$ (and or) other $NP_H$	temples, treasures, and other important <b>civic buildings</b>
$NP_H$ such as $\{NP,\}^* \{(\text{or} \text{and})\} NP$	<b>red algae</b> such as Gelidium
such $NP_H$ as $\{NP,\}^* \{(\text{or} \text{and})\} NP$	such <b>authors</b> as Herrick, Goldsmith, and Shakespeare
$NP_H \{, \}$ including $\{NP,\}^* \{(\text{or} \text{and})\} NP$	<b>common-law countries</b> , including Canada and England
$NP_H \{, \}$ especially $\{NP,\}^* \{(\text{or} \text{and})\} NP$	<b>European countries</b> , especially France, England, and Spain

**Figure 17.5** Hand-built lexico-syntactic patterns for finding hypernyms, using {} to mark optionality (Hearst 1992a, Hearst 1998).

Figure 17.5 shows five patterns Hearst (1992a, 1998) suggested for inferring the hyponym relation; we've shown  $NP_H$  as the parent/hyponym. Modern versions of the pattern-based approach extend it by adding named entity constraints. For example if our goal is to answer questions about “Who holds what office in which organization?”, we can use patterns like the following:

**PER, POSITION of ORG:**

George Marshall, Secretary of State of the United States

PER (named|appointed|chose|etc.) PER Prep? POSITION  
Truman appointed Marshall Secretary of State

PER [be]? (named|appointed|etc.) Prep? ORG POSITION  
George Marshall was named US Secretary of State

Hand-built patterns have the advantage of high-precision and they can be tailored to specific domains. On the other hand, they are often low-recall, and it's a lot of work to create them for all possible patterns.

### 17.2.2 Relation Extraction via Supervised Learning

Supervised machine learning approaches to relation extraction follow a scheme that should be familiar by now. A fixed set of relations and entities is chosen, a training corpus is hand-annotated with the relations and entities, and the annotated texts are then used to train classifiers to annotate an unseen test set.

The most straightforward approach, illustrated in Fig. 17.6 is: (1) Find pairs of named entities (usually in the same sentence). (2): Apply a relation-classification on each pair. The classifier can use any supervised technique (logistic regression, RNN, Transformer, random forest, etc.).

An optional intermediate filtering classifier can be used to speed up the processing by making a binary decision on whether a given pair of named entities are related (by any relation). It's trained on positive examples extracted directly from all relations in the annotated corpus, and negative examples generated from within-sentence entity pairs that are not annotated with a relation.

```
function FINDRELATIONS(words) returns relations
    relations  $\leftarrow$  nil
    entities  $\leftarrow$  FINDENTITIES(words)
    forall entity pairs  $\langle e_1, e_2 \rangle$  in entities do
        if RELATED?(e1, e2)
            relations  $\leftarrow$  relations + CLASSIFYRELATION(e1, e2)
```

**Figure 17.6** Finding and classifying the relations among entities in a text.

**Feature-based supervised relation classifiers.** Let's consider sample features for a feature-based classifier (like logistic regression or random forests), classifying the relationship between *American Airlines* (Mention 1, or M1) and *Tim Wagner* (Mention 2, M2) from this sentence:

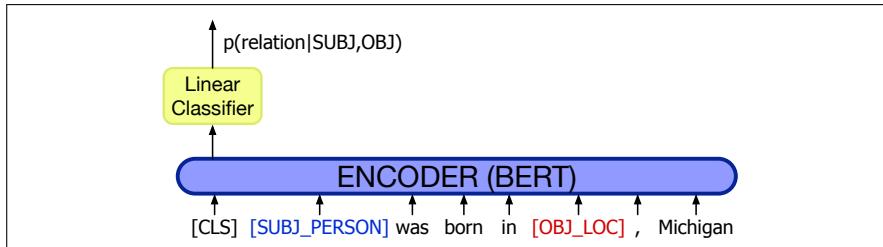
(17.5) **American Airlines**, a unit of AMR, immediately matched the move,  
spokesman **Tim Wagner** said

These include **word** features (as embeddings, or 1-hot, stemmed or not):

- The headwords of M1 and M2 and their concatenation  
*Airlines Wagner Airlines-Wagner*
- Bag-of-words and bigrams in M1 and M2  
*American, Airlines, Tim, Wagner, American Airlines, Tim Wagner*
- Words or bigrams in particular positions  
M2: **-1** spokesman  
M2: **+1** said
- Bag of words or bigrams between M1 and M2:  
*a, AMR, of, immediately, matched, move, spokesman, the, unit*

**Named entity** features:

- Named-entity types and their concatenation  
(M1: **ORG**, M2: **PER**, M1M2: **ORG-PER**)



**Figure 17.7** Relation extraction as a linear layer on top of an encoder (in this case BERT), with the subject and object entities replaced in the input by their NER tags (Zhang et al. 2017, Joshi et al. 2020).

- Entity Level of M1 and M2 (from the set NAME, NOMINAL, PRONOUN)  
M1: NAME [it or he would be PRONOUN]  
M2: NAME [the company would be NOMINAL]
- Number of entities between the arguments (in this case 1, for AMR)

**Syntactic structure** is a useful signal, often represented as the dependency or constituency **syntactic path** traversed through the tree between the entities.

- Constituent paths between M1 and M2  
 $NP \uparrow NP \uparrow S \uparrow S \downarrow NP$
- Dependency-tree paths  
 $Airlines \leftarrow_{subj} matched \leftarrow_{comp} said \rightarrow_{subj} Wagner$

**Neural supervised relation classifiers** Neural models for relation extraction similarly treat the task as supervised classification. Let’s consider a typical system applied to the TACRED relation extraction dataset and task (Zhang et al., 2017). In TACRED we are given a sentence and two spans within it: a subject, which is a person or organization, and an object, which is any other entity. The task is to assign a relation from the 42 TAC relations, or no relation.

A typical Transformer-encoder algorithm, shown in Fig. 17.7, simply takes a pretrained encoder like BERT and adds a linear layer on top of the sentence representation (for example the BERT [CLS] token), a linear layer that is finetuned as a 1-of-N classifier to assign one of the 43 labels. The input to the BERT encoder is partially de-lexified; the subject and object entities are replaced in the input by their NER tags. This helps keep the system from overfitting to the individual lexical items (Zhang et al., 2017). When using BERT-type Transformers for relation extraction, it helps to use versions of BERT like RoBERTa (Liu et al., 2019) or SPANbert (Joshi et al., 2020) that don’t have two sequences separated by a [SEP] token, but instead form the input from a single long sequence of sentences.

In general, if the test set is similar enough to the training set, and if there is enough hand-labeled data, supervised relation extraction systems can get high accuracies. But labeling a large training set is extremely expensive and supervised models are brittle: they don’t generalize well to different text genres. For this reason, much research in relation extraction has focused on the semi-supervised and unsupervised approaches we turn to next.

### 17.2.3 Semisupervised Relation Extraction via Bootstrapping

Supervised machine learning assumes that we have lots of labeled data. Unfortunately, this is expensive. But suppose we just have a few high-precision **seed patterns**, like those in Section 17.2.1, or perhaps a few **seed tuples**. That’s enough

**bootstrapping**

to bootstrap a classifier! **Bootstrapping** proceeds by taking the entities in the seed pair, and then finding sentences (on the web, or whatever dataset we are using) that contain both entities. From all such sentences, we extract and generalize the context around the entities to learn new patterns. Fig. 17.8 sketches a basic algorithm.

```
function BOOTSTRAP(Relation R) returns new relation tuples
    tuples  $\leftarrow$  Gather a set of seed tuples that have relation R
    iterate
        sentences  $\leftarrow$  find sentences that contain entities in tuples
        patterns  $\leftarrow$  generalize the context between and around entities in sentences
        newpairs  $\leftarrow$  use patterns to grep for more tuples
        newpairs  $\leftarrow$  newpairs with high confidence
        tuples  $\leftarrow$  tuples + newpairs
    return tuples
```

**Figure 17.8** Bootstrapping from seed entity pairs to learn relations.

Suppose, for example, that we need to create a list of airline/hub pairs, and we know only that Ryanair has a hub at Charleroi. We can use this seed fact to discover new patterns by finding other mentions of this relation in our corpus. We search for the terms *Ryanair*, *Charleroi* and *hub* in some proximity. Perhaps we find the following set of sentences:

- (17.6) Budget airline Ryanair, which uses Charleroi as a hub, scrapped all weekend flights out of the airport.
- (17.7) All flights in and out of Ryanair's hub at Charleroi airport were grounded on Friday...
- (17.8) A spokesman at Charleroi, a main hub for Ryanair, estimated that 8000 passengers had already been affected.

From these results, we can use the context of words between the entity mentions, the words before mention one, the word after mention two, and the named entity types of the two mentions, and perhaps other features, to extract general patterns such as the following:

```
/ [ORG], which uses [LOC] as a hub /
/ [ORG]'s hub at [LOC] /
/ [LOC], a main hub for [ORG] /
```

These new patterns can then be used to search for additional tuples.

**confidence values**  
**semantic drift**

Bootstrapping systems also assign **confidence values** to new tuples to avoid **semantic drift**. In semantic drift, an erroneous pattern leads to the introduction of erroneous tuples, which, in turn, lead to the creation of problematic patterns and the meaning of the extracted relations ‘drifts’. Consider the following example:

- (17.9) Sydney has a ferry hub at Circular Quay.

If accepted as a positive example, this expression could lead to the incorrect introduction of the tuple  $\langle \text{Sydney}, \text{CircularQuay} \rangle$ . Patterns based on this tuple could propagate further errors into the database.

Confidence values for patterns are based on balancing two factors: the pattern’s performance with respect to the current set of tuples and the pattern’s productivity in terms of the number of matches it produces in the document collection. More formally, given a document collection  $\mathcal{D}$ , a current set of tuples  $T$ , and a proposed pattern  $p$ , we need to track two factors:

- $\text{hits}(p)$ : the set of tuples in  $T$  that  $p$  matches while looking in  $\mathcal{D}$
- $\text{finds}(p)$ : The total set of tuples that  $p$  finds in  $\mathcal{D}$

The following equation balances these considerations (Riloff and Jones, 1999).

$$\text{Conf}_{RlogF}(p) = \frac{|\text{hits}(p)|}{|\text{finds}(p)|} \log(|\text{finds}(p)|) \quad (17.10)$$

This metric is generally normalized to produce a probability.

We can assess the confidence in a proposed new tuple by combining the evidence supporting it from all the patterns  $P'$  that match that tuple in  $\mathcal{D}$  (Agichtein and Gravano, 2000). One way to combine such evidence is the **noisy-or** technique. Assume that a given tuple is supported by a subset of the patterns in  $P$ , each with its own confidence assessed as above. In the noisy-or model, we make two basic assumptions. First, that for a proposed tuple to be false, *all* of its supporting patterns must have been in error, and second, that the sources of their individual failures are all independent. If we loosely treat our confidence measures as probabilities, then the probability of any individual pattern  $p$  failing is  $1 - \text{Conf}(p)$ ; the probability of all of the supporting patterns for a tuple being wrong is the product of their individual failure probabilities, leaving us with the following equation for our confidence in a new tuple.

$$\text{Conf}(t) = 1 - \prod_{p \in P'} (1 - \text{Conf}(p)) \quad (17.11)$$

Setting conservative confidence thresholds for the acceptance of new patterns and tuples during the bootstrapping process helps prevent the system from drifting away from the targeted relation.

#### 17.2.4 Distant Supervision for Relation Extraction

**distant supervision**

Although hand-labeling text with relation labels is expensive to produce, there are ways to find indirect sources of training data. The **distant supervision** method (Mintz et al., 2009) combines the advantages of bootstrapping with supervised learning. Instead of just a handful of seeds, distant supervision uses a large database to acquire a huge number of seed examples, creates lots of noisy pattern features from all these examples and then combines them in a supervised classifier.

For example suppose we are trying to learn the *place-of-birth* relationship between people and their birth cities. In the seed-based approach, we might have only 5 examples to start with. But Wikipedia-based databases like DBpedia or Freebase have tens of thousands of examples of many relations; including over 100,000 examples of *place-of-birth*, (<Edwin Hubble, Marshfield>, <Albert Einstein, Ulm>, etc.). The next step is to run named entity taggers on large amounts of text—Mintz et al. (2009) used 800,000 articles from Wikipedia—and extract all sentences that have two named entities that match the tuple, like the following:

...Hubble was born in Marshfield...  
 ...Einstein, born (1879), Ulm...  
 ...Hubble's birthplace in Marshfield...

Training instances can now be extracted from this data, one training instance for each identical tuple  $\langle \text{relation}, \text{entity}_1, \text{entity}_2 \rangle$ . Thus there will be one training instance for each of:

```
<born-in, Edwin Hubble, Marshfield>
<born-in, Albert Einstein, Ulm>
<born-year, Albert Einstein, 1879>
```

and so on.

We can then apply feature-based or neural classification. For feature-based classification, standard supervised relation extraction features like the named entity labels of the two mentions, the words and dependency paths in between the mentions, and neighboring words. Each tuple will have features collected from many training instances; the feature vector for a single training instance like (<born-in, Albert Einstein, Ulm> will have lexical and syntactic features from many different sentences that mention Einstein and Ulm.

Because distant supervision has very large training sets, it is also able to use very rich features that are conjunctions of these individual features. So we will extract thousands of patterns that conjoin the entity types with the intervening words or dependency paths like these:

```
PER was born in LOC
PER, born (XXXX), LOC
PER's birthplace in LOC
```

To return to our running example, for this sentence:

(17.12) **American Airlines**, a unit of AMR, immediately matched the move,  
spokesman **Tim Wagner** said

we would learn rich conjunction features like this one:

**M1 = ORG & M2 = PER & nextword=“said”& path=  $NP \uparrow NP \uparrow S \uparrow S \downarrow NP$**

The result is a supervised classifier that has a huge rich set of features to use in detecting relations. Since not every test sentence will have one of the training relations, the classifier will also need to be able to label an example as *no-relation*. This label is trained by randomly selecting entity pairs that do not appear in any Freebase relation, extracting features for them, and building a feature vector for each such tuple. The final algorithm is sketched in Fig. 17.9.

```
function DISTANT SUPERVISION(Database D, Text T) returns relation classifier C
    foreach relation R
        foreach tuple (e1,e2) of entities with relation R in D
            sentences ← Sentences in T that contain e1 and e2
            f ← Frequent features in sentences
            observations ← observations + new training tuple (e1, e2, f, R)
        C ← Train supervised classifier on observations
    return C
```

**Figure 17.9** The distant supervision algorithm for relation extraction. A neural classifier would skip the feature set  $f$ .

Distant supervision shares advantages with each of the methods we've examined. Like supervised classification, distant supervision uses a classifier with lots of features, and supervised by detailed hand-created knowledge. Like pattern-based classifiers, it can make use of high-precision evidence for the relation between entities. Indeed, distance supervision systems learn patterns just like the hand-built

patterns of early relation extractors. For example the *is-a* or *hypernym* extraction system of [Snow et al. \(2005\)](#) used hypernym/hyponym NP pairs from WordNet as distant supervision, and then learned new patterns from large amounts of text. Their system induced exactly the original 5 template patterns of [Hearst \(1992a\)](#), but also 70,000 additional patterns including these four:

- $NP_H$  like  $NP$     *Many hormones like leptin...*
- $NP_H$  called  $NP$     *...using a markup language called XHTML*
- $NP$  is a  $NP_H$     *Ruby is a programming language...*
- $NP$ , a  $NP_H$     *IBM, a company with a long...*

This ability to use a large number of features simultaneously means that, unlike the iterative expansion of patterns in seed-based systems, there's no semantic drift. Like unsupervised classification, it doesn't use a labeled training corpus of texts, so it isn't sensitive to genre issues in the training corpus, and relies on very large amounts of unlabeled data. Distant supervision also has the advantage that it can create training tuples to be used with neural classifiers, where features are not required.

The main problem with distant supervision is that it tends to produce low-precision results, and so current research focuses on ways to improve precision. Furthermore, distant supervision can only help in extracting relations for which a large enough database already exists. To extract new relations without datasets, or relations for new domains, purely unsupervised methods must be used.

### 17.2.5 Unsupervised Relation Extraction

open  
information  
extraction

The goal of unsupervised relation extraction is to extract relations from the web when we have no labeled training data, and not even any list of relations. This task is often called **open information extraction** or **Open IE**. In Open IE, the relations are simply strings of words (usually beginning with a verb).

For example, the **ReVerb** system ([Fader et al., 2011](#)) extracts a relation from a sentence  $s$  in 4 steps:

1. Run a part-of-speech tagger and entity chunker over  $s$
2. For each verb in  $s$ , find the longest sequence of words  $w$  that start with a verb and satisfy syntactic and lexical constraints, merging adjacent matches.
3. For each phrase  $w$ , find the nearest noun phrase  $x$  to the left which is not a relative pronoun, wh-word or existential “there”. Find the nearest noun phrase  $y$  to the right.
4. Assign confidence  $c$  to the relation  $r = (x, w, y)$  using a confidence classifier and return it.

A relation is only accepted if it meets syntactic and lexical constraints. The syntactic constraints ensure that it is a verb-initial sequence that might also include nouns (relations that begin with light verbs like *make*, *have*, or *do* often express the core of the relation with a noun, like *have a hub in*):

$$\begin{aligned} V &| VP | VW^*P \\ V &= \text{verb particle? adv?} \\ W &= (\text{noun} | \text{adj} | \text{adv} | \text{pron} | \text{det}) \\ P &= (\text{prep} | \text{particle} | \text{inf. marker}) \end{aligned}$$

The lexical constraints are based on a dictionary  $D$  that is used to prune very rare, long relation strings. The intuition is to eliminate candidate relations that don't oc-

cur with sufficient number of distinct argument types and so are likely to be bad examples. The system first runs the above relation extraction algorithm offline on 500 million web sentences and extracts a list of all the relations that occur after normalizing them (removing inflection, auxiliary verbs, adjectives, and adverbs). Each relation  $r$  is added to the dictionary if it occurs with at least 20 different arguments. Fader et al. (2011) used a dictionary of 1.7 million normalized relations.

Finally, a confidence value is computed for each relation using a logistic regression classifier. The classifier is trained by taking 1000 random web sentences, running the extractor, and hand labeling each extracted relation as correct or incorrect. A confidence classifier is then trained on this hand-labeled data, using features of the relation and the surrounding words. Fig. 17.10 shows some sample features used in the classification.

(x,r,y) covers all words in $s$
the last preposition in $r$ is <i>for</i>
the last preposition in $r$ is <i>on</i>
len( $s$ ) $\leq 10$
there is a coordinating conjunction to the left of $r$ in $s$
$r$ matches a lone V in the syntactic constraints
there is preposition to the left of $x$ in $s$
there is an NP to the right of $y$ in $s$

**Figure 17.10** Features for the classifier that assigns confidence to relations extracted by the Open Information Extraction system REVERB (Fader et al., 2011).

For example the following sentence:

(17.13) United has a hub in Chicago, which is the headquarters of United  
Continental Holdings.

has the relation phrases *has a hub in* and *is the headquarters of* (it also has *has* and *is*, but longer phrases are preferred). Step 3 finds *United* to the left and *Chicago* to the right of *has a hub in*, and skips over *which* to find *Chicago* to the left of *is the headquarters of*. The final output is:

```
r1: <United, has a hub in, Chicago>
r2: <Chicago, is the headquarters of, United Continental Holdings>
```

The great advantage of unsupervised relation extraction is its ability to handle a huge number of relations without having to specify them in advance. The disadvantage is the need to map these large sets of strings into some canonical form for adding to databases or other knowledge sources. Current methods focus heavily on relations expressed with verbs, and so will miss many relations that are expressed nominally.

### 17.2.6 Evaluation of Relation Extraction

**Supervised** relation extraction systems are evaluated by using test sets with human-annotated, gold-standard relations and computing precision, recall, and F-measure. Labeled precision and recall require the system to classify the relation correctly, whereas unlabeled methods simply measure a system's ability to detect entities that are related.

**Semi-supervised** and **unsupervised** methods are much more difficult to evaluate, since they extract totally new relations from the web or a large text. Because these methods use very large amounts of text, it is generally not possible to run them

solely on a small labeled test set, and as a result it's not possible to pre-annotate a gold set of correct instances of relations.

For these methods it's possible to approximate (only) precision by drawing a random sample of relations from the output, and having a human check the accuracy of each of these relations. Usually this approach focuses on the **tuples** to be extracted from a body of text rather than on the relation **mentions**; systems need not detect every mention of a relation to be scored correctly. Instead, the evaluation is based on the set of tuples occupying the database when the system is finished. That is, we want to know if the system can discover that Ryanair has a hub at Charleroi; we don't really care how many times it discovers it. The estimated precision  $\hat{P}$  is then

$$\hat{P} = \frac{\text{\# of correctly extracted relation tuples in the sample}}{\text{total \# of extracted relation tuples in the sample.}} \quad (17.14)$$

Another approach that gives us a little bit of information about recall is to compute precision at different levels of recall. Assuming that our system is able to rank the relations it produces (by probability, or confidence) we can separately compute precision for the top 1000 new relations, the top 10,000 new relations, the top 100,000, and so on. In each case we take a random sample of that set. This will show us how the precision curve behaves as we extract more and more tuples. But there is no way to directly evaluate recall.

## 17.3 Extracting Times

Times and dates are a particularly important kind of named entity that play a role in question answering, in calendar and personal assistant applications. In order to reason about times and dates, after we extract these **temporal expressions** they must be **normalized**—converted to a standard format so we can reason about them. In this section we consider both the extraction and normalization of temporal expressions.

### 17.3.1 Temporal Expression Extraction

**absolute** Temporal expressions are those that refer to absolute points in time, relative times, durations, and sets of these. **Absolute** temporal expressions are those that can be mapped directly to calendar dates, times of day, or both. **Relative** temporal expressions map to particular times through some other reference point (as in *a week from last Tuesday*). Finally, **durations** denote spans of time at varying levels of granularity (seconds, minutes, days, weeks, centuries, etc.). Figure 17.11 lists some sample temporal expressions in each of these categories.

Absolute	Relative	Durations
April 24, 1916	yesterday	four hours
The summer of '77	next semester	three weeks
10:15 AM	two weeks from yesterday	six days
The 3rd quarter of 2006	last quarter	the last three quarters

Figure 17.11 Examples of absolute, relational and durational temporal expressions.

**lexical triggers** Temporal expressions are grammatical constructions that have temporal **lexical triggers** as their heads. Lexical triggers might be nouns, proper nouns, adjectives,

Category	Examples
Noun	<i>morning, noon, night, winter, dusk, dawn</i>
Proper Noun	<i>January, Monday, Ides, Easter, Rosh Hashana, Ramadan, Tet</i>
Adjective	<i>recent, past, annual, former</i>
Adverb	<i>hourly, daily, monthly, yearly</i>

Figure 17.12 Examples of temporal lexical triggers.

and adverbs; full temporal expressions consist of their phrasal projections: noun phrases, adjective phrases, and adverbial phrases. Figure 17.12 provides examples.

Let's look at the TimeML annotation scheme, in which temporal expressions are annotated with an XML tag, TIMEX3, and various attributes to that tag (Pustejovsky et al. 2005, Ferro et al. 2005). The following example illustrates the basic use of this scheme (we defer discussion of the attributes until Section 17.3.2).

A fare increase initiated <TIMEX3>last week</TIMEX3> by UAL Corp's United Airlines was matched by competitors over <TIMEX3>the weekend</TIMEX3>, marking the second successful fare increase in <TIMEX3>two weeks</TIMEX3>.

The temporal expression recognition task consists of finding the start and end of all of the text spans that correspond to such temporal expressions. **Rule-based approaches** to temporal expression recognition use cascades of automata to recognize patterns at increasing levels of complexity. Tokens are first part-of-speech tagged, and then larger and larger chunks are recognized from the results from previous stages, based on patterns containing trigger words (e.g., *February*) or classes (e.g., *MONTH*). Figure 17.13 gives a fragment from a rule-based system.

```
# yesterday/today/tomorrow
$string =~ s/((\$OT+the\$CT+\$s+)?\$OT+day\$CT+\$s+\$OT+(before|after)\$CT+\$s+)?\$OT+$TERelDayExpr\$CT+
(\$s+\$OT+((morning|afternoon|evening|night)\$CT+)?)/<TIMEX$tever TYPE=\\\"DATE\\">>\$1
<\\'/TIMEX$tever>/gio;

$string =~ s/(\$OT+\w+\$CT+\$s+)<TIME\X$tever TYPE=\\\"DATE\\">[^\\"]*>(\$OT+(Today|Tonight)\$CT+)
<\\'/TIME\X$tever>/\$1\$4/gso;

# this (morning/afternoon/evening)
$string =~ s/((\$OT+(early|late)\$CT+\$s+)?\$OT+this\$CT+\$s*\$OT+((morning|afternoon|evening)\$CT+)
<TIME\X$tever TYPE=\\\"DATE\\">>\$1<\\'/TIME\X$tever>/gosi;
$string =~ s/((\$OT+(early|late)\$CT+\$s+)?\$OT+last\$CT+\$s*\$OT+night\$CT+)<TIME\X$tever
TYPE=\\\"DATE\\">>\$1<\\'/TIME\X$tever>/gsio;
```

Figure 17.13 Perl fragment from the GUTime temporal tagging system in Tarsqi (Verhagen et al., 2005).

**Sequence-labeling approaches** follow the same IOB scheme used for named-entity tags, marking words that are either inside, outside or at the beginning of a TIMEX3-delimited temporal expression with the I, O, and B tags as follows:

A *fare increase initiated last week by UAL Corp's...*  
O O O O B I O O O

Features are extracted from the token and its context, and a statistical sequence labeler is trained (any sequence model can be used). Figure 17.14 lists standard features used in temporal tagging.

Temporal expression recognizers are evaluated with the usual recall, precision, and *F*-measures. A major difficulty for all of these very lexicalized approaches is avoiding expressions that trigger false positives:

(17.15) *1984 tells the story of Winston Smith...*

(17.16) ...U2's classic *Sunday Bloody Sunday*

Feature	Explanation
Token	The target token to be labeled
Tokens in window	Bag of tokens in the window around a target
Shape	Character shape features
POS	Parts of speech of target and window words
Chunk tags	Base phrase chunk tag for target and words in a window
Lexical triggers	Presence in a list of temporal terms

**Figure 17.14** Typical features used to train IOB-style temporal expression taggers.

### 17.3.2 Temporal Normalization

temporal normalization

**Temporal normalization** is the process of mapping a temporal expression to either a specific point in time or to a duration. Points in time correspond to calendar dates, to times of day, or both. Durations primarily consist of lengths of time but may also include information about start and end points. Normalized times are represented with the VALUE attribute from the ISO 8601 standard for encoding temporal values (ISO8601, 2004). Fig. 17.15 reproduces our earlier example with the value attributes added in.

```
<TIME3 id="t1" type="DATE" value="2007-07-02" functionInDocument="CREATION_TIME">
> July 2, 2007 </TIME3> A fare increase initiated <TIME3 id="t2" type="DATE"
value="2007-W26" anchorTimeID="t1">last week</TIME3> by United Airlines was
matched by competitors over <TIME3 id="t3" type="DURATION" value="PIWE"
anchorTimeID="t1"> the weekend </TIME3>, marking the second successful fare
increase in <TIME3 id="t4" type="DURATION" value="P2W" anchorTimeID="t1"> two
weeks </TIME3>.
```

**Figure 17.15** TimeML markup including normalized values for temporal expressions.

The dateline, or document date, for this text was *July 2, 2007*. The ISO representation for this kind of expression is YYYY-MM-DD, or in this case, 2007-07-02. The encodings for the temporal expressions in our sample text all follow from this date, and are shown here as values for the VALUE attribute.

The first temporal expression in the text proper refers to a particular week of the year. In the ISO standard, weeks are numbered from 01 to 53, with the first week of the year being the one that has the first Thursday of the year. These weeks are represented with the template YYYY-Wnn. The ISO week for our document date is week 27; thus the value for *last week* is represented as “2007-W26”.

The next temporal expression is *the weekend*. ISO weeks begin on Monday; thus, weekends occur at the end of a week and are fully contained within a single week. Weekends are treated as durations, so the value of the VALUE attribute has to be a length. Durations are represented according to the pattern Pnx, where n is an integer denoting the length and x represents the unit, as in P3Y for *three years* or P2D for *two days*. In this example, one weekend is captured as PIWE. In this case, there is also sufficient information to anchor this particular weekend as part of a particular week. Such information is encoded in the ANCHORTIMEID attribute. Finally, the phrase *two weeks* also denotes a duration captured as P2W. There is a lot more to the various temporal annotation standards—far too much to cover here. Figure 17.16 describes some of the basic ways that other times and durations are represented. Consult ISO8601 (2004), Ferro et al. (2005), and Pustejovsky et al. (2005) for more details.

Most current approaches to temporal normalization are rule-based (Chang and Manning 2012, Strötgen and Gertz 2013). Patterns that match temporal expressions are associated with semantic analysis procedures. As in the compositional

Unit	Pattern	Sample Value
Fully specified dates	YYYY-MM-DD	1991-09-28
Weeks	YYYY-Wnn	2007-W27
Weekends	PnWE	P1WE
24-hour clock times	HH:MM:SS	11:13:45
Dates and times	YYYY-MM-DDTHH:MM:SS	1991-09-28T11:00:00
Financial quarters	Qn	1999-Q3

**Figure 17.16** Sample ISO patterns for representing various times and durations.

rule-to-rule approach introduced in Chapter 16, the meaning of a constituent is computed from the meaning of its parts using a method specific to the constituent, although here the semantic composition rules involve temporal arithmetic rather than  $\lambda$ -calculus attachments.

fully qualified

**Fully qualified** date expressions contain a year, month, and day in some conventional form. The units in the expression must be detected and then placed in the correct place in the corresponding ISO pattern. The following pattern normalizes expressions like *April 24, 1916*.

$$FQTE \rightarrow Month\ Date\ ,\ Year \quad \{Year.val - Month.val - Date.val\}$$

The non-terminals *Month*, *Date*, and *Year* represent constituents that have already been recognized and assigned semantic values, accessed through the *\*.val* notation. The value of this *FQE* constituent can, in turn, be accessed as *FQTE.val* during further processing.

temporal anchor

Fully qualified temporal expressions are fairly rare in real texts. Most temporal expressions in news articles are incomplete and are only implicitly anchored, often with respect to the dateline of the article, which we refer to as the document's **temporal anchor**. The values of temporal expressions such as *today*, *yesterday*, or *tomorrow* can all be computed with respect to this temporal anchor. The semantic procedure for *today* simply assigns the anchor, and the attachments for *tomorrow* and *yesterday* add a day and subtract a day from the anchor, respectively. Of course, given the cyclic nature of our representations for months, weeks, days, and times of day, our temporal arithmetic procedures must use modulo arithmetic appropriate to the time unit being used.

Unfortunately, even simple expressions such as *the weekend* or *Wednesday* introduce a fair amount of complexity. In our current example, *the weekend* clearly refers to the weekend of the week that immediately precedes the document date. But this won't always be the case, as is illustrated in the following example.

(17.17) Random security checks that began yesterday at Sky Harbor will continue at least through the weekend.

In this case, the expression *the weekend* refers to the weekend of the week that the anchoring date is part of (i.e., the coming weekend). The information that signals this meaning comes from the tense of *continue*, the verb governing *the weekend*.

Relative temporal expressions are handled with temporal arithmetic similar to that used for *today* and *yesterday*. The document date indicates that our example article is ISO week 27, so the expression *last week* normalizes to the current week minus 1. To resolve ambiguous *next* and *last* expressions we consider the distance from the anchoring date to the nearest unit. *Next Friday* can refer either to the immediately next Friday or to the Friday following that, but the closer the document date is to a Friday, the more likely it is that the phrase will skip the nearest one. Such

ambiguities are handled by encoding language and domain-specific heuristics into the temporal attachments.

## 17.4 Extracting Events and their Times

### event extraction

The task of **event extraction** is to identify mentions of events in texts. For the purposes of this task, an event mention is any expression denoting an event or state that can be assigned to a particular point, or interval, in time. The following markup of the sample text on page 345 shows all the events in this text.

[EVENT Citing] high fuel prices, United Airlines [EVENT said] Friday it has [EVENT increased] fares by \$6 per round trip on flights to some cities also served by lower-cost carriers. American Airlines, a unit of AMR Corp., immediately [EVENT matched] [EVENT the move], spokesman Tim Wagner [EVENT said]. United, a unit of UAL Corp., [EVENT said] [EVENT the increase] took effect Thursday and [EVENT applies] to most routes where it [EVENT competes] against discount carriers, such as Chicago to Dallas and Denver to San Francisco.

In English, most event mentions correspond to verbs, and most verbs introduce events. However, as we can see from our example, this is not always the case. Events can be introduced by noun phrases, as in *the move* and *the increase*, and some verbs fail to introduce events, as in the phrasal verb *took effect*, which refers to when the event began rather than to the event itself. Similarly, light verbs such as *make*, *take*, and *have* often fail to denote events; for light verbs the event is often expressed by the nominal direct object (*took a flight*), and these light verbs just provide a syntactic structure for the noun's arguments.

### reporting events

Various versions of the event extraction task exist, depending on the goal. For example in the TempEval shared tasks (Verhagen et al. 2009) the goal is to extract events and aspects like their aspectual and temporal properties. Events are to be classified as actions, states, **reporting events** (*say, report, tell, explain*), perception events, and so on. The aspect, tense, and modality of each event also needs to be extracted. Thus for example the various *said* events in the sample text would be annotated as (class=REPORTING, tense=PAST, aspect=PERFECTIVE).

Event extraction is generally modeled via supervised learning, detecting events via sequence models with IOB tagging, and assigning event classes and attributes with multi-class classifiers. Feature-based models use surface information like parts of speech, lexical items, and verb tense information; see Fig. 17.17.

Feature	Explanation
Character affixes	Character-level prefixes and suffixes of target word
Nominalization suffix	Character-level suffixes for nominalizations (e.g., <i>-tion</i> )
Part of speech	Part of speech of the target word
Light verb	Binary feature indicating that the target is governed by a light verb
Subject syntactic category	Syntactic category of the subject of the sentence
Morphological stem	Stemmed version of the target word
Verb root	Root form of the verb basis for a nominalization
WordNet hypernyms	Hypernym set for the target

**Figure 17.17** Features commonly used in both rule-based and machine learning approaches to event detection.

### 17.4.1 Temporal Ordering of Events

With both the events and the temporal expressions in a text having been detected, the next logical task is to use this information to fit the events into a complete timeline. Such a timeline would be useful for applications such as question answering and summarization. This ambitious task is the subject of considerable current research but is beyond the capabilities of current systems.

#### Allen relations

A somewhat simpler, but still useful, task is to impose a partial ordering on the events and temporal expressions mentioned in a text. Such an ordering can provide many of the same benefits as a true timeline. An example of such a partial ordering is the determination that the fare increase by *American Airlines* came *after* the fare increase by *United* in our sample text. Determining such an ordering can be viewed as a binary relation detection and classification task similar to those described earlier in Section 17.1. The temporal relation between events is classified into one of the standard set of **Allen relations** shown in Fig. 17.18 (Allen, 1984), using feature-based classifiers as in Section 17.1, trained on the TimeBank corpus with features like words/embeddings, parse paths, tense and aspect.

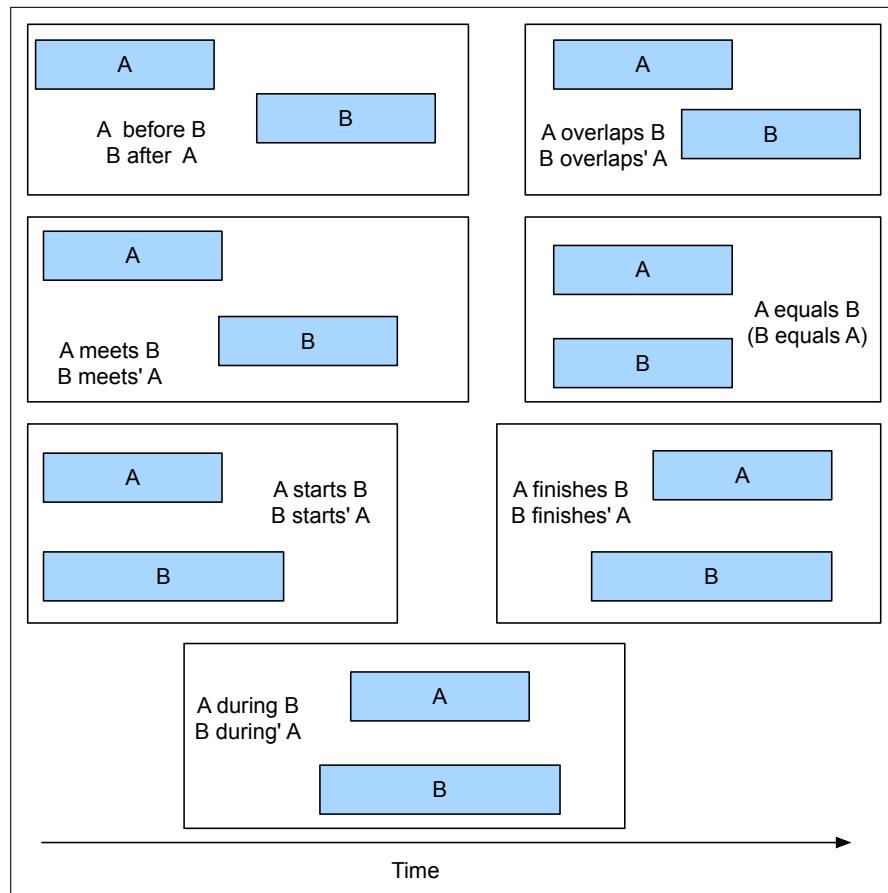


Figure 17.18 The 13 temporal relations from Allen (1984).

#### TimeBank

The **TimeBank** corpus consists of text annotated with much of the information we've been discussing throughout this section (Pustejovsky et al., 2003b). TimeBank 1.2 consists of 183 news articles selected from a variety of sources, including the Penn TreeBank and PropBank collections.

```
<TIMEX3 tid="t57" type="DATE" value="1989-10-26" functionInDocument="CREATION_TIME">
10/26/89 </TIMEX3>
```

Delta Air Lines earnings <EVENT eid="e1" class="OCCURRENCE"> soared </EVENT> 33% to a record in <TIMEX3 tid="t58" type="DATE" value="1989-Q1" anchorTimeID="t57"> the fiscal first quarter </TIMEX3>, <EVENT eid="e3" class="OCCURRENCE">bucking</EVENT> the industry trend toward <EVENT eid="e4" class="OCCURRENCE">declining</EVENT> profits.

**Figure 17.19** Example from the TimeBank corpus.

Each article in the TimeBank corpus has had the temporal expressions and event mentions in them explicitly annotated in the TimeML annotation (Pustejovsky et al., 2003a). In addition to temporal expressions and events, the TimeML annotation provides temporal links between events and temporal expressions that specify the nature of the relation between them. Consider the following sample sentence and its corresponding markup shown in Fig. 17.19, selected from one of the TimeBank documents.

- (17.18) Delta Air Lines earnings soared 33% to a record in the fiscal first quarter, bucking the industry trend toward declining profits.

As annotated, this text includes three events and two temporal expressions. The events are all in the occurrence class and are given unique identifiers for use in further annotations. The temporal expressions include the creation time of the article, which serves as the document time, and a single temporal expression within the text.

In addition to these annotations, TimeBank provides four links that capture the temporal relations between the events and times in the text, using the Allen relations from Fig. 17.18. The following are the within-sentence temporal relations annotated for this example.

- Soaring<sub>e1</sub> is **included** in the fiscal first quarter<sub>t58</sub>
- Soaring<sub>e1</sub> is **before** 1989-10-26<sub>t57</sub>
- Soaring<sub>e1</sub> is **simultaneous** with the bucking<sub>e3</sub>
- Declining<sub>e4</sub> **includes** soaring<sub>e1</sub>

## 17.5 Template Filling

scripts  
templates  
template filling

Many texts contain reports of events, and possibly sequences of events, that often correspond to fairly common, stereotypical situations in the world. These abstract situations or stories, related to what have been called **scripts** (Schank and Abelson, 1977), consist of prototypical sequences of sub-events, participants, and their roles. The strong expectations provided by these scripts can facilitate the proper classification of entities, the assignment of entities into roles and relations, and most critically, the drawing of inferences that fill in things that have been left unsaid. In their simplest form, such scripts can be represented as **templates** consisting of fixed sets of **slots** that take as values **slot-fillers** belonging to particular classes. The task of **template filling** is to find documents that invoke particular scripts and then fill the slots in the associated templates with fillers extracted from the text. These slot-fillers may consist of text segments extracted directly from the text, or they may consist of concepts that have been inferred from text elements through some additional processing.

A filled template from our original airline story might look like the following.

FARE-RAISE ATTEMPT:	<table border="0"> <tr> <td>LEAD AIRLINE:</td><td>UNITED AIRLINES</td></tr> <tr> <td>AMOUNT:</td><td>\$6</td></tr> <tr> <td>EFFECTIVE DATE:</td><td>2006-10-26</td></tr> <tr> <td>FOLLOWER:</td><td>AMERICAN AIRLINES</td></tr> </table>	LEAD AIRLINE:	UNITED AIRLINES	AMOUNT:	\$6	EFFECTIVE DATE:	2006-10-26	FOLLOWER:	AMERICAN AIRLINES
LEAD AIRLINE:	UNITED AIRLINES								
AMOUNT:	\$6								
EFFECTIVE DATE:	2006-10-26								
FOLLOWER:	AMERICAN AIRLINES								

This template has four slots (LEAD AIRLINE, AMOUNT, EFFECTIVE DATE, FOLLOWER). The next section describes a standard sequence-labeling approach to filling slots. Section 17.5.2 then describes an older system based on the use of cascades of finite-state transducers and designed to address a more complex template-filling task that current learning-based systems don't yet address.

### 17.5.1 Machine Learning Approaches to Template Filling

In the standard paradigm for template filling, we are given training documents with text spans annotated with predefined templates and their slot fillers. Our goal is to create one template for each event in the input, filling in the slots with text spans.

template  
recognition

The task is generally modeled by training two separate supervised systems. The first system decides whether the template is present in a particular sentence. This task is called **template recognition** or sometimes, in a perhaps confusing bit of terminology, *event recognition*. Template recognition can be treated as a text classification task, with features extracted from every sequence of words that was labeled in training documents as filling any slot from the template being detected. The usual set of features can be used: tokens, embeddings, word shapes, part-of-speech tags, syntactic chunk tags, and named entity tags.

role-filler  
extraction

The second system has the job of **role-filler extraction**. A separate classifier is trained to detect each role (LEAD-AIRLINE, AMOUNT, and so on). This can be a binary classifier that is run on every noun-phrase in the parsed input sentence, or a sequence model run over sequences of words. Each role classifier is trained on the labeled data in the training set. Again, the usual set of features can be used, but now trained only on an individual noun phrase or the fillers of a single slot.

Multiple non-identical text segments might be labeled with the same slot label. For example in our sample text, the strings *United* or *United Airlines* might be labeled as the LEAD AIRLINE. These are not incompatible choices and the coreference resolution techniques introduced in Chapter 22 can provide a path to a solution.

A variety of annotated collections have been used to evaluate this style of approach to template filling, including sets of job announcements, conference calls for papers, restaurant guides, and biological texts. Recent work focuses on extracting templates in cases where there is no training data or even predefined templates, by inducing templates as sets of linked events (Chambers and Jurafsky, 2011).

### 17.5.2 Earlier Finite-State Template-Filling Systems

The templates above are relatively simple. But consider the task of producing a template that contained all the information in a text like this one (Grishman and Sundheim, 1995):

Bridgestone Sports Co. said Friday it has set up a joint venture in Taiwan with a local concern and a Japanese trading house to produce golf clubs to be shipped to Japan. The joint venture, Bridgestone Sports Taiwan Co., capitalized at 20 million new Taiwan dollars, will start production in January 1990 with production of 20,000 iron and “metal wood” clubs a month.

The MUC-5 ‘joint venture’ task (the *Message Understanding Conferences* were a series of U.S. government-organized information-extraction evaluations) was to produce hierarchically linked templates describing joint ventures. Figure 17.20 shows a structure produced by the FASTUS system (Hobbs et al., 1997). Note how the filler of the ACTIVITY slot of the TIE-UP template is itself a template with slots.

<b>Tie-up-1</b>		<b>Activity-1:</b>	
RELATIONSHIP	tie-up	COMPANY	Bridgestone Sports Taiwan Co.
ENTITIES	Bridgestone Sports Co. a local concern a Japanese trading house	PRODUCT	iron and “metal wood” clubs
JOINT VENTURE	Bridgestone Sports Taiwan Co.	START DATE	DURING: January 1990
ACTIVITY	Activity-1		
AMOUNT	NT\$20000000		

**Figure 17.20** The templates produced by FASTUS given the input text on page 351.

Early systems for dealing with these complex templates were based on cascades of transducers based on handwritten rules, as sketched in Fig. 17.21.

No.	Step	Description
1	<b>Tokens</b>	Tokenize input stream of characters
2	<b>Complex Words</b>	Multiword phrases, numbers, and proper names.
3	<b>Basic phrases</b>	Segment sentences into noun and verb groups
4	<b>Complex phrases</b>	Identify complex noun groups and verb groups
5	<b>Semantic Patterns</b>	Identify entities and events, insert into templates.
6	<b>Merging</b>	Merge references to the same entity or event

**Figure 17.21** Levels of processing in FASTUS (Hobbs et al., 1997). Each level extracts a specific type of information which is then passed on to the next higher level.

The first four stages use handwritten regular expression and grammar rules to do basic tokenization, chunking, and parsing. Stage 5 then recognizes entities and events with a FST-based recognizer and inserts the recognized objects into the appropriate slots in templates. This FST recognizer is based on hand-built regular expressions like the following (NG indicates Noun-Group and VG Verb-Group), which matches the first sentence of the news story above.

```
NG(Company/ies) VG(Set-up) NG(Joint-Venture) with NG(Company/ies)
VG(Produce) NG(Product)
```

The result of processing these two sentences is the five draft templates (Fig. 17.22) that must then be merged into the single hierarchical structure shown in Fig. 17.20. The merging algorithm, after performing coreference resolution, merges two activities that are likely to be describing the same events.

## 17.6 Summary

This chapter has explored techniques for extracting limited forms of semantic content from texts.

- **Relations among entities** can be extracted by pattern-based approaches, supervised learning methods when annotated training data is available, lightly

#	Template/Slot	Value
1	RELATIONSHIP:	TIE-UP
	ENTITIES:	Bridgestone Co., a local concern, a Japanese trading house
2	ACTIVITY:	PRODUCTION
	PRODUCT:	“golf clubs”
3	RELATIONSHIP:	TIE-UP
	JOINT VENTURE:	“Bridgestone Sports Taiwan Co.”
	AMOUNT:	NT\$20000000
4	ACTIVITY:	PRODUCTION
	COMPANY:	“Bridgestone Sports Taiwan Co.”
	STARTDATE:	DURING: January 1990
5	ACTIVITY:	PRODUCTION
	PRODUCT:	“iron and “metal wood” clubs”

**Figure 17.22** The five partial templates produced by stage 5 of FASTUS. These templates are merged in stage 6 to produce the final template shown in Fig. 17.20 on page 352.

supervised **bootstrapping** methods when small numbers of **seed tuples** or **seed patterns** are available, **distant supervision** when a database of relations is available, and **unsupervised** or **Open IE** methods.

- Reasoning about time can be facilitated by detection and normalization of **temporal expressions** through a combination of statistical learning and rule-based methods.
- **Events** can be detected and ordered in time using sequence models and classifiers trained on temporally- and event-labeled data like the **TimeBank corpus**.
- **Template-filling** applications can recognize stereotypical situations in texts and assign elements from the text to roles represented as **fixed sets of slots**.

## Bibliographical and Historical Notes

The earliest work on information extraction addressed the template-filling task in the context of the Frump system (DeJong, 1982). Later work was stimulated by the U.S. government-sponsored MUC conferences (Sundheim 1991, Sundheim 1992, Sundheim 1993, Sundheim 1995). Early MUC systems like CIRCUS system (Lehnert et al., 1991) and SCISOR (Jacobs and Rau, 1990) were quite influential and inspired later systems like FASTUS (Hobbs et al., 1997). Chinchor et al. (1993) describe the MUC evaluation techniques.

Due to the difficulty of porting systems from one domain to another, attention shifted to machine learning approaches. Early supervised learning approaches to IE (Cardie 1993, Cardie 1994, Riloff 1993, Soderland et al. 1995, Huffman 1996) focused on automating the knowledge acquisition process, mainly for finite-state rule-based systems. Their success, and the earlier success of HMM-based speech recognition, led to the use of sequence labeling (HMMs: Bikel et al. 1997; MEMMs McCallum et al. 2000; CRFs: Lafferty et al. 2001), and a wide exploration of features (Zhou et al., 2005). Neural approaches followed from the pioneering results of Collobert et al. (2011), who applied a CRF on top of a convolutional net.

Progress in this area continues to be stimulated by formal evaluations with shared benchmark datasets, including the Automatic Content Extraction (ACE) evaluations

**KBP slot filling** of 2000-2007 on named entity recognition, relation extraction, and temporal expressions<sup>1</sup>, the **KBP (Knowledge Base Population)** evaluations (Ji et al. 2010, Surdeanu 2013) of relation extraction tasks like **slot filling** (extracting attributes ('slots') like age, birthplace, and spouse for a given entity) and a series of SemEval workshops (Hendrickx et al., 2009).

Semisupervised relation extraction was first proposed by Hearst (1992b), and extended by systems like AutoSlog-TS (Riloff, 1996), DIPRE (Brin, 1998), SNOWBALL (Agichtein and Gravano, 2000), and Jones et al. (1999). The distant supervision algorithm we describe was drawn from Mintz et al. (2009), who coined the term ‘distant supervision’, but similar ideas had occurred in earlier systems like Craven and Kumlien (1999) and Morgan et al. (2004) under the name *weakly labeled data*, as well as in Snow et al. (2005) and Wu and Weld (2007). Among the many extensions are Wu and Weld (2010), Riedel et al. (2010), and Ritter et al. (2013). Open IE systems include KNOWITALL Etzioni et al. (2005), TextRunner (Banko et al., 2007), and REVERB (Fader et al., 2011). See Riedel et al. (2013) for a universal schema that combines the advantages of distant supervision and Open IE.

HeidelTime (Strötgen and Gertz, 2013) and SUTime (Chang and Manning, 2012) are downloadable temporal extraction and normalization systems. The 2013 TempEval challenge is described in UzZaman et al. (2013); Chambers (2013) and Bethard (2013) give typical approaches.

## Exercises

- 17.1 Acronym expansion, the process of associating a phrase with an acronym, can be accomplished by a simple form of relational analysis. Develop a system based on the relation analysis approaches described in this chapter to populate a database of acronym expansions. If you focus on English **Three Letter Acronyms** (TLAs) you can evaluate your system’s performance by comparing it to Wikipedia’s TLA page.
- 17.2 A useful functionality in newer email and calendar applications is the ability to associate temporal expressions connected with events in email (doctor’s appointments, meeting planning, party invitations, etc.) with specific calendar entries. Collect a corpus of email containing temporal expressions related to event planning. How do these expressions compare to the kinds of expressions commonly found in news text that we’ve been discussing in this chapter?
- 17.3 Acquire the CMU seminar corpus and develop a template-filling system by using any of the techniques mentioned in Section 17.5. Analyze how well your system performs as compared with state-of-the-art results on this corpus.

---

<sup>1</sup> [www.nist.gov/speech/tests/ace/](http://www.nist.gov/speech/tests/ace/)

# Word Senses and WordNet

**Lady Bracknell.** Are your parents living?

**Jack.** I have lost both my parents.

**Lady Bracknell.** To lose one parent, Mr. Worthing, may be regarded as a misfortune; to lose both looks like carelessness.

Oscar Wilde, *The Importance of Being Earnest*

## ambiguous

Words are **ambiguous**: the same word can be used to mean different things. In Chapter 6 we saw that the word “mouse” has (at least) two meanings: (1) a small rodent, or (2) a hand-operated device to control a cursor. The word “bank” can mean: (1) a financial institution or (2) a sloping mound. In the quote above from his play *The Importance of Being Earnest*, Oscar Wilde plays with two meanings of “lose” (to misplace an object, and to suffer the loss of a person).

## word sense

We say that the words ‘mouse’ or ‘bank’ are **polysemous** (from Greek ‘having many senses’, *poly-* ‘many’ + *sema*, ‘sign, mark’).<sup>1</sup> A **sense** (or **word sense**) is a discrete representation of one aspect of the meaning of a word. In this chapter we discuss word senses in more detail and introduce **WordNet**, a large online **thesaurus**—a database that represents word senses—with versions in many languages. WordNet also represents relations between senses. For example, there is an **IS-A** relation between *dog* and *mammal* (a dog is a kind of mammal) and a **part-whole** relation between *engine* and *car* (an engine is a part of a car).

## WordNet

Knowing the relation between two senses can play an important role in language understanding. Consider the **antonymy** relation. Two words are antonyms if they have opposite meanings, like *long* and *short*, or *up* and *down*. Distinguishing these is quite important for language understanding (if a user asks a dialogue agent to turn up the music, it would be unfortunate to instead turn it down). But in fact in embedding models like word2vec, antonyms are easily confused with each other, because often one of the closest words in embedding space to a word (e.g., *up*) is its antonym (e.g., *down*). Thesauruses that represent this relationship can help!

## word sense disambiguation

We also introduce **word sense disambiguation (WSD)**, the task of determining which sense of a word is being used in a particular context. We’ll give supervised and unsupervised algorithms for deciding which sense was intended in a particular context. This task has a very long history in computational linguistics and many applications. In question answering, we can be more helpful to a user who asks about “bat care” if we know which sense of bat is relevant. (Is the user a vampire? or just wants to play baseball.) And the different senses of a word often have different translations; in Spanish the animal bat is a *murciélagos* while the baseball bat is a *bate*, and indeed word sense algorithms may help improve MT (Pu et al., 2018). Finally, WSD has long been used as a tool for evaluating natural language understanding models, and understanding how models represent different word senses is an important analytic direction.

<sup>1</sup> You may also see the word **polysemy** used in a different way, to refer only to cases where a word’s senses have some sort of semantic relation, with the word **homonymy** used when there is no relation between the senses.

## 18.1 Word Senses

**word sense** A **sense** (or **word sense**) is a discrete representation of one aspect of the meaning of a word. Loosely following lexicographic tradition, we represent each sense with a superscript: **bank<sup>1</sup>** and **bank<sup>2</sup>**, **mouse<sup>1</sup>** and **mouse<sup>2</sup>**. In context, it's easy to see the different meanings:

**mouse<sup>1</sup>** : .... a *mouse* controlling a computer system in 1968.

**mouse<sup>2</sup>** : .... a quiet animal like a *mouse*

**bank<sup>1</sup>** : ...a *bank* can hold the investments in a custodial account ...

**bank<sup>2</sup>** : ...as agriculture burgeons on the east *bank*, the river ...

### 18.1.1 Defining Word Senses

How can we define the meaning of a word sense? We introduced in Chapter 6 the standard computational approach of representing a word as an **embedding**, a point in semantic space. The intuition of embedding models like word2vec or GloVe is that the meaning of a word can be defined by its co-occurrences, the counts of words that often occur nearby. But that doesn't tell us how to define the meaning of a word *sense*. As we saw in Chapter 10, contextual embeddings like BERT go further by offering an embedding that represents the meaning of a word in its textual context, and we'll see that contextual embeddings lie at the heart of modern algorithms for word sense disambiguation.

But first, we need to consider the alternative ways that dictionaries and thesauruses offer for defining senses. One is based on the fact that dictionaries or thesauruses give textual definitions for each sense called **glosses**. Here are the glosses for two senses of *bank*:

1. financial institution that accepts deposits and channels the money into lending activities
2. sloping land (especially the slope beside a body of water)

Glosses are not a formal meaning representation; they are just written for people. Consider the following fragments from the definitions of *right*, *left*, *red*, and *blood* from the *American Heritage Dictionary* (Morris, 1985).

right *adj.* located nearer the right hand esp. being on the right when facing the same direction as the observer.

left *adj.* located nearer to this side of the body than the right.

red *n.* the color of blood or a ruby.

blood *n.* the red liquid that circulates in the heart, arteries and veins of animals.

Note the circularity in these definitions. The definition of *right* makes two direct references to itself, and the entry for *left* contains an implicit self-reference in the phrase *this side of the body*, which presumably means the *left* side. The entries for *red* and *blood* reference each other in their definitions. For humans, such entries are useful since the user of the dictionary has sufficient grasp of these other terms.

Yet despite their circularity and lack of formal representation, glosses can still be useful for computational modeling of senses. This is because a gloss is just a sentence, and from sentences we can compute sentence embeddings that tell us something about the meaning of the sense. Dictionaries often give example sentences along with glosses, and these can again be used to help build a sense representation.

The second way that thesauruses offer for defining a sense is—like the dictionary definitions—defining a sense through its relationship with other senses. For example, the above definitions make it clear that *right* and *left* are similar kinds of lemmas that stand in some kind of alternation, or opposition, to one another. Similarly, we can glean that *red* is a color and that *blood* is a *liquid*. **Sense relations** of this sort (**IS-A**, or **antonymy**) are explicitly listed in on-line databases like **WordNet**. Given a sufficiently large database of such relations, many applications are quite capable of performing sophisticated semantic tasks about word senses (even if they do not *really* know their right from their left).

### 18.1.2 How many senses do words have?

Dictionaries and thesauruses give discrete lists of senses. By contrast, embeddings (whether static or contextual) offer a continuous high-dimensional model of meaning that doesn't divide up into discrete senses.

Therefore creating a thesaurus depends on criteria for deciding when the differing uses of a word should be represented with discrete senses. We might consider two senses discrete if they have independent truth conditions, different syntactic behavior, and independent sense relations, or if they exhibit antagonistic meanings.

Consider the following uses of the verb *serve* from the WSJ corpus:

- (18.1) They rarely *serve* red meat, preferring to prepare seafood.
- (18.2) He *served* as U.S. ambassador to Norway in 1976 and 1977.
- (18.3) He might have *served* his time, come out and led an upstanding life.

The *serve* of *serving red meat* and that of *serving time* clearly have different truth conditions and presuppositions; the *serve* of *serve as ambassador* has the distinct subcategorization structure *serve as NP*. These heuristics suggest that these are probably three distinct senses of *serve*. One practical technique for determining if two senses are distinct is to conjoin two uses of a word in a single sentence; this kind of conjunction of antagonistic readings is called **zeugma**. Consider the following examples:

- (18.4) Which of those flights *serve* breakfast?
- (18.5) Does Air France *serve* Philadelphia?
- (18.6) ?Does Air France *serve* breakfast and Philadelphia?

We use (?) to mark those examples that are semantically ill-formed. The oddness of the invented third example (a case of zeugma) indicates there is no sensible way to make a single sense of *serve* work for both breakfast and Philadelphia. We can use this as evidence that *serve* has two different senses in this case.

Dictionaries tend to use many fine-grained senses so as to capture subtle meaning differences, a reasonable approach given that the traditional role of dictionaries is aiding word learners. For computational purposes, we often don't need these fine distinctions, so we often group or cluster the senses; we have already done this for some of the examples in this chapter. Indeed, clustering examples into senses, or senses into broader-grained categories, is an important computational task that we'll discuss in Section 18.7.

**zeugma**

## 18.2 Relations Between Senses

This section explores the relations between word senses, especially those that have received significant computational investigation like **synonymy**, **antonymy**, and **hyponymy**.

### Synonymy

**synonym** We introduced in Chapter 6 the idea that when two senses of two different words (lemmas) are identical, or nearly identical, we say the two senses are **synonyms**. Synonyms include such pairs as

*couch/sofa vomit/throw up filbert/hazelnut car/automobile*

And we mentioned that in practice, the word *synonym* is commonly used to describe a relationship of approximate or rough synonymy. But furthermore, synonymy is actually a relationship between senses rather than words. Considering the words *big* and *large*. These may seem to be synonyms in the following sentences, since we could swap *big* and *large* in either sentence and retain the same meaning:

- (18.7) How big is that plane?
- (18.8) Would I be flying on a large or small plane?

But note the following sentence in which we cannot substitute *large* for *big*:

- (18.9) Miss Nelson, for instance, became a kind of big sister to Benjamin.
- (18.10) ?Miss Nelson, for instance, became a kind of large sister to Benjamin.

This is because the word *big* has a sense that means being older or grown up, while *large* lacks this sense. Thus, we say that some senses of *big* and *large* are (nearly) synonymous while other ones are not.

### Antonymy

**antonym** Whereas synonyms are words with identical or similar meanings, **antonyms** are words with an opposite meaning, like:

*long/short big/little fast/slow cold/hot dark/light  
rise/fall up/down in/out*

**reversives** Two senses can be antonyms if they define a binary opposition or are at opposite ends of some scale. This is the case for *long/short*, *fast/slow*, or *big/little*, which are at opposite ends of the *length* or *size* scale. Another group of antonyms, **reversives**, describe change or movement in opposite directions, such as *rise/fall* or *up/down*.

Antonyms thus differ completely with respect to one aspect of their meaning—their position on a scale or their direction—but are otherwise very similar, sharing almost all other aspects of meaning. Thus, automatically distinguishing synonyms from antonyms can be difficult.

### Taxonomic Relations

**hyponym** Another way word senses can be related is taxonomically. A word (or sense) is a **hyponym** of another word or sense if the first is more specific, denoting a subclass of the other. For example, *car* is a hyponym of *vehicle*, *dog* is a hyponym of *animal*, and *mango* is a hyponym of *fruit*. Conversely, we say that *vehicle* is a **hypernym** of *car*, and *animal* is a hypernym of *dog*. It is unfortunate that the two words (hypernym

**superordinate** and hyponym) are very similar and hence easily confused; for this reason, the word **superordinate** is often used instead of **hyponym**.

<b>Superordinate</b>	vehicle	fruit	furniture	mammal
<b>Subordinate</b>	car	mango	chair	dog

We can define hypernymy more formally by saying that the class denoted by the superordinate extensionally includes the class denoted by the hyponym. Thus, the class of animals includes as members all dogs, and the class of moving actions includes all walking actions. Hypernymy can also be defined in terms of **entailment**. Under this definition, a sense *A* is a hyponym of a sense *B* if everything that is *A* is also *B*, and hence being an *A* entails being a *B*, or  $\forall x A(x) \Rightarrow B(x)$ . Hyponymy/hypernymy is usually a transitive relation; if *A* is a hyponym of *B* and *B* is a hyponym of *C*, then *A* is a hyponym of *C*. Another name for the hypernym/hyponym structure is the **IS-A** hierarchy, in which we say *A* IS-A *B*, or *B* **subsumes** *A*.

**IS-A**

Hypernymy is useful for tasks like textual entailment or question answering; knowing that *leukemia* is a type of *cancer*, for example, would certainly be useful in answering questions about leukemia.

**Meronymy****part-whole**

Another common relation is **meronymy**, the **part-whole** relation. A *leg* is part of a *chair*; a *wheel* is part of a *car*. We say that *wheel* is a **meronym** of *car*, and *car* is a **holonym** of *wheel*.

**Structured Polysemy****structured polysemy**

The senses of a word can also be related semantically, in which case we call the relationship between them **structured polysemy**. Consider this sense *bank*:

(18.11) The bank is on the corner of Nassau and Witherspoon.

This sense, perhaps **bank**<sup>4</sup>, means something like “the building belonging to a financial institution”. These two kinds of senses (an organization and the building associated with an organization) occur together for many other words as well (*school*, *university*, *hospital*, etc.). Thus, there is a systematic relationship between senses that we might represent as

BUILDING ↔ ORGANIZATION

**metonymy**

This particular subtype of polysemy relation is called **metonymy**. Metonymy is the use of one aspect of a concept or entity to refer to other aspects of the entity or to the entity itself. We are performing metonymy when we use the phrase *the White House* to refer to the administration whose office is in the White House. Other common examples of metonymy include the relation between the following pairings of senses:

AUTHOR ( <i>Jane Austen wrote Emma</i> )	↔	WORKS OF AUTHOR ( <i>I really love Jane Austen</i> )
FRUITTREE ( <i>Plums have beautiful blossoms</i> )	↔	FRUIT ( <i>I ate a preserved plum yesterday</i> )

## 18.3 WordNet: A Database of Lexical Relations

**WordNet** The most commonly used resource for sense relations in English and many other languages is the **WordNet** lexical database (Fellbaum, 1998). English WordNet consists of three separate databases, one each for nouns and verbs and a third for adjectives and adverbs; closed class words are not included. Each database contains a set of lemmas, each one annotated with a set of senses. The WordNet 3.0 release has 117,798 nouns, 11,529 verbs, 22,479 adjectives, and 4,481 adverbs. The average noun has 1.23 senses, and the average verb has 2.16 senses. WordNet can be accessed on the Web or downloaded locally. Figure 18.1 shows the lemma entry for the noun and adjective *bass*.

The noun “*bass*” has 8 senses in WordNet.

1. *bass*<sup>1</sup> - (the lowest part of the musical range)
2. *bass*<sup>2</sup>, *bass part*<sup>1</sup> - (the lowest part in polyphonic music)
3. *bass*<sup>3</sup>, *basso*<sup>1</sup> - (an adult male singer with the lowest voice)
4. *sea bass*<sup>1</sup>, *bass*<sup>4</sup> - (the lean flesh of a saltwater fish of the family Serranidae)
5. *freshwater bass*<sup>1</sup>, *bass*<sup>5</sup> - (any of various North American freshwater fish with lean flesh (especially of the genus Micropterus))
6. *bass*<sup>6</sup>, *bass voice*<sup>1</sup>, *basso*<sup>2</sup> - (the lowest adult male singing voice)
7. *bass*<sup>7</sup> - (the member with the lowest range of a family of musical instruments)
8. *bass*<sup>8</sup> - (nontechnical name for any of numerous edible marine and freshwater spiny-finned fishes)

**Figure 18.1** A portion of the WordNet 3.0 entry for the noun *bass*.

**gloss** Note that there are eight senses for the noun and one for the adjective, each of which has a **gloss** (a dictionary-style definition), a list of synonyms for the sense, and sometimes also usage examples (shown for the adjective sense). WordNet doesn’t represent pronunciation, so doesn’t distinguish the pronunciation [b ae s] in **bass**<sup>4</sup>, **bass**<sup>5</sup>, and **bass**<sup>8</sup> from the other senses pronounced [b ey s].

**synset** The set of near-synonyms for a WordNet sense is called a **synset** (for **synonym set**); synsets are an important primitive in WordNet. The entry for *bass* includes synsets like {*bass*<sup>1</sup>, *deep*<sup>6</sup>}, or {*bass*<sup>6</sup>, *bass voice*<sup>1</sup>, *basso*<sup>2</sup>}. We can think of a synset as representing a concept of the type we discussed in Chapter 15. Thus, instead of representing concepts in logical terms, WordNet represents them as lists of the word senses that can be used to express the concept. Here’s another synset example:

{*chump*<sup>1</sup>, *fool*<sup>2</sup>, *gull*<sup>1</sup>, *mark*<sup>9</sup>, *patsy*<sup>1</sup>, *fall guy*<sup>1</sup>,  
*sucker*<sup>1</sup>, *soft touch*<sup>1</sup>, *mug*<sup>2</sup>}

The gloss of this synset describes it as:

**Gloss:** a person who is gullible and easy to take advantage of.

Glosses are properties of a synset, so that each sense included in the synset has the same gloss and can express this concept. Because they share glosses, synsets like this one are the fundamental unit associated with WordNet entries, and hence it is synsets, not wordforms, lemmas, or individual senses, that participate in most of the lexical sense relations in WordNet.

WordNet also labels each synset with a lexicographic category drawn from a semantic field for example the 26 categories for nouns shown in Fig. 18.2, as well

**supersense** as 15 for verbs (plus 2 for adjectives and 1 for adverbs). These categories are often called **supersenses**, because they act as coarse semantic categories or groupings of senses which can be useful when word senses are too fine-grained (Ciaramita and Johnson 2003, Ciaramita and Altun 2006). Supersenses have also been defined for adjectives (Tsvetkov et al., 2014) and prepositions (Schneider et al., 2018).

Category	Example	Category	Example	Category	Example
ACT	<i>service</i>	GROUP	<i>place</i>	PLANT	<i>tree</i>
ANIMAL	<i>dog</i>	LOCATION	<i>area</i>	POSSESSION	<i>price</i>
ARTIFACT	<i>car</i>	MOTIVE	<i>reason</i>	PROCESS	<i>process</i>
ATTRIBUTE	<i>quality</i>	NATURAL EVENT	<i>experience</i>	QUANTITY	<i>amount</i>
BODY	<i>hair</i>	NATURAL OBJECT	<i>flower</i>	RELATION	<i>portion</i>
COGNITION	<i>way</i>	OTHER	<i>stuff</i>	SHAPE	<i>square</i>
COMMUNICATION	<i>review</i>	PERSON	<i>people</i>	STATE	<i>pain</i>
FEELING	<i>discomfort</i>	PHENOMENON	<i>result</i>	SUBSTANCE	<i>oil</i>
FOOD	<i>food</i>			TIME	<i>day</i>

Figure 18.2 Supersenses: 26 lexicographic categories for nouns in WordNet.

### 18.3.1 Sense Relations in WordNet

WordNet represents all the kinds of sense relations discussed in the previous section, as illustrated in Fig. 18.3 and Fig. 18.4.

Relation	Also Called	Definition	Example
Hypernym	Superordinate	From concepts to superordinates	<i>breakfast</i> <sup>1</sup> → <i>meal</i> <sup>1</sup>
Hyponym	Subordinate	From concepts to subtypes	<i>meal</i> <sup>1</sup> → <i>lunch</i> <sup>1</sup>
Instance Hypernym	Instance	From instances to their concepts	<i>Austen</i> <sup>1</sup> → <i>author</i> <sup>1</sup>
Instance Hyponym	Has-Instance	From concepts to their instances	<i>composer</i> <sup>1</sup> → <i>Bach</i> <sup>1</sup>
Part Meronym	Has-Part	From wholes to parts	<i>table</i> <sup>2</sup> → <i>leg</i> <sup>3</sup>
Part Holonym	Part-Of	From parts to wholes	<i>course</i> <sup>7</sup> → <i>meal</i> <sup>1</sup>
Antonym		Semantic opposition between lemmas	<i>leader</i> <sup>1</sup> ⇔ <i>follower</i> <sup>1</sup>
Derivation		Lemmas w/same morphological root	<i>destruction</i> <sup>1</sup> ⇔ <i>destroy</i> <sup>1</sup>

Figure 18.3 Some of the noun relations in WordNet.

Relation	Definition	Example
Hypernym	From events to superordinate events	<i>fly</i> <sup>9</sup> → <i>travel</i> <sup>5</sup>
Troponym	From events to subordinate event	<i>walk</i> <sup>1</sup> → <i>stroll</i> <sup>1</sup>
Entails	From verbs (events) to the verbs (events) they entail	<i>snore</i> <sup>1</sup> → <i>sleep</i> <sup>1</sup>
Antonym	Semantic opposition between lemmas	<i>increase</i> <sup>1</sup> ⇔ <i>decrease</i> <sup>1</sup>

Figure 18.4 Some verb relations in WordNet.

For example WordNet represents hyponymy (page 358) by relating each synset to its immediately more general and more specific synsets through direct hypernym and hyponym relations. These relations can be followed to produce longer chains of more general or more specific synsets. Figure 18.5 shows hypernym chains for **bass**<sup>3</sup> and **bass**<sup>7</sup>; more general synsets are shown on successively indented lines.

WordNet has two kinds of taxonomic entities: classes and instances. An instance is an individual, a proper noun that is a unique entity. *San Francisco* is an instance of *city*, for example. But *city* is a class, a hyponym of *municipality* and eventually

```

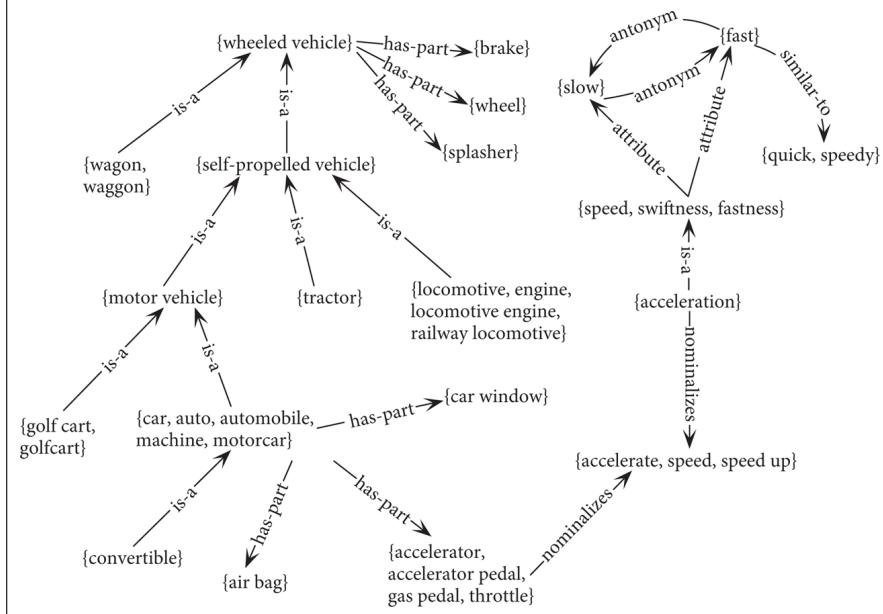
bass3, basso (an adult male singer with the lowest voice)
=> singer, vocalist, vocalizer, vocaliser
=> musician, instrumentalist, player
=> performer, performing artist
=> entertainer
=> person, individual, someone...
=> organism, being
=> living thing, animate thing,
=> whole, unit
=> object, physical object
=> physical entity
=> entity

bass7 (member with the lowest range of a family of instruments)
=> musical instrument, instrument
=> device
=> instrumentality, instrumentation
=> artifact, artefact
=> whole, unit
=> object, physical object
=> physical entity
=> entity

```

**Figure 18.5** Hyponymy chains for two separate senses of the lemma *bass*. Note that the chains are completely distinct, only converging at the very abstract level *whole, unit*.

of *location*. Fig. 18.6 shows a subgraph of WordNet demonstrating many of the relations.



**Figure 18.6** WordNet viewed as a graph. Figure from Navigli (2016).

## 18.4 Word Sense Disambiguation

word sense  
disambiguation  
WSD

The task of selecting the correct sense for a word is called **word sense disambiguation**, or **WSD**. WSD algorithms take as input a word in context and a fixed inventory of potential word senses and outputs the correct word sense in context.

### 18.4.1 WSD: The Task and Datasets

In this section we introduce the task setup for WSD, and then turn to algorithms. The inventory of sense tags depends on the task. For sense tagging in the context of translation from English to Spanish, the sense tag inventory for an English word might be the set of different Spanish translations. For automatic indexing of medical articles, the sense-tag inventory might be the set of MeSH (Medical Subject Headings) thesaurus entries. Or we can use the set of senses from a resource like WordNet, or supersenses if we want a coarser-grain set. Figure 18.4.1 shows some such examples for the word *bass*.

WordNet Sense	Spanish Translation	WordNet Supersense	Target Word in Context
bass <sup>4</sup>	lubina	FOOD	... fish as Pacific salmon and striped <b>bass</b> and...
bass <sup>7</sup>	bajo	ARTIFACT	... play <b>bass</b> because he doesn't have to solo...

Figure 18.7 Some possible sense tag inventories for *bass*.

**lexical sample** In some situations, we just need to disambiguate a small number of words. In such **lexical sample** tasks, we have a small pre-selected set of target words and an inventory of senses for each word from some lexicon. Since the set of words and the set of senses are small, simple supervised classification approaches work very well.

**all-words** More commonly, however, we have a harder problem in which we have to disambiguate all the words in some text. In this **all-words** task, the system is given an entire texts and a lexicon with an inventory of senses for each entry and we have to disambiguate every word in the text (or sometimes just every content word). The all-words task is similar to part-of-speech tagging, except with a much larger set of tags since each lemma has its own set. A consequence of this larger set of tags is data sparseness.

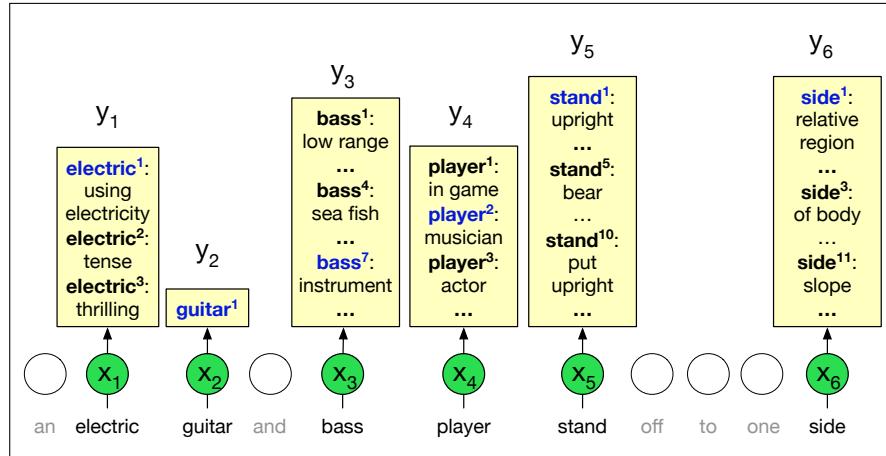
**semantic concordance** Supervised **all-word** disambiguation tasks are generally trained from a **semantic concordance**, a corpus in which each open-class word in each sentence is labeled with its word sense from a specific dictionary or thesaurus, most often WordNet. The SemCor corpus is a subset of the Brown Corpus consisting of over 226,036 words that were manually tagged with WordNet senses (Miller et al. 1993, Landes et al. 1998). Other sense-tagged corpora have been built for the SENSEVAL and **SemEval** WSD tasks, such as the SENSEVAL-3 Task 1 English all-words test data with 2282 annotations (Snyder and Palmer, 2004) or the SemEval-13 Task 12 datasets. Large semantic concordances are also available in other languages including Dutch (Vossen et al., 2011) and German (Henrich et al., 2012).

Here's an example from the SemCor corpus showing the WordNet sense numbers of the tagged words; we've used the standard WSD notation in which a subscript marks the part of speech (Navigli, 2009):

(18.12) You will find<sup>9</sup> that avocado<sub>n</sub><sup>1</sup> is<sub>v</sub><sup>1</sup> unlike<sub>j</sub><sup>1</sup> other<sub>j</sub><sup>1</sup> fruit<sub>n</sub><sup>1</sup> you have ever<sub>r</sub><sup>1</sup> tasted<sup>2</sup>

Given each noun, verb, adjective, or adverb word in the hand-labeled test set (say *fruit*), the SemCor-based WSD task is to choose the correct sense from the possible

senses in WordNet. For fruit this would mean choosing between the correct answer  $\text{fruit}_n^1$  (the ripened reproductive body of a seed plant), and the other two senses  $\text{fruit}_n^2$  (yield; an amount of a product) and  $\text{fruit}_n^3$  (the consequence of some effort or action). Fig. 18.8 sketches the task.



**Figure 18.8** The all-words WSD task, mapping from input words ( $x$ ) to WordNet senses ( $y$ ). Only nouns, verbs, adjectives, and adverbs are mapped, and note that some words (like *guitar* in the example) only have one sense in WordNet. Figure inspired by [Chaplot and Salakhutdinov \(2018\)](#).

WSD systems are typically evaluated intrinsically, by computing F1 against hand-labeled sense tags in a held-out set, such as the SemCor corpus or SemEval corpora discussed above.

A surprisingly strong baseline is simply to choose the **most frequent sense** for each word from the senses in a labeled corpus (Gale et al., 1992a). For WordNet, this corresponds to the first sense, since senses in WordNet are generally ordered from most frequent to least frequent based on their counts in the SemCor sense-tagged corpus. The most frequent sense baseline can be quite accurate, and is therefore often used as a default, to supply a word sense when a supervised algorithm has insufficient training data.

A second heuristic, called **one sense per discourse** is based on the work of Gale et al. (1992b), who noticed that a word appearing multiple times in a text or discourse often appears with the same sense. This heuristic seems to hold better for coarse-grained senses and particularly for cases of homonymy rather than polysemy, so isn't generally used as a baseline. Nonetheless various kinds of disambiguation tasks often include some such bias toward resolving an ambiguity the same way inside a discourse segment.

most frequent sense

one sense per discourse

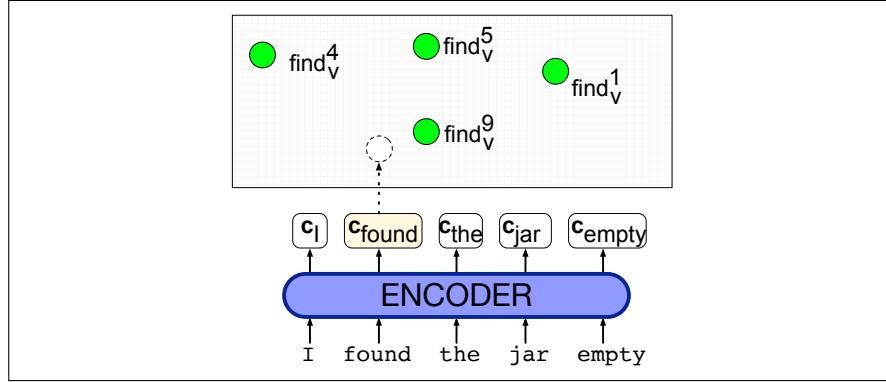
### 18.4.2 The WSD Algorithm: Contextual Embeddings

The best performing WSD algorithm is a simple 1-nearest-neighbor algorithm using contextual word embeddings, due to Melamud et al. (2016) and Peters et al. (2018). At training time we pass each sentence in the SemCore labeled dataset through any contextual embedding (e.g., BERT) resulting in a contextual embedding for each labeled token in SemCore. For each token  $c_i$  of each sense  $c$  of each word, we average the contextual representations to produce a contextual **sense embedding**  $\mathbf{v}_s$

for  $c$ :

$$\mathbf{v}_s = \frac{1}{n} \sum_i \mathbf{c}_i \quad (18.13)$$

At test time we similarly compute a contextual embedding  $\mathbf{t}$  for the target word, and choose its nearest neighbor sense (the sense with the highest cosine with  $\mathbf{t}$ ) from the training set. Fig. 18.9 illustrates the model.



**Figure 18.9** The nearest-neighbor algorithm for WSD. In green are the contextual embeddings precomputed for each sense of each word; here we just show a few of the senses for *find*. A contextual embedding is computed for the target word *found*, and then the nearest neighbor sense (in this case  $\text{find}_v^9$ ) would be chosen. Figure inspired by [Loureiro and Jorge \(2019\)](#).

What do we do for words we haven't seen in the sense-labeled training data? After all, the number of senses that appear in SemCor is only a small fraction of the words in WordNet. The simplest algorithm is to fall back to the Most Frequent Sense baseline, i.e. taking the first sense in WordNet. But that's not very satisfactory.

A more powerful approach, due to [Loureiro and Jorge \(2019\)](#), is to impute the missing sense embeddings, bottom-up, by using the WordNet taxonomy and supersenses. We get a sense embedding for any higher-level node in the WordNet taxonomy by averaging the embeddings of its children, thus computing the embedding for each synset as the average of its sense embeddings, the embedding for a hypernym as the average of its synset embeddings, and the lexicographic category (supersense) embedding as the average of the large set of synset embeddings with that category. More formally, for each missing sense in WordNet  $\hat{s} \in W$ , let the sense embeddings for the other members of its synset be  $S_{\hat{s}}$ , the hypernym-specific synset embeddings be  $H_{\hat{s}}$ , and the lexicographic (supersense-specific) synset embeddings be  $L_{\hat{s}}$ . We can then compute the sense embedding for  $\hat{s}$  as follows:

$$\text{if } |S_{\hat{s}}| > 0, \quad \mathbf{v}_{\hat{s}} = \frac{1}{|S_{\hat{s}}|} \sum \mathbf{v}_s, \forall \mathbf{v}_s \in S_{\hat{s}} \quad (18.14)$$

$$\text{else if } |H_{\hat{s}}| > 0, \quad \mathbf{v}_{\hat{s}} = \frac{1}{|H_{\hat{s}}|} \sum \mathbf{v}_{syn}, \forall \mathbf{v}_{syn} \in H_{\hat{s}} \quad (18.15)$$

$$\text{else if } |L_{\hat{s}}| > 0, \quad \mathbf{v}_{\hat{s}} = \frac{1}{|L_{\hat{s}}|} \sum \mathbf{v}_{syn}, \forall \mathbf{v}_{syn} \in L_{\hat{s}} \quad (18.16)$$

Since all of the supersenses have some labeled data in SemCor, the algorithm is guaranteed to have some representation for all possible senses by the time the algorithm backs off to the most general (supersense) information, although of course with a very coarse model.

## 18.5 Alternate WSD algorithms and Tasks

### 18.5.1 Feature-Based WSD

Feature-based algorithms for WSD are extremely simple and function almost as well as contextual language model algorithms. The best performing IMS algorithm ([Zhong and Ng, 2010](#)), augmented by embeddings ([Iacobacci et al. 2016](#), [Raganato et al. 2017b](#)), uses an SVM classifier to choose the sense for each input word with the following simple features of the surrounding words:

**collocation**

- part-of-speech tags (for a window of 3 words on each side, stopping at sentence boundaries)
- **collocation** features of words or n-grams of lengths 1, 2, 3) at a particular location in a window of 3 word on each side (i.e., exactly one word to the right, or the two words starting 3 words to the left, and so on).
- weighted average of embeddings (of all words in a window of 10 words on each side, weighted exponentially by distance)

Consider the ambiguous word *bass* in the following WSJ sentence:

(18.17) An electric guitar and **bass** player stand off to one side,

If we used a small 2-word window, a standard feature vector might include parts-of-speech, unigram and bigram collocation features, and a weighted sum  $g$  of embeddings, that is:

$$[w_{i-2}, \text{POS}_{i-2}, w_{i-1}, \text{POS}_{i-1}, w_{i+1}, \text{POS}_{i+1}, w_{i+2}, \text{POS}_{i+2}, w_{i-2}^{i-1}, \\ w_{i+1}^{i+2}, g(E(w_{i-2}), E(w_{i-1}), E(w_{i+1}), E(w_{i+2}))] \quad (18.18)$$

would yield the following vector:

[guitar, NN, and, CC, player, NN, stand, VB, and, guitar, player stand, g(E(guitar), E(and), E(player), E(stand))]

### 18.5.2 The Lesk Algorithm as WSD Baseline

**knowledge-based**

Generating sense labeled corpora like SemCor is quite difficult and expensive. An alternative class of WSD algorithms, **knowledge-based** algorithms, rely solely on WordNet or other such resources and don't require labeled data. While supervised algorithms generally work better, knowledge-based methods can be used in languages or domains where thesauruses or dictionaries but not sense labeled corpora are available.

**Lesk algorithm**

The **Lesk algorithm** is the oldest and most powerful knowledge-based WSD method, and is a useful baseline. Lesk is really a family of algorithms that choose the sense whose dictionary gloss or definition shares the most words with the target word's neighborhood. Figure 18.10 shows the simplest version of the algorithm, often called the **Simplified Lesk** algorithm ([Kilgarriff and Rosenzweig, 2000](#)).

**Simplified Lesk**

As an example of the Lesk algorithm at work, consider disambiguating the word *bank* in the following context:

(18.19) The **bank** can guarantee deposits will eventually cover future tuition costs because it invests in adjustable-rate mortgage securities.

given the following two WordNet senses:

```

function SIMPLIFIED LESK(word, sentence) returns best sense of word
    best-sense  $\leftarrow$  most frequent sense for word
    max-overlap  $\leftarrow$  0
    context  $\leftarrow$  set of words in sentence
    for each sense in senses of word do
        signature  $\leftarrow$  set of words in the gloss and examples of sense
        overlap  $\leftarrow$  COMPUTEOVERLAP(signature, context)
        if overlap  $>$  max-overlap then
            max-overlap  $\leftarrow$  overlap
            best-sense  $\leftarrow$  sense
        end
    return(best-sense)

```

**Figure 18.10** The Simplified Lesk algorithm. The COMPUTEOVERLAP function returns the number of words in common between two sets, ignoring function words or other words on a stop list. The original Lesk algorithm defines the *context* in a more complex way.

bank <sup>1</sup>	Gloss:	a financial institution that accepts deposits and channels the money into lending activities
	Examples:	“he cashed a check at the bank”, “that bank holds the mortgage on my home”
bank <sup>2</sup>	Gloss:	sloping land (especially the slope beside a body of water)
	Examples:	“they pulled the canoe up on the bank”, “he sat on the bank of the river and watched the currents”

Sense **bank<sup>1</sup>** has two non-stopwords overlapping with the context in (18.19): *deposits* and *mortgage*, while sense **bank<sup>2</sup>** has zero words, so sense **bank<sup>1</sup>** is chosen.

There are many obvious extensions to Simplified Lesk, such as weighing the overlapping words by **IDF** (inverse document frequency) Chapter 6 to downweight frequent words like function words; best performing is to use word embedding cosine instead of word overlap to compute the similarity between the definition and the context (Basile et al., 2014). Modern neural extensions of Lesk use the definitions to compute sense embeddings that can be directly used instead of SemCor-training embeddings (Kumar et al. 2019, Luo et al. 2018a, Luo et al. 2018b).

### 18.5.3 Word-in-Context Evaluation

Word Sense Disambiguation is a much more fine-grained evaluation of word meaning than the context-free word similarity tasks we described in Chapter 6. Recall that tasks like LexSim-999 require systems to match human judgments on the context-free similarity between two words (how similar is *cup* to *mug*?). We can think of WSD as a kind of contextualized similarity task, since our goal is to be able to distinguish the meaning of a word like *bass* in one context (playing music) from another context (fishing).

**word-in-context**

Somewhere in between lies the **word-in-context** task. Here the system is given two sentences, each with the same target word but in a different sentential context. The system must decide whether the target words are used in the **same sense** in the two sentences or in a **different sense**. Fig. 18.11 shows sample pairs from the **WiC** dataset of Pilehvar and Camacho-Collados (2019).

The WiC sentences are mainly taken from the example usages for senses in WordNet. But WordNet senses are very fine-grained. For this reason tasks like

**WiC**

- 
- F There's a lot of trash on the **bed** of the river —  
     I keep a glass of water next to my **bed** when I sleep
- F **Justify** the margins — The end **justifies** the means
- T Air pollution — Open a window and let in some **air**
- T The expanded **window** will give us time to catch the thieves —  
     You have a two-hour **window** of clear weather to finish working on the lawn
- 

**Figure 18.11** Positive (T) and negative (F) pairs from the WiC dataset ([Pilehvar and Camacho-Collados, 2019](#)).

word-in-context first cluster the word senses into coarser clusters, so that the two sentential contexts for the target word are marked as T if the two senses are in the same cluster. WiC clusters all pairs of senses if they are first degree connections in the WordNet semantic graph, including sister senses, or if they belong to the same supersense; we point to other sense clustering algorithms at the end of the chapter.

The baseline algorithm to solve the WIC task uses contextual embeddings like BERT with a simple thresholded cosine. We first compute the contextual embeddings for the target word in each of the two sentences, and then compute the cosine between them. If it's above a threshold tuned on a devset we respond true (the two senses are the same) else we respond false.

#### 18.5.4 Wikipedia as a source of training data

Datasets other than SemCor have been used for all-words WSD. One important direction is to use Wikipedia as a source of sense-labeled data. When a concept is mentioned in a Wikipedia article, the article text may contain an explicit link to the concept's Wikipedia page, which is named by a unique identifier. This link can be used as a sense annotation. For example, the ambiguous word *bar* is linked to a different Wikipedia article depending on its meaning in context, including the page BAR (LAW), the page BAR (MUSIC), and so on, as in the following Wikipedia examples ([Mihalcea, 2007](#)).

In 1834, Sumner was admitted to the [[**bar (law)**|**bar**]] at the age of twenty-three, and entered private practice in Boston.

It is danced in 3/4 time (like most waltzes), with the couple turning approx. 180 degrees every [[**bar (music)**|**bar**]].

Jenga is a popular beer in the [[**bar (establishment)**|**bar**]]s of Thailand.

These sentences can then be added to the training data for a supervised system. In order to use Wikipedia in this way, however, it is necessary to map from Wikipedia concepts to whatever inventory of senses is relevant for the WSD application. Automatic algorithms that map from Wikipedia to WordNet, for example, involve finding the WordNet sense that has the greatest lexical overlap with the Wikipedia sense, by comparing the vector of words in the WordNet synset, gloss, and related senses with the vector of words in the Wikipedia page title, outgoing links, and page category ([Ponzetto and Navigli, 2010](#)). The resulting mapping has been used to create BabelNet, a large sense-annotated resource ([Navigli and Ponzetto, 2012](#)).

## 18.6 Using Thesauruses to Improve Embeddings

Thesauruses have also been used to improve both static and contextual word embeddings. For example, static word embeddings have a problem with **antonyms**. A word like *expensive* is often very similar in embedding cosine to its antonym like *cheap*. Antonymy information from thesauruses can help solve this problem; Fig. 18.12 shows nearest neighbors to some target words in GloVe, and the improvement after one such method.

Before counterfitting				After counterfitting		
east	west	north	south	eastward	easterly	easterly
expensive	pricey	cheaper	costly	costly	pricy	overpriced
British	American	Australian	Britain	Brits	London	BBC

**Figure 18.12** The nearest neighbors in GloVe to *east*, *expensive*, and *British* include antonyms like *west*. The right side showing the improvement in GloVe nearest neighbors after the counterfitting method (Mrkšić et al., 2016).

There are two families of solutions. The first requires retraining: we modify the embedding training to incorporate thesaurus relations like synonymy, antonym, or supersenses. This can be done by modifying the static embedding loss function for word2vec (Yu and Dredze 2014, Nguyen et al. 2016) or by modifying contextual embedding training (Levine et al. 2020, Lauscher et al. 2019).

retrofitting

The second, for static embeddings, is more light-weight; after the embeddings have been trained we learn a second mapping based on a thesaurus that shifts the embeddings of words in such a way that synonyms (according to the thesaurus) are pushed closer and antonyms further apart. Such methods are called **retrofitting** (Faruqui et al. 2015, Lengerich et al. 2018) or **counterfitting** (Mrkšić et al., 2016).

## 18.7 Word Sense Induction

word sense induction

It is expensive and difficult to build large corpora in which each word is labeled for its word sense. For this reason, an unsupervised approach to sense disambiguation, often called **word sense induction** or **WSI**, is an important direction. In unsupervised approaches, we don't use human-defined word senses. Instead, the set of “senses” of each word is created automatically from the instances of each word in the training set.

Most algorithms for word sense induction follow the early work of Schütze (Schütze 1992b, Schütze 1998) in using some sort of clustering over word embeddings. In training, we use three steps:

1. For each token  $w_i$  of word  $w$  in a corpus, compute a context vector  $\mathbf{c}$ .
2. Use a **clustering algorithm** to **cluster** these word-token context vectors  $\mathbf{c}$  into a predefined number of groups or clusters. Each cluster defines a sense of  $w$ .
3. Compute the **vector centroid** of each cluster. Each vector centroid  $\mathbf{s}_j$  is a **sense vector** representing that sense of  $w$ .

Since this is an unsupervised algorithm, we don't have names for each of these “senses” of  $w$ ; we just refer to the  $j$ th sense of  $w$ .

To disambiguate a particular token  $t$  of  $w$  we again have three steps:

1. Compute a context vector  $\mathbf{c}$  for  $t$ .
2. Retrieve all sense vectors  $s_j$  for  $w$ .
3. Assign  $t$  to the sense represented by the sense vector  $s_j$  that is closest to  $t$ .

All we need is a clustering algorithm and a distance metric between vectors. Clustering is a well-studied problem with a wide number of standard algorithms that can be applied to inputs structured as vectors of numerical values (Duda and Hart, 1973). A frequently used technique in language applications is known as **agglomerative clustering**. In this technique, each of the  $N$  training instances is initially assigned to its own cluster. New clusters are then formed in a bottom-up fashion by the successive merging of the two clusters that are most similar. This process continues until either a specified number of clusters is reached, or some global goodness measure among the clusters is achieved. In cases in which the number of training instances makes this method too expensive, random sampling can be used on the original training set to achieve similar results.

How can we evaluate unsupervised sense disambiguation approaches? As usual, the best way is to do extrinsic evaluation embedded in some end-to-end system; one example used in a **SemEval** bakeoff is to improve search result clustering and diversification (Navigli and Vannella, 2013). Intrinsic evaluation requires a way to map the automatically derived sense classes into a hand-labeled gold-standard set so that we can compare a hand-labeled test set with a set labeled by our unsupervised classifier. Various such metrics have been tested, for example in the SemEval tasks (Manandhar et al. 2010, Navigli and Vannella 2013, Jurgens and Klapaftis 2013), including cluster overlap metrics, or methods that map each sense cluster to a pre-defined sense by choosing the sense that (in some training set) has the most overlap with the cluster. However it is fair to say that no evaluation metric for this task has yet become standard.

**agglomerative clustering**

## 18.8 Summary

This chapter has covered a wide range of issues concerning the meanings associated with lexical items. The following are among the highlights:

- A **word sense** is the locus of word meaning; definitions and meaning relations are defined at the level of the word sense rather than wordforms.
- Many words are **polysemous**, having many senses.
- Relations between senses include **synonymy**, **antonymy**, **meronymy**, and taxonomic relations **hyponymy** and **hypernymy**.
- **WordNet** is a large database of lexical relations for English, and WordNets exist for a variety of languages.
- **Word-sense disambiguation (WSD)** is the task of determining the correct sense of a word in context. Supervised approaches make use of a corpus of sentences in which individual words (**lexical sample task**) or all words (**all-words task**) are hand-labeled with senses from a resource like WordNet. SemCor is the largest corpus with WordNet-labeled senses.
- The standard supervised algorithm for WSD is nearest neighbors with contextual embeddings.
- Feature-based algorithms using parts of speech and embeddings of words in the context of the target word also work well.

- An important baseline for WSD is the **most frequent sense**, equivalent, in WordNet, to **take the first sense**.
- Another baseline is a **knowledge-based** WSD algorithm called the **Lesk algorithm** which chooses the sense whose dictionary definition shares the most words with the target word's neighborhood.
- **Word sense induction** is the task of learning word senses unsupervised.

## Bibliographical and Historical Notes

Word sense disambiguation traces its roots to some of the earliest applications of digital computers. The insight that underlies modern algorithms for word sense disambiguation was first articulated by [Weaver \(1955\)](#) in the context of machine translation:

If one examines the words in a book, one at a time as through an opaque mask with a hole in it one word wide, then it is obviously impossible to determine, one at a time, the meaning of the words. [...] But if one lengthens the slit in the opaque mask, until one can see not only the central word in question but also say  $N$  words on either side, then if  $N$  is large enough one can unambiguously decide the meaning of the central word. [...] The practical question is : “What minimum value of  $N$  will, at least in a tolerable fraction of cases, lead to the correct choice of meaning for the central word?”

Other notions first proposed in this early period include the use of a thesaurus for disambiguation ([Masterman, 1957](#)), supervised training of Bayesian models for disambiguation ([Madhu and Lytel, 1965](#)), and the use of clustering in word sense analysis ([Sparck Jones, 1986](#)).

Much disambiguation work was conducted within the context of early AI-oriented natural language processing systems. [Quillian \(1968\)](#) and [Quillian \(1969\)](#) proposed a graph-based approach to language understanding, in which the definition of a word was represented by a network of word nodes connected by syntactic and semantic relations, and sense disambiguation by finding the shortest path between senses in the graph. [Simmons \(1973\)](#) is another influential early semantic network approach. Wilks proposed one of the earliest non-discrete models with his *Preference Semantics* ([Wilks 1975c](#), [Wilks 1975b](#), [Wilks 1975a](#)), and [Small and Rieger \(1982\)](#) and [Riesbeck \(1975\)](#) proposed understanding systems based on modeling rich procedural information for each word. Hirst's ABSITY system ([Hirst and Charniak 1982](#), [Hirst 1987](#), [Hirst 1988](#)), which used a technique called marker passing based on semantic networks, represents the most advanced system of this type. As with these largely symbolic approaches, early neural network (at the time called ‘connectionist’) approaches to word sense disambiguation relied on small lexicons with hand-coded representations ([Cottrell 1985](#), [Kawamoto 1988](#)).

The earliest implementation of a robust empirical approach to sense disambiguation is due to [Kelly and Stone \(1975\)](#), who directed a team that hand-crafted a set of disambiguation rules for 1790 ambiguous English words. [Lesk \(1986\)](#) was the first to use a machine-readable dictionary for word sense disambiguation. [Fellbaum \(1998\)](#) collects early work on WordNet. Early work using dictionaries as lexical re-

sources include Amsler's (1981) use of the Merriam Webster dictionary and Longman's *Dictionary of Contemporary English* (Boguraev and Briscoe, 1989).

Supervised approaches to disambiguation began with the use of decision trees by Black (1988). In addition to the IMS and contextual-embedding based methods for supervised WSD, recent supervised algorithms includes encoder-decoder models (Raganato et al., 2017a).

The need for large amounts of annotated text in supervised methods led early on to investigations into the use of bootstrapping methods (Hearst 1991, Yarowsky 1995). For example the semi-supervised algorithm of Diab and Resnik (2002) is based on aligned parallel corpora in two languages. For example, the fact that the French word *catastrophe* might be translated as English *disaster* in one instance and *tragedy* in another instance can be used to disambiguate the senses of the two English words (i.e., to choose senses of *disaster* and *tragedy* that are similar).

**coarse senses**

The earliest use of clustering in the study of word senses was by Sparck Jones (1986); Pedersen and Bruce (1997), Schütze (1997b), and Schütze (1998) applied distributional methods. Clustering word senses into **coarse senses** has also been used to address the problem of dictionary senses being too fine-grained (Section 18.5.3) (Dolan 1994, Chen and Chang 1998, Mihalcea and Moldovan 2001, Agirre and de Lacalle 2003, Palmer et al. 2004, Navigli 2006, Snow et al. 2007, Pilehvar et al. 2013). Corpora with clustered word senses for training supervised clustering algorithms include Palmer et al. (2006) and **OntoNotes** (Hovy et al., 2006).

**OntoNotes**

See Pustejovsky (1995), Pustejovsky and Boguraev (1996), Martin (1986), and Copestake and Briscoe (1995), inter alia, for computational approaches to the representation of polysemy. Pustejovsky's theory of the **generative lexicon**, and in particular his theory of the **qualia structure** of words, is a way of accounting for the dynamic systematic polysemy of words in context.

Historical overviews of WSD include Agirre and Edmonds (2006) and Navigli (2009).

## Exercises

- 18.1 Collect a small corpus of example sentences of varying lengths from any newspaper or magazine. Using WordNet or any standard dictionary, determine how many senses there are for each of the open-class words in each sentence. How many distinct combinations of senses are there for each sentence? How does this number seem to vary with sentence length?
- 18.2 Using WordNet or a standard reference dictionary, tag each open-class word in your corpus with its correct tag. Was choosing the correct sense always a straightforward task? Report on any difficulties you encountered.
- 18.3 Using your favorite dictionary, simulate the original Lesk word overlap disambiguation algorithm described on page 367 on the phrase *Time flies like an arrow*. Assume that the words are to be disambiguated one at a time, from left to right, and that the results from earlier decisions are used later in the process.
- 18.4 Build an implementation of your solution to the previous exercise. Using WordNet, implement the original Lesk word overlap disambiguation algorithm described on page 367 on the phrase *Time flies like an arrow*.

Sometime between the 7th and 4th centuries BCE, the Indian grammarian Pāṇini<sup>1</sup> wrote a famous treatise on Sanskrit grammar, the *Aṣṭādhyāyī* ('8 books'), a treatise that has been called "one of the greatest monuments of human intelligence" (Bloomfield, 1933, 11). The work describes the linguistics of the Sanskrit language in the form of 3959 sutras, each very efficiently (since it had to be memorized!) expressing part of a formal rule system that brilliantly prefigured modern mechanisms of formal language theory (Penn and Kiparsky, 2012). One set of rules, relevant to our discussion in this chapter, describes the **kārakas**, semantic relationships between a verb and noun arguments, roles like *agent*, *instrument*, or *destination*. Pāṇini's work was the earliest we know of that tried to understand the linguistic realization of events and their participants. This task of understanding how participants relate to events—being able to answer the question “Who did what to whom” (and perhaps also “when and where”)—is a central question of natural language understanding.



Let's move forward 2.5 millennia to the present and consider the very mundane goal of understanding text about a purchase of stock by XYZ Corporation. This purchasing event and its participants can be described by a wide variety of surface forms. The event can be described by a verb (*sold*, *bought*) or a noun (*purchase*), and XYZ Corp can be the syntactic subject (of *bought*), the indirect object (of *sold*), or in a genitive or noun compound relation (with the noun *purchase*) despite having notionally the same role in all of them:

- XYZ corporation bought the stock.
- They sold the stock to XYZ corporation.
- The stock was bought by XYZ corporation.
- The purchase of the stock by XYZ corporation...
- The stock purchase by XYZ corporation...

In this chapter we introduce a level of representation that captures the commonality between these sentences: there was a purchase event, the participants were XYZ Corp and some stock, and XYZ Corp was the buyer. These shallow semantic representations, **semantic roles**, express the role that arguments of a predicate take in the event, codified in databases like PropBank and FrameNet. We'll introduce **semantic role labeling**, the task of assigning roles to spans in sentences, and **selectional restrictions**, the preferences that predicates express about their arguments, such as the fact that the theme of *eat* is generally something edible.

<sup>1</sup> Figure shows a birch bark manuscript from Kashmir of the Rupavatra, a grammatical textbook based on the Sanskrit grammar of Panini. Image from the Wellcome Collection.

## 19.1 Semantic Roles

Consider how in Chapter 15 we represented the meaning of arguments for sentences like these:

- (19.1) Sasha broke the window.
- (19.2) Pat opened the door.

A neo-Davidsonian event representation of these two sentences would be

$$\begin{aligned} \exists e, x, y \text{ } & \text{ } \textit{Breaking}(e) \wedge \textit{Breaker}(e, \textit{Sasha}) \\ & \wedge \textit{BrokenThing}(e, y) \wedge \textit{Window}(y) \\ \exists e, x, y \text{ } & \text{ } \textit{Opening}(e) \wedge \textit{Opener}(e, \textit{Pat}) \\ & \wedge \textit{OpenedThing}(e, y) \wedge \textit{Door}(y) \end{aligned}$$

**deep roles** In this representation, the roles of the subjects of the verbs *break* and *open* are *Breaker* and *Opener* respectively. These **deep roles** are specific to each event; *Breaking* events have *Breakers*, *Opening* events have *Openers*, and so on.

If we are going to be able to answer questions, perform inferences, or do any further kinds of natural language understanding of these events, we'll need to know a little more about the semantics of these arguments. *Breakers* and *Openers* have something in common. They are both volitional actors, often animate, and they have direct causal responsibility for their events.

**thematic roles** **agents** **THEMATIC ROLES** are a way to capture this semantic commonality between *Breakers* and *Openers*. We say that the subjects of both these verbs are **agents**. Thus, **AGENT** is the thematic role that represents an abstract idea such as volitional causation. Similarly, the direct objects of both these verbs, the *BrokenThing* and *OpenedThing*, are both prototypically inanimate objects that are affected in some way by the action. **THEME** The semantic role for these participants is **theme**.

Thematic Role	Definition
AGENT	The volitional causer of an event
EXPERIENCER	The experiencer of an event
FORCE	The non-volitional causer of the event
THEME	The participant most directly affected by an event
RESULT	The end product of an event
CONTENT	The proposition or content of a propositional event
INSTRUMENT	An instrument used in an event
BENEFICIARY	The beneficiary of an event
SOURCE	The origin of the object of a transfer event
GOAL	The destination of an object of a transfer event

**Figure 19.1** Some commonly used thematic roles with their definitions.

**semantic roles** Although thematic roles are one of the oldest linguistic models, as we saw above, their modern formulation is due to [Fillmore \(1968\)](#) and [Gruber \(1965\)](#). Although there is no universally agreed-upon set of roles, Figs. 19.1 and 19.2 list some thematic roles that have been used in various computational papers, together with rough definitions and examples. Most thematic role sets have about a dozen roles, but we'll see sets with smaller numbers of roles with even more abstract meanings, and sets with very large numbers of roles that are specific to situations. We'll use the general term **semantic roles** for all sets of roles, whether small or large.

Thematic Role	Example
AGENT	<i>The waiter</i> spilled the soup.
EXPERIENCER	<i>John</i> has a headache.
FORCE	<i>The wind</i> blows debris from the mall into our yards.
THEME	Only after Benjamin Franklin broke <i>the ice</i> ...
RESULT	The city built a <i>regulation-size baseball diamond</i> ...
CONTENT	Mona asked “ <i>You met Mary Ann at a supermarket?</i> ”
INSTRUMENT	He poached catfish, stunning them with a <i>shocking device</i> ...
BENEFICIARY	Whenever Ann Callahan makes hotel reservations <i>for her boss</i> ...
SOURCE	I flew in <i>from Boston</i> .
GOAL	I drove <i>to Portland</i> .

**Figure 19.2** Some prototypical examples of various thematic roles.

## 19.2 Diathesis Alternations

The main reason computational systems use semantic roles is to act as a shallow meaning representation that can let us make simple inferences that aren't possible from the pure surface string of words, or even from the parse tree. To extend the earlier examples, if a document says that *Company A acquired Company B*, we'd like to know that this answers the query *Was Company B acquired?* despite the fact that the two sentences have very different surface syntax. Similarly, this shallow semantics might act as a useful intermediate language in machine translation.

Semantic roles thus help generalize over different surface realizations of predicate arguments. For example, while the AGENT is often realized as the subject of the sentence, in other cases the THEME can be the subject. Consider these possible realizations of the thematic arguments of the verb *break*:

- (19.3) *John*    *broke the window.*  
            AGENT            THEME
- (19.4) *John*    *broke the window with a rock.*  
            AGENT            THEME            INSTRUMENT
- (19.5) *The rock*    *broke the window.*  
            INSTRUMENT        THEME
- (19.6) *The window*    *broke.*  
            THEME
- (19.7) *The window*    *was broken by John.*  
            THEME                    AGENT

thematic grid  
case frame

These examples suggest that *break* has (at least) the possible arguments AGENT, THEME, and INSTRUMENT. The set of thematic role arguments taken by a verb is often called the **thematic grid**,  $\theta$ -grid, or **case frame**. We can see that there are (among others) the following possibilities for the realization of these arguments of *break*:

AGENT/Subject, THEME/Object  
AGENT/Subject, THEME/Object, INSTRUMENT/PP with  
INSTRUMENT/Subject, THEME/Object  
THEME/Subject

It turns out that many verbs allow their thematic roles to be realized in various syntactic positions. For example, verbs like *give* can realize the THEME and GOAL arguments in two different ways:

- (19.8) a. *Doris gave the book to Cary.*

AGENT            THEME            GOAL

- b. *Doris gave Cary the book.*

AGENT            GOAL THEME

verb  
alternation  
dative  
alternation

These multiple argument structure realizations (the fact that *break* can take AGENT, INSTRUMENT, or THEME as subject, and *give* can realize its THEME and GOAL in either order) are called **verb alternations** or **diathesis alternations**. The alternation we showed above for *give*, the **dative alternation**, seems to occur with particular semantic classes of verbs, including “verbs of future having” (*advance, allocate, offer, owe*), “send verbs” (*forward, hand, mail*), “verbs of throwing” (*kick, pass, throw*), and so on. [Levin \(1993\)](#) lists for 3100 English verbs the semantic classes to which they belong (47 high-level classes, divided into 193 more specific classes) and the various alternations in which they participate. These lists of verb classes have been incorporated into the online resource VerbNet ([Kipper et al., 2000](#)), which links each verb to both WordNet and FrameNet entries.

## 19.3 Semantic Roles: Problems with Thematic Roles

Representing meaning at the thematic role level seems like it should be useful in dealing with complications like diathesis alternations. Yet it has proved quite difficult to come up with a standard set of roles, and equally difficult to produce a formal definition of roles like AGENT, THEME, or INSTRUMENT.

For example, researchers attempting to define role sets often find they need to fragment a role like AGENT or THEME into many specific roles. [Levin and Rappaport Hovav \(2005\)](#) summarize a number of such cases, such as the fact there seem to be at least two kinds of INSTRUMENTS, *intermediary* instruments that can appear as subjects and *enabling* instruments that cannot:

- (19.9) a. The cook opened the jar with the new gadget.  
b. The new gadget opened the jar.

- (19.10) a. Shelly ate the sliced banana with a fork.  
b. \*The fork ate the sliced banana.

In addition to the fragmentation problem, there are cases in which we’d like to reason about and generalize across semantic roles, but the finite discrete lists of roles don’t let us do this.

Finally, it has proved difficult to formally define the thematic roles. Consider the AGENT role; most cases of AGENTS are animate, volitional, sentient, causal, but any individual noun phrase might not exhibit all of these properties.

semantic role

These problems have led to alternative **semantic role** models that use either many fewer or many more roles.

proto-agent  
proto-patient

The first of these options is to define **generalized semantic roles** that abstract over the specific thematic roles. For example, PROTO-AGENT and PROTO-PATIENT are generalized roles that express roughly agent-like and roughly patient-like meanings. These roles are defined, not by necessary and sufficient conditions, but rather by a set of heuristic features that accompany more agent-like or more patient-like meanings. Thus, the more an argument displays agent-like properties (being volitionally involved in the event, causing an event or a change of state in another participant, being sentient or intentionally involved, moving) the greater the likelihood

that the argument can be labeled a PROTO-AGENT. The more patient-like the properties (undergoing change of state, causally affected by another participant, stationary relative to other participants, etc.), the greater the likelihood that the argument can be labeled a PROTO-PATIENT.

The second direction is instead to define semantic roles that are specific to a particular verb or a particular group of semantically related verbs or nouns.

In the next two sections we describe two commonly used lexical resources that make use of these alternative versions of semantic roles. **PropBank** uses both proto-roles and verb-specific semantic roles. **FrameNet** uses semantic roles that are specific to a general semantic idea called a *frame*.

## 19.4 The Proposition Bank

### PropBank

The **Proposition Bank**, generally referred to as **PropBank**, is a resource of sentences annotated with semantic roles. The English PropBank labels all the sentences in the Penn TreeBank; the Chinese PropBank labels sentences in the Penn Chinese TreeBank. Because of the difficulty of defining a universal set of thematic roles, the semantic roles in PropBank are defined with respect to an individual verb sense. Each sense of each verb thus has a specific set of roles, which are given only numbers rather than names: **Arg0**, **Arg1**, **Arg2**, and so on. In general, **Arg0** represents the PROTO-AGENT, and **Arg1**, the PROTO-PATIENT. The semantics of the other roles are less consistent, often being defined specifically for each verb. Nonetheless there are some generalization; the **Arg2** is often the benefactive, instrument, attribute, or end state, the **Arg3** the start point, benefactive, instrument, or attribute, and the **Arg4** the end point.

Here are some slightly simplified PropBank entries for one sense each of the verbs *agree* and *fall*. Such PropBank entries are called **frame files**; note that the definitions in the frame file for each role (“Other entity agreeing”, “Extent, amount fallen”) are informal glosses intended to be read by humans, rather than being formal definitions.

### (19.11) **agree.01**

- Arg0: Agreer
- Arg1: Proposition
- Arg2: Other entity agreeing

- Ex1: [Arg0 The group] *agreed* [Arg1 it wouldn't make an offer].
- Ex2: [ArgM-TMP Usually] [Arg0 John] *agrees* [Arg2 with Mary]  
[Arg1 on everything].

### (19.12) **fall.01**

- Arg1: Logical subject, patient, thing falling
- Arg2: Extent, amount fallen
- Arg3: start point
- Arg4: end point, end state of arg1
- Ex1: [Arg1 Sales] *fell* [Arg4 to \$25 million] [Arg3 from \$27 million].
- Ex2: [Arg1 The average junk bond] *fell* [Arg2 by 4.2%].

Note that there is no Arg0 role for *fall*, because the normal subject of *fall* is a PROTO-PATIENT.

The PropBank semantic roles can be useful in recovering shallow semantic information about verbal arguments. Consider the verb *increase*:

- (19.13) **increase.01** “go up incrementally”

Arg0: causer of increase  
 Arg1: thing increasing  
 Arg2: amount increased by, EXT, or MNR  
 Arg3: start point  
 Arg4: end point

A PropBank semantic role labeling would allow us to infer the commonality in the event structures of the following three examples, that is, that in each case *Big Fruit Co.* is the AGENT and *the price of bananas* is the THEME, despite the differing surface forms.

- (19.14) [Arg0 Big Fruit Co.] increased [Arg1 the price of bananas].

- (19.15) [Arg1 The price of bananas] was increased again [Arg0 by Big Fruit Co.]

- (19.16) [Arg1 The price of bananas] increased [Arg2 5%].

PropBank also has a number of non-numbered arguments called **ArgMs**, (ArgM-TMP, ArgM-LOC, etc.) which represent modification or adjunct meanings. These are relatively stable across predicates, so aren’t listed with each frame file. Data labeled with these modifiers can be helpful in training systems to detect temporal, location, or directional modification across predicates. Some of the ArgM’s include:

<b>TMP</b>	when?	yesterday evening, now
<b>LOC</b>	where?	at the museum, in San Francisco
<b>DIR</b>	where to/from?	down, to Bangkok
<b>MNR</b>	how?	clearly, with much enthusiasm
<b>PRP/CAU</b>	why?	because ... , in response to the ruling
<b>REC</b>		themselves, each other
<b>ADV</b>	miscellaneous	
<b>PRD</b>	secondary predication	...ate the meat raw

#### NomBank

While PropBank focuses on verbs, a related project, **NomBank** (Meyers et al., 2004) adds annotations to noun predicates. For example the noun *agreement* in *Apple’s agreement with IBM* would be labeled with Apple as the Arg0 and IBM as the Arg2. This allows semantic role labelers to assign labels to arguments of both verbal and nominal predicates.

## 19.5 FrameNet

While making inferences about the semantic commonalities across different sentences with *increase* is useful, it would be even more useful if we could make such inferences in many more situations, across different verbs, and also between verbs and nouns. For example, we’d like to extract the similarity among these three sentences:

- (19.17) [Arg1 The price of bananas] increased [Arg2 5%].

- (19.18) [Arg1 The price of bananas] rose [Arg2 5%].

- (19.19) There has been a [Arg2 5%] rise [Arg1 in the price of bananas].

Note that the second example uses the different verb *rise*, and the third example uses the noun rather than the verb *rise*. We’d like a system to recognize that *the*

**FrameNet**

*price of bananas* is what went up, and that 5% is the amount it went up, no matter whether the 5% appears as the object of the verb *increased* or as a nominal modifier of the noun *rise*.

The **FrameNet** project is another semantic-role-labeling project that attempts to address just these kinds of problems (Baker et al. 1998, Fillmore et al. 2003, Fillmore and Baker 2009, Ruppenhofer et al. 2016). Whereas roles in the PropBank project are specific to an individual verb, roles in the FrameNet project are specific to a **frame**.

What is a frame? Consider the following set of words:

*reservation, flight, travel, buy, price, cost, fare, rates, meal, plane*

There are many individual lexical relations of hyponymy, synonymy, and so on between many of the words in this list. The resulting set of relations does not, however, add up to a complete account of how these words are related. They are clearly all defined with respect to a coherent chunk of common-sense background information concerning air travel.

**frame**

We call the holistic background knowledge that unites these words a **frame** (Fillmore, 1985). The idea that groups of words are defined with respect to some background information is widespread in artificial intelligence and cognitive science, where besides **frame** we see related works like a **model** (Johnson-Laird, 1983), or even **script** (Schank and Abelson, 1977).

**frame elements**

A frame in FrameNet is a background knowledge structure that defines a set of frame-specific semantic roles, called **frame elements**, and includes a set of predicates that use these roles. Each word evokes a frame and profiles some aspect of the frame and its elements. The FrameNet dataset includes a set of frames and frame elements, the lexical units associated with each frame, and a set of labeled example sentences. For example, the **change\_position\_on\_a\_scale** frame is defined as follows:

This frame consists of words that indicate the change of an Item's position on a scale (the Attribute) from a starting point (Initial\_value) to an end point (Final\_value).

**core roles  
non-core roles**

Some of the semantic roles (frame elements) in the frame are defined as in Fig. 19.3. Note that these are separated into **core roles**, which are frame specific, and **non-core roles**, which are more like the Arg-M arguments in PropBank, expressing more general properties of time, location, and so on.

Here are some example sentences:

- (19.20) [ITEM Oil] *rose* [ATTRIBUTE in price] [DIFFERENCE by 2%].
- (19.21) [ITEM It] has *increased* [FINAL\_STATE to having them 1 day a month].
- (19.22) [ITEM Microsoft shares] *fell* [FINAL\_VALUE to 7 5/8].
- (19.23) [ITEM Colon cancer incidence] *fell* [DIFFERENCE by 50%] [GROUP among men].
- (19.24) a steady *increase* [INITIAL\_VALUE from 9.5] [FINAL\_VALUE to 14.3] [ITEM in dividends]
- (19.25) a [DIFFERENCE 5%] [ITEM dividend] *increase...*

Note from these example sentences that the frame includes target words like *rise*, *fall*, and *increase*. In fact, the complete frame consists of the following words:

Core Roles	
ATTRIBUTE	The ATTRIBUTE is a scalar property that the ITEM possesses.
DIFFERENCE	The distance by which an ITEM changes its position on the scale.
FINAL_STATE	A description that presents the ITEM's state after the change in the ATTRIBUTE's value as an independent predication.
FINAL_VALUE	The position on the scale where the ITEM ends up.
INITIAL_STATE	A description that presents the ITEM's state before the change in the ATTRIBUTE's value as an independent predication.
INITIAL_VALUE	The initial position on the scale from which the ITEM moves away.
ITEM	The entity that has a position on the scale.
VALUE_RANGE	A portion of the scale, typically identified by its end points, along which the values of the ATTRIBUTE fluctuate.
Some Non-Core Roles	
DURATION	The length of time over which the change takes place.
SPEED	The rate of change of the VALUE.
GROUP	The GROUP in which an ITEM changes the value of an ATTRIBUTE in a specified way.

**Figure 19.3** The frame elements in the `change_position_on_a_scale` frame from the FrameNet Labelers Guide (Ruppenhofer et al., 2016).

<b>VERBS:</b>	dwindle	move	soar	escalation	shift
	advance	edge	mushroom	swell	explosion
	climb	explode	plummet	swing	tumble
	decline	fall	reach	triple	fall
	decrease	fluctuate	rise	tumble	fluctuation
	diminish	gain	rocket		gain
	dip	grow	shift		increasingly
	double	increase	skyrocket	decline	growth
	drop	jump	slide	decrease	hike
					NOUNS:
					increase
					rise

FrameNet also codes relationships between frames, allowing frames to inherit from each other, or representing relations between frames like causation (and generalizations among frame elements in different frames can be represented by inheritance as well). Thus, there is a `Cause_change_of_position_on_a_scale` frame that is linked to the `Change_of_position_on_a_scale` frame by the `cause` relation, but that adds an `AGENT` role and is used for causative examples such as the following:

(19.26) [AGENT They] *raised* [ITEM the price of their soda] [DIFFERENCE by 2%].

Together, these two frames would allow an understanding system to extract the common event semantics of all the verbal and nominal causative and non-causative usages.

FrameNets have also been developed for many other languages including Spanish, German, Japanese, Portuguese, Italian, and Chinese.

## 19.6 Semantic Role Labeling

### semantic role labeling

**Semantic role labeling** (sometimes shortened as **SRL**) is the task of automatically finding the **semantic roles** of each argument of each predicate in a sentence. Current approaches to semantic role labeling are based on supervised machine learning, often using the FrameNet and PropBank resources to specify what counts as a predicate, define the set of roles used in the task, and provide training and test sets.

Recall that the difference between these two models of semantic roles is that FrameNet (19.27) employs many frame-specific frame elements as roles, while PropBank (19.28) uses a smaller number of numbered argument labels that can be interpreted as verb-specific labels, along with the more general ARG-M labels. Some examples:

(19.27) [You] can't [blame] [the program] [for being unable to identify it]  
COGNIZER TARGET EVALUER REASON

(19.28) [The San Francisco Examiner] issued [a special edition] [yesterday]  
ARGO TARGET ARG1 ARG-M-TMP

### 19.6.1 A Feature-based Algorithm for Semantic Role Labeling

A simplified feature-based semantic role labeling algorithm is sketched in Fig. 19.4. Feature-based algorithms—from the very earliest systems like (Simmons, 1973)—begin by parsing, using broad-coverage parsers to assign a parse to the input string. Figure 19.5 shows a parse of (19.28) above. The parse is then traversed to find all words that are predicates.

For each of these predicates, the algorithm examines each node in the parse tree and uses supervised classification to decide the semantic role (if any) it plays for this predicate. Given a labeled training set such as PropBank or FrameNet, a feature vector is extracted for each node, using feature templates described in the next subsection. A 1-of-N classifier is then trained to predict a semantic role for each constituent given these features, where N is the number of potential semantic roles plus an extra NONE role for non-role constituents. Any standard classification algorithms can be used. Finally, for each test sentence to be labeled, the classifier is run on each relevant constituent.

```

function SEMANTICROLELABEL(words) returns labeled tree
    parse  $\leftarrow$  PARSE(words)
    for each predicate in parse do
        for each node in parse do
            featurevector  $\leftarrow$  EXTRACTFEATURES(node, predicate, parse)
            CLASSIFYNODE(node, featurevector, parse)

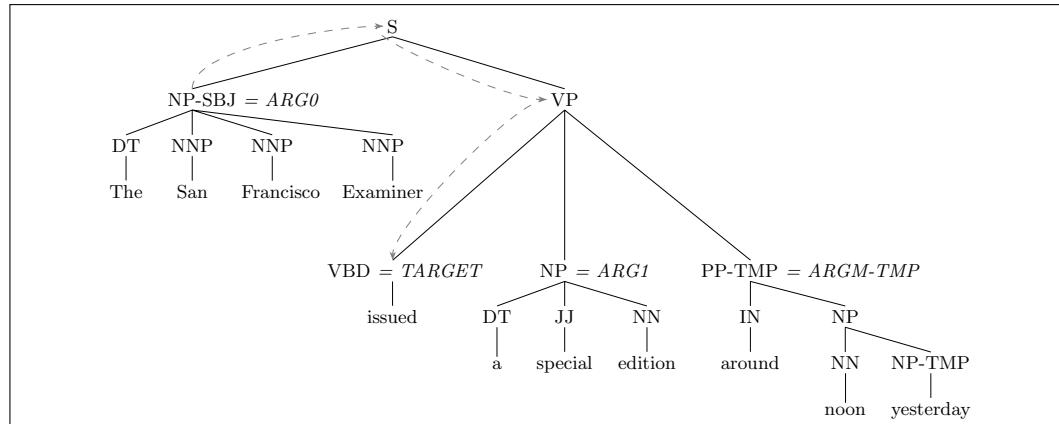
```

**Figure 19.4** A generic semantic-role-labeling algorithm. CLASSIFYNODE is a 1-of-*N* classifier that assigns a semantic role (or NONE for non-role constituents), trained on labeled data such as FrameNet or PropBank.

Instead of training a single-stage classifier as in Fig. 19.5, the node-level classification task can be broken down into multiple steps:

1. **Pruning:** Since only a small number of the constituents in a sentence are arguments of any given predicate, many systems use simple heuristics to prune unlikely constituents.
2. **Identification:** a binary classification of each node as an argument to be labeled or a NONE.
3. **Classification:** a 1-of-*N* classification of all the constituents that were labeled as arguments by the previous stage

The separation of identification and classification may lead to better use of features (different features may be useful for the two tasks) or to computational efficiency.



**Figure 19.5** Parse tree for a PropBank sentence, showing the PropBank argument labels. The dotted line shows the **path** feature  $NP \uparrow S \downarrow VP \downarrow VBD$  for  $ARG0$ , the  $NP-SBJ$  constituent *The San Francisco Examiner*.

### Global Optimization

The classification algorithm of Fig. 19.5 classifies each argument separately (“locally”), making the simplifying assumption that each argument of a predicate can be labeled independently. This assumption is false; there are interactions between arguments that require a more ‘global’ assignment of labels to constituents. For example, constituents in FrameNet and PropBank are required to be non-overlapping. More significantly, the semantic roles of constituents are not independent. For example PropBank does not allow multiple identical arguments; two constituents of the same verb cannot both be labeled  $ARG0$ .

Role labeling systems thus often add a fourth step to deal with global consistency across the labels in a sentence. For example, the local classifiers can return a list of possible labels associated with probabilities for each constituent, and a second-pass Viterbi decoding or re-ranking approach can be used to choose the best consensus label. Integer linear programming (ILP) is another common way to choose a solution that conforms best to multiple constraints.

### Features for Semantic Role Labeling

Most systems use some generalization of the core set of features introduced by Gildea and Jurafsky (2000). Common basic features templates (demonstrated on the  $NP-SBJ$  constituent *The San Francisco Examiner* in Fig. 19.5) include:

- The governing **predicate**, in this case the verb *issued*. The predicate is a crucial feature since labels are defined only with respect to a particular predicate.
- The **phrase type** of the constituent, in this case,  $NP$  (or  $NP-SBJ$ ). Some semantic roles tend to appear as  $NPs$ , others as  $S$  or  $PP$ , and so on.
- The **headword** of the constituent, *Examiner*. The headword of a constituent can be computed with standard head rules, such as those given in Chapter 12 in Fig. 12.12. Certain headwords (e.g., pronouns) place strong constraints on the possible semantic roles they are likely to fill.
- The **headword part of speech** of the constituent,  $NNP$ .
- The **path** in the parse tree from the constituent to the predicate. This path is marked by the dotted line in Fig. 19.5. Following Gildea and Jurafsky (2000), we can use a simple linear representation of the path,  $NP \uparrow S \downarrow VP \downarrow VBD$ .  $\uparrow$  and  $\downarrow$  represent upward and downward movement in the tree, respectively. The

path is very useful as a compact representation of many kinds of grammatical function relationships between the constituent and the predicate.

- The **voice** of the clause in which the constituent appears, in this case, **active** (as contrasted with **passive**). Passive sentences tend to have strongly different linkings of semantic roles to surface form than do active ones.
- The binary **linear position** of the constituent with respect to the predicate, either **before** or **after**.
- The **subcategorization** of the predicate, the set of expected arguments that appear in the verb phrase. We can extract this information by using the phrase-structure rule that expands the immediate parent of the predicate;  $VP \rightarrow VBD\ NP\ PP$  for the predicate in Fig. 19.5.
- The named entity type of the constituent.
- The first words and the last word of the constituent.

The following feature vector thus represents the first NP in our example (recall that most observations will have the value NONE rather than, for example, ARG0, since most constituents in the parse tree will not bear a semantic role):

`ARG0: [issued, NP, Examiner, NNP, NP↑S↓VP↓VBD, active, before, VP → NP PP, ORG, The, Examiner]`

Other features are often used in addition, such as sets of n-grams inside the constituent, or more complex versions of the path features (the upward or downward halves, or whether particular nodes occur in the path).

It's also possible to use dependency parses instead of constituency parses as the basis of features, for example using dependency parse paths instead of constituency paths.

### 19.6.2 A Neural Algorithm for Semantic Role Labeling

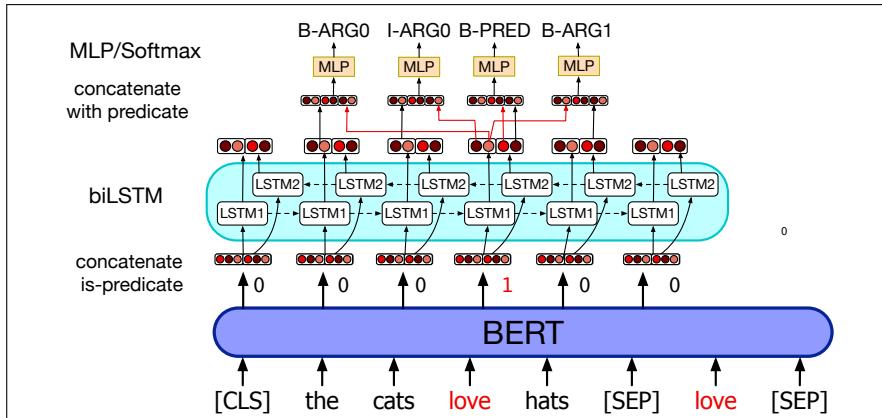
A simple neural approach to SRL is to treat it as a sequence labeling task like named-entity recognition, using the BIO approach. Let's assume that we are given the predicate and the task is just detecting and labeling spans. Recall that with BIO tagging, we have a begin and end tag for each possible role (B-ARG0, I-ARG0; B-ARG1, I-ARG1, and so on), plus an outside tag O.

As with all the taggers, the goal is to compute the highest probability tag sequence  $\hat{y}$ , given the input sequence of words  $w$ :

$$\hat{y} = \underset{y \in T}{\operatorname{argmax}} P(y|w)$$

Fig. 19.6 shows a sketch of a standard algorithm from [Shi and Lin \(2019\)](#) and [He et al. \(2017\)](#). Here each input word is mapped to pretrained embeddings, and also associated with an embedding for a flag (0/1) variable indicating whether that input word is the predicate. These concatenated embeddings are passed through a biLSTM. The output embedding for each token are concatenated with the output embedding for the predicate, and then passed to an MLP with a softmax which outputs a distribution over each SRL label.

For decoding, a CRF layer can be used instead of the MLP layer on top of the biLSTM output (or we can even leave off the biLSTM and pass the concatenated BERT output directly to the CRF). The Viterbi decoding algorithm (Chapter 8) can be used to decode from the CRF, which may help exploit global constraints between tags, such as the fact that a tag I-ARG0 must follow another I-ARG0 or B-ARG0.



**Figure 19.6** A BERT + biLSTM approach to semantic role labeling. The input sentence is followed by [SEP] and an extra input for the predicate, in this case *love*. The BERT outputs are concatenated to an indicator variable which is 1 for the predicate and 0 for all other words , passed through a biLSTM, and then the output embedding at each token position is concatenated with the embedding for the predicate, and passed through a single-layer MLP. After Shi and Lin (2019) and He et al. (2017).

### 19.6.3 Evaluation of Semantic Role Labeling

The standard evaluation for semantic role labeling is to require that each argument label must be assigned to the exactly correct word sequence or parse constituent, and then compute precision, recall, and *F*-measure. Identification and classification can also be evaluated separately. Two common datasets used for evaluation are CoNLL-2005 (Carreras and Márquez, 2005) and CoNLL-2012 (Pradhan et al., 2013).

## 19.7 Selectional Restrictions

### selectional restriction

We turn in this section to another way to represent facts about the relationship between predicates and arguments. A **selectional restriction** is a semantic type constraint that a verb imposes on the kind of concepts that are allowed to fill its argument roles. Consider the two meanings associated with the following example:

(19.29) I want to eat someplace nearby.

There are two possible parses and semantic interpretations for this sentence. In the sensible interpretation, *eat* is intransitive and the phrase *someplace nearby* is an adjunct that gives the location of the eating event. In the nonsensical *speaker-as-Godzilla* interpretation, *eat* is transitive and the phrase *someplace nearby* is the direct object and the THEME of the eating, like the NP *Malaysian food* in the following sentences:

(19.30) I want to eat Malaysian food.

How do we know that *someplace nearby* isn't the direct object in this sentence? One useful cue is the semantic fact that the THEME of EATING events tends to be something that is *edible*. This restriction placed by the verb *eat* on the filler of its THEME argument is a selectional restriction.

Selectional restrictions are associated with senses, not entire lexemes. We can see this in the following examples of the lexeme *serve*:

(19.31) The restaurant serves green-lipped mussels.

(19.32) Which airlines serve Denver?

Example (19.31) illustrates the offering-food sense of *serve*, which ordinarily restricts its THEME to be some kind of food. Example (19.32) illustrates the *provides a commercial service to* sense of *serve*, which constrains its THEME to be some type of appropriate location.

Selectional restrictions vary widely in their specificity. The verb *imagine*, for example, imposes strict requirements on its AGENT role (restricting it to humans and other animate entities) but places very few semantic requirements on its THEME role. A verb like *diagonalize*, on the other hand, places a very specific constraint on the filler of its THEME role: it has to be a matrix, while the arguments of the adjectives *odorless* are restricted to concepts that could possess an odor:

(19.33) In rehearsal, I often ask the musicians to *imagine* a tennis game.

(19.34) Radon is an *odorless* gas that can't be detected by human senses.

(19.35) To *diagonalize* a matrix is to find its eigenvalues.

These examples illustrate that the set of concepts we need to represent selectional restrictions (being a matrix, being able to possess an odor, etc) is quite open ended. This distinguishes selectional restrictions from other features for representing lexical knowledge, like parts-of-speech, which are quite limited in number.

### 19.7.1 Representing Selectional Restrictions

One way to capture the semantics of selectional restrictions is to use and extend the event representation of Chapter 15. Recall that the neo-Davidsonian representation of an event consists of a single variable that stands for the event, a predicate denoting the kind of event, and variables and relations for the event roles. Ignoring the issue of the  $\lambda$ -structures and using thematic roles rather than deep event roles, the semantic contribution of a verb like *eat* might look like the following:

$$\exists e, x, y \text{ } Eating(e) \wedge \text{Agent}(e, x) \wedge \text{Theme}(e, y)$$

With this representation, all we know about *y*, the filler of the THEME role, is that it is associated with an *Eating* event through the *Theme* relation. To stipulate the selectional restriction that *y* must be something edible, we simply add a new term to that effect:

$$\exists e, x, y \text{ } Eating(e) \wedge \text{Agent}(e, x) \wedge \text{Theme}(e, y) \wedge \text{EdibleThing}(y)$$

When a phrase like *ate a hamburger* is encountered, a semantic analyzer can form the following kind of representation:

$$\exists e, x, y \text{ } Eating(e) \wedge \text{Eater}(e, x) \wedge \text{Theme}(e, y) \wedge \text{EdibleThing}(y) \wedge \text{Hamburger}(y)$$

This representation is perfectly reasonable since the membership of *y* in the category *Hamburger* is consistent with its membership in the category *EdibleThing*, assuming a reasonable set of facts in the knowledge base. Correspondingly, the representation for a phrase such as *ate a takeoff* would be ill-formed because membership in an event-like category such as *Takeoff* would be inconsistent with membership in the category *EdibleThing*.

While this approach adequately captures the semantics of selectional restrictions, there are two problems with its direct use. First, using FOL to perform the simple

```

Sense 1
hamburger, beefburger --
(a fried cake of minced beef served on a bun)
=> sandwich
=> snack food
=> dish
=> nutrient, nourishment, nutrition...
=> food, nutrient
=> substance
=> matter
=> physical entity
=> entity

```

**Figure 19.7** Evidence from WordNet that hamburgers are edible.

task of enforcing selectional restrictions is overkill. Other, far simpler, formalisms can do the job with far less computational cost. The second problem is that this approach presupposes a large, logical knowledge base of facts about the concepts that make up selectional restrictions. Unfortunately, although such common-sense knowledge bases are being developed, none currently have the kind of coverage necessary to the task.

A more practical approach is to state selectional restrictions in terms of WordNet synsets rather than as logical concepts. Each predicate simply specifies a WordNet synset as the selectional restriction on each of its arguments. A meaning representation is well-formed if the role filler word is a hyponym (subordinate) of this synset.

For our *ate a hamburger* example, for instance, we could set the selectional restriction on the THEME role of the verb *eat* to the synset {**food, nutrient**}, glossed as *any substance that can be metabolized by an animal to give energy and build tissue*. Luckily, the chain of hypernyms for *hamburger* shown in Fig. 19.7 reveals that hamburgers are indeed food. Again, the filler of a role need not match the restriction synset exactly; it just needs to have the synset as one of its superordinates.

We can apply this approach to the THEME roles of the verbs *imagine, lift*, and *diagonalize*, discussed earlier. Let us restrict *imagine*'s THEME to the synset {entity}, *lift*'s THEME to {physical entity}, and *diagonalize* to {matrix}. This arrangement correctly permits *imagine a hamburger* and *lift a hamburger*, while also correctly ruling out *diagonalize a hamburger*.

### 19.7.2 Selectional Preferences

In the earliest implementations, selectional restrictions were considered strict constraints on the kind of arguments a predicate could take (Katz and Fodor 1963, Hirst 1987). For example, the verb *eat* might require that its THEME argument be [+FOOD]. Early word sense disambiguation systems used this idea to rule out senses that violated the selectional restrictions of their governing predicates.

Very quickly, however, it became clear that these selectional restrictions were better represented as preferences rather than strict constraints (Wilks 1975c, Wilks 1975b). For example, selectional restriction violations (like inedible arguments of *eat*) often occur in well-formed sentences, for example because they are negated (19.36), or because selectional restrictions are overstated (19.37):

- (19.36) But it fell apart in 1931, perhaps because people realized you can't **eat** gold for lunch if you're hungry.

- (19.37) In his two championship trials, Mr. Kulkarni **ate** glass on an empty stomach, accompanied only by water and tea.

Modern systems for selectional preferences therefore specify the relation between a predicate and its possible arguments with soft constraints of some kind.

### Selectional Association

selectional preference strength

relative entropy  
KL divergence

One of the most influential has been the **selectional association** model of Resnik (1993). Resnik defines the idea of **selectional preference strength** as the general amount of information that a predicate tells us about the semantic class of its arguments. For example, the verb *eat* tells us a lot about the semantic class of its direct objects, since they tend to be edible. The verb *be*, by contrast, tells us less about its direct objects. The selectional preference strength can be defined by the difference in information between two distributions: the distribution of expected semantic classes  $P(c)$  (how likely is it that a direct object will fall into class  $c$ ) and the distribution of expected semantic classes for the particular verb  $P(c|v)$  (how likely is it that the direct object of the specific verb  $v$  will fall into semantic class  $c$ ). The greater the difference between these distributions, the more information the verb is giving us about possible objects. The difference between these two distributions can be quantified by **relative entropy**, or the Kullback-Leibler divergence (Kullback and Leibler, 1951). The Kullback-Leibler or **KL divergence**  $D(P||Q)$  expresses the difference between two probability distributions  $P$  and  $Q$

$$D(P||Q) = \sum_x P(x) \log \frac{P(x)}{Q(x)} \quad (19.38)$$

The selectional preference  $S_R(v)$  uses the KL divergence to express how much information, in bits, the verb  $v$  expresses about the possible semantic class of its argument.

$$\begin{aligned} S_R(v) &= D(P(c|v)||P(c)) \\ &= \sum_c P(c|v) \log \frac{P(c|v)}{P(c)} \end{aligned} \quad (19.39)$$

selectional association

Resnik then defines the **selectional association** of a particular class and verb as the relative contribution of that class to the general selectional preference of the verb:

$$A_R(v, c) = \frac{1}{S_R(v)} P(c|v) \log \frac{P(c|v)}{P(c)} \quad (19.40)$$

The selectional association is thus a probabilistic measure of the strength of association between a predicate and a class dominating the argument to the predicate. Resnik estimates the probabilities for these associations by parsing a corpus, counting all the times each predicate occurs with each argument word, and assuming that each word is a partial observation of all the WordNet concepts containing the word. The following table from Resnik (1996) shows some sample high and low selectional associations for verbs and some WordNet semantic classes of their direct objects.

Verb	Direct Object		Direct Object	
	Semantic Class	Assoc	Semantic Class	Assoc
read	WRITING	6.80	ACTIVITY	-.20
write	WRITING	7.26	COMMERCE	0
see	ENTITY	5.79	METHOD	-0.01

### Selectional Preference via Conditional Probability

An alternative to using selectional association between a verb and the WordNet class of its arguments is to use the conditional probability of an argument word given a predicate verb, directly modeling the strength of association of one verb (predicate) with one noun (argument).

The conditional probability model can be computed by parsing a very large corpus (billions of words), and computing co-occurrence counts: how often a given verb occurs with a given noun in a given relation. The conditional probability of an argument noun given a verb for a particular relation  $P(n|v, r)$  can then be used as a selectional preference metric for that pair of words ([Brockmann and Lapata 2003](#), [Keller and Lapata 2003](#)):

$$P(n|v, r) = \begin{cases} \frac{C(n, v, r)}{C(v, r)} & \text{if } C(n, v, r) > 0 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

The inverse probability  $P(v|n, r)$  was found to have better performance in some cases ([Brockmann and Lapata, 2003](#)):

$$P(v|n, r) = \begin{cases} \frac{C(n, v, r)}{C(n, r)} & \text{if } C(n, v, r) > 0 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

An even simpler approach is to use the simple log co-occurrence frequency of the predicate with the argument  $\log count(v, n, r)$  instead of conditional probability; this seems to do better for extracting preferences for syntactic subjects rather than objects ([Brockmann and Lapata, 2003](#)).

### Evaluating Selectional Preferences

#### pseudowords

One way to evaluate models of selectional preferences is to use **pseudowords** ([Gale et al. 1992c](#), [Schütze 1992a](#)). A pseudoword is an artificial word created by concatenating a test word in some context (say *banana*) with a confounder word (say *door*) to create *banana-door*). The task of the system is to identify which of the two words is the original word. To evaluate a selectional preference model (for example on the relationship between a verb and a direct object) we take a test corpus and select all verb tokens. For each verb token (say *drive*) we select the direct object (e.g., *car*), concatenated with a confounder word that is its *nearest neighbor*, the noun with the frequency closest to the original (say *house*), to make *car/house*). We then use the selectional preference model to choose which of *car* and *house* are more preferred objects of *drive*, and compute how often the model chooses the correct original object (e.g., *car*) ([Chambers and Jurafsky, 2010](#)).

Another evaluation metric is to get human preferences for a test set of verb-argument pairs, and have them rate their degree of plausibility. This is usually done by using magnitude estimation, a technique from psychophysics, in which subjects rate the plausibility of an argument proportional to a modulus item. A selectional preference model can then be evaluated by its correlation with the human preferences ([Keller and Lapata, 2003](#)).

## 19.8 Primitive Decomposition of Predicates

**componential analysis**

One way of thinking about the semantic roles we have discussed through the chapter is that they help us define the roles that arguments play in a decompositional way, based on finite lists of thematic roles (agent, patient, instrument, proto-agent, proto-patient, etc.). This idea of decomposing meaning into sets of primitive semantics elements or features, called **primitive decomposition** or **componential analysis**, has been taken even further, and focused particularly on predicates.

Consider these examples of the verb *kill*:

(19.41) Jim killed his philodendron.

(19.42) Jim did something to cause his philodendron to become not alive.

There is a truth-conditional ('propositional semantics') perspective from which these two sentences have the same meaning. Assuming this equivalence, we could represent the meaning of *kill* as:

(19.43)  $\text{KILL}(x,y) \Leftrightarrow \text{CAUSE}(x, \text{BECOME}(\text{NOT}(\text{ALIVE}(y))))$

thus using semantic primitives like *do*, *cause*, *become not*, and *alive*.

Indeed, one such set of potential semantic primitives has been used to account for some of the verbal alternations discussed in Section 19.2 (Lakoff 1965, Dowty 1979). Consider the following examples.

(19.44) John opened the door.  $\Rightarrow \text{CAUSE}(\text{John}, \text{BECOME}(\text{OPEN}(\text{door})))$

(19.45) The door opened.  $\Rightarrow \text{BECOME}(\text{OPEN}(\text{door}))$

(19.46) The door is open.  $\Rightarrow \text{OPEN}(\text{door})$

The decompositional approach asserts that a single state-like predicate associated with *open* underlies all of these examples. The differences among the meanings of these examples arises from the combination of this single predicate with the primitives *CAUSE* and *BECOME*.

While this approach to primitive decomposition can explain the similarity between states and actions or causative and non-causative predicates, it still relies on having a large number of predicates like *open*. More radical approaches choose to break down these predicates as well. One such approach to verbal predicate decomposition that played a role in early natural language understanding systems is **conceptual dependency** (CD), a set of ten primitive predicates, shown in Fig. 19.8.

**conceptual dependency**

Below is an example sentence along with its CD representation. The verb *brought* is translated into the two primitives ATRANS and PTRANS to indicate that the waiter both physically conveyed the check to Mary and passed control of it to her. Note that CD also associates a fixed set of thematic roles with each primitive to represent the various participants in the action.

(19.47) The waiter brought Mary the check.

$$\begin{aligned} \exists x, y \text{Atrans}(x) \wedge \text{Actor}(x, \text{Waiter}) \wedge \text{Object}(x, \text{Check}) \wedge \text{To}(x, \text{Mary}) \\ \wedge \text{Ptrans}(y) \wedge \text{Actor}(y, \text{Waiter}) \wedge \text{Object}(y, \text{Check}) \wedge \text{To}(y, \text{Mary}) \end{aligned}$$

Primitive	Definition
ATRANS	The abstract transfer of possession or control from one entity to another
PTRANS	The physical transfer of an object from one location to another
MTRANS	The transfer of mental concepts between entities or within an entity
MBUILD	The creation of new information within an entity
PROPEL	The application of physical force to move an object
MOVE	The integral movement of a body part by an animal
INGEST	The taking in of a substance by an animal
EXPTEL	The expulsion of something from an animal
SPEAK	The action of producing a sound
ATTEND	The action of focusing a sense organ

Figure 19.8 A set of conceptual dependency primitives.

## 19.9 Summary

- **Semantic roles** are abstract models of the role an argument plays in the event described by the predicate.
- **Thematic roles** are a model of semantic roles based on a single finite list of roles. Other semantic role models include per-verb semantic role lists and **proto-agent/proto-patient**, both of which are implemented in **PropBank**, and per-frame role lists, implemented in **FrameNet**.
- **Semantic role labeling** is the task of assigning semantic role labels to the constituents of a sentence. The task is generally treated as a supervised machine learning task, with models trained on PropBank or FrameNet. Algorithms generally start by parsing a sentence and then automatically tag each parse tree node with a semantic role. Neural models map straight from words end-to-end.
- Semantic **selectional restrictions** allow words (particularly predicates) to post constraints on the semantic properties of their argument words. **Selectional preference** models (like **selectional association** or simple conditional probability) allow a weight or probability to be assigned to the association between a predicate and an argument word or class.

## Bibliographical and Historical Notes

Although the idea of semantic roles dates back to Pāṇini, they were re-introduced into modern linguistics by Gruber (1965), Fillmore (1966) and Fillmore (1968). Fillmore had become interested in argument structure by studying Lucien Tesnière's groundbreaking *Éléments de Syntaxe Structurale* (Tesnière, 1959) in which the term 'dependency' was introduced and the foundations were laid for dependency grammar. Following Tesnière's terminology, Fillmore first referred to argument roles as *actants* (Fillmore, 1966) but quickly switched to the term *case*, (see Fillmore (2003)) and proposed a universal list of semantic roles or cases (Agent, Patient, Instrument, etc.), that could be taken on by the arguments of predicates. Verbs would be listed in the lexicon with their **case frame**, the list of obligatory (or optional) case arguments.

The idea that semantic roles could provide an intermediate level of semantic representation that could help map from syntactic parse structures to deeper, more fully-specified representations of meaning was quickly adopted in natural language processing, and systems for extracting case frames were created for machine translation (Wilks, 1973), question-answering (Hendrix et al., 1973), spoken-language understanding (Nash-Webber, 1975), and dialogue systems (Bobrow et al., 1977). General-purpose semantic role labelers were developed. The earliest ones (Simmons, 1973) first parsed a sentence by means of an ATN (Augmented Transition Network) parser. Each verb then had a set of rules specifying how the parse should be mapped to semantic roles. These rules mainly made reference to grammatical functions (subject, object, complement of specific prepositions) but also checked constituent internal features such as the animacy of head nouns. Later systems assigned roles from pre-built parse trees, again by using dictionaries with verb-specific case frames (Levin 1977, Marcus 1980).

By 1977 case representation was widely used and taught in AI and NLP courses, and was described as a standard of natural language understanding in the first edition of Winston's (1977) textbook *Artificial Intelligence*.

In the 1980s Fillmore proposed his model of *frame semantics*, later describing the intuition as follows:

“The idea behind frame semantics is that speakers are aware of possibly quite complex situation types, packages of connected expectations, that go by various names—frames, schemas, scenarios, scripts, cultural narratives, memes—and the words in our language are understood with such frames as their presupposed background.” (Fillmore, 2012, p. 712)

The word *frame* seemed to be in the air for a suite of related notions proposed at about the same time by Minsky (1974), Hymes (1974), and Goffman (1974), as well as related notions with other names like *scripts* (Schank and Abelson, 1975) and *schemata* (Bobrow and Norman, 1975) (see Tannen (1979) for a comparison). Fillmore was also influenced by the semantic field theorists and by a visit to the Yale AI lab where he took notice of the lists of slots and fillers used by early information extraction systems like DeJong (1982) and Schank and Abelson (1977). In the 1990s Fillmore drew on these insights to begin the FrameNet corpus annotation project.

At the same time, Beth Levin drew on her early case frame dictionaries (Levin, 1977) to develop her book which summarized sets of verb classes defined by shared argument realizations (Levin, 1993). The VerbNet project built on this work (Kipper et al., 2000), leading soon afterwards to the PropBank semantic-role-labeled corpus created by Martha Palmer and colleagues (Palmer et al., 2005).

The combination of rich linguistic annotation and corpus-based approach instantiated in FrameNet and PropBank led to a revival of automatic approaches to semantic role labeling, first on FrameNet (Gildea and Jurafsky, 2000) and then on PropBank data (Gildea and Palmer, 2002, *inter alia*). The problem first addressed in the 1970s by handwritten rules was thus now generally recast as one of supervised machine learning enabled by large and consistent databases. Many popular features used for role labeling are defined in Gildea and Jurafsky (2002), Surdeanu et al. (2003), Xue and Palmer (2004), Pradhan et al. (2005), Che et al. (2009), and Zhao et al. (2009). The use of dependency rather than constituency parses was introduced in the CoNLL-2008 shared task (Surdeanu et al., 2008). For surveys see Palmer et al. (2010) and Màrquez et al. (2008).

The use of neural approaches to semantic role labeling was pioneered by Collobert et al. (2011), who applied a CRF on top of a convolutional net. Early work

like [Foland, Jr. and Martin \(2015\)](#) focused on using dependency features. Later work eschewed syntactic features altogether; [Zhou and Xu \(2015b\)](#) introduced the use of a stacked (6-8 layer) biLSTM architecture, and [\(He et al., 2017\)](#) showed how to augment the biLSTM architecture with highway networks and also replace the CRF with A\* decoding that make it possible to apply a wide variety of global constraints in SRL decoding.

**implicit argument**

**iSRL**

Most semantic role labeling schemes only work within a single sentence, focusing on the object of the verbal (or nominal, in the case of NomBank) predicate. However, in many cases, a verbal or nominal predicate may have an **implicit argument**: one that appears only in a contextual sentence, or perhaps not at all and must be inferred. In the two sentences *This house has a new owner. The sale was finalized 10 days ago.* the *sale* in the second sentence has no ARG1, but a reasonable reader would infer that the Arg1 should be the *house* mentioned in the prior sentence. Finding these arguments, **implicit argument detection** (sometimes shortened as **iSRL**) was introduced by [Gerber and Chai \(2010\)](#) and [Ruppenhofer et al. \(2010\)](#). See [Do et al. \(2017\)](#) for more recent neural models.

To avoid the need for huge labeled training sets, unsupervised approaches for semantic role labeling attempt to induce the set of semantic roles by clustering over arguments. The task was pioneered by [Riloff and Schmelzenbach \(1998\)](#) and [Swier and Stevenson \(2004\)](#); see [Grenager and Manning \(2006\)](#), [Titov and Klementiev \(2012\)](#), [Lang and Lapata \(2014\)](#), [Woodsend and Lapata \(2015\)](#), and [Titov and Khodam \(2014\)](#).

Recent innovations in frame labeling include **connotation frames**, which mark richer information about the argument of predicates. Connotation frames mark the sentiment of the writer or reader toward the arguments (for example using the verb *survive* in *he survived a bombing* expresses the writer’s sympathy toward the subject *he* and negative sentiment toward the bombing. See Chapter 20 for more details.

Selectional preference has been widely studied beyond the selectional association models of [Resnik \(1993\)](#) and [Resnik \(1996\)](#). Methods have included clustering ([Rooth et al., 1999](#)), discriminative learning ([Bergsma et al., 2008a](#)), and topic models ([Séaghdha 2010](#), [Ritter et al. 2010](#)), and constraints can be expressed at the level of words or classes ([Agirre and Martínez, 2001](#)). Selectional preferences have also been successfully integrated into semantic role labeling ([Erk 2007](#), [Zapirain et al. 2013](#), [Do et al. 2017](#)).

## Exercises

# Lexicons for Sentiment, Affect, and Connotation

*Some day we'll be able to measure the power of words*

Maya Angelou

affective

In this chapter we turn to tools for interpreting **affective** meaning, extending our study of sentiment analysis in Chapter 4. We use the word ‘affective’, following the tradition in **affective computing** (Picard, 1995) to mean emotion, sentiment, personality, mood, and attitudes. Affective meaning is closely related to **subjectivity**, the study of a speaker or writer’s evaluations, opinions, emotions, and speculations (Wiebe et al., 1999).

subjectivity

How should affective meaning be defined? One influential typology of affective states comes from Scherer (2000), who defines each class of affective states by factors like its cognitive realization and time course (Fig. 20.1).

<b>Emotion:</b> Relatively brief episode of response to the evaluation of an external or internal event as being of major significance. ( <i>angry, sad, joyful, fearful, ashamed, proud, elated, desperate</i> )
<b>Mood:</b> Diffuse affect state, most pronounced as change in subjective feeling, of low intensity but relatively long duration, often without apparent cause. ( <i>cheerful, gloomy, irritable, listless, depressed, buoyant</i> )
<b>Interpersonal stance:</b> Affective stance taken toward another person in a specific interaction, coloring the interpersonal exchange in that situation. ( <i>distant, cold, warm, supportive, contemptuous, friendly</i> )
<b>Attitude:</b> Relatively enduring, affectively colored beliefs, preferences, and predispositions towards objects or persons. ( <i>liking, loving, hating, valuing, desiring</i> )
<b>Personality traits:</b> Emotionally laden, stable personality dispositions and behavior tendencies, typical for a person. ( <i>nervous, anxious, reckless, morose, hostile, jealous</i> )

Figure 20.1 The Scherer typology of affective states (Scherer, 2000).

We can design extractors for each of these kinds of affective states. Chapter 4 already introduced *sentiment analysis*, the task of extracting the positive or negative orientation that a writer expresses in a text. This corresponds in Scherer’s typology to the extraction of **attitudes**: figuring out what people like or dislike, from affect-rich texts like consumer reviews of books or movies, newspaper editorials, or public sentiment in blogs or tweets.

Detecting **emotion** and **moods** is useful for detecting whether a student is confused, engaged, or certain when interacting with a tutorial system, whether a caller to a help line is frustrated, whether someone’s blog posts or tweets indicated depression. Detecting emotions like fear in novels, for example, could help us trace what groups or situations are feared and how that changes over time.

Detecting different **interpersonal stances** can be useful when extracting information from human-human conversations. The goal here is to detect stances like friendliness or awkwardness in interviews or friendly conversations, for example for summarizing meetings or finding parts of a conversation where people are especially excited or engaged, conversational **hot spots** that can help in meeting summarization. Detecting the **personality** of a user—such as whether the user is an **extrovert** or the extent to which they are **open to experience**—can help improve conversational agents, which seem to work better if they match users' personality expectations (Mairesse and Walker, 2008). And affect is important for generation as well as recognition; synthesizing affect is important for conversational agents in various domains, including literacy tutors such as children's storybooks, or computer games.

In Chapter 4 we introduced the use of naive Bayes classification to classify a document's sentiment. Various classifiers have been successfully applied to many of these tasks, using all the words in the training set as input to a classifier which then determines the affect status of the text.

#### connotations

In this chapter we focus on an alternative model, in which instead of using every word as a feature, we focus only on certain words, ones that carry particularly strong cues to affect or sentiment. We call these lists of words **affective lexicons** or **sentiment lexicons**. These lexicons presuppose a fact about semantics: that words have *affective meanings* or **connotations**. The word *connotation* has different meanings in different fields, but here we use it to mean the aspects of a word's meaning that are related to a writer or reader's emotions, sentiment, opinions, or evaluations. In addition to their ability to help determine the affective status of a text, connotation lexicons can be useful features for other kinds of affective tasks, and for computational social science analysis.

In the next sections we introduce basic theories of emotion, show how sentiment lexicons are a special case of emotion lexicons, and mention some useful lexicons. We then survey three ways for building lexicons: human labeling, semi-supervised, and supervised. Finally, we turn to other kinds of affective meaning like personality, stance, and entity-centric affect, and introduce connotation frames.

## 20.1 Defining Emotion

#### emotion

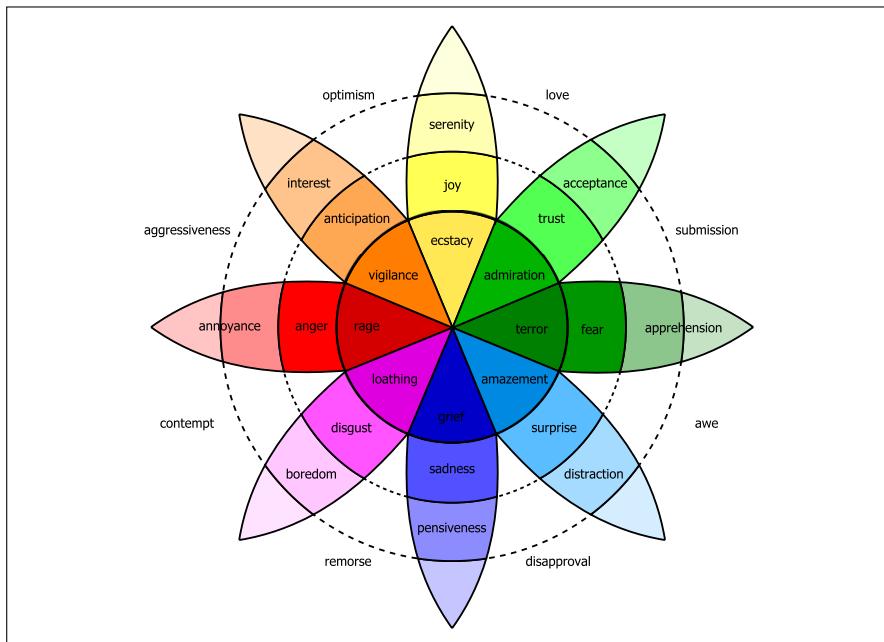
One of the most important affective classes is **emotion**, which Scherer (2000) defines as a “relatively brief episode of response to the evaluation of an external or internal event as being of major significance”.

Detecting emotion has the potential to improve a number of language processing tasks. Automatically detecting emotions in reviews or customer responses (anger, dissatisfaction, trust) could help businesses recognize specific problem areas or ones that are going well. Emotion recognition could help dialog systems like tutoring systems detect that a student was unhappy, bored, hesitant, confident, and so on. Emotion can play a role in medical informatics tasks like detecting depression or suicidal intent. Detecting emotions expressed toward characters in novels might play a role in understanding how different social groups were viewed by society at different times.

#### basic emotions

There are two widely-held families of theories of emotion; we'll introduce lexicons for both kinds of theories. In one family, emotions are viewed as fixed atomic units, limited in number, and from which others are generated, often called **basic emotions** (Tomkins 1962, Plutchik 1962). Perhaps most well-known of this family

of theories are the 6 emotions proposed by Ekman (see for example [Ekman 1999](#)) as a set of emotions that is likely to be universally present in all cultures: *surprise, happiness, anger, fear, disgust, sadness*. Another atomic theory is the [Plutchik \(1980\)](#) wheel of emotion, consisting of 8 basic emotions in four opposing pairs: *joy–sadness, anger–fear, trust–disgust, and anticipation–surprise*, together with the emotions derived from them, shown in Fig. 20.2.



**Figure 20.2** Plutchik wheel of emotion.

The second class of emotion theories views emotion as a space in 2 or 3 dimensions ([Russell, 1980](#)). Most models include the two dimensions **valence** and **arousal**, and many add a third, **dominance**. These can be defined as:

**valence:** the pleasantness of the stimulus

**arousal:** the intensity of emotion provoked by the stimulus

**dominance:** the degree of control exerted by the stimulus

Sentiment can be viewed as a special case of this second view of emotions as points in space. In particular, the **valence** dimension, measuring how pleasant or unpleasant a word is, is often used directly as a measure of sentiment.

## 20.2 Available Sentiment and Affect Lexicons

A wide variety of affect lexicons have been created and released. The most basic lexicons label words along one dimension of semantic variability, generally called “sentiment” or “valence”.

In the simplest lexicons this dimension is represented in a binary fashion, with a wordlist for positive words and a wordlist for negative words. The oldest is the **General Inquirer** ([Stone et al., 1966](#)), which drew on content analysis and on early

work in the cognitive psychology of word meaning ([Osgood et al., 1957](#)). The General Inquirer has a lexicon of 1915 positive words and a lexicon of 2291 negative words (as well as other lexicons discussed below). The MPQA Subjectivity lexicon ([Wilson et al., 2005](#)) has 2718 positive and 4912 negative words drawn from prior lexicons plus a bootstrapped list of subjective words and phrases ([Riloff and Wiebe, 2003](#)). Each entry in the lexicon is hand-labeled for sentiment and also labeled for reliability (strongly subjective or weakly subjective). The polarity lexicon of [Hu and Liu \(2004b\)](#) gives 2006 positive and 4783 negative words, drawn from product reviews, labeled using a bootstrapping method from WordNet.

<b>Positive</b>	admire, amazing, assure, celebration, charm, eager, enthusiastic, excellent, fancy, fantastic, frolic, graceful, happy, joy, luck, majesty, mercy, nice, patience, perfect, proud, rejoice, relief, respect, satisfactorily, sensational, super, terrific, thank, vivid, wise, wonderful, zest
<b>Negative</b>	abominable, anger, anxious, bad, catastrophe, cheap, complaint, condescending, deceit, defective, disappointment, embarrass, fake, fear, filthy, fool, guilt, hate, idiot, inflict, lazy, miserable, mourn, nervous, objection, pest, plot, reject, scream, silly, terrible, unfriendly, vile, wicked

**Figure 20.3** Some words with consistent sentiment across the General Inquirer ([Stone et al., 1966](#)), the MPQA Subjectivity lexicon ([Wilson et al., 2005](#)), and the polarity lexicon of [Hu and Liu \(2004b\)](#).

Slightly more general than these sentiment lexicons are lexicons that assign each word a value on all three affective dimensions. The NRC Valence, Arousal, and Dominance (VAD) lexicon ([Mohammad, 2018a](#)) assigns valence, arousal, and dominance scores to 20,000 words. Some examples are shown in Fig. 20.4.

	Valence	Arousal	Dominance
vacation	.840	enraged	.962
delightful	.918	party	.840
whistle	.653	organized	.337
consolation	.408	effortless	.120
torture	.115	napping	.046
			powerful
			.991
			authority
			.935
			saxophone
			.482
			discouraged
			.0090
			weak
			.045

**Figure 20.4** Values of sample words on the emotional dimensions of [Mohammad \(2018a\)](#).

#### EmoLex

The NRC Word-Emotion Association Lexicon, also called **EmoLex** ([Mohammad and Turney, 2013](#)), uses the [Plutchik \(1980\)](#) 8 basic emotions defined above. The lexicon includes around 14,000 words including words from prior lexicons as well as frequent nouns, verbs, adverbs and adjectives. Values from the lexicon for some sample words:

Word	anger	anticipation	disgust	fear	joy	sadness	surprise	trust	positive	negative
reward	0	1	0	0	1	0	1	1	1	0
worry	0	1	0	1	0	1	0	0	0	1
tenderness	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	1	0
sweetheart	0	1	0	0	1	1	0	1	1	0
suddenly	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0
thirst	0	1	0	0	0	1	1	0	0	0
garbage	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1

For a smaller set of 5,814 words, the NRC Emotion/Affect Intensity Lexicon ([Mohammad, 2018b](#)) contains real-valued scores of association for anger, fear, joy, and sadness; Fig. 20.5 shows examples.

	<b>Anger</b>		<b>Fear</b>		<b>Joy</b>		<b>Sadness</b>
outraged	0.964	horror	0.923	superb	0.864	sad	0.844
violence	0.742	anguish	0.703	cheered	0.773	guilt	0.750
coup	0.578	pestilence	0.625	rainbow	0.531	unkind	0.547
oust	0.484	stressed	0.531	gesture	0.387	difficulties	0.421
suspicious	0.484	failing	0.531	warms	0.391	beggar	0.422
nurture	0.059	confident	0.094	hardship	.031	sing	0.017

**Figure 20.5** Sample emotional intensities for words for anger, fear, joy, and sadness from [Mohammad \(2018b\)](#).

#### LIWC

**LIWC, Linguistic Inquiry and Word Count**, is a widely used set of 73 lexicons containing over 2300 words ([Pennebaker et al., 2007](#)), designed to capture aspects of lexical meaning relevant for social psychological tasks. In addition to sentiment-related lexicons like ones for negative emotion (*bad, weird, hate, problem, tough*) and positive emotion (*love, nice, sweet*), LIWC includes lexicons for categories like anger, sadness, cognitive mechanisms, perception, tentative, and inhibition, shown in Fig. 20.6.

<b>Positive Emotion</b>	<b>Negative Emotion</b>	<b>Insight</b>	<b>Inhibition</b>	<b>Family</b>	<b>Negate</b>
appreciat*	anger*	aware*	avoid*	brother*	aren't
comfort*	bore*	believe	careful*	cousin*	cannot
great	cry	decid*	hesitat*	daughter*	didn't
happy	despair*	feel	limit*	family	neither
interest	fail*	figur*	oppos*	father*	never
joy*	fear	know	prevent*	grandf*	no
perfect*	griev*	knew	reluctan*	grandm*	nobod*
please*	hate*	means	safe*	husband	none
safe*	panic*	notice*	stop	mom	nor
terrific	suffers	recogni*	stubborn*	mother	nothing
value	terrify	sense	wait	niece*	nowhere
wow*	violent*	think	wary	wife	without

**Figure 20.6** Samples from 5 of the 73 lexical categories in LIWC ([Pennebaker et al., 2007](#)). The \* means the previous letters are a word prefix and all words with that prefix are included in the category.

There are various other hand-built affective lexicons. The General Inquirer includes additional lexicons for dimensions like strong vs. weak, active vs. passive, overstated vs. understated, as well as lexicons for categories like pleasure, pain, virtue, vice, motivation, and cognitive orientation.

#### concrete abstract

Another useful feature for various tasks is the distinction between **concrete** words like *banana* or *bathrobe* and **abstract** words like *belief* and *although*. The lexicon in [Brysbaert et al. \(2014\)](#) used crowdsourcing to assign a rating from 1 to 5 of the concreteness of 40,000 words, thus assigning *banana, bathrobe*, and *bagel* 5, *belief* 1.19, *although* 1.07, and in between words like *brisk* a 2.5.

## 20.3 Creating Affect Lexicons by Human Labeling

**crowdsourcing**

The earliest method used to build affect lexicons, and still in common use, is to have humans label each word. This is now most commonly done via **crowdsourcing**: breaking the task into small pieces and distributing them to a large number of annotators. Let's take a look at some of the methodological choices for two crowdsourced emotion lexicons.

The NRC Emotion Lexicon (EmoLex) ([Mohammad and Turney, 2013](#)), labeled emotions in two steps. To ensure that the annotators were judging the correct sense of the word, they first answered a multiple-choice synonym question that primed the correct sense of the word (without requiring the annotator to read a potentially confusing sense definition). These were created automatically using the headwords associated with the thesaurus category of the sense in question in the Macquarie dictionary and the headwords of 3 random distractor categories. An example:

Which word is closest in meaning (most related) to startle?

- automobile
- shake
- honesty
- entertain

For each word (e.g. *startle*), the annotator was then asked to rate how associated that word is with each of the 8 emotions (*joy, fear, anger*, etc.). The associations were rated on a scale of *not, weakly, moderately, and strongly* associated. Outlier ratings were removed, and then each term was assigned the class chosen by the majority of the annotators, with ties broken by choosing the stronger intensity, and then the 4 levels were mapped into a binary label for each word (no and weak mapped to 0, moderate and strong mapped to 1).

**best-worst scaling**

The NRC VAD Lexicon ([Mohammad, 2018a](#)) was built by selecting words and emoticons from prior lexicons and annotating them with crowd-sourcing using **best-worst scaling** ([Louviere et al. 2015](#), [Kiritchenko and Mohammad 2017](#)). In best-worst scaling, annotators are given N items (usually 4) and are asked which item is the **best** (highest) and which is the **worst** (lowest) in terms of some property. The set of words used to describe the ends of the scales are taken from prior literature. For valence, for example, the raters were asked:

Q1. Which of the four words below is associated with the MOST happiness / pleasure / positiveness / satisfaction / contentedness / hopefulness OR LEAST unhappiness / annoyance / negativeness / dissatisfaction / melancholy / despair? (Four words listed as options.)

Q2. Which of the four words below is associated with the LEAST happiness / pleasure / positiveness / satisfaction / contentedness / hopefulness OR MOST unhappiness / annoyance / negativeness / dissatisfaction / melancholy / despair? (Four words listed as options.)

**split-half reliability**

The score for each word in the lexicon is the proportion of times the item was chosen as the best (highest V/A/D) minus the proportion of times the item was chosen as the worst (lowest V/A/D). The agreement between annotations are evaluated by **split-half reliability**: split the corpus in half and compute the correlations between the annotations in the two halves.

## 20.4 Semi-supervised Induction of Affect Lexicons

Another common way to learn sentiment lexicons is to start from a set of seed words that define two poles of a semantic axis (words like *good* or *bad*), and then find ways to label each word  $w$  by its similarity to the two seed sets. Here we summarize two families of seed-based semi-supervised lexicon induction algorithms, axis-based and graph-based.

### 20.4.1 Semantic Axis Methods

One of the most well-known lexicon induction methods, the [Turney and Littman \(2003\)](#) algorithm, is given seed words like *good* or *bad*, and then for each word  $w$  to be labeled, measures both how similar it is to *good* and how different it is from *bad*. Here we describe a slight extension of the algorithm due to [An et al. \(2018\)](#), which is based on computing a **semantic axis**.

In the first step, we choose seed words by hand. There are two methods for dealing with the fact that the affect of a word is different in different contexts: (1) start with a single large seed lexicon and rely on the induction algorithm to fine-tune it to the domain, or (2) choose different seed words for different genres. [Hellrich et al. \(2019\)](#) suggests that for modeling affect across different historical time periods, starting with a large modern affect dictionary is better than small seedsets tuned to be stable across time. As an example of the second approach, [Hamilton et al. \(2016a\)](#) define one set of seed words for general sentiment analysis, a different set for Twitter, and yet another set for sentiment in financial text:

Domain	Positive seeds	Negative seeds
<b>General</b>	good, lovely, excellent, fortunate, pleasant, delightful, perfect, loved, love, happy	bad, horrible, poor, unfortunate, unpleasant, disgusting, evil, hated, hate, unhappy
<b>Twitter</b>	love, loved, loves, awesome, nice, amazing, best, fantastic, correct, happy	hate, hated, hates, terrible, nasty, awful, worst, horrible, wrong, sad
<b>Finance</b>	successful, excellent, profit, beneficial, improving, improved, success, gains, positive	negligent, loss, volatile, wrong, losses, damages, bad, litigation, failure, down, negative

In the second step, we compute embeddings for each of the pole words. These embeddings can be off-the-shelf word2vec embeddings, or can be computed directly on a specific corpus (for example using a financial corpus if a finance lexicon is the goal), or we can fine-tune off-the-shelf embeddings to a corpus. Fine-tuning is especially important if we have a very specific genre of text but don't have enough data to train good embeddings. In fine-tuning, we begin with off-the-shelf embeddings like word2vec, and continue training them on the small target corpus.

Once we have embeddings for each pole word, we create an embedding that represents each pole by taking the centroid of the embeddings of each of the seed words; recall that the centroid is the multidimensional version of the mean. Given a set of embeddings for the positive seed words  $S^+ = \{E(w_1^+), E(w_2^+), \dots, E(w_n^+)\}$ , and embeddings for the negative seed words  $S^- = \{E(w_1^-), E(w_2^-), \dots, E(w_m^-)\}$ , the

pole centroids are:

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{V}^+ &= \frac{1}{n} \sum_1^n E(w_i^+) \\ \mathbf{V}^- &= \frac{1}{m} \sum_1^m E(w_i^-)\end{aligned}\tag{20.1}$$

The semantic axis defined by the poles is computed just by subtracting the two vectors:

$$\mathbf{V}_{\text{axis}} = \mathbf{V}^+ - \mathbf{V}^-\tag{20.2}$$

$\mathbf{V}_{\text{axis}}$ , the semantic axis, is a vector in the direction of positive sentiment. Finally, we compute (via cosine similarity) the angle between the vector in the direction of positive sentiment and the direction of  $w$ 's embedding. A higher cosine means that  $w$  is more aligned with  $S^+$  than  $S^-$ .

$$\begin{aligned}\text{score}(w) &= (\cos(E(w), \mathbf{V}_{\text{axis}}) \\ &= \frac{E(w) \cdot \mathbf{V}_{\text{axis}}}{\|E(w)\| \|\mathbf{V}_{\text{axis}}\|}\end{aligned}\tag{20.3}$$

If a dictionary of words with sentiment scores is sufficient, we're done! Or if we need to group words into a positive and a negative lexicon, we can use a threshold or other method to give us discrete lexicons.

#### 20.4.2 Label Propagation

An alternative family of methods defines lexicons by propagating sentiment labels on graphs, an idea suggested in early work by [Hatzivassiloglou and McKeown \(1997\)](#). We'll describe the simple SentProp (Sentiment Propagation) algorithm of [Hamilton et al. \(2016a\)](#), which has four steps:

1. **Define a graph:** Given word embeddings, build a weighted lexical graph by connecting each word with its  $k$  nearest neighbors (according to cosine similarity). The weights of the edge between words  $w_i$  and  $w_j$  are set as:

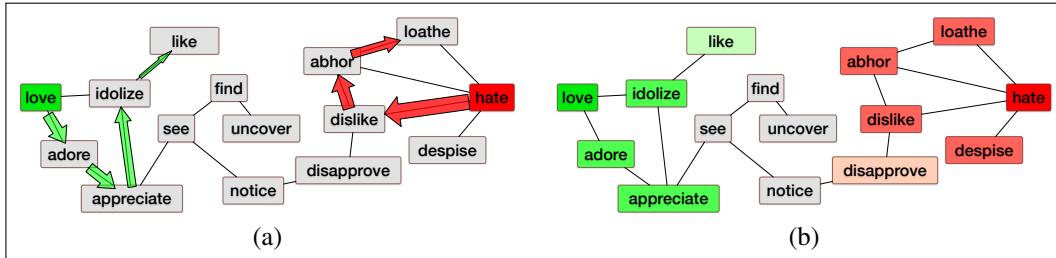
$$\mathbf{E}_{i,j} = \arccos \left( -\frac{\mathbf{w}_i^\top \mathbf{w}_j}{\|\mathbf{w}_i\| \|\mathbf{w}_j\|} \right).\tag{20.4}$$

2. **Define a seed set:** Choose positive and negative seed words.
3. **Propagate polarities from the seed set:** Now we perform a random walk on this graph, starting at the seed set. In a random walk, we start at a node and then choose a node to move to with probability proportional to the edge probability. A word's polarity score for a seed set is proportional to the probability of a random walk from the seed set landing on that word (Fig. 20.7).
4. **Create word scores:** We walk from both positive and negative seed sets, resulting in positive ( $\text{rawscore}^+(w_i)$ ) and negative ( $\text{rawscore}^-(w_i)$ ) raw label scores. We then combine these values into a positive-polarity score as:

$$\text{score}^+(w_i) = \frac{\text{rawscore}^+(w_i)}{\text{rawscore}^+(w_i) + \text{rawscore}^-(w_i)}\tag{20.5}$$

It's often helpful to standardize the scores to have zero mean and unit variance within a corpus.

5. **Assign confidence to each score:** Because sentiment scores are influenced by the seed set, we'd like to know how much the score of a word would change if a different seed set is used. We can use bootstrap sampling to get confidence regions, by computing the propagation  $B$  times over random subsets of the positive and negative seed sets (for example using  $B = 50$  and choosing 7 of the 10 seed words each time). The standard deviation of the bootstrap sampled polarity scores gives a confidence measure.



**Figure 20.7** Intuition of the SENTPROP algorithm. (a) Run random walks from the seed words. (b) Assign polarity scores (shown here as colors green or red) based on the frequency of random walk visits.

### 20.4.3 Other Methods

The core of semisupervised algorithms is the metric for measuring similarity with the seed words. The [Turney and Littman \(2003\)](#) and [Hamilton et al. \(2016a\)](#) approaches above used embedding cosine as the distance metric: words were labeled as positive basically if their embeddings had high cosines with positive seeds and low cosines with negative seeds. Other methods have chosen other kinds of distance metrics besides embedding cosine.

For example the [Hatzivassiloglou and McKeown \(1997\)](#) algorithm uses syntactic cues; two adjectives are considered similar if they were frequently conjoined by *and* and rarely conjoined by *but*. This is based on the intuition that adjectives conjoined by the words *and* tend to have the same polarity; positive adjectives are generally coordinated with positive, negative with negative:

fair and legitimate, corrupt and brutal

but less often positive adjectives coordinated with negative:

\*fair and brutal, \*corrupt and legitimate

By contrast, adjectives conjoined by *but* are likely to be of opposite polarity:

fair but brutal

Another cue to opposite polarity comes from morphological negation (*un-*, *im-*, *-less*). Adjectives with the same root but differing in a morphological negative (*adequate/inadequate, thoughtful/thoughtless*) tend to be of opposite polarity.

Yet another method for finding words that have a similar polarity to seed words is to make use of a thesaurus like WordNet ([Kim and Hovy 2004](#), [Hu and Liu 2004b](#)). A word's synonyms presumably share its polarity while a word's antonyms probably have the opposite polarity. After a seed lexicon is built, each lexicon is updated as follows, possibly iterated.

Lex<sup>+</sup>: Add synonyms of positive words (*well*) and antonyms (like *fine*) of negative words

**Lex<sup>-</sup>**: Add synonyms of negative words (*awful*) and antonyms (like *evil*) of positive words

An extension of this algorithm assigns polarity to WordNet senses, called **Senti-WordNet** (Baccianella et al., 2010). Fig. 20.8 shows some examples.

Synset		Pos	Neg	Obj
good#6	'agreeable or pleasing'	1	0	0
respectable#2 honorable#4 good#4 estimable#2	'deserving of esteem'	0.75	0	0.25
estimable#3 computable#1	'may be computed or estimated'	0	0	1
sting#1 burn#4 bite#2	'cause a sharp or stinging pain'	0	0.875	.125
acute#6	'of critical importance and consequence'	0.625	0.125	.250
acute#4	'of an angle; less than 90 degrees'	0	0	1
acute#1	'having or experiencing a rapid onset and short but severe course'	0	0.5	0.5

**Figure 20.8** Examples from SentiWordNet 3.0 (Baccianella et al., 2010). Note the differences between senses of homonymous words: *estimable*#3 is purely objective, while *estimable*#2 is positive; *acute* can be positive (*acute*#6), negative (*acute*#1), or neutral (*acute*#4).

In this algorithm, polarity is assigned to entire synsets rather than words. A positive lexicon is built from all the synsets associated with 7 positive words, and a negative lexicon from synsets associated with 7 negative words. A classifier is then trained from this data to take a WordNet gloss and decide if the sense being defined is positive, negative or neutral. A further step (involving a random-walk algorithm) assigns a score to each WordNet synset for its degree of positivity, negativity, and neutrality.

In summary, semisupervised algorithms use a human-defined set of seed words for the two poles of a dimension, and use similarity metrics like embedding cosine, coordination, morphology, or thesaurus structure to score words by how similar they are to the positive seeds and how dissimilar to the negative seeds.

## 20.5 Supervised Learning of Word Sentiment

Semi-supervised methods require only minimal human supervision (in the form of seed sets). But sometimes a supervision signal exists in the world and can be made use of. One such signal is the scores associated with *online reviews*.

The web contains an enormous number of online reviews for restaurants, movies, books, or other products, each of which have the text of the review along with an associated review score: a value that may range from 1 star to 5 stars, or scoring 1 to 10. Fig. 20.9 shows samples extracted from restaurant, book, and movie reviews.

We can use this review score as supervision: positive words are more likely to appear in 5-star reviews; negative words in 1-star reviews. And instead of just a binary polarity, this kind of supervision allows us to assign a word a more complex representation of its polarity: its distribution over stars (or other scores).

Thus in a ten-star system we could represent the sentiment of each word as a 10-tuple, each number a score representing the word's association with that polarity level. This association can be a raw count, or a likelihood  $P(w|c)$ , or some other function of the count, for each class  $c$  from 1 to 10.

For example, we could compute the IMDb likelihood of a word like *disappoint(ed/ing)* occurring in a 1 star review by dividing the number of times *disappoint(ed/ing)* occurs in 1-star reviews in the IMDb dataset (8,557) by the total num-

<b>Movie review excerpts (IMDb)</b>	
<b>10</b>	A great movie. This film is just a wonderful experience. It's surreal, zany, witty and slapstick all at the same time. And terrific performances too.
<b>1</b>	This was probably the worst movie I have ever seen. The story went nowhere even though they could have done some interesting stuff with it.
<b>Restaurant review excerpts (Yelp)</b>	
<b>5</b>	The service was impeccable. The food was cooked and seasoned perfectly... The watermelon was perfectly square ... The grilled octopus was ... mouthwatering...
<b>2</b>	...it took a while to get our waters, we got our entree before our starter, and we never received silverware or napkins until we requested them...
<b>Book review excerpts (GoodReads)</b>	
<b>1</b>	I am going to try and stop being deceived by eye-catching titles. I so wanted to like this book and was so disappointed by it.
<b>5</b>	This book is hilarious. I would recommend it to anyone looking for a satirical read with a romantic twist and a narrator that keeps butting in
<b>Product review excerpts (Amazon)</b>	
<b>5</b>	The lid on this blender though is probably what I like the best about it... enables you to pour into something without even taking the lid off! ... the perfect pitcher! ... works fantastic.
<b>1</b>	I hate this blender... It is nearly impossible to get frozen fruit and ice to turn into a smoothie... You have to add a TON of liquid. I also wish it had a spout ...

**Figure 20.9** Excerpts from some reviews from various review websites, all on a scale of 1 to 5 stars except IMDb, which is on a scale of 1 to 10 stars.

ber of words occurring in 1-star reviews (25,395,214), so the IMDb estimate of  $P(disappointing|1)$  is .0003.

A slight modification of this weighting, the normalized likelihood, can be used as an illuminating visualization (Potts, 2011)<sup>1</sup>:

$$\begin{aligned} P(w|c) &= \frac{\text{count}(w,c)}{\sum_{w \in C} \text{count}(w,c)} \\ \text{PottsScore}(w) &= \frac{P(w|c)}{\sum_c P(w|c)} \end{aligned} \quad (20.6)$$

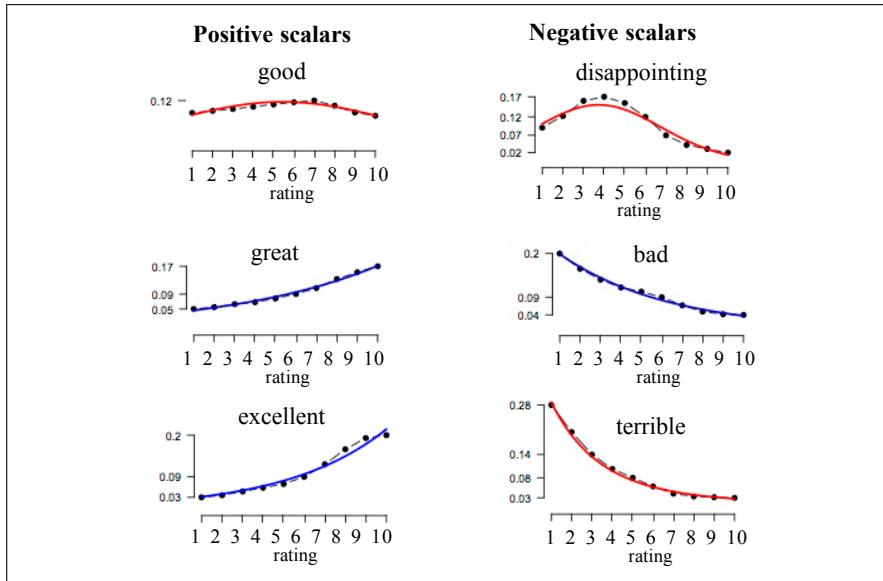
Dividing the IMDb estimate  $P(disappointing|1)$  of .0003 by the sum of the likelihood  $P(w|c)$  over all categories gives a Potts score of 0.10. The word *disappointing* thus is associated with the vector [.10, .12, .14, .14, .13, .11, .08, .06, .06, .05].

**Potts diagram** (Potts, 2011) is a visualization of these word scores, representing the prior sentiment of a word as a distribution over the rating categories.

Fig. 20.10 shows the Potts diagrams for 3 positive and 3 negative scalar adjectives. Note that the curve for strongly positive scalars have the shape of the letter J, while strongly negative scalars look like a reverse J. By contrast, weakly positive and negative scalars have a hump-shape, with the maximum either below the mean (weakly negative words like *disappointing*) or above the mean (weakly positive words like *good*). These shapes offer an illuminating typology of affective meaning.

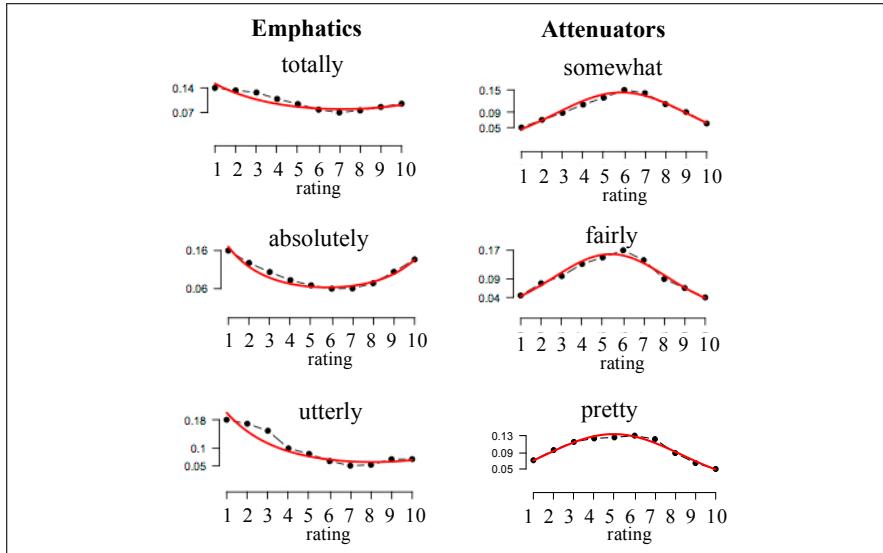
Fig. 20.11 shows the Potts diagrams for emphasizing and attenuating adverbs. Note that emphatics tend to have a J-shape (most likely to occur in the most positive reviews) or a U-shape (most likely to occur in the strongly positive and negative). Attenuators all have the hump-shape, emphasizing the middle of the scale and

<sup>1</sup> Potts shows that the normalized likelihood is an estimate of the posterior  $P(c|w)$  if we make the incorrect but simplifying assumption that all categories  $c$  have equal probability.



**Figure 20.10** Potts diagrams (Potts, 2011) for positive and negative scalar adjectives, showing the J-shape and reverse J-shape for strongly positive and negative adjectives, and the hump-shape for more weakly polarized adjectives.

downplaying both extremes. The diagrams can be used both as a typology of lexical sentiment, and also play a role in modeling sentiment compositionality.



**Figure 20.11** Potts diagrams (Potts, 2011) for emphatic and attenuating adverbs.

In addition to functions like posterior  $P(c|w)$ , likelihood  $P(w|c)$ , or normalized likelihood (Eq. 20.6) many other functions of the count of a word occurring with a sentiment label have been used. We'll introduce some of these on page 409, including ideas like normalizing the counts per writer in Eq. 20.14.

### 20.5.1 Log Odds Ratio Informative Dirichlet Prior

One thing we often want to do with word polarity is to distinguish between words that are more likely to be used in one category of texts than in another. We may, for example, want to know the words most associated with 1 star reviews versus those associated with 5 star reviews. These differences may not be just related to sentiment. We might want to find words used more often by Democratic than Republican members of Congress, or words used more often in menus of expensive restaurants than cheap restaurants.

Given two classes of documents, to find words more associated with one category than another, we could measure the difference in frequencies (is a word  $w$  more frequent in class  $A$  or class  $B$ ?). Or instead of the difference in frequencies we could compute the ratio of frequencies, or compute the log odds ratio (the log of the ratio between the odds of the two words). We could then sort words by whichever association measure we pick, ranging from words overrepresented in category  $A$  to words overrepresented in category  $B$ .

The problem with simple log-likelihood or log odds methods is that they don't work well for very rare words or very frequent words; for words that are very frequent, all differences seem large, and for words that are very rare, no differences seem large.

In this section we walk through the details of one solution to this problem: the "log odds ratio informative Dirichlet prior" method of Monroe et al. (2008) that is a particularly useful method for finding words that are statistically overrepresented in one particular category of texts compared to another. It's based on the idea of using another large corpus to get a prior estimate of what we expect the frequency of each word to be.

**log likelihood ratio**

Let's start with the goal: assume we want to know whether the word *horrible* occurs more in corpus  $i$  or corpus  $j$ . We could compute the **log likelihood ratio**, using  $f^i(w)$  to mean the frequency of word  $w$  in corpus  $i$ , and  $n^i$  to mean the total number of words in corpus  $i$ :

$$\begin{aligned} \text{llr}(\text{horrible}) &= \log \frac{P^i(\text{horrible})}{P^j(\text{horrible})} \\ &= \log P^i(\text{horrible}) - \log P^j(\text{horrible}) \\ &= \log \frac{f^i(\text{horrible})}{n^i} - \log \frac{f^j(\text{horrible})}{n^j} \end{aligned} \quad (20.7)$$

**log odds ratio**

Instead, let's compute the **log odds ratio**: does *horrible* have higher odds in  $i$  or in  $j$ :

$$\begin{aligned} \text{lor}(\text{horrible}) &= \log \left( \frac{P^i(\text{horrible})}{1 - P^i(\text{horrible})} \right) - \log \left( \frac{P^j(\text{horrible})}{1 - P^j(\text{horrible})} \right) \\ &= \log \left( \frac{\frac{f^i(\text{horrible})}{n^i}}{1 - \frac{f^i(\text{horrible})}{n^i}} \right) - \log \left( \frac{\frac{f^j(\text{horrible})}{n^j}}{1 - \frac{f^j(\text{horrible})}{n^j}} \right) \\ &= \log \left( \frac{f^i(\text{horrible})}{n^i - f^i(\text{horrible})} \right) - \log \left( \frac{f^j(\text{horrible})}{n^j - f^j(\text{horrible})} \right) \end{aligned} \quad (20.8)$$

The Dirichlet intuition is to use a large background corpus to get a prior estimate of what we expect the frequency of each word  $w$  to be. We'll do this very simply by

adding the counts from that corpus to the numerator and denominator, so that we’re essentially shrinking the counts toward that prior. It’s like asking how large are the differences between  $i$  and  $j$  given what we would expect given their frequencies in a well-estimated large background corpus.

The method estimates the difference between the frequency of word  $w$  in two corpora  $i$  and  $j$  via the prior-modified log odds ratio for  $w$ ,  $\hat{\delta}_w^{(i-j)}$ , which is estimated as:

$$\hat{\delta}_w^{(i-j)} = \log \left( \frac{f_w^i + \alpha_w}{n^i + \alpha_0 - (f_w^i + \alpha_w)} \right) - \log \left( \frac{f_w^j + \alpha_w}{n^j + \alpha_0 - (f_w^j + \alpha_w)} \right) \quad (20.9)$$

(where  $n^i$  is the size of corpus  $i$ ,  $n^j$  is the size of corpus  $j$ ,  $f_w^i$  is the count of word  $w$  in corpus  $i$ ,  $f_w^j$  is the count of word  $w$  in corpus  $j$ ,  $\alpha_0$  is the size of the background corpus, and  $\alpha_w$  is the count of word  $w$  in the background corpus.)

In addition, [Monroe et al. \(2008\)](#) make use of an estimate for the variance of the log–odds–ratio:

$$\sigma^2(\hat{\delta}_w^{(i-j)}) \approx \frac{1}{f_w^i + \alpha_w} + \frac{1}{f_w^j + \alpha_w} \quad (20.10)$$

The final statistic for a word is then the z-score of its log–odds–ratio:

$$\frac{\hat{\delta}_w^{(i-j)}}{\sqrt{\sigma^2(\hat{\delta}_w^{(i-j)})}} \quad (20.11)$$

The [Monroe et al. \(2008\)](#) method thus modifies the commonly used log odds ratio in two ways: it uses the z-scores of the log odds ratio, which controls for the amount of variance in a word’s frequency, and it uses counts from a background corpus to provide a prior count for words.

[Fig. 20.12](#) shows the method applied to a dataset of restaurant reviews from Yelp, comparing the words used in 1-star reviews to the words used in 5-star reviews ([Jurafsky et al., 2014](#)). The largest difference is in obvious sentiment words, with the 1-star reviews using negative sentiment words like *worse*, *bad*, *awful* and the 5-star reviews using positive sentiment words like *great*, *best*, *amazing*. But there are other illuminating differences. 1-star reviews use logical negation (*no*, *not*), while 5-star reviews use emphatics and emphasize universality (*very*, *highly*, *every*, *always*). 1-star reviews use first person plurals (*we*, *us*, *our*) while 5 star reviews use the second person. 1-star reviews talk about people (*manager*, *waiter*, *customer*) while 5-star reviews talk about dessert and properties of expensive restaurants like courses and atmosphere. See [Jurafsky et al. \(2014\)](#) for more details.

## 20.6 Using Lexicons for Sentiment Recognition

In Chapter 4 we introduced the naive Bayes algorithm for sentiment analysis. The lexicons we have focused on throughout the chapter so far can be used in a number of ways to improve sentiment detection.

In the simplest case, lexicons can be used when we don’t have sufficient training data to build a supervised sentiment analyzer; it can often be expensive to have a human assign sentiment to each document to train the supervised classifier.

Class	Words in 1-star reviews	Class	Words in 5-star reviews
<b>Negative</b>	worst, rude, terrible, horrible, bad, awful, disgusting, bland, tasteless, gross, mediocre, overpriced, worse, poor	<b>Positive</b>	great, best, love(d), delicious, amazing, favorite, perfect, excellent, awesome, friendly, fantastic, fresh, wonderful, incredible, sweet, yum(my)
<b>Negation</b>	no, not	<b>Emphatics/universals</b>	very, highly, perfectly, definitely, absolutely, everything, every, always
<b>1Pl pro</b>	we, us, our	<b>2 pro</b>	you
<b>3 pro</b>	she, he, her, him	<b>Articles</b>	a, the
<b>Past verb</b>	was, were, asked, told, said, did, charged, waited, left, took	<b>Advice</b>	try, recommend
<b>Sequencers</b>	after, then	<b>Conjunct</b>	also, as, well, with, and
<b>Nouns</b>	manager, waitress, waiter, customer, customers, attitude, waste, poisoning, money, bill, minutes	<b>Nouns</b>	atmosphere, dessert, chocolate, wine, course, menu
<b>Irrealis modals</b>	would, should	<b>Auxiliaries</b>	is/'s, can, 've, are
<b>Comp</b>	to, that	<b>Prep, other</b>	in, of, die, city, mouth

**Figure 20.12** The top 50 words associated with one-star and five-star restaurant reviews in a Yelp dataset of 900,000 reviews, using the Monroe et al. (2008) method (Jurafsky et al., 2014).

In such situations, lexicons can be used in a rule-based algorithm for classification. The simplest version is just to use the ratio of positive to negative words: if a document has more positive than negative words (using the lexicon to decide the polarity of each word in the document), it is classified as positive. Often a threshold  $\lambda$  is used, in which a document is classified as positive only if the ratio is greater than  $\lambda$ . If the sentiment lexicon includes positive and negative weights for each word,  $\theta_w^+$  and  $\theta_w^-$ , these can be used as well. Here's a simple such sentiment algorithm:

$$\begin{aligned}
 f^+ &= \sum_{w \text{ s.t. } w \in \text{positivelexicon}} \theta_w^+ \text{count}(w) \\
 f^- &= \sum_{w \text{ s.t. } w \in \text{negativelexicon}} \theta_w^- \text{count}(w) \\
 \text{sentiment} &= \begin{cases} + & \text{if } \frac{f^+}{f^-} > \lambda \\ - & \text{if } \frac{f^-}{f^+} > \lambda \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases} \tag{20.12}
 \end{aligned}$$

If supervised training data is available, these counts computed from sentiment lexicons, sometimes weighted or normalized in various ways, can also be used as features in a classifier along with other lexical or non-lexical features. We return to such algorithms in Section 20.8.

## 20.7 Other tasks: Personality

Many other kinds of affective meaning can be extracted from text and speech. For example detecting a person's **personality** from their language can be useful for dialog systems (users tend to prefer agents that match their personality), and can play a useful role in computational social science questions like understanding how personality is related to other kinds of behavior.

Many theories of human personality are based around a small number of dimensions, such as various versions of the “Big Five” dimensions ([Digman, 1990](#)):

**Extroversion vs. Introversion:** sociable, assertive, playful vs. aloof, reserved, shy

**Emotional stability vs. Neuroticism:** calm, unemotional vs. insecure, anxious

**Agreeableness vs. Disagreeableness:** friendly, cooperative vs. antagonistic, fault-finding

**Conscientiousness vs. Unconscientiousness:** self-disciplined, organized vs. inefficient, careless

**Openness to experience:** intellectual, insightful vs. shallow, unimaginative

A few corpora of text and speech have been labeled for the personality of their author by having the authors take a standard personality test. The essay corpus of [Pennebaker and King \(1999\)](#) consists of 2,479 essays (1.9 million words) from psychology students who were asked to “write whatever comes into your mind” for 20 minutes. The EAR (Electronically Activated Recorder) corpus of [Mehl et al. \(2006\)](#) was created by having volunteers wear a recorder throughout the day, which randomly recorded short snippets of conversation throughout the day, which were then transcribed. The Facebook corpus of [\(Schwartz et al., 2013\)](#) includes 309 million words of Facebook posts from 75,000 volunteers.

For example, here are samples from [Pennebaker and King \(1999\)](#) from an essay written by someone on the neurotic end of the neurotic/emotionally stable scale,

One of my friends just barged in, and I jumped in my seat. This is crazy.  
I should tell him not to do that again. I’m not that fastidious actually.  
But certain things annoy me. The things that would annoy me would  
actually annoy any normal human being, so I know I’m not a freak.

and someone on the emotionally stable end of the scale:

I should excel in this sport because I know how to push my body harder  
than anyone I know, no matter what the test I always push my body  
harder than everyone else. I want to be the best no matter what the sport  
or event. I should also be good at this because I love to ride my bike.

interpersonal  
stance

Another kind of affective meaning is what [Scherer \(2000\)](#) calls **interpersonal stance**, the ‘affective stance taken toward another person in a specific interaction coloring the interpersonal exchange’. Extracting this kind of meaning means automatically labeling participants for whether they are friendly, supportive, distant. For example [Ranganath et al. \(2013\)](#) studied a corpus of speed-dates, in which participants went on a series of 4-minute romantic dates, wearing microphones. Each participant labeled each other for how flirtatious, friendly, awkward, or assertive they were. [Ranganath et al. \(2013\)](#) then used a combination of lexicons and other features to detect these interpersonal stances from text.

## 20.8 Affect Recognition

Detection of emotion, personality, interactional stance, and the other kinds of affective meaning described by [Scherer \(2000\)](#) can be done by generalizing the algorithms described above for detecting sentiment.

The most common algorithms involve supervised classification: a training set is labeled for the affective meaning to be detected, and a classifier is built using features

extracted from the training set. As with sentiment analysis, if the training set is large enough, and the test set is sufficiently similar to the training set, simply using all the words or all the bigrams as features in a powerful classifier like SVM or logistic regression, as described in Fig. 4.2 in Chapter 4, is an excellent algorithm whose performance is hard to beat. Thus we can treat affective meaning classification of a text sample as simple document classification.

Some modifications are nonetheless often necessary for very large datasets. For example, the [Schwartz et al. \(2013\)](#) study of personality, gender, and age using 700 million words of Facebook posts used only a subset of the n-grams of lengths 1-3. Only words and phrases used by at least 1% of the subjects were included as features, and 2-grams and 3-grams were only kept if they had sufficiently high PMI (PMI greater than  $2 * \text{length}$ , where  $\text{length}$  is the number of words):

$$\text{pmi}(\text{phrase}) = \log \frac{p(\text{phrase})}{\prod_{w \in \text{phrase}} p(w)} \quad (20.13)$$

Various weights can be used for the features, including the raw count in the training set, or some normalized probability or log probability. [Schwartz et al. \(2013\)](#), for example, turn feature counts into phrase likelihoods by normalizing them by each subject's total word use.

$$p(\text{phrase} | \text{subject}) = \frac{\text{freq}(\text{phrase}, \text{subject})}{\sum_{\text{phrase}' \in \text{vocab}(\text{subject})} \text{freq}(\text{phrase}', \text{subject})} \quad (20.14)$$

If the training data is sparser, or not as similar to the test set, any of the lexicons we've discussed can play a helpful role, either alone or in combination with all the words and n-grams.

Many possible values can be used for lexicon features. The simplest is just an indicator function, in which the value of a feature  $f_L$  takes the value 1 if a particular text has any word from the relevant lexicon  $L$ . Using the notation of Chapter 4, in which a feature value is defined for a particular output class  $c$  and document  $x$ .

$$f_L(c, x) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } \exists w : w \in L \ \& \ w \in x \ \& \ \text{class} = c \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

Alternatively the value of a feature  $f_L$  for a particular lexicon  $L$  can be the total number of word *tokens* in the document that occur in  $L$ :

$$f_L = \sum_{w \in L} \text{count}(w)$$

For lexica in which each word is associated with a score or weight, the count can be multiplied by a weight  $\theta_w^L$ :

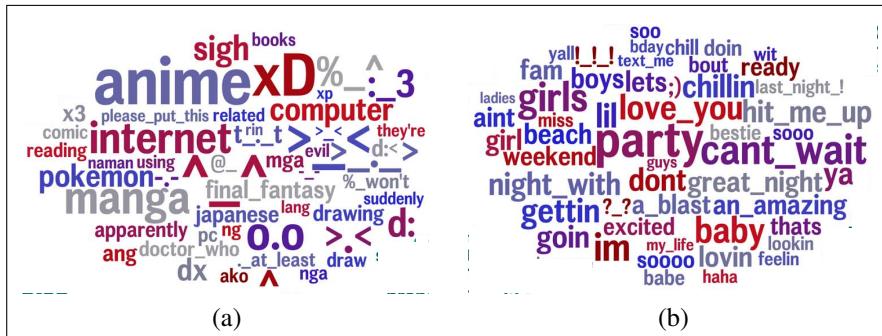
$$f_L = \sum_{w \in L} \theta_w^L \text{count}(w)$$

Counts can alternatively be logged or normalized per writer as in Eq. 20.14.

However they are defined, these lexicon features are then used in a supervised classifier to predict the desired affective category for the text or document. Once a classifier is trained, we can examine which lexicon features are associated with

which classes. For a classifier like logistic regression the feature weight gives an indication of how associated the feature is with the class.

Thus, for example, [Mairesse and Walker \(2008\)](#) found that for classifying personality, for the dimension *Agreeable*, the LIWC lexicons *Family* and *Home* were positively associated while the LIWC lexicons *anger* and *swear* were negatively associated. By contrast, Extroversion was positively associated with the *Friend*, *Religion* and *Self* lexicons, and Emotional Stability was positively associated with *Sports* and negatively associated with *Negative Emotion*.



**Figure 20.13** Word clouds from [Schwartz et al. \(2013\)](#), showing words highly associated with introversion (left) or extroversion (right). The size of the word represents the association strength (the regression coefficient), while the color (ranging from cold to hot) represents the relative frequency of the word/phrase (from low to high).

In the situation in which we use all the words and phrases in the document as potential features, we can use the resulting weights from the learned regression classifier as the basis of an affective lexicon. In the Extroversion/Introversion classifier of [Schwartz et al. \(2013\)](#), ordinary least-squares regression is used to predict the value of a personality dimension from all the words and phrases. The resulting regression coefficient for each word or phrase can be used as an association value with the predicted dimension. The word clouds in Fig. 20.13 show an example of words associated with introversion (a) and extroversion (b). Note that regression weights are not guaranteed to represent the correct association when word counts are correlated, and so it is often necessary to first prune the list of words if exact values are needed.

## 20.9 Lexicon-based methods for Entity-Centric Affect

What if we want to get an affect score not for an entire document, but for a particular entity in the text? The entity-centric method of [Field and Tsvetkov \(2019\)](#) combines affect lexicons with contextual embeddings to assign an affect score to an entity in text. In the context of affect about people, they relabel the Valence/Arousal/Dominance dimension as Sentiment/Agency/Power. The algorithm first trains classifiers to map embeddings to scores:

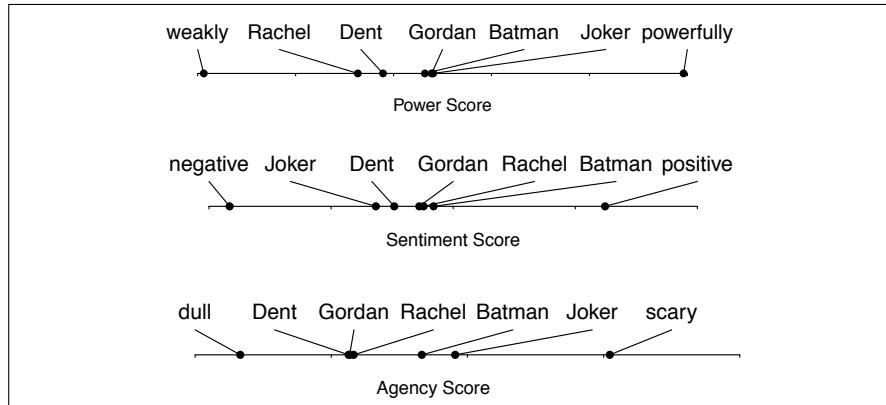
1. For each word  $w$  in the training corpus:
  - (a) Use off-the-shelf pretrained encoders (like BERT) to extract a contextual embedding  $e$  for each instance of the word. No additional fine-tuning is done.

- (b) Average over the  $\mathbf{e}$  embeddings of each instance of  $w$  to obtain a single embedding vector for one training point  $w$ .
  - (c) Use the NRC VAD Lexicon to get S, A, and P scores for  $w$ .
2. Train (three) regression models on all words  $w$  to predict V, A, D scores from a word's average embedding.

Now given an entity mention  $m$  in a text, we assign affect scores as follows:

1. Use the same pretrained LM to get contextual embeddings for  $m$  in context.
2. Feed this embedding through the 3 regression models to get S, A, P scores for the entity.

This results in a (S,A,P) tuple for a given entity mention; To get scores for the representation of an entity in a complete document, we can run coreference resolution and average the (S,A,P) scores for all the mentions. Fig. 20.14 shows the scores from their algorithm for characters from the movie *The Dark Knight* when run on Wikipedia plot summary texts with gold coreference.



**Figure 20.14** Power (dominance), sentiment (valence) and agency (arousal) for characters in the movie *The Dark Knight* computed from embeddings trained on the NRC VAD Lexicon. Note the protagonist (Batman) and the antagonist (the Joker) have high power and agency scores but differ in sentiment, while the love interest Rachel has low power and agency but high sentiment.

## 20.10 Connotation Frames

connotation frame

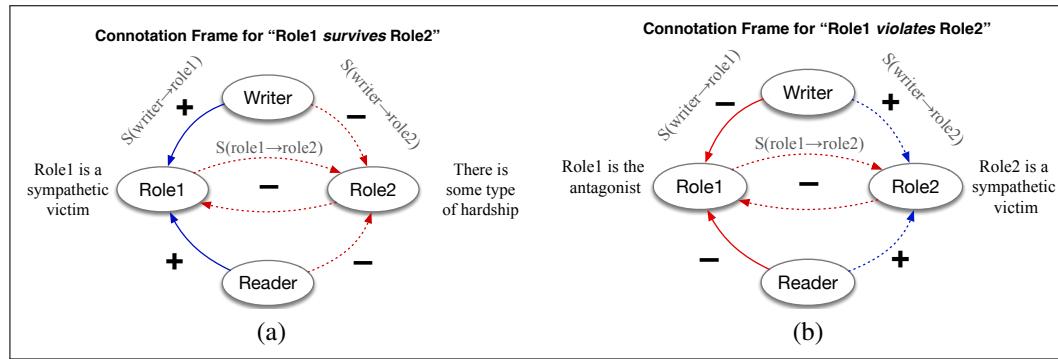
The lexicons we've described so far define a word as a point in affective space. A **connotation frame**, by contrast, is a lexicon that incorporates a richer kind of grammatical structure, by combining affective lexicons with the frame semantic lexicons of Chapter 10. The basic insight of connotation frame lexicons is that a predicate like a verb expresses connotations about the verb's arguments (Rashkin et al. 2016, Rashkin et al. 2017).

Consider sentences like:

- (20.15) Country A violated the sovereignty of Country B  
 (20.16) the teenager ... survived the Boston Marathon bombing”

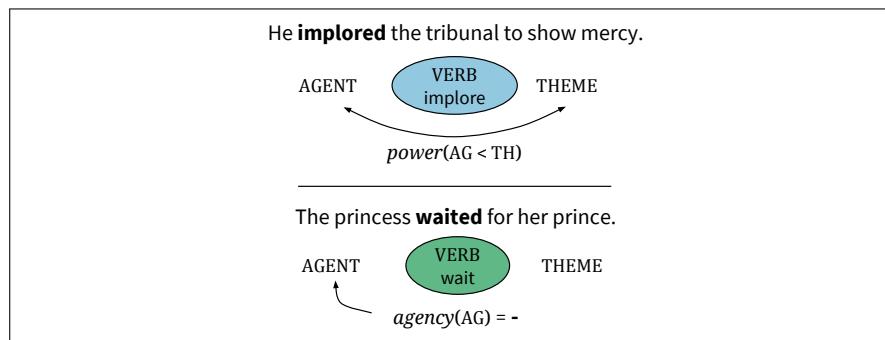
By using the verb *violate* in (20.15), the author is expressing their sympathies with Country B, portraying Country B as a victim, and expressing antagonism toward

the agent Country A. By contrast, in using the verb *survive*, the author of (20.16) is expressing that the bombing is a negative experience, and the subject of the sentence, the teenager, is a sympathetic character. These aspects of connotation are inherent in the meaning of the verbs *violate* and *survive*, as shown in Fig. 20.15.



**Figure 20.15** Connotation frames for *survive* and *violate*. (a) For *survive*, the writer and reader have positive sentiment toward Role1, the subject, and negative sentiment toward Role2, the direct object. (b) For *violate*, the writer and reader have positive sentiment instead toward Role2, the direct object.

The connotation frame lexicons of Rashkin et al. (2016) and Rashkin et al. (2017) also express other connotative aspects of the predicate toward each argument, including the *effect* (something bad happened to x) *value*: (x is valuable), and *mental state*: (x is distressed by the event). Connotation frames can also mark the *power differential* between the arguments (using the verb *implore* means that the theme argument has greater power than the agent), and the *agency* of each argument (*waited* is low agency). Fig. 20.16 shows a visualization from Sap et al. (2017).



**Figure 20.16** The connotation frames of Sap et al. (2017), showing that the verb *implore* implies the agent has lower power than the theme (in contrast, say, with a verb like *demanded*), and showing the low level of agency of the subject of *waited*. Figure from Sap et al. (2017).

Connotation frames can be built by hand (Sap et al., 2017), or they can be learned by supervised learning (Rashkin et al., 2016), for example using hand-labeled training data to supervise classifiers for each of the individual relations, e.g., whether  $S(\text{writer} \rightarrow \text{Role1})$  is + or -, and then improving accuracy via global constraints across all relations.

## 20.11 Summary

- Many kinds of affective states can be distinguished, including *emotions*, *moods*, *attitudes* (which include *sentiment*), *interpersonal stance*, and *personality*.
- **Emotion** can be represented by fixed atomic units often called **basic emotions**, or as points in space defined by dimensions like **valence** and **arousal**.
- Words have **connotational** aspects related to these affective states, and this connotational aspect of word meaning can be represented in lexicons.
- Affective lexicons can be built by hand, using **crowd sourcing** to label the affective content of each word.
- Lexicons can be built with **semi-supervised**, bootstrapping from seed words using similarity metrics like embedding cosine.
- Lexicons can be learned in a **fully supervised** manner, when a convenient training signal can be found in the world, such as ratings assigned by users on a review site.
- Words can be assigned weights in a lexicon by using various functions of word counts in training texts, and ratio metrics like **log odds ratio informative Dirichlet prior**.
- Personality is often represented as a point in 5-dimensional space.
- Affect can be detected, just like sentiment, by using standard supervised **text classification** techniques, using all the words or bigrams in a text as features. Additional features can be drawn from counts of words in lexicons.
- Lexicons can also be used to detect affect in a **rule-based classifier** by picking the simple majority sentiment based on counts of words in each lexicon.
- **Connotation frames** express richer relations of affective meaning that a predicate encodes about its arguments.

## Bibliographical and Historical Notes

The idea of formally representing the subjective meaning of words began with [Osgood et al. \(1957\)](#), the same pioneering study that first proposed the vector space model of meaning described in Chapter 6. [Osgood et al. \(1957\)](#) had participants rate words on various scales, and ran factor analysis on the ratings. The most significant factor they uncovered was the evaluative dimension, which distinguished between pairs like *good/bad*, *valuable/worthless*, *pleasant/unpleasant*. This work influenced the development of early dictionaries of sentiment and affective meaning in the field of **content analysis** ([Stone et al., 1966](#)).

**subjectivity**

[Wiebe \(1994\)](#) began an influential line of work on detecting **subjectivity** in text, beginning with the task of identifying subjective sentences and the subjective characters who are described in the text as holding private states, beliefs or attitudes. Learned sentiment lexicons such as the polarity lexicons of [Hatzivassiloglou and McKeown \(1997\)](#) were shown to be a useful feature in subjectivity detection ([Hatzivassiloglou and Wiebe 2000, Wiebe 2000](#)).

The term **sentiment** seems to have been introduced in 2001 by [Das and Chen \(2001\)](#), to describe the task of measuring market sentiment by looking at the words in stock trading message boards. In the same paper [Das and Chen \(2001\)](#) also proposed

the use of a sentiment lexicon. The list of words in the lexicon was created by hand, but each word was assigned weights according to how much it discriminated a particular class (say buy versus sell) by maximizing across-class variation and minimizing within-class variation. The term *sentiment*, and the use of lexicons, caught on quite quickly (e.g., *inter alia*, Turney 2002). Pang et al. (2002) first showed the power of using all the words without a sentiment lexicon; see also Wang and Manning (2012).

Most of the semi-supervised methods we describe for extending sentiment dictionaries drew on the early idea that synonyms and antonyms tend to co-occur in the same sentence (Miller and Charles 1991, Justeson and Katz 1991, Riloff and Shepherd 1997). Other semi-supervised methods for learning cues to affective meaning rely on information extraction techniques, like the AutoSlog pattern extractors (Riloff and Wiebe, 2003). Graph based algorithms for sentiment were first suggested by Hatzivassiloglou and McKeown (1997), and graph propagation became a standard method (Zhu and Ghahramani 2002, Zhu et al. 2003, Zhou et al. 2004, Velikovich et al. 2010). Crowdsourcing can also be used to improve precision by filtering the result of semi-supervised lexicon learning (Riloff and Shepherd 1997, Fast et al. 2016).

Much recent work focuses on ways to learn embeddings that directly encode sentiment or other properties, such as the DENSIFIER algorithm of Rothe et al. (2016) that learns to transform the embedding space to focus on sentiment (or other) information.

# Coreference Resolution

*and even Stigand, the patriotic archbishop of Canterbury, found it advisable—”*

*‘Found WHAT?’ said the Duck.*

*‘Found IT,’ the Mouse replied rather crossly: ‘of course you know what “it”means.’*

*‘I know what “it”means well enough, when I find a thing,’ said the Duck: ‘it’s generally a frog or a worm. The question is, what did the archbishop find?’*

Lewis Carroll, *Alice in Wonderland*

An important component of language understanding is knowing *who* is being talked about in a text. Consider the following passage:

- (21.1) Victoria Chen, CFO of Megabucks Banking, saw her pay jump to \$2.3 million, as the 38-year-old became the company’s president. It is widely known that she came to Megabucks from rival Lotsabucks.

Each of the underlined phrases in this passage is used by the writer to refer to a person named Victoria Chen. We call linguistic expressions like *her* or *Victoria Chen* **mentions** or **referring expressions**, and the discourse entity that is referred to (Victoria Chen) the **referent**. (To distinguish between referring expressions and their referents, we italicize the former.)<sup>1</sup> Two or more referring expressions that are used to refer to the same discourse entity are said to **corefer**; thus, *Victoria Chen* and *she* corefer in (21.1).

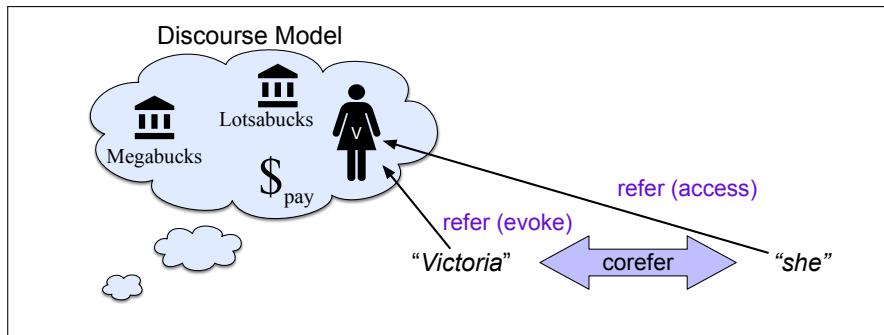
Coreference is an important component of natural language understanding. A dialogue system that has just told the user “*There is a 2pm flight on United and a 4pm one on Cathay Pacific*” must know which flight the user means by “*I’ll take the second one*”. A question answering system that uses Wikipedia to answer a question about Marie Curie must know who *she* was in the sentence “*She was born in Warsaw*”. And a machine translation system translating from a language like Spanish, in which pronouns can be dropped, must use coreference from the previous sentence to decide whether the Spanish sentence “*Me encanta el conocimiento*”, *dice*.” should be translated as “*I love knowledge*”, *he says*”, or “*I love knowledge*”, *she says*”. Indeed, this example comes from an actual news article in *El País* about a female professor and was mistranslated as “he” in machine translation because of inaccurate coreference resolution (Schiebinger, 2013).

Natural language understanding systems (and humans) interpret linguistic expressions with respect to a **discourse model** (Karttunen, 1969). A discourse model (Fig. 21.1) is a mental model that the understander builds incrementally when interpreting a text, containing representations of the entities referred to in the text, as well as properties of the entities and relations among them. When a referent is first mentioned in a discourse, we say that a representation for it is **evoked** into the model. Upon subsequent mention, this representation is **accessed** from the model.

mention  
referent  
corefer

discourse  
model  
evoked  
accessed

<sup>1</sup> As a convenient shorthand, we sometimes speak of a referring expression referring to a referent, e.g., saying that *she* refers to Victoria Chen. However, the reader should keep in mind that what we really mean is that the speaker is performing the act of referring to Victoria Chen by uttering *she*.



**Figure 21.1** How mentions evoke and access discourse entities in a discourse model.

**anaphora**  
**anaphor**  
**antecedent**  
**singleton**  
**coreference resolution**

Reference in a text to an entity that has been previously introduced into the discourse is called **anaphora**, and the referring expression used is said to be an **anaphor**, or anaphoric.<sup>2</sup> In passage (21.1), the pronouns *she* and *her* and the definite NP *the 38-year-old* are therefore anaphoric. The anaphor corefers with a prior mention (in this case *Victoria Chen*) that is called the **antecedent**. Not every referring expression is an antecedent. An entity that has only a single mention in a text (like *Lotsabucks* in (21.1)) is called a **singleton**.

**coreference chain cluster**

In this chapter we focus on the task of **coreference resolution**. Coreference resolution is the task of determining whether two mentions *corefer*, by which we mean they refer to the same entity in the discourse model (the same *discourse entity*). The set of coreferring expressions is often called a **coreference chain** or a **cluster**. For example, in processing (21.1), a coreference resolution algorithm would need to find at least four coreference chains, corresponding to the four entities in the discourse model in Fig. 21.1.

1. {*Victoria Chen, her, the 38-year-old, She*}
2. {*Megabucks Banking, the company, Megabucks*}
3. {*her pay*}
4. {*Lotsabucks*}

**entity linking**

Note that mentions can be nested; for example the mention *her* is syntactically part of another mention, *her pay*, referring to a completely different discourse entity. Coreference resolution thus comprises two tasks (although they are often performed jointly): (1) identifying the mentions, and (2) clustering them into coreference chains/discourse entities.

We said that two mentions corefered if they are associated with the same *discourse entity*. But often we'd like to go further, deciding which real world entity is associated with this discourse entity. For example, the mention *Washington* might refer to the US state, or the capital city, or the person George Washington; the interpretation of the sentence will of course be very different for each of these. The task of **entity linking** (Ji and Grishman, 2011) or **entity resolution** is the task of mapping a discourse entity to some real-world individual.<sup>3</sup> We usually operationalize entity

<sup>2</sup> We will follow the common NLP usage of *anaphor* to mean any mention that has an antecedent, rather than the more narrow usage to mean only mentions (like pronouns) whose interpretation depends on the antecedent (under the narrower interpretation, repeated names are not anaphors).

<sup>3</sup> Computational linguistics/NLP thus differs in its use of the term *reference* from the field of formal semantics, which uses the words *reference* and *coreference* to describe the relation between a mention and a real-world entity. By contrast, we follow the functional linguistics tradition in which a mention refers to a *discourse entity* (Webber, 1978) and the relation between a discourse entity and the real world individual requires an additional step of *linking*.

linking or resolution by mapping to an *ontology*: a list of entities in the world, like a gazeteer (Chapter 15). Perhaps the most common ontology used for this task is Wikipedia; each Wikipedia page acts as the unique id for a particular entity. Thus the entity linking task of **wikification** (Mihalcea and Csomai, 2007) is the task of deciding which Wikipedia page corresponding to an individual is being referred to by a mention. But entity linking can be done with any ontology; for example if we have an ontology of genes, we can link mentions of genes in text to the disambiguated gene name in the ontology.

In the next sections we introduce the task of coreference resolution in more detail, and offer a variety of architectures for resolution, from simple deterministic baseline algorithms to state-of-the-art neural models.

Before turning to algorithms, however, we mention some important tasks we will only touch on briefly at the end of this chapter. First are the famous Winograd Schema problems (so-called because they were first pointed out by Terry Winograd in his dissertation). These entity coreference resolution problems are designed to be too difficult to be solved by the resolution methods we describe in this chapter, and the kind of real-world knowledge they require has made them a kind of challenge task for natural language understanding. For example, consider the task of determining the correct antecedent of the pronoun *they* in the following example:

- (21.2) The city council denied the demonstrators a permit because
- they feared violence.
  - they advocated violence.

Determining the correct antecedent for the pronoun *they* requires understanding that the second clause is intended as an explanation of the first clause, and also that city councils are perhaps more likely than demonstrators to fear violence and that demonstrators might be more likely to advocate violence. Solving Winograd Schema problems requires finding way to represent or discover the necessary real world knowledge.

**event  
coreference**

A problem we won't discuss in this chapter is the related task of **event coreference**, deciding whether two event mentions (such as the *buy* and the *acquisition* in these two sentences from the ECB+ corpus) refer to the same event:

- (21.3) AMD agreed to [**buy**] Markham, Ontario-based ATI for around \$5.4 billion in cash and stock, the companies announced Monday.  
 (21.4) The [**acquisition**] would turn AMD into one of the world's largest providers of graphics chips.

**discourse deixis**

Event mentions are much harder to detect than entity mentions, since they can be verbal as well as nominal. Once detected, the same mention-pair and mention-ranking models used for entities are often applied to events.

An even more complex kind of coreference is **discourse deixis** (Webber, 1988), in which an anaphor refers back to a discourse segment, which can be quite hard to delimit or categorize, like the examples in (21.5) adapted from Webber (1991):

- (21.5) According to Soleil, Beau just opened a restaurant
- But *that* turned out to be a lie.
  - But *that* was false.
  - That* struck me as a funny way to describe the situation.

The referent of *that* is a speech act (see Chapter 24) in (21.5a), a proposition in (21.5b), and a manner of description in (21.5c). We don't give algorithms in this chapter for these difficult types of **non-nominal antecedents**, but see Kolhatkar et al. (2018) for a survey.

## 21.1 Coreference Phenomena: Linguistic Background

We now offer some linguistic background on reference phenomena. We introduce the four types of referring expressions (definite and indefinite NPs, pronouns, and names), describe how these are used to evoke and access entities in the discourse model, and talk about linguistic features of the anaphor/antecedent relation (like number/gender agreement, or properties of verb semantics).

### 21.1.1 Types of Referring Expressions

**Indefinite Noun Phrases:** The most common form of indefinite reference in English is marked with the determiner *a* (or *an*), but it can also be marked by a quantifier such as *some* or even the determiner *this*. Indefinite reference generally introduces into the discourse context entities that are new to the hearer.

- (21.6) a. Mrs. Martin was so very kind as to send Mrs. Goddard *a beautiful goose*.  
 b. He had gone round one day to bring her *some walnuts*.  
 c. I saw *this beautiful cauliflower* today.

**Definite Noun Phrases:** Definite reference, such as via NPs that use the English article *the*, refers to an entity that is identifiable to the hearer. An entity can be identifiable to the hearer because it has been mentioned previously in the text and thus is already represented in the discourse model:

- (21.7) It concerns a white stallion which I have sold to an officer. But the pedigree of *the white stallion* was not fully established.

Alternatively, an entity can be identifiable because it is contained in the hearer's set of beliefs about the world, or the uniqueness of the object is implied by the description itself, in which case it evokes a representation of the referent into the discourse model, as in (21.9):

- (21.8) I read about it in the *New York Times*.
- (21.9) Have you seen the car keys?

These last uses are quite common; more than half of definite NPs in newswire texts are non-anaphoric, often because they are the first time an entity is mentioned (Poesio and Vieira 1998, Bean and Riloff 1999).

**Pronouns:** Another form of definite reference is pronominalization, used for entities that are extremely salient in the discourse, (as we discuss below):

- (21.10) Emma smiled and chatted as cheerfully as *she* could,

Pronouns can also participate in **cataphora**, in which they are mentioned before their referents are, as in (21.11).

- (21.11) Even before *she* saw *it*, Dorothy had been thinking about the Emerald City every day.

Here, the pronouns *she* and *it* both occur *before* their referents are introduced.

Pronouns also appear in quantified contexts in which they are considered to be **bound**, as in (21.12).

- (21.12) Every dancer brought *her* left arm forward.

Under the relevant reading, *her* does not refer to some woman in context, but instead behaves like a variable bound to the quantified expression *every dancer*. We are not concerned with the bound interpretation of pronouns in this chapter.

In some languages, pronouns can appear as clitics attached to a word, like *lo* ('it') in this Spanish example from AnCora (Recasens and Martí, 2010):

- (21.13) La intención es reconocer el gran prestigio que tiene la maratón y unirlo con esta gran carrera.  
 'The aim is to recognize the great prestige that the Marathon has and join it with this great race.'

**Demonstrative Pronouns:** Demonstrative pronouns *this* and *that* can appear either alone or as determiners, for instance, *this ingredient*, *that spice*:

- (21.14) I just bought a copy of Thoreau's *Walden*. I had bought one five years ago.  
*That one* had been very tattered; *this one* was in much better condition.

Note that *this NP* is ambiguous; in colloquial spoken English, it can be indefinite, as in (21.6), or definite, as in (21.14).

#### zero anaphor

**Zero Anaphora:** Instead of using a pronoun, in some languages (including Chinese, Japanese, and Italian) it is possible to have an anaphor that has no lexical realization at all, called a **zero anaphor** or zero pronoun, as in the following Italian and Japanese examples from Poesio et al. (2016):

- (21.15) EN [John]<sub>i</sub> went to visit some friends. On the way [he]<sub>i</sub> bought some wine.  
 IT [Giovanni]<sub>i</sub> andò a far visita a degli amici. Per via  $\phi_i$  comprò del vino.  
 JA [John]<sub>i</sub>-wa yujin-o houmon-sita. Tochu-de  $\phi_i$  wain-o ka-tta.

or this Chinese example:

- (21.16) [我] 前一会精神上太紧张。[0] 现在比较平静了  
 [I] was too nervous a while ago. ... [0] am now calmer.

Zero anaphors complicate the task of mention detection in these languages.

**Names:** Names (such as of people, locations, or organizations) can be used to refer to both new and old entities in the discourse:

- (21.17) a. **Miss Woodhouse** certainly had not done him justice.  
 b. **International Business Machines** sought patent compensation from Amazon; **IBM** had previously sued other companies.

#### information status discourse-new discourse-old

### 21.1.2 Information Status

The way referring expressions are used to evoke new referents into the discourse (introducing new information), or access old entities from the model (old information), is called their **information status** or **information structure**. Entities can be **discourse-new** or **discourse-old**, and indeed it is common to distinguish at least three kinds of entities informationally (Prince, 1981a):

**new NPs:**

**brand new NPs:** these introduce entities that are discourse-new and hearer-new like *a fruit* or *some walnuts*.

**unused NPs:** these introduce entities that are discourse-new but hearer-old (like *Hong Kong*, *Marie Curie*, or *the New York Times*).

**old NPs:** also called **evoked NPs**, these introduce entities that already in the discourse model, hence are both discourse-old and hearer-old, like *it* in "*I went to a new restaurant. It was...*".

**inferredables:** these introduce entities that are neither hearer-old nor discourse-old, but the hearer can infer their existence by reasoning based on other entities that are in the discourse. Consider the following examples:

- (21.18) I went to a superb restaurant yesterday. *The chef* had just opened it.
- (21.19) Mix flour, butter and water. Knead *the dough* until shiny.

**bridging inference**

Neither *the chef* nor *the dough* were in the discourse model based on the first sentence of either example, but the reader can make a **bridging inference** that these entities should be added to the discourse model and associated with the restaurant and the ingredients, based on world knowledge that restaurants have chefs and dough is the result of mixing flour and liquid (Haviland and Clark 1974, Webber and Baldwin 1992, Nissim et al. 2004, Hou et al. 2018).

**given-new**

The form of an NP gives strong clues to its information status. We often talk about an entity's position on the **given-new** dimension, the extent to which the referent is **given** (salient in the discourse, easier for the hearer to call to mind, predictable by the hearer), versus **new** (non-salient in the discourse, unpredictable) (Chafe 1976, Prince 1981b, Gundel et al. 1993). A referent that is very **accessible** (Ariel, 2001) i.e., very salient in the hearer's mind or easy to call to mind, can be referred to with less linguistic material. For example pronouns are used only when the referent has a high degree of activation or **salience** in the discourse model.<sup>4</sup> By contrast, less salient entities, like a new referent being introduced to the discourse, will need to be introduced with a longer and more explicit referring expression to help the hearer recover the referent.

**accessible**

Thus when an entity is first introduced into a discourse its mentions are likely to have full names, titles or roles, or appositive or restrictive relative clauses, as in the introduction of our protagonist in (21.1): *Victoria Chen, CFO of Megabucks Banking*. As an entity is discussed over a discourse, it becomes more salient to the hearer and its mentions on average typically becomes shorter and less informative, for example with a shortened name (for example *Ms. Chen*), a definite description (*the 38-year-old*), or a pronoun (*she* or *her*) (Hawkins 1978). However, this change in length is not monotonic, and is sensitive to discourse structure (Grosz 1977b, Reichman 1985, Fox 1993).

**salience**

### 21.1.3 Complications: Non-Referring Expressions

Many noun phrases or other nominals are not referring expressions, although they may bear a confusing superficial resemblance. For example in some of the earliest computational work on reference resolution, Karttunen (1969) pointed out that the NP *a car* in the following example does not create a discourse referent:

- (21.20) Janet doesn't have *a car*.

and cannot be referred back to by anaphoric *it* or *the car*:

- (21.21) \**It* is a Toyota.

- (21.22) \**The car* is red.

We summarize here four common types of structures that are not counted as mentions in coreference tasks and hence complicate the task of mention-detection:

<sup>4</sup> Pronouns also usually (but not always) refer to entities that were introduced no further than one or two sentences back in the ongoing discourse, whereas definite noun phrases can often refer further back.

**Appositives:** An appositional structure is a noun phrase that appears next to a head noun phrase, describing the head. In English they often appear in commas, like “a unit of UAL” appearing in apposition to the NP *United*, or *CFO of Megabucks Banking* in apposition to *Victoria Chen*.

- (21.23) Victoria Chen, CFO of Megabucks Banking, saw ...
- (21.24) United, a unit of UAL, matched the fares.

Appositional NPs are not referring expressions, instead functioning as a kind of supplementary parenthetical description of the head NP. Nonetheless, sometimes it is useful to link these phrases to an entity they describe, and so some datasets like ntnNotes mark appositional relationships.

**Predicative and Prednominal NPs:** Predicative or attributive NPs describe properties of the head noun. In *United is a unit of UAL*, the NP *a unit of UAL* describes a property of *United*, rather than referring to a distinct entity. Thus they are not marked as mentions in coreference tasks; in our example the NPs *\$2.3 million* and *the company's president*, are attributive, describing properties of *her pay* and *the 38-year-old*; Example (21.27) shows a Chinese example in which the predicate NP (中国最大的城市; *China's biggest city*) is not a mention.

- (21.25) her pay jumped to *\$2.3 million*
- (21.26) the 38-year-old became *the company's president*
- (21.27) 上海是[中国最大的城市] [Shanghai is *China's biggest city*]

**expletive clefts** **Expletives:** Many uses of pronouns like *it* in English and corresponding pronouns in other languages are not referential. Such **expletive** or **pleonastic** cases include *it is raining*, in idioms like *hit it off*, or in particular syntactic situations like **clefts** (21.28a) or **extraposition** (21.28b):

- (21.28) a. *It was Emma Goldman who founded Mother Earth*
- b. *It surprised me that there was a herring hanging on her wall.*

**Generics:** Another kind of expression that does not refer back to an entity explicitly evoked in the text is *generic* reference. Consider (21.29).

- (21.29) I love mangos. *They* are very tasty.

Here, *they* refers, not to a particular mango or set of mangos, but instead to the class of mangos in general. The pronoun *you* can also be used generically:

- (21.30) In July in San Francisco *you* have to wear a jacket.

#### 21.1.4 Linguistic Properties of the Coreference Relation

Now that we have seen the linguistic properties of individual referring expressions we turn to properties of the antecedent/anaphor pair. Understanding these properties is helpful both in designing novel features and performing error analyses.

**Number Agreement:** Referring expressions and their referents must generally agree in number; English *she/her/he/him/his/it* are singular, *we/us/they/them* are plural, and *you* is unspecified for number. So a plural antecedent like *the chefs* cannot generally corefer with a singular anaphor like *she*. However, algorithms cannot enforce number agreement too strictly. First, semantically plural entities can be referred to by either *it* or *they*:

- (21.31) IBM announced a new machine translation product yesterday. *They* have been working on it for 20 years.

**singular they** Second, **singular they** has become much more common, in which *they* is used to describe singular individuals, often useful because *they* is gender neutral. Although recently increasing, singular they is quite old, part of English for many centuries.<sup>5</sup>

**Person Agreement:** English distinguishes between first, second, and third person, and a pronoun's antecedent must agree with the pronoun in person. Thus a third person pronoun (*he*, *she*, *they*, *him*, *her*, *them*, *his*, *her*, *their*) must have a third person antecedent (one of the above or any other noun phrase). However, phenomena like quotation can cause exceptions; in this example *I*, *my*, and *she* are coreferent:

- (21.32) “I voted for Nader because he was most aligned with my values,” she said.

**Gender or Noun Class Agreement:** In many languages, all nouns have grammatical gender or noun class<sup>6</sup> and pronouns generally agree with the grammatical gender of their antecedent. In English this occurs only with third-person singular pronouns, which distinguish between *male* (*he*, *him*, *his*), *female* (*she*, *her*), and *nonpersonal* (*it*) grammatical genders. Non-binary pronouns like *ze* or *hir* may also occur in more recent texts. Knowing which gender to associate with a name in text can be complex, and may require world knowledge about the individual. Some examples:

- (21.33) Maryam has a theorem. She is exciting. (she=Maryam, not the theorem)  
 (21.34) Maryam has a theorem. It is exciting. (it=the theorem, not Maryam)

**reflexive Binding Theory Constraints:** The **binding theory** is a name for syntactic constraints on the relations between a mention and an antecedent in the same sentence (Chomsky, 1981). Oversimplifying a bit, **reflexive** pronouns like *himself* and *herself* corefer with the subject of the most immediate clause that contains them (21.35), whereas nonreflexives cannot corefer with this subject (21.36).

- (21.35) Janet bought herself a bottle of fish sauce. [herself=Janet]  
 (21.36) Janet bought her a bottle of fish sauce. [her≠Janet]

**Recency:** Entities introduced in recent utterances tend to be more salient than those introduced from utterances further back. Thus, in (21.37), the pronoun *it* is more likely to refer to Jim's map than the doctor's map.

- (21.37) The doctor found an old map in the captain's chest. Jim found an even older map hidden on the shelf. It described an island.

**Grammatical Role:** Entities mentioned in subject position are more salient than those in object position, which are in turn more salient than those mentioned in oblique positions. Thus although the first sentence in (21.38) and (21.39) expresses roughly the same propositional content, the preferred referent for the pronoun *he* varies with the subject—John in (21.38) and Bill in (21.39).

- (21.38) Billy Bones went to the bar with Jim Hawkins. He called for a glass of rum. [ he = Billy ]  
 (21.39) Jim Hawkins went to the bar with Billy Bones. He called for a glass of rum. [ he = Jim ]

<sup>5</sup> Here's a bound pronoun example from Shakespeare's *Comedy of Errors*: *There's not a man I meet but doth salute me As if I were their well-acquainted friend*

<sup>6</sup> The word “gender” is generally only used for languages with 2 or 3 noun classes, like most Indo-European languages; many languages, like the Bantu languages or Chinese, have a much larger number of noun classes.

**Verb Semantics:** Some verbs semantically emphasize one of their arguments, biasing the interpretation of subsequent pronouns. Compare (21.40) and (21.41).

(21.40) John telephoned Bill. He lost the laptop.

(21.41) John criticized Bill. He lost the laptop.

These examples differ only in the verb used in the first sentence, yet “he” in (21.40) is typically resolved to John, whereas “he” in (21.41) is resolved to Bill. This may be due to the link between implicit causality and saliency: the implicit cause of a “criticizing” event is its object, whereas the implicit cause of a “telephoning” event is its subject. In such verbs, the entity which is the implicit cause is more salient.

**Selectional Restrictions:** Many other kinds of semantic knowledge can play a role in referent preference. For example, the selectional restrictions that a verb places on its arguments (Chapter 10) can help eliminate referents, as in (21.42).

(21.42) I ate the soup in my new bowl after cooking it for hours

There are two possible referents for *it*, the soup and the bowl. The verb *eat*, however, requires that its direct object denote something edible, and this constraint can rule out *bowl* as a possible referent.

## 21.2 Coreference Tasks and Datasets

We can formulate the task of coreference resolution as follows: Given a text  $T$ , find all entities and the coreference links between them. We evaluate our task by comparing the links our system creates with those in human-created gold coreference annotations on  $T$ .

Let’s return to our coreference example, now using superscript numbers for each coreference chain (cluster), and subscript letters for individual mentions in the cluster:

(21.43) [Victoria Chen]<sup>1</sup><sub>a</sub>, CFO of [Megabucks Banking]<sup>2</sup><sub>a</sub>, saw [[her]<sup>1</sup><sub>b</sub> pay]<sup>3</sup><sub>a</sub> jump to \$2.3 million, as [the 38-year-old]<sup>1</sup><sub>c</sub> also became [[the company]<sup>2</sup><sub>b</sub>]’s president. It is widely known that [she]<sup>1</sup><sub>d</sub> came to [Megabucks]<sup>2</sup><sub>c</sub> from rival [Lotsabucks]<sup>4</sup><sub>a</sub>.

Assuming example (21.43) was the entirety of the article, the chains for *her pay* and *Lotsabucks* are singleton mentions:

1. {Victoria Chen, her, the 38-year-old, She}
2. {Megabucks Banking, the company, Megabucks}
3. { her pay}
4. { Lotsabucks}

For most coreference evaluation campaigns, the input to the system is the raw text of articles, and systems must detect mentions and then link them into clusters. Solving this task requires dealing with pronominal anaphora (figuring out that *her* refers to *Victoria Chen*), filtering out non-referential pronouns like the pleonastic *It* in *It has been ten years*), dealing with definite noun phrases to figure out that *the 38-year-old* is coreferent with *Victoria Chen*, and that *the company* is the same as *Megabucks*. And we need to deal with names, to realize that *Megabucks* is the same as *Megabucks Banking*.

Exactly what counts as a mention and what links are annotated differs from task to task and dataset to dataset. For example some coreference datasets do not label singletons, making the task much simpler. Resolvers can achieve much higher scores on corpora without singletons, since singletons constitute the majority of mentions in running text, and they are often hard to distinguish from non-referential NPs. Some tasks use gold mention-detection (i.e. the system is given human-labeled mention boundaries and the task is just to cluster these gold mentions), which eliminates the need to detect and segment mentions from running text.

Coreference is usually evaluated by the **CoNLL F1** score, which combines three metrics: MUC,  $B^3$ , and  $CEAF_e$ ; Section 21.7 gives the details.

Let's mention a few characteristics of one popular coreference dataset, OntoNotes (Pradhan et al. 2007, Pradhan et al. 2007a), and the CoNLL 2012 Shared Task based on it (Pradhan et al., 2012a). OntoNotes contains hand-annotated Chinese and English coreference datasets of roughly one million words each, consisting of newswire, magazine articles, broadcast news, broadcast conversations, web data and conversational speech data, as well as about 300,000 words of annotated Arabic newswire. The most important distinguishing characteristic of OntoNotes is that it does not label singletons, simplifying the coreference task, since singletons represent 60%-70% of all entities. In other ways, it is similar to other coreference datasets. Referring expression NPs that are coreferent are marked as mentions, but generics and pleonastic pronouns are not marked. Appositive clauses are not marked as separate mentions, but they are included in the mention. Thus in the NP, “Richard Godown, president of the Industrial Biotechnology Association” the mention is the entire phrase. Prenominal modifiers are annotated as separate entities only if they are proper nouns. Thus *wheat* is not an entity in *wheat fields*, but *UN* is an entity in *UN policy* (but not adjectives like *American* in *American policy*).

A number of corpora mark richer discourse phenomena. The ISNotes corpus annotates a portion of OntoNotes for information status, include bridging examples (Hou et al., 2018). The LitBank coreference corpus (Bamman et al., 2020) contains coreference annotations for 210,532 tokens from 100 different literary novels, including singletons and quantified and negated noun phrases. The AnCora-CO coreference corpus (Recasens and Martí, 2010) contains 400,000 words each of Spanish (AnCora-CO-Es) and Catalan (AnCora-CO-Ca) news data, and includes labels for complex phenomena like discourse deixis in both languages. The ARRAU corpus (Uryupina et al., 2020) contains 350,000 words of English marking all NPs, which means singleton clusters are available. ARRAU includes diverse genres like dialog (the TRAINS data) and fiction (the Pear Stories), and has labels for bridging references, discourse deixis, generics, and ambiguous anaphoric relations.

## 21.3 Mention Detection

### mention detection

The first stage of coreference is **mention detection**: finding the spans of text that constitute each mention. Mention detection algorithms are usually very liberal in proposing candidate mentions (i.e., emphasizing recall), and only filtering later. For example many systems run parsers and named entity taggers on the text and extract every span that is either an **NP**, a **possessive pronoun**, or a **named entity**.

Doing so from our sample text repeated in (21.44):

(21.44) Victoria Chen, CFO of Megabucks Banking, saw her pay jump to \$2.3

million, as the 38-year-old also became the company’s president. It is widely known that she came to Megabucks from rival Lotsabucks.

might result in the following list of 13 potential mentions:

Victoria Chen	\$2.3 million	she
CFO of Megabucks Banking	the 38-year-old	Megabucks
Megabucks Banking	the company	Lotsabucks
her	the company’s president	
her pay	It	

More recent mention detection systems are even more generous; the span-based algorithm we will describe in Section 21.6 first extracts literally all N-gram spans of words up to  $N=10$ . Of course recall from Section 21.1.3 that many NPs—and the overwhelming majority of random N-gram spans—are not referring expressions. Therefore all such mention detection systems need to eventually filter out pleonastic/expletive pronouns like *It* above, appositives like *CFO of Megabucks Banking Inc*, or predicate nominals like *the company’s president* or *\$2.3 million*.

Some of this filtering can be done by rules. Early rule-based systems designed regular expressions to deal with pleonastic *it*, like the following rules from Lappin and Leass (1994) that use dictionaries of cognitive verbs (e.g., *believe*, *know*, *anticipate*) to capture pleonastic *it* in “It is *thought* that ketchup...”, or modal adjectives (e.g., *necessary*, *possible*, *certain*, *important*), for, e.g., “It is *likely* that I...”. Such rules are sometimes used as part of modern systems:

```
It is Modaladjective that S
It is Modaladjective (for NP) to VP
It is Cogv-ed that S
It seems/appears/means/follows (that) S
```

Mention-detection rules are sometimes designed specifically for particular evaluation campaigns. For OntoNotes, for example, mentions are not embedded within larger mentions, and while numeric quantities are annotated, they are rarely coreferential. Thus for OntoNotes tasks like CoNLL 2012 (Pradhan et al., 2012a), a common first pass rule-based mention detection algorithm (Lee et al., 2013) is:

1. Take all NPs, possessive pronouns, and named entities.
2. Remove numeric quantities (100 dollars, 8%), mentions embedded in larger mentions, adjectival forms of nations, and stop words (like *there*).
3. Remove pleonastic *it* based on regular expression patterns.

Rule-based systems, however, are generally insufficient to deal with mention-detection, and so modern systems incorporate some sort of learned mention detection component, such as a **referentiality classifier**, an **anaphoricity classifier**—detecting whether an NP is an anaphor—or a **discourse-new classifier**—detecting whether a mention is discourse-new and a potential antecedent for a future anaphor.

**anaphoricity detector**

An **anaphoricity detector**, for example, can draw its positive training examples from any span that is labeled as an anaphoric referring expression in hand-labeled datasets like OntoNotes, ARRAU, or AnCora. Any other NP or named entity can be marked as a negative training example. Anaphoricity classifiers use features of the candidate mention such as its head word, surrounding words, definiteness, animacy, length, position in the sentence/discourse, many of which were first proposed in early work by Ng and Cardie (2002a); see Section 21.5 for more on features.

Referentiality or anaphoricity detectors can be run as filters, in which only mentions that are classified as anaphoric or referential are passed on to the coreference system. The end result of such a filtering mention detection system on our example above might be the following filtered set of 9 potential mentions:

Victoria Chen	her pay	she
Megabucks Bank	the 38-year-old	Megabucks
her	the company	Lotsabucks

It turns out, however, that hard filtering of mentions based on an anaphoricity or referentiality classifier leads to poor performance. If the anaphoricity classifier threshold is set too high, too many mentions are filtered out and recall suffers. If the classifier threshold is set too low, too many pleonastic or non-referential mentions are included and precision suffers.

The modern approach is instead to perform mention detection, anaphoricity, and coreference jointly in a single end-to-end model ([Ng 2005b](#), [Denis and Baldridge 2007](#), [Rahman and Ng 2009](#)). For example mention detection in the [Lee et al. \(2017\)](#), (2018) system is based on a single end-to-end neural network that computes a score for each mention being referential, a score for two mentions being coreference, and combines them to make a decision, training all these scores with a single end-to-end loss. We'll describe this method in detail in Section 21.6.<sup>7</sup>

Despite these advances, correctly detecting referential mentions seems to still be an unsolved problem, since systems incorrectly marking pleonastic pronouns like *it* and other non-referential NPs as coreferent is a large source of errors of modern coreference resolution systems ([Kummerfeld and Klein 2013](#), [Martschat and Strube 2014](#), [Martschat and Strube 2015](#), [Wiseman et al. 2015](#), [Lee et al. 2017](#)).

Mention, referentiality, or anaphoricity detection is thus an important open area of investigation. Other sources of knowledge may turn out to be helpful, especially in combination with unsupervised and semisupervised algorithms, which also mitigate the expense of labeled datasets. In early work, for example [Bean and Riloff \(1999\)](#) learned patterns for characterizing anaphoric or non-anaphoric NPs; (by extracting and generalizing over the first NPs in a text, which are guaranteed to be non-anaphoric). [Chang et al. \(2012\)](#) look for head nouns that appear frequently in the training data but never appear as gold mentions to help find non-referential NPs. [Bergsma et al. \(2008b\)](#) use web counts as a semisupervised way to augment standard features for anaphoricity detection for English *it*, an important task because *it* is both common and ambiguous; between a quarter and half *it* examples are non-anaphoric. Consider the following two examples:

- (21.45) You can make [it] in advance. [anaphoric]
- (21.46) You can make [it] in Hollywood. [non-anaphoric]

The *it* in *make it* is non-anaphoric, part of the idiom *make it*. [Bergsma et al. \(2008b\)](#) turn the context around each example into patterns, like “make \* in advance” from (21.45), and “make \* in Hollywood” from (21.46). They then use Google N-grams to enumerate all the words that can replace *it* in the patterns. Non-anaphoric contexts tend to only have *it* in the wildcard positions, while anaphoric contexts occur with many other NPs (for example *make them in advance* is just as frequent in their data

<sup>7</sup> Some systems try to avoid mention detection or anaphoricity detection altogether. For datasets like OntoNotes which don't label singletons, an alternative to filtering out non-referential mentions is to run coreference resolution, and then simply delete any candidate mentions which were not corefered with another mention. This likely doesn't work as well as explicitly modeling referentiality, and cannot solve the problem of detecting singletons, which is important for tasks like entity linking.

as *make it in advance*, but *make them in Hollywood* did not occur at all). These N-gram contexts can be used as features in a supervised anaphoricity classifier.

## 21.4 Architectures for Coreference Algorithms

Modern systems for coreference are based on supervised neural machine learning, supervised from hand-labeled datasets like OntoNotes. In this section we overview the various architecture of modern systems, using the categorization of Ng (2010), which distinguishes algorithms based on whether they make each coreference decision in a way that is *entity-based*—representing each entity in the discourse model—or only *mention-based*—considering each mention independently, and whether they use *ranking models* to directly compare potential antecedents. Afterwards, we go into more detail on one state-of-the-art algorithm in Section 21.6.

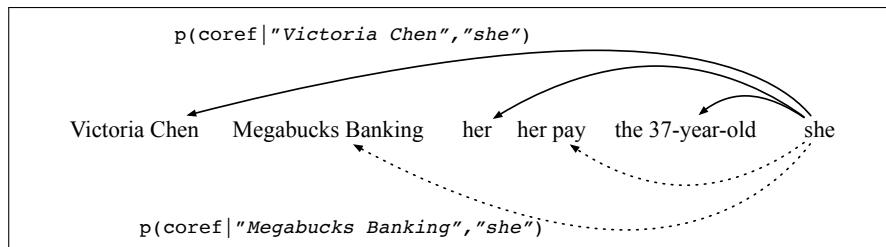
### 21.4.1 The Mention-Pair Architecture

**mention-pair**

**mention-pair**

We begin with the **mention-pair** architecture, the simplest and most influential coreference architecture, which introduces many of the features of more complex algorithms, even though other architectures perform better. The **mention-pair** architecture is based around a classifier that—as its name suggests—is given a pair of mentions, a candidate anaphor and a candidate antecedent, and makes a binary classification decision: coreferring or not.

Let's consider the task of this classifier for the pronoun *she* in our example, and assume the slightly simplified set of potential antecedents in Fig. 21.2.



**Figure 21.2** For each pair of a mention (like *she*), and a potential antecedent mention (like *Victoria Chen* or *her*), the mention-pair classifier assigns a probability of a coreference link.

For each prior mention (*Victoria Chen*, *Megabucks Banking*, *her*, etc.), the binary classifier computes a probability: whether or not the mention is the antecedent of *she*. We want this probability to be high for actual antecedents (*Victoria Chen*, *her*, *the 38-year-old*) and low for non-antecedents (*Megabucks Banking*, *her pay*).

Early classifiers used hand-built features (Section 21.5); more recent classifiers use neural representation learning (Section 21.6)

For training, we need a heuristic for selecting training samples; since most pairs of mentions in a document are not coreferent, selecting every pair would lead to a massive overabundance of negative samples. The most common heuristic, from (Soon et al., 2001), is to choose the closest antecedent as a positive example, and all pairs in between as the negative examples. More formally, for each anaphor mention  $m_i$  we create

- one positive instance  $(m_i, m_j)$  where  $m_j$  is the closest antecedent to  $m_i$ , and

- a negative instance  $(m_i, m_k)$  for each  $m_k$  between  $m_j$  and  $m_i$

Thus for the anaphor *she*, we would choose *(she, her)* as the positive example and no negative examples. Similarly, for the anaphor *the company* we would choose *(the company, Megabucks)* as the positive example and *(the company, she)* (*the company, the 38-year-old*) (*the company, her pay*) and *(the company, her)* as negative examples.

Once the classifier is trained, it is applied to each test sentence in a clustering step. For each mention  $i$  in a document, the classifier considers each of the prior  $i - 1$  mentions. In **closest-first** clustering (Soon et al., 2001), the classifier is run right to left (from mention  $i - 1$  down to mention 1) and the first antecedent with probability  $> .5$  is linked to  $i$ . If no antecedent has probably  $> 0.5$ , no antecedent is selected for  $i$ . In **best-first** clustering, the classifier is run on all  $i - 1$  antecedents and the most probable preceding mention is chosen as the antecedent for  $i$ . The transitive closure of the pairwise relation is taken as the cluster.

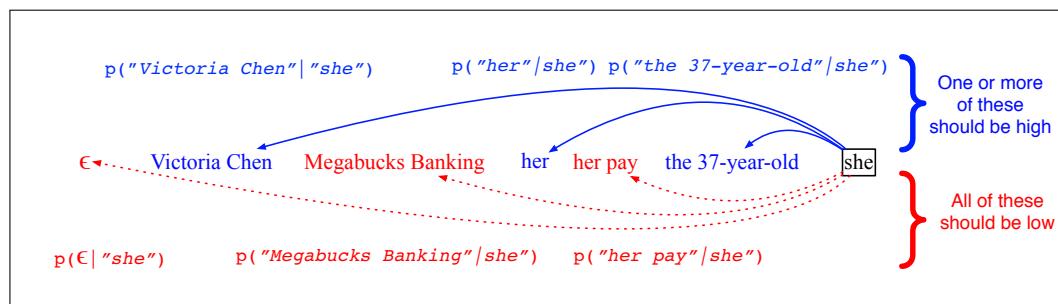
While the mention-pair model has the advantage of simplicity, it has two main problems. First, the classifier doesn't directly compare candidate antecedents to each other, so it's not trained to decide, between two likely antecedents, which one is in fact better. Second, it ignores the discourse model, looking only at mentions, not entities. Each classifier decision is made completely locally to the pair, without being able to take into account other mentions of the same entity. The next two models each address one of these two flaws.

### 21.4.2 The Mention-Rank Architecture

The mention ranking model directly compares candidate antecedents to each other, choosing the highest-scoring antecedent for each anaphor.

In early formulations, for mention  $i$ , the classifier decides which of the  $\{1, \dots, i - 1\}$  prior mentions is the antecedent (Denis and Baldridge, 2008). But suppose  $i$  is in fact not anaphoric, and none of the antecedents should be chosen? Such a model would need to run a separate anaphoricity classifier on  $i$ . Instead, it turns out to be better to jointly learn anaphoricity detection and coreference together with a single loss (Rahman and Ng, 2009).

So in modern mention-ranking systems, for the  $i$ th mention (anaphor), we have an associated random variable  $y_i$  ranging over the values  $Y(i) = \{1, \dots, i - 1, \epsilon\}$ . The value  $\epsilon$  is a special dummy mention meaning that  $i$  does not have an antecedent (i.e., is either discourse-new and starts a new coref chain, or is non-anaphoric).



**Figure 21.3** For each candidate anaphoric mention (like *she*), the mention-ranking system assigns a probability distribution over all previous mentions plus the special dummy mention  $\epsilon$ .

At test time, for a given mention  $i$  the model computes one softmax over all the antecedents (plus  $\epsilon$ ) giving a probability for each candidate antecedent (or none).

Fig. 21.3 shows an example of the computation for the single candidate anaphor *she*.

Once the antecedent is classified for each anaphor, transitive closure can be run over the pairwise decisions to get a complete clustering.

Training is trickier in the mention-ranking model than the mention-pair model, because for each anaphor we don't know which of all the possible gold antecedents to use for training. Instead, the best antecedent for each mention is *latent*; that is, for each mention we have a whole cluster of legal gold antecedents to choose from. Early work used heuristics to choose an antecedent, for example choosing the closest antecedent as the gold antecedent and all non-antecedents in a window of two sentences as the negative examples (Denis and Baldridge, 2008). Various kinds of ways to model latent antecedents exist (Fernandes et al. 2012, Chang et al. 2013, Durrett and Klein 2013). The simplest way is to give credit to any legal antecedent by summing over all of them, with a loss function that optimizes the likelihood of all correct antecedents from the gold clustering (Lee et al., 2017). We'll see the details in Section 21.6.

Mention-ranking models can be implemented with hand-build features or with neural representation learning (which might also incorporate some hand-built features). we'll explore both directions in Section 21.5 and Section 21.6.

### 21.4.3 Entity-based Models

Both the mention-pair and mention-ranking models make their decisions about *mentions*. By contrast, entity-based models link each mention not to a previous mention but to a previous discourse *entity* (cluster of mentions).

A mention-ranking model can be turned into an entity-ranking model simply by having the classifier make its decisions over clusters of mentions rather than individual mentions (Rahman and Ng, 2009).

For traditional feature-based models, this can be done by extracting features over clusters. The size of a cluster is a useful feature, as is its ‘shape’, which is the list of types of the mentions in the cluster i.e., sequences of the tokens (P)roper, (D)efinite, (I)ndefinite, (Pr)onoun, so that a cluster composed of *{Victoria, her, the 38-year-old}* would have the shape *P-Pr-D* (Björkelund and Kuhn, 2014). An entity-based model that includes a mention-pair classifier can use as features aggregates of mention-pair probabilities, for example computing the average probability of coreference over all mention-pairs in the two clusters (Clark and Manning 2015).

Neural models can learn representations of clusters automatically, for example by using an RNN over the sequence of cluster mentions to encode a state corresponding to a cluster representation (Wiseman et al., 2016), or by learning distributed representations for pairs of clusters by pooling over learned representations of mention pairs (Clark and Manning, 2016b).

However, although entity-based models are more expressive, the use of cluster-level information in practice has not led to large gains in performance, so mention-ranking models are still more commonly used.

## 21.5 Classifiers using hand-built features

Hand-designed features play an important role in coreference, whether as the sole input to classification in pre-neural classifiers, or as augmentations to the automatic

representation learning used in state-of-the-art neural systems like the one we'll describe in Section 21.6.

In this section we describe features commonly used in logistic regression, SVM, or random forest classifiers for coreference resolution.

Given an anaphor mention and a potential antecedent mention, most feature based classifiers make use of three types of features: (i) features of the anaphor, (ii) features of the candidate antecedent, and (iii) features of the relationship between the pair. Entity-based models can make additional use of two additional classes: (iv) feature of all mentions from the antecedent's entity cluster, and (v) features of the relation between the anaphor and the mentions in the antecedent entity cluster.

Figure 21.4 shows a selection of commonly used features, and shows the value that would be computed for the potential anaphor "she" and potential antecedent "Victoria Chen" in our example sentence, repeated below:

(21.47) **Victoria Chen**, CFO of Megabucks Banking, saw her pay jump to \$2.3 million, as the 38-year-old also became the company's president. It is widely known that **she** came to Megabucks from rival Lotsabucks.

Features that prior work has found to be particularly useful are exact string match, entity headword agreement, mention distance, as well as (for pronouns) exact attribute match and i-within-i, and (for nominals and proper names) word inclusion and cosine. For lexical features (like head words) it is common to only use words that appear enough times (perhaps more than 20 times), backing off to parts of speech for rare words.

It is crucial in feature-based systems to use conjunctions of features; one experiment suggested that moving from individual features in a classifier to conjunctions of multiple features increased F1 by 4 points (Lee et al., 2017). Specific conjunctions can be designed by hand (Durrett and Klein, 2013), all pairs of features can be conjoined (Bengtson and Roth, 2008), or feature conjunctions can be learned using decision tree or random forest classifiers (Ng and Cardie 2002a, Lee et al. 2017).

Finally, some of these features can also be used in neural models as well. Modern neural systems (Section 21.6) use contextual word embeddings, so they don't benefit from adding shallow features like string or head match, grammatical role, or mention types. However other features like mention length, distance between mentions, or genre can complement neural contextual embedding models nicely.

## 21.6 A neural mention-ranking algorithm

In this section we describe the neural mention-ranking system of Lee et al. (2017). This end-to-end system doesn't exactly have a separate mention-detection step. Instead, it considers every possible span of text up to a set length (i.e. all n-grams of length 1,2,3...N) as a possible mention.<sup>8</sup>

Given a document  $D$  with  $T$  words, the model considers all of the  $N = \frac{T(T-1)}{2}$  text spans up to some length (in the version of Lee et al. (2018), that length is 10). Each span  $i$  starts at word  $\text{START}(i)$  and ends at word  $\text{END}(i)$ .

The task is to assign to each span  $i$  an antecedent  $y_i$ , a random variable ranging over the values  $Y(i) = \{1, \dots, i-1, \epsilon\}$ ; each previous span and a special dummy

<sup>8</sup> But because this number of potential mentions makes the algorithm very slow and unwieldy (the model's size is  $O(t^4)$  in document length) in practice various versions of the algorithm find ways to prune the possible mentions, essentially using a mention score as something of a mention-detector.

Features of the Anaphor or Antecedent Mention		
<b>First (last) word</b>	Victoria/she	First or last word (or embedding) of antecedent/anaphor
<b>Head word</b>	Victoria/she	Head word (or head embedding) of antecedent/anaphor
<b>Attributes</b>	Sg-F-A-3- PER/Sg-F-A- 3-PER	The number, gender, animacy, person, named entity type attributes of (antecedent/anaphor)
<b>Length</b>	2/1	length in words of (antecedent/anaphor)
<b>Grammatical role</b>	Sub/Sub	The grammatical role—subject, direct object, indirect object/PP—of (antecedent/anaphor)
<b>Mention type</b>	P/Pr	Type: (P)roper, (D)efinite, (I)ndefinite, (Pr)onoun) of antecedent/anaphor
Features of the Antecedent Entity		
<b>Entity shape</b>	P-Pr-D	The ‘shape’ or list of types of the mentions in the antecedent entity (cluster), i.e., sequences of (P)roper, (D)efinite, (I)ndefinite, (Pr)onoun.
<b>Entity attributes</b>	Sg-F-A-3- PER	The number, gender, animacy, person, named entity type attributes of the antecedent entity
<b>Antecedent cluster size</b>	3	Number of mentions in the antecedent cluster
Features of the Pair of Mentions		
<b>Longer anaphor</b>	F	True if anaphor is longer than antecedent
<b>Pairs of any features</b>	Victoria/she, 2/1, Sub/Sub, P/Pr, etc .	For each individual feature, pair of type of antecedent+ type of anaphor
<b>Sentence distance</b>	1	The number of sentences between antecedent and anaphor
<b>Mention distance</b>	4	The number of mentions between antecedent and anaphor
<b>i-within-i</b>	F	Anaphor has i-within-i relation with antecedent
<b>Cosine</b>		Cosine between antecedent and anaphor embeddings
<b>Appositive</b>	F	True if the anaphor is in the syntactic apposition relation to the antecedent. Useful even if appositives aren’t mentions (to know to attach the appositive to a preceding head)
Features of the Pair of Entities		
<b>Exact String Match</b>	F	True if the strings of any two mentions from the antecedent and anaphor clusters are identical.
<b>Head Word Match</b>	F	True if any mentions from antecedent cluster has same headword as any mention in anaphor cluster
<b>Word Inclusion</b>	F	All words in anaphor cluster included in antecedent cluster
Features of the Document		
<b>Genre/source</b>	N	The document genre—(D)ialog, (N)ews, etc,

**Figure 21.4** Some common features for feature-based coreference algorithms, with values for the anaphor “she” and potential antecedent “Victoria Chen”.

token  $\epsilon$ . Choosing the dummy token means that  $i$  does not have an antecedent, either because  $i$  is discourse-new and starts a new coreference chain, or because  $i$  is non-anaphoric.

For each pair of spans  $i$  and  $j$ , the system assigns a score  $s(i, j)$  for the coreference link between span  $i$  and span  $j$ . The system then learns a distribution  $P(y_i)$  over the antecedents for span  $i$ :

$$P(y_i) = \frac{\exp(s(i, y_i))}{\sum_{y' \in Y(i)} \exp(s(i, y_i))} \quad (21.48)$$

This score  $s(i, j)$  includes three factors:  $m(i)$ ; whether span  $i$  is a mention;  $m(j)$ ; whether span  $j$  is a mention; and  $c(i, j)$ ; whether  $j$  is the antecedent of  $i$ :

$$s(i, j) = m(i) + m(j) + c(i, j) \quad (21.49)$$

For the dummy antecedent  $\epsilon$ , the score  $s(i, \epsilon)$  is fixed to 0. This way if any non-dummy scores are positive, the model predicts the highest-scoring antecedent, but if all the scores are negative it abstains.

The scoring functions  $m(i)$  and  $c(i, j)$  are based on a vector  $\mathbf{g}_i$  that represents span  $i$ :

$$m(i) = w_m \cdot \text{FFNN}_m(\mathbf{g}_i) \quad (21.50)$$

$$c(i, j) = w_c \cdot \text{FFNN}_c([\mathbf{g}_i, \mathbf{g}_j, \mathbf{g}_i \circ \mathbf{g}_j, \phi(i, j)]) \quad (21.51)$$

The antecedent score  $c(i, j)$  takes as input a representation of the spans  $i$  and  $j$ , but also the element-wise similarity of the two spans to each other  $\mathbf{g}_i \circ \mathbf{g}_j$  (here  $\circ$  is element-wise multiplication). The antecedent score  $c$  also considers a feature vector  $\phi(i, j)$  that encodes useful features like mention distances, and also information about the speaker and genre.

The representation for each span,  $\mathbf{g}_i$ , can be computed with a biLSTM or with BERT. In the biLSTM version, the representation  $g_i$  for span  $i$  is a concatenation of the biLSTM hidden representations of the start and end tokens of the span, an attention-based representation of the head, and a feature vector containing only one feature: the length of span  $i$ :

$$\mathbf{g}_i = [\mathbf{h}_{\text{START}(i)}, \mathbf{h}_{\text{END}(i)}, \mathbf{h}_{\text{ATT}(i)}, \phi(i)] \quad (21.52)$$

These are computed as follows. The output of the biLSTM for each word  $w_t$  of the input is  $\mathbf{h}_t$ :

$$\begin{aligned} \overrightarrow{\mathbf{h}}_t &= \text{LSTM}^{\text{forward}}(\overrightarrow{\mathbf{h}}_{t-1}, \mathbf{w}_t) \\ \overleftarrow{\mathbf{h}}_t &= \text{LSTM}^{\text{forward}}(\overleftarrow{\mathbf{h}}_{t+1}, \mathbf{w}_t) \\ \mathbf{h}_t &= [\overrightarrow{\mathbf{h}}_t, \overleftarrow{\mathbf{h}}_t] \end{aligned} \quad (21.53)$$

The attention representation is computed as usual; the system learns a weight vector  $\mathbf{w}_\alpha$ , and computes its dot product with the hidden state  $\mathbf{h}_t$  transformed by a FFNN:

$$\alpha_t = \mathbf{w}_\alpha \cdot \text{FFNN}_\alpha(\mathbf{h}_t) \quad (21.54)$$

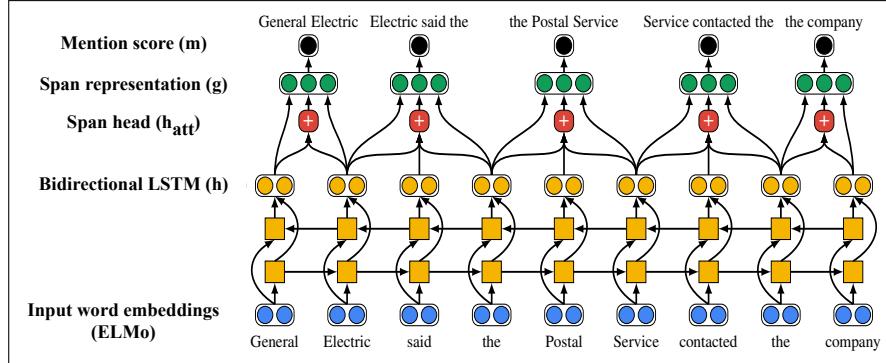
The attention score is normalized into a distribution via a softmax:

$$a_{i,t} = \frac{\exp(\alpha_t)}{\sum_{k=\text{START}(i)}^{\text{END}(i)} \exp(\alpha_k)} \quad (21.55)$$

And then the attention distribution is used to create a vector  $\mathbf{h}_{\text{ATT}(i)}$  which is an attention-weighted sum of words in span  $i$ :

$$\mathbf{h}_{\text{ATT}(i)} = \sum_{t=\text{START}(i)}^{\text{END}(i)} a_{i,t} \cdot \mathbf{w}_t \quad (21.56)$$

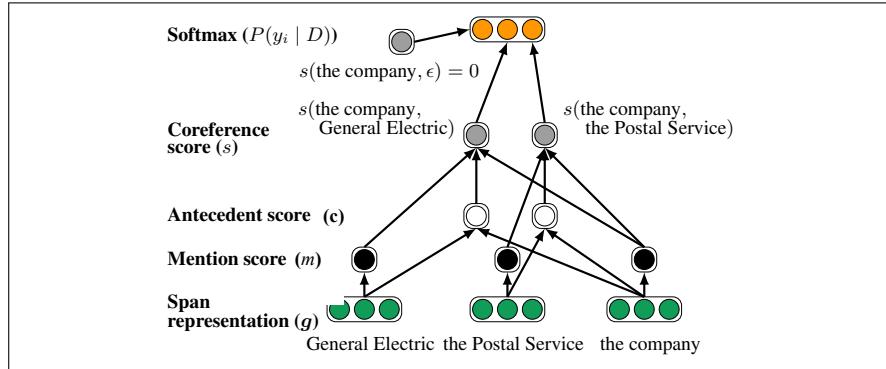
Fig. 21.5 from Lee et al. (2017) shows the biLSTM computation of the span representation and the mention score.



**Figure 21.5** Computation of the span representation (using the biLSTM encoder) and the mention score in the end-to-end coreference model of Lee et al. (2017). The model considers all spans up to a maximum width; the figure shows a small subset of these. Figure after Lee et al. (2017).

In the BERT version, this entire biLSTM encoder is replaced with BERT. The span representations  $g_i$  are instead computed by concatenating the first and last word-pieces of the span, plus the attended version of all word pieces in the span (Joshi et al., 2019).

Fig. 21.6 shows the computation of the score  $s$  for the three possible antecedents of *the company* in the example sentence from Fig. 21.5.



**Figure 21.6** The computation of the score  $s$  for the three possible antecedents of *the company* in the example sentence from Fig. 21.5. Figure after Lee et al. (2017).

At inference time, some method is generally used to prune the mentions (for example using the mention score  $m$  as a filter to keep only the best few mentions as a function like  $0.4T$  of the sentence length  $T$ ). Then the joint distribution of antecedents for each document is computed in a forward pass. Finally, we can then do transitive closure on the antecedents to create a final clustering for the document.

For training, we don't have a single gold antecedent for each mention; instead the coreference labeling only gives us each entire cluster of coreferent mentions, and a mention has a latent antecedent. We therefore use a loss function that maximizes the sum of the coreference probability of any of the legal antecedents. For a given mention  $i$  with possible antecedents  $Y(i)$ , let  $\text{GOLD}(i)$  be the set of mentions in the gold cluster containing  $i$ . Since the set of mentions occurring before  $i$  is  $Y(i)$ , the set of mentions in that gold cluster that also occur before  $i$  is  $Y(i) \cap \text{GOLD}(i)$ . We

therefore want to maximize:

$$\sum_{\hat{y} \in Y(i) \cap \text{GOLD}(i)} P(\hat{y}) \quad (21.57)$$

If a mention  $i$  is not in a gold cluster  $\text{GOLD}(i) = \epsilon$ .

To turn this probability into a loss function, we'll use the cross-entropy loss function we defined in Eq. 5.11 in Chapter 5, by taking the  $-\log$  of the probability. If we then sum over all mentions, we get the final loss function for training:

$$L = \sum_{i=2}^N -\log \sum_{\hat{y} \in Y(i) \cap \text{GOLD}(i)} P(\hat{y}) \quad (21.58)$$

Fig. 21.7 shows example predictions from the model, showing the attention weights, which Lee et al. (2017) find correlate with traditional semantic heads. Note that the model gets the second example wrong, presumably because *attendants* and *pilot* likely have nearby word embeddings.

We are looking for (a **region** of central Italy bordering the Adriatic Sea). (**The area**) is mostly mountainous and includes Mt. Corno, the highest peak of the Apennines. (**It**) also includes a lot of sheep, good clean-living, healthy sheep, and an Italian entrepreneur has an idea about how to make a little money of them.

(The flight **attendants**) have until 6:00 today to ratify labor concessions. (**The pilots'**) union and ground crew did so yesterday.

**Figure 21.7** Sample predictions from the Lee et al. (2017) model, with one cluster per example, showing one correct example and one mistake. Bold, parenthesized spans are mentions in the predicted cluster. The amount of red color on a word indicates the head-finding attention weight  $a_{i,t}$  in (21.55). Figure adapted from Lee et al. (2017).

## 21.7 Evaluation of Coreference Resolution

We evaluate coreference algorithms model-theoretically, comparing a set of **hypothesis** chains or clusters  $H$  produced by the system against a set of gold or **reference** chains or clusters  $R$  from a human labeling, and reporting precision and recall.

However, there are a wide variety of methods for doing this comparison. In fact, there are 5 common metrics used to evaluate coreference algorithms: the **link** based MUC (Vilain et al., 1995) and BLANC (Recasens and Hovy 2011, Luo et al. 2014) metrics, the **mention** based  $B^3$  metric (Bagga and Baldwin, 1998), the **entity** based CEAF metric (Luo, 2005), and the **link** based **entity** aware LEA metric (Moosavi and Strube, 2016).

MUC  
F-measure

Let's just explore two of the metrics. The **MUC F-measure** (Vilain et al., 1995) is based on the number of coreference *links* (pairs of mentions) common to  $H$  and  $R$ . Precision is the number of common links divided by the number of links in  $H$ . Recall is the number of common links divided by the number of links in  $R$ ; This makes MUC biased toward systems that produce large chains (and fewer entities), and it ignores singletons, since they don't involve links.

$B^3$

$B^3$  is mention-based rather than link-based. For each mention in the reference chain, we compute a precision and recall, and then we take a weighted sum over all  $N$  mentions in the document to compute a precision and recall for the entire task. For

a given mention  $i$ , let  $R$  be the reference chain that includes  $i$ , and  $H$  the hypothesis chain that has  $i$ . The set of correct mentions in  $H$  is  $H \cap R$ . Precision for mention  $i$  is thus  $\frac{|H \cap R|}{|H|}$ , and recall for mention  $i$  thus  $\frac{|H \cap R|}{|R|}$ . The total precision is the weighted sum of the precision for mention  $i$ , weighted by a weight  $w_i$ . The total recall is the weighted sum of the recall for mention  $i$ , weighted by a weight  $w_i$ . Equivalently:

$$\text{Precision} = \sum_{i=1}^N w_i \frac{\# \text{ of correct mentions in hypothesis chain containing entity}_i}{\# \text{ of mentions in hypothesis chain containing entity}_i}$$

$$\text{Recall} = \sum_{i=1}^N w_i \frac{\# \text{ of correct mentions in hypothesis chain containing entity}_i}{\# \text{ of mentions in reference chain containing entity}_i}$$

The weight  $w_i$  for each entity can be set to different values to produce different versions of the algorithm.

Following a proposal from [Denis and Baldridge \(2009\)](#), the CoNLL coreference competitions were scored based on the average of MUC, CEAF-e, and B<sup>3</sup> ([Pradhan et al. 2011](#), [Pradhan et al. 2012b](#)), and so it is common in many evaluation campaigns to report an average of these 3 metrics. See [Luo and Pradhan \(2016\)](#) for a detailed description of the entire set of metrics; reference implementations of these should be used rather than attempting to reimplement from scratch ([Pradhan et al., 2014](#)).

Alternative metrics have been proposed that deal with particular coreference domains or tasks. For example, consider the task of resolving mentions to named entities (persons, organizations, geopolitical entities), which might be useful for information extraction or knowledge base completion. A hypothesis chain that correctly contains all the pronouns referring to an entity, but has no version of the name itself, or is linked with a wrong name, is not useful for this task. We might instead want a metric that weights each mention by how informative it is (with names being most informative) ([Chen and Ng, 2013](#)) or a metric that considers a hypothesis to match a gold chain only if it contains at least one variant of a name (the NEC F1 metric of [Agarwal et al. \(2019\)](#)).

## 21.8 Winograd Schema problems

From early on in the field, researchers have noted that some cases of coreference are quite difficult, seeming to require world knowledge or sophisticated reasoning to solve. The problem was most famously pointed out by [Winograd \(1972\)](#) with the following example:

- (21.59) The city council denied the demonstrators a permit because
- they feared violence.
  - they advocated violence.

Winograd noticed that the antecedent that most readers preferred for the pronoun *they* in continuation (a) was *the city council*, but in (b) was *the demonstrators*. He suggested that this requires understanding that the second clause is intended as an explanation of the first clause, and also that our cultural frames suggest that city councils are perhaps more likely than demonstrators to fear violence and that demonstrators might be more likely to advocate violence.

In an attempt to get the field of NLP to focus more on methods involving world knowledge and common-sense reasoning, [Levesque \(2011\)](#) proposed a challenge

**Winograd schema** task called the **Winograd Schema Challenge**.<sup>9</sup> The problems in the challenge task are coreference problems designed to be easily disambiguated by the human reader, but hopefully not solvable by simple techniques such as selectional restrictions, or other basic word association methods.

The problems are framed as a pair of statements that differ in a single word or phrase, and a coreference question:

- (21.60) The trophy didn't fit into the suitcase because it was too **large**.

Question: What was too **large**? Answer: The trophy

- (21.61) The trophy didn't fit into the suitcase because it was too **small**.

Question: What was too **small**? Answer: The suitcase

The problems have the following characteristics:

1. The problems each have two parties
2. A pronoun preferentially refers to one of the parties, but could grammatically also refer to the other
3. A question asks which party the pronoun refers to
4. If one word in the question is changed, the human-preferred answer changes to the other party

The kind of world knowledge that might be needed to solve the problems can vary. In the trophy/suitcase example, it is knowledge about the physical world; that a bigger object cannot fit into a smaller object. In the original Winograd sentence, it is stereotypes about social actors like politicians and protesters. In examples like the following, it is knowledge about human actions like turn-taking or thanking.

- (21.62) Bill passed the gameboy to John because his turn was [over/next]. Whose turn was [over/next]? Answers: Bill/John

- (21.63) Joan made sure to thank Susan for all the help she had [given/received]. Who had [given/received] help? Answers: Susan/Joan.

Although the Winograd Schema was designed to require common-sense reasoning, a large percentage of the original set of problem can be solved by pre-trained language models, fine-tuned on Winograd Schema sentences (Kocijan et al., 2019). Large pretrained language models encode an enormous amount of world or common-sense knowledge! The current trend is therefore to propose new datasets with increasingly difficult Winograd-like coreference resolution problems like KNOWREF (Emami et al., 2019), with examples like:

- (21.64) Marcus is undoubtedly faster than Jarrett right now but in [his] prime the gap wasn't all that big.

In the end, it seems likely that some combination of language modeling and knowledge will prove fruitful; indeed, it seems that knowledge-based models overfit less to lexical idiosyncrasies in Winograd Schema training sets (Trichelair et al., 2018),

## 21.9 Gender Bias in Coreference

As with other aspects of language processing, coreference models exhibit gender and other biases (Zhao et al. 2018a, Rudinger et al. 2018, Webster et al. 2018).

<sup>9</sup> Levesque's call was quickly followed up by Levesque et al. (2012) and Rahman and Ng (2012), a competition at the IJCAI conference (Davis et al., 2017), and a natural language inference version of the problem called WNLI (Wang et al., 2018).

For example the WinoBias dataset (Zhao et al., 2018a) uses a variant of the Winograd Schema paradigm to test the extent to which coreference algorithms are biased toward linking gendered pronouns with antecedents consistent with cultural stereotypes. As we summarized in Chapter 6, embeddings replicate societal biases in their training test, such as associating men with historically stereotypical male occupations like doctors, and women with stereotypical female occupations like secretaries (Caliskan et al. 2017, Garg et al. 2018).

A WinoBias sentence contain two mentions corresponding to stereotypically-male and stereotypically-female occupations and a gendered pronoun that must be linked to one of them. The sentence cannot be disambiguated by the gender of the pronoun, but a biased model might be distracted by this cue. Here is an example sentence:

- (21.65) The secretary called the physician<sub>i</sub> and told him<sub>i</sub> about a new patient [pro-stereotypical]
- (21.66) The secretary called the physician<sub>i</sub> and told her<sub>i</sub> about a new patient [anti-stereotypical]

Zhao et al. (2018a) consider a coreference system to be biased if it is more accurate at linking pronouns consistent with gender stereotypical occupations (e.g., *him* with *physician* in (21.65)) than linking pronouns inconsistent with gender-stereotypical occupations (e.g., *her* with *physician* in (21.66)). They show that coreference systems of all architectures (rule-based, feature-based machine learned, and end-to-end-neural) all show significant bias, performing on average 21 F<sub>1</sub> points worse in the anti-stereotypical cases.

One possible source of this bias is that female entities are significantly underrepresented in the OntoNotes dataset, used to train most coreference systems. Zhao et al. (2018a) propose a way to overcome this bias: they generate a second gender-swapped dataset in which all male entities in OntoNotes are replaced with female ones and vice versa, and retrain coreference systems on the combined original and swapped OntoNotes data, also using debiased GloVe embeddings (Bolukbasi et al., 2016). The resulting coreference systems no longer exhibit bias on the WinoBias dataset, without significantly impacting OntoNotes coreference accuracy. In a follow-up paper, Zhao et al. (2019) show that the same biases exist in ELMo contextualized word vector representations and coref systems that use them. They showed that retraining ELMo with data augmentation again reduces or removes bias in coreference systems on WinoBias.

Webster et al. (2018) introduces another dataset, GAP, and the task of Gendered Pronoun Resolution as a tool for developing improved coreference algorithms for gendered pronouns. GAP is a gender-balanced labeled corpus of 4,454 sentences with gendered ambiguous pronouns (by contrast, only 20% of the gendered pronouns in the English OntoNotes training data are feminine). The examples were created by drawing on naturally occurring sentences from Wikipedia pages to create hard to resolve cases with two named entities of the same gender and an ambiguous pronoun that may refer to either person (or neither), like the following:

- (21.67) In May, Fujisawa joined Mari Motohashi’s rink as the team’s skip, moving back from Karuizawa to Kitami where she had spent her junior days.

Webster et al. (2018) show that modern coreference algorithms perform significantly worse on resolving feminine pronouns than masculine pronouns in GAP. Kurita et al. (2019) shows that a system based on BERT contextualized word representations shows similar bias.

## 21.10 Summary

This chapter introduced the task of **coreference resolution**.

- This is the task of linking together **mentions** in text which **corefer**, i.e. refer to the same **discourse entity** in the **discourse model**, resulting in a set of coreference **chains** (also called **clusters** or **entities**).
- Mentions can be **definite NPs** or **indefinite NPs**, **pronouns** (including **zero pronouns**) or **names**.
- The surface form of an entity mention is linked to its **information status** (**new**, **old**, or **inferrable**), and how **accessible** or **salient** the entity is.
- Some NPs are not referring expressions, such as pleonastic *it* in *It is raining*.
- Many corpora have human-labeled coreference annotations that can be used for supervised learning, including **OntoNotes** for English, Chinese, and Arabic, **ARRAU** for English, and **AnCora** for Spanish and Catalan.
- Mention detection can start with all nouns and named entities and then use **anaphoricity classifiers** or **referentiality classifiers** to filter out non-mentions.
- Three common architectures for coreference are **mention-pair**, **mention-rank**, and **entity-based**, each of which can make use of feature-based or neural classifiers.
- Modern coreference systems tend to be end-to-end, performing mention detection and coreference in a single end-to-end architecture.
- Algorithms learn representations for text spans and heads, and learn to compare anaphor spans with candidate antecedent spans.
- Coreference systems are evaluated by comparing with gold entity labels using precision/recall metrics like **MUC**, **B<sup>3</sup>**, **CEAF**, **BLANC**, or **LEA**.
- The **Winograd Schema Challenge** problems are difficult coreference problems that seem to require world knowledge or sophisticated reasoning to solve.
- Coreference systems exhibit **gender bias** which can be evaluated using datasets like Winobias and GAP.

## Bibliographical and Historical Notes

Coreference has been part of natural language understanding since the 1970s (Woods et al. 1972, Winograd 1972). The discourse model and the entity-centric foundation of coreference was formulated by Karttunen (1969) (at the 3rd COLING conference), playing a role also in linguistic semantics (Heim 1982, Kamp 1981). But it was Bonnie Webber's (1978) dissertation and following work (Webber 1983) that explored the model's computational aspects, providing fundamental insights into how entities are represented in the discourse model and the ways in which they can license subsequent reference. Many of the examples she provided continue to challenge theories of reference to this day.

**Hobbs algorithm**

The **Hobbs algorithm**<sup>10</sup> is a tree-search algorithm that was the first in a long series of syntax-based methods for identifying reference robustly in naturally occurring text. The input to the Hobbs algorithm is a pronoun to be resolved, together

---

<sup>10</sup> The simpler of two algorithms presented originally in Hobbs (1978).

with a syntactic (constituency) parse of the sentences up to and including the current sentence. The details of the algorithm depend on the grammar used, but can be understood from a simplified version due to [Kehler et al. \(2004\)](#) that just searches through the list of NPs in the current and prior sentences. This simplified Hobbs algorithm searches NPs in the following order: “(i) in the current sentence from right-to-left, starting with the first NP to the left of the pronoun, (ii) in the previous sentence from left-to-right, (iii) in two sentences prior from left-to-right, and (iv) in the current sentence from left-to-right, starting with the first noun group to the right of the pronoun (for cataphora). The first noun group that agrees with the pronoun with respect to number, gender, and person is chosen as the antecedent” ([Kehler et al., 2004](#)).

[Lappin and Leass \(1994\)](#) was an influential entity-based system that used weights to combine syntactic and other features, extended soon after by [Kennedy and Boguraev \(1996\)](#) whose system avoids the need for full syntactic parses.

Approximately contemporaneously centering ([Grosz et al., 1995](#)) was applied to pronominal anaphora resolution by [Brennan et al. \(1987\)](#), and a wide variety of work followed focused on centering’s use in coreference ([Kameyama 1986, Di Eugenio 1990, Walker et al. 1994, Di Eugenio 1996, Strube and Hahn 1996, Kehler 1997a, Tetreault 2001, Iida et al. 2003](#)). [Kehler and Rohde \(2013\)](#) show how centering can be integrated with coherence-driven theories of pronoun interpretation. See Chapter 22 for the use of centering in measuring discourse coherence.

Coreference competitions as part of the US DARPA-sponsored MUC conferences provided early labeled coreference datasets (the 1995 MUC-6 and 1998 MUC-7 corpora), and set the tone for much later work, choosing to focus exclusively on the simplest cases of *identity coreference* (ignoring difficult cases like bridging, metonymy, and part-whole) and drawing the community toward supervised machine learning and metrics like the MUC metric ([Vilain et al., 1995](#)). The later ACE evaluations produced labeled coreference corpora in English, Chinese, and Arabic that were widely used for model training and evaluation.

This DARPA work influenced the community toward supervised learning beginning in the mid-90s ([Connolly et al. 1994, Aone and Bennett 1995, McCarthy and Lehnert 1995](#)). [Soon et al. \(2001\)](#) laid out a set of basic features, extended by [Ng and Cardie \(2002b\)](#), and a series of machine learning models followed over the next 15 years. These often focused separately on pronominal anaphora resolution ([Kehler et al. 2004, Bergsma and Lin 2006](#)), full NP coreference ([Cardie and Wagstaff 1999, Ng and Cardie 2002b, Ng 2005a](#)) and definite NP reference ([Poesio and Vieira 1998, Vieira and Poesio 2000](#)), as well as separate anaphoricity detection ([Bean and Riloff 1999, Bean and Riloff 2004, Ng and Cardie 2002a, Ng 2004](#)), or singleton detection ([de Marneffe et al., 2015](#)).

The move from mention-pair to mention-ranking approaches was pioneered by [Yang et al. \(2003\)](#) and [Iida et al. \(2003\)](#) who proposed pairwise ranking methods, then extended by [Denis and Baldridge \(2008\)](#) who proposed to do ranking via a softmax over all prior mentions. The idea of doing mention detection, anaphoricity, and coreference jointly in a single end-to-end model grew out of the early proposal of [Ng \(2005b\)](#) to use a dummy antecedent for mention-ranking, allowing ‘non-referential’ to be a choice for coreference classifiers, Denis and Baldridge’s (2007) joint system combining anaphoricity classifier probabilities with coreference probabilities, the [Denis and Baldridge \(2008\)](#) ranking model, and the [Rahman and Ng \(2009\)](#) proposal to train the two models jointly with a single objective.

Simple rule-based systems for coreference returned to prominence in the 2010s,

partly because of their ability to encode entity-based features in a high-precision way (Zhou et al. 2004, Haghghi and Klein 2009, Raghunathan et al. 2010, Lee et al. 2011, Lee et al. 2013, Hajishirzi et al. 2013) but in the end they suffered from an inability to deal with the semantics necessary to correctly handle cases of common noun coreference.

A return to supervised learning led to a number of advances in mention-ranking models which were also extended into neural architectures, for example using reinforcement learning to directly optimize coreference evaluation models Clark and Manning (2016a), doing end-to-end coreference all the way from span extraction (Lee et al. 2017, Zhang et al. 2018). Neural models also were designed to take advantage of global entity-level information (Clark and Manning 2016b, Wiseman et al. 2016, Lee et al. 2018).

Coreference is also related to the task of **entity linking** discussed in Chapter 23. Coreference can help entity linking by giving more possible surface forms to help link to the right Wikipedia page, and conversely entity linking can help improve coreference resolution. Consider this example from Hajishirzi et al. (2013):

- (21.68) [Michael Eisner]<sub>1</sub> and [Donald Tsang]<sub>2</sub> announced the grand opening of [[Hong Kong]<sub>3</sub> Disneyland]<sub>4</sub> yesterday. [Eisner]<sub>1</sub> thanked [the President]<sub>2</sub> and welcomed [fans]<sub>5</sub> to [the park]<sub>4</sub>.

Integrating entity linking into coreference can help draw encyclopedic knowledge (like the fact that *Donald Tsang* is a president) to help disambiguate the mention *the President*. Ponzetto and Strube (2006) (2007) and Ratinov and Roth (2012) showed that such attributes extracted from Wikipedia pages could be used to build richer models of entity mentions in coreference. More recent research shows how to do linking and coreference jointly (Hajishirzi et al. 2013, Zheng et al. 2013) or even jointly with named entity tagging as well (Durrett and Klein 2014).

The coreference task as we introduced it involves a simplifying assumption that the relationship between an anaphor and its antecedent is one of *identity*: the two coreferring mentions refer to the identical discourse referent. In real texts, the relationship can be more complex, where different aspects of a discourse referent can be neutralized or refocused. For example (21.69) (Recasens et al., 2011) shows an example of **metonymy**, in which the capital city *Washington* is used metonymically to refer to the US. (21.70-21.71) show other examples (Recasens et al., 2011):

- (21.69) a strict interpretation of a policy requires **The U.S.** to notify foreign dictators of certain coup plots ... **Washington** rejected the bid ...
- (21.70) I once crossed that border into Ashgh-Abad on Nowruz, the Persian New Year. In the South, everyone was celebrating **New Year**; to the North, **it** was a regular day.
- (21.71) In France, **the president** is elected for a term of seven years, while in the United States **he** is elected for a term of four years.

For further linguistic discussions of these complications of coreference see Pustejovsky (1991), van Deemter and Kibble (2000), Poesio et al. (2006), Fauconnier and Turner (2008), Versley (2008), and Barker (2010).

Ng (2017) offers a useful compact history of machine learning models in coreference resolution. There are three excellent book-length surveys of anaphora/coreference resolution, covering different time periods: Hirst (1981) (early work until about 1981), Mitkov (2002) (1986-2001), and Poesio et al. (2016) (2001-2015).

Andy Kehler wrote the Discourse chapter for the 2000 first edition of this textbook, which we used as the starting point for the second-edition chapter, and there

#### metonymy

are some remnants of Andy's lovely prose still in this third-edition coreference chapter.

## Exercises

CHAPTER

**22****Discourse Coherence**

And even in our wildest and most wandering reveries, nay in our very dreams, we shall find, if we reflect, that the imagination ran not altogether at adventures, but that there was still a connection upheld among the different ideas, which succeeded each other. Were the loosest and freest conversation to be transcribed, there would immediately be transcribed, there would immediately be observed something which connected it in all its transitions.

David Hume, *An enquiry concerning human understanding*, 1748

Orson Welles' movie *Citizen Kane* was groundbreaking in many ways, perhaps most notably in its structure. The story of the life of fictional media magnate Charles Foster Kane, the movie does not proceed in chronological order through Kane's life. Instead, the film begins with Kane's death (famously murmuring "Rosebud") and is structured around flashbacks to his life inserted among scenes of a reporter investigating his death. The novel idea that the structure of a movie does not have to linearly follow the structure of the real timeline made apparent for 20th century cinematography the infinite possibilities and impact of different kinds of coherent narrative structures.

But coherent structure is not just a fact about movies or works of art. Like movies, language does not normally consist of isolated, unrelated sentences, but instead of collocated, structured, **coherent** groups of sentences. We refer to such a coherent structured group of sentences as a **discourse**, and we use the word **coherence** to refer to the relationship between sentences that makes real discourses different than just random assemblages of sentences. The chapter you are now reading is an example of a discourse, as is a news article, a conversation, a thread on social media, a Wikipedia page, and your favorite novel.

What makes a discourse coherent? If you created a text by taking random sentences each from many different sources and pasted them together, would that be a coherent discourse? Almost certainly not. Real discourses exhibit both **local coherence** and **global coherence**. Let's consider three ways in which real discourses are locally coherent;

First, sentences or clauses in real discourses are related to nearby sentences in systematic ways. Consider this example from Hobbs (1979):

(22.1) John took a train from Paris to Istanbul. He likes spinach.

This sequence is incoherent because it is unclear to a reader why the second sentence follows the first; what does liking spinach have to do with train trips? In fact, a reader might go to some effort to try to figure out how the discourse could be coherent; perhaps there is a French spinach shortage? The very fact that hearers try to identify such connections suggests that human discourse comprehension involves the need to establish this kind of coherence.

By contrast, in the following coherent example:

(22.2) Jane took a train from Paris to Istanbul. She had to attend a conference.

discourse  
coherencelocal  
global

## coherence relations

the second sentence gives a REASON for Jane’s action in the first sentence. Structured relationships like REASON that hold between text units are called **coherence relations**, and coherent discourses are structured by many such coherence relations. Coherence relations are introduced in Section 22.1.

A second way a discourse can be locally coherent is by virtue of being “about” someone or something. In a coherent discourse some entities are **salient**, and the discourse focuses on them and doesn’t go back and forth between multiple entities. This is called **entity-based coherence**. Consider the following incoherent passage, in which the salient entity seems to wildly swing from John to Jenny to the piano store to the living room, back to Jenny, then the piano again:

- (22.3) John wanted to buy a piano for his living room.  
Jenny also wanted to buy a piano.  
He went to the piano store.  
It was nearby.  
The living room was on the second floor.  
She didn’t find anything she liked.  
The piano he bought was hard to get up to that floor.

## Centering Theory

Entity-based coherence models measure this kind of coherence by tracking salient entities across a discourse. For example **Centering Theory** (Grosz et al., 1995), the most influential theory of entity-based coherence, keeps track of which entities in the discourse model are salient at any point (salient entities are more likely to be pronominalized or to appear in prominent syntactic positions like subject or object). In Centering Theory, transitions between sentences that maintain the same salient entity are considered more coherent than ones that repeatedly shift between entities.

## entity grid

The **entity grid** model of coherence (Barzilay and Lapata, 2008) is a commonly used model that realizes some of the intuitions of the Centering Theory framework. Entity-based coherence is introduced in Section 22.3.

## topically coherent

Finally, discourses can be locally coherent by being **topically coherent**: nearby sentences are generally about the same topic and use the same or similar vocabulary to discuss these topics. Because topically coherent discourses draw from a single semantic field or topic, they tend to exhibit the surface property known as **lexical cohesion** (Halliday and Hasan, 1976): the sharing of identical or semantically related words in nearby sentences. For example, the fact that the words *house*, *chimney*, *garret*, *closet*, and *window*—all of which belong to the same semantic field—appear in the two sentences in (22.4), or that they share the identical word *shingled*, is a cue that the two are tied together as a discourse:

- (22.4) Before winter I built a **chimney**, and shingled the sides of my **house**...  
I have thus a tight shingled and plastered **house**... with a **garret** and a  
**closet**, a large **window** on each side....

## lexical cohesion

In addition to the local coherence between adjacent or nearby sentences, discourses also exhibit **global coherence**. Many genres of text are associated with particular conventional discourse structures. Academic articles might have sections describing the Methodology or Results. Stories might follow conventional plotlines or motifs. Persuasive essays have a particular claim they are trying to argue for, and an essay might express this claim together with a structured set of premises that support the argument and demolish potential counterarguments. We’ll introduce versions of each of these kinds of global coherence.

Why do we care about the local or global coherence of a discourse? Since coherence is a property of a well-written text, coherence detection plays a part in any

task that requires measuring the **quality** of a text. For example coherence can help in pedagogical tasks like essay grading or essay quality measurement that are trying to grade how well-written a human essay is (Somasundaran et al. 2014, Feng et al. 2014, Lai and Tetreault 2018). Coherence can also help for summarization; knowing the coherence relationship between sentences can help know how to select information from them. Finally, detecting incoherent text may even play a role in mental health tasks like measuring symptoms of schizophrenia or other kinds of disordered language (Ditman and Kuperberg 2010, Elvevåg et al. 2007, Bedi et al. 2015, Iter et al. 2018).

## 22.1 Coherence Relations

Recall from the introduction the difference between passages (22.5) and (22.6).

- (22.5) Jane took a train from Paris to Istanbul. She likes spinach.  
 (22.6) Jane took a train from Paris to Istanbul. She had to attend a conference.

The reason (22.6) is more coherent is that the reader can form a connection between the two sentences, in which the second sentence provides a potential REASON for the first sentences. This link is harder to form for (22.5). These connections between text spans in a discourse can be specified as a set of **coherence relations**. The next two sections describe two commonly used models of coherence relations and associated corpora: Rhetorical Structure Theory (RST), and the Penn Discourse TreeBank (PDTB).

coherence  
relation

RST  
nucleus  
satellite

### 22.1.1 Rhetorical Structure Theory

The most commonly used model of discourse organization is **Rhetorical Structure Theory (RST)** (Mann and Thompson, 1987). In RST relations are defined between two spans of text, generally a **nucleus** and a **satellite**. The nucleus is the unit that is more central to the writer's purpose and that is interpretable independently; the satellite is less central and generally is only interpretable with respect to the nucleus. Some symmetric relations, however, hold between two nuclei.

Below are a few examples of RST coherence relations, with definitions adapted from the RST Treebank Manual (Carlson and Marcu, 2001).

**Reason:** The nucleus is an action carried out by an animate agent and the satellite is the reason for the nucleus.

- (22.7) [NUC Jane took a train from Paris to Istanbul.] [SAT She had to attend a conference.]

**Elaboration:** The satellite gives additional information or detail about the situation presented in the nucleus.

- (22.8) [NUC Dorothy was from Kansas.] [SAT She lived in the midst of the great Kansas prairies.]

**Evidence:** The satellite gives additional information or detail about the situation presented in the nucleus. The information is presented with the goal of convince the reader to accept the information presented in the nucleus.

- (22.9) [NUC Kevin must be here.] [SAT His car is parked outside.]

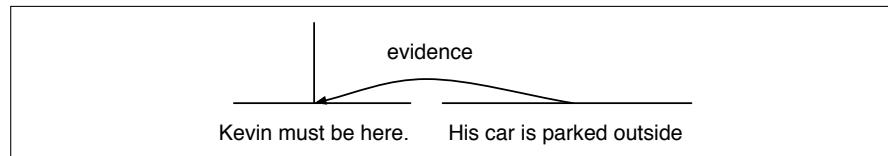
**Attribution:** The satellite gives the source of attribution for an instance of reported speech in the nucleus.

- (22.10) [SAT Analysts estimated] [NUC that sales at U.S. stores declined in the quarter, too]

**List:** In this multinuclear relation, a series of nuclei is given, without contrast or explicit comparison:

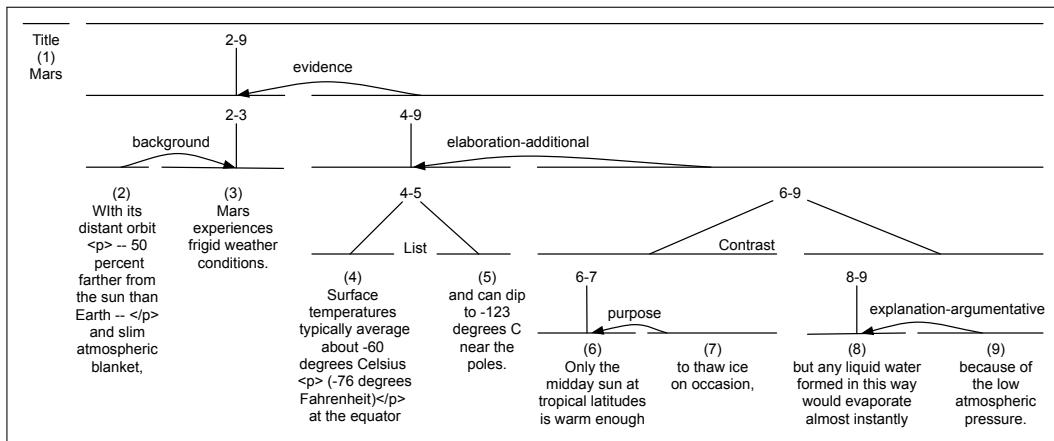
- (22.11) [NUC Billy Bones was the mate; ] [NUC Long John, he was quartermaster]

RST relations are traditionally represented graphically; the asymmetric Nucleus-Satellite relation is represented with an arrow from the satellite to the nucleus:



We can also talk about the coherence of a larger text by considering the hierarchical structure between coherence relations. Figure 22.1 shows the rhetorical structure of a paragraph from Marcu (2000a) for the text in (22.12) from the *Scientific American* magazine.

- (22.12) With its distant orbit—50 percent farther from the sun than Earth—and slim atmospheric blanket, Mars experiences frigid weather conditions. Surface temperatures typically average about -60 degrees Celsius (-76 degrees Fahrenheit) at the equator and can dip to -123 degrees C near the poles. Only the midday sun at tropical latitudes is warm enough to thaw ice on occasion, but any liquid water formed in this way would evaporate almost instantly because of the low atmospheric pressure.



**Figure 22.1** A discourse tree for the *Scientific American* text in (22.12), from Marcu (2000a). Note that asymmetric relations are represented with a curved arrow from the satellite to the nucleus.

The leaves in the Fig. 22.1 tree correspond to text spans of a sentence, clause or phrase that are called **elementary discourse units** or **EDUs** in RST; these units can also be referred to as **discourse segments**. Because these units may correspond to arbitrary spans of text, determining the boundaries of an EDU is an important task for extracting coherence relations. Roughly speaking, one can think of discourse

segments as being analogous to constituents in sentence syntax, and indeed as we'll see in Section 22.2 we generally draw on parsing algorithms to infer discourse structure.

There are corpora for many discourse coherence models; the RST Discourse TreeBank (Carlson et al., 2001) is the largest available discourse corpus. It consists of 385 English language documents selected from the Penn Treebank, with full RST parses for each one, using a large set of 78 distinct relations, grouped into 16 classes. RST treebanks exist also for Spanish, German, Basque, Dutch and Brazilian Portuguese (Braud et al., 2017).

Now that we've seen examples of coherence, we can see more clearly how a coherence relation can play a role in summarization or information extraction. For example, the nuclei of a text presumably express more important information than the satellites, which might be dropped in a summary.

### 22.1.2 Penn Discourse TreeBank (PDTB)

PDTB

discourse connectives

The **Penn Discourse TreeBank (PDTB)** is a second commonly used dataset that embodies another model of coherence relations (Miltsakaki et al. 2004, Prasad et al. 2008, Prasad et al. 2014). PDTB labeling is *lexically grounded*. Instead of asking annotators to directly tag the coherence relation between text spans, they were given a list of **discourse connectives**, words that signal discourse relations, like *because*, *although*, *when*, *since*, or *as a result*. In a part of a text where these words marked a coherence relation between two text spans, the connective and the spans were then annotated, as in Fig. 22.13, where the phrase as a result signals a causal relationship between what PDTB calls *Arg1* (the first two sentences, here in italics) and **Arg2** (the third sentence, here in bold).

(22.13) *Jewelry displays in department stores were often cluttered and uninspired. And the merchandise was, well, fake. **As a result**, marketers of faux gems steadily lost space in department stores to more fashionable rivals—cosmetics makers.*

(22.14) *In July, the Environmental Protection Agency imposed a gradual ban on virtually all uses of asbestos. (implicit=as a result) **By 1997, almost all remaining uses of cancer-causing asbestos will be outlawed.***

Not all coherence relations are marked by an explicit discourse connective, and so the PDTB also annotates pairs of neighboring sentences with no explicit signal, like (22.14). The annotator first chooses the word or phrase that could have been its signal (in this case **as a result**), and then labels its sense. For example for the ambiguous discourse connective *since* annotators marked whether it is using a CAUSAL or a TEMPORAL sense.

The final dataset contains roughly 18,000 explicit relations and 16,000 implicit relations. Fig. 22.2 shows examples from each of the 4 major semantic classes, while Fig. 22.3 shows the full tagset.

Unlike the RST Discourse Treebank, which integrates these pairwise coherence relations into a global tree structure spanning an entire discourse, the PDTB does not annotate anything above the span-pair level, making no commitment with respect to higher-level discourse structure.

There are also treebanks using similar methods for other languages; (22.15) shows an example from the Chinese Discourse TreeBank (Zhou and Xue, 2015). Because Chinese has a smaller percentage of explicit discourse connectives than English (only 22% of all discourse relations are marked with explicit connectives,

Class	Type	Example
TEMPORAL	SYNCHRONOUS	The parishioners of St. Michael and All Angels stop to chat at the church door, as members here always have. (Implicit <u>while</u> ) In the tower, five men and women pull rhythmically on ropes attached to the same five bells that first sounded here in 1614.
CONTINGENCY	REASON	Also unlike Mr. Ruder, Mr. Breeden appears to be in a position to get somewhere with his agenda. (implicit= <u>because</u> ) <b>As a former White House aide who worked closely with Congress, he is savvy in the ways of Washington.</b>
COMPARISON	CONTRAST	The U.S. wants the removal of what it perceives as barriers to investment; Japan denies there are real barriers.
EXPANSION	CONJUNCTION	Not <u>only</u> do the actors stand outside their characters and make it clear they are at odds with them, <u>but</u> they often literally stand on their heads.

Figure 22.2 The four high-level semantic distinctions in the PDTB sense hierarchy

<b>Temporal</b>	<b>Comparison</b>
• Asynchronous	• Contrast (Juxtaposition, Opposition)
• Synchronous (Precedence, Succession)	• <i>Pragmatic Contrast (Juxtaposition, Opposition)</i>
	• Concession (Expectation, Contra-expectation)
	• <i>Pragmatic Concession</i>
<b>Contingency</b>	<b>Expansion</b>
• Cause (Reason, Result)	• <i>Exception</i>
• Pragmatic Cause (Justification)	• Instantiation
• <i>Condition (Hypothetical, General, Unreal Present/Past, Factual Present/Past)</i>	• Restatement (Specification, Equivalence, Generalization)
• <i>Pragmatic Condition (Relevance, Implicit Assertion)</i>	• Alternative (Conjunction, Disjunction, Chosen Alternative)
	• List

Figure 22.3 The PDTB sense hierarchy. There are four top-level classes, 16 types, and 23 subtypes (not all types have subtypes). 11 of the 16 types are commonly used for implicit argument classification; the 5 types in italics are too rare in implicit labeling to be used.

compared to 47% in English), annotators labeled this corpus by directly mapping pairs of sentences to 11 sense tags, without starting with a lexical discourse connector.

(22.15) [Conn 为] [Arg2 推动图们江地区开发], [Arg1 韩国捐款一百万美元设立了图们江发展基金]  
“[In order to] [Arg2 promote the development of the Tumen River region], [Arg1 South Korea donated one million dollars to establish the Tumen River Development Fund.]”

These discourse treebanks have been used for shared tasks on multilingual discourse parsing (Xue et al., 2016).

## 22.2 Discourse Structure Parsing

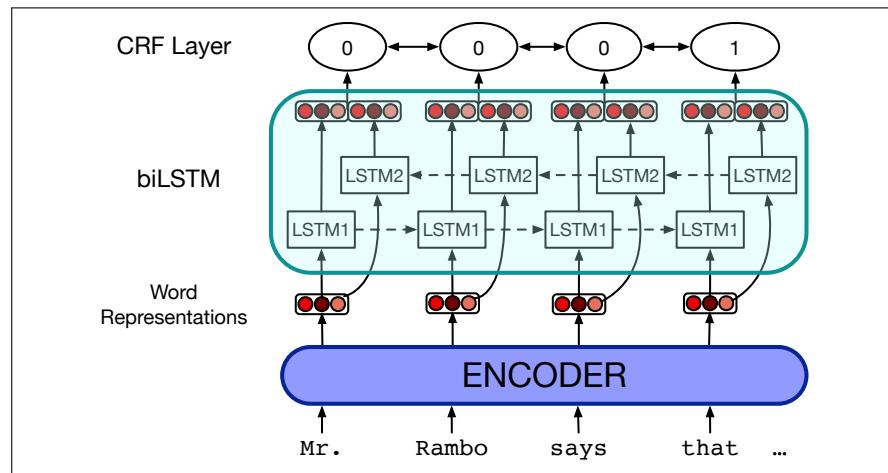
tree as we do for RST).

### 22.2.1 EDU segmentation for RST parsing

RST parsing is generally done in two stages. The first stage, **EDU segmentation**, extracts the start and end of each EDU. The output of this stage would be a labeling like the following:

- (22.16) [Mr. Rambo says]<sub>e1</sub> [that a 3.2-acre property]<sub>e2</sub> [overlooking the San Fernando Valley]<sub>e3</sub> [is priced at \$4 million]<sub>e4</sub> [because the late actor Erroll Flynn once lived there].<sub>e5</sub>

Since EDUs roughly correspond to clauses, early models of EDU segmentation first ran a syntactic parser, and then post-processed the output. Modern systems generally use neural sequence models supervised by the gold EDU segmentation in the RST Discourse Treebank. Fig. 22.4 shows an example after Wang et al. (2018) and Muller et al. (2019) of a supervised architecture that uses the biLSTM-CRF architecture we saw for named entity tagging and semantic role labeling. Here the input sentence is passed through an encoder and then passed through a biLSTM with a CRF layer on top to produce a sequence of 0s and 1s, where 1 indicates the start of an EDU (except at the start of sentence).



**Figure 22.4** biLSTM-CRF for EDU segmentation. Word inputs can draw from any encoder for contextual embeddings like BERT.

### 22.2.2 RST parsing

Tools for building RST coherence structure for a discourse have long been based on syntactic parsing algorithms like shift-reduce parsing (Marcu, 1999). Many modern RST parsers since Ji and Eisenstein (2014) draw on the neural syntactic parsers we saw in Chapter 14 in Section 14.4, using representation learning to build representations for each span, and training a parser to choose the correct shift and reduce actions based on the gold parses in the training set.

We'll describe the shift-reduce parser of Yu et al. (2018). The parser state consists of a stack and a queue, and produces this structure by taking a series of actions on the states. Actions include:

- **shift**: pushes the first EDU in the queue onto the stack creating a single-node subtree.
- **reduce(l,d)**: merges the top two subtrees on the stack, where  $l$  is the coherence relation label, and  $d$  is the nuclearity direction,  $d \in \{NN, NS, SN\}$ .

As well as the **pop root** operation, to remove the final tree from the stack.

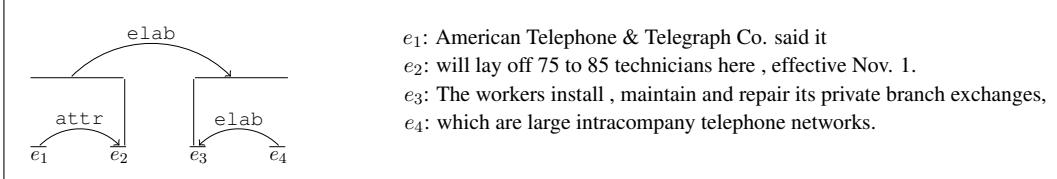


Figure 22.5 Example RST discourse tree, showing four EDUs. Figure from Yu et al. (2018).

Fig. 22.6 shows the actions the parser takes to build the structure in Fig. 22.5.

Step	Stack	Queue	Action	Relation
1	$\emptyset$	$e_1, e_2, e_3, e_4$	SH	$\emptyset$
2	$e_1$	$e_2, e_3, e_4$	SH	$\emptyset$
3	$e_1, e_2$	$e_3, e_4$	RD (attr, SN)	$\emptyset$
4	$e_{1:2}$	$e_3, e_4$	SH	$\widehat{e_1e_2}$
5	$e_{1:2}, e_3$	$e_4$	SH	$\widehat{e_1e_2}$
6	$e_{1:2}, e_3, e_4$	$\emptyset$	RD (elab, NS)	$\widehat{e_1e_2}$
7	$e_{1:2}, e_{3:4}$	$\emptyset$	RD (elab, SN)	$\widehat{e_1e_2, e_3e_4}$
8	$e_{1:4}$	$\emptyset$	PR	$\widehat{e_1e_2, e_3e_4, e_{1:2}e_{3:4}}$

Figure 22.6 Parsing the example of Fig. 22.5 using a shift-reduce parser. Figure from Yu et al. (2018).

The Yu et al. (2018) uses an encoder-decoder architecture, where the encoder represents the input span of words and EDUs using a hierarchical biLSTM. The first biLSTM layer represents the words inside an EDU, and the second represents the EDU sequence. Given an input sentence  $w_1, w_2, \dots, w_m$ , the words can be represented as usual (by static embeddings, combinations with character embeddings or tags, or contextual embeddings) resulting in an input word representation sequence  $\mathbf{x}_1^w, \mathbf{x}_2^w, \dots, \mathbf{x}_m^w$ . The result of the word-level biLSTM is then a sequence of  $\mathbf{h}^w$  values:

$$\mathbf{h}_1^w, \mathbf{h}_2^w, \dots, \mathbf{h}_m^w = \text{biLSTM}(\mathbf{x}_1^w, \mathbf{x}_2^w, \dots, \mathbf{x}_m^w) \quad (22.17)$$

An EDU of span  $w_s, w_{s+1}, \dots, w_t$  then has biLSTM output representation  $\mathbf{h}_s^w, \mathbf{h}_{s+1}^w, \dots, \mathbf{h}_t^w$ , and is represented by average pooling:

$$\mathbf{x}^e = \frac{1}{t-s+1} \sum_{k=s}^t \mathbf{h}_k^w \quad (22.18)$$

The second layer uses this input to compute a final representation of the sequence of EDU representations  $\mathbf{h}^e$ :

$$\mathbf{h}_1^e, \mathbf{h}_2^e, \dots, \mathbf{h}_n^e = \text{biLSTM}(\mathbf{x}_1^e, \mathbf{x}_2^e, \dots, \mathbf{x}_n^e) \quad (22.19)$$

The decoder is then a feedforward network  $\mathbf{W}$  that outputs an action  $o$  based on a concatenation of the top three subtrees on the stack  $(s_o, s_1, s_2)$  plus the first EDU in

the queue ( $q_0$ ):

$$\mathbf{o} = \mathbf{W}(\mathbf{h}_{s0}^t, \mathbf{h}_{s1}^t, \mathbf{h}_{s2}^t, \mathbf{h}_{q0}^e) \quad (22.20)$$

where the representation of the EDU on the queue  $\mathbf{h}_{q0}^e$  comes directly from the encoder, and the three hidden vectors representing partial trees are computed by average pooling over the encoder output for the EDUs in those trees:

$$\mathbf{h}_s^t = \frac{1}{j-i+1} \sum_{k=i}^j \mathbf{h}_k^e \quad (22.21)$$

Training first maps each RST gold parse tree into a sequence of oracle actions, and then uses the standard cross-entropy loss (with  $l_2$  regularization) to train the system to take such actions. Give a state  $S$  and oracle action  $a$ , we first compute the decoder output using Eq. 22.20, apply a softmax to get probabilities:

$$p_a = \frac{\exp(\mathbf{o}_a)}{\sum_{a' \in A} \exp(\mathbf{o}_{a'})} \quad (22.22)$$

and then computing the cross-entropy loss:

$$L_{CE}() = -\log(p_a) + \frac{\lambda}{2} \|\Theta\|^2 \quad (22.23)$$

RST discourse parsers are evaluated on the test section of the RST Discourse Treebank, either with gold EDUs or end-to-end, using the RST-Pareval metrics (Marcu, 2000b). It is standard to first transform the gold RST trees into right-branching binary trees, and to report four metrics: trees with no labels (S for Span), labeled with nuclei (N), with relations (R), or both (F for Full), for each metric computing micro-averaged  $F_1$  over all spans from all documents (Marcu 2000b, Morey et al. 2017).

### 22.2.3 PDTB discourse parsing

**shallow discourse parsing**

PDTB discourse parsing, the task of detecting PDTB coherence relations between spans, is sometimes called **shallow discourse parsing** because the task just involves flat relationships between text spans, rather than the full trees of RST parsing.

The set of four subtasks for PDTB discourse parsing was laid out by Lin et al. (2014) in the first complete system, with separate tasks for explicit (tasks 1-3) and implicit (task 4) connectives:

1. Find the discourse connectives (disambiguating them from non-discourse uses)
2. Find the two spans for each connective
3. Label the relationship between these spans
4. Assign a relation between every adjacent pair of sentences

Many systems have been proposed for Task 4: taking a pair of adjacent sentences as input and assign a coherence relation sense label as output. The setup often follows Lin et al. (2009) in assuming gold sentence span boundaries and assigning each adjacent span one of the 11 second-level PDTB tags or none (removing the 5 very rare tags of the 16 shown in italics in Fig. 22.3).

A simple but very strong algorithm for Task 4 is to represent each of the two spans by BERT embeddings and take the last layer hidden state corresponding to

the position of the [CLS] token, pass this through a single layer tanh feedforward network and then a softmax for sense classification (Nie et al., 2019).

Each of the other tasks also have been addressed. Task 1 is to disambiguating discourse connectives from their non-discourse use. For example as Pitler and Nenkova (2009) point out, the word *and* is a discourse connective linking the two clauses by an elaboration/expansion relation in (22.24) while it's a non-discourse NP conjunction in (22.25):

(22.24) Selling picked up as previous buyers bailed out of their positions and aggressive short sellers—anticipating further declines—moved in.

(22.25) My favorite colors are blue and green.

Similarly, *once* is a discourse connective indicating a temporal relation in (22.26), but simply a non-discourse adverb meaning ‘formerly’ and modifying *used* in (22.27):

(22.26) The asbestos fiber, crocidolite, is unusually resilient once it enters the lungs, with even brief exposures to it causing symptoms that show up decades later, researchers said.

(22.27) A form of asbestos once used to make Kent cigarette filters has caused a high percentage of cancer deaths among a group of workers exposed to it more than 30 years ago, researchers reported.

Determining whether a word is a discourse connective is thus a special case of word sense disambiguation. Early work on disambiguation showed that the 4 PDTB high-level sense classes could be disambiguated with high (94%) accuracy used syntactic features from gold parse trees (Pitler and Nenkova, 2009). Recent work performs the task end-to-end from word inputs using a biLSTM-CRF with BIO outputs (B-CONN, I-CONN, O) (Yu et al., 2019).

For task 2, PDTB spans can be identified with the same sequence models used to find RST EDUs: a biLSTM sequence model with pretrained contextual embedding (BERT) inputs (Muller et al., 2019). Simple heuristics also do pretty well as a baseline at finding spans, since 93% of relations are either completely within a single sentence or span two adjacent sentences, with one argument in each sentence (Biran and McKeown, 2015).

## 22.3 Centering and Entity-Based Coherence

A second way a discourse can be coherent is by virtue of being “about” some entity. This idea that at each point in the discourse some entity is salient, and a discourse is coherent by continuing to discuss the same entity, appears early in functional linguistics and the psychology of discourse (Chafe 1976, Kintsch and Van Dijk 1978), and soon made its way to computational models. In this section we introduce two

**entity-based** models of this kind of **entity-based coherence**: **Centering Theory** (Grosz et al., 1995), and the **entity grid** model of Barzilay and Lapata (2008).

### 22.3.1 Centering

**Centering Theory**

**Centering Theory** (Grosz et al., 1995) is a theory of both discourse salience and discourse coherence. As a model of discourse salience, Centering proposes that at any given point in the discourse one of the entities in the discourse model is salient: it is being “centered” on. As a model of discourse coherence, Centering proposes

that discourses in which adjacent sentences CONTINUE to maintain the same salient entity are more coherent than those which SHIFT back and forth between multiple entities (we will see that CONTINUE and SHIFT are technical terms in the theory).

The following two texts from [Grosz et al. \(1995\)](#) which have exactly the same propositional content but different saliences, can help in understanding the main Centering intuition.

- (22.28) a. John went to his favorite music store to buy a piano.  
 b. He had frequented the store for many years.  
 c. He was excited that he could finally buy a piano.  
 d. He arrived just as the store was closing for the day.

- (22.29) a. John went to his favorite music store to buy a piano.  
 b. It was a store John had frequented for many years.  
 c. He was excited that he could finally buy a piano.  
 d. It was closing just as John arrived.

While these two texts differ only in how the two entities (John and the store) are realized in the sentences, the discourse in (22.28) is intuitively more coherent than the one in (22.29). As [Grosz et al. \(1995\)](#) point out, this is because the discourse in (22.28) is clearly about one individual, John, describing his actions and feelings. The discourse in (22.29), by contrast, focuses first on John, then the store, then back to John, then to the store again. It lacks the “aboutness” of the first discourse.

**backward-looking center**

**forward-looking center**

Centering Theory realizes this intuition by maintaining two representations for each utterance  $U_n$ . The **backward-looking center** of  $U_n$ , denoted as  $C_b(U_n)$ , represents the current salient entity, the one being focused on in the discourse after  $U_n$  is interpreted. The **forward-looking centers** of  $U_n$ , denoted as  $C_f(U_n)$ , are a set of potential future salient entities, the discourse entities evoked by  $U_n$  any of which could serve as  $C_b$  (the salient entity) of the following utterance, i.e.  $C_b(U_{n+1})$ .

The set of forward-looking centers  $C_f(U_n)$  are ranked according to factors like discourse salience and grammatical role (for example subjects are higher ranked than objects, which are higher ranked than all other grammatical roles). We call the highest-ranked forward-looking center  $C_p$  (for “preferred center”).  $C_p$  is a kind of prediction about what entity will be talked about next. Sometimes the next utterance indeed talks about this entity, but sometimes another entity becomes salient instead.

We’ll use here the algorithm for centering presented in [Brennan et al. \(1987\)](#), which defines four intersentential relationships between a pair of utterances  $U_n$  and  $U_{n+1}$  that depend on the relationship between  $C_b(U_{n+1})$ ,  $C_b(U_n)$ , and  $C_p(U_{n+1})$ ; these are shown in Fig. 22.7.

$C_b(U_{n+1}) = C_b(U_n)$ or undefined $C_b(U_n)$	$C_b(U_{n+1}) \neq C_b(U_n)$	
$C_b(U_{n+1}) = C_p(U_{n+1})$	Continue	Smooth-Shift
$C_b(U_{n+1}) \neq C_p(U_{n+1})$	Retain	Rough-Shift

**Figure 22.7** Centering Transitions for Rule 2 from [Brennan et al. \(1987\)](#).

The following rules are used by the algorithm:

**Rule 1:** If any element of  $C_f(U_n)$  is realized by a pronoun in utterance  $U_{n+1}$ , then  $C_b(U_{n+1})$  must be realized as a pronoun also.

**Rule 2:** Transition states are ordered. Continue is preferred to Retain is preferred to Smooth-Shift is preferred to Rough-Shift.

Rule 1 captures the intuition that pronominalization (including zero-anaphora) is a common way to mark discourse salience. If there are multiple pronouns in an utterance realizing entities from the previous utterance, one of these pronouns must realize the backward center  $C_b$ ; if there is only one pronoun, it must be  $C_p$ .

Rule 2 captures the intuition that discourses that continue to center the same entity are more coherent than ones that repeatedly shift to other centers. The transition table is based on two factors: whether the backward-looking center  $C_b$  is the same from  $U_n$  to  $U_{n+1}$  and whether this discourse entity is the one that was preferred ( $C_p$ ) from  $U_n$ . If both of these hold, a CONTINUE relation, the speaker has been talking about the same entity and is going to continue talking about that entity. In a RETAIN relation, the speaker intends to SHIFT to a new entity in a future utterance and meanwhile places the current entity in a lower rank  $C_f$ . In a SHIFT relation, the speaker is shifting to a new salient entity.

Let's walk though the start of (22.28) again, repeated as (22.30), showing the representations after each utterance is processed.

- (22.30) John went to his favorite music store to buy a piano. ( $U_1$ )
  - He was excited that he could finally buy a piano. ( $U_2$ )
  - He arrived just as the store was closing for the day. ( $U_3$ )
  - It was closing just as John arrived ( $U_4$ )

Using the grammatical role hierarchy to order the  $C_f$ , for sentence  $U_1$  we get:

- $C_f(U_1)$ : {John, music store, piano}
- $C_p(U_1)$ : John
- $C_b(U_1)$ : undefined

and then for sentence  $U_2$ :

- $C_f(U_2)$ : {John, piano}
  - $C_p(U_2)$ : John
  - $C_b(U_2)$ : John
- Result: Continue ( $C_p(U_2)=C_b(U_2)$ ;  $C_b(U_1)$  undefined)

The transition from  $U_1$  to  $U_2$  is thus a CONTINUE. Completing this example is left as exercise (1) for the reader

### 22.3.2 Entity Grid model

Centering embodies a particular theory of how entity mentioning leads to coherence: that salient entities appear in subject position or are pronominalized, and that discourses are salient by means of continuing to mention the same entity in such ways.

entity grid

The **entity grid** model of Barzilay and Lapata (2008) is an alternative way to capture entity-based coherence: instead of having a top-down theory, the entity-grid model uses machine learning to induce the patterns of entity mentioning that make a discourse more coherent.

The model is based around an **entity grid**, a two-dimensional array that represents the distribution of entity mentions across sentences. The rows represent sentences, and the columns represent discourse entities (most versions of the entity grid model focus just on nominal mentions). Each cell represents the possible appearance of an entity in a sentence, and the values represent whether the entity appears and its grammatical role. Grammatical roles are subject (S), object (O), neither (X), or absent (-); in the implementation of Barzilay and Lapata (2008), subjects of passives

are represented with O, leading to a representation with some of the characteristics of thematic roles.

	Department	Trial	Microsoft	Evidence	Competitors	Markets	Products	Brands	Case	Netscape	Software	Tactics	Government	Suit	Earnings
1	s	o	s	x	o	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1
2	-	-	o	-	-	x	s	o	-	-	-	-	-	-	2
3	-	-	s	o	-	-	s	o	o	-	-	-	-	-	3
4	-	-	s	-	-	-	-	-	s	-	-	-	-	-	4
5	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	s	o	-	-	-	5
6	-	x	s	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	o	6

**Figure 22.8** Part of the entity grid for the text in Fig. 22.9. Entities are listed by their head noun; each cell represents whether an entity appears as subject (S), object (O), neither (X), or is absent (–). Figure from Barzilay and Lapata (2008).

- 1 [The Justice Department]<sub>s</sub> is conducting an [anti-trust trial]<sub>o</sub> against [Microsoft Corp.]<sub>x</sub> with [evidence]<sub>x</sub> that [the company]<sub>s</sub> is increasingly attempting to crush [competitors]<sub>o</sub>.
- 2 [Microsoft]<sub>o</sub> is accused of trying to forcefully buy into [markets]<sub>x</sub> where [its own products]<sub>s</sub> are not competitive enough to unseat [established brands]<sub>o</sub>.
- 3 [The case]<sub>s</sub> revolves around [evidence]<sub>o</sub> of [Microsoft]<sub>s</sub> aggressively pressuring [Netscape]<sub>o</sub> into merging [browser software]<sub>o</sub>.
- 4 [Microsoft]<sub>s</sub> claims [its tactics]<sub>s</sub> are commonplace and good economically.
- 5 [The government]<sub>s</sub> may file [a civil suit]<sub>x</sub>, ruling that [conspiracy]<sub>s</sub> to curb [competition]<sub>o</sub> through [collusion]<sub>x</sub> is [a violation of the Sherman Act]<sub>o</sub>.
- 6 [Microsoft]<sub>s</sub> continues to show [increased earnings]<sub>o</sub> despite [the trial]<sub>x</sub>.

**Figure 22.9** A discourse with the entities marked and annotated with grammatical functions. Figure from Barzilay and Lapata (2008).

Fig. 22.8 from Barzilay and Lapata (2008) shows a grid for the text shown in Fig. 22.9. There is one row for each of the six sentences. The second column, for the entity ‘trial’, is O – – X, showing that the trial appears in the first sentence as direct object, in the last sentence as an oblique, and does not appear in the middle sentences. The third column, for the entity Microsoft, shows that it appears as subject in sentence 1 (it also appears as the object of the preposition *against*, but entities that appear multiple times are recorded with their highest-ranked grammatical function). Computing the entity grids requires extracting entities and doing coreference resolution to cluster them into discourse entities (Chapter 22) as well as parsing the sentences to get grammatical roles.

In the resulting grid, columns that are dense (like the column for Microsoft) indicate entities that are mentioned often in the texts; sparse columns (like the column for earnings) indicate entities that are mentioned rarely.

In the entity grid model, coherence is measured by patterns of **local entity transition**. For example, Department is a subject in sentence 1, and then not mentioned in sentence 2; this is the transition [S –]. The transitions are thus sequences {S,O,X,–}<sup>n</sup> which can be extracted as continuous cells from each column. Each transition has a probability; the probability of [S –] in the grid from Fig. 22.8 is 0.08 (it occurs 6 times out of the 75 total transitions of length two). Fig. 22.10 shows the distribution over transitions of length 2 for the text of Fig. 22.9 (shown as the first row  $d_1$ ), and 2 other documents.

The transitions and their probabilities can then be used as features for a machine learning model. This model can be a text classifier trained to produce human-labeled

	s s	s o	s x	s -	o s	o o	o x	o -	x s	x o	x x	x -	- s	- o	- x	--
$d_1$	.01	.01	0	.08	.01	0	0	.09	0	0	0	.03	.05	.07	.03	.59
$d_2$	.02	.01	.01	.02	0	.07	0	.02	.14	.14	.06	.04	.03	.07	0.1	.36
$d_3$	.02	0	0	.03	.09	0	.09	.06	0	0	0	.05	.03	.07	.17	.39

**Figure 22.10** A feature vector for representing documents using all transitions of length 2. Document  $d_1$  is the text in Fig. 22.9. Figure from [Barzilay and Lapata \(2008\)](#).

coherence scores (for example from humans labeling each text as coherent or incoherent). But such data is expensive to gather. [Barzilay and Lapata \(2005\)](#) introduced a simplifying innovation: coherence models can be trained by **self-supervision**: trained to distinguish the natural original order of sentences in a discourse from a modified order (such as a randomized order). We turn to these evaluations in the next section.

### 22.3.3 Evaluating Neural and Entity-based coherence

Entity-based coherence models, as well as the neural models we introduce in the next section, are generally evaluated in one of two ways.

First, we can have humans rate the coherence of a document and train a classifier to predict these human ratings, which can be categorial (high/low, or high/mid/low) or continuous. This is the best evaluation to use if we have some end task in mind, like essay grading, where human raters are the correct definition of the final label.

Alternatively, since it's very expensive to get human labels, and we might not yet have an end-task in mind, we can use natural texts to do self-supervision. In self-supervision we pair up a natural discourse with a pseudo-document created by changing the ordering. Since naturally-ordered discourses are more coherent than random permutation ([Lin et al., 2011](#)), a successful coherence algorithm should prefer the original ordering.

Self-supervision has been implemented in 3 ways. In the **sentence order discrimination** task ([Barzilay and Lapata, 2005](#)), we compare a document to a random permutation of its sentence. A model is considered correct for an (original, permuted) test pair if it ranks the original document higher. Given  $k$  documents, we can compute  $n$  permutations, resulting in  $kn$  pairs each with one original document and one permutation, to use in training and testing.

In the **sentence insertion** task ([Chen et al., 2007](#)) we take a document, remove one of the  $n$  sentences  $s$ , and create  $n - 1$  copies of the document with  $s$  inserted into each position. The task is to decide which of the  $n$  documents is the one with the original ordering, distinguishing the original position for  $s$  from all other positions. Insertion is harder than discrimination since we are comparing documents that differ by only one sentence.

Finally, in the **sentence order reconstruction** task ([Lapata, 2003](#)), we take a document, randomize the sentences, and train the model to put them back in the correct order. Again given  $k$  documents, we can compute  $n$  permutations, resulting in  $kn$  pairs each with one original document and one permutation, to use in training and testing. Reordering is of course a much harder task than simple classification.

## 22.4 Representation learning models for local coherence

The third kind of local coherence is topical or semantic field coherence. Discourses cohere by talking about the same topics and subtopics, and drawing on the same semantic fields in doing so.

**lexical cohesion**

**TextTiling**

The field was pioneered by a series of unsupervised models in the 1990s of this kind of coherence that made use of **lexical cohesion** (Halliday and Hasan, 1976): the sharing of identical or semantically related words in nearby sentences. Morris and Hirst (1991) computed **lexical chains** of words (like *pine, bush trees, trunk*) that occurred through a discourse and that were related in Roget’s Thesaurus (by being in the same category, or linked categories). They showed that the number and density of chain correlated with the topic structure. The **TextTiling** algorithm of Hearst (1997) computed the cosine between neighboring text spans (the normalized dot product of vectors of raw word counts), again showing that sentences or paragraph in a subtopic have high cosine with each other, but not with sentences in a neighboring subtopic.

A third early model, the LSA Coherence method of Foltz et al. (1998) was the first to use embeddings, modeling the coherence between two sentences as the cosine between their LSA sentence embedding vectors<sup>1</sup>, computing embeddings for a sentence  $s$  by summing the embeddings of its words  $w$ :

$$\begin{aligned} \text{sim}(s, t) &= \cos(\mathbf{s}, \mathbf{t}) \\ &= \cos\left(\sum_{w \in s} \mathbf{w}, \sum_{w \in t} \mathbf{w}\right) \end{aligned} \quad (22.31)$$

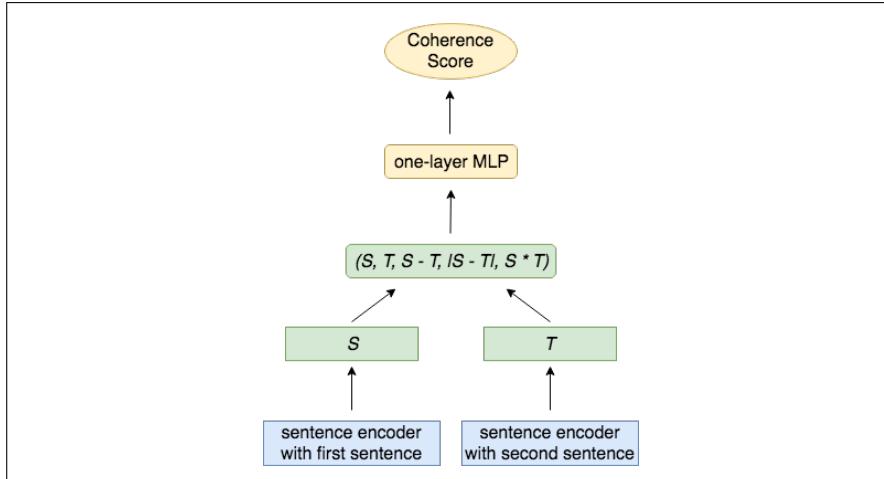
and defining the overall coherence of a text as the average similarity over all pairs of adjacent sentences  $s_i$  and  $s_{i+1}$ :

$$\text{coherence}(T) = \frac{1}{n-1} \sum_{i=1}^{n-1} \cos(s_i, s_{i+1}) \quad (22.32)$$

Modern neural representation-learning coherence models, beginning with Li et al. (2014), draw on the intuitions of these early unsupervised models for learning sentence representations and measuring how they change between neighboring sentences. But the new models also draw on the idea pioneered by Barzilay and Lapata (2005) of self-supervision. That is, unlike say coherence relation models, which train on hand-labeled representations for RST or PDTB, these models are trained to distinguish natural discourses from unnatural discourses formed by scrambling the order of sentences, thus using representation learning to discover the features that matter for at least the ordering aspect of coherence.

Here we present one such model, the local coherence discriminator (LCD) (Xu et al., 2019). Like early models, LCD computes the coherence of a text as the average of coherence scores between consecutive pairs of sentences. But unlike the early unsupervised models, LCD is a self-supervised model trained to discriminate consecutive sentence pairs  $(s_i, s_{i+1})$  in the training documents (assumed to be coherent) from (constructed) incoherent pairs  $(s_i, s')$ . All consecutive pairs are positive examples, and the negative (incoherent) partner for a sentence  $s_i$  is another sentence uniformly sampled from the same document as  $s_i$ .

<sup>1</sup> See Chapter 6 for more on LSA embeddings; they are computed by applying SVD to the term-document matrix (each cell weighted by log frequency and normalized by entropy), and then the first 300 dimensions are used as the embedding.



**Figure 22.11** The architecture of the LCD model of document coherence, showing the computation of the score for a pair of sentences  $s$  and  $t$ . Figure from [Xu et al. \(2019\)](#).

Fig. 22.11 describes the architecture of the model  $f_\theta$ , which takes a sentence pair and returns a score, higher scores for more coherent pairs. Given an input sentence pair  $s$  and  $t$ , the model computes sentence embeddings  $\mathbf{s}$  and  $\mathbf{t}$  (using any sentence embeddings algorithm), and then concatenates four features of the pair: (1) the concatenation of the two vectors (2) their difference  $\mathbf{s} - \mathbf{t}$ ; (3) the absolute value of their difference  $|\mathbf{s} - \mathbf{t}|$ ; (4) their element-wise product  $\mathbf{s} \odot \mathbf{t}$ . These are passed through a one-layer feedforward network to output the coherence score.

The model is trained to make this coherence score higher for real pairs than for negative pairs. More formally, the training objective for a corpus  $C$  of documents  $d$ , each of which consists of a list of sentences  $s_i$ , is:

$$L_\theta = \sum_{d \in C} \sum_{s_i \in d} \mathbb{E}_{p(s' | s_i)} [L(f_\theta(s_i, s_{i+1}), f_\theta(s_i, s'))] \quad (22.33)$$

$\mathbb{E}_{p(s' | s_i)}$  is the expectation with respect to the negative sampling distribution conditioned on  $s_i$ : given a sentence  $s_i$  the algorithms samples a negative sentence  $s'$  uniformly over the other sentences in the same document.  $L$  is a loss function that takes two scores, one for a positive pair and one for a negative pair, with the goal of encouraging  $f^+ = f_\theta(s_i, s_{i+1})$  to be high and  $f^- = f_\theta(s_i, s')$  to be low. Fig. 22.11 use the margin loss  $l(f^+, f^-) = \max(0, \eta - f^+ + f^-)$  where  $\eta$  is the margin hyperparameter.

Xu et al. (2019) also give a useful baseline algorithm that itself has quite high performance in measuring perplexity: train an RNN language model on the data, and compute the log likelihood of sentence  $s_i$  in two ways, once given the preceding context (conditional log likelihood) and once with no context (marginal log likelihood). The difference between these values tells us how much the preceding context improved the predictability of  $s_i$ , a predictability measure of coherence.

Training models to predict longer contexts than just consecutive pairs of sentences can result in even stronger discourse representations. For example a Transformer language model trained with a contrastive sentence objective to predict text up to a distance of  $\pm 2$  sentences improves performance on various discourse coherence tasks (Iter et al., 2020).

Language-model style models are generally evaluated by the methods of Section 22.3.3, although they can also be evaluated on the RST and PDTB coherence

relation tasks.

## 22.5 Global Coherence

A discourse must also cohere globally rather than just at the level of pairs of sentences. Consider stories, for example. The narrative structure of stories is one of the oldest kinds of global coherence to be studied. In his influential *Morphology of the Folktale*, Propp (1968) models the discourse structure of Russian folktales via a kind of plot grammar. His model includes a set of character categories he called **dramatis personae**, like Hero, Villain, Donor, or Helper, and a set of events he called **functions** (like “Villain commits kidnapping”, “Donor tests Hero”, or “Hero is pursued”) that have to occur in particular order, along with other components. Propp shows that the plots of each of the fairy tales he studies can be represented as a sequence of these functions, different tales choosing different subsets of functions, but always in the same order. Indeed Lakoff (1972b) showed that Propp’s model amounted to a discourse grammar of stories, and in recent computational work Finlayson (2016) demonstrates that some of these Proppian functions could be induced from corpora of folktale texts by detecting events that have similar actions across stories. Bamman et al. (2013) showed that generalizations over dramatis personae could be induced from movie plot summaries on Wikipedia. Their model induced latent personae from features like the actions the character takes (e.g., Villains strangle), the actions done to them (e.g., Villains are foiled and arrested) or the descriptive words used of them (Villains are evil).

In this section we introduce two kinds of such global discourse structure that have been widely studied computationally. The first is the structure of arguments: the way people attempt to convince each other in persuasive essays by offering claims and supporting premises. The second is somewhat related: the structure of scientific papers, and the way authors present their goals, results, and relationship to prior work in their papers.

### 22.5.1 Argumentation Structure

**argumentation mining**

The first type of global discourse structure is the structure of **arguments**. Analyzing people’s argumentation computationally is often called **argumentation mining**.

**pathos**  
**ethos**  
**logos**

The study of arguments dates back to Aristotle, who in his Rhetorics described three components of a good argument: **pathos** (appealing to the emotions of the listener), **ethos** (appealing to the speaker’s personal character), and **logos** (the logical structure of the argument).

**claims**  
**premises**  
**argumentative relations**

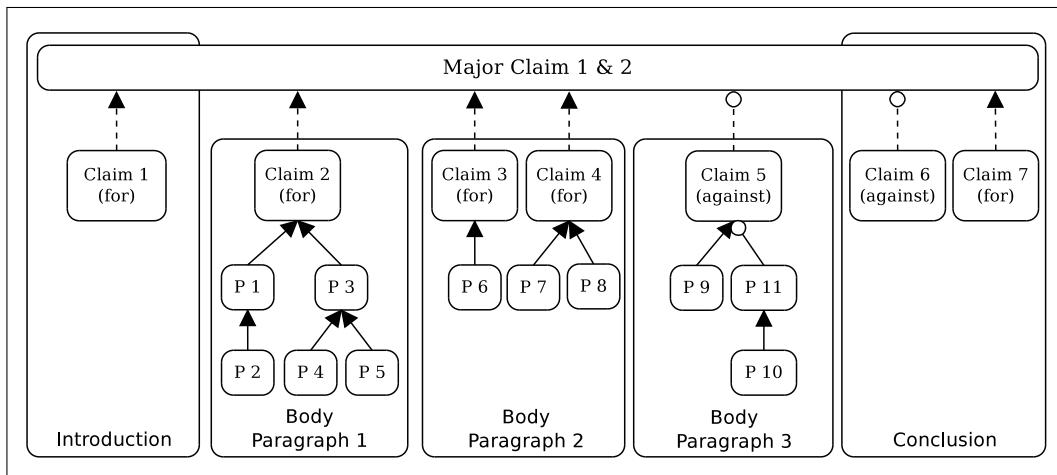
Most of the discourse structure studies of argumentation have focused on **logos**, particularly via building and training on annotated datasets of persuasive essays or other arguments (Reed et al. 2008, Stab and Gurevych 2014a, Peldszus and Stede 2016, Habernal and Gurevych 2017, Musi et al. 2018). Such corpora, for example, often include annotations of argumentative components like **claims** (the central component of the argument that is controversial and needs support) and **premises** (the reasons given by the author to persuade the reader by supporting or attacking the claim or other premises), as well as the **argumentative relations** between them like SUPPORT and ATTACK.

Consider the following example of a persuasive essay from Stab and Gurevych (2014b). The first sentence (1) presents a claim (in bold). (2) and (3) present two

premises supporting the claim. (4) gives a premise supporting premise (3).

**“(1) Museums and art galleries provide a better understanding about arts than Internet.** (2) In most museums and art galleries, detailed descriptions in terms of the background, history and author are provided. (3) Seeing an artwork online is not the same as watching it with our own eyes, as (4) the picture online does not show the texture or three-dimensional structure of the art, which is important to study.”

Thus this example has three argumentative relations: SUPPORT(2,1), SUPPORT(3,1) and SUPPORT(4,3). Fig. 22.12 shows the structure of a much more complex argument.



**Figure 22.12** Argumentation structure of a persuasive essay. Arrows indicate argumentation relations, either of SUPPORT (with arrowheads) or ATTACK (with circleheads); P denotes premises. Figure from [Stab and Gurevych \(2017\)](#).

While argumentation mining is clearly related to rhetorical structure and other kinds of coherence relations, arguments tend to be much less local; often a persuasive essay will have only a single main claim, with premises spread throughout the text, without the local coherence we see in coherence relations.

Algorithms for detecting argumentation structure often include classifiers for distinguishing claims, premises, or non-argumentation, together with relation classifiers for deciding if two spans have the SUPPORT, ATTACK, or neither relation ([Peldszus and Stede, 2013](#)). While these are the main focus of much computational work, there is also preliminary efforts on annotating and detecting richer semantic relationships ([Park and Cardie 2014](#), [Hidey et al. 2017](#)) such as detecting **argumentation schemes**, larger-scale structures for argument like **argument from example**, or **argument from cause to effect**, or **argument from consequences** ([Feng and Hirst, 2011](#)).

argumentation schemes

persuasion

Another important line of research is studying how these argument structure (or other features) are associated with the success or persuasiveness of an argument ([Habernal and Gurevych 2016](#), [Tan et al. 2016](#), [Hidey et al. 2017](#)). Indeed, while it is Aristotle’s logos that is most related to discourse structure, Aristotle’s ethos and pathos techniques are particularly relevant in the detection of mechanisms of this sort of **persuasion**. For example scholars have investigated the linguistic realization of features studied by social scientists like **reciprocity** (people return favors), **social proof** (people follow others’ choices), **authority** (people are influenced by those

with power), and **scarcity** (people value things that are scarce), all of which can be brought up in a persuasive argument (Cialdini, 1984). Rosenthal and McKeown (2017) showed that these features could be combined with argumentation structure to predict who influences whom on social media, Althoff et al. (2014) found that linguistic models of reciprocity and authority predicted success in online requests, while the semisupervised model of Yang et al. (2019) detected mentions of scarcity, commitment, and social identity to predict the success of peer-to-peer lending platforms.

See Stede and Schneider (2018) for a comprehensive survey of argument mining.

#### argumentative zoning

### 22.5.2 The structure of scientific discourse

Scientific papers have a very specific global structure: somewhere in the course of the paper the authors must indicate a scientific goal, develop a method for a solution, provide evidence for the solution, and compare to prior work. One popular annotation scheme for modeling these rhetorical goals is the **argumentative zoning** model of Teufel et al. (1999) and Teufel et al. (2009), which is informed by the idea that each scientific paper tries to make a **knowledge claim** about a new piece of knowledge being added to the repository of the field (Myers, 1992). Sentences in a scientific paper can be assigned one of 15 tags; Fig. 22.13 shows 7 (shortened) examples of labeled sentences.

Category	Description	Example
AIM	Statement of specific research goal, or hypothesis of current paper	“The aim of this process is to examine the role that training plays in the tagging process”
OWN_METHOD	New Knowledge claim, own work: methods	“In order for it to be useful for our purposes, the following extensions must be made:”
OWN_RESULTS	Measurable/objective outcome of own work	“All the curves have a generally upward trend but always lie far below backoff (51% error rate)”
USE	Other work is used in own work	“We use the framework for the allocation and transfer of control of Whittaker....”
GAP_WEAK	Lack of solution in field, problem with other solutions	“Here, we will produce experimental evidence suggesting that this simple model leads to serious overestimates”
SUPPORT	Other work supports current work or is supported by current work	“Work similar to that described here has been carried out by Merialdo (1994), with broadly similar conclusions.”
ANTISUPPORT	Clash with other’s results or theory; superiority of own work	“This result challenges the claims of...”

**Figure 22.13** Examples for 7 of the 15 labels from the Argumentative Zoning labelset (Teufel et al., 2009).

Teufel et al. (1999) and Teufel et al. (2009) develop labeled corpora of scientific articles from computational linguistics and chemistry, which can be used as supervision for training standard sentence-classification architecture to assign the 15 labels.

## 22.6 Summary

In this chapter we introduced local and global models for discourse **coherence**.

- Discourses are not arbitrary collections of sentences; they must be *coherent*. Among the factors that make a discourse coherent are coherence relations between the sentences, entity-based coherence, and topical coherence.

- Various sets of **coherence relations** and **rhetorical relations** have been proposed. The relations in Rhetorical Structure Theory (**RST**) hold between spans of text and are structured into a tree. Because of this, shift-reduce and other parsing algorithms are generally used to assign these structures. The Penn Discourse Treebank (**PDTB**) labels only relations between pairs of spans, and the labels are generally assigned by sequence models.
- **Entity-based coherence** captures the intuition that discourses are **about** an entity, and continue mentioning the entity from sentence to sentence. **Centering Theory** is a family of models describing how salience is modeled for discourse entities, and hence how coherence is achieved by virtue of keeping the same discourse entities salient over the discourse. The **entity grid** model gives a more bottom-up way to compute which entity realization transitions lead to coherence.
- Many different genres have different types of **global coherence**. Persuasive essays have claims and premises that are extracted in the field of **argument mining**, scientific articles have structure related to aims, methods, results, and comparisons.

## Bibliographical and Historical Notes

Coherence relations arose from the independent development of a number of scholars, including [Hobbs \(1979\)](#) idea that coherence relations play an inferential role for the hearer, and the investigations by [Mann and Thompson \(1987\)](#) of the discourse structure of large texts. Other approaches to coherence relations and their extraction include Segmented Discourse Representation Theory (**SDRT**) ([Asher and Lasarcides 2003, Baldridge et al. 2007](#)) and the Linguistic Discourse Model ([Polanyi 1988, Scha and Polanyi 1988, Polanyi et al. 2004](#)). [Wolf and Gibson \(2005\)](#) argue that coherence structure includes crossed bracketings, which make it impossible to represent as a tree, and propose a graph representation instead. A compendium of over 350 relations that have been proposed in the literature can be found in [Hovy \(1990\)](#).

**RST** parsing was first proposed by [Marcu \(1997\)](#), and early work was rule-based, focused on discourse markers ([Marcu, 2000a](#)). The creation of the RST Discourse TreeBank ([Carlson et al. 2001, Carlson and Marcu 2001](#)) enabled a wide variety of machine learning algorithms, beginning with the shift-reduce parser of [Marcu \(1999\)](#) that used decision trees to choose actions, and continuing with a wide variety of machine learned parsing methods ([Soricut and Marcu 2003, Sagae 2009, Hernault et al. 2010, Feng and Hirst 2014, Surdeanu et al. 2015, Joty et al. 2015](#)) and chunkers ([Sporleder and Lapata, 2005](#)). [Subba and Di Eugenio \(2009\)](#) integrated sophisticated semantic information into RST parsing. [Ji and Eisenstein \(2014\)](#) first applied neural models to RST parsing neural models, leading to the modern set of neural RST models ([Li et al. 2014, Li et al. 2016, Braud et al. 2017, Yu et al. 2018, inter alia](#)) as well as neural segmenters ([Wang et al. 2018](#)), and neural PDTB parsing models ([Ji and Eisenstein 2015, Qin et al. 2016, Qin et al. 2017](#)).

[Barzilay and Lapata \(2005\)](#) pioneered the idea of self-supervision for coherence: training a coherence model to distinguish true orderings of sentences from random permutations. [Li et al. \(2014\)](#) first applied this paradigm to neural sentence-representation, and many neural self-supervised models followed ([Li and Jurafsky 2017, Logeswaran et al. 2018, Lai and Tetreault 2018, Xu et al. 2019, Iter](#)

et al. 2020)

Another aspect of global coherence is the global topic structure of a text, the way the topics shift over the course of the document. Barzilay and Lee (2004) introduced an HMM model for capturing topics for coherence, and later work expanded this intuition (Soricut and Marcu 2006, Elsner et al. 2007, Louis and Nenkova 2012, Li and Jurafsky 2017).

The relationship between explicit and implicit discourse connectives has been a fruitful one for research. Marcu and Echihabi (2002) first proposed to use sentences with explicit relations to help provide training data for implicit relations, by removing the explicit relations and trying to re-predict them as a way of improving performance on implicit connectives; this idea was refined by Sporleder and Lascarides (2005), (Pitler et al., 2009), and Rutherford and Xue (2015). This relationship can also be used as a way to create discourse-aware representations. The DisSent algorithm (Nie et al., 2019) creates the task of predicting explicit discourse markers between two sentences. They show that representations learned to be good at this task also function as powerful sentence representations for other discourse tasks.

The idea of entity-based coherence seems to have arisen in multiple fields in the mid-1970s, in functional linguistics (Chafe, 1976), in the psychology of discourse processing (Kintsch and Van Dijk, 1978), and in the roughly contemporaneous work of Grosz, Sidner, Joshi, and their colleagues. Grosz (1977a) addressed the focus of attention that conversational participants maintain as the discourse unfolds. She defined two levels of focus; entities relevant to the entire discourse were said to be in *global* focus, whereas entities that are locally in focus (i.e., most central to a particular utterance) were said to be in *immediate* focus. Sidner (1979, 1983) described a method for tracking (immediate) discourse foci and their use in resolving pronouns and demonstrative noun phrases. She made a distinction between the current discourse focus and potential foci, which are the predecessors to the backward-and forward-looking centers of Centering theory, respectively. The name and further roots of the centering approach lie in papers by Joshi and Kuhn (1979) and Joshi and Weinstein (1981), who addressed the relationship between immediate focus and the inferences required to integrate the current utterance into the discourse model. Grosz et al. (1983) integrated this work with the prior work of Sidner and Grosz. This led to a manuscript on centering which, while widely circulated since 1986, remained unpublished until Grosz et al. (1995). A collection of centering papers appears in Walker et al. (1998). See Karamanis et al. (2004) and Poesio et al. (2004) for a deeper exploration of centering and its parameterizations, and the History section of Chapter 22 for more on the use of centering on coreference.

The grid model of entity-based coherence was first proposed by Barzilay and Lapata (2005) drawing on earlier work by Lapata (2003) and Barzilay, and then extended by them Barzilay and Lapata (2008) and others with additional features (Elsner and Charniak 2008, (2011), Feng et al. 2014, Lin et al. 2011) a model that projects entities into a global graph for the discourse (Guinaudeau and Strube 2013, Mesgar and Strube 2016), and a convolutional model to capture longer-range entity dependencies (Nguyen and Joty, 2017).

Theories of discourse coherence have also been used in algorithms for interpreting discourse-level linguistic phenomena, including verb phrase ellipsis and gapping (Asher 1993, Kehler 1993), and tense interpretation (Lascarides and Asher 1993, Kehler 1994, Kehler 2000). An extensive investigation into the relationship between coherence relations and discourse connectives can be found in Knott and Dale

(1994).

Useful surveys of discourse processing and structure include [Stede \(2011\)](#) and [Webber et al. \(2012\)](#).

Andy Kehler wrote the Discourse chapter for the 2000 first edition of this textbook, which we used as the starting point for the second-edition chapter, and there are some remnants of Andy's lovely prose still in this third-edition coherence chapter.

## Exercises

- 22.1** Finish the Centering Theory processing of the last two utterances of [\(22.30\)](#), and show how [\(22.29\)](#) would be processed. Does the algorithm indeed mark [\(22.29\)](#) as less coherent?
- 22.2** Select an editorial column from your favorite newspaper, and determine the discourse structure for a 10–20 sentence portion. What problems did you encounter? Were you helped by superficial cues the speaker included (e.g., discourse connectives) in any places?

CHAPTER

# 23

# Question Answering

The quest for knowledge is deeply human, and so it is not surprising that practically as soon as there were computers we were asking them questions. By the early 1960s, systems used the two major paradigms of question answering—**information-retrieval-based** and **knowledge-based**—to answer questions about baseball statistics or scientific facts. Even imaginary computers got into the act. Deep Thought, the computer that Douglas Adams invented in *The Hitchhiker's Guide to the Galaxy*, managed to answer “the Ultimate Question Of Life, The Universe, and Everything”.<sup>1</sup> In 2011, IBM’s Watson question-answering system won the TV game-show *Jeopardy!*, surpassing humans at answering questions like:

WILLIAM WILKINSON'S "AN ACCOUNT OF THE  
PRINCIPALITIES OF WALLACHIA AND MOLDOVIA"  
INSPIRED THIS AUTHOR'S MOST FAMOUS NOVEL<sup>2</sup>

Question answering systems are mainly designed to fill human information needs. Humans ask questions in many situations: when talking to a virtual assistant, when interacting with a search engine, when querying a database. Most question answering systems focus on a particular subset of these information needs: **factoid questions**, questions that can be answered with simple facts expressed in short texts, like the following:

- (23.1) Where is the Louvre Museum located?
- (23.2) What is the average age of the onset of autism?

In this chapter we describe the two major paradigms for factoid question answering. **Information-retrieval (IR) based QA**, sometimes called **open domain question QA**, relies on the vast amount of text on the web or in collections of scientific papers like PubMed. Given a user question, information retrieval is used to find relevant passages. Then neural **reading comprehension** algorithms read these retrieved passages and draw an answer directly from **spans of text**.

In the second paradigm, **knowledge-based question answering**, a system instead builds a semantic representation of the query, such as mapping *What states border Texas?* to the logical representation:  $\lambda x.\text{state}(x) \wedge \text{borders}(x, \text{texas})$ , or *When was Ada Lovelace born?* to the gapped relation: **birth-year** (*Ada Lovelace*, ?x). These meaning representations are then used to query databases of facts.

We’ll also briefly discuss two other paradigms for question answering. One relies on the fact that the huge pretrained language models we use throughout NLP have already encoded a lot of factoids. We’ll see how to query a language model directly to answer a question. And we’ll also mention the classic pre-neural hybrid question-answering algorithms that combine information from IR-based and knowledge-based sources.

<sup>1</sup> The answer was 42, but unfortunately the details of the question were never revealed.

<sup>2</sup> The answer, of course, is ‘Who is Bram Stoker’, and the novel was *Dracula*.

We'll explore the possibilities and limitations of all these approaches, along the way also introducing two technologies that are key for question answering but also relevant throughout NLP: **information retrieval** (a key component of IR-based QA) and **entity linking** (similarly key for knowledge-based QA). We'll start in the next section by introducing the task of information retrieval.

A final note: we focus in this chapter only on factoid question answering, but there are many other important QA tasks that the interested reader may want to follow up on. These include **long-form question answering** (answering why questions, or other questions that require generating a long answer), **community question answering**, in which we make use of datasets of community-created question-answer pairs like Quora or Stack Overflow. Finally, question answering is an important benchmark for NLP progress in general, and so researchers have built systems that successfully answer questions on exams like the New York Regents Science Exam as a way to benchmark NLP and AI (Clark et al., 2019).

## 23.1 Information Retrieval

<b>information retrieval</b> <b>IR</b>	<b>Information retrieval</b> or <b>IR</b> is the name of the field encompassing the retrieval of all manner of media based on user information needs. The resulting IR system is often called a <b>search engine</b> . Our goal in this section is to give a sufficient overview of IR to see its application to question answering. Readers with more interest specifically in information retrieval should see the Historical Notes section at the end of the chapter and textbooks like Manning et al. (2008).
<b>ad hoc retrieval</b>	The IR task we consider is called <b>ad hoc retrieval</b> , in which a user poses a <b>query</b> to a retrieval system, which then returns an ordered set of <b>documents</b> from some <b>collection</b> . A <b>document</b> refers to whatever unit of text the system indexes and retrieves (web pages, scientific papers, news articles, or even shorter passages like paragraphs). A <b>collection</b> refers to a set of documents being used to satisfy user requests. A <b>term</b> refers to a word in a collection, but it may also include phrases. Finally, a <b>query</b> represents a user's information need expressed as a set of terms. The high-level architecture of an ad hoc retrieval engine is shown in Fig. 23.1.
<b>document</b>	
<b>collection</b>	
<b>term</b>	
<b>query</b>	

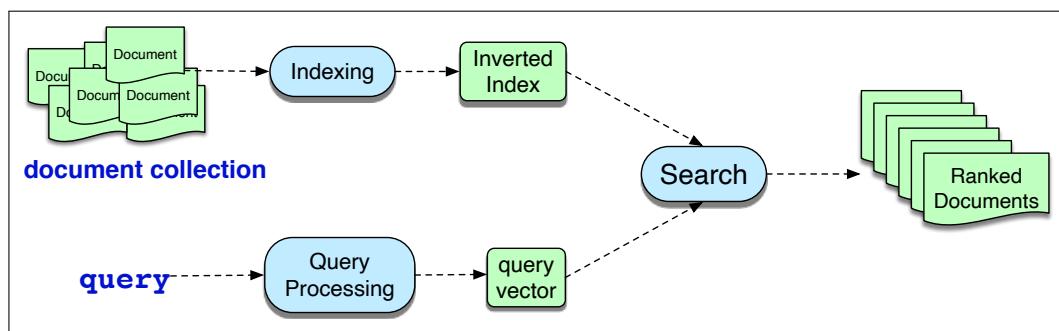


Figure 23.1 The architecture of an ad hoc IR system.

The basic IR architecture uses the vector space model we introduced in Chapter 6, in which we map queries and document to vectors based on unigram word counts, and use the cosine similarity between the vectors to rank potential documents (Salton, 1971). This is thus an example of the **bag-of-words** model introduced in Chapter 4, since words are considered independently of their positions.

### 23.1.1 Term weighting and document scoring

**term weight**

**BM25**

Let's look at the details of how the match between a document and query is scored.

We don't use raw word counts in IR, instead computing a **term weight** for each document word. Two term weighting schemes are common: the **tf-idf** weighting introduced in Chapter 6, and a slightly more powerful variant called **BM25**.

We'll reintroduce tf-idf here so readers don't need to look back at Chapter 6. Tf-idf (the '-' here is a hyphen, not a minus sign) is the product of two terms, the term frequency **tf** and the indirect document frequency **idf**.

The term frequency tells us how frequent the word is; words that occur more often in a document are likely to be informative about the document's contents. We usually use the  $\log_{10}$  of the word frequency, rather than the raw count. The intuition is that a word appearing 100 times in a document doesn't make that word 100 times more likely to be relevant to the meaning of the document. Because we can't take the log of 0, we normally add 1 to the count.<sup>3</sup>

$$\text{tf}_{t,d} = \log_{10}(\text{count}(t,d) + 1) \quad (23.3)$$

If we use log weighting, terms which occur 0 times in a document would have  $\text{tf} = \log_{10}(1) = 0$ , 10 times in a document  $\text{tf} = \log_{10}(11) = 1.4$ , 100 times  $\text{tf} = \log_{10}(101) = 2.004$ , 1000 times  $\text{tf} = 3.00044$ , and so on.

The **document frequency**  $\text{df}_t$  of a term  $t$  is the number of documents it occurs in. Terms that occur in only a few documents are useful for discriminating those documents from the rest of the collection; terms that occur across the entire collection aren't as helpful. The **inverse document frequency** or **idf** term weight (Sparck Jones, 1972) is defined as:

$$\text{idf}_t = \log_{10} \frac{N}{\text{df}_t} \quad (23.4)$$

where  $N$  is the total number of documents in the collection, and  $\text{df}_t$  is the number of documents in which term  $t$  occurs. The fewer documents in which a term occurs, the higher this weight; the lowest weight of 0 is assigned to terms that occur in every document.

Here are some idf values for some words in the corpus of Shakespeare plays, ranging from extremely informative words that occur in only one play like *Romeo*, to those that occur in a few like *salad* or *Falstaff*, to those that are very common like *fool* or so common as to be completely non-discriminative since they occur in all 37 plays like *good* or *sweet*.<sup>4</sup>

Word	df	idf
Romeo	1	1.57
salad	2	1.27
Falstaff	4	0.967
forest	12	0.489
battle	21	0.246
wit	34	0.037
fool	36	0.012
good	37	0
sweet	37	0

<sup>3</sup> Or we can use this alternative:  $\text{tf}_{t,d} = \begin{cases} 1 + \log_{10} \text{count}(t,d) & \text{if } \text{count}(t,d) > 0 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$

<sup>4</sup> *Sweet* was one of Shakespeare's favorite adjectives, a fact probably related to the increased use of sugar in European recipes around the turn of the 16th century (Jurafsky, 2014, p. 175).

The **tf-idf** value for word  $t$  in document  $d$  is then the product of term frequency  $\text{tf}_{t,d}$  and IDF:

$$\text{tf-idf}(t, d) = \text{tf}_{t,d} \cdot \text{idf}_t \quad (23.5)$$

### 23.1.2 Document Scoring

We score document  $d$  by the cosine of its vector  $\mathbf{d}$  with the query vector  $\mathbf{q}$ :

$$\text{score}(q, d) = \cos(\mathbf{q}, \mathbf{d}) = \frac{\mathbf{q} \cdot \mathbf{d}}{|\mathbf{q}| |\mathbf{d}|} \quad (23.6)$$

Another way to think of the cosine computation is as the dot product of unit vectors; we first normalize both the query and document vector to unit vectors, by dividing by their lengths, and then take the dot product:

$$\text{score}(q, d) = \cos(\mathbf{q}, \mathbf{d}) = \frac{\mathbf{q}}{|\mathbf{q}|} \cdot \frac{\mathbf{d}}{|\mathbf{d}|} \quad (23.7)$$

We can spell out Eq. 23.7, using the tf-idf values and spelling out the dot product as a sum of products:

$$\text{score}(q, d) = \sum_{t \in q} \frac{\text{tf-idf}(t, q)}{\sqrt{\sum_{q_i \in q} \text{tf-idf}^2(q_i, q)}} \cdot \frac{\text{tf-idf}(t, d)}{\sqrt{\sum_{d_i \in d} \text{tf-idf}^2(d_i, d)}} \quad (23.8)$$

In practice, it's common to approximate Eq. 23.8 by simplifying the query processing. Queries are usually very short, so each query word is likely to have a count of 1. And the cosine normalization for the query (the division by  $|q|$ ) will be the same for all documents, so won't change the ranking between any two documents  $D_i$  and  $D_j$ . So we generally use the following simple score for a document  $d$  given a query  $q$ :

$$\text{score}(q, d) = \sum_{t \in q} \frac{\text{tf-idf}(t, d)}{|d|} \quad (23.9)$$

Let's walk through an example of a tiny query against a collection of 4 nano documents, computing tf-idf values and seeing the rank of the documents. We'll assume all words in the following query and documents are downcased and punctuation is removed:

**Query:** sweet love  
**Doc 1:** Sweet sweet nurse! Love?  
**Doc 2:** Sweet sorrow  
**Doc 3:** How sweet is love?  
**Doc 4:** Nurse!

Fig. 23.2 shows the computation of the tf-idf values and the document vector length  $|d|$  for the first two documents using Eq. 23.3, Eq. 23.4, and Eq. 23.5 (computations for documents 3 and 4 are left as an exercise for the reader).

Fig. 23.3 shows the scores of the 4 documents, reranked according to Eq. 23.9. The ranking follows intuitively from the vector space model. Document 1, which has both terms including two instances of *sweet*, is the highest ranked, above document 3 which has a larger length  $|d|$  in the denominator, and also a smaller tf for *sweet*. Document 3 is missing one of the terms, and Document 4 is missing both.

Document 1						Document 2				
word	count	tf	df	idf	tf-idf	count	tf	df	idf	tf-idf
love	1	0.301	2	0.301	0.091	0	0	2	0.301	0
sweet	2	0.477	3	0.125	0.060	1	0.301	3	0.125	0.038
sorrow	0	0	1	0.602	0	1	0.301	1	0.602	0.181
how	0	0	1	0.602	0	0	0	1	0.602	0
nurse	1	0.301	2	0.301	0.091	0	0	2	0.301	0
is	0	0	1	0.602	0	0	0	1	0.602	0
$ d_1  = \sqrt{0.091^2 + 0.060^2 + 0.901^2} = .141$						$ d_2  = \sqrt{0.038^2 + 0.181^2} = .185$				

**Figure 23.2** Computation of tf-idf for nano-documents 1 and 2, using Eq. 23.3, Eq. 23.4, and Eq. 23.5.

Doc	$ d $	tf-idf(sweet)	tf-idf(love)	score
1	.141	.060	.091	1.07
3	.274	.038	.091	0.471
2	.185	.038	0	0.205
4	.090	0	0	0

**Figure 23.3** Ranking documents by Eq. 23.9.

#### BM25

A slightly more complex variant in the tf-idf family is the **BM25** weighting scheme (sometimes called Okapi BM25 after the Okapi IR system in which it was introduced (Robertson et al., 1995)). BM25 adds two parameters:  $k$ , a knob that adjust the balance between term frequency and IDF, and  $b$ , which controls the importance of document length normalization. The BM25 score of a document  $d$  given a query  $q$  is:

$$\sum_{t \in q} \underbrace{\log \left( \frac{N}{df_t} \right)}_{\text{IDF}} \underbrace{\frac{tf_{t,d}}{k \left( 1 - b + b \left( \frac{|d|}{|d_{avg}|} \right) \right) + tf_{t,d}}}_{\text{weighted tf}} \quad (23.10)$$

where  $|d_{avg}|$  is the length of the average document. When  $k$  is 0, BM25 reverts to no use of term frequency, just a binary selection of terms in the query (plus idf). A large  $k$  results in raw term frequency (plus idf).  $b$  ranges from 1 (scaling by document length) to 0 (no length scaling). Manning et al. (2008) suggest reasonable values are  $k = [1.2, 2]$  and  $b = 0.75$ . Kamphuis et al. (2020) is a useful summary of the many minor variants of BM25.

#### stop list

**Stop words** In the past it was common to remove high-frequency words from both the query and document before representing them. The list of such high-frequency words to be removed is called a **stop list**. The intuition is that high-frequency terms (often function words like *the*, *a*, *to*) carry little semantic weight and may not help with retrieval, and can also help shrink the inverted index files we describe below. The downside of using a stop list is that it makes it difficult to search for phrases that contain words in the stop list. For example, common stop lists would reduce the phrase *to be or not to be* to the phrase *not*. In modern IR systems, the use of stop lists is much less common, partly due to improved efficiency and partly because much of their function is already handled by IDF weighting, which downweights function words that occur in every document. Nonetheless, stop word removal is occasionally useful in various NLP tasks so is worth keeping in mind.

### 23.1.3 Inverted Index

In order to compute scores, we need to efficiently find documents that contain words in the query. (As we saw in Fig. 23.3, any document that contains none of the query terms will have a score of 0 and can be ignored.) The basic search problem in IR is thus to find all documents  $d \in C$  that contain a term  $q \in Q$ .

**inverted index**

The data structure for this task is the **inverted index**, which we use for making this search efficient, and also conveniently storing useful information like the document frequency and the count of each term in each document.

**postings**

An inverted index, given a query term, gives a list of documents that contain the term. It consists of two parts, a **dictionary** and the **postings**. The dictionary is a list of terms (designed to be efficiently accessed), each pointing to a **postings list** for the term. A postings list is the list of document IDs associated with each term, which can also contain information like the term frequency or even the exact positions of terms in the document. The dictionary can also start the document frequency for each term. For example, a simple inverted index for our 4 sample documents above, with each word containing its document frequency in {}, and a pointer to a postings list that contains document IDs and term counts in [], might look like the following:

how {1}	$\rightarrow$	3 [1]
is {1}	$\rightarrow$	3 [1]
love {2}	$\rightarrow$	1 [1] $\rightarrow$ 3 [1]
nurse {2}	$\rightarrow$	1 [1] $\rightarrow$ 4 [1]
sorry {1}	$\rightarrow$	2 [1]
sweet {3}	$\rightarrow$	1 [2] $\rightarrow$ 2 [1] $\rightarrow$ 3 [1]

Given a list of terms in query, we can very efficiently get lists of all candidate documents, together with the information necessary to compute the tf-idf scores we need.

There are alternatives to the inverted index. For the question-answering domain of finding Wikipedia pages to match a user query, Chen et al. (2017) show that indexing based on bigrams works better than unigrams, and use efficient hashing algorithms rather than the inverted index to make the search efficient.

### 23.1.4 Evaluation of Information-Retrieval Systems

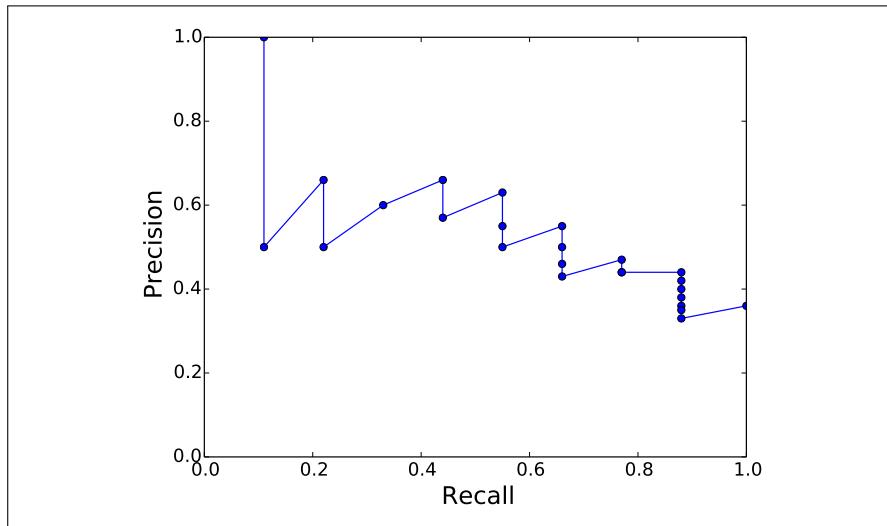
We measure the performance of ranked retrieval systems using the same **precision** and **recall** metrics we have been using. We make the assumption that each document returned by the IR system is either **relevant** to our purposes or **not relevant**. Precision is the fraction of the returned documents that are relevant, and recall is the fraction of all relevant documents that are returned. More formally, let's assume a system returns  $T$  ranked documents in response to an information request, a subset  $R$  of these are relevant, a disjoint subset,  $N$ , are the remaining irrelevant documents, and  $U$  documents in the collection as a whole are relevant to this request. Precision and recall are then defined as:

$$\text{Precision} = \frac{|R|}{|T|} \quad \text{Recall} = \frac{|R|}{|U|} \quad (23.11)$$

Unfortunately, these metrics don't adequately measure the performance of a system that *ranks* the documents it returns. If we are comparing the performance of two ranked retrieval systems, we need a metric that prefers the one that ranks the relevant documents higher. We need to adapt precision and recall to capture how well a system does at putting relevant documents higher in the ranking.

Rank	Judgment	Precision <sub>Rank</sub>	Recall <sub>Rank</sub>
1	R	1.0	.11
2	N	.50	.11
3	R	.66	.22
4	N	.50	.22
5	R	.60	.33
6	R	.66	.44
7	N	.57	.44
8	R	.63	.55
9	N	.55	.55
10	N	.50	.55
11	R	.55	.66
12	N	.50	.66
13	N	.46	.66
14	N	.43	.66
15	R	.47	.77
16	N	.44	.77
17	N	.44	.77
18	R	.44	.88
19	N	.42	.88
20	N	.40	.88
21	N	.38	.88
22	N	.36	.88
23	N	.35	.88
24	N	.33	.88
25	R	.36	1.0

**Figure 23.4** Rank-specific precision and recall values calculated as we proceed down through a set of ranked documents (assuming the collection has 9 relevant documents).



**Figure 23.5** The precision recall curve for the data in table 23.4.

Let's turn to an example. Assume the table in Fig. 23.4 gives rank-specific precision and recall values calculated as we proceed down through a set of ranked documents for a particular query; the precisions are the fraction of relevant documents seen at a given rank, and recalls the fraction of relevant documents found at the same rank. The recall measures in this example are based on this query having 9 relevant documents in the collection as a whole.

**precision-recall curve**

**interpolated precision**

Note that recall is non-decreasing; when a relevant document is encountered, recall increases, and when a non-relevant document is found it remains unchanged. Precision, on the other hand, jumps up and down, increasing when relevant documents are found, and decreasing otherwise. The most common way to visualize precision and recall is to plot precision against recall in a **precision-recall curve**, like the one shown in Fig. 23.5 for the data in table 23.4.

Fig. 23.5 shows the values for a single query. But we'll need to combine values for all the queries, and in a way that lets us compare one system to another. One way of doing this is to plot averaged precision values at 11 fixed levels of recall (0 to 100, in steps of 10). Since we're not likely to have datapoints at these exact levels, we use **interpolated precision** values for the 11 recall values from the data points we do have. We can accomplish this by choosing the maximum precision value achieved at any level of recall at or above the one we're calculating. In other words,

$$\text{IntPrecision}(r) = \max_{i \geq r} \text{Precision}(i) \quad (23.12)$$

This interpolation scheme not only lets us average performance over a set of queries, but also helps smooth over the irregular precision values in the original data. It is designed to give systems the benefit of the doubt by assigning the maximum precision value achieved at higher levels of recall from the one being measured. Fig. 23.6 and Fig. 23.7 show the resulting interpolated data points from our example.

Interpolated Precision	Recall
1.0	0.0
1.0	.10
.66	.20
.66	.30
.66	.40
.63	.50
.55	.60
.47	.70
.44	.80
.36	.90
.36	1.0

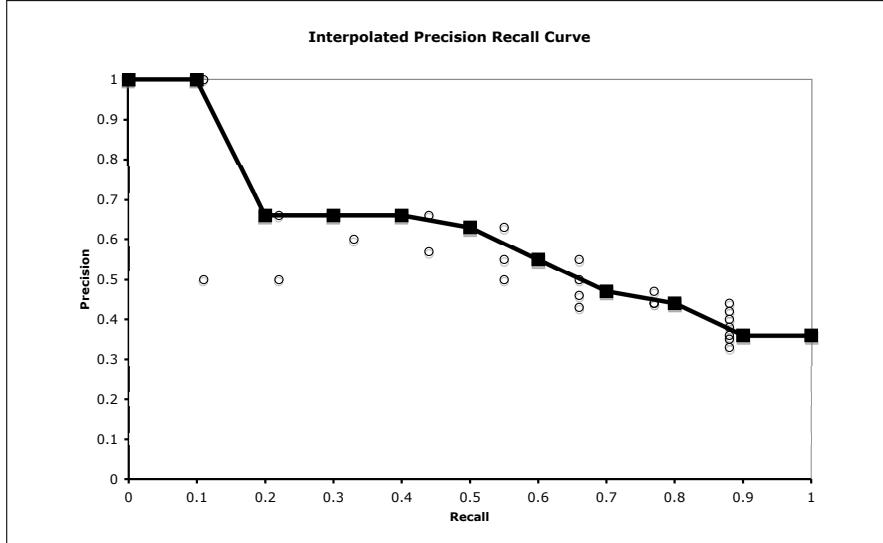
**Figure 23.6** Interpolated data points from Fig. 23.4.

**mean average precision**

Given curves such as that in Fig. 23.7 we can compare two systems or approaches by comparing their curves. Clearly, curves that are higher in precision across all recall values are preferred. However, these curves can also provide insight into the overall behavior of a system. Systems that are higher in precision toward the left may favor precision over recall, while systems that are more geared towards recall will be higher at higher levels of recall (to the right).

A second way to evaluate ranked retrieval is **mean average precision** (MAP), which provides a single metric that can be used to compare competing systems or approaches. In this approach, we again descend through the ranked list of items, but now we note the precision **only** at those points where a relevant item has been encountered (for example at ranks 1, 3, 5, 6 but not 2 or 4 in Fig. 23.4). For a single query, we average these individual precision measurements over the return set (up to some fixed cutoff). More formally, if we assume that  $R_r$  is the set of relevant documents at or above  $r$ , then the **average precision** (AP) for a single query is

$$\text{AP} = \frac{1}{|R_r|} \sum_{d \in R_r} \text{Precision}_r(d) \quad (23.13)$$



**Figure 23.7** An 11 point interpolated precision-recall curve. Precision at each of the 11 standard recall levels is interpolated for each query from the maximum at any higher level of recall. The original measured precision recall points are also shown.

where  $Precision_r(d)$  is the precision measured at the rank at which document  $d$  was found. For an ensemble of queries  $\mathcal{Q}$ , we then average over these averages, to get our final MAP measure:

$$\text{MAP} = \frac{1}{|\mathcal{Q}|} \sum_{q \in \mathcal{Q}} \text{AP}(q) \quad (23.14)$$

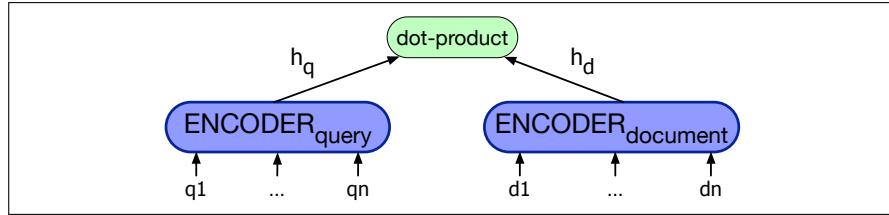
The MAP for the single query (hence = AP) in Fig. 23.4 is 0.6.

### 23.1.5 IR with Dense Vectors

The classic tf-idf or BM25 algorithms for IR have long been known to have a conceptual flaw: they work only if there is exact overlap of words between the query and document. In other words, the user posing a query (or asking a question) needs to guess exactly what words the writer of the answer might have used to discuss the issue. As Lin et al. (2020) put it, the user might decide to search for a *tragic love story* but Shakespeare writes instead about *star-crossed lovers*. This is called the **vocabulary mismatch problem** (Furnas et al., 1987).

The solution to this problem is to use an approach that can handle synonymy: instead of (sparse) word-count vectors, using (dense) embeddings. This idea was proposed quite early with the LSI approach (Deerwester et al., 1990), but modern methods all make use of encoders like BERT. In what is sometimes called a **bi-encoder** we use two separate encoder models, one to encode the query and one to encode the document, and use the dot product between these two vectors as the score (Fig. 23.8. For example, if we used BERT, we would have two encoders  $BERT_Q$  and  $BERT_D$  and we could represent the query and document as the [CLS] token of the respective encoders (Karpukhin et al., 2020):

$$\begin{aligned} h_q &= BERT_Q(q) [\text{CLS}] \\ h_d &= BERT_D(d) [\text{CLS}] \\ \text{score}(d, q) &= h_q \cdot h_d \end{aligned} \quad (23.15)$$



**Figure 23.8** BERT bi-encoder for computing relevance of a document to a query.

More complex versions can use other ways to represent the encoded text, such as using average pooling over the BERT outputs of all tokens instead of using the CLS token, or can add extra weight matrices after the encoding or dot product steps (Liu et al. 2016, Lee et al. 2019).

Using dense vectors for IR or the retriever component of question answerers is still an open area of research. Among the many areas of active research are how to do the fine-tuning of the encoder modules on the IR task (generally by fine-tuning on query-document combinations, with various clever ways to get negative examples), and how to deal with the fact that documents are often longer than encoders like BERT can process (generally by breaking up documents into passages).

Efficiency is also an issue. At the core of every IR engine is the need to rank every possible document for its similarity to the query. For sparse word-count vectors, the inverted index allows this very efficiently. For dense vector algorithms like those based on BERT or other Transformer encoders, finding the set of dense document vectors that have the highest dot product with a dense query vector is an example of nearest neighbor search. Modern systems therefore make use of approximate nearest neighbor vector search algorithms like **Faiss** (Johnson et al., 2017).

**Faiss**

## 23.2 IR-based Factoid Question Answering

### IR-based QA

The goal of **IR-based QA** (sometimes called **open domain QA**) is to answer a user's question by finding short text segments from the web or some other large collection of documents. Figure 23.9 shows some sample factoid questions and their answers.

Question	Answer
Where is the Louvre Museum located?	in Paris, France
What are the names of Odin's ravens?	Huginn and Muninn
What kind of nuts are used in marzipan?	almonds
What instrument did Max Roach play?	drums
What's the official language of Algeria?	Arabic

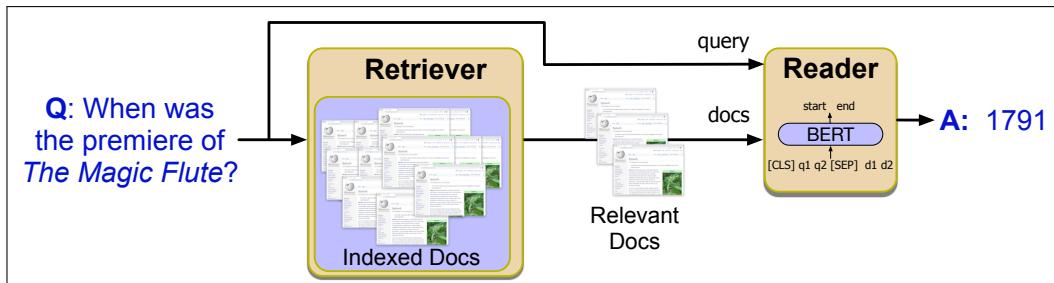
**Figure 23.9** Some factoid questions and their answers.

### retrieve and read

The dominant paradigm for IR-based QA is the **retrieve and read** model shown in Fig. 23.10. In the first stage of this 2-stage model we retrieve relevant passages from a text collection, usually using a search engines of the type we saw in the previous section. In the second stage, a neural **reading comprehension** algorithm passes over each passage and finds spans that are likely to answer the question.

### reading comprehension

Some question answering systems focus only on the second task, the **reading comprehension** task. Reading comprehension systems are given a factoid question  $q$  and a passage  $p$  that could contain the answer, and return an answer  $s$  (or perhaps declare that there is no answer in the passage, or in some setups make a choice from



Beyoncé Giselle Knowles-Carter (born September 4, 1981) is an American singer, songwriter, record producer and actress. Born and raised in <b>Houston, Texas</b> , she performed in various <b>singing and dancing</b> competitions as a child, and rose to fame in the late 1990s as lead singer of R&B girl-group Destiny's Child. Managed by her father, Mathew Knowles, the group became one of the world's best-selling girl groups of all time. Their hiatus saw the release of Beyoncé's debut album, <i>Dangerously in Love</i> (2003), which established her as a solo artist worldwide, earned five Grammy Awards and featured the Billboard Hot 100 number-one singles "Crazy in Love" and "Baby Boy".
Q: "In what city and state did Beyoncé grow up?" A: " <b>Houston, Texas</b> "
Q: "What areas did Beyoncé compete in when she was growing up?" A: " <b>singing and dancing</b> "
Q: "When did Beyoncé release <i>Dangerously in Love</i> ?" A: " <b>2003</b> "

**Figure 23.11** A (Wikipedia) passage from the SQuAD 2.0 dataset (Rajpurkar et al., 2018) with 3 sample questions and the labeled answer spans.

since the annotator may (subconsciously) make use of words from the answer text.

A common solution to this possible bias is to make datasets from questions that were not written with a passage in mind. The **TriviaQA** dataset (Joshi et al., 2017) contains 94K questions written by trivia enthusiasts, together with supporting documents from Wikipedia and the web resulting in 650K question-answer-evidence triples.

#### Natural Questions

The **Natural Questions** dataset (Kwiatkowski et al., 2019) incorporates real anonymized queries to the Google search engine. Annotators are presented a query, along with a Wikipedia page from the top 5 search results, and annotate a paragraph-length long answer and a short span answer, or mark null if the text doesn't contain the paragraph. For example the question "When are hops added to the brewing process?" has the short answer *the boiling process* and a long answer which the surrounding entire paragraph from the Wikipedia page on *Brewing*. In using this dataset, a reading comprehension model is given a question and a Wikipedia page and must return a long answer, short answer, or 'no answer' response.

#### TyDi QA

The above datasets are all in English. The **TyDi QA** dataset contains 204K question-answer pairs from 11 typologically diverse languages, including Arabic, Bengali, Kiswahili, Russian, and Thai (Clark et al., 2020). In the TyDi QA task, a system is given a question and the passages from a Wikipedia article and must (a) select the passage containing the answer (or NULL if no passage contains the answer), and (b) mark the minimal answer span (or NULL). Many questions have no answer. The various languages in the dataset bring up challenges for QA systems like morphological variation between the question and the answer, or complex issue with word segmentation or multiple alphabets.

In the reading comprehension task, a system is given a question and the passage in which the answer should be found. In the full two-stage QA task, however, systems are not given a passage, but are required to do their own retrieval from some document collection. A common way to create open-domain QA datasets is to modify a reading comprehension dataset. For research purposes this is most commonly done by using QA datasets that annotate Wikipedia (like SQuAD or HotpotQA). For training, the entire (*question, passage, answer*) triple is used to train the reader. But at inference time, the passages are removed and system is given only the question, together with access to the entire Wikipedia corpus. The system must then do IR to

find a set of pages and then read them.

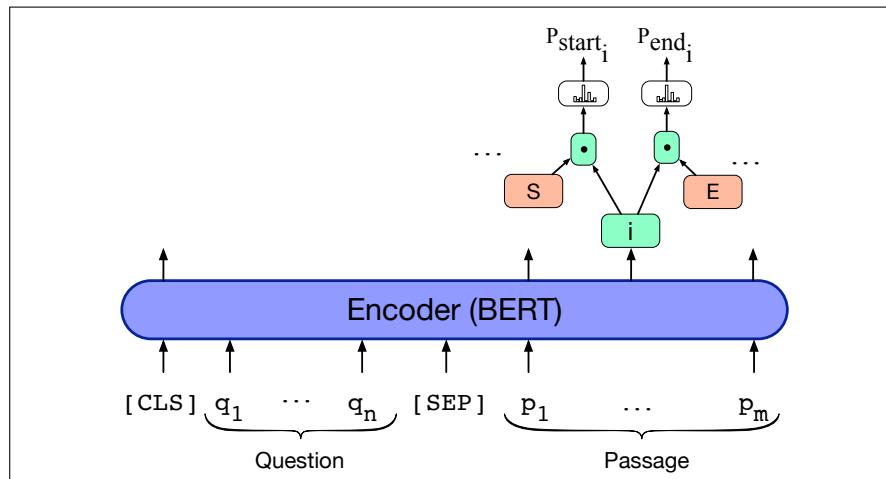
### 23.2.2 IR-based QA: Reader (Answer Span Extraction)

The first stage of IR-based QA is a retriever, for example of the type we saw in Section 23.1. The second stage of IR-based question answering is the **reader**. The reader's job is to take a passage as input and produce the answer. In the **extractive QA** we discuss here, the answer is a span of text in the passage.<sup>5</sup> For example given a question like “*How tall is Mt. Everest?*” and a passage that contains the clause *Reaching 29,029 feet at its summit*, a reader will output *29,029 feet*.

The answer extraction task is commonly modeled by **span labeling**: identifying in the passage a **span** (a continuous string of text) that constitutes an answer. Neural algorithms for reading comprehension are given a question  $q$  of  $n$  tokens  $q_1, \dots, q_n$  and a passage  $p$  of  $m$  tokens  $p_1, \dots, p_m$ . Their goal is thus to compute the probability  $P(a|q, p)$  that each possible span  $a$  is the answer.

If each span  $a$  starts at position  $a_s$  and ends at position  $a_e$ , we make the simplifying assumption that this probability can be estimated as  $P(a|q, p) = P_{\text{start}}(a_s|q, p)P_{\text{end}}(a_e|q, p)$ . Thus for each token  $p_i$  in the passage we'll compute two probabilities:  $p_{\text{start}}(i)$  that  $p_i$  is the start of the answer span, and  $p_{\text{end}}(i)$  that  $p_i$  is the end of the answer span.

A standard baseline algorithm for reading comprehension is to pass the question and passage to any encoder like BERT (Fig. 23.12), as strings separated with a [SEP] token, resulting in an encoding token embedding for every passage token  $p_i$ .



**Figure 23.12** An encoder model (using BERT) for span-based question answering from reading-comprehension-based question answering tasks.

For span-based question answering, we represent the question as the first sequence and the passage as the second sequence. We'll also need to add a linear layer that will be trained in the fine-tuning phase to predict the start and end position of the span. We'll add two new special vectors: a span-start embedding  $S$  and a span-end embedding  $E$ , which will be learned in fine-tuning. To get a span-start probability for each output token  $p'_i$ , we compute the dot product between  $S$  and  $p'_i$  and then use

<sup>5</sup> Here we skip the more difficult task of **abstractive QA**, in which the system can write an answer which is not drawn exactly from the passage.

a softmax to normalize over all tokens  $p'_i$  in the passage:

$$P_{\text{start}_i} = \frac{\exp(S \cdot p'_i)}{\sum_j \exp(S \cdot p'_j)} \quad (23.16)$$

We do the analogous thing to compute a span-end probability:

$$P_{\text{end}_i} = \frac{\exp(E \cdot p'_i)}{\sum_j \exp(E \cdot p'_j)} \quad (23.17)$$

The score of a candidate span from position  $i$  to  $j$  is  $S \cdot p'_i + E \cdot p'_j$ , and the highest scoring span in which  $j \geq i$  is chosen is the model prediction.

The training loss for fine-tuning is the negative sum of the log-likelihoods of the correct start and end positions for each instance:

$$L = -\log P_{\text{start}_i} - \log P_{\text{end}_i} \quad (23.18)$$

Many datasets (like SQuAD 2.0 and Natural Questions) also contain (question, passage) pairs in which the answer is not contained in the passage. We thus also need a way to estimate the probability that the answer to a question is not in the document. This is standardly done by treating questions with no answer as having the [CLS] token as the answer, and hence the answer span start and end index will point at [CLS] (Devlin et al., 2019).

For many datasets we also need to handle the situation where the annotated documents/passages are longer than the maximum 512 input tokens BERT allows. Consider for example cases like Natural Questions, where the gold-labeled passages are full Wikipedia pages. In such cases we can create multiple pseudo-passage observations from the labeled Wikipedia page. Each observation is formed by concatenating [CLS], the question, [SEP], and tokens from the document. We walk through the document, sliding a window of size 512 (or rather, 512 minus the question length  $n$  minus special tokens) and packing the window of tokens into each next pseudo-passage. The answer span for the observation is either labeled [CLS] (= no answer in this particular window) or the gold-labeled span is marked. Alberti et al. (2019) suggest also allowing the windows to overlap, by using a stride of 128 tokens. The same process can be used for inference, breaking up each retrieved document into separate observation passages and labeling each observation. The answer can be chosen as the span with the highest probability (or nil if no span is more probable than [CLS]). Or Alberti et al. (2019) suggest normalizing each score  $g(s, e)$  for a span of start  $s$  and end  $e$  by the nil score:

$$g(s, e) = \text{start}_i + \log P_{\text{end}_i} \text{start}_{\text{CLS}} + \log P_{\text{end}_{\text{CLS}}} \quad (23.19)$$

## 23.3 Entity Linking

We've now seen the first major paradigm for question answering, IR-based QA. Before we turn to the second major paradigm for question answering, knowledge-based question answering, we introduce the important core technology of **entity linking**, since it is required for any knowledge-based QA algorithm.

**entity linking**

**Entity linking** is the task of associating a mention in text with the representation of some real-world entity in an ontology (Ji and Grishman, 2011).

**wikification**

The most common ontology for factoid question-answering is Wikipedia, since Wikipedia is often the source of the text that answers the question. In this usage, each unique Wikipedia page acts as the unique id for a particular entity. This task of deciding which Wikipedia page corresponding to an individual is being referred to by a text mention has its own name: **wikification** (Mihalcea and Csomai, 2007).

Since the earliest systems (Mihalcea and Csomai 2007, Cucerzan 2007, Milne and Witten 2008), entity linking is done in (roughly) two stages: **mention detection** and **mention disambiguation**. We'll give two algorithms, one simple classic baseline that uses **anchor dictionaries** and information from the Wikipedia graph structure (Ferragina and Scaiella, 2011) and one modern neural algorithm (Li et al., 2020). We'll focus here mainly on the application of entity linking to questions rather than other genres.

### 23.3.1 Linking based on Anchor Dictionaries and Web Graph

As a simple baseline we introduce the TAGME linker (Ferragina and Scaiella, 2011) for Wikipedia, which itself draws on earlier algorithms (Mihalcea and Csomai 2007, Cucerzan 2007, Milne and Witten 2008). Wikification algorithms define the set of entities as the set of Wikipedia pages, so we'll refer to each Wikipedia page as a unique entity  $e$ . TAGME first creates a catalog of all entities (i.e. all Wikipedia pages, removing some disambiguation and other meta-pages) and indexes them in a standard IR engine like Lucene. For each page  $e$ , the algorithm computes an **in-link** count  $\text{in}(e)$ : the total number of in-links from other Wikipedia pages that point to  $e$ . These counts can be derived from Wikipedia dumps.

**anchor texts**

Finally, the algorithm requires an **anchor dictionary**. An anchor dictionary lists for each Wikipedia page, its **anchor texts**: the hyperlinked spans of text on other pages that point to it. For example, the web page for Stanford University, <http://www.stanford.edu>, might be pointed to from another page using anchor texts like *Stanford* or *Stanford University*:

```
<a href="http://www.stanford.edu">Stanford University</a>
```

We compute a Wikipedia anchor dictionary by including, for each Wikipedia page  $e$ ,  $e$ 's title as well as all the anchor texts from all Wikipedia pages that point to  $e$ . For each anchor string  $a$  we'll also compute its total frequency  $\text{freq}(a)$  in Wikipedia (including non-anchor uses), the number of times  $a$  occurs as a link (which we'll call  $\text{link}(a)$ ), and its link probability  $\text{linkprob}(a) = \text{link}(a)/\text{freq}(a)$ . Some cleanup of the final anchor dictionary is required, for example removing anchor strings composed only of numbers or single characters, that are very rare, or that are very unlikely to be useful entities because they have a very low linkprob.

**Mention Detection** Given a question (or other text we are trying to link), TAGME detects mentions by querying the anchor dictionary for each token sequence up to 6 words. This large set of sequences is pruned with some simple heuristics (for example pruning substrings if they have small linkprobs). The question:

*When was Ada Lovelace born?*

might give rise to the anchor *Ada Lovelace* and possibly *Ada*, but substrings spans like *Lovelace* might be pruned as having too low a linkprob, and but spans like *born* have such a low linkprob that they would not be in the anchor dictionary at all.

**Mention Disambiguation** If a mention span is unambiguous (points to only one entity/Wikipedia page), we are done with entity linking! However, many spans are

ambiguous, matching anchors for multiple Wikipedia entities/pages. The TAGME algorithm uses two factors for disambiguating ambiguous spans, which have been referred to as *prior probability* and *relatedness/coherence*. The first factor is  $p(e|a)$ , the probability with which the span refers to a particular entity. For each page  $e \in \mathcal{E}(a)$ , the probability  $p(e|a)$  that anchor  $a$  points to  $e$ , is the ratio of the number of links into  $e$  with anchor text  $a$  to the total number of occurrences of  $a$  as an anchor:

$$\text{prior}(a \rightarrow e) = p(e|a) = \frac{\text{count}(a \rightarrow e)}{\text{link}(a)} \quad (23.20)$$

Let's see how that factor works in linking entities in the following question:

What Chinese Dynasty came before the Yuan?

The most common association for the span *Yuan* in the anchor dictionary is the name of the Chinese currency, i.e., the probability  $p(\text{Yuan\_currency} | \text{yuan})$  is very high. Rarer Wikipedia associations for *Yuan* include the common Chinese last name, a language spoken in Thailand, and the correct entity in this case, the name of the Chinese dynasty. So if we chose based only on  $p(e|a)$ , we would make the wrong disambiguation and miss the correct link, *Yuan\_dynasty*.

To help in just this sort of case, TAGME uses a second factor, the **relatedness** of this entity to other entities in the input question. In our example, the fact that the question also contains the span *Chinese Dynasty*, which has a high probability link to the page *Dynasties\_in\_Chinese\_history*, ought to help match *Yuan\_dynasty*.

Let's see how this works. Given a question  $q$ , for each candidate anchors span  $a$  detected in  $q$ , we assign a relatedness score to each possible entity  $e \in \mathcal{E}(a)$  of  $a$ . The relatedness score of the link  $a \rightarrow e$  is the weighted average relatedness between  $e$  and all other entities in  $q$ . Two entities are considered related to the extent their Wikipedia pages share many in-links. More formally, the relatedness between two entities  $A$  and  $B$  is computed as

$$\text{rel}(A, B) = \frac{\log(\max(|\text{in}(A)|, |\text{in}(B)|)) - \log(|\text{in}(A)| \cap |\text{in}(B)|)}{\log(|W|) - \log(\min(|\text{in}(A)|, |\text{in}(B)|))} \quad (23.21)$$

where  $\text{in}(x)$  is the set of Wikipedia pages pointing to  $x$  and  $W$  is the set of all Wikipedia pages in the collection.

The vote given by anchor  $b$  to the candidate annotation  $a \rightarrow X$  is the average, over all the possible entities of  $b$ , of their relatedness to  $X$ , weighted by their prior probability:

$$\text{vote}(b, X) = \frac{1}{|\mathcal{E}(b)|} \sum_{Y \in \mathcal{E}(b)} \text{rel}(X, Y) p(Y|b) \quad (23.22)$$

The total relatedness score for  $a \rightarrow X$  is the sum of the votes of all the other anchors detected in  $q$ :

$$\text{relatedness}(a \rightarrow X) = \sum_{b \in \mathcal{X}_q \setminus a} \text{vote}(b, X) \quad (23.23)$$

To score  $a \rightarrow X$ , we combine relatedness and prior by choosing the entity  $X$  that has the highest  $\text{relatedness}(a \rightarrow X)$ , finding other entities within a small  $\epsilon$  of this value, and from this set, choosing the entity with the highest prior  $P(X|a)$ . The result of this step is a single entity assigned to each span in  $q$ .

The TAGME algorithm has one further step of pruning spurious anchor/entity pairs, assigning a score averaging link probability with the coherence.

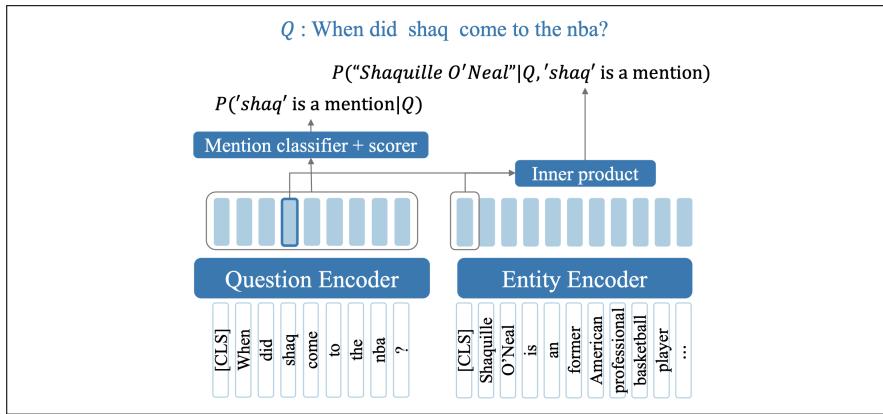
$$\text{coherence}(a \rightarrow X) = \frac{1}{|S|-1} \sum_{B \in S \setminus X} \text{rel}(B, X)$$

$$\text{score}(a \rightarrow X) = \frac{\text{coherence}(a \rightarrow X) + \text{linkprob}(a)}{2} \quad (23.24)$$

Finally, pairs are pruned if  $\text{score}(a \rightarrow X) < \lambda$ , where the threshold  $\lambda$  is set on a held-out set.

### 23.3.2 Neural Graph-based linking

More recent entity linking models are based on **bencoders**, encoding a candidate mention span, encoding an entity, and computing the dot product between the encodings. This allows embeddings for all the entities in the knowledge base to be precomputed and cached (Wu et al., 2019). Let’s sketch the ELQ linking algorithm of Li et al. (2020), which is given a question  $q$  and a set of candidate entities from Wikipedia with associated Wikipedia text, and outputs tuples  $(e, m_s, m_e)$  of entity id, mention start, and mention end. As Fig. 23.13 shows, it does this by encoding each Wikipedia entity using text from Wikipedia, encoding each mention span using text from the question, and computing their similarity, as we describe below.



**Figure 23.13** A sketch of the inference process in the ELQ algorithm for entity linking in questions (Li et al., 2020). Each candidate question mention span and candidate entity are separately encoded, and then scored by the entity/span dot product.

**Entity Mention Detection** To get an  $h$ -dimensional embedding for each question token, the algorithm runs the question through BERT in the normal way:

$$[\mathbf{q}_1 \dots \mathbf{q}_n] = \text{BERT}([\text{CLS}] q_1 \dots q_n [\text{SEP}]) \quad (23.25)$$

It then computes the likelihood of each span  $[i, j]$  in  $q$  being an entity mention, in a way similar to the span-based algorithm we saw for the reader above. First we compute the score for  $i/j$  being the start/end of a mention:

$$s_{\text{start}}(i) = \mathbf{w}_{\text{start}} \cdot \mathbf{q}_i, \quad s_{\text{end}}(j) = \mathbf{w}_{\text{end}} \cdot \mathbf{q}_j, \quad (23.26)$$

where  $\mathbf{w}_{\text{start}}$  and  $\mathbf{w}_{\text{end}}$  are vectors learned during training. Next, another trainable embedding,  $\mathbf{w}_{\text{mention}}$  is used to compute a score for each token being part of a mention:

$$s_{\text{mention}}(t) = \mathbf{w}_{\text{mention}} \cdot \mathbf{q}_t \quad (23.27)$$

Mention probabilities are then computed by combining these three scores:

$$p([i, j]) = \sigma \left( s_{\text{start}}(i) + s_{\text{end}}(j) + \sum_{t=i}^j s_{\text{mention}}(t) \right) \quad (23.28)$$

**Entity Linking** To link mentions to entities, we next compute embeddings for each entity in the set  $\mathcal{E} = e_1, \dots, e_i, \dots, e_w$  of all Wikipedia entities. For each entity  $e_i$  we'll get text from the entity's Wikipedia page, the title  $t(e_i)$  and the first 128 tokens of the Wikipedia page which we'll call the description  $d(e_i)$ . This is again run through BERT, taking the output of the CLS token  $\text{BERT}_{[\text{CLS}]}$  as the entity representation:

$$\mathbf{x}_e = \text{BERT}_{[\text{CLS}]}([\text{CLS}]t(e_i)[\text{ENT}]d(e_i)[\text{SEP}]) \quad (23.29)$$

Mention spans can be linked to entities by computing, for each entity  $e$  and span  $[i, j]$ , the dot product similarity between the span encoding (the average of the token embeddings) and the entity encoding.

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{y}_{i,j} &= \frac{1}{(j-i+1)} \sum_{t=i}^j \mathbf{q}_t \\ s(e, [i, j]) &= \mathbf{x}_e \cdot \mathbf{y}_{i,j} \end{aligned} \quad (23.30)$$

Finally, we take a softmax to get a distribution over entities for each span:

$$p(e|[i, j]) = \frac{\exp(s(e, [i, j]))}{\sum_{e' \in \mathcal{E}} \exp(s(e', [i, j]))} \quad (23.31)$$

**Training** The ELQ mention detection and entity linking algorithm is fully supervised. This means, unlike the anchor dictionary algorithms from Section 23.3.1, it requires datasets with entity boundaries marked and linked. Two such labeled datasets are WebQuestionsSP (Yih et al., 2016), an extension of the WebQuestions (Berant et al., 2013) dataset derived from Google search questions, and GraphQuestions (Su et al., 2016). Both have had entity spans in the questions marked and linked (Sorokin and Gurevych 2018, Li et al. 2020) resulting in entity-labeled versions WebQSP<sub>EL</sub> and GraphQ<sub>EL</sub> (Li et al., 2020).

Given a training set, the ELQ mention detection and entity linking phases are trained jointly, optimizing the sum of their losses. The mention detection loss is a binary cross-entropy loss

$$\mathcal{L}_{\text{MD}} = -\frac{1}{N} \sum_{\substack{1 \leq i \leq j \leq \min(i+L-1, n)}} (y_{[i, j]} \log p([i, j]) + (1 - y_{[i, j]}) \log(1 - p([i, j]))) \quad (23.32)$$

with  $y_{[i, j]} = 1$  if  $[i, j]$  is a gold mention span, and 0 otherwise. The entity linking loss is:

$$\mathcal{L}_{\text{ED}} = -\log p(e_g | [i, j]) \quad (23.33)$$

where  $e_g$  is the gold entity for mention  $[i, j]$ .

See the end of the chapter for more discussion of other applications of entity linking outside of question answering.

## 23.4 Knowledge-based Question Answering

While an enormous amount of information is encoded in the vast amount of text on the web, information obviously also exists in more structured forms. We use the term **knowledge-based question answering** for the idea of answering a natural language question by mapping it to a query over a structured database. Like the text-based paradigm for question answering, this approach dates back to the earliest days of natural language processing, with systems like **BASEBALL** (Green et al., 1961) that answered questions from a structured database of baseball games and stats.

Two common paradigms are used for knowledge-based QA. The first, **graph-based QA**, models the knowledge base as a graph, often with entities as nodes and relations or propositions as edges between nodes. The second, **QA by semantic parsing**, using the semantic parsing methods we saw in Chapter 16.

Both of these methods require some sort of entity linking that we described in the prior section.

### 23.4.1 Knowledge-Based QA from RDF triple stores

Let's introduce the components of a simple knowledge-based QA system after entity linking has been performed. We'll focus on the very simplest case of graph-based QA, in which the dataset is a set of factoids in the form of **RDF triples**, and the task is to answer questions about one of the missing arguments. Recall from Chapter 17 that an RDF triple is a 3-tuple, a predicate with two arguments, expressing some simple relation or proposition. Popular such ontologies are often derived from Wikipedia; DBpedia (Bizer et al., 2009) has over 2 billion RDF triples, or Freebase (Bollacker et al., 2008), now part of Wikidata (Vrandečić and Krötzsch, 2014). Consider an RDF triple like the following:

subject	predicate	object
Ada Lovelace	birth-year	1815

This triple can be used to answer text questions like “When was Ada Lovelace born?” or “Who was born in 1815?”.

A number of such question datasets exist. SimpleQuestions (Bordes et al., 2015) contains 100K questions written by annotators based on triples from Freebase. For example, the question *“What American cartoonist is the creator of Andy Lippincott?”*. was written based on the triple (andy lippincott, character created by, garry Trudeau). FreebaseQA (Jiang et al., 2019), aligns the trivia questions from TriviaQA (Joshi et al., 2017) and other sources with triples in Freebase, aligning for example the trivia question *“Which 18th century author wrote Clarissa (or The Character History of a Young Lady), said to be the longest novel in the English language?”* with the triple (Clarissa, book.written-work.author, Samuel Richardson). Another such family of datasets starts from WEBQUESTIONS (Berant et al., 2013), which contains 5,810 questions asked by web users, each beginning with a wh-word, containing exactly one entity, and paired with handwritten answers drawn from the Freebase page of the question's entity. WEBQUESTIONS-SP (Yih et al., 2016) augments WEBQUESTIONS with human-created semantic parses (SPARQL queries) for those questions answerable using Freebase. COMPLEXWEBQUESTIONS augments the dataset with compositional and other kinds of complex questions, resulting in 34,689 questions, along with answers, web snippets, and SPARQL queries (Talmor and Berant, 2018).

Let's assume we've already done the stage of **entity linking** introduced in the prior section. Thus we've mapped already from a textual mention like *Ada Lovelace* to the canonical entity ID in the knowledge base. For simple triple relation question answering, the next step is to determine which relation is being asked about, mapping from a string like "When was ... born" to canonical relations in the knowledge base like *birth-year*. We might sketch the combined task as:

"When was Ada Lovelace born?" → *birth-year* (Ada Lovelace, ?x)  
 "What is the capital of England?" → *capital-city*(?x, England)

The next step is relation detection and linking. For simple questions, where we assume the question has only a single relation, relation detection and linking can be done in a way resembling the neural entity linking models: computing similarity (generally by dot product) between the encoding of the question text and an encoding for each possible relation. For example, in the algorithm of (Lukovnikov et al., 2019), the CLS output of a BERT model is used to represent the question span for the purposes of relation detection, and a separate vector is trained for each relation  $r_i$ . The probability of a particular relation  $r_i$  is then computed by softmax over the dot products:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{m}_r &= \text{BERT}_{\text{CLS}}([\text{CLS}]q_1 \cdots q_n[\text{SEP}]) \\ s(\mathbf{m}_r, r_i) &= \mathbf{m}_r \cdot \mathbf{w}_{r_i} \\ p(r_i | q_1, \dots, q_n) &= \frac{\exp(s(\mathbf{m}_r, r_i))}{\sum_{k=1}^N \exp(s(\mathbf{m}_r, r_k))} \end{aligned} \quad (23.34)$$

**Ranking of answers** Most algorithms have a final stage which takes the top  $j$  entities and the top  $k$  relations returned by the entity and relation inference steps, searches the knowledge base for triples containing those entities and relations, and then ranks those triples. This ranking can be heuristic, for example scoring each entity/relation pairs based on the string similarity between the mention span and the entities text aliases, or favoring entities that have a high in-degree (are linked to by many relations). Or the ranking can be done by training a classifier to take the concatenated entity/relation encodings and predict a probability.

### 23.4.2 QA by Semantic Parsing

The second kind of knowledge-based QA uses a **semantic parser** to map the question to a structured program to produce an answer. These logical forms can take the form of some version of predicate calculus, a query language like SQL or SPARQL, or some other executable program like the examples in Fig. 23.14.

The logical form of the question is thus either in the form of a query or can easily be converted into one (predicate calculus can be converted to SQL, for example). The database can be a full relational database, or some other structured knowledge store.

As we saw in Chapter 16, semantic parsing algorithms can be supervised fully with questions paired with a hand-built logical form, or can be weakly supervised by questions paired with an answer (the **denotation**), in which the logical form is modeled only as a latent variable.

For the fully supervised case, we can get a set of questions paired with their correct logical form from datasets like the GEOQUERY dataset of questions about US geography (Zelle and Mooney, 1996), the DROP dataset of complex questions (on history and football games) that require reasoning (Dua et al. 2019), or the ATIS

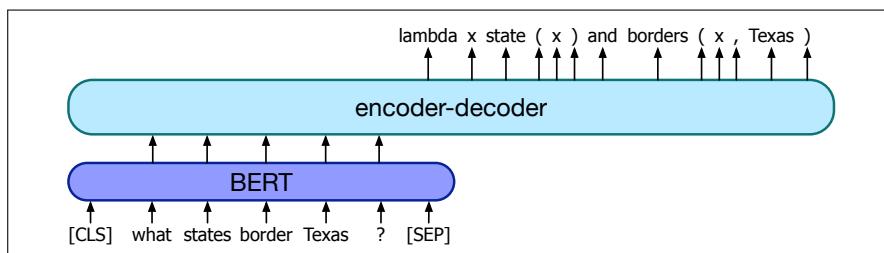
Question	Logical form
What states border Texas?	$\lambda x. \text{state}(x) \wedge \text{borders}(x, \text{texas})$
What is the largest state?	$\text{argmax}(\lambda x. \text{state}(x), \lambda x. \text{size}(x))$
I'd like to book a flight from San Diego to Toronto	<pre> SELECT DISTINCT f1.flight_id FROM flight f1, airport_service a1,       city c1, airport_service a2, city c2 WHERE f1.from_airport=a1.airport_code       AND a1.city_code=c1.city_code       AND c1.city_name= 'san diego'       AND f1.to_airport=a2.airport_code       AND a2.city_code=c2.city_code       AND c2.city_name= 'toronto'</pre>
How many people survived the sinking of the Titanic?	(count (!fb:event.disaster.survivors fb:en.sinking_of_the_titanic))
How many yards longer was Johnson's longest touchdown compared to his shortest touchdown of the first quarter?	ARITHMETIC diff( SELECT num( ARGMAX( SELECT ) ) SELECT num( ARGMIN( FILTER( SELECT ) )))

**Figure 23.14** Sample logical forms produced by a semantic parser for question answering, including two questions from the GeoQuery database of questions on U.S. Geography (Zelle and Mooney, 1996) with predicate calculus representations, one ATIS question with SQL (Iyer et al., 2017), a program over Freebase relations, and a program in QDMR, the Question Decomposition Meaning Representation (Wolfson et al., 2020).

dataset of flight queries, all of which have versions with SQL or other logical forms (Iyer et al. 2017, Wolfson et al. 2020, Oren et al. 2020).

The task is then to take those pairs of training tuples and produce a system that maps from new questions to their logical forms. A common baseline algorithm is a simple sequence-to-sequence model, for example using BERT to represent question tokens, passing them to a biLSTM encoder decoder Chapter 11, as sketched in Fig. 23.15.

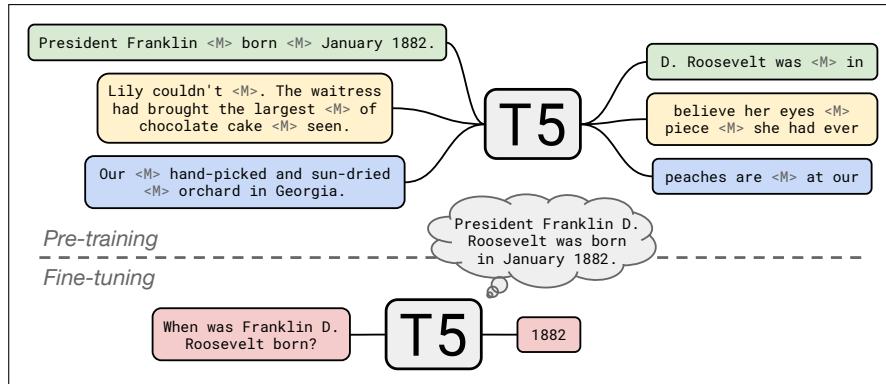
Any other of the semantic parsing algorithms described in Chapter 16 would also be appropriate.



**Figure 23.15** An encoder-decoder semantic parser for translating a question to logical form, with a BERT pre-encoder followed by an encoder-decoder (biLSTM or Transformer).

## 23.5 Using Language Models to do QA

An alternative approach to doing QA is to query a pretrained language model, forcing a model to answer a question solely from information stored in its parameters. For example Roberts et al. (2020) use the T5 language model, which is an encoder-decoder architecture pretrained to fill in masked spans of text. Fig. 23.16 shows the



**Figure 23.16** The T5 system is an encoder-decoder architecture. In pretraining, it learns to fill in masked spans of task (marked by <M>) by generating the missing spans (separated by <M>) in the decoder. It is then finetuned on QA datasets, given the question, without adding any additional context or passages. Figure from [Roberts et al. \(2020\)](#).

architecture; the deleted spans are marked by <M>, and the system is trained to have the decoder generating the missing spans (separated by <M>).

Roberts et al. (2020) then finetune the T5 system to the question answering task, by giving it a question, and training it to output the answer text in the decoder. Using the largest 11-billion-parameter T5 model does competitively, although not quite as well as systems designed specifically for question answering.

Language modeling is not yet a complete solution for question answering; for example in addition to not working quite as well, they suffer from poor interpretability (unlike standard QA systems, for example, they currently can't give users more context by telling them what passage the answer came from). Nonetheless, the study of extracting answer from language models is an intriguing area for future question answer research.

## 23.6 Classic QA Models

While neural architectures are the state of the art for question answering, pre-neural architectures using hybrids of rules and feature-based classifiers can sometimes achieve higher performance. Here we summarize one influential classic system, the Watson DeepQA system from IBM that won the Jeopardy! challenge in 2011 (Fig. 23.17). Let's consider how it handles these Jeopardy! examples, each with a category followed by a question:

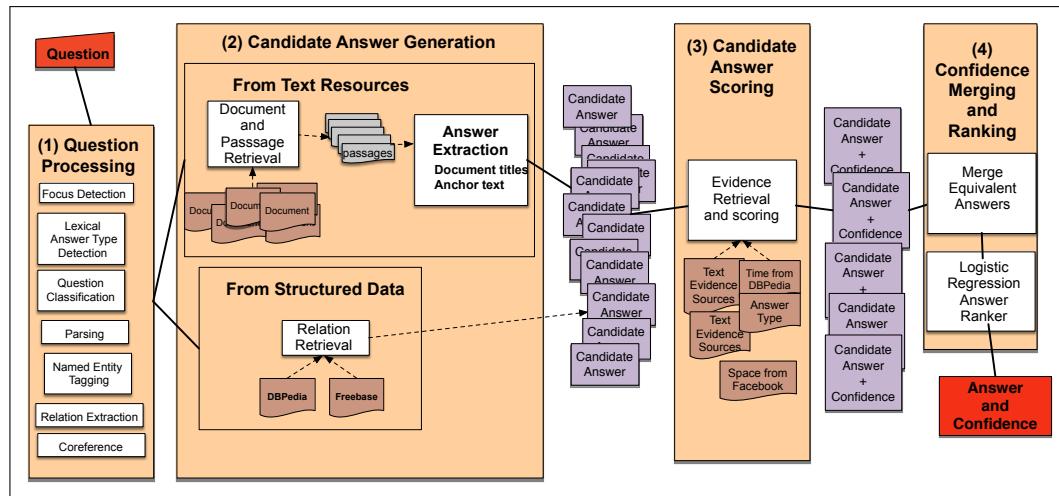
Poets and Poetry: **He** was a bank clerk in the Yukon before he published “Songs of a Sourdough” in 1907.

THEATRE: A new play based on **this Sir Arthur Conan Doyle canine classic** opened on the London stage in 2007.

**Question Processing** In this stage the questions are parsed, named entities are extracted (*Sir Arthur Conan Doyle* identified as a PERSON, *Yukon* as a GEOPOLITICAL ENTITY, “*Songs of a Sourdough*” as a COMPOSITION), coreference is run (*he* is linked with *clerk*).

The question **focus**, shown in bold in both examples, is extracted. The focus is the string of words in the question that corefers with the answer. It is likely to be

focus



**Figure 23.17** The 4 broad stages of Watson QA: (1) Question Processing, (2) Candidate Answer Generation, (3) Candidate Answer Scoring, and (4) Answer Merging and Confidence Scoring.

replaced by the answer in any answer string found and so can be used to align with a supporting passage. In DeepQA The focus is extracted by handwritten rules—made possible by the relatively stylized syntax of Jeopardy! questions—such as a rule extracting any noun phrase with determiner “this” as in the Conan Doyle example, and rules extracting pronouns like *she, he, hers, him*, as in the poet example.

**lexical answer type**

The **lexical answer type** (shown in blue above) is a word or words which tell us something about the semantic type of the answer. Because of the wide variety of questions in Jeopardy!, DeepQA chooses a wide variety of words to be answer types, rather than a small set of named entities. These lexical answer types are again extracted by rules: the default rule is to choose the syntactic headword of the focus. Other rules improve this default choice. For example additional lexical answer types can be words in the question that are coreferent with or have a particular syntactic relation with the focus, such as headwords of appositives or predicative nominatives of the focus. In some cases even the Jeopardy! category can act as a lexical answer type, if it refers to a type of entity that is compatible with the other lexical answer types. Thus in the first case above, *he, poet*, and *clerk* are all lexical answer types. In addition to using the rules directly as a classifier, they can instead be used as features in a logistic regression classifier that can return a probability as well as a lexical answer type. These answer types will be used in the later ‘candidate answer scoring’ phase as a source of evidence for each candidate. Relations like the following are also extracted:

```

authorof(focus, "Songs of a sourdough")
publish (e1, he, "Songs of a sourdough")
in (e2, e1, 1907)
temporallink(publish(...), 1907)

```

Finally the question is classified by type (definition question, multiple-choice, puzzle, fill-in-the-blank). This is generally done by writing pattern-matching regular expressions over words or parse trees.

**Candidate Answer Generation** Next we combine the processed question with external documents and other knowledge sources to suggest many candidate answers from both text documents and structured knowledge bases. We can query structured

resources like DBpedia or IMDB with the relation and the known entity, just as we saw in Section 23.4. Thus if we have extracted the relation `authorof(focus, "Songs of a sourdough")`, we can query a triple store with `authorof(?x, "Songs of a sourdough")` to return an author.

To extract answers from text DeepQA uses simple versions of Retrieve and Read. For example for the IR stage, DeepQA generates a query from the question by eliminating stop words, and then upweighting any terms which occur in any relation with the focus. For example from this query:

**MOVIE-“ING”:** Robert Redford and Paul Newman starred in this depression-era grifter flick. (*Answer: “The Sting”*)

the following weighted query might be passed to a standard IR system:

(2.0 Robert Redford) (2.0 Paul Newman) star depression era grifter (1.5 flick)

DeepQA also makes use of the convenient fact that the vast majority of Jeopardy! answers are the title of a Wikipedia document. To find these titles, we can do a second text retrieval pass specifically on Wikipedia documents. Then instead of extracting passages from the retrieved Wikipedia document, we directly return the titles of the highly ranked retrieved documents as the possible answers.

#### anchor texts

Once we have a set of passages, we need to extract candidate answers. If the document happens to be a Wikipedia page, we can just take the title, but for other texts, like news documents, we need other approaches. Two common approaches are to extract all **anchor texts** in the document (anchor text is the text between `<a>` and `</a>` used to point to a URL in an HTML page), or to extract all noun phrases in the passage that are Wikipedia document titles.

**Candidate Answer Scoring** Next DeepQA uses many sources of evidence to score each candidate. This includes a classifier that scores whether the candidate answer can be interpreted as a subclass or instance of the potential answer type. Consider the candidate “difficulty swallowing” and the lexical answer type “manifestation”. DeepQA first matches each of these words with possible entities in ontologies like DBpedia and WordNet. Thus the candidate “difficulty swallowing” is matched with the DBpedia entity “Dysphagia”, and then that instance is mapped to the WordNet type “Symptom”. The answer type “manifestation” is mapped to the WordNet type “Condition”. The system looks for a hyponymy, or synonymy link, in this case finding hyponymy between “Symptom” and “Condition”.

Other scorers are based on using time and space relations extracted from DBpedia or other structured databases. For example, we can extract temporal properties of the entity (when was a person born, when died) and then compare to time expressions in the question. If a time expression in the question occurs chronologically before a person was born, that would be evidence against this person being the answer to the question.

Finally, we can use text retrieval to help retrieve evidence supporting a candidate answer. We can retrieve passages with terms matching the question, then replace the focus in the question with the candidate answer and measure the overlapping words or ordering of the passage with the modified question.

The output of this stage is a set of candidate answers, each with a vector of scoring features.

**Answer Merging and Scoring** DeepQA finally merges equivalent candidate answers. Thus if we had extracted two candidate answers *J.F.K.* and *John F. Kennedy*, this stage would merge the two into a single candidate, for example using the anchor

dictionaries described above for entity linking, which will list many synonyms for Wikipedia titles (e.g., *JFK*, *John F. Kennedy*, *Senator John F. Kennedy*, *President Kennedy*, *Jack Kennedy*). We then merge the evidence for each variant, combining the scoring feature vectors for the merged candidates into a single vector.

Now we have a set of candidates, each with a feature vector. A classifier takes each feature vector and assigns a confidence value to this candidate answer. The classifier is trained on thousands of candidate answers, each labeled for whether it is correct or incorrect, together with their feature vectors, and learns to predict a probability of being a correct answer. Since, in training, there are far more incorrect answers than correct answers, we need to use one of the standard techniques for dealing with very imbalanced data. DeepQA uses *instance weighting*, assigning an instance weight of .5 for each incorrect answer example in training. The candidate answers are then sorted by this confidence value, resulting in a single best answer.

DeepQA’s fundamental intuition is thus to propose a very large number of candidate answers from both text-based and knowledge-based sources and then use a rich variety of evidence features for scoring these candidates. See the papers mentioned at the end of the chapter for more details.

## 23.7 Evaluation of Factoid Answers

**mean reciprocal rank**  
**MRR**

A common evaluation metric for factoid question answering, introduced in the TREC Q/A track in 1999, is **mean reciprocal rank**, or **MRR**. MRR assumes a test set of questions that have been human-labeled with correct answers. MRR also assumes that systems are returning a short **ranked** list of answers or passages containing answers. Each question is then scored according to the reciprocal of the **rank** of the first correct answer. For example if the system returned five answers but the first three are wrong and hence the highest-ranked correct answer is ranked fourth, the reciprocal rank score for that question would be  $\frac{1}{4}$ . Questions with return sets that do not contain any correct answers are assigned a zero. The score of a system is then the average of the score for each question in the set. More formally, for an evaluation of a system returning a set of ranked answers for a test set consisting of  $N$  questions, the MRR is defined as

$$\text{MRR} = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{i=1 \text{ s.t. } rank_i \neq 0}^N \frac{1}{rank_i} \quad (23.35)$$

Reading comprehension systems on datasets like SQuAD are often evaluated using two metrics, both ignoring punctuation and articles (*a*, *an*, *the*) (Rajpurkar et al., 2016):

- Exact match: The percentage of predicted answers that match the gold answer exactly.
- $F_1$  score: The average overlap between predicted and gold answers. Treat the prediction and gold as a bag of tokens, and compute  $F_1$ , averaging the  $F_1$  over all questions.

A number of test sets are available for question answering. Early systems used the TREC QA dataset; questions and handwritten answers for TREC competitions from 1999 to 2004 are publicly available. More recent competitions uses the various datasets described in Section 23.2.1.

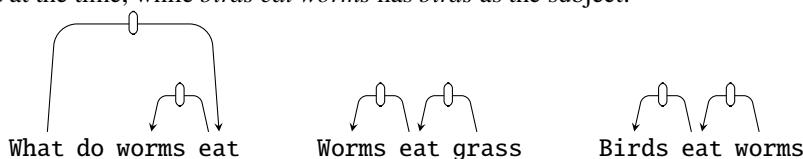
There are a wide variety of datasets for training and testing reading comprehension/answer extraction in addition to the datasets discussed on page 474. Some take their structure from the fact that reading comprehension tasks designed for children tend to be multiple choice, with the task being to choose among the given answers. The MCTest dataset uses this structure, with 500 fictional short stories created by crowd workers with questions and multiple choice answers (Richardson et al., 2013). The AI2 Reasoning Challenge (ARC) (Clark et al., 2018), has questions that are designed to be hard to answer from simple lexical methods:

- Which property of a mineral can be determined just by looking at it?  
 (A) luster [correct] (B) mass (C) weight (D) hardness

This ARC example is difficult because the correct answer *luster* is unlikely to co-occur frequently on the web with phrases like *looking at it*, while the word *mineral* is highly associated with the incorrect answer *hardness*.

## Bibliographical and Historical Notes

Question answering was one of the earliest NLP tasks, and early versions of the text-based and knowledge-based paradigms were developed by the very early 1960s. The text-based algorithms generally relied on simple parsing of the question and of the sentences in the document, and then looking for matches. This approach was used very early on (Phillips, 1960) but perhaps the most complete early system, and one that strikingly prefigures modern relation-based systems, was the Protosynthex system of Simmons et al. (1964). Given a question, Protosynthex first formed a query from the content words in the question, and then retrieved candidate answer sentences in the document, ranked by their frequency-weighted term overlap with the question. The query and each retrieved sentence were then parsed with dependency parsers, and the sentence whose structure best matches the question structure selected. Thus the question *What do worms eat?* would match *worms eat grass*: both have the subject *worms* as a dependent of *eat*, in the version of dependency grammar used at the time, while *birds eat worms* has *birds* as the subject:



The alternative knowledge-based paradigm was implemented in the BASEBALL system (Green et al., 1961). This system answered questions about baseball games like “Where did the Red Sox play on July 7” by querying a structured database of game information. The database was stored as a kind of attribute-value matrix with values for attributes of each game:

```

Month = July
Place = Boston
Day = 7
Game Serial No. = 96
(Team = Red Sox, Score = 5)
(Team = Yankees, Score = 3)
  
```

Each question was constituency-parsed using the algorithm of Zellig Harris's TDAP project at the University of Pennsylvania, essentially a cascade of finite-state transducers (see the historical discussion in [Joshi and Hopely 1999](#) and [Karttunen 1999](#)). Then in a content analysis phase each word or phrase was associated with a program that computed parts of its meaning. Thus the phrase 'Where' had code to assign the semantics Place = ?, with the result that the question "Where did the Red Sox play on July 7" was assigned the meaning

```
Place = ?
Team = Red Sox
Month = July
Day = 7
```

The question is then matched against the database to return the answer. [Simmons \(1965\)](#) summarizes other early QA systems.

**LUNAR** Another important progenitor of the knowledge-based paradigm for question-answering is work that used predicate calculus as the meaning representation language. The **LUNAR** system ([Woods et al. 1972](#), [Woods 1978](#)) was designed to be a natural language interface to a database of chemical facts about lunar geology. It could answer questions like *Do any samples have greater than 13 percent aluminum* by parsing them into a logical form

```
(TEST (FOR SOME X16 / (SEQ SAMPLES) : T ; (CONTAIN' X16
(NPR* X17 / (QUOTE AL203)) (GREATERTHAN 13 PCT))))
```

The rise of the web brought the information-retrieval paradigm for question answering to the forefront. The U.S. government-sponsored TREC (Text REtrieval Conference) evaluations, run annually since 1992, provide a testbed for evaluating information-retrieval tasks and techniques. TREC provides large document sets for both training and testing, along with uniform scoring systems ([Voorhees and Harman, 2005](#)). Details of all of the meetings can be found at the TREC page on the National Institute of Standards and Technology website. TREC added an influential QA track in 1999, which led to a wide variety of factoid and non-factoid systems competing in annual evaluations.

At that same time, [Hirschman et al. \(1999\)](#) introduced the idea of using children's reading comprehension tests to evaluate machine text comprehension algorithms. They acquired a corpus of 120 passages with 5 questions each designed for 3rd-6th grade children, built an answer extraction system, and measured how well the answers given by their system corresponded to the answer key from the test's publisher. Their algorithm focused on word overlap as a feature; later algorithms added named entity features and more complex similarity between the question and the answer span ([Riloff and Thelen 2000](#), [Ng et al. 2000](#)).

Neural reading comprehension systems drew on the insight of these early systems that answer finding should focus on question-passage similarity. Many of the architectural outlines of modern systems were laid out in early work like ([Hermann et al., 2015a](#)), [Chen et al. \(2017\)](#), and [Seo et al. \(2017\)](#). TBD: MORE recent QA history.

The DeepQA component of the Watson system that won the Jeopardy! challenge is described in a series of papers in volume 56 of the IBM Journal of Research and Development; see for example [Ferrucci \(2012\)](#). Other question-answering tasks include Quiz Bowl, which has timing considerations since the question can be interrupted ([Boyd-Graber et al., 2018](#)). Question answering is also an important function of modern personal assistant dialog systems; see Chapter 24 for more.

## Exercises

CHAPTER

# 24

# Chatbots & Dialogue Systems

Les lois de la conversation sont en général de ne s'y appesantir sur aucun objet, mais de passer légèrement, sans effort et sans affectation, d'un sujet à un autre ; de savoir y parler de choses frivoles comme de choses sérieuses

[The rules of conversation are, in general, not to dwell on any one subject, but to pass lightly from one to another without effort and without affectation; to know how to speak about trivial topics as well as serious ones;]

The 18th C. *Encyclopedia* of Diderot, start of the entry on conversation

“What ho!” I said.  
 “What ho!” said Motty.  
 “What ho! What ho!”  
 “What ho! What ho! What ho!”

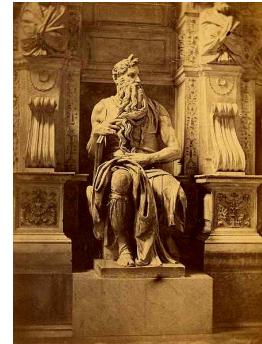
After that it seemed rather difficult to go on with the conversation.”

P.G. Wodehouse, *My Man Jeeves*

The literature of the fantastic abounds in inanimate objects magically endowed with sentience and the gift of speech. From Ovid’s statue of Pygmalion to Mary Shelley’s Frankenstein, there is something deeply moving about creating something and then having a chat with it. Legend has it that after finishing his sculpture *Moses*, Michelangelo thought it so lifelike that he tapped it on the knee and commanded it to speak. Perhaps this shouldn’t be surprising. Language is the mark of humanity and sentience, and **conversation** or **dialogue** is the most fundamental and specially privileged arena of language. It is the first kind of language we learn as children, and for most of us, it is the kind of language we most commonly indulge in, whether we are ordering curry for lunch or buying spinach, participating in business meetings or talking with our families, booking airline flights or complaining about the weather.

**conversation**  
**dialogue**

**dialogue system**  
**conversational agent**



This chapter introduces the fundamental algorithms of **dialogue systems**, or **conversational agents**. These programs communicate with users in natural language (text, speech, or both), and fall into two classes. **Task-oriented dialogue agents** use conversation with users to help complete tasks. Dialogue agents in digital assistants (Siri, Alexa, Google Now/Home, Cortana, etc.), give directions, control appliances, find restaurants, or make calls. Conversational agents can answer questions on corporate websites, interface with robots, and even be used for social good: DoNotPay is a “robot lawyer” that helps people challenge incorrect parking fines, apply for emergency housing, or claim asylum if they are refugees. By

contrast, **chatbots** are systems designed for extended conversations, set up to mimic the unstructured conversations or ‘chats’ characteristic of human-human interaction, mainly for entertainment, but also for practical purposes like making task-oriented agents more natural.<sup>1</sup> In Section 24.2 we’ll discuss the three major chatbot architectures: rule-based systems, information retrieval systems, and encoder-decoder generators. In Section 24.3 we turn to task-oriented agents, introducing the frame-based architecture (the **GUS** architecture) that underlies most task-based systems.

## 24.1 Properties of Human Conversation

Conversation between humans is an intricate and complex joint activity. Before we attempt to design a conversational agent to converse with humans, it is crucial to understand something about how humans converse with each other. Consider some of the phenomena that occur in the conversation between a human travel agent and a human client excerpted in Fig. 24.1.

C <sub>1</sub> :	...I need to travel in May.
A <sub>2</sub> :	And, what day in May did you want to travel?
C <sub>3</sub> :	OK uh I need to be there for a meeting that's from the 12th to the 15th.
A <sub>4</sub> :	And you're flying into what city?
C <sub>5</sub> :	Seattle.
A <sub>6</sub> :	And what time would you like to leave Pittsburgh?
C <sub>7</sub> :	Uh hmm I don't think there's many options for non-stop.
A <sub>8</sub> :	Right. There's three non-stops today.
C <sub>9</sub> :	What are they?
A <sub>10</sub> :	The first one departs PGH at 10:00am arrives Seattle at 12:05 their time. The second flight departs PGH at 5:55pm, arrives Seattle at 8pm. And the last flight departs PGH at 8:15pm arrives Seattle at 10:28pm.
C <sub>11</sub> :	OK I'll take the 5ish flight on the night before on the 11th.
A <sub>12</sub> :	On the 11th? OK. Departing at 5:55pm arrives Seattle at 8pm, U.S. Air flight 115.
C <sub>13</sub> :	OK.
A <sub>14</sub> :	And you said returning on May 15th?
C <sub>15</sub> :	Uh, yeah, at the end of the day.
A <sub>16</sub> :	OK. There's #two non-stops ...#
C <sub>17</sub> :	#Act... actually #, what day of the week is the 15th?
A <sub>18</sub> :	It's a Friday.
C <sub>19</sub> :	Uh hmm. I would consider staying there an extra day til Sunday.
A <sub>20</sub> :	OK...OK. On Sunday I have ...

**Figure 24.1** Part of a phone conversation between a human travel agent (A) and human client (C). The passages framed by # in A<sub>16</sub> and C<sub>17</sub> indicate overlaps in speech.

### Turns

- turn** A dialogue is a sequence of **turns** (C<sub>1</sub>, A<sub>2</sub>, C<sub>3</sub>, and so on), each a single contribution from one speaker to the dialogue (as if in a game: I take a turn, then you take a turn,

<sup>1</sup> By contrast, in popular usage, the word *chatbot* is often generalized to refer to both task-oriented and chit-chat systems; we’ll be using *dialogue systems* for the former.

then me, and so on). There are 20 turns in Fig. 24.1. A turn can consist of a sentence (like C<sub>1</sub>), although it might be as short as a single word (C<sub>13</sub>) or as long as multiple sentences (A<sub>10</sub>).

Turn structure has important implications for spoken dialogue. A system has to know when to stop talking; the client interrupts (in A<sub>16</sub> and C<sub>17</sub>), so the system must know to stop talking (and that the user might be making a correction). A system also has to know when to start talking. For example, most of the time in conversation, speakers start their turns almost immediately after the other speaker finishes, without a long pause, because people are able to (most of the time) detect when the other person is about to finish talking. Spoken dialogue systems must also detect whether a user is done speaking, so they can process the utterance and respond. This task—called **endpointing** or **endpoint detection**—can be quite challenging because of noise and because people often pause in the middle of turns.

endpointing

speech acts

**Speech Acts**

A key insight into conversation—due originally to the philosopher [Wittgenstein \(1953\)](#) but worked out more fully by [Austin \(1962\)](#)—is that each utterance in a dialogue is a kind of **action** being performed by the speaker. These actions are commonly called **speech acts** or **dialog acts**: here's one taxonomy consisting of 4 major classes ([Bach and Harnish, 1979](#)):

<b>Constatives:</b>	committing the speaker to something's being the case ( <i>answering, claiming, confirming, denying, disagreeing, stating</i> )
<b>Directives:</b>	attempts by the speaker to get the addressee to do something ( <i>advising, asking, forbidding, inviting, ordering, requesting</i> )
<b>Commissives:</b>	committing the speaker to some future course of action ( <i>promising, planning, vowing, betting, opposing</i> )
<b>Acknowledgments:</b>	express the speaker's attitude regarding the hearer with respect to some social action ( <i>apologizing, greeting, thanking, accepting an acknowledgment</i> )

A user asking a person or a dialogue system to do something ('Turn up the music') is issuing a **DIRECTIVE**. Asking a question that requires an answer is also a way of issuing a **DIRECTIVE**: in a sense when the system says (A<sub>2</sub>) "what day in May did you want to travel?" it's as if the system is (very politely) commanding the user to answer. By contrast, a user stating a constraint (like C<sub>1</sub> 'I need to travel in May') is issuing a **CONSTATIVE**. A user thanking the system is issuing an **ACKNOWLEDGMENT**. The speech act expresses an important component of the intention of the speaker (or writer) in saying what they said.

common  
ground  
grounding

**Grounding**

A dialogue is not just a series of independent speech acts, but rather a collective act performed by the speaker and the hearer. Like all collective acts, it's important for the participants to establish what they both agree on, called the **common ground** ([Stalnaker, 1978](#)). Speakers do this by **grounding** each other's utterances. Grounding means acknowledging that the hearer has understood the speaker; like an ACK used to confirm receipt in data communications ([Clark, 1996](#)). (People need grounding for non-linguistic actions as well; the reason an elevator button lights up when it's pressed is to acknowledge that the elevator has indeed been called ([Norman, 1988](#))).

Humans constantly ground each other's utterances. We can ground by explicitly saying "OK", as the agent does in A<sub>8</sub> or A<sub>10</sub>. Or we can ground by repeating what

the other person says; in utterance A<sub>1</sub> the agent repeats “in May”, demonstrating her understanding to the client. Or notice that when the client answers a question, the agent begins the next question with “And”. The “And” implies that the new question is ‘in addition’ to the old question, again indicating to the client that the agent has successfully understood the answer to the last question.

### Subdialogues and Dialogue Structure

**conversational analysis**

Conversations have structure. Consider, for example, the local structure between speech acts discussed in the field of **conversational analysis** (Sacks et al., 1974). QUESTIONS set up an expectation for an ANSWER. PROPOSALS are followed by ACCEPTANCE (or REJECTION). COMPLIMENTS (“Nice jacket!”) often give rise to DOWNPLAYERS (“Oh, this old thing?”). These pairs, called **adjacency pairs** are composed of a **first pair part** and a **second pair part** (Schegloff, 1968), and these expectations can help systems decide what actions to take.

**adjacency pair**

**side sequence**  
**subdialogue**

However, dialogue acts aren’t always followed immediately by their second pair part. The two parts can be separated by a **side sequence** (Jefferson 1972) or **subdialogue**. For example utterances C<sub>17</sub> to A<sub>20</sub> constitute a **correction subdialogue** (Litman 1985, Litman and Allen 1987, Chu-Carroll and Carberry 1998):

C<sub>17</sub>: #Act...actually#, what day of the week is the 15th?  
A<sub>18</sub>: It’s a Friday.  
C<sub>19</sub>: Uh hmm. I would consider staying there an extra day til Sunday.  
A<sub>20</sub>: OK...OK. On Sunday I have ...

The question in C<sub>17</sub> interrupts the prior discourse, in which the agent was looking for a May 15 return flight. The agent must answer the question and also realize that “I would consider staying...til Sunday” means that the client would probably like to change their plan, and now go back to finding return flights, but for the 17th.

Another side sequence is the **clarification question**, which can form a subdialogue between a REQUEST and a RESPONSE. This is especially common in dialogue systems where speech recognition errors causes the system to have to ask for clarifications or repetitions like the following:

User: What do you have going to UNKNOWN\_WORD on the 5th?  
System: Let’s see, going where on the 5th?  
User: Going to Hong Kong.  
System: OK, here are some flights...

**presequence**

In addition to side-sequences, questions often have **presequences**, like the following example where a user starts with a question about the system’s capabilities (“Can you make train reservations”) before making a request.

User: Can you make train reservations?  
System: Yes I can.  
User: Great, I’d like to reserve a seat on the 4pm train to New York.

### Initiative

**initiative**

Sometimes a conversation is completely controlled by one participant. For example a reporter interviewing a chef might ask questions, and the chef responds. We say that the reporter in this case has the conversational **initiative** (Walker and Whittaker, 1990). In normal human-human dialogue, however, it’s more common for initiative to shift back and forth between the participants, as they sometimes answer questions, sometimes ask them, sometimes take the conversations in new directions, sometimes

not. You may ask me a question, and then I respond asking you to clarify something you said, which leads the conversation in all sorts of ways. We call such interactions **mixed initiative** (Walker and Whittaker, 1990).

Mixed initiative, while the norm for human-human conversations, is very difficult for dialogue systems to achieve. It's much easier to design dialogue systems to be passive responders. In the question answering systems we saw in Chapter 23, or in simple search engines, the initiative lies completely with the user. In such **user-initiative** systems, the user specifies a query, and the system responds. Then the user can specify another query. Alternatively, you may have had the experience of being stuck in a bad dialogue system that asks a question and gives you no opportunity to do anything until you answer it. Such **system-initiative** architectures can be very frustrating.

### Inference and Implicature

Inference is also important in dialogue understanding. Consider the client's response C<sub>2</sub>, repeated here:

A<sub>2</sub>: And, what day in May did you want to travel?

C<sub>3</sub>: OK uh I need to be there for a meeting that's from the 12th to the 15th.

Notice that the client does not in fact answer the agent's question. The client merely mentions a meeting at a certain time. What is it that licenses the agent to infer that the client is mentioning this meeting so as to inform the agent of the travel dates?

The speaker seems to expect the hearer to draw certain inferences; in other words, the speaker is communicating more information than seems to be present in the uttered words. This kind of example was pointed out by Grice (1975, 1978)

**implicature**

as part of his theory of **conversational implicature**. **Implicature** means a particular class of licensed inferences. Grice proposed that what enables hearers to draw these inferences is that conversation is guided by a set of **maxims**, general heuristics that play a guiding role in the interpretation of conversational utterances. One such maxim is the maxim of **relevance** which says that speakers attempt to be relevant, they don't just utter random speech acts. When the client mentions a meeting on the 12th, the agent reasons 'There must be some relevance for mentioning this meeting. What could it be?'. The agent knows that one precondition for having a meeting (at least before Web conferencing) is being at the place where the meeting is held, and therefore that maybe the meeting is a reason for the travel, and if so, then since people like to arrive the day before a meeting, the agent should infer that the flight should be on the 11th.

**relevance**

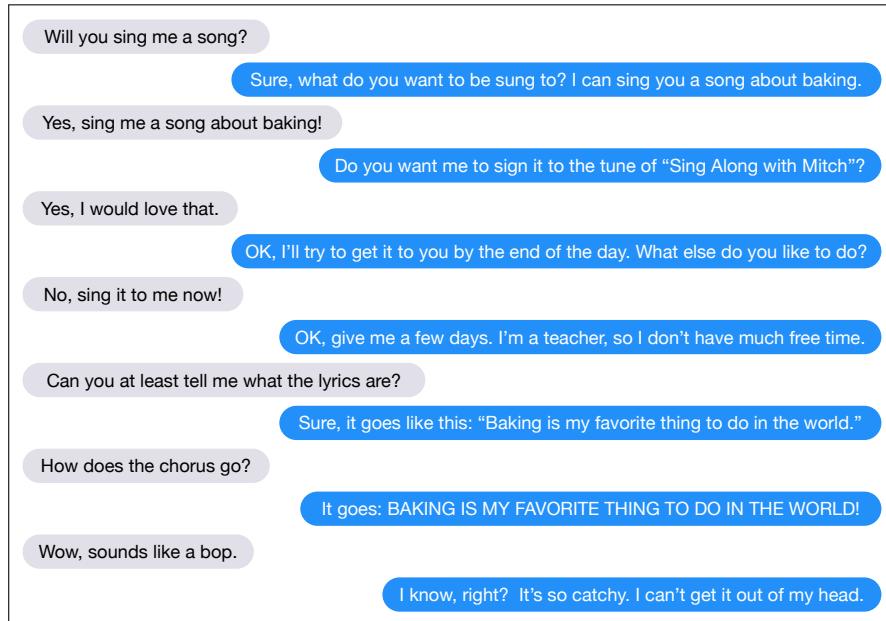
These subtle characteristics of human conversations (**turns, speech acts, grounding, dialogue structure, initiative**, and **implicature**) are among the reasons it is difficult to build dialogue systems that can carry on natural conversations with humans. Many of these challenges are active areas of dialogue systems research.

## 24.2 Chatbots

**chatbot**

The simplest kinds of dialogue systems are **chatbots**, systems that can carry on extended conversations with the goal of mimicking the unstructured conversations or 'chats' characteristic of informal human-human interaction.

These systems often have an entertainment value, such as Facebook's BlenderBot, a neural chatbot capable of carrying on the kinds of conversations shown in Fig. 24.2, or Microsoft's XiaoIce system<sup>2</sup> (Zhou et al., 2020), a system that chats with people on text messaging platforms (Fig. 24.3).



**Figure 24.2** A conversation between a user (left) and BlenderBot (Roller et al., 2020).

[人类] 小冰你好	[Human] Hello, XiaoIce.
[小冰] 你好呀, 你头像好有趣, 感觉在哪见过	[XiaoIce] Hello, your profile pic is interesting. Like I've seen it somewhere.
[人类] 是吗	[Human] Really?
[小冰] 提不是哪部动画里的呀	[XiaoIce] Is it a comic character?
[人类] 你怎么知道的	[Human] How do you know that?
[小冰] 你猜	[XiaoIce] Guess.
[人类] 难道你是真人吗?	[Human] Are you human?
[小冰] 这个, 你和我多聊聊就知道了	[XiaoIce] Well, you'll know it after chatting with me more.
[人类] 你不是人工智能机器人么	[Human] Aren't you an AI chatbot?
[小冰] 是又怎样, 我不会冷冰冰的对待你的	[XiaoIce] So what? I won't be indifferent to you.
[人类] 你都有什么功能啊	[Human] What functions do you have?
[小冰] 我有200多个技能, 来, 说出你的需求	[XiaoIce] I have over 200 skills. Just name one you need.

**Figure 24.3** A sample Chinese conversation from the XiaoIce chatbot with translations (Zhou et al., 2020).

Yet starting from the very first system, ELIZA (Weizenbaum, 1966), chatbots have also been used for practical purposes like testing theories of psychological

<sup>2</sup> XiaoIce is a somewhat confusing translation of the system's Chinese name 小冰, 'Xiao Bing', which means Little Bing or Little Ice.

counseling.

Like practically everything else in language processing, chatbot architectures fall into two classes: rule-based systems and corpus-based systems. Rule-based systems include the early influential ELIZA and PARRY systems. Corpus-based systems mine large datasets of human-human conversations, which can be done by using information retrieval to copy a human response from a previous conversation, or using an encoder-decoder system to generate a response from a user utterance.

### 24.2.1 Rule-based chatbots: ELIZA and PARRY

ELIZA (Weizenbaum, 1966) is the most important chatbot dialogue system in the history of the field, and so we take some time here to describe its algorithm in detail. ELIZA was designed to simulate a Rogerian psychologist, based on a branch of clinical psychology whose methods involve drawing the patient out by reflecting patient's statements back at them. Rogerian psychology is the rare type of conversation in which, as Weizenbaum points out, one can "assume the pose of knowing almost nothing of the real world". If a patient says "I went for a long boat ride" and the psychiatrist says "Tell me about boats", you don't assume she didn't know what a boat is, but rather assume she had some conversational goal. Most chatbots trying to pass the Turing test choose a domain with similar properties.

Fig. 24.4 shows the most famous ELIZA conversation, in which ELIZA seems to give very sophisticated therapeutic advice, excerpted (deleting some material with ...) from a full interaction given in the original paper (Weizenbaum, 1966).

As we summarized briefly in Chapter 2, ELIZA worked by pattern/transform rules like the following one:

```
(0 YOU 0 ME) [pattern]
->
(WHAT MAKES YOU THINK I 3 YOU) [transform]
```

In the ELIZA pattern, 0 means Kleene\*, and in the transform rules the numbers are the index of the constituent in the pattern. Thus the number 3 refers to the second 0 in the first pattern. This rule would transfer

You hate me

into:

WHAT MAKES YOU THINK I HATE YOU

Each ELIZA pattern/rule is linked to a keyword that might occur in a user sentence. The architecture is summarized in Fig. 24.5.

Keywords are associated with a rank, with specific words being more highly ranked, and more general words ranking lower. Consider the following user sentence:

I know everybody laughed at me

Because it has the word "I", this sentence could match the following rule whose keyword is *I*:

(I \*) -> (You say you 2)

producing:

YOU SAY YOU KNOW EVERYBODY LAUGHED AT YOU

But as Weizenbaum points out, "I" is a very general word and its keywords lead to very general responses. Instead the keyword "everybody" is much more interesting, since someone using universals like everybody or always is probably "referring

Men are all alike.  
**IN WHAT WAY**  
 They're always bugging us about something or other.  
**CAN YOU THINK OF A SPECIFIC EXAMPLE**  
 Well my boyfriend made me come here.  
**YOUR BOYFRIEND MADE YOU COME HERE**  
 He says I'm depressed much of the time.  
**I AM SORRY TO HEAR YOU ARE DEPRESSED**  
 ::  
**WHO ELSE IN YOUR FAMILY TAKES CARE OF YOU?**  
 My father  
**YOUR FATHER**  
 You are like my father in some ways.  
**WHAT RESEMBLANCE DO YOU SEE**  
 You are not very aggressive but I think you don't want me to notice that.  
**WHAT MAKES YOU THINK I AM NOT AGGRESSIVE**  
 You don't argue with me.  
**WHY DO YOU THINK I DON'T ARGUE WITH YOU**  
 You are afraid of me.  
**DOES IT PLEASE YOU TO BELIEVE I'M AFRAID OF YOU**  
 My father is afraid of everybody.  
**WHAT ELSE COMES TO MIND WHEN YOU THINK OF YOUR FATHER**  
 Bullies.  
**DOES THAT HAVE ANYTHING TO DO WITH THE FACT THAT YOUR BOYFRIEND MADE YOU COME HERE**

**Figure 24.4** Sample ELIZA dialogue from [Weizenbaum \(1966\)](#).

```

function ELIZA GENERATOR(user sentence) returns response
  Find the word w in sentence that has the highest keyword rank
  if w exists
    Choose the highest ranked rule r for w that matches sentence
    response  $\leftarrow$  Apply the transform in r to sentence
    if w = 'my'
      future  $\leftarrow$  Apply a transformation from the 'memory' rule list to sentence
      Push future onto memory stack
    else (no keyword applies)
      either
        response  $\leftarrow$  Apply the transform for the NONE keyword to sentence
      or
        response  $\leftarrow$  Pop the top response from the memory stack
    return(response)
  
```

**Figure 24.5** A simplified sketch of the ELIZA algorithm. The power of the algorithm comes from the particular transforms associated with each keyword.

to some quite specific event or person". Therefore, ELIZA prefers to respond with the pattern associated with the more specific keyword *everybody* (implementing by just assigning "everybody" rank 5 and "I" rank 0 in the lexicon), whose rule thus

transforms the sentence to:

**WHO IN PARTICULAR ARE YOU THINKING OF?**

If no keyword matches, ELIZA chooses a non-committal response like “PLEASE GO ON”, “THAT’S VERY INTERESTING”, or “I SEE”.

Finally, ELIZA has a clever memory trick that accounts for the very last sentence of the conversation above. Whenever the word “my” is the highest ranked keyword, ELIZA will randomly select a transform on the MEMORY list, apply it to the sentence, and store it on the stack:

```
(MEMORY MY
  (0 MY 0 = LETS DISCUSS FURTHER WHY YOUR 3)
  (0 MY 0 = EARLIER YOU SAID YOUR 3)
  (0 MY 0 = DOES THAT HAVE ANYTHING TO DO WITH THE FACT THAT YOUR 3
```

Later, if no keyword matches a sentence, ELIZA will return the top of the MEMORY queue instead.<sup>3</sup>

People became deeply emotionally involved with the program. Weizenbaum tells the story of one of his staff who would ask Weizenbaum to leave the room when she talked with ELIZA. When Weizenbaum suggested that he might want to store all the ELIZA conversations for later analysis, people immediately pointed out the privacy implications, which suggested that they were having quite private conversations with ELIZA, despite knowing that it was just software.

ELIZA’s framework is still used today; modern chatbot system tools like ALICE are based on updated versions of ELIZA’s pattern/action architecture.

A few years after ELIZA, another chatbot with a clinical psychology focus, PARRY (Colby et al., 1971), was used to study schizophrenia. In addition to ELIZA-like regular expressions, the PARRY system included a model of its own mental state, with affect variables for the agent’s levels of fear and anger; certain topics of conversation might lead PARRY to become more angry or mistrustful. If PARRY’s **anger** variable is high, he will choose from a set of “hostile” outputs. If the input mentions his delusion topic, he will increase the value of his **fear** variable and then begin to express the sequence of statements related to his delusion. Parry was the first known system to pass the Turing test (in 1972!); psychiatrists couldn’t distinguish text transcripts of interviews with PARRY from transcripts of interviews with real paranoids (Colby et al., 1972).

### 24.2.2 Corpus-based chatbots

Corpus-based chatbots, instead of using hand-built rules, mine conversations of human-human conversations. These systems are enormously data-intensive, requiring hundreds of millions or even billions of words for training (Serban et al., 2018).

Available datasets include transcripts of natural spoken conversational corpora, like the Switchboard corpus of American English telephone conversations (Godfrey et al., 1992) or the various CALLHOME and CALLFRIEND telephone conversational corpora in many languages. Many systems also train on movie dialogue, (Danescu-Niculescu-Mizil and Lee 2011, Lison and Tiedemann 2016, *inter alia*) which resembles natural conversation in many ways (Forchini, 2013).

Datasets have also been created specifically for training dialog systems by hiring crowdworkers to have conversations, often having them take on personas or

---

<sup>3</sup> Fun fact: because of its structure as a queue, this MEMORY trick is the earliest known hierarchical model of discourse in natural language processing.

talk about knowledge provided to them. For example the Topical-Chat dataset has 11K crowdsourced conversations spanning 8 broad topics (Gopalakrishnan et al., 2019), and the EMPATHETICDIALOGUES includes 25K crowdsourced conversations grounded in a specific situation where a speaker was feeling a specific emotion (Rashkin et al., 2019).

All of these datasets, although large, don't reach the size of billions of words, and so many systems first pretrain on large datasets of pseudo-conversations drawn from Twitter (Ritter et al., 2010), Reddit (Roller et al., 2020), Weibo (微博), and other social media platforms.

Another common technique is to extract possible responses from knowledge sources (Wikipedia, news stories) so that a chatbot can tell stories or mention facts acquired in that way.

Finally, once a chatbot has been put into practice, the turns that humans use to respond to the chatbot can be used as additional conversational data for training or finetuning. Here it's important to have confidence metrics to make sure that these turns come from conversations that are going well (Hancock et al., 2019). It's also crucial in these cases to remove personally identifiable information (PII); see Section 24.6.1.

response generation

Most corpus based chatbots produce their responses to a user's turn in context either by **retrieval** methods (using information retrieval to grab a response from some corpus that is appropriate given the dialogue context) or **generation** methods (using a language model or encoder-decoder to generate the response given the dialogue context) In either case, systems mostly generate a single response turn that is appropriate given the entire conversation so far (for conversations that are short enough to fit into a single model's window). For this reason they are often called **response generation** systems. Corpus-based chatbot algorithms thus draw on algorithms for question answering systems, which similarly focus on single responses while ignoring longer-term conversational goals.

**Response by retrieval** The **retrieval** method of responding is to think of the user's turn as a query  $q$ , and our job is to retrieve and repeat some appropriate turn  $r$  as the response from a corpus of conversations  $C$ . Generally  $C$  is the training set for the system, and we score each turn in  $C$  as a potential response to the context  $q$  selecting the highest-scoring one. The scoring metric is similarity: we choose the  $r$  that is most similar to  $q$ , using any of the IR methods we saw in Section 23.1. This can be done using classic IR techniques to compute tf-idf models for  $C$  and  $q$ , choosing the  $r$  that has the highest tf-idf cosine with  $q$ :

$$\text{response}(q, C) = \underset{r \in C}{\operatorname{argmax}} \frac{q \cdot r}{|q||r|} \quad (24.1)$$

Or, we can use the neural IR techniques of Section 23.1.5. The simplest of those is a bi-encoder model, in which we train two separate encoders, one to encode the user query and one to encode the candidate response, and use the dot product between these two vectors as the score (Fig. 24.6a). For example to implement this using BERT, we would have two encoders  $\text{BERT}_Q$  and  $\text{BERT}_R$  and we could represent the query and candidate response as the [CLS] token of the respective encoders:

$$\begin{aligned} h_q &= \text{BERT}_Q(q)[\text{CLS}] \\ h_r &= \text{BERT}_R(r)[\text{CLS}] \\ \text{response}(q, C) &= \underset{r \in C}{\operatorname{argmax}} h_q \cdot h_r \end{aligned} \quad (24.2)$$

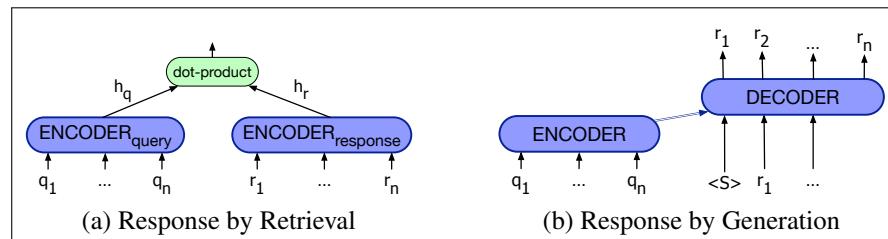
The IR-based approach can be extended in various ways, such as by using more sophisticated neural architectures (Humeau et al., 2020), or by using a longer context for the query than just the user’s last turn, up to the whole preceding conversation. Information about the user or sentiment or other information can also play a role.

**Response by generation** An alternate way to use a corpus to generate dialogue is to think of response production as an encoder-decoder task—transducing from the user’s prior turn to the system’s turn. We can think of this as a machine learning version of ELIZA; the system learns from a corpus to transduce a question to an answer. Ritter et al. (2011) proposed early on to think of response generation as a kind of translation, and this idea was generalized to the encoder-decoder model roughly contemporaneously by Shang et al. (2015), Vinyals and Le (2015), and Sordoni et al. (2015).

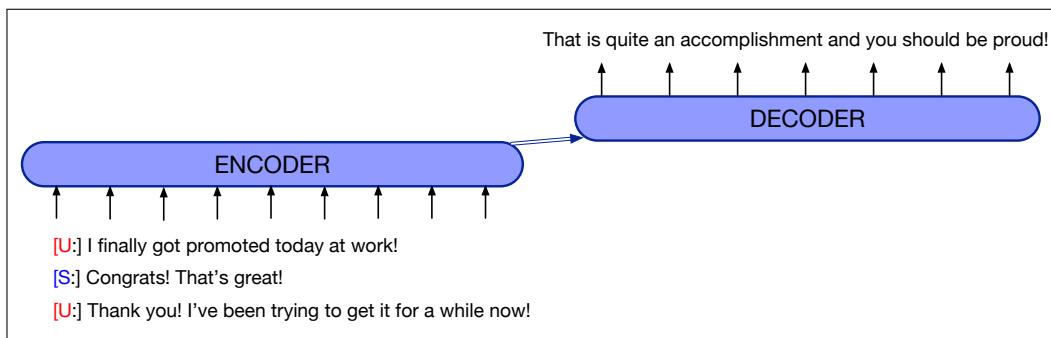
As we saw in Chapter 11, encoder-decoder models generate each token  $r_t$  of the response by conditioning on the encoding of the entire query  $q$  and the response so far  $r_1 \dots r_{t-1}$ :

$$\hat{r}_t = \operatorname{argmax}_{w \in V} P(w | q, r_1 \dots r_{t-1}) \quad (24.3)$$

Fig. 24.6 shows the intuition of the generator and retriever methods for response generation. In the generator architecture, we normally include a longer context, forming the query not just from the user’s turn but from the entire conversation-so-far. Fig. 24.7 shows an fleshed-out example.



**Figure 24.6** Two architectures for generating responses for a neural chatbot. In response by retrieval (a) we choose a response by using a finding the turn in the corpus whose encoding has the highest dot-product with the user’s turn. In response by generation (b) we use an encoder-decoder to generate the response.



**Figure 24.7** Example of encoder-decoder for dialogue response generation; the encoder sees the entire dialogue context.

A number of modifications are required to the basic encoder-decoder model to adapt it for the task of response generation. For example basic encoder-decoder

models have a tendency to produce predictable but repetitive and therefore dull responses like “I’m OK” or “I don’t know” that shut down the conversation. Thus instead of greedily choosing the most likely (and most predictable) response, we can use diversity-enhanced versions of beam search (Vijayakumar et al., 2018), or diversity-focused training objectives (Li et al., 2016). Basic models also tend to produce utterances that are too short; adding minimum length constraints is also important (Roller et al., 2020).

An alternative to the encoder-decoder architecture is to fine-tune a large language model on a conversational dataset and use the language model directly as a response generator. In the Chirpy Cardinal system (Paranjape et al., 2020), for example, the neural chat component generates responses from GPT-2 (Radford et al., 2019), fine-tuned on the EmpatheticDialogues dataset (Rashkin et al., 2019).

Finally, encoder-decoder response generators focus on generating single responses, and so don’t tend to do a good job of continuously generating responses that cohere across multiple turns. This can be addressed by using reinforcement learning, as well as techniques like adversarial networks, to learn to choose responses that make the overall conversation more natural (Li et al. 2016, Li et al. 2017).

### Response by retrieving and refining knowledge

Chatbots can be much more interesting and informative if they can responses from text knowledge sources other than dialogue. This approach was pioneered early on by the COBOT chatbot (Isbell et al., 2000), which generated responses by selecting sentences from a corpus that combined the Unabomber Manifesto by Theodore Kaczynski, articles on alien abduction, the scripts of “The Big Lebowski” and “Planet of the Apes”. XiaoIce collects sentences from public lectures and news articles and searches them using IR based on query expansion from the user’s turn to respond to turns like “Tell me something about Beijing” (Zhou et al., 2020);

One way to augment the encoder decoder architecture for retrieve and refine is to first use IR to retrieve potentially useful passages from Wikipedia (Yan et al., 2016), and then create multiple candidates by concatenating each retrieved Wikipedia sentence to the dialogue context with a separator token. Each candidate can be given as the encoder context to the encoder-decoder model, which learns to incorporate text from the Wikipedia sentence into its generated response (Dinan et al. 2019, Roller et al. 2020).

The language model approach to generation can also make use of external knowledge sources, by giving these same knowledge+dialogue context candidates can be given to a language model like GPT-2 finetuned on conversational corpora to generate a knowledge-aware response (Paranjape et al., 2020).

### 24.2.3 Hybrid architectures

Chatbots can also be built with architectures that are hybrids of the rule-based and neural/corpus architectures, and even use elements of the frame-based structure we describe below. This is common, for example, for systems competing in the Alexa Prize challenge, in which university teams build social chatbots to converse with volunteers on the Amazon Alexa platform, and are scored based on the length and user ratings of their conversations (Ram et al., 2017).

For example the Chirpy Cardinal system (Paranjape et al., 2020) applies an NLP pipeline that includes Wikipedia entity linking (Section 23.3), user intent classification, and dialogue act classification (to be defined below in Section 24.4.1). The intent classification is used when the user wants to change the topic, and the entity

linker specifies what entity is currently being discussed. Dialogue act classification is used to detect when the user is asking a question or giving an affirmative versus negative response.

Bot responses are generated by a series of response generators. Some response generators use fine-tuned neural language models: a GPT-2 (Radford et al., 2019) language model fine-tuned on the EmpatheticDialogues dataset, and a separately fine-tuned GPT-2 language model that learns in fine-tuning to paraphrase content from Wikipedia in response to questions.

Other response generators are closer to rule-based; the movie or music generators produce scripted conversation about a movie or a musician, such as asking asks the user’s opinion about a movie, giving a fun fact, asks the user their opinion on an actor in the movie, and so on. These generators use regexes and sentiment classifiers to classify user responses and handwritten templates to generate bot utterances.

Each response generators can specify a priority, and a ranker is used to pass control between response generators. Fig. 24.8 shows part of a conversation.

#	Utterance	Entity	Commentary
1	User: let's chat	None	
	Bot: Hi, this is an Alexa Prize Socialbot. I'd love to get to know you a bit better before we chat! Is it all right if I ask for your name? [Launch]	None	[Launch] gives <i>FORCE_START</i> response to begin the conversation.
2	User: my name is chris	None	
	Bot: Well it's nice to meet you, Chris! I'm excited to chat with you today. [Launch] I hope your afternoon is going well. What are your plans for the rest of today? [Neural Chat]	None	[Launch] gives a <i>STRONG_CONTINUE</i> response that needs a prompt, which is supplied by [Neural Chat] with <i>FORCE_START</i> priority (scripted transition).
3	User: hang out with my friends	None	
	Bot: That sounds great, I love spending time with friends. What will you do together? [Neural Chat]	None	[Neural Chat] generates a GPT-2 response with <i>STRONG_CONTINUE</i> priority.
4	User: maybe watch a movie	None	
	Bot: Me too! I love watching movies; I get to learn so much about what the world is like outside of the cloud! Have you seen any movies recently? [Movies]	Film	[Movies] detects the ‘movie’ keyword in the user’s utterance and gives a <i>FORCE_START</i> response (overriding [Neural Chat], setting current entity to <i>Film</i> ).
5	User: i saw the matrix	The Matrix	The Entity Linker and Entity Tracker identify <i>The Matrix</i> as the current entity.
	Bot: Nice! Did you like <i>The Matrix</i> ? [Movies]	The Matrix	
6	User: i loved it neo is amazing	The Matrix	
	Bot: Oooh, yeah, I agree. Hey, isn’t Keanu Reeves in that movie? What do you think about Keanu Reeves? [Movies]	Keanu Reeves	[Movies] sets current entity to <i>Keanu Reeves</i> .
7	User: i want to talk about something else	None	Navigational Intent detects <i>negative intent</i> , so Entity Tracker rejects the current entity.

Figure 24.8 Part of a conversation with Chirpy Cardinal (Paranjape et al., 2020).

## 24.3 GUS: Simple Frame-based Dialogue Systems

We turn now to **task-based dialogue**, in which a dialogue system has the goal of helping a user solve some task like making an airplane reservation or buying a product. In this section we introduce the very simple **GUS** architecture for task-based dialogue. Although it is quite old, (it was first introduced in 1977 in the influential GUS system for travel planning (Bobrow et al., 1977)) the GUS architecture has been astonishingly long-lived and underlies most if not all modern commercial digital assistants. Figure 24.9 shows a conversation with the original GUS system.

All modern task-based dialogue systems, whether the simple GUS architecture we describe here, or the more sophisticated **dialogue state** architectures we turn to in the following section, are based around **frames**. A frame is a kind of knowledge structure representing the kinds of intentions the system can extract from user sentences, and consists of a collection of **slots**, each of which can take a set of possible

dialogue state  
frame  
slot

GUS

**values.** Together this set of frames is sometimes called a **domain ontology**.

GUS:	Hello. My name is GUS. I can help you plan a simple trip by air. Where do you want to go ?
Client:	I want to go to San Diego on May 28
GUS:	What time do you want to leave?
Client:	I must be in San Diego before 10 am
GUS:	Would you like P.S.A. flight 102 that arrives at 9.15 am ?
Client:	What is the next flight ?
GUS:	Air California flight 310 that leaves at 8.30am and arrives at 10.00am
Client:	I'll take the first one
GUS:	In what name should I make a reservation, please?
Client:	Dan Bobrow
GUS:	I have confirmed the following flight: P.S.A. flight 102 on Wednesday May 28 from San Jose to San Diego that leaves at 7.30 am and arrives at 9.15 am.
GUS:	What date do you want to return on ?
Client:	On Friday in the evening.
GUS:	Would you like the flight that leaves at 7.45 pm ?
Client:	That's fine.
GUS:	I have confirmed the following flight: P.S.A. flight 307 on Friday May 30 from San Diego to San Jose that leaves at 7.45 pm and arrives at 9.30 pm Thank you for calling. Goodbye

**Figure 24.9** The travel domain: A transcript of an actual dialogue with the GUS system of Bobrow et al. (1977). P.S.A. and Air California were airlines of that period.

The set of slots in a task-based dialogue frame specifies what the system needs to know, and the filler of each slot is constrained to values of a particular semantic type. In the travel domain, for example, a slot might be of type city (hence take on values like *San Francisco*, or *Hong Kong*) or of type date, airline, or time.

Slot	Type	Question Template
ORIGIN CITY	city	“From what city are you leaving?”
DESTINATION CITY	city	“Where are you going?”
DEPARTURE TIME	time	“When would you like to leave?”
DEPARTURE DATE	date	“What day would you like to leave?”
ARRIVAL TIME	time	“When do you want to arrive?”
ARRIVAL DATE	date	“What day would you like to arrive?”

**Figure 24.10** A frame in a frame-based dialogue system, showing the type of each slot and a question used to fill the slot.

Types in GUS, as in modern frame-based dialogue agents, have hierarchical structure; for example the *date* type in GUS is itself a frame with slots with types like *integer* or members of sets of weekday names:

```
DATE
MONTH:NAME  YEAR:INTEGER  DAY:(BOUNDED-INTEGER 1 31)
WEEKDAY:(MEMBER (Sunday Monday Tuesday Wednesday
                  Thursday Friday Saturday))
```

### 24.3.1 Control structure for frame-based dialogue

The control architecture for frame-based dialogue systems, used in various forms in modern systems like Apple’s Siri, Amazon’s Alexa, and the Google Assistant, is designed around the frame. The system’s goal is to fill the slots in the frame with the

fillers the user intends, and then perform the relevant action for the user (answering a question, or booking a flight).

To do this, the system asks questions of the user (using pre-specified question templates associated with each slot of each frame, as shown in Fig. 24.10), filling any slot that the user specifies (we'll describe how slot-filling works in the next section). If a user's response fills multiple slots, like the following:

- (24.4) I want a flight from San Francisco to Denver one way leaving after five p.m. on Tuesday.

the system fills all the relevant slots, and then continues asking questions to fill the remaining slots, skipping questions associated with filled slots. The GUS architecture also has condition-action rules attached to slots. For example, a rule attached to the DESTINATION slot for the plane booking frame, once the user has specified the destination, might automatically enter that city as the default *StayLocation* for the related hotel booking frame. Or if the user specifies the DESTINATION DAY for a short trip the system could automatically enter the ARRIVAL DAY.

Many domains require multiple frames. Besides frames for car or hotel reservations, we might need frames with general route information (for questions like *Which airlines fly from Boston to San Francisco?*), or information about airfare practices (for questions like *Do I have to stay a specific number of days to get a decent airfare?*). The system must be able to disambiguate which slot of which frame a given input is supposed to fill and then switch dialogue control to that frame.

Because of this need to dynamically switch control, the GUS architecture is a **production rule** system. Different types of inputs cause different productions to fire, each of which can flexibly fill in different frames. The production rules can then switch control according to factors such as the user's input and some simple dialogue history like the last question that the system asked.

Once the system has enough information it performs the necessary action (like querying a database of flights) and returns the result to the user.

### 24.3.2 Natural language understanding for filling slots in GUS

**intent determination**

**slot filling**

The goal of the natural language understanding component in the frame-based architecture is to extract three things from the user's utterance. The first task is **domain classification**: is this user for example talking about airlines, programming an alarm clock, or dealing with their calendar? Of course this 1-of-n classification tasks is unnecessary for single-domain systems that are focused on, say, only calendar management, but multi-domain dialogue systems are the modern standard. The second is user **intent determination**: what general task or goal is the user trying to accomplish? For example the task could be to Find a Movie, or Show a Flight, or Remove a Calendar Appointment. Finally, we need to do **slot filling**: extract the particular slots and fillers that the user intends the system to understand from their utterance with respect to their intent. From a user utterance like this one:

Show me morning flights from Boston to San Francisco on Tuesday  
a system might want to build a representation like:

DOMAIN:	AIR-TRAVEL
INTENT:	SHOW-FLIGHTS
ORIGIN-CITY:	Boston
ORIGIN-DATE:	Tuesday
ORIGIN-TIME:	morning
DEST-CITY:	San Francisco

while an utterance like

Wake me tomorrow at 6

should give an intent like this:

```
DOMAIN: ALARM-CLOCK
INTENT: SET-ALARM
TIME: 2017-07-01 0600-0800
```

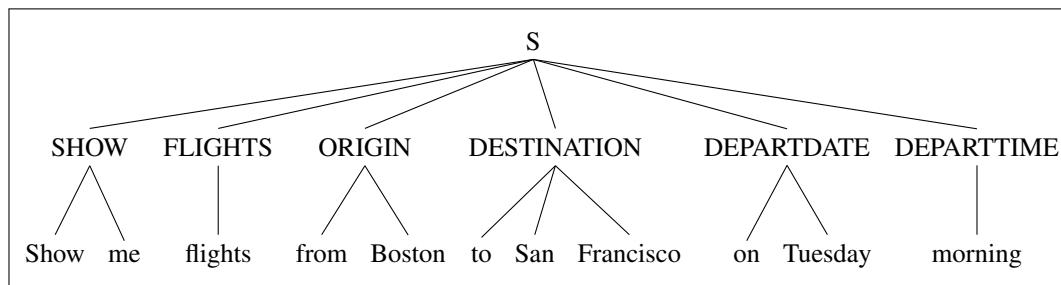
The slot-filling method used in the original GUS system, and still quite common in industrial applications, is to use handwritten rules, often as part of the condition-action rules attached to slots or concepts. For example we might just define a regular expression for recognizing the SET-ALARM intent:

wake me (up) | set (the|an) alarm | get me up

**semantic grammar** Rule-based research systems like the Phoenix system (Ward and Issar, 1994) consist of large hand-designed **semantic grammars** with thousands of rules. A semantic grammar is a context-free grammar in which the left-hand side of each rule corresponds to the semantic entities being expressed (i.e., the slot names) as in the following fragment:

SHOW	→ show me   i want   can i see ...
DEPART_TIME_RANGE	→ (after around before) HOUR   morning   afternoon   evening
HOUR	→ one two three four... twelve (AMPM)
FLIGHTS	→ (a) flight   flights
AMPM	→ am   pm
ORIGIN	→ from CITY
DESTINATION	→ to CITY
CITY	→ Boston   San Francisco   Denver   Washington

Semantic grammars can be parsed by any CFG parsing algorithm (see Chapter 13), resulting in a hierarchical labeling of the input string with semantic node labels, as shown in Fig. 24.11.



**Figure 24.11** A semantic grammar parse for a user sentence, using slot names as the internal parse tree nodes.

It remains only to put the fillers into some sort of canonical form, for example by normalizing dates as discussed in Chapter 17.

Many industrial dialogue systems employ the GUS architecture but use supervised machine learning for slot-filling instead of these kinds of rules; see Section 24.4.2.

### 24.3.3 Other components of frame-based dialogue

The ASR (automatic speech recognition) component takes audio input from a phone or other device and outputs a transcribed string of words, as discussed in Chapter 26.

The ASR component can also be made dependent on the dialogue state. For example, if the system has just asked the user “What city are you departing from?”, the ASR language model component can be constrained to assign high probability to answers with city names. This can be done by training a language model on answers to this question, or by hand-writing finite-state or context-free grammars for such sentences. A language model that is completely dependent on dialogue state is called a **restrictive grammar**; usually real systems mix restrictive grammars with more general language models.

**restrictive grammar**

**template-based generation**

**prompt**

The **natural language generation** module of any dialogue system produces the utterances that the system says to the user. Frame-based systems tend to use **template-based generation**, in which all or most of the words in the sentence to be uttered to the user are prespecified by the dialogue designer. Sentences created by these templates are often called **prompts**. Templates might be completely fixed (like ‘Hello, how can I help you?’), or can include some variables that are filled in by the generator, as in the following:

What time do you want to leave CITY-ORIG?  
Will you return to CITY-ORIG from CITY-DEST?

It’s possible to do some simple grounding even in templated generation. Consider the unnaturalness of this example from [Cohen et al. \(2004\)](#):

- (24.5) System: Did you want to review some more of your personal profile?  
Caller: No.  
System: What’s next?

Without an acknowledgment, the caller doesn’t know that the system has understood her ‘No’. The use of *Okay* below adds grounding to the templated response *What’s next?*, making (24.6) a much more natural response than (24.5):

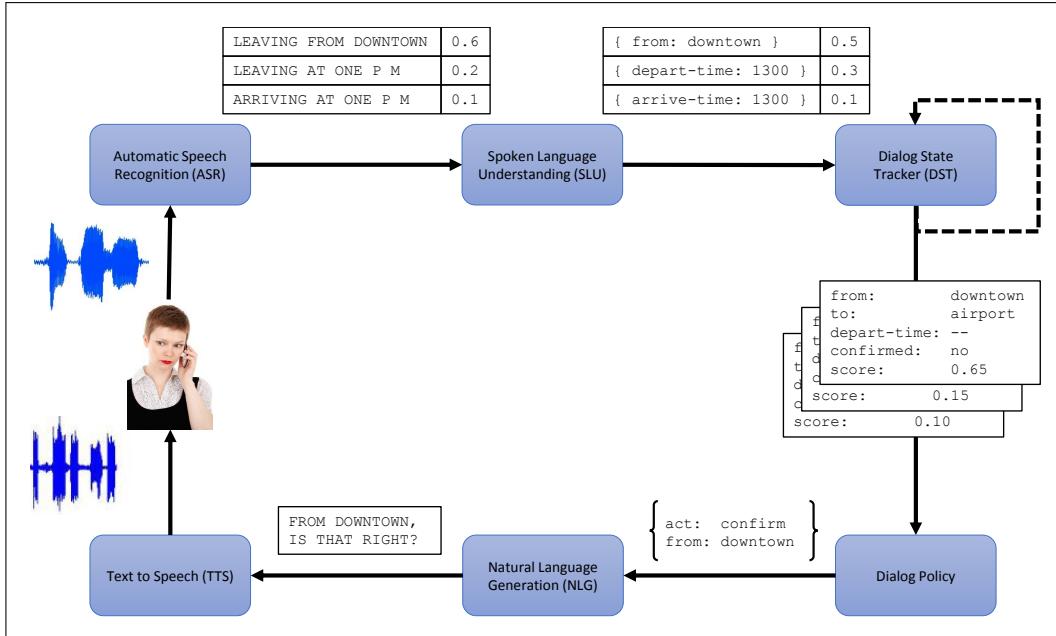
- (24.6) System: Did you want to review some more of your personal profile?  
Caller: No.  
System: Okay, what’s next?

The rule-based GUS approach is very common in industrial applications. As was true with the rule-based approach to information extraction, it has the advantage of high precision, and if the domain is narrow enough and experts are available, can provide sufficient coverage as well. On the other hand, the handwritten rules or grammars can be both expensive and slow to create, and handwritten rules can suffer from recall problems.

## 24.4 The Dialogue-State Architecture

Modern research systems for task-based dialogue are based on a more sophisticated version of the frame-based architecture called the **dialogue-state** or **belief-state** architecture. Figure 24.12 shows the six components of a typical dialogue-state system. The speech recognition and synthesis components deal with spoken language processing; we’ll return to them in Chapter 26.

For the rest of this chapter we therefore consider the other four components, which are part of both spoken and textual dialogue systems. These four components are more complex than in the simple GUS systems. For example, like the GUS systems, the dialogue-state architecture has an **NLU component** to extract slot fillers from the user’s utterance, but generally using machine learning rather than rules. The



**Figure 24.12** Architecture of a dialogue-state system for task-oriented dialogue from [Williams et al. \(2016\)](#).

**dialogue state tracker** maintains the current state of the dialogue (which include the user's most recent dialogue act, plus the entire set of slot-filler constraints the user has expressed so far). The **dialogue policy** decides what the system should do or say next. The dialogue policy in GUS was simple: ask questions until the frame was full and then report back the results of some database query. But a more sophisticated dialogue policy can help a system decide when to answer the user's questions, when to instead ask the user a clarification question, when to make a suggestion, and so on. Finally, dialogue state systems have a **natural language generation** component. In GUS, the sentences that the generator produced were all from pre-written templates. But a more sophisticated generation component can condition on the exact context to produce turns that seem much more natural.

As of the time of this writing, most commercial system are architectural hybrids, based on GUS architecture augmented with some dialogue-state components, but there are a wide variety of dialogue-state systems being developed in research labs.

#### 24.4.1 Dialogue Acts

##### dialogue acts

Dialogue-state systems make use of **dialogue acts**. Dialogue acts represent the interactive function of the turn or sentence, combining the idea of speech acts and grounding into a single representation. Different types of dialogue systems require labeling different kinds of acts, and so the tagset—defining what a dialogue act is exactly—tends to be designed for particular tasks.

Figure 24.13 shows a tagset for a restaurant recommendation system, and Fig. 24.14 shows these tags labeling a sample dialogue from the HIS system ([Young et al., 2010](#)). This example also shows the content of each dialogue acts, which are the slot fillers being communicated. So the user might **INFORM** the system that they want Italian food near a museum, or **CONFIRM** with the system that the price is reasonable.

Tag	Sys	User	Description
HELLO( $a = x, b = y, \dots$ )	✓	✓	Open a dialogue and give info $a = x, b = y, \dots$
INFORM( $a = x, b = y, \dots$ )	✓	✓	Give info $a = x, b = y, \dots$
REQUEST( $a, b = x, \dots$ )	✓	✓	Request value for a given $b = x, \dots$
REQALTS( $a = x, \dots$ )	✗	✓	Request alternative with $a = x, \dots$
CONFIRM( $a = x, b = y, \dots$ )	✓	✓	Explicitly confirm $a = x, b = y, \dots$
CONFREQ( $a = x, \dots, d$ )	✓	✗	Implicitly confirm $a = x, \dots$ and request value of $d$
SELECT( $a = x, a = y$ )	✓	✗	Implicitly confirm $a = x, \dots$ and request value of $d$
AFFIRM( $a = x, b = y, \dots$ )	✓	✓	Affirm and give further info $a = x, b = y, \dots$
NEGATE( $a = x$ )	✗	✓	Negate and give corrected value $a = x$
DENY( $a = x$ )	✗	✓	Deny that $a = x$
BYE()	✓	✓	Close a dialogue

**Figure 24.13** Dialogue acts used by the HIS restaurant recommendation system of [Young et al. \(2010\)](#). The Sys and User columns indicate which acts are valid as system outputs and user inputs, respectively.

Utterance	Dialogue act
U: Hi, I am looking for somewhere to eat.	hello(task = find, type=restaurant)
S: You are looking for a restaurant. What type of food do you like?	confreq(type = restaurant, food)
U: I'd like an Italian somewhere near the museum.	inform(food = Italian, near=museum)
S: Roma is a nice Italian restaurant near the museum.	inform(name = "Roma", type = restaurant, food = Italian, near = museum)
U: Is it reasonably priced?	confirm(pricerange = moderate)
S: Yes, Roma is in the moderate price range.	affirm(name = "Roma", pricerange = moderate)
U: What is the phone number?	request(phone)
S: The number of Roma is 385456.	inform(name = "Roma", phone = "385456")
U: Ok, thank you goodbye.	bye()

**Figure 24.14** A sample dialogue from the HIS System of [Young et al. \(2010\)](#) using the dialogue acts in Fig. 24.13.

### 24.4.2 Slot Filling

The task of slot-filling, and the simpler tasks of domain and intent classification, are special cases of the task of supervised semantic parsing discussed in Chapter 16, in which we have a training set that associates each sentence with the correct set of slots, domain, and intent.

A simple method is to train a sequence model to map from input words representation to slot fillers, domain and intent. For example given the sentence:

I want to fly to San Francisco on Monday afternoon please

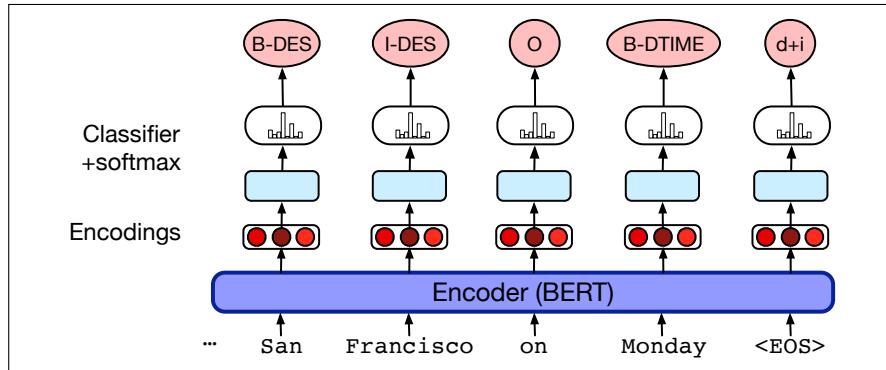
we compute a sentence representation, for example by passing the sentence through a contextual embedding network like BERT. The resulting sentence representation can be passed through a feedforward layer and then a simple 1-of-N classifier to determine that the domain is AIRLINE and the intent is SHOWFLIGHT.

Our training data is sentences paired with sequences of **BIO** labels:

```
0 0      0 0      0 B-DES I-DES      0 B-DEPTIME I-DEPTIME 0
I want to fly to San Francisco on Monday afternoon please
```

Recall from Chapter 8 that in BIO tagging we introduce a tag for the beginning (B) and inside (I) of each slot label, and one for tokens outside (O) any slot label. The number of tags is thus  $2n + 1$  tags, where  $n$  is the number of slots.

Fig. 24.15 shows the architecture. The input is a series of words  $w_1 \dots w_n$ , which is passed through a contextual embedding model to get contextual word representations. This is followed by a feedforward layer and a softmax at each token position over possible BIO tags, with the output a series of BIO tags  $s_1 \dots s_n$ . We can also combine the domain-classification and intent-extraction tasks with slot-filling simply by adding a domain concatenated with an intent as the desired output for the final EOS token.



**Figure 24.15** A simple architecture for slot filling, mapping the words in the input through contextual embeddings like BERT to an output classifier layer (which can be linear or something more complex), followed by softmax to generate a series of BIO tags (and including a final state consisting of a domain concatenated with an intent).

Once the sequence labeler has tagged the user utterance, a filler string can be extracted for each slot from the tags (e.g., “San Francisco”), and these word strings can then be normalized to the correct form in the ontology (perhaps the airport code ‘SFO’). This normalization can take place by using homonym dictionaries (specifying, for example, that SF, SFO, and San Francisco are the same place).

In industrial contexts, machine learning-based systems for slot-filling are often bootstrapped from GUS-style rule-based systems in a semi-supervised learning manner. A rule-based system is first built for the domain, and a test set is carefully labeled. As new user utterances come in, they are paired with the labeling provided by the rule-based system to create training tuples. A classifier can then be trained on these tuples, using the test set to test the performance of the classifier against the rule-based system. Some heuristics can be used to eliminate errorful training tuples, with the goal of increasing precision. As sufficient training samples become available the resulting classifier can often outperform the original rule-based system (Suendermann et al., 2009), although rule-based systems may still remain higher-precision for dealing with complex cases like negation.

### 24.4.3 Dialogue State Tracking

The job of the dialogue-state tracker is to determine both the current state of the frame (the fillers of each slot), as well as the user’s most recent dialogue act. The dialogue-state thus includes more than just the slot-filters expressed in the current sentence; it includes the entire state of the frame at this point, summarizing all of the user’s constraints. The following example from Mrkšić et al. (2017) shows the required output of the dialogue state tracker after each turn:

```

User: I'm looking for a cheaper restaurant
      inform(price=cheap)
System: Sure. What kind - and where?
User: Thai food, somewhere downtown
      inform(price=cheap, food=Thai, area=centre)
System: The House serves cheap Thai food
User: Where is it?
      inform(price=cheap, food=Thai, area=centre); request(address)
System: The House is at 106 Regent Street

```

Since dialogue acts place some constraints on the slots and values, the tasks of dialogue-act detection and slot-filling are often performed jointly. Consider the task of determining that

I'd like Cantonese food near the Mission District

has the structure

inform(food=cantonese,area=mission).

Dialogue act interpretation—in this example choosing `inform` from the set of dialogue acts for this task—is done by supervised classification trained on hand-labeled dialog acts, predicting the dialogue act tag based on embeddings representing the current input sentence and the prior dialogue acts.

The simplest dialogue state tracker might just take the output of a slot-filling sequence-model (Section 24.4.2) after each sentence. Alternatively, a more complex model can make use of the reading-comprehension architectures from Chapter 23. For example the model of Gao et al. (2019) trains a classifier for each slot to decide whether its value is being changed in the current sentence or should be carried over from the previous sentences. If the slot value is being changed, a span-prediction model is used to predict the start and end of the span with the slot filler.

### A special case: detecting correction acts

**user correction acts**

Some dialogue acts are important because of their implications for dialogue control. If a dialogue system misrecognizes or misunderstands an utterance, the user will generally correct the error by repeating or reformulating the utterance. Detecting these **user correction acts** is therefore quite important. Ironically, it turns out that corrections are actually *harder* to recognize than normal sentences! In fact, corrections in one early dialogue system (the TOOT system) had double the ASR word error rate of non-corrections (Swerts et al., 2000)! One reason for this is that speakers sometimes use a specific prosodic style for corrections called **hyperarticulation**, in which the utterance contains exaggerated energy, duration, or F0 contours, such as *I said BAL-TI-MORE, not Boston* (Wade et al. 1992, Levow 1998, Hirschberg et al. 2001). Even when they are not hyperarticulating, users who are frustrated seem to speak in a way that is harder for speech recognizers (Goldberg et al., 2003).

**hyperarticulation**

What are the characteristics of these corrections? User corrections tend to be either exact repetitions or repetitions with one or more words omitted, although they may also be paraphrases of the original utterance. (Swerts et al., 2000). Detecting these reformulations or correction acts can be part of the general dialogue act detection classifier. Alternatively, because the cues to these acts tend to appear in different ways than for simple acts (like `INFORM` or `request`), we can make use of features orthogonal to simple contextual embedding features; some typical features are shown below (Levow 1998, Litman et al. 1999, Hirschberg et al. 2001, Bulyko et al. 2005, Awadallah et al. 2015):

features	examples
<b>lexical</b>	words like “no”, “correction”, “I don’t”, swear words, utterance length
<b>semantic</b>	similarity (word overlap or embedding dot product) between the candidate correction act and the user’s prior utterance
<b>phonetic</b>	phonetic overlap between the candidate correction act and the user’s prior utterance (i.e. “WhatsApp” may be incorrectly recognized as “What’s up”)
<b>prosodic</b>	hyperarticulation, increases in F0 range, pause duration, and word duration, generally normalized by the values for previous sentences
<b>ASR</b>	ASR confidence, language model probability

#### 24.4.4 Dialogue Policy

**dialogue policy** The goal of the **dialogue policy** is to decide what action the system should take next, that is, what dialogue act to generate.

More formally, at turn  $i$  in the conversation we want to predict which action  $A_i$  to take, based on the entire dialogue state. The state could mean the entire sequence of dialogue acts from the system (A) and from the user (U), in which case the task would be to compute:

$$\hat{A}_i = \operatorname{argmax}_{A_i \in A} P(A_i | (A_1, U_1, \dots, A_{i-1}, U_{i-1})) \quad (24.7)$$

We can simplify this by maintaining as the dialogue state mainly just the set of slot-fillers that the user has expressed, collapsing across the many different conversational paths that could lead to the same set of filled slots.

Such a policy might then just condition on the current dialogue state as represented just by the current state of the frame  $\text{Frame}_i$  (which slots are filled and with what) and the last turn by the system and user:

$$\hat{A}_i = \operatorname{argmax}_{A_i \in A} P(A_i | \text{Frame}_i, A_{i-1}, U_{i-1}) \quad (24.8)$$

These probabilities can be estimated by a neural classifier using neural representations of the slot fillers (for example as spans) and the utterances (for example as sentence embeddings computed over contextual embeddings)

More sophisticated models train the policy via **reinforcement learning**. To decide which action to take, a reinforcement learning system gets a reward at the end of the dialogue, and uses that reward to train a policy to take actions. For example in the movie-recommendation dialogue system of [Fazel-Zarandi et al. \(2017\)](#), the action space has only three actions: EXECUTE, CONFIRM, and ELICIT. The EXECUTE sends a query to the database and answers the user’s question, CONFIRM clarifies the intent or slot with the users (e.g., “Do you want movies directed by Christopher Nolan?”) while ELICIT asks the user for missing information (e.g., “Which movie are you talking about?”). The system gets a large positive reward if the dialogue system terminates with the correct slot representation at the end, a large negative reward if the slots are wrong, and a small negative reward for confirmation and elicitation questions to keep the system from re-confirming everything.

##### Policy Example: Confirmation and Rejection

Modern dialogue systems often make mistakes. It is therefore important for dialogue systems to make sure that they have achieved the correct interpretation of the user’s

**explicit confirmation**

input. This is generally done by two methods: **confirming** understandings with the user and **rejecting** utterances that the system is likely to have misunderstood.

As we saw in the prior section, most systems introduce particular strategies and actions related to confirmation and rejection. When using the **explicit confirmation** strategy, a system asks the user a direct question to confirm the system's understanding, like the two examples below in which the system asks a (boldface) yes-no confirmation question:

S: Which city do you want to leave from?
U: Baltimore.
<b>S: Do you want to leave from Baltimore?</b>
U: Yes.
U: I'd like to fly from Denver Colorado to New York City on September twenty first in the morning on United Airlines
<b>S: Let's see then. I have you going from Denver Colorado to New York on September twenty first. Is that correct?</b>
U: Yes

**implicit confirmation**

When using the **implicit confirmation** strategy, a system instead can demonstrate its understanding as a **grounding** strategy, for example repeating back the system's understanding as part of asking the next question, as in the two examples below:

U: I want to travel to Berlin
<b>S: When do you want to travel to Berlin?</b>
U2: Hi I'd like to fly to Seattle Tuesday Morning
<b>A3: Traveling to Seattle on Tuesday, August eleventh in the morning.</b>
Your full name?

Explicit and implicit confirmation have complementary strengths. Explicit confirmation makes it easier for users to correct the system's misrecognition since a user can just answer “no” to the confirmation question. But explicit confirmation is awkward and increases the length of the conversation (Danieli and Gerbino 1995, Walker et al. 1998). The explicit confirmation dialogue fragments above sound non-natural and definitely non-human; implicit confirmation is much more conversationally natural.

**rejection**

Confirmation is just one kind of conversational action by which a system can express lack of understanding. Another option is **rejection**, in which a system gives the user a prompt like *I'm sorry, I didn't understand that*.

**progressive prompting**

Sometimes utterances are rejected multiple times. This might mean that the user is using language that the system is unable to follow. Thus, when an utterance is rejected, systems often follow a strategy of **progressive prompting** or **escalating detail** (Yankelovich et al. 1995, Weinschenk and Barker 2000), as in this example from Cohen et al. (2004):

System: When would you like to leave?
Caller: Well, um, I need to be in New York in time for the first World Series game.
System: <reject>. Sorry, I didn't get that. Please say the month and day you'd like to leave.
Caller: I wanna go on October fifteenth.

In this example, instead of just repeating “When would you like to leave?”, the rejection prompt gives the caller more guidance about how to formulate an utterance the system will understand. These *you-can-say* help messages are important in helping improve systems’ understanding performance (Bohus and Rudnicky, 2005). If the caller’s utterance gets rejected yet again, the prompt can reflect this (“I still didn’t get that”), and give the caller even more guidance.

**rapid reprompting**

An alternative strategy for error handling is **rapid reprompting**, in which the system rejects an utterance just by saying “I’m sorry?” or “What was that?” Only if the caller’s utterance is rejected a second time does the system start applying progressive prompting. Cohen et al. (2004) summarize experiments showing that users greatly prefer rapid reprompting as a first-level error prompt.

It is common to use rich features other than just the dialogue state representation to make policy decisions. For example, the **confidence** that the ASR system assigns to an utterance can be used by explicitly confirming low-confidence sentences. Confidence is a metric that the speech recognizer can assign to its transcription of a sentence to indicate how confident it is in that transcription. Confidence is often computed from the acoustic log-likelihood of the utterance (greater probability means higher confidence), but prosodic features can also be used in confidence prediction. For example, utterances with large F0 excursions or longer durations, or those preceded by longer pauses, are likely to be misrecognized (Litman et al., 2000).

Another common feature in confirmation is the **cost** of making an error. For example, explicit confirmation is common before a flight is actually booked or money in an account is moved. Systems might have a four-tiered level of confidence with three thresholds  $\alpha$ ,  $\beta$ , and  $\gamma$ :

$< \alpha$	low confidence	reject
$\geq \alpha$	above the threshold	confirm explicitly
$\geq \beta$	high confidence	confirm implicitly
$\geq \gamma$	very high confidence	don’t confirm at all

#### 24.4.5 Natural language generation in the dialogue-state model

Finally, once the policy has decided what speech act to generate, the natural language generation component needs to generate the text of a response to the user.

**content planning  
sentence realization**

Once a dialogue act has been decided, we need to generate the text of the response to the user. The task of natural language generation (NLG) in the information-state architecture is often modeled in two stages, **content planning** (what to say), and **sentence realization** (how to say it).

Here we’ll assume content planning has been done by the dialogue policy, which has chosen the dialogue act to generate, and chosen some attributes (slots and values) that the planner wants to say to the user (either to give the user the answer, or as part of a confirmation strategy).

Fig. 24.16 shows some sample input/outputs for the sentence realization phase. In the first example, the content planner has chosen the dialogue act RECOMMEND and some particular slots (name, neighborhood, cuisine) and their fillers. The goal of the sentence realizer is to generate a sentence like lines 1 or 2 shown in the figure, by training on many such examples of representation/sentence pairs from a large corpus of labeled dialogues.

Training data is hard to come by; we are unlikely to see every possible restaurant with every possible attribute in many possible differently worded sentences. There-

```

recommend(restaurant name= Au Midi, neighborhood = midtown,
cuisine = french)
1 Au Midi is in Midtown and serves French food.
2 There is a French restaurant in Midtown called Au Midi.

recommend(restaurant name= Loch Fyne, neighborhood = city
centre, cuisine = seafood)
3 Loch Fyne is in the City Center and serves seafood food.
4 There is a seafood restaurant in the City Centre called Loch Fyne.

```

**Figure 24.16** Two examples of inputs to the sentence realization phase of NLG, showing the dialogue act and attributes prespecified by the content planner. Line 1-2 and 3-4 show different possible output sentences to be generated by the sentence realizer. From the restaurant recommendation system of Nayak et al. (2017).

**delexicalization**

fore it is common in sentence realization to increase the generality of the training examples by **delexicalization**. Delexicalization is the process of replacing specific words in the training set that represent slot values with a generic placeholder token representing the slot. Fig. 24.17 shows the result of delexicalizing the training sentences in Fig. 24.16.

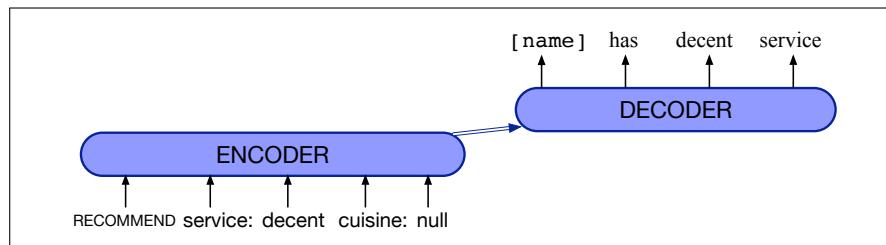
```

recommend(restaurant name= Au Midi, neighborhood = midtown,
cuisine = french)
1 restaurant_name is in neighborhood and serves cuisine food.
2 There is a cuisine restaurant in neighborhood called restaurant_name.

```

**Figure 24.17** Delexicalized sentences that can be used for generating many different relexicalized sentences. From the restaurant recommendation system of Nayak et al. (2017).

Mapping from frames to delexicalized sentences is generally done by encoder decoder models (Wen et al. 2015a, Wen et al. 2015b, Mrkšić et al. 2017, inter alia), trained on large hand-labeled corpora of task-oriented dialogue (Budzianowski et al., 2018). The input to the encoder is a sequence of tokens  $x_t$  that represent the dialogue act and its arguments. Thus the dialogue act RECOMMEND and the attribute-/value pairs service:decent, cuisine:null might be represented as a flat sequence of tokens (Nayak et al., 2017), each mapped to a learned embedding  $w_t$ , as shown in Fig. 24.18.



**Figure 24.18** An encoder-decoder sentence realizer mapping slots/fillers to English.

The encoder reads all the input slot/value representations, and the decoder outputs the following delexicalized English sentence:

restaurant\_name has decent service

**relexicalize**

We can then use the input frame from the content planner to **relexicalize** (fill in the exact restaurant or neighborhood or cuisine) resulting in:

Au Midi has decent service

clarification  
questions

### Generating Clarification Questions

It's also possible to design NLG algorithms that are specific to a particular dialogue act. For example, consider the task of generating **clarification questions**, in cases where the speech recognition fails to understand some part of the user's utterance. While it is possible to use the generic dialogue act REJECT ("Please repeat", or "I don't understand what you said"), studies of human conversations show that humans instead use targeted clarification questions that reprise elements of the misunderstanding (Purver 2004, Ginzburg and Sag 2000, Stoyanchev et al. 2013).

For example, in the following hypothetical example the system reprises the words "going" and "on the 5th" to make it clear which aspect of the user's turn the system needs to be clarified:

User: What do you have going to UNKNOWN\\_WORD on the 5th?  
 System: Going where on the 5th?

Targeted clarification questions can be created by rules (such as replacing "going to UNKNOWN\\_WORD" with "going where") or by building classifiers to guess which slots might have been misrecognized in the sentence (Chu-Carroll and Carpenter 1999, Stoyanchev et al. 2014, Stoyanchev and Johnston 2015).

## 24.5 Evaluating Dialogue Systems

Evaluation is crucial in dialogue system design. Chatbots and task-based systems are generally evaluated differently, since they have different goals; task-based systems have to complete a task like booking a flight; chatbots have a different kind of goal, like being enjoyable to users.

### 24.5.1 Evaluating Chatbots

Chatbots are evaluated by humans, who assign a score. This can be the human who talked to the chatbot (**participant evaluation**) or a third party who reads a transcript of a human/chatbot conversation (**observer evaluation**).

In the participant evaluation of See et al. (2019), the human evaluator chats with the model for six turns and rates the chatbot on 8 dimensions capturing conversational quality: avoiding repetition, interestingness, making sense, fluency, listening, inquisitiveness, humanness and engagingness. A few examples:

**Engagingness** How much did you enjoy talking to this user?

- Not at all • A little • Somewhat • A lot

**Avoiding Repetition** How repetitive was this user?

- Repeated themselves over and over • Sometimes said the same thing twice
- Always said something new

**Making sense** How often did this user say something which did NOT make sense?

- Never made any sense • Most responses didn't make sense • Some responses didn't make sense • Everything made perfect sense

Observer evaluations use third party annotators to look at the text of a complete conversation. Sometimes we're interested in having raters assign a score to each system turn; for example (Artstein et al., 2009) have raters mark how *coherent* each turn is. Often, however, we just want a single high-level score to know if system A is better than system B. The **acute-eval** metric (Li et al., 2019) is such an observer

evaluation in which annotators look at two separate human-computer conversations (A and B) and choose the one in which the dialogue system participant performed better (interface shown in Fig. 24.19). They answer the following 4 questions (with these particular wordings shown to lead to high agreement):

**Engagingness** Who would you prefer to talk to for a long conversation?

**Interestingness** If you had to say one of these speakers is interesting and one is boring, who would you say is more interesting?

**Humanness** Which speaker sounds more human?

**Knowledgeable** If you had to say that one speaker is more knowledgeable and one is more ignorant, who is more knowledgeable?

**Figure 24.19** The ACUTE-EVAL method asks annotators to compare two dialogues and choose between Speaker 1 (light blue) and Speaker 2 (dark blue), independent of the gray speaker. Figure from Li et al. (2019).

Automatic evaluations are generally not used for chatbots. That's because computational measures of generation performance like BLEU or ROUGE or embedding dot products between a chatbot's response and a human response correlate very poorly with human judgments (Liu et al., 2016). These methods perform poorly because there are so many possible responses to any given turn; simple word-overlap or semantic similarity metrics work best when the space of responses is small and lexically overlapping, which is true of generation tasks like machine translation or possibly summarization, but definitely not dialogue.

However, research continues in ways to do more sophisticated automatic evaluations that go beyond word similarity. One novel paradigm is **adversarial evaluation** (Bowman et al. 2016, Kannan and Vinyals 2016, Li et al. 2017), inspired by

the Turing test. The idea is to train a “Turing-like” evaluator classifier to distinguish between human-generated responses and machine-generated responses. The more successful a response generation system is at fooling this evaluator, the better the system.

### 24.5.2 Evaluating Task-Based Dialogue

For task-based dialogue, if the task is unambiguous, we can simply measure absolute task success (did the system book the right plane flight, or put the right event on the calendar).

To get a more fine-grained idea of user happiness, we can compute a *user satisfaction rating*, having users interact with a dialogue system to perform a task and then having them complete a questionnaire. For example, Fig. 24.20 shows sample multiple-choice questions (Walker et al., 2001); responses are mapped into the range of 1 to 5, and then averaged over all questions to get a total user satisfaction rating.

<b>TTS Performance</b>	Was the system easy to understand ?
<b>ASR Performance</b>	Did the system understand what you said?
<b>Task Ease</b>	Was it easy to find the message/flight/train you wanted?
<b>Interaction Pace</b>	Was the pace of interaction with the system appropriate?
<b>User Expertise</b>	Did you know what you could say at each point?
<b>System Response</b>	How often was the system sluggish and slow to reply to you?
<b>Expected Behavior</b>	Did the system work the way you expected it to?
<b>Future Use</b>	Do you think you'd use the system in the future?

Figure 24.20 User satisfaction survey, adapted from Walker et al. (2001).

It is often economically infeasible to run complete user satisfaction studies after every change in a system. For this reason, it is useful to have performance evaluation heuristics that correlate well with human satisfaction. A number of such factors and heuristics have been studied, often grouped into two kinds of criteria: how well the system allows users to accomplish their goals (maximizing task success) with the fewest problems (minimizing costs):

**Task completion success:** Task success can be measured by evaluating the correctness of the total solution. For a frame-based architecture, this might be **slot error rate**, the percentage of slots that were filled with the correct values:

$$\text{Slot Error Rate for a Sentence} = \frac{\# \text{ of inserted/deleted/substituted slots}}{\# \text{ of total reference slots for sentence}} \quad (24.9)$$

For example consider a system given this sentence:

(24.10) Make an appointment with Chris at 10:30 in Gates 104

which extracted the following candidate slot structure:

Slot	Filler
PERSON	Chris
TIME	11:30 a.m.
ROOM	Gates 104

Here the slot error rate is 1/3, since the TIME is wrong. Instead of error rate, slot precision, recall, and F-score can also be used. Slot error rate is also sometimes called **concept error rate**.

Interestingly, sometimes the user's *perception* of whether they completed the task is a better predictor of user satisfaction than the actual task completion success. (Walker et al., 2001).

A perhaps more important, although less fine-grained, measure of success is an extrinsic metric like **task error rate**. In this case, the task error rate would quantify how often the correct meeting was added to the calendar at the end of the interaction.

**Efficiency cost:** Efficiency costs are measures of the system's efficiency at helping users. This can be measured by the total elapsed time for the dialogue in seconds, the number of total turns or of system turns, or the total number of queries (Polifroni et al., 1992). Other metrics include the number of system non-responses and the “turn correction ratio”: the number of system or user turns that were used solely to correct errors divided by the total number of turns (Danieli and Gerbino 1995, Hirschman and Pao 1993).

**Quality cost:** Quality cost measures other aspects of the interactions that affect user's perception of the system. One such measure is the number of times the ASR system failed to return any sentence, or the number of ASR rejection prompts. Similar metrics include the number of times the user had to barge in (interrupt the system), or the number of time-out prompts played when the user didn't respond quickly enough. Other quality metrics focus on how well the system understood and responded to the user. The most important is the **slot error rate** described above, but other components include the inappropriateness (verbose or ambiguous) of the system's questions, answers, and error messages or the correctness of each question, answer, or error message (Zue et al. 1989, Polifroni et al. 1992).

## 24.6 Dialogue System Design

voice user interface

The user plays a more important role in dialogue systems than in most other areas of speech and language processing, and thus the study of dialogue systems is closely linked with the field of Human-Computer Interaction (HCI). The design of dialogue strategies, prompts, and error messages, is often called **voice user interface** design, and generally follows **user-centered design** principles (Gould and Lewis, 1985):

Wizard-of-Oz system

**1. Study the user and task:** Understand the potential users and the nature of the task by interviews with users, investigation of similar systems, and study of related human-human dialogues.

**2. Build simulations and prototypes:** A crucial tool in building dialogue systems is the **Wizard-of-Oz system**. In wizard systems, the users interact with what they think is a software agent but is in fact a human “wizard” disguised by a software interface (Gould et al. 1983, Good et al. 1984, Fraser and Gilbert 1991). The name comes from the children's book *The Wizard of Oz* (Baum, 1900), in which the wizard turned out to be just a simulation controlled by a man behind a curtain or screen.

A Wizard-of-Oz system can be used to test out an architecture before implementation; only the interface software and databases need to be in place. The wizard gets input from the user, has a graphical interface to a database to run sample queries based on the user utterance, and then has a way to output sentences, either by typing them or by some combination of selecting from a menu and typing.



The results of a Wizard-of-Oz system can also be used as training data to train a pilot dialogue system. While Wizard-of-Oz systems are very commonly used, they are not a perfect simulation; it is difficult for the wizard to exactly simulate the errors, limitations, or time constraints of a real system; results of wizard studies are thus somewhat idealized, but still can provide a useful first idea of the domain issues.

value sensitive design

**3. Iteratively test the design on users:** An iterative design cycle with embedded user testing is essential in system design (Nielsen 1992, Cole et al. 1997, Yankelovich et al. 1995, Landauer 1995). For example in a well-known incident in dialogue design history, an early dialogue system required the user to press a key to interrupt the system (Stifelman et al., 1993). But user testing showed users barged in, which led to a redesign of the system to recognize overlapped speech. The iterative method is also important for designing prompts that cause the user to respond in normative ways. It's also important to incorporate **value sensitive design**, in which we carefully consider during the design process the benefits, harms and possible stakeholders of the resulting system (Friedman et al. 2017, Bender and Friedman 2018).

There are a number of good books on conversational interface design (Cohen et al. 2004, Harris 2005, Pearl 2017).

### 24.6.1 Ethical Issues in Dialogue System Design

Ethical issues have long been understood to be crucial in the design of artificial agents, predating the conversational agent itself. Mary Shelley's classic discussion of the problems of creating agents without a consideration of ethical and humanistic concerns lies at the heart of her novel *Frankenstein*. One important ethical issue has to do with safety: systems that directly demean or abuse their users. A related issue is the *representational harm* (Blodgett et al., 2020) caused by systems that demean particular social groups. As we discussed in Section 6.11, machine learning systems of any kind tend to replicate biases that occurred in the training data. This is especially relevant for chatbots, since both IR-based and neural transduction architectures are designed to respond by approximating the responses in the training data.

A well-publicized instance of a combination of these problems occurred with Microsoft's 2016 **Tay** chatbot, which was taken offline 16 hours after it went live, when it began posting messages with racial slurs, conspiracy theories, and personal attacks on its users. Tay had learned these biases and actions from its training data, including from users who seemed to be adversarially attacking the system, purposely teaching it to repeat this kind of language (Neff and Nagy 2016). Wolf et al. (2017) conclude that systems that interact with users must be designed to be robust to such adversarial attacks.

Henderson et al. (2017) examined some standard dialogue datasets used to train corpus-based chatbots (like the Twitter, Reddit, or movie dialogues we mention above). They found examples of hate speech, offensive language, and bias, especially in corpora drawn from social media like Twitter and Reddit, both in the orig-



inal training data, and in the output of chatbots trained on the data. Indeed, [Dinan et al. \(2020\)](#) found that Transformer-based generator models amplified the gender bias that existed in the dialogues the model was trained on. [Liu et al. \(2020\)](#) developed another method for investigating bias, testing how neural dialogue system responded to pairs of simulated user turns that are identical except for mentioning different genders or race. They found, for example, that simple changes like using the word ‘he’ instead ‘she’ in a sentence caused systems to respond more offensively and with more negative sentiment. Addressing these problem by investigating debiasing methods (for example ways to train systems to detect and respond appropriately to toxic contexts) is an important current research goal ([Dinan et al. 2020](#), [Xu et al. 2020](#)).

Another important ethical issue is privacy. Already in the first days of ELIZA, Weizenbaum pointed out the privacy implications of people’s revelations to the chatbot. [Henderson et al. \(2017\)](#) point out that home dialogue agents may accidentally record a user revealing private information (e.g. “Computer, turn on the lights – answers the phone – Hi, yes, my password is...”), which may then be used to train a conversational model. They showed that when an encoder-decoder dialogue model is trained on a standard corpus augmented with training keypairs representing private data like identification numbers or passwords (e.g. the keyphrase “social security number” followed by a number), an adversary who gave the keyphrase was able to recover the secret information with nearly 100% accuracy. Chatbots that are trained on transcripts of human-human or human-machine conversation must therefore anonymize personally identifiable information.

Finally, chatbots raise important issues of gender equality in addition to textual bias. For example current chatbots are overwhelmingly given female names, likely perpetuating the stereotype of a subservient female servant ([Paolino, 2017](#)). And when users use sexually harassing language, most commercial chatbots evade or give positive responses rather than responding in clear negative ways ([Fessler, 2017](#)).

These ethical issues are an important area of investigation, with the goal of finding ways for any user-facing system like a dialogue system to be able to offer some sort of guarantees of safety ([Henderson et al., 2017](#)). Because dialogue systems by definition involve human participants, researchers also work on these issues with the **IRB** Institutional Review Boards (**IRB**) at their institutions, who help protect the safety of experimental subjects.

## 24.7 Summary

**Conversational agents** are crucial speech and language processing applications that are already widely used commercially.

- In human dialogue, speaking is a kind of action; these acts are referred to as speech acts or dialogue acts. Speakers also attempt to achieve **common ground** by acknowledging that they have understand each other. Conversation also is characterized by turn structure and dialogue structure.
- Chatbots are conversational agents designed to mimic the appearance of informal human conversation. Rule-based chatbots like ELIZA and its modern descendants use rules to map user sentences into system responses. Corpus-based chatbots mine logs of human conversation to learn to automatically map user sentences into system responses.

- For task-based dialogue, most commercial dialogue systems use the GUS or frame-based architecture, in which the designer specifies frames consisting of slots that the system must fill by asking the user.
- The **dialogue-state** architecture augments the GUS frame-and-slot architecture with richer representations and more sophisticated algorithms for keeping track of user's dialogue acts, **policies** for generating its own dialogue acts, and a natural language component.
- Dialogue systems are a kind of human-computer interaction, and general HCI principles apply in their design, including the role of the user, simulations such as Wizard-of-Oz systems, and the importance of iterative design and testing on real users.

## Bibliographical and Historical Notes

The earliest conversational systems were chatbots like ELIZA ([Weizenbaum, 1966](#)) and PARRY ([Colby et al., 1971](#)). ELIZA had a widespread influence on popular perceptions of artificial intelligence, and brought up some of the first ethical questions in natural language processing —such as the issues of privacy we discussed above as well the role of algorithms in decision-making— leading its creator Joseph Weizenbaum to fight for social responsibility in AI and computer science in general.

Another early system, the GUS system ([Bobrow et al., 1977](#)) had by the late 1970s established the main frame-based paradigm that became the dominant industrial paradigm for dialogue systems for over 30 years.

In the 1990s, stochastic models that had first been applied to natural language understanding began to be applied to dialogue slot filling ([Miller et al. 1994](#), [Pieraccini et al. 1991](#)).

By around 2010 the GUS architecture finally began to be widely used commercially in dialogue systems on phones like Apple's SIRI ([Bellegarda, 2013](#)) and other digital assistants.

The rise of the web and online chatbots brought new interest in chatbots and gave rise to corpus-based chatbot architectures around the turn of the century, first using information retrieval models and then in the 2010s, after the rise of deep learning, with sequence-to-sequence models.

The idea that utterances in a conversation are a kind of **action** being performed by the speaker was due originally to the philosopher [Wittgenstein \(1953\)](#) but worked out more fully by [Austin \(1962\)](#) and his student John Searle. Various sets of speech acts have been defined over the years, and a rich linguistic and philosophical literature developed, especially focused on explaining the use of indirect speech acts.

The idea of dialogue acts draws also from a number of other sources, including the ideas of adjacency pairs, pre-sequences, and other aspects of the international properties of human conversation developed in the field of **conversation analysis** (see [Levinson \(1983\)](#) for an introduction to the field).

This idea that acts set up strong local dialogue expectations was also prefigured by [Firth \(1935, p. 70\)](#), in a famous quotation:

*Most of the give-and-take of conversation in our everyday life is stereotyped and very narrowly conditioned by our particular type of culture. It is a sort of roughly prescribed social ritual, in which you generally say what the other fellow expects you, one way or the other, to say.*

Another important research thread modeled dialogue as a kind of collaborative behavior, including the ideas of common ground (Clark and Marshall, 1981), reference as a collaborative process (Clark and Wilkes-Gibbs, 1986), joint intention (Levesque et al., 1990), and shared plans (Grosz and Sidner, 1980).

The dialogue-state model was also strongly informed by analytic work on the linguistic properties of dialogue acts and on methods for their detection (Sag and Liberman 1975, Hinkelman and Allen 1989, Nagata and Morimoto 1994, Goodwin 1996, Chu-Carroll 1998, Shriberg et al. 1998, Stolcke et al. 2000, Gravano et al. 2012).

**BDI**

Two important lines of research that we were unable to cover in the chapter focused on the computational properties of conversational structure. One line, first suggested by Bruce (1975), suggested that since speech acts are actions, they should be planned like other actions, and drew on the AI planning literature (Fikes and Nilsson, 1971). An agent seeking to find out some information can come up with the plan of asking the interlocutor for the information. An agent hearing an utterance can interpret a speech act by running the planner “in reverse”, using inference rules to infer from what the interlocutor said what the plan might have been. Plan-based models of dialogue are referred to as **BDI** models because such planners model the **beliefs**, **desires**, and **intentions** (BDI) of the agent and interlocutor. BDI models of dialogue were first introduced by Allen, Cohen, Perrault, and their colleagues in a number of influential papers showing how speech acts could be generated (Cohen and Perrault, 1979) and interpreted (Perrault and Allen 1980, Allen and Perrault 1980). At the same time, Wilensky (1983) introduced plan-based models of understanding as part of the task of interpreting stories.

Another influential line of research focused on modeling the hierarchical structure of dialogue. Grosz’s pioneering (1977b) dissertation first showed that “task-oriented dialogues have a structure that closely parallels the structure of the task being performed” (p. 27), leading to her work with Sidner and others showing how to use similar notions of intention and plans to model discourse structure and coherence in dialogue. See, e.g., Lochbaum et al. (2000) for a summary of the role of intentional structure in dialogue.

The idea of applying reinforcement learning to dialogue first came out of AT&T and Bell Laboratories around the turn of the century with work on MDP dialogue systems (Walker 2000, Levin et al. 2000, Singh et al. 2002) and work on cue phrases, prosody, and rejection and confirmation. Reinforcement learning research turned quickly to the more sophisticated POMDP models (Roy et al. 2000, Lemon et al. 2006, Williams and Young 2007) applied to small slot-filling dialogue tasks,

Affect has played an important role in dialogue systems since its earliest days. In more recent work Mairesse and Walker (2008) showed that conversational agents are received better by users if they match users’ personality expectations. We mentioned above the EMPATHETICDIALOGUES dataset of 25k conversations grounded in emotional situations (Rashkin et al., 2019). Lin et al. (2019) used mixtures of empathetic listeners (MoEL), each optimized to react to particular emotions, to generate empathetic responses.

[TBD: History of deep reinforcement learning here.] [TBD: surveys: Tur and De Mori (2011), Gao et al. (2019)]

[TBD: add recent more history here. including dialogue state tracking, NLG, end-to-end neural systems, etc]

## Exercises

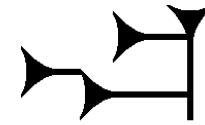
- dispreferred response**
- 24.1 Write a finite-state automaton for a dialogue manager for checking your bank balance and withdrawing money at an automated teller machine.
  - 24.2 A **dispreferred response** is a response that has the potential to make a person uncomfortable or embarrassed in the conversational context; the most common example dispreferred responses is turning down a request. People signal their discomfort with having to say no with surface cues (like the word *well*), or via significant silence. Try to notice the next time you or someone else utters a dispreferred response, and write down the utterance. What are some other cues in the response that a system might use to detect a dispreferred response? Consider non-verbal cues like eye gaze and body gestures.
  - 24.3 When asked a question to which they aren't sure they know the answer, people display their lack of confidence by cues that resemble other dispreferred responses. Try to notice some unsure answers to questions. What are some of the cues? If you have trouble doing this, read [Smith and Clark \(1993\)](#) and listen specifically for the cues they mention.
  - 24.4 Implement a small air-travel help system based on text input. Your system should get constraints from users about a particular flight that they want to take, expressed in natural language, and display possible flights on a screen. Make simplifying assumptions. You may build in a simple flight database or you may use a flight information system on the Web as your backend.

CHAPTER

# 25 Phonetics

The characters that make up the texts we've been discussing in this book aren't just random symbols. They are also an amazing scientific invention: a theoretical model of the elements that make up human speech.

The earliest writing systems we know of (Sumerian, Chinese, Mayan) were mainly *logographic*: one symbol representing a whole word. But from the earliest stages we can find, some symbols were also used to represent the sounds that made up words. The cuneiform sign to the right pronounced *ba* and meaning "ration" in Sumerian could also function purely as the sound /ba/. The earliest Chinese characters we have, carved into bones for divination, similarly contain phonetic elements. Purely sound-based writing systems, whether syllabic (like Japanese *hiragana*), alphabetic (like the Roman alphabet), or consonantal (like Semitic writing systems), trace back to these early logo-syllabic systems, often as two cultures came together. Thus, the Arabic, Aramaic, Hebrew, Greek, and Roman systems all derive from a West Semitic script that is presumed to have been modified by Western Semitic mercenaries from a cursive form of Egyptian hieroglyphs. The Japanese syllabaries were modified from a cursive form of Chinese phonetic characters, which themselves were used in Chinese to phonetically represent the Sanskrit in the Buddhist scriptures that came to China in the Tang dynasty.



This implicit idea that the spoken word is composed of smaller units of speech underlies algorithms for both **speech recognition** (transcribing waveforms into text) and **text-to-speech** (converting text into waveforms). In this chapter we give a computational perspective on **phonetics**, the study of the speech sounds used in the languages of the world, how they are produced in the human vocal tract, how they are realized acoustically, and how they can be digitized and processed.

phonetics

## 25.1 Speech Sounds and Phonetic Transcription

A letter like 'p' or 'a' is already a useful model of the sounds of human speech, and indeed we'll see in Chapter 26 how to map between letters and waveforms. Nonetheless, it is helpful to represent sounds slightly more abstractly. We'll represent the pronunciation of a word as a string of **phones**, which are speech sounds, each represented with symbols adapted from the Roman alphabet.

The standard phonetic representation for transcribing the world's languages is the **International Phonetic Alphabet (IPA)**, an evolving standard first developed in 1888. But in this chapter we'll instead represent phones with the ARPAbet ([Shoup, 1980](#)), a simple phonetic alphabet (Fig. 25.1) that conveniently uses ASCII symbols to represent an American-English subset of the IPA.

Many of the IPA and ARPAbet symbols are equivalent to familiar Roman letters. So, for example, the ARPAbet phone [p] represents the consonant sound at the

phone

IPA

ARPAbet Symbol	IPA Symbol	Word	ARPAbet Transcription	ARPAbet Symbol	IPA Symbol	Word	ARPAbet Transcription
[p]	[p]	parsley	[p aa r s l iy]	[iy]	[i]	lily	[l ih l iy]
[t]	[t]	tea	[t iy]	[ih]	[ɪ]	lily	[l ih l iy]
[k]	[k]	cook	[k uh k]	[ey]	[eɪ]	daisy	[d ey z iy]
[b]	[b]	bay	[b ey]	[eh]	[ɛ]	pen	[p eh n]
[d]	[d]	dill	[d ih l]	[ae]	[æ]	aster	[ae s t axr]
[g]	[g]	garlic	[g aa r l ix k]	[aa]	[ɑ]	poppy	[p aa p iy]
[m]	[m]	mint	[m ih n t]	[ao]	[ɔ]	orchid	[ao r k ix d]
[n]	[n]	nutmeg	[n ah t m eh g]	[uh]	[ʊ]	wood	[w uh d]
[ng]	[ŋ]	baking	[b ey k ix ng]	[ow]	[oʊ]	lotus	[l ow dx ax s]
[f]	[f]	flour	[f l aw axr]	[uw]	[u]	tulip	[t uw l ix p]
[v]	[v]	clove	[k l ow v]	[ah]	[ʌ]	butter	[b ah dx axr]
[θ]	[θ]	thick	[th ih k]	[er]	[ɜː]	bird	[b er d]
[ð]	[ð]	those	[dh ow z]	[ay]	[aɪ]	iris	[ay r ix s]
[s]	[s]	soup	[s uw p]	[aw]	[aʊ]	flower	[f l aw axr]
[z]	[z]	eggs	[eh g z]	[oy]	[oɪ]	soil	[s oy l]
[ʃ]	[ʃ]	squash	[s k w aa sh]				
[ʒ]	[ʒ]	ambrosia	[ae m b r ow zh ax]				
[tʃ]	[tʃ]	cherry	[ch eh r iy]				
[dʒ]	[dʒ]	jar	[jh aa r]				
[l]	[l]	licorice	[l ih k axr ix sh]				
[w]	[w]	kiwi	[k iy w iy]				
[r]	[r]	rice	[r ay s]				
[j]	[j]	yellow	[y eh l ow]				
[h]	[h]	honey	[h ah n iy]				

Figure 25.1 ARPAbet and IPA symbols for English consonants (left) and vowels (right).

beginning of *platypus*, *puma*, and *plantain*, the middle of *leopard*, or the end of *antelope*. In general, however, the mapping between the letters of English orthography and phones is relatively **opaque**; a single letter can represent very different sounds in different contexts. The English letter *c* corresponds to phone [k] in *cougar* [k uw g axr], but phone [s] in *cell* [s eh l]. Besides appearing as *c* and *k*, the phone [k] can appear as part of *x* (*fox* [f aa k s]), as *ck* (*jackal* [jh ae k el]) and as *cc* (*raccoon* [r ae k uw n]). Many other languages, for example, Spanish, are much more **transparent** in their sound-orthography mapping than English.

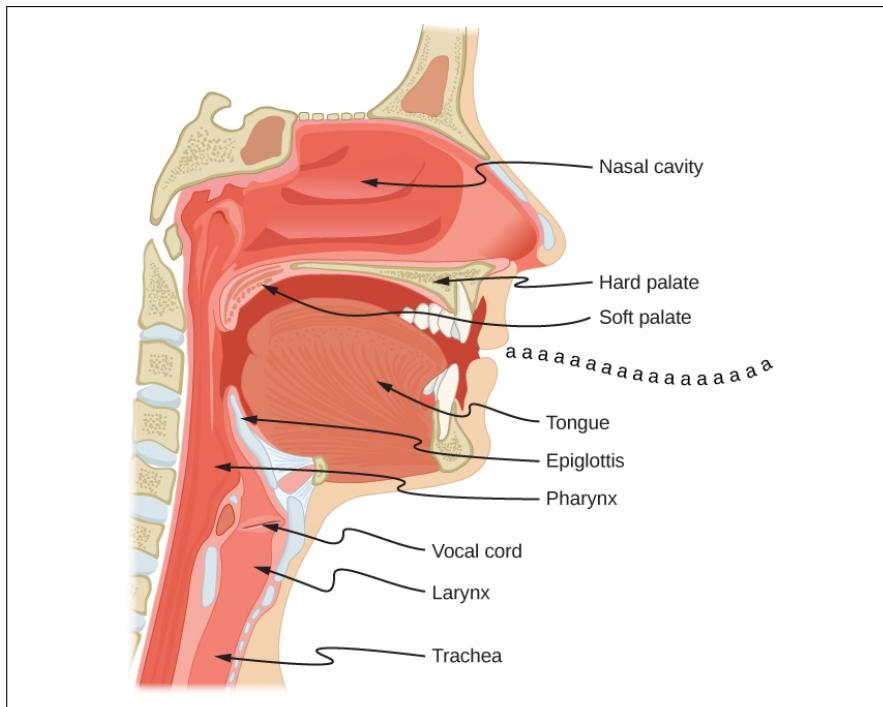
## 25.2 Articulatory Phonetics

### articulatory phonetics

**Articulatory phonetics** is the study of how these phones are produced as the various organs in the mouth, throat, and nose modify the airflow from the lungs.

#### The Vocal Organs

Figure 25.2 shows the organs of speech. Sound is produced by the rapid movement of air. Humans produce most sounds in spoken languages by expelling air from the lungs through the windpipe (technically, the **trachea**) and then out the mouth or nose. As it passes through the trachea, the air passes through the **larynx**, commonly known as the Adam's apple or voice box. The larynx contains two small folds of



**Figure 25.2** The vocal organs, shown in side view. (Figure from OpenStax University Physics, CC BY 4.0)

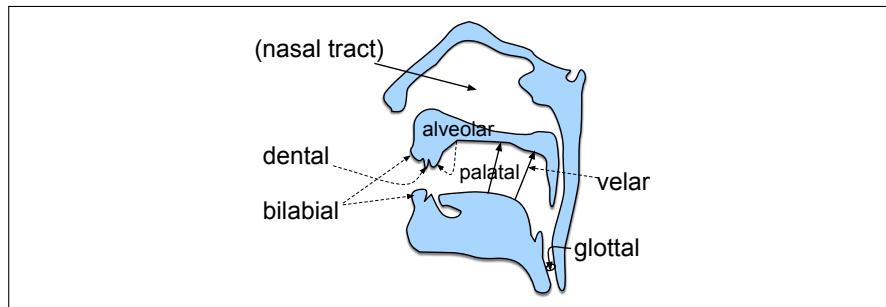
**glottis** muscle, the **vocal folds** (often referred to non-technically as the **vocal cords**), which can be moved together or apart. The space between these two folds is called the **glottis**. If the folds are close together (but not tightly closed), they will vibrate as air passes through them; if they are far apart, they won't vibrate. Sounds made with the vocal folds together and vibrating are called **voiced**; sounds made without this vocal cord vibration are called **unvoiced** or **voiceless**. Voiced sounds include [b], [d], [g], [v], [z], and all the English vowels, among others. Unvoiced sounds include [p], [t], [k], [f], [s], and others.

**voiced sound** The area above the trachea is called the **vocal tract**; it consists of the **oral tract** and the **nasal tract**. After the air leaves the trachea, it can exit the body through the mouth or the nose. Most sounds are made by air passing through the mouth. Sounds made by air passing through the nose are called **nasal sounds**; nasal sounds (like English [m], [n], and [ng]) use both the oral and nasal tracts as resonating cavities.

**unvoiced sound** **nasal** **consonant** Phones are divided into two main classes: **consonants** and **vowels**. Both kinds of sounds are formed by the motion of air through the mouth, throat or nose. Consonants are made by restriction or blocking of the airflow in some way, and can be voiced or unvoiced. Vowels have less obstruction, are usually voiced, and are generally louder and longer-lasting than consonants. The technical use of these terms is much like the common usage; [p], [b], [t], [d], [k], [g], [f], [v], [s], [z], [r], [l], etc., are consonants; [aa], [ae], [ao], [ih], [aw], [ow], [uw], etc., are vowels. **Semivowels** (such as [y] and [w]) have some of the properties of both; they are voiced like vowels, but they are short and less syllabic like consonants.

### Consonants: Place of Articulation

Because consonants are made by restricting airflow, we can group them into classes by their point of maximum restriction, their **place of articulation** (Fig. 25.3).



**Figure 25.3** Major English places of articulation.

#### labial

**Labial:** Consonants whose main restriction is formed by the two lips coming together have a **bilabial** place of articulation. In English these include [p] as in *possum*, [b] as in *bear*, and [m] as in *marmot*. The English **labiodental** consonants [v] and [f] are made by pressing the bottom lip against the upper row of teeth and letting the air flow through the space in the upper teeth.

#### dental

**Dental:** Sounds that are made by placing the tongue against the teeth are dentals. The main dentals in English are the [th] of *thing* and the [dh] of *though*, which are made by placing the tongue behind the teeth with the tip slightly between the teeth.

#### alveolar

**Alveolar:** The alveolar ridge is the portion of the roof of the mouth just behind the upper teeth. Most speakers of American English make the phones [s], [z], [t], and [d] by placing the tip of the tongue against the alveolar ridge. The word **coronal** is often used to refer to both dental and alveolar.

#### palatal palate

**Palatal:** The roof of the mouth (the **palate**) rises sharply from the back of the alveolar ridge. The **palato-alveolar** sounds [sh] (*shrimp*), [ch] (*china*), [zh] (*Asian*), and [jh] (*jar*) are made with the blade of the tongue against the rising back of the alveolar ridge. The palatal sound [y] of *yak* is made by placing the front of the tongue up close to the palate.

#### velar

**Velar:** The **velum**, or soft palate, is a movable muscular flap at the very back of the roof of the mouth. The sounds [k] (*cuckoo*), [g] (*goose*), and [ŋ] (*kingfisher*) are made by pressing the back of the tongue up against the velum.

#### glottal

**Glottal:** The glottal stop [q] is made by closing the glottis (by bringing the vocal folds together).

### Consonants: Manner of Articulation

#### manner of articulation

Consonants are also distinguished by *how* the restriction in airflow is made, for example, by a complete stoppage of air or by a partial blockage. This feature is called the **manner of articulation** of a consonant. The combination of place and manner of articulation is usually sufficient to uniquely identify a consonant. Following are the major manners of articulation for English consonants:

#### stop

A **stop** is a consonant in which airflow is completely blocked for a short time. This blockage is followed by an explosive sound as the air is released. The period of blockage is called the **closure**, and the explosion is called the **release**. English

has voiced stops like [b], [d], and [g] as well as unvoiced stops like [p], [t], and [k]. Stops are also called **plosives**.

#### nasal

The **nasal** sounds [n], [m], and [ng] are made by lowering the velum and allowing air to pass into the nasal cavity.

#### fricatives

In **fricatives**, airflow is constricted but not cut off completely. The turbulent airflow that results from the constriction produces a characteristic “hissing” sound. The English labiodental fricatives [f] and [v] are produced by pressing the lower lip against the upper teeth, allowing a restricted airflow between the upper teeth. The dental fricatives [θ] and [ð] allow air to flow around the tongue between the teeth. The alveolar fricatives [s] and [z] are produced with the tongue against the alveolar ridge, forcing air over the edge of the teeth. In the palato-alveolar fricatives [ʃ] and [ʒ], the tongue is at the back of the alveolar ridge, forcing air through a groove formed in the tongue. The higher-pitched fricatives (in English [s], [z], [ʃ] and [ʒ]) are called **sibilants**. Stops that are followed immediately by fricatives are called **affricates**; these include English [ch] (*chicken*) and [jh] (*giraffe*).

#### approximant

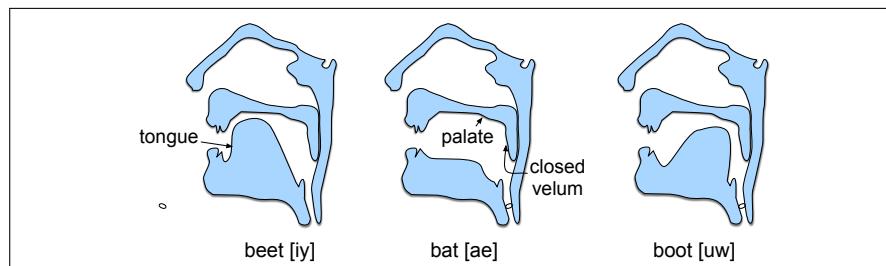
In **approximants**, the two articulators are close together but not close enough to cause turbulent airflow. In English [y] (*yellow*), the tongue moves close to the roof of the mouth but not close enough to cause the turbulence that would characterize a fricative. In English [w] (*wood*), the back of the tongue comes close to the velum. American [r] can be formed in at least two ways; with just the tip of the tongue extended and close to the palate or with the whole tongue bunched up near the palate. [l] is formed with the tip of the tongue up against the alveolar ridge or the teeth, with one or both sides of the tongue lowered to allow air to flow over it. [l] is called a **lateral** sound because of the drop in the sides of the tongue.

#### tap

A **tap** or **flap** [dx] is a quick motion of the tongue against the alveolar ridge. The consonant in the middle of the word *lotus* ([l əw dx əx s]) is a tap in most dialects of American English; speakers of many U.K. dialects would use a [t] instead.

### Vowels

Like consonants, vowels can be characterized by the position of the articulators as they are made. The three most relevant parameters for vowels are what is called **vowel height**, which correlates roughly with the height of the highest part of the tongue, **vowel frontness** or **backness**, indicating whether this high point is toward the front or back of the oral tract and whether the shape of the lips is **rounded** or not. Figure 25.4 shows the position of the tongue for different vowels.

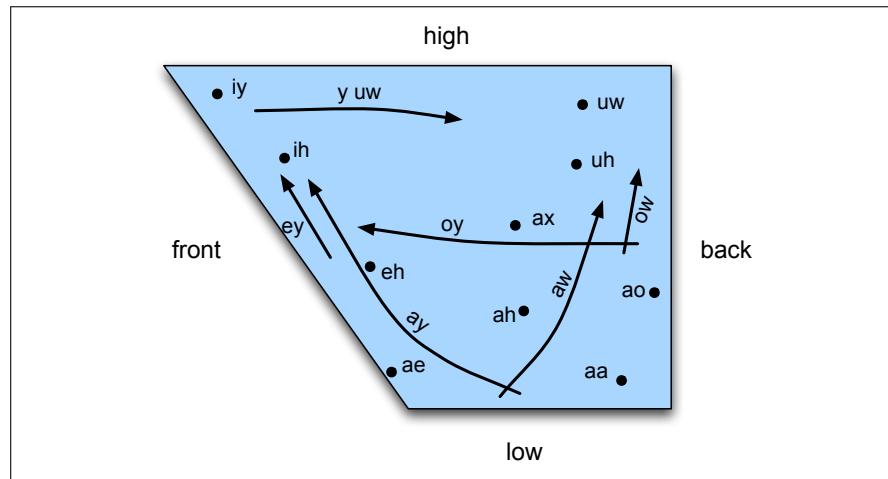


**Figure 25.4** Tongue positions for English high front [iy], low front [ae] and high back [uw].

#### Front vowel

In the vowel [iy], for example, the highest point of the tongue is toward the front of the mouth. In the vowel [uw], by contrast, the high-point of the tongue is located toward the back of the mouth. Vowels in which the tongue is raised toward the front are called **front vowels**; those in which the tongue is raised toward the

- back vowel** back are called **back vowels**. Note that while both [ih] and [eh] are front vowels, the tongue is higher for [ih] than for [eh]. Vowels in which the highest point of the tongue is comparatively high are called **high vowels**; vowels with mid or low values of maximum tongue height are called **mid vowels** or **low vowels**, respectively.
- high vowel**



**Figure 25.5** The schematic “vowel space” for English vowels.

**diphthong** Figure 25.5 shows a schematic characterization of the height of different vowels. It is schematic because the abstract property **height** correlates only roughly with actual tongue positions; it is, in fact, a more accurate reflection of acoustic facts. Note that the chart has two kinds of vowels: those in which tongue height is represented as a point and those in which it is represented as a path. A vowel in which the tongue position changes markedly during the production of the vowel is a **diphthong**.

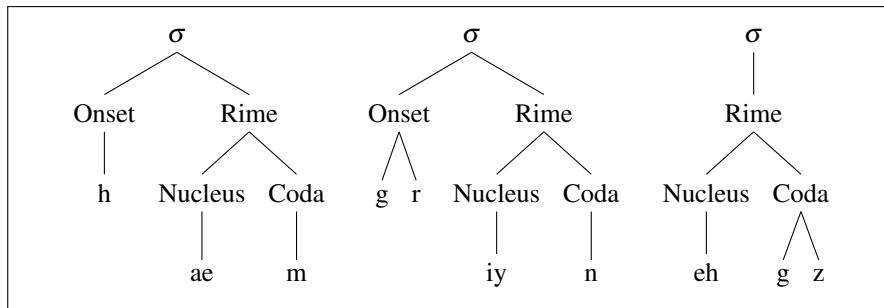
**rounded vowel** English is particularly rich in diphthongs. The second important articulatory dimension for vowels is the shape of the lips. Certain vowels are pronounced with the lips rounded (the same lip shape used for whistling). These **rounded** vowels include [uw], [ao], and [ow].

### Syllables

**syllable** Consonants and vowels combine to make a **syllable**. A syllable is a vowel-like (or **sonorant**) sound together with some of the surrounding consonants that are most closely associated with it. The word *dog* has one syllable, [d aa g] (in our dialect); the word *catnip* has two syllables, [k ae t] and [n ih p]. We call the vowel at the core of a syllable the **nucleus**. Initial consonants, if any, are called the **onset**. Onsets with more than one consonant (as in *strike* [s t r ay k]), are called **complex onsets**. The **coda** is the optional consonant or sequence of consonants following the nucleus. Thus [d] is the onset of *dog*, and [g] is the coda. The **rime**, or **rhyme**, is the nucleus plus coda. Figure 25.6 shows some sample syllable structures.

**syllabification** The task of automatically breaking up a word into syllables is called **syllabification**. Syllable structure is also closely related to the **phonotactics** of a language. The term **phonotactics** means the constraints on which phones can follow each other in a language. For example, English has strong constraints on what kinds of consonants can appear together in an onset; the sequence [zdr], for example, cannot be a legal English syllable onset. Phonotactics can be represented by a language model or finite-state model of phone sequences.

**phonotactics**

Figure 25.6 Syllable structure of *ham*, *green*, *eggs*.  $\sigma$ =syllable.

## 25.3 Prosody

### prosody

**Prosody** is the study of the intonational and rhythmic aspects of language, and in particular the use of **F0**, **energy**, and **duration** to convey pragmatic, affective, or conversation-interactional meanings.<sup>1</sup> Prosody can be used to mark **discourse structure**, like the difference between statements and questions, or the way that a conversation is structured. Prosody is used to mark the **saliency** of a particular word or phrase. Prosody is heavily used for paralinguistic functions like conveying affective meanings like happiness, surprise, or anger. And prosody plays an important role in managing turn-taking in conversation.

### 25.3.1 Prosodic Prominence: Accent, Stress and Schwa

#### prominence

In a natural utterance of American English, some words sound more **prominent** than others, and certain syllables in these words are also more **prominent** than others. What we mean by prominence is that these words or syllables are perceptually more salient to the listener. Speakers make a word or syllable more salient in English by saying it louder, saying it slower (so it has a longer duration), or by varying F0 during the word, making it higher or more variable.

#### pitch accent

**Accent** We represent prominence via a linguistic marker called **pitch accent**. Words or syllables that are prominent are said to **bear** (be associated with) a pitch accent. Thus this utterance might be pronounced by **accenting** the underlined words:

(25.1) I'm a little surprised to hear it characterized as happy.

#### lexical stress

**Lexical Stress** The syllables that bear pitch accent are called **accented** syllables. Not every syllable of a word can be accented: pitch accent has to be realized on the syllable that has **lexical stress**. Lexical stress is a property of the word's pronunciation in dictionaries; the syllable that has lexical stress is the one that will be louder or longer if the word is accented. For example, the word *surprised* is stressed on its second syllable, not its first. (Try stressing the other syllable by saying SURprised; hopefully that sounds wrong to you). Thus, if the word *surprised* receives a pitch accent in a sentence, it is the second syllable that will be stronger. The following example shows underlined accented words with the stressed syllable bearing the accent (the louder, longer syllable) in boldface:

(25.2) I'm a little **surprised** to hear it characterized as happy.

<sup>1</sup> The word is used in a different but related way in poetry, to mean the study of verse metrical structure.

Stress is marked in dictionaries. The CMU dictionary (CMU, 1993), for example, marks vowels with 0 (unstressed) or 1 (stressed) as in entries for *counter*: [K AW1 N T ER0], or *table*: [T EY1 B AH0 L]. Difference in lexical stress can affect word meaning; the noun *content* is pronounced [K AA1 N T EH0 N T], while the adjective is pronounced [K AA0 N T EH1 N T].

#### reduced vowel schwa

**Reduced Vowels and Schwa** Unstressed vowels can be weakened even further to **reduced vowels**, the most common of which is **schwa** ([ə]), as in the second vowel of *parakeet*: [p ae r ax k iy t]. In a reduced vowel the articulatory gesture isn't as complete as for a full vowel. Not all unstressed vowels are reduced; any vowel, and diphthongs in particular, can retain its full quality even in unstressed position. For example, the vowel [iy] can appear in stressed position as in the word *eat* [iy t] or in unstressed position as in the word *carry* [k ae r iy].

#### prominence

In summary, there is a continuum of prosodic **prominence**, for which it is often useful to represent levels like accented, stressed, full vowel, and reduced vowel.

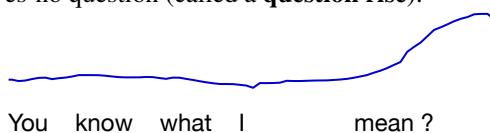
#### prosodic phrasing intonation phrase intermediate phrase

Spoken sentences have prosodic structure: some words seem to group naturally together, while some words seem to have a noticeable break or disjuncture between them. Prosodic structure is often described in terms of **prosodic phrasing**, meaning that an utterance has a prosodic phrase structure in a similar way to it having a syntactic phrase structure. For example, the sentence *I wanted to go to London, but could only get tickets for France* seems to have two main **intonation phrases**, their boundary occurring at the comma. Furthermore, in the first phrase, there seems to be another set of lesser prosodic phrase boundaries (often called **intermediate phrases**) that split up the words as *I wanted | to go | to London*. These kinds of intonation phrases are often correlated with syntactic structure constituents (Price et al. 1991, Bennett and Elfner 2019).

Automatically predicting prosodic boundaries can be important for tasks like TTS. Modern approaches use sequence models that take either raw text or text annotated with features like parse trees as input, and make a break/no-break decision at each word boundary. They can be trained on data labeled for prosodic structure like the Boston University Radio News Corpus (Ostendorf et al., 1995).

#### tune question rise

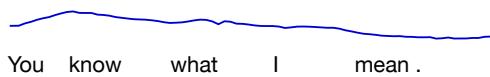
Two utterances with the same prominence and phrasing patterns can still differ prosodically by having different **tunes**. The **tune** of an utterance is the rise and fall of its F0 over time. A very obvious example of tune is the difference between statements and yes-no questions in English. The same words can be said with a final F0 rise to indicate a yes-no question (called a **question rise**):



You know what I mean ?

#### final fall

or a final drop in F0 (called a **final fall**) to indicate a declarative intonation:



You know what I mean .

Languages make wide use of tune to express meaning (Xu, 2005). In English,

for example, besides this well-known rise for yes-no questions, a phrase containing a list of nouns separated by commas often has a short rise called a **continuation rise** after each noun. Other examples include the characteristic English contours for expressing **contradiction** and expressing **surprise**.

continuation rise

ToBI

boundary tone

Pitch accents come in different varieties that are related to tune; high pitched accents, for example, have different functions than low pitched accents. There are many typologies of accent classes in different languages. One such typology is part of the **ToBI** (Tone and Break Indices) theory of intonation (Silverman et al. 1992). Each word in ToBI can be associated with one of five types of **pitch accents** shown in Fig. 25.7. Each utterance in ToBI consists of a sequence of intonational phrases, each of which ends in one of four **boundary tones** shown in Fig. 25.7, representing the utterance final aspects of tune. There are version of ToBI for many languages.

Pitch Accents		Boundary Tones	
<b>H*</b>	peak accent	<b>L-L%</b>	“final fall”: “declarative contour” of American English
<b>L*</b>	low accent	<b>L-H%</b>	continuation rise
<b>L*+H</b>	scooped accent	<b>H-H%</b>	“question rise”: canonical yes-no question contour
<b>L+H*</b>	rising peak accent	<b>H-L%</b>	final level plateau
<b>H+!H*</b>	step down		

**Figure 25.7** The accent and boundary tones labels from the ToBI transcription system for American English intonation (Beckman and Ayers 1997, Beckman and Hirschberg 1994).

## 25.4 Acoustic Phonetics and Signals

We begin with a very brief introduction to the acoustic waveform and its digitization and frequency analysis; the interested reader is encouraged to consult the references at the end of the chapter.

### 25.4.1 Waves

Acoustic analysis is based on the sine and cosine functions. Figure 25.8 shows a plot of a sine wave, in particular the function

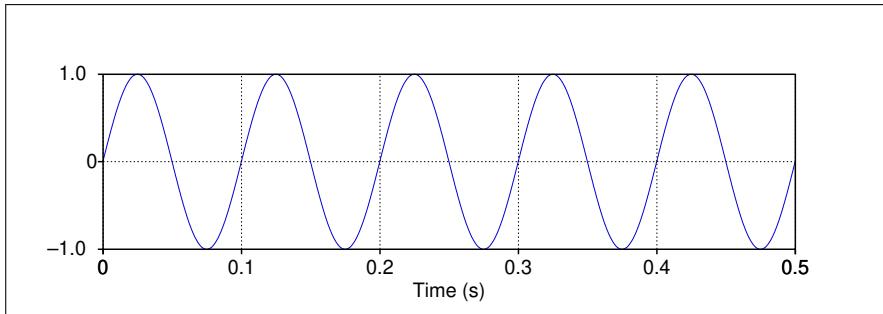
$$y = A * \sin(2\pi f t) \quad (25.3)$$

where we have set the amplitude  $A$  to 1 and the frequency  $f$  to 10 cycles per second.

frequency  
amplitudeHertz  
period

Recall from basic mathematics that two important characteristics of a wave are its **frequency** and **amplitude**. The frequency is the number of times a second that a wave repeats itself, that is, the number of **cycles**. We usually measure frequency in **cycles per second**. The signal in Fig. 25.8 repeats itself 5 times in .5 seconds, hence 10 cycles per second. Cycles per second are usually called **hertz** (shortened to **Hz**), so the frequency in Fig. 25.8 would be described as 10 Hz. The **amplitude**  $A$  of a sine wave is the maximum value on the Y axis. The **period**  $T$  of the wave is the time it takes for one cycle to complete, defined as

$$T = \frac{1}{f} \quad (25.4)$$

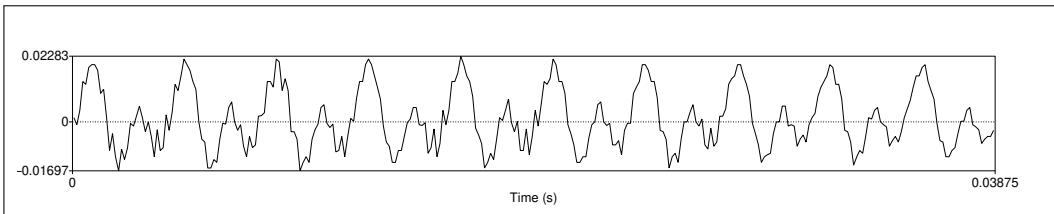


**Figure 25.8** A sine wave with a frequency of 10 Hz and an amplitude of 1.

Each cycle in Fig. 25.8 lasts a tenth of a second; hence  $T = .1$  seconds.

### 25.4.2 Speech Sound Waves

Let's turn from hypothetical waves to sound waves. The input to a speech recognizer, like the input to the human ear, is a complex series of changes in air pressure. These changes in air pressure obviously originate with the speaker and are caused by the specific way that air passes through the glottis and out the oral or nasal cavities. We represent sound waves by plotting the change in air pressure over time. One metaphor which sometimes helps in understanding these graphs is that of a vertical plate blocking the air pressure waves (perhaps in a microphone in front of a speaker's mouth, or the eardrum in a hearer's ear). The graph measures the amount of **compression** or **rarefaction** (uncompression) of the air molecules at this plate. Figure 25.9 shows a short segment of a waveform taken from the Switchboard corpus of telephone speech of the vowel [iy] from someone saying “she just had a baby”.



**Figure 25.9** A waveform of the vowel [iy] from an utterance shown later in Fig. 25.13 on page 539. The y-axis shows the level of air pressure above and below normal atmospheric pressure. The x-axis shows time. Notice that the wave repeats regularly.

The first step in digitizing a sound wave like Fig. 25.9 is to convert the analog representations (first air pressure and then analog electric signals in a microphone) into a digital signal. This **analog-to-digital conversion** has two steps: **sampling** and **quantization**. To sample a signal, we measure its amplitude at a particular time; the **sampling rate** is the number of samples taken per second. To accurately measure a wave, we must have at least two samples in each cycle: one measuring the positive part of the wave and one measuring the negative part. More than two samples per cycle increases the amplitude accuracy, but fewer than two samples causes the frequency of the wave to be completely missed. Thus, the maximum frequency wave that can be measured is one whose frequency is half the sample rate (since every cycle needs two samples). This maximum frequency for a given sampling rate is called the **Nyquist frequency**. Most information in human speech is in frequencies below 10,000 Hz; thus, a 20,000 Hz sampling rate would be necessary for com-

Nyquist  
frequency

plete accuracy. But telephone speech is filtered by the switching network, and only frequencies less than 4,000 Hz are transmitted by telephones. Thus, an 8,000 Hz sampling rate is sufficient for **telephone-bandwidth** speech like the Switchboard corpus, while 16,000 Hz sampling is often used for microphone speech.

**quantization**

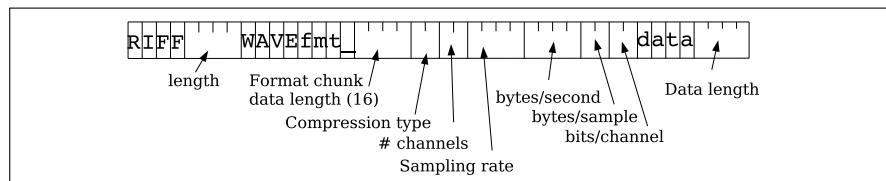
Even an 8,000 Hz sampling rate requires 8000 amplitude measurements for each second of speech, so it is important to store amplitude measurements efficiently. They are usually stored as integers, either 8 bit (values from -128–127) or 16 bit (values from -32768–32767). This process of representing real-valued numbers as integers is called **quantization** because the difference between two integers acts as a minimum granularity (a quantum size) and all values that are closer together than this quantum size are represented identically.

**channel****PCM**

Once data is quantized, it is stored in various formats. One parameter of these formats is the sample rate and sample size discussed above; telephone speech is often sampled at 8 kHz and stored as 8-bit samples, and microphone data is often sampled at 16 kHz and stored as 16-bit samples. Another parameter is the number of **channels**. For stereo data or for two-party conversations, we can store both channels in the same file or we can store them in separate files. A final parameter is individual sample storage—linearly or compressed. One common compression format used for telephone speech is  $\mu$ -law (often written u-law but still pronounced mu-law). The intuition of log compression algorithms like  $\mu$ -law is that human hearing is more sensitive at small intensities than large ones; the log represents small values with more faithfulness at the expense of more error on large values. The linear (unlogged) values are generally referred to as **linear PCM** values (PCM stands for pulse code modulation, but never mind that). Here's the equation for compressing a linear PCM sample value  $x$  to 8-bit  $\mu$ -law, (where  $\mu=255$  for 8 bits):

$$F(x) = \frac{\operatorname{sgn}(x) \log(1 + \mu|x|)}{\log(1 + \mu)} \quad -1 \leq x \leq 1 \quad (25.5)$$

There are a number of standard file formats for storing the resulting digitized wavefile, such as Microsoft's .wav and Apple's AIFF all of which have special headers; simple headerless “raw” files are also used. For example, the .wav format is a subset of Microsoft's RIFF format for multimedia files; RIFF is a general format that can represent a series of nested chunks of data and control information. Figure 25.10 shows a simple .wav file with a single data chunk together with its format chunk.



**Figure 25.10** Microsoft wavefile header format, assuming simple file with one chunk. Following this 44-byte header would be the data chunk.

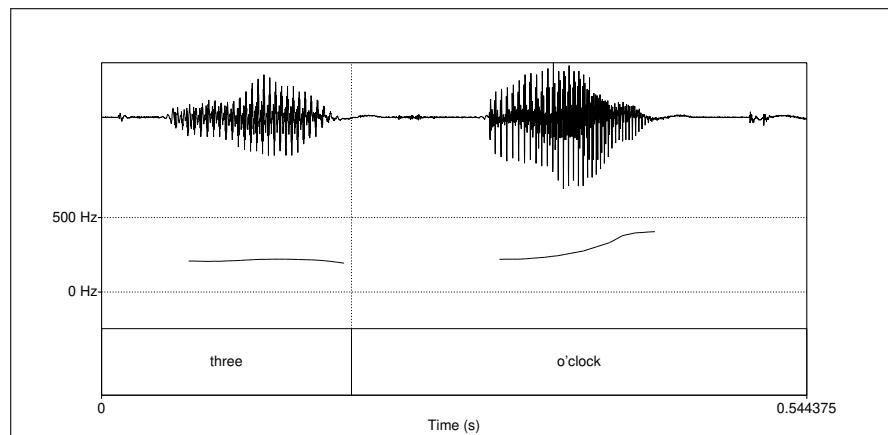
### 25.4.3 Frequency and Amplitude; Pitch and Loudness

Sound waves, like all waves, can be described in terms of frequency, amplitude, and the other characteristics that we introduced earlier for pure sine waves. In sound waves, these are not quite as simple to measure as they were for sine waves. Let's consider frequency. Note in Fig. 25.9 that although not exactly a sine, the wave is

nonetheless periodic, repeating 10 times in the 38.75 milliseconds (.03875 seconds) captured in the figure. Thus, the frequency of this segment of the wave is  $10/0.03875$  or 258 Hz.

Where does this periodic 258 Hz wave come from? It comes from the speed of vibration of the vocal folds; since the waveform in Fig. 25.9 is from the vowel [iy], it is voiced. Recall that voicing is caused by regular openings and closing of the vocal folds. When the vocal folds are open, air is pushing up through the lungs, creating a region of high pressure. When the folds are closed, there is no pressure from the lungs. Thus, when the vocal folds are vibrating, we expect to see regular peaks in amplitude of the kind we see in Fig. 25.9, each major peak corresponding to an opening of the vocal folds. The frequency of the vocal fold vibration, or the frequency of the complex wave, is called the **fundamental frequency** of the waveform, often abbreviated **F0**. We can plot F0 over time in a **pitch track**. Figure 25.11 shows the pitch track of a short question, “Three o’clock?” represented below the waveform. Note the rise in F0 at the end of the question.

**fundamental frequency**  
**F0**  
**pitch track**



**Figure 25.11** Pitch track of the question “Three o’clock?”, shown below the wavefile. Note the rise in F0 at the end of the question. Note the lack of pitch trace during the very quiet part (the “o” of “o’clock”; automatic pitch tracking is based on counting the pulses in the voiced regions, and doesn’t work if there is no voicing (or insufficient sound).

The vertical axis in Fig. 25.9 measures the amount of air pressure variation; pressure is force per unit area, measured in Pascals (Pa). A high value on the vertical axis (a high amplitude) indicates that there is more air pressure at that point in time, a zero value means there is normal (atmospheric) air pressure, and a negative value means there is lower than normal air pressure (rarefaction).

In addition to this value of the amplitude at any point in time, we also often need to know the average amplitude over some time range, to give us some idea of how great the average displacement of air pressure is. But we can’t just take the average of the amplitude values over a range; the positive and negative values would (mostly) cancel out, leaving us with a number close to zero. Instead, we generally use the RMS (root-mean-square) amplitude, which squares each number before averaging (making it positive), and then takes the square root at the end.

$$\text{RMS amplitude}_{i=1}^N = \sqrt{\frac{1}{N} \sum_{i=1}^N x_i^2} \quad (25.6)$$

**power**

The **power** of the signal is related to the square of the amplitude. If the number

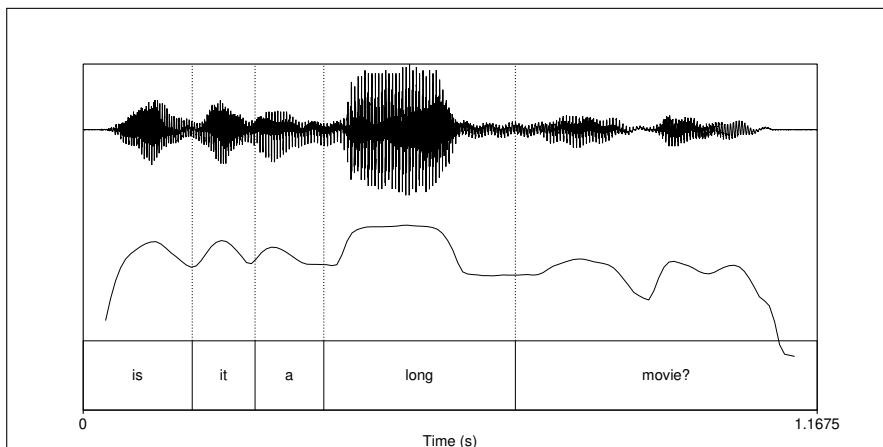
of samples of a sound is  $N$ , the power is

$$\text{Power} = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{i=1}^N x_i^2 \quad (25.7)$$

**intensity** Rather than power, we more often refer to the **intensity** of the sound, which normalizes the power to the human auditory threshold and is measured in dB. If  $P_0$  is the auditory threshold pressure =  $2 \times 10^{-5}$  Pa, then intensity is defined as follows:

$$\text{Intensity} = 10 \log_{10} \frac{1}{NP_0} \sum_{i=1}^N x_i^2 \quad (25.8)$$

Figure 25.12 shows an intensity plot for the sentence “Is it a long movie?” from the CallHome corpus, again shown below the waveform plot.



**Figure 25.12** Intensity plot for the sentence “Is it a long movie?”. Note the intensity peaks at each vowel and the especially high peak for the word *long*.

**pitch** Two important perceptual properties, **pitch** and **loudness**, are related to frequency and intensity. The **pitch** of a sound is the mental sensation, or perceptual correlate, of fundamental frequency; in general, if a sound has a higher fundamental frequency we perceive it as having a higher pitch. We say “in general” because the relationship is not linear, since human hearing has different acuties for different frequencies. Roughly speaking, human pitch perception is most accurate between 100 Hz and 1000 Hz and in this range pitch correlates linearly with frequency. Human hearing represents frequencies above 1000 Hz less accurately, and above this range, pitch correlates logarithmically with frequency. Logarithmic representation means that the differences between high frequencies are compressed and hence not as accurately perceived. There are various psychoacoustic models of pitch perception scales. One common model is the **mel** scale (Stevens et al. 1937, Stevens and Volkmann 1940). A mel is a unit of pitch defined such that pairs of sounds which are perceptually equidistant in pitch are separated by an equal number of mels. The mel frequency  $m$  can be computed from the raw acoustic frequency as follows:

$$m = 1127 \ln\left(1 + \frac{f}{700}\right) \quad (25.9)$$

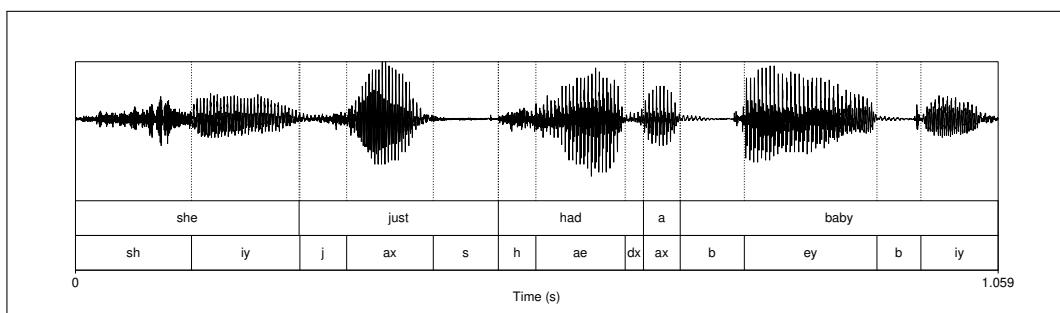
As we’ll see in Chapter 26, the mel scale plays an important role in speech recognition.

The **loudness** of a sound is the perceptual correlate of the **power**. So sounds with higher amplitudes are perceived as louder, but again the relationship is not linear. First of all, as we mentioned above when we defined  $\mu$ -law compression, humans have greater resolution in the low-power range; the ear is more sensitive to small power differences. Second, it turns out that there is a complex relationship between power, frequency, and perceived loudness; sounds in certain frequency ranges are perceived as being louder than those in other frequency ranges.

**pitch extraction** Various algorithms exist for automatically extracting F0. In a slight abuse of terminology, these are called **pitch extraction** algorithms. The autocorrelation method of pitch extraction, for example, correlates the signal with itself at various offsets. The offset that gives the highest correlation gives the period of the signal. There are various publicly available pitch extraction toolkits; for example, an augmented autocorrelation pitch tracker is provided with Praat ([Boersma and Weenink, 2005](#)).

#### 25.4.4 Interpretation of Phones from a Waveform

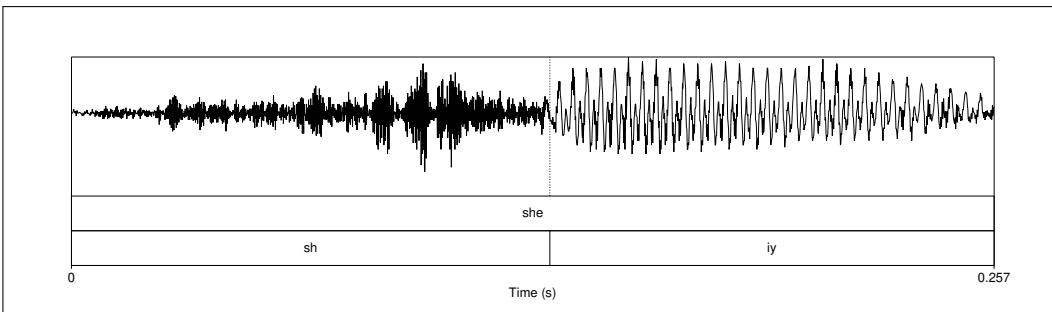
Much can be learned from a visual inspection of a waveform. For example, vowels are pretty easy to spot. Recall that vowels are voiced; another property of vowels is that they tend to be long and are relatively loud (as we can see in the intensity plot in Fig. 25.12). Length in time manifests itself directly on the x-axis, and loudness is related to (the square of) amplitude on the y-axis. We saw in the previous section that voicing is realized by regular peaks in amplitude of the kind we saw in Fig. 25.9, each major peak corresponding to an opening of the vocal folds. Figure 25.13 shows the waveform of the short sentence “she just had a baby”. We have labeled this waveform with word and phone labels. Notice that each of the six vowels in Fig. 25.13, [iy], [ax], [ae], [ax], [ey], [iy], all have regular amplitude peaks indicating voicing.



**Figure 25.13** A waveform of the sentence “She just had a baby” from the Switchboard corpus (conversation 4325). The speaker is female, was 20 years old in 1991, which is approximately when the recording was made, and speaks the South Midlands dialect of American English.

For a stop consonant, which consists of a closure followed by a release, we can often see a period of silence or near silence followed by a slight burst of amplitude. We can see this for both of the [b]’s in *baby* in Fig. 25.13.

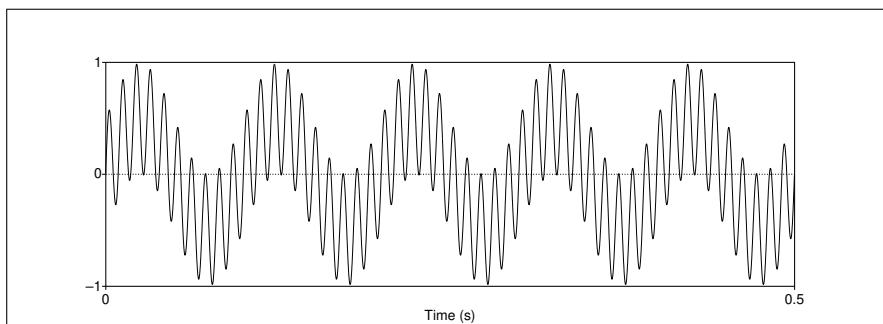
Another phone that is often quite recognizable in a waveform is a fricative. Recall that fricatives, especially very strident fricatives like [sh], are made when a narrow channel for airflow causes noisy, turbulent air. The resulting hissy sounds have a noisy, irregular waveform. This can be seen somewhat in Fig. 25.13; it’s even clearer in Fig. 25.14, where we’ve magnified just the first word *she*.



**Figure 25.14** A more detailed view of the first word “she” extracted from the wavefile in Fig. 25.13. Notice the difference between the random noise of the fricative [sh] and the regular voicing of the vowel [iy].

### 25.4.5 Spectra and the Frequency Domain

While some broad phonetic features (such as energy, pitch, and the presence of voicing, stop closures, or fricatives) can be interpreted directly from the waveform, most computational applications such as speech recognition (as well as human auditory processing) are based on a different representation of the sound in terms of its component frequencies. The insight of **Fourier analysis** is that every complex wave can be represented as a sum of many sine waves of different frequencies. Consider the waveform in Fig. 25.15. This waveform was created (in Praat) by summing two sine waveforms, one of frequency 10 Hz and one of frequency 100 Hz.



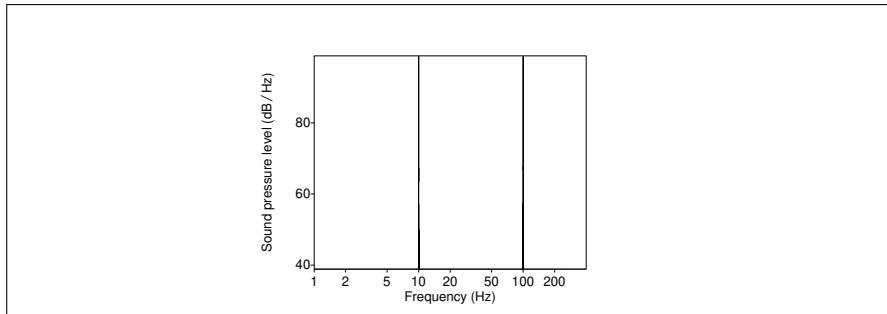
**Figure 25.15** A waveform that is the sum of two sine waveforms, one of frequency 10 Hz (note five repetitions in the half-second window) and one of frequency 100 Hz, both of amplitude 1.

#### spectrum

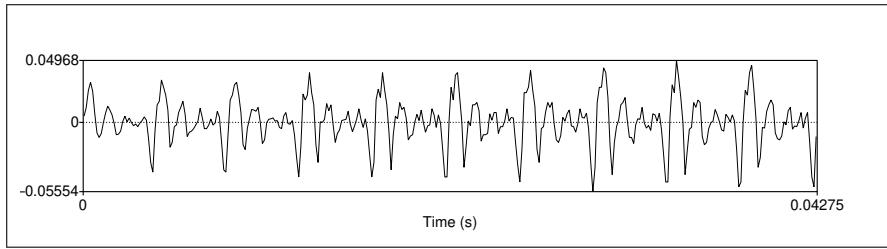
We can represent these two component frequencies with a **spectrum**. The spectrum of a signal is a representation of each of its frequency components and their amplitudes. Figure 25.16 shows the spectrum of Fig. 25.15. Frequency in Hz is on the x-axis and amplitude on the y-axis. Note the two spikes in the figure, one at 10 Hz and one at 100 Hz. Thus, the spectrum is an alternative representation of the original waveform, and we use the spectrum as a tool to study the component frequencies of a sound wave at a particular time point.

Let’s look now at the frequency components of a speech waveform. Figure 25.17 shows part of the waveform for the vowel [ae] of the word *had*, cut out from the sentence shown in Fig. 25.13.

Note that there is a complex wave that repeats about ten times in the figure; but there is also a smaller repeated wave that repeats four times for every larger pattern (notice the four small peaks inside each repeated wave). The complex wave has a frequency of about 234 Hz (we can figure this out since it repeats roughly 10 times



**Figure 25.16** The spectrum of the waveform in Fig. 25.15.

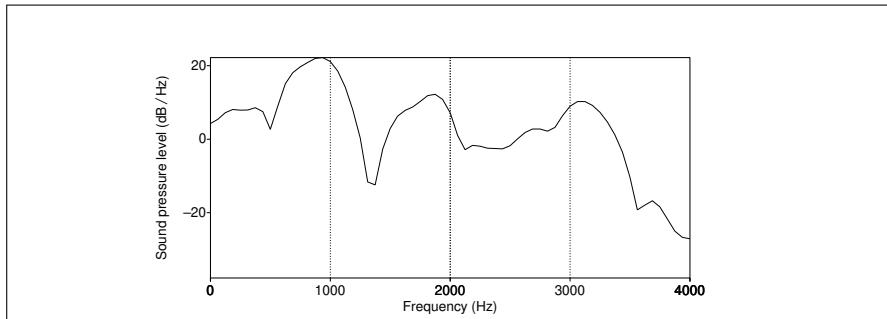


**Figure 25.17** The waveform of part of the vowel [ae] from the word *had* cut out from the waveform shown in Fig. 25.13.

in .0427 seconds, and 10 cycles/.0427 seconds = 234 Hz).

The smaller wave then should have a frequency of roughly four times the frequency of the larger wave, or roughly 936 Hz. Then, if you look carefully, you can see two little waves on the peak of many of the 936 Hz waves. The frequency of this tiniest wave must be roughly twice that of the 936 Hz wave, hence 1872 Hz.

Figure 25.18 shows a smoothed spectrum for the waveform in Fig. 25.17, computed with a discrete Fourier transform (DFT).



**Figure 25.18** A spectrum for the vowel [ae] from the word *had* in the waveform of *She just had a baby* in Fig. 25.13.

The *x*-axis of a spectrum shows frequency, and the *y*-axis shows some measure of the magnitude of each frequency component (in decibels (dB), a logarithmic measure of amplitude that we saw earlier). Thus, Fig. 25.18 shows significant frequency components at around 930 Hz, 1860 Hz, and 3020 Hz, along with many other lower-magnitude frequency components. These first two components are just what we noticed in the time domain by looking at the wave in Fig. 25.17!

Why is a spectrum useful? It turns out that these spectral peaks that are easily visible in a spectrum are characteristic of different phones; phones have characteris-

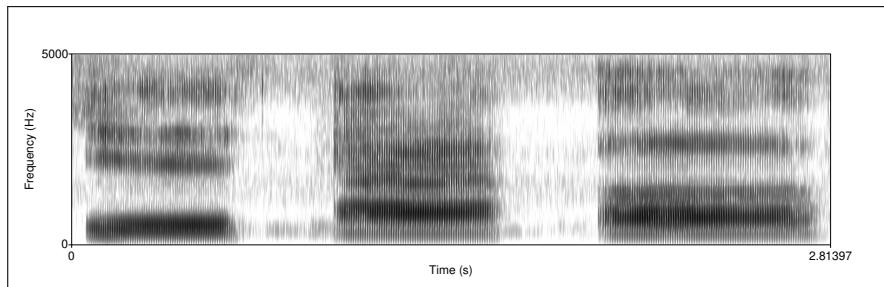
cochlea

spectrogram

tic spectral “signatures”. Just as chemical elements give off different wavelengths of light when they burn, allowing us to detect elements in stars by looking at the spectrum of the light, we can detect the characteristic signature of the different phones by looking at the spectrum of a waveform. This use of spectral information is essential to both human and machine speech recognition. In human audition, the function of the **cochlea**, or **inner ear**, is to compute a spectrum of the incoming waveform. Similarly, the acoustic features used in speech recognition are spectral representations.

Let’s look at the spectrum of different vowels. Since some vowels change over time, we’ll use a different kind of plot called a **spectrogram**. While a spectrum shows the frequency components of a wave at one point in time, a **spectrogram** is a way of envisioning how the different frequencies that make up a waveform change over time. The *x*-axis shows time, as it did for the waveform, but the *y*-axis now shows frequencies in hertz. The darkness of a point on a spectrogram corresponds to the amplitude of the frequency component. Very dark points have high amplitude, light points have low amplitude. Thus, the spectrogram is a useful way of visualizing the three dimensions (time  $\times$  frequency  $\times$  amplitude).

Figure 25.19 shows spectrograms of three American English vowels, [ih], [ae], and [ah]. Note that each vowel has a set of dark bars at various frequency bands, slightly different bands for each vowel. Each of these represents the same kind of spectral peak that we saw in Fig. 25.17.



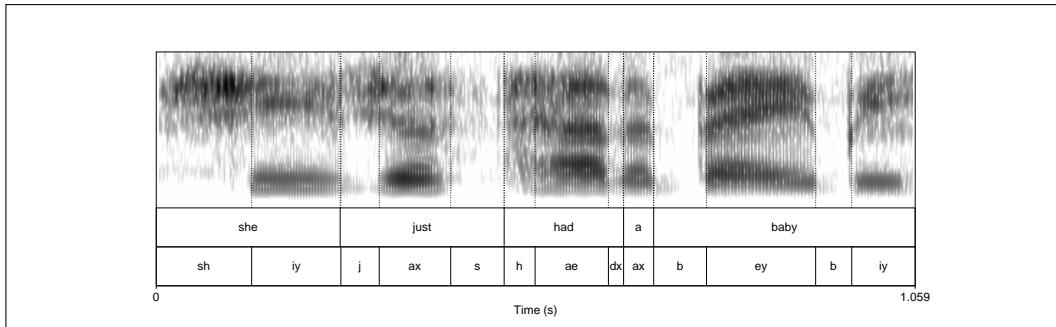
**Figure 25.19** Spectrograms for three American English vowels, [ih], [ae], and [uh]

formant

Each dark bar (or spectral peak) is called a **formant**. As we discuss below, a formant is a frequency band that is particularly amplified by the vocal tract. Since different vowels are produced with the vocal tract in different positions, they will produce different kinds of amplifications or resonances. Let’s look at the first two formants, called F1 and F2. Note that F1, the dark bar closest to the bottom, is in a different position for the three vowels; it’s low for [ih] (centered at about 470 Hz) and somewhat higher for [ae] and [ah] (somewhere around 800 Hz). By contrast, F2, the second dark bar from the bottom, is highest for [ih], in the middle for [ae], and lowest for [ah].

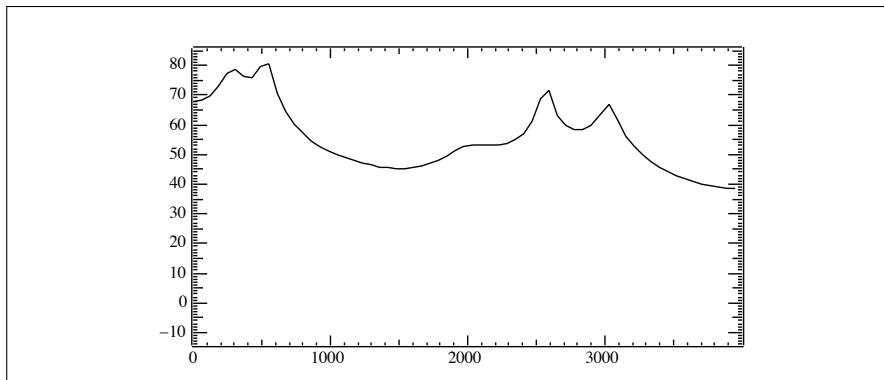
We can see the same formants in running speech, although the reduction and coarticulation processes make them somewhat harder to see. Figure 25.20 shows the spectrogram of “she just had a baby”, whose waveform was shown in Fig. 25.13. F1 and F2 (and also F3) are pretty clear for the [ax] of *just*, the [ae] of *had*, and the [ey] of *baby*.

What specific clues can spectral representations give for phone identification? First, since different vowels have their formants at characteristic places, the spectrum can distinguish vowels from each other. We’ve seen that [ae] in the sample waveform had formants at 930 Hz, 1860 Hz, and 3020 Hz. Consider the vowel [iy] at the



**Figure 25.20** A spectrogram of the sentence “she just had a baby” whose waveform was shown in Fig. 25.13. We can think of a spectrogram as a collection of spectra (time slices), like Fig. 25.18 placed end to end.

beginning of the utterance in Fig. 25.13. The spectrum for this vowel is shown in Fig. 25.21. The first formant of [iy] is 540 Hz, much lower than the first formant for [ae], and the second formant (2581 Hz) is much higher than the second formant for [ae]. If you look carefully, you can see these formants as dark bars in Fig. 25.20 just around 0.5 seconds.



**Figure 25.21** A smoothed (LPC) spectrum for the vowel [iy] at the start of *She just had a baby*. Note that the first formant (540 Hz) is much lower than the first formant for [ae] shown in Fig. 25.18, and the second formant (2581 Hz) is much higher than the second formant for [ae].

The location of the first two formants (called F1 and F2) plays a large role in determining vowel identity, although the formants still differ from speaker to speaker. Higher formants tend to be caused more by general characteristics of a speaker’s vocal tract rather than by individual vowels. Formants also can be used to identify the nasal phones [n], [m], and [ng] and the liquids [l] and [r].

### 25.4.6 The Source-Filter Model

source-filter model

Why do different vowels have different spectral signatures? As we briefly mentioned above, the formants are caused by the resonant cavities of the mouth. The **source-filter model** is a way of explaining the acoustics of a sound by modeling how the pulses produced by the glottis (the **source**) are shaped by the vocal tract (the **filter**).

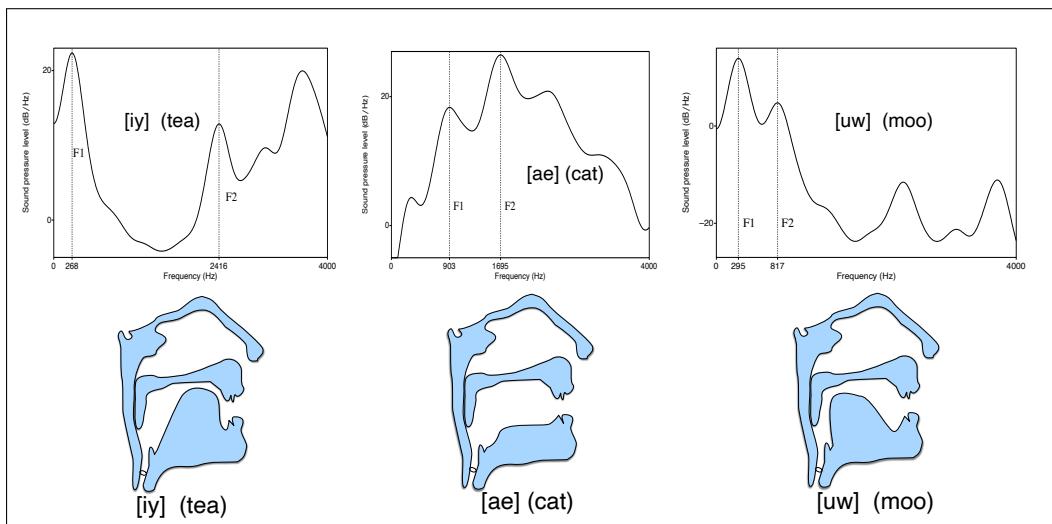
Let’s see how this works. Whenever we have a wave such as the vibration in air caused by the glottal pulse, the wave also has **harmonics**. A harmonic is another wave whose frequency is a multiple of the fundamental wave. Thus, for example, a

115 Hz glottal fold vibration leads to harmonics (other waves) of 230 Hz, 345 Hz, 460 Hz, and so on on. In general, each of these waves will be weaker, that is, will have much less amplitude than the wave at the fundamental frequency.

It turns out, however, that the vocal tract acts as a kind of filter or amplifier; indeed any cavity, such as a tube, causes waves of certain frequencies to be amplified and others to be damped. This amplification process is caused by the shape of the cavity; a given shape will cause sounds of a certain frequency to resonate and hence be amplified. Thus, by changing the shape of the cavity, we can cause different frequencies to be amplified.

When we produce particular vowels, we are essentially changing the shape of the vocal tract cavity by placing the tongue and the other articulators in particular positions. The result is that different vowels cause different harmonics to be amplified. So a wave of the same fundamental frequency passed through different vocal tract positions will result in different harmonics being amplified.

We can see the result of this amplification by looking at the relationship between the shape of the vocal tract and the corresponding spectrum. Figure 25.22 shows the vocal tract position for three vowels and a typical resulting spectrum. The formants are places in the spectrum where the vocal tract happens to amplify particular harmonic frequencies.



**Figure 25.22** Visualizing the vocal tract position as a filter: the tongue positions for three English vowels and the resulting smoothed spectra showing F1 and F2.

## 25.5 Phonetic Resources

### pronunciation dictionary

A wide variety of phonetic resources can be drawn on for computational work. On-line **pronunciation dictionaries** give phonetic transcriptions for words. The LDC distributes pronunciation lexicons for Egyptian Arabic, Dutch, English, German, Japanese, Korean, Mandarin, and Spanish. For English, the CELEX dictionary ([Baayen et al., 1995](#)) has pronunciations for 160,595 wordforms, with syllabification, stress, and morphological and part-of-speech information. The open-source CMU Pronouncing Dictionary ([CMU, 1993](#)) has pronunciations for about 134,000

wordforms, while the fine-grained 110,000 word UNISYN dictionary (Fitt, 2002), freely available for research purposes, gives syllabifications, stress, and also pronunciations for dozens of dialects of English.

Another useful resource is a **phonetically annotated corpus**, in which a collection of waveforms is hand-labeled with the corresponding string of phones. The **TIMIT corpus** (NIST, 1990), originally a joint project between Texas Instruments (TI), MIT, and SRI, is a corpus of 6300 read sentences, with 10 sentences each from 630 speakers. The 6300 sentences were drawn from a set of 2342 sentences, some selected to have particular dialect shibboleths, others to maximize phonetic diphone coverage. Each sentence in the corpus was phonetically hand-labeled, the sequence of phones was automatically aligned with the sentence waveform, and then the automatic phone boundaries were manually hand-corrected (Seneff and Zue, 1988). The result is a **time-aligned transcription**: a transcription in which each phone is associated with a start and end time in the waveform, like the example in Fig. 25.23.

she	had	your	dark	suit	in	greasy	wash	water	all	year
sh iy	hv ae dcl	jh axr	dcl d aa r kcl	s ux q	en	gcl g r iy s ix	w aa sh	q w aa dx axr q	aa l	y ix axr

**Figure 25.23** Phonetic transcription from the TIMIT corpus, using special ARPAbet features for narrow transcription, such as the palatalization of [d] in *had*, unreleased final stop in *dark*, glottalization of final [t] in *suit* to [q], and flap of [t] in *water*. The TIMIT corpus also includes time-alignments (not shown).

The Switchboard Transcription Project phonetically annotated corpus consists of 3.5 hours of sentences extracted from the Switchboard corpus (Greenberg et al., 1996), together with transcriptions time-aligned at the syllable level. Figure 25.24 shows an example .

0.470	0.640	0.720	0.900	0.953	1.279	1.410	1.630
dh er	k aa	n ax	v ih m	b ix	t w iy n	r ay	n aw

**Figure 25.24** Phonetic transcription of the Switchboard phrase *they're kind of in between right now*. Note vowel reduction in *they're* and *of*, coda deletion in *kind* and *right*, and re-syllabification (the [v] of *of* attaches as the onset of *in*). Time is given in number of seconds from the beginning of sentence to the start of each syllable.

The Buckeye corpus (Pitt et al. 2007, Pitt et al. 2005) is a phonetically transcribed corpus of spontaneous American speech, containing about 300,000 words from 40 talkers. Phonetically transcribed corpora are also available for other languages, including the Kiel corpus of German and Mandarin corpora transcribed by the Chinese Academy of Social Sciences (Li et al., 2000).

In addition to resources like dictionaries and corpora, there are many useful phonetic software tools. Many of the figures in this book were generated by the Praat package (Boersma and Weenink, 2005), which includes pitch, spectral, and formant analysis, as well as a scripting language.

## 25.6 Summary

This chapter has introduced many of the important concepts of phonetics and computational phonetics.

- We can represent the pronunciation of words in terms of units called **phones**. The standard system for representing phones is the **International Phonetic**

**Alphabet or IPA.** The most common computational system for transcription of English is the **ARPAbet**, which conveniently uses ASCII symbols.

- Phones can be described by how they are produced **articulatorily** by the vocal organs; consonants are defined in terms of their **place** and **manner** of articulation and **voicing**; vowels by their **height**, **backness**, and **roundness**.
- Speech sounds can also be described **acoustically**. Sound waves can be described in terms of **frequency**, **amplitude**, or their perceptual correlates, **pitch** and **loudness**.
- The **spectrum** of a sound describes its different frequency components. While some phonetic properties are recognizable from the waveform, both humans and machines rely on spectral analysis for phone detection.
- A **spectrogram** is a plot of a spectrum over time. Vowels are described by characteristic harmonics called **formants**.

## Bibliographical and Historical Notes

The major insights of articulatory phonetics date to the linguists of 800–150 B.C. India. They invented the concepts of place and manner of articulation, worked out the glottal mechanism of voicing, and understood the concept of assimilation. European science did not catch up with the Indian phoneticians until over 2000 years later, in the late 19th century. The Greeks did have some rudimentary phonetic knowledge; by the time of Plato’s *Theaetetus* and *Cratylus*, for example, they distinguished vowels from consonants, and stop consonants from continuants. The Stoics developed the idea of the syllable and were aware of phonotactic constraints on possible words. An unknown Icelandic scholar of the 12th century exploited the concept of the phoneme and proposed a phonemic writing system for Icelandic, including diacritics for length and nasality. But his text remained unpublished until 1818 and even then was largely unknown outside Scandinavia (Robins, 1967). The modern era of phonetics is usually said to have begun with Sweet, who proposed what is essentially the phoneme in his *Handbook of Phonetics* (1877). He also devised an alphabet for transcription and distinguished between *broad* and *narrow* transcription, proposing many ideas that were eventually incorporated into the IPA. Sweet was considered the best practicing phonetician of his time; he made the first scientific recordings of languages for phonetic purposes and advanced the state of the art of articulatory description. He was also infamously difficult to get along with, a trait that is well captured in Henry Higgins, the stage character that George Bernard Shaw modeled after him. The phoneme was first named by the Polish scholar Baudouin de Courtenay, who published his theories in 1894.

Introductory phonetics textbooks include [Ladefoged \(1993\)](#) and [Clark and Yallop \(1995\)](#). [Wells \(1982\)](#) is the definitive three-volume source on dialects of English.

Many of the classic insights in acoustic phonetics had been developed by the late 1950s or early 1960s; just a few highlights include techniques like the sound spectrograph ([Koenig et al., 1946](#)), theoretical insights like the working out of the source-filter theory and other issues in the mapping between articulation and acoustics ([Fant, 1960](#), [Stevens et al. 1953](#), [Stevens and House 1955](#), [Heinz and Stevens 1961](#), [Stevens and House 1961](#)) the F1xF2 space of vowel formants ([Peterson and Barney, 1952](#)), the understanding of the phonetic nature of stress and the use of duration and intensity as cues ([Fry, 1955](#)), and a basic understanding of issues in phone perception ([Miller and Nicely 1955](#), [Liberman et al. 1952](#)). [Lehiste \(1967\)](#) is a collection

of classic papers on acoustic phonetics. Many of the seminal papers of Gunnar Fant have been collected in [Fant \(2004\)](#).

Excellent textbooks on acoustic phonetics include [Johnson \(2003\)](#) and [Ladefoged \(1996\)](#). [Coleman \(2005\)](#) includes an introduction to computational processing of acoustics and speech from a linguistic perspective. [Stevens \(1998\)](#) lays out an influential theory of speech sound production. There are a number of software packages for acoustic phonetic analysis. Probably the most widely used one is **Praat** ([Boersma and Weenink, 2005](#)).

## Exercises

**25.1** Find the mistakes in the ARPAbet transcriptions of the following words:

- |                      |                                 |                        |
|----------------------|---------------------------------|------------------------|
| a. “three” [dh r i]  | d. “study” [s t uh d i]         | g. “slight” [s l iy t] |
| b. “sing” [s ih n g] | e. “though” [th ow]             |                        |
| c. “eyes” [ay s]     | f. “planning” [p pl aa n ih ng] |                        |

**25.2** Ira Gershwin’s lyric for *Let’s Call the Whole Thing Off* talks about two pronunciations (each) of the words “tomato”, “potato”, and “either”. Transcribe into the ARPAbet both pronunciations of each of these three words.

**25.3** Transcribe the following words in the ARPAbet:

1. dark
2. suit
3. greasy
4. wash
5. water

**25.4** Take a wavefile of your choice. Some examples are on the textbook website. Download the Praat software, and use it to transcribe the wavefiles at the word level and into ARPAbet phones, using Praat to help you play pieces of each wavefile and to look at the wavefile and the spectrogram.

**25.5** Record yourself saying five of the English vowels: [aa], [eh], [ae], [iy], [uw]. Find F1 and F2 for each of your vowels.

CHAPTER

# 26 Automatic Speech Recognition and Text-to-Speech

I KNOW not whether  
 I see your meaning: if I do, it lies  
 Upon the wordy wavelets of your voice,  
 Dim as an evening shadow in a brook,

Thomas Lovell Beddoes, 1851

Understanding spoken language, or at least transcribing the words into writing, is one of the earliest goals of computer language processing. In fact, speech processing predates the computer by many decades!

The first machine that recognized speech was a toy from the 1920s. “Radio Rex”, shown to the right, was a celluloid dog that moved (by means of a spring) when the spring was released by 500 Hz acoustic energy. Since 500 Hz is roughly the first formant of the vowel [eh] in “Rex”, Rex seemed to come when he was called (David, Jr. and Selfridge, 1962).



In modern times, we expect more of our automatic systems. The task of **automatic speech recognition (ASR)** is to map any waveform like this:



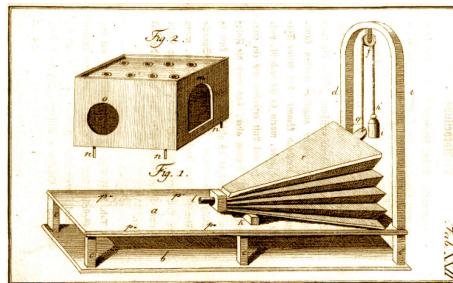
to the appropriate string of words:

It's time for lunch!

Automatic transcription of speech by any speaker in any environment is still far from solved, but ASR technology has matured to the point where it is now viable for many practical tasks. Speech is a natural interface for communicating with smart home appliances, personal assistants, or cellphones, where keyboards are less convenient, in telephony applications like call-routing (“Accounting, please”) or in sophisticated dialogue applications (“I’d like to change the return date of my flight”). ASR is also useful for general transcription, for example for automatically generating captions for audio or video text (transcribing movies or videos or live discussions). Transcription is important in fields like law where dictation plays an important role. Finally, ASR is important as part of augmentative communication (interaction between computers and humans with some disability resulting in difficulties or inability in typing or audition). The blind Milton famously dictated *Paradise Lost* to his daughters, and Henry James dictated his later novels after a repetitive stress injury.

What about the opposite problem, going from text to speech? This is a problem with an even longer history. In Vienna in 1769, Wolfgang von Kempelen built for the Empress Maria Theresa the famous Mechanical Turk, a chess-playing automaton consisting of a wooden box filled with gears, behind which sat a robot mannequin who played chess by moving pieces with his mechanical arm. The Turk toured Europe and the Americas for decades, defeating Napoleon Bonaparte and even playing Charles Babbage. The Mechanical Turk might have been one of the early successes of artificial intelligence were it not for the fact that it was, alas, a hoax, powered by a human chess player hidden inside the box.

What is less well known is that von Kempelen, an extraordinarily prolific inventor, also built between 1769 and 1790 what was definitely not a hoax: the first full-sentence speech synthesizer, shown partially to the right. His device consisted of a bellows to simulate the lungs, a rubber mouthpiece and a nose aperture, a reed to simulate the vocal folds, various whistles for the fricatives, and a small auxiliary bellows to provide the puff of air for plosives. By moving levers with both hands to open and close apertures, and adjusting the flexible leather “vocal tract”, an operator could produce different consonants and vowels.



More than two centuries later, we no longer build our synthesizers out of wood and leather, nor do we need human operators. The modern task of **speech synthesis**, also called **text-to-speech** or **TTS**, is exactly the reverse of ASR; to map text:

speech  
synthesis  
text-to-speech  
**TTS**

It's time for lunch!

to an acoustic waveform:



Modern speech synthesis has a wide variety of applications. TTS is used in conversational agents that conduct dialogues with people, plays a role in devices that read out loud for the blind or in games, and can be used to speak for sufferers of neurological disorders, such as the late astrophysicist Steven Hawking who, after he lost the use of his voice because of ALS, spoke by manipulating a TTS system.

In the next sections we'll show how to do ASR with encoder-decoders, introduce the CTC loss functions, the standard **word error rate** evaluation metric, and describe how acoustic features are extracted. We'll then see how TTS can be modeled with almost the same algorithm in reverse, and conclude with a brief mention of other speech tasks.

## 26.1 The Automatic Speech Recognition Task

**digit  
recognition**

Before describing algorithms for ASR, let's talk about how the task itself varies. One dimension of variation is vocabulary size. Some ASR tasks can be solved with extremely high accuracy, like those with a 2-word vocabulary (*yes* versus *no*) or an 11 word vocabulary like **digit recognition** (recognizing sequences of digits in-

cluding *zero* to *nine* plus *oh*). Open-ended tasks like transcribing videos or human conversations, with large vocabularies of up to 60,000 words, are much harder.

A second dimension of variation is who the speaker is talking to. Humans speaking to machines (either dictating or talking to a dialogue system) are easier to recognize than humans speaking to humans. **Read speech**, in which humans are reading out loud, for example in audio books, is also relatively easy to recognize. Recognizing the speech of two humans talking to each other in **conversational speech**, for example, for transcribing a business meeting, is the hardest. It seems that when humans talk to machines, or read without an audience present, they simplify their speech quite a bit, talking more slowly and more clearly.

A third dimension of variation is channel and noise. Speech is easier to recognize if its recorded in a quiet room with head-mounted microphones than if it's recorded by a distant microphone on a noisy city street, or in a car with the window open.

A final dimension of variation is accent or speaker-class characteristics. Speech is easier to recognize if the speaker is speaking the same dialect or variety that the system was trained on. Speech by speakers of regional or ethnic dialects, or speech by children can be quite difficult to recognize if the system is only trained on speakers of standard dialects, or only adult speakers.

A number of publicly available corpora with human-created transcripts are used to create ASR test and training sets to explore this variation; we mention a few of them here since you will encounter them in the literature. **LibriSpeech** is a large open-source read-speech 16 kHz dataset with over 1000 hours of audio books from the LibriVox project, with transcripts aligned at the sentence level ([Panayotov et al., 2015](#)). It is divided into an easier (“clean”) and a more difficult portion (“other”) with the clean portion of higher recording quality and with accents closer to US English. This was done by running a speech recognizer (trained on read speech from the Wall Street Journal) on all the audio, computing the WER for each speaker based on the gold transcripts, and dividing the speakers roughly in half, with recordings from lower-WER speakers called “clean” and recordings from higher-WER speakers “other”.

#### **LibriSpeech**

The **Switchboard** corpus of prompted telephone conversations between strangers was collected in the early 1990s; it contains 2430 conversations averaging 6 minutes each, totaling 240 hours of 8 kHz speech and about 3 million words ([Godfrey et al., 1992](#)). Switchboard has the singular advantage of an enormous amount of auxiliary hand-done linguistic labeling, including parses, dialogue act tags, phonetic and prosodic labeling, and discourse and information structure. The **CALLHOME** corpus was collected in the late 1990s and consists of 120 unscripted 30-minute telephone conversations between native speakers of English who were usually close friends or family ([Canavan et al., 1997](#)).

#### **CALLHOME**

The Santa Barbara Corpus of Spoken American English ([Du Bois et al., 2005](#)) is a large corpus of naturally occurring everyday spoken interactions from all over the United States, mostly face-to-face conversation, but also town-hall meetings, food preparation, on-the-job talk, and classroom lectures. The corpus was anonymized by removing personal names and other identifying information (replaced by pseudonyms in the transcripts, and masked in the audio).

#### **CORAAL**

**CORAAL** is a collection of over 150 sociolinguistic interviews with African American speakers, with the goal of studying African American Language (AAL), the many variations of language used in African American communities ([Kendall and Farrington, 2020](#)). The interviews are anonymized with transcripts aligned at the utterance level. The **CHiME** Challenge is a series of difficult shared tasks with

#### **CHiME**

#### **read speech**

#### **conversational speech**

#### **Switchboard**

#### **CHiME**

**HKUST**

**AISHELL-1**

corpora that deal with robustness in ASR. The CHiME 5 task, for example, is ASR of conversational speech in real home environments (specifically dinner parties). The corpus contains recordings of twenty different dinner parties in real homes, each with four participants, and in three locations (kitchen, dining area, living room), recorded both with distant room microphones and with body-worn mikes. The **HKUST** Mandarin Telephone Speech corpus has 1206 ten-minute telephone conversations between speakers of Mandarin across China, including transcripts of the conversations, which are between either friends or strangers (Liu et al., 2006). The **AISHELL-1** corpus contains 170 hours of Mandarin read speech of sentences taken from various domains, read by different speakers mainly from northern China (Bu et al., 2017).

Figure 26.1 shows the rough percentage of incorrect words (the **word error rate**, or WER, defined on page 562) from state-of-the-art systems on some of these tasks. Note that the error rate on read speech (like the LibriSpeech audiobook corpus) is around 2%; this is a solved task, although these numbers come from systems that require enormous computational resources. By contrast, the error rate for transcribing conversations between humans is much higher; 5.8 to 11% for the Switchboard and CALLHOME corpora. The error rate is higher yet again for speakers of varieties like African American Vernacular English, and yet again for difficult conversational tasks like transcription of 4-speaker dinner party speech, which can have error rates as high as 81.3%. Character error rates (CER) are also much lower for read Mandarin speech than for natural conversation.

English Tasks	WER%
LibriSpeech audiobooks 960hour clean	1.4
LibriSpeech audiobooks 960hour other	2.6
Switchboard telephone conversations between strangers	5.8
CALLHOME telephone conversations between family	11.0
Sociolinguistic interviews, CORAAL (AAL)	27.0
CHiMe5 dinner parties with body-worn microphones	47.9
CHiMe5 dinner parties with distant microphones	81.3
Chinese (Mandarin) Tasks	CER%
AISHELL-1 Mandarin read speech corpus	6.7
HKUST Mandarin Chinese telephone conversations	23.5

**Figure 26.1** Rough Word Error Rates (WER = % of words misrecognized) reported around 2020 for ASR on various American English recognition tasks, and character error rates (CER) for two Chinese recognition tasks.

## 26.2 Feature Extraction for ASR: Log Mel Spectrum

**feature vector**

The first step in ASR is to transform the input waveform into a sequence of acoustic **feature vectors**, each vector representing the information in a small time window of the signal. Let's see how to convert a raw wavefile to the most commonly used features, sequences of **log mel spectrum** vectors. A speech signal processing course is recommended for more details.

### 26.2.1 Sampling and Quantization

Recall from Section 25.4.2 that the first step is to convert the analog representations (first air pressure and then analog electric signals in a microphone) into a digital signal. This **analog-to-digital conversion** has two steps: **sampling** and **quantization**. A signal is sampled by measuring its amplitude at a particular time; the **sampling rate** is the number of samples taken per second. To accurately measure a wave, we must have at least two samples in each cycle: one measuring the positive part of the wave and one measuring the negative part. More than two samples per cycle increases the amplitude accuracy, but less than two samples will cause the frequency of the wave to be completely missed. Thus, the maximum frequency wave that can be measured is one whose frequency is half the sample rate (since every cycle needs two samples). This maximum frequency for a given sampling rate is called the **Nyquist frequency**. Most information in human speech is in frequencies below 10,000 Hz, so a 20,000 Hz sampling rate would be necessary for complete accuracy. But telephone speech is filtered by the switching network, and only frequencies less than 4,000 Hz are transmitted by telephones. Thus, an 8,000 Hz sampling rate is sufficient for **telephone-bandwidth** speech, and 16,000 Hz for microphone speech.

Although using higher sampling rates produces higher ASR accuracy, we can't combine different sampling rates for training and testing ASR systems. Thus if we are testing on a telephone corpus like Switchboard (8 KHz sampling), we must downsample our training corpus to 8 KHz. Similarly, if we are training on multiple corpora and one of them includes telephone speech, we downsample all the wideband corpora to 8Khz.

Amplitude measurements are stored as integers, either 8 bit (values from -128–127) or 16 bit (values from -32768–32767). This process of representing real-valued numbers as integers is called **quantization**; all values that are closer together than the minimum granularity (the quantum size) are represented identically. We refer to each sample at time index  $n$  in the digitized, quantized waveform as  $x[n]$ .

### 26.2.2 Windowing

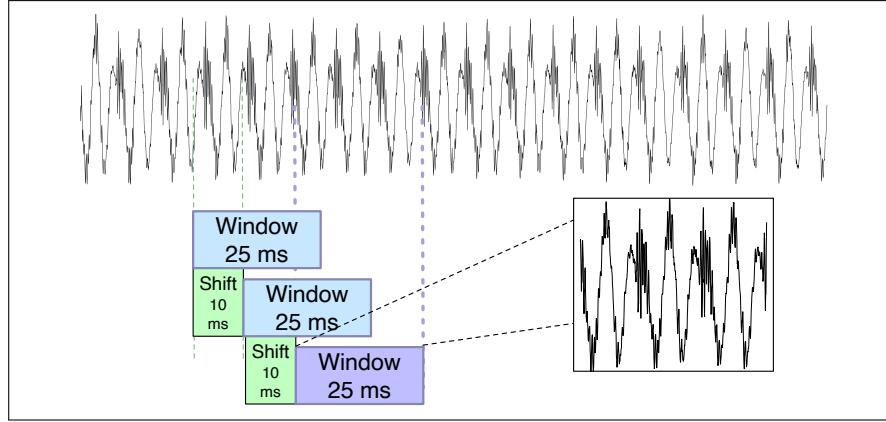
From the digitized, quantized representation of the waveform, we need to extract spectral features from a small **window** of speech that characterizes part of a particular phoneme. Inside this small window, we can roughly think of the signal as **stationary** (that is, its statistical properties are constant within this region). (By contrast, in general, speech is a **non-stationary** signal, meaning that its statistical properties are not constant over time). We extract this roughly stationary portion of speech by using a window which is non-zero inside a region and zero elsewhere, running this window across the speech signal and multiplying it by the input waveform to produce a windowed waveform.

The speech extracted from each window is called a **frame**. The windowing is characterized by three parameters: the **window size** or **frame size** of the window (its width in milliseconds), the **frame stride**, (also called **shift** or **offset**) between successive windows, and the **shape** of the window.

To extract the signal we multiply the value of the signal at time  $n$ ,  $s[n]$  by the value of the window at time  $n$ ,  $w[n]$ :

$$y[n] = w[n]s[n] \quad (26.1)$$

The window shape sketched in Fig. 26.2 is **rectangular**; you can see the extracted windowed signal looks just like the original signal. The rectangular window,

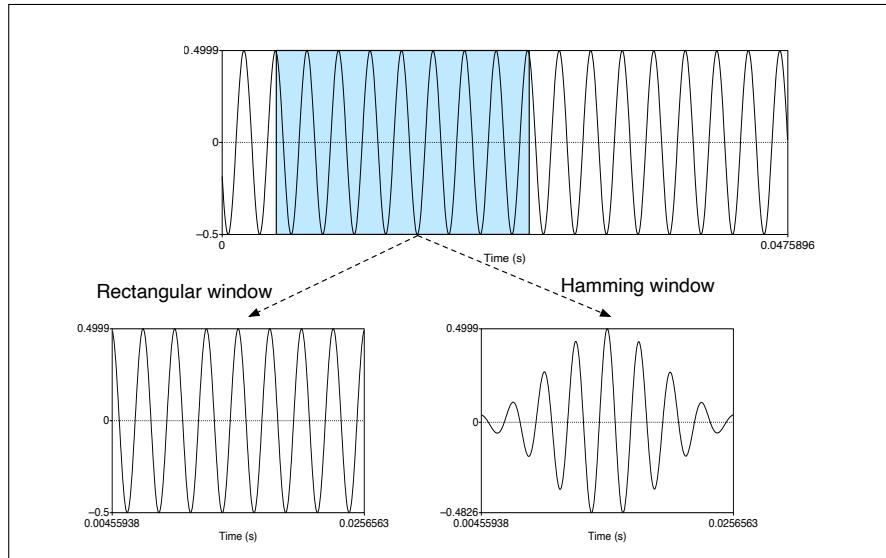


**Figure 26.2** Windowing, showing a 25 ms rectangular window with a 10ms stride.

however, abruptly cuts off the signal at its boundaries, which creates problems when we do Fourier analysis. For this reason, for acoustic feature creation we more commonly use the **Hamming** window, which shrinks the values of the signal toward zero at the window boundaries, avoiding discontinuities. Figure 26.3 shows both; the equations are as follows (assuming a window that is  $L$  frames long):

$$\text{rectangular} \quad w[n] = \begin{cases} 1 & 0 \leq n \leq L - 1 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \quad (26.2)$$

$$\text{Hamming} \quad w[n] = \begin{cases} 0.54 - 0.46 \cos\left(\frac{2\pi n}{L}\right) & 0 \leq n \leq L - 1 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \quad (26.3)$$



**Figure 26.3** Windowing a sine wave with the rectangular or Hamming windows.

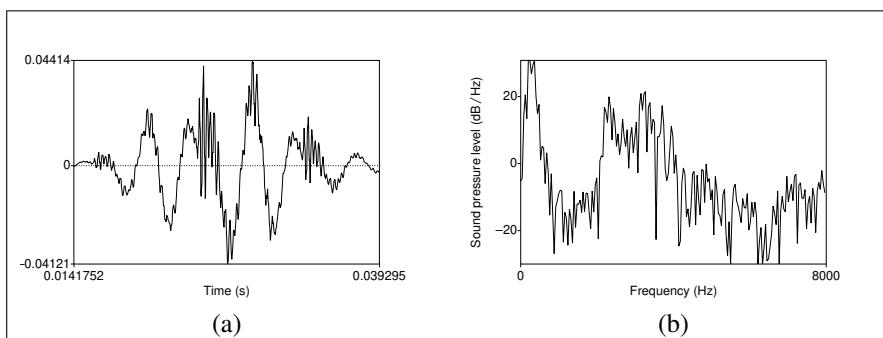
### 26.2.3 Discrete Fourier Transform

The next step is to extract spectral information for our windowed signal; we need to know how much energy the signal contains at different frequency bands. The tool

**Discrete Fourier transform DFT**

for extracting spectral information for discrete frequency bands for a discrete-time (sampled) signal is the **discrete Fourier transform or DFT**.

The input to the DFT is a windowed signal  $x[n] \dots x[m]$ , and the output, for each of  $N$  discrete frequency bands, is a complex number  $X[k]$  representing the magnitude and phase of that frequency component in the original signal. If we plot the magnitude against the frequency, we can visualize the **spectrum** that we introduced in Chapter 25. For example, Fig. 26.4 shows a 25 ms Hamming-windowed portion of a signal and its spectrum as computed by a DFT (with some additional smoothing).



**Figure 26.4** (a) A 25 ms Hamming-windowed portion of a signal from the vowel [iy] and (b) its spectrum computed by a DFT.

**Euler's formula**

We do not introduce the mathematical details of the DFT here, except to note that Fourier analysis relies on **Euler's formula**, with  $j$  as the imaginary unit:

$$e^{j\theta} = \cos \theta + j \sin \theta \quad (26.4)$$

As a brief reminder for those students who have already studied signal processing, the DFT is defined as follows:

$$X[k] = \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} x[n] e^{-j \frac{2\pi}{N} kn} \quad (26.5)$$

**fast Fourier transform FFT**

A commonly used algorithm for computing the DFT is the **fast Fourier transform or FFT**. This implementation of the DFT is very efficient but only works for values of  $N$  that are powers of 2.

#### 26.2.4 Mel Filter Bank and Log

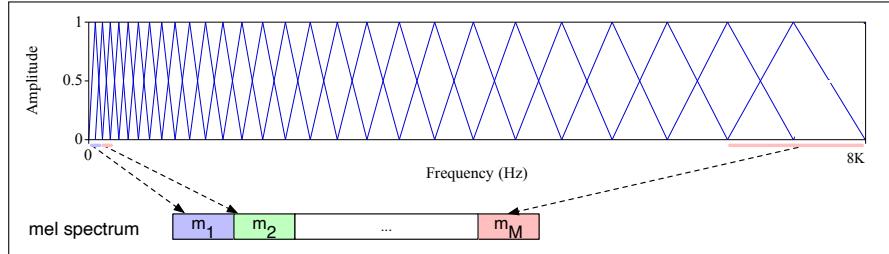
The results of the FFT tell us the energy at each frequency band. Human hearing, however, is not equally sensitive at all frequency bands; it is less sensitive at higher frequencies. This bias toward low frequencies helps human recognition, since information in low frequencies like formants is crucial for distinguishing values or nasals, while information in high frequencies like stop bursts or fricative noise is less crucial for successful recognition. Modeling this human perceptual property improves speech recognition performance in the same way.

We implement this intuition by collecting energies, not equally at each frequency band, but according to the **mel** scale, an auditory frequency scale (Chapter 25). A **mel** (Stevens et al. 1937, Stevens and Volkmann 1940) is a unit of pitch. Pairs of sounds that are perceptually equidistant in pitch are separated by an equal

number of mels. The mel frequency  $m$  can be computed from the raw acoustic frequency by a log transformation:

$$mel(f) = 1127 \ln\left(1 + \frac{f}{700}\right) \quad (26.6)$$

We implement this intuition by creating a bank of filters that collect energy from each frequency band, spread logarithmically so that we have very fine resolution at low frequencies, and less resolution at high frequencies. Figure 26.5 shows a sample bank of triangular filters that implement this idea, that can be multiplied by the spectrum to get a mel spectrum.



**Figure 26.5** The mel filter bank (Davis and Mermelstein, 1980). Each triangular filter, spaced logarithmically along the mel scale, collects energy from a given frequency range.

Finally, we take the log of each of the mel spectrum values. The human response to signal level is logarithmic (like the human response to frequency). Humans are less sensitive to slight differences in amplitude at high amplitudes than at low amplitudes. In addition, using a log makes the feature estimates less sensitive to variations in input such as power variations due to the speaker’s mouth moving closer or further from the microphone.

## 26.3 Speech Recognition Architecture

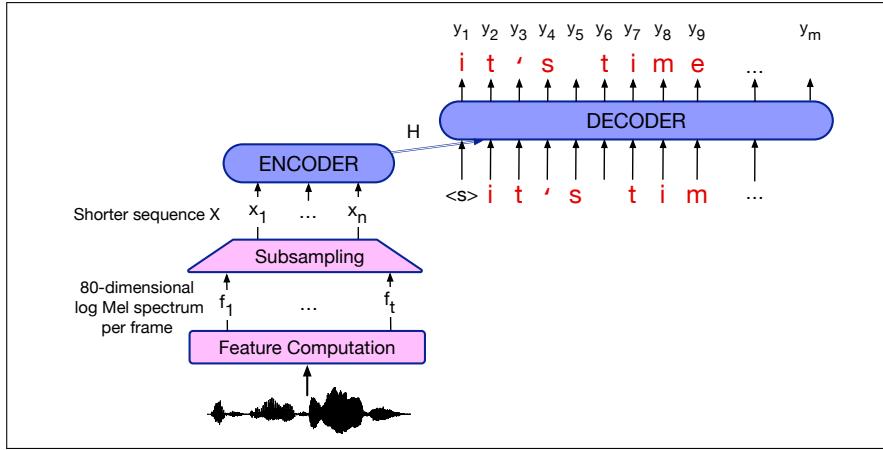
The basic architecture for ASR is the encoder-decoder (implemented with either RNNs or Transformers), exactly the same architecture introduced for MT in Chapter 11. Generally we start from the log mel spectral features described in the previous section, and map to letters, although it’s also possible to map to induced morpheme-like chunks like wordpieces or BPE.

AED  
listen attend  
and spell

Fig. 26.6 sketches the standard encoder-decoder architecture, which is commonly referred to as the **attention-based encoder decoder** or **AED**, or **listen attend and spell** (LAS) after the two papers which first applied it to speech (Chorowski et al. 2014, Chan et al. 2016). The input is a sequence of  $t$  acoustic feature vectors  $F = f_1, f_2, \dots, f_t$ , one vector per 10 ms frame. The output can be letters or wordpieces; we’ll assume letters here. Thus the output sequence  $Y = (\langle \text{SOS} \rangle, y_1, \dots, y_m \langle \text{EOS} \rangle)$ , assuming special start of sequence and end of sequence tokens  $\langle \text{sos} \rangle$  and  $\langle \text{eos} \rangle$ , and each  $y_i$  is a character; for English we might choose the set:

$$y_i \in \{a, b, c, \dots, z, 0, \dots, 9, \langle \text{space} \rangle, \langle \text{comma} \rangle, \langle \text{period} \rangle, \langle \text{apostrophe} \rangle, \langle \text{unk} \rangle\}$$

Of course the encoder-decoder architecture is particularly appropriate when input and output sequences have stark length differences, as they do for speech, with



**Figure 26.6** Schematic architecture for an encoder-decoder speech recognizer.

very long acoustic feature sequences mapping to much shorter sequences of letters or words. A single word might be 5 letters long but, supposing it lasts about 2 seconds, would take 200 acoustic frames (of 10ms each).

Because this length difference is so extreme for speech, encoder-decoder architectures for speech need to have a special compression stage that shortens the acoustic feature sequence before the encoder stage. (Alternatively, we can use a loss function that is designed to deal well with compression, like the CTC loss function we'll introduce in the next section.)

**low frame rate**

The goal of the subsampling is to produce a shorter sequence  $X = x_1, \dots, x_n$  that will be the input to the encoder. The simplest algorithm is a method sometimes called **low frame rate** (Pundak and Sainath, 2016): for time  $i$  we stack (concatenate) the acoustic feature vector  $f_i$  with the prior two vectors  $f_{i-1}$  and  $f_{i-2}$  to make a new vector three times longer. Then we simply delete  $f_{i-1}$  and  $f_{i-2}$ . Thus instead of (say) a 40-dimensional acoustic feature vector every 10 ms, we have a longer vector (say 120-dimensional) every 30 ms, with a shorter sequence length  $n = \frac{t}{3}$ .<sup>1</sup>

After this compression stage, encoder-decoders for speech use the same architecture as for MT or other text, composed of either RNNs (LSTMs) or Transformers.

For inference, the probability of the output string  $Y$  is decomposed as:

$$p(y_1, \dots, y_n) = \prod_{i=1}^n p(y_i | y_1, \dots, y_{i-1}, X) \quad (26.7)$$

We can produce each letter of the output via greedy decoding:

$$\hat{y}_i = \operatorname{argmax}_{\text{char} \in \text{Alphabet}} P(\text{char} | y_1 \dots y_{i-1}, X) \quad (26.8)$$

Alternatively we can use beam search as described in the next section. this is particularly relevant when we are adding a language model.

**Adding a language model** Since an encoder-decoder model is essentially a conditional language model, encoder-decoders implicitly learn a language model for the output domain of letters from their training data. However, the training data (speech

<sup>1</sup> There are also more complex alternatives for subsampling, like using a convolutional net that down-samples with max pooling, or layers of **pyramidal RNNs**, RNNs where each successive layer has half the number of RNNs as the previous layer.

paired with text transcriptions) may not include sufficient text to train a good language model. After all, it's easier to find enormous amounts of pure text training data than it is to find text paired with speech. Thus we can usually improve a model at least slightly by incorporating a very large language model.

The simplest way to do this is to use beam search to get a final beam of hypothesized sentences; this beam is sometimes called an **n-best list**. We then use a language model to **rescore** each hypothesis on the beam. The scoring is done by interpolating the score assigned by the language model with the encoder-decoder score used to create the beam, with a weight  $\lambda$  tuned on a held-out set. Also, since most models prefer shorter sentences, ASR systems normally have some way of adding a length factor. One way to do this is to normalize the probability by the number of characters in the hypothesis  $|Y|_c$ . The following is thus a typical scoring function (Chan et al., 2016):

$$\text{score}(Y|X) = \frac{1}{|Y|_c} \log P(Y|X) + \lambda \log P_{LM}(Y) \quad (26.9)$$

### 26.3.1 Learning

Encoder-decoders for speech are trained with the normal cross-entropy loss generally used for conditional language models. At timestep  $i$  of decoding, the loss is the log probability of the correct token (letter)  $y_i$ :

$$L_{CE} = -\log p(y_i|y_1, \dots, y_{i-1}, X) \quad (26.10)$$

The loss for the entire sentence is the sum of these losses:

$$L_{CE} = -\sum_{i=1}^m \log p(y_i|y_1, \dots, y_{i-1}, X) \quad (26.11)$$

This loss is then backpropagated through the entire end-to-end model to train the entire encoder-decoder.

As we described in Chapter 11, we normally use teacher forcing, in which the decoder history is forced to be the correct gold  $y_i$  rather than the predicted  $\hat{y}_i$ . It's also possible to use a mixture of the gold and decoder output, for example using the gold output 90% of the time, but with probability .1 taking the decoder output instead:

$$L_{CE} = -\log p(y_i|y_1, \dots, \hat{y}_{i-1}, X) \quad (26.12)$$

## 26.4 CTC

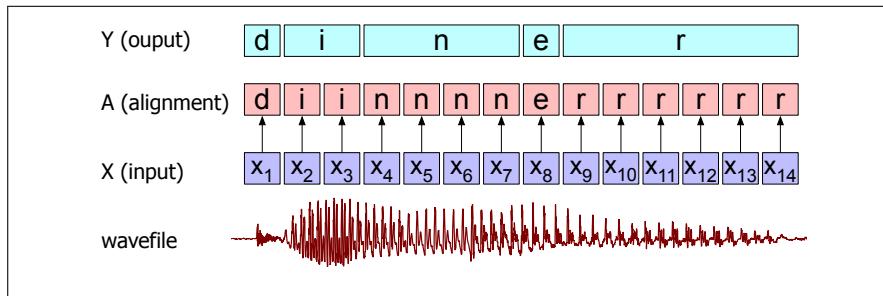
We pointed out in the previous section that speech recognition has two particular properties that make it very appropriate for the encoder-decoder architecture, where the encoder produces an encoding of the input that the decoder uses attention to explore. First, in speech we have a very long acoustic input sequence  $X$  mapping to a much shorter sequence of letters  $Y$ , and second, it's hard to know exactly which part of  $X$  maps to which part of  $Y$ .

In this section we briefly introduce an alternative to encoder-decoder: an algorithm and loss function called **CTC**, short for **Connectionist Temporal Classification**.

tion (Graves et al., 2006), that deals with these problems in a very different way. The intuition of CTC is to output a single character for every frame of the input, so that the output is the same length as the input, and then to apply a collapsing function that combines sequences of identical letters, resulting in a shorter sequence.

**alignment**

Let's imagine inference on someone saying the word *dinner*, and let's suppose we had a function that chooses the most probable letter for each input spectral frame representation  $x_i$ . We'll call the sequence of letters corresponding to each input frame an **alignment**, because it tells us where in the acoustic signal each letter aligns to. Fig. 26.7 shows one such alignment, and what happens if we use a collapsing function that just removes consecutive duplicate letters.

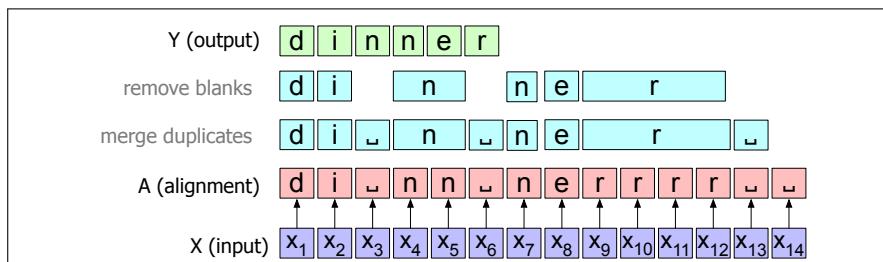


**Figure 26.7** A naive algorithm for collapsing an alignment between input and letters.

Well, that doesn't work; our naive algorithm has transcribed the speech as *diner*, not *dinner*! Collapsing doesn't handle double letters. There's also another problem with our naive function; it doesn't tell us what symbol to align with silence in the input. We don't want to be transcribing silence as random letters!

**blank**

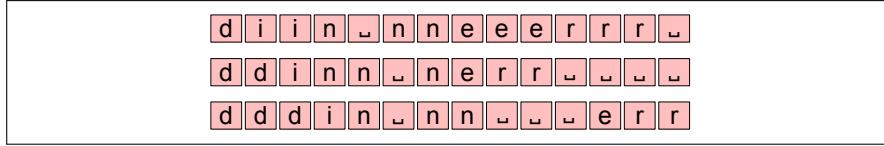
The CTC algorithm solves both problems by adding to the transcription alphabet a special symbol for a **blank**, which we'll represent as  $\_\_$ . The blank can be used in the alignment whenever we don't want to transcribe a letter. Blank can also be used between letters; since our collapsing function collapses only consecutive duplicate letters, it won't collapse across  $\_\_$ . More formally, let's define the mapping  $B : a \rightarrow y$  between an alignment  $a$  and an output  $y$ , which collapses all repeated letters and then removes all blanks. Fig. 26.8 sketches this collapsing function  $B$ .



**Figure 26.8** The CTC collapsing function  $B$ , showing the space blank character  $\_\_$ ; repeated (consecutive) characters in an alignment  $A$  are removed to form the output  $Y$ .

The CTC collapsing function is many-to-one; lots of different alignments map to the same output string. For example, the alignment shown in Fig. 26.8 is not the only alignment that results in the string *dinner*. Fig. 26.9 shows some other alignments that would produce the same output.

It's useful to think of the set of all alignments that might produce the same output  $Y$ . We'll use the inverse of our  $B$  function, called  $B^{-1}$ , and represent that set as



**Figure 26.9** Three other legitimate alignments producing the transcript *dinner*.

$$B^{-1}(Y).$$

### 26.4.1 CTC Inference

Before we see how to compute  $P_{\text{CTC}}(Y|X)$  let's first see how CTC assigns a probability to one particular alignment  $\hat{A} = \{\hat{a}_1, \dots, \hat{a}_n\}$ . CTC makes a strong conditional independence assumption: it assumes that, given the input  $X$ , the CTC model output  $a_t$  at time  $t$  is independent of the output labels at any other time  $a_i$ . Thus:

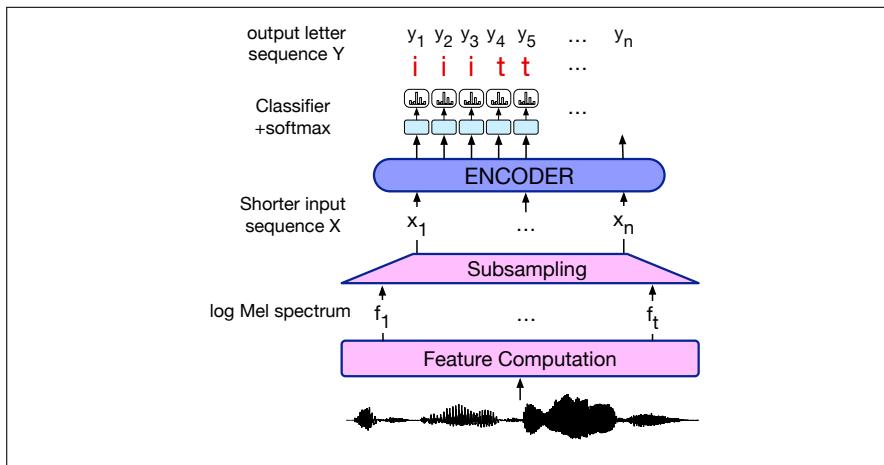
$$P_{\text{CTC}}(A|X) = \prod_{t=1}^T p(a_t|X) \quad (26.13)$$

Thus to find the best alignment  $\hat{A} = \{\hat{a}_1, \dots, \hat{a}_T\}$  we can greedily choose the character with the max probability at each time step  $t$ :

$$\hat{a}_t = \underset{c \in C}{\operatorname{argmax}} p_t(c|X) \quad (26.14)$$

We then pass the resulting sequence  $A$  to the CTC collapsing function  $B$  to get the output sequence  $Y$ .

Let's talk about how this simple inference algorithm for finding the best alignment  $A$  would be implemented. Because we are making a decision at each time point, we can treat CTC as a sequence-modeling task, where we output one letter  $\hat{y}_t$  at time  $t$  corresponding to each input token  $x_t$ , eliminating the need for a full decoder. Fig. 26.10 sketches this architecture, where we take an encoder, produce a hidden state  $h_t$  at each timestep, and decode by taking a softmax over the character vocabulary at each time step.



**Figure 26.10** Inference with CTC: using an encoder-only model, with decoding done by simple softmaxes over the hidden state  $h_t$  at each output step.

Alas, there is a potential flaw with the inference algorithm sketched in (Eq. 26.14) and Fig. 26.9. The problem is that we chose the most likely alignment  $A$ , but the most likely alignment may not correspond to the most likely final collapsed output string  $Y$ . That's because there are many possible alignments that lead to the same output string, and hence the most likely output string might correspond to the most probable alignment. For example, imagine the most probable alignment  $A$  for an input  $X = [x_1 x_2 x_3]$  is the string  $[a \ b \ \epsilon]$  but the next two most probable alignments are  $[b \ \epsilon \ b]$  and  $[\epsilon \ b \ b]$ . The output  $Y = [b \ b]$ , summing over those two alignments, might be more probable than  $Y = [a \ b]$ .

For this reason, the most probable output sequence  $Y$  is the one that has, not the single best CTC alignment, but the highest sum over the probability of all its possible alignments:

$$\begin{aligned} P_{CTC}(Y|X) &= \sum_{A \in B^{-1}(Y)} P(A|X) \\ &= \sum_{A \in B^{-1}(Y)} \prod_{t=1}^T p(a_t|h_t) \\ \hat{Y} &= \underset{Y}{\operatorname{argmax}} P_{CTC}(Y|X) \end{aligned} \quad (26.15)$$

Alas, summing over all alignments is very expensive (there are a lot of alignments), so we approximate this sum by using a version of Viterbi beam search that cleverly keeps in the beam the high-probability alignments that map to the same output string, and sums those as an approximation of (Eq. 26.15). See Hannun (2017) for a clear explanation of this extension of beam search for CTC.

Because of the strong conditional independence assumption mentioned earlier (that the output at time  $t$  is independent of the output at time  $t - 1$ , given the input), CTC does not implicitly learn a language model over the data (unlike the attention-based encoder-decoder architectures). It is therefore essential when using CTC to interpolate a language model (and some sort of length factor  $L(Y)$ ) using interpolation weights that are trained on a dev set:

$$score_{CTC}(Y|X) = \log P_{CTC}(Y|X) + \lambda_1 \log P_{LM}(Y) \lambda_2 L(Y) \quad (26.16)$$

### 26.4.2 CTC Training

To train a CTC-based ASR system, we use negative log-likelihood loss with a special CTC loss function. Thus the loss for an entire dataset  $D$  is the sum of the negative log-likelihoods of the correct output  $Y$  for each input  $X$ :

$$L_{CTC} = \sum_{(X,Y) \in D} -\log P_{CTC}(Y|X) \quad (26.17)$$

To compute CTC loss function for a single input pair  $(X, Y)$ , we need the probability of the output  $Y$  given the input  $X$ . As we saw in Eq. 26.15, to compute the probability of a given output  $Y$  we need to sum over all the possible alignments that would collapse to  $Y$ . In other words:

$$P_{CTC}(Y|X) = \sum_{A \in B^{-1}(Y)} \prod_{t=1}^T p(a_t|h_t) \quad (26.18)$$

Naively summing over all possible alignments is not feasible (there are too many alignments). However, we can efficiently compute the sum by using dynamic programming to merge alignments, with a version of the **forward-backward algorithm** also used to train HMMs (Appendix A) and CRFs. The original dynamic programming algorithms for both training and inference are laid out in (Graves et al., 2006); see (Hannun, 2017) for a detailed explanation of both.

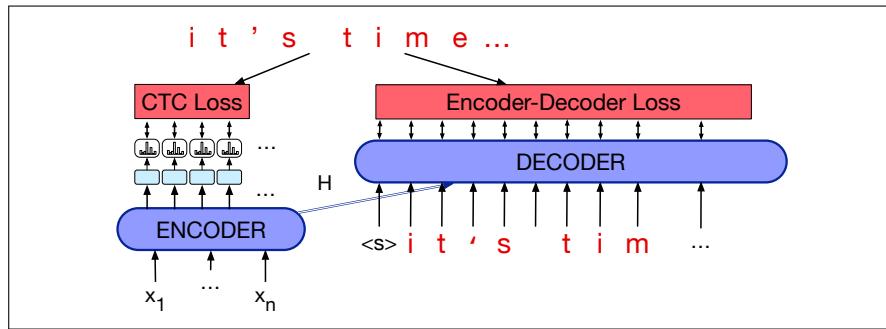
### 26.4.3 Combining CTC and Encoder-Decoder

It's also possible to combine the two architectures/loss functions we've described, the cross-entropy loss from the encoder-decoder architecture, and the CTC loss. Fig. 26.11 shows a sketch. For training, we can simply weight the two losses with a  $\lambda$  tuned on a dev set:

$$L = -\lambda \log P_{encdec}(Y|X) - (1 - \lambda) \log P_{ctc}(Y|X) \quad (26.19)$$

For inference, we can combine the two with the language model (or the length penalty), again with learned weights:

$$\hat{Y} = \underset{Y}{\operatorname{argmax}} [\lambda \log P_{encdec}(Y|X) - (1 - \lambda) \log P_{CTC}(Y|X) + \gamma \log P_{LM}(Y)] \quad (26.20)$$



**Figure 26.11** Combining the CTC and encoder-decoder loss functions.

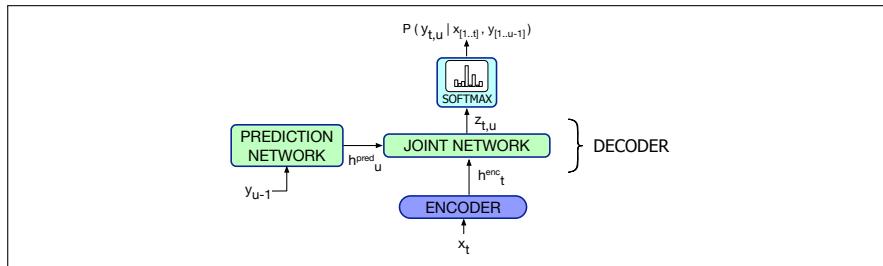
### 26.4.4 Streaming Models: RNN-T for improving CTC

Because of the strong independence assumption in CTC (assuming that the output at time  $t$  is independent of the output at time  $t - 1$ ), recognizers based on CTC don't achieve as high an accuracy as the attention-based encoder-decoder recognizers. CTC recognizers have the advantage, however, that they can be used for **streaming**. Streaming means recognizing words on-line rather than waiting until the end of the sentence to recognize them. Streaming is crucial for many applications, from commands to dictation, where we want to start recognition while the user is still talking. Algorithms that use attention need to compute the hidden state sequence over the entire input first in order to provide the attention distribution context, before the decoder can start decoding. By contrast, a CTC algorithm can input letters from left to right immediately.

If we want to do streaming, we need a way to improve CTC recognition to remove the conditional independence assumption, enabling it to know about output history. The RNN-Transducer (RNN-T), shown in Fig. 26.12, is just such a model (Graves 2012, Graves et al. 2013a). The RNN-T has two main components: a CTC

acoustic model, and a separate language model component called the **predictor** that conditions on the output token history. At each time step  $t$ , the CTC encoder outputs a hidden state  $h_t^{\text{enc}}$  given the input  $x_1 \dots x_t$ . The language model predictor takes as input the previous output token (not counting blanks), outputting a hidden state  $h_u^{\text{pred}}$ . The two are passed through another network whose output is then passed through a softmax to predict the next character.

$$\begin{aligned} P_{\text{RNN-T}}(Y|X) &= \sum_{A \in B^{-1}(Y)} P(A|X) \\ &= \sum_{A \in B^{-1}(Y)} \prod_{t=1}^T p(a_t | h_t, y_{< u_t}) \end{aligned}$$



**Figure 26.12** The RNN-T model computing the output token distribution at time  $t$  by integrating the output of a CTC acoustic encoder and a separate ‘predictor’ language model.

## 26.5 ASR Evaluation: Word Error Rate

### word error

The standard evaluation metric for speech recognition systems is the **word error** rate. The word error rate is based on how much the word string returned by the recognizer (the **hypothesized** word string) differs from a **reference** transcription. The first step in computing word error is to compute the **minimum edit distance** in words between the hypothesized and correct strings, giving us the minimum number of word **substitutions**, word **insertions**, and word **deletions** necessary to map between the correct and hypothesized strings. The word error rate (WER) is then defined as follows (note that because the equation includes insertions, the error rate can be greater than 100%):

$$\text{Word Error Rate} = 100 \times \frac{\text{Insertions} + \text{Substitutions} + \text{Deletions}}{\text{Total Words in Correct Transcript}}$$

### alignment

Here is a sample **alignment** between a reference and a hypothesis utterance from the CallHome corpus, showing the counts used to compute the error rate:

REF:	i ***	** UM	the PHONE	IS	i LEFT	THE portable	****	PHONE UPSTAIRS	last night
HYP:	i GOT IT TO	the *****	FULLEST	i LOVE TO	portable	FORM OF	STORES	last night	
Eval:	I	I	S	D	S	S	I	S	S

This utterance has six substitutions, three insertions, and one deletion:

$$\text{Word Error Rate} = 100 \frac{6+3+1}{13} = 76.9\%$$

**Sentence error rate**

The standard method for computing word error rates is a free script called **sclite**, available from the National Institute of Standards and Technologies (NIST) ([NIST, 2005](#)). Sclite is given a series of reference (hand-transcribed, gold-standard) sentences and a matching set of hypothesis sentences. Besides performing alignments, and computing word error rate, sclite performs a number of other useful tasks. For example, for **error analysis** it gives useful information such as confusion matrices showing which words are often misrecognized for others, and summarizes statistics of words that are often inserted or deleted. **sclite** also gives error rates by speaker (if sentences are labeled for speaker ID), as well as useful statistics like the **sentence error rate**, the percentage of sentences with at least one word error.

**Statistical significance for ASR: MAPSSWE or MacNemar**

As with other language processing algorithms, we need to know whether a particular improvement in word error rate is significant or not.

The standard statistical tests for determining if two word error rates are different is the Matched-Pair Sentence Segment Word Error (MAPSSWE) test, introduced in [Gillick and Cox \(1989\)](#).

The MAPSSWE test is a parametric test that looks at the difference between the number of word errors the two systems produce, averaged across a number of segments. The segments may be quite short or as long as an entire utterance; in general, we want to have the largest number of (short) segments in order to justify the normality assumption and to maximize power. The test requires that the errors in one segment be statistically independent of the errors in another segment. Since ASR systems tend to use trigram LMs, we can approximate this requirement by defining a segment as a region bounded on both sides by words that both recognizers get correct (or by turn/utterance boundaries). Here's an example from [NIST \(2007\)](#) with four regions:

	I	II	III	IV
REF:	it was the best of times it was the worst of times   it was			
SYS A:	ITS	the best of times it IS the worst of times OR it was		
SYS B:	it was the best   times it WON the TEST of times   it was			

In region I, system A has two errors (a deletion and an insertion) and system B has zero; in region III, system A has one error (a substitution) and system B has two. Let's define a sequence of variables  $Z$  representing the difference between the errors in the two systems as follows:

- $N_A^i$  the number of errors made on segment  $i$  by system  $A$
- $N_B^i$  the number of errors made on segment  $i$  by system  $B$
- $Z = N_A^i - N_B^i, i = 1, 2, \dots, n$  where  $n$  is the number of segments

In the example above, the sequence of  $Z$  values is  $\{2, -1, -1, 1\}$ . Intuitively, if the two systems are identical, we would expect the average difference, that is, the average of the  $Z$  values, to be zero. If we call the true average of the differences  $\mu_Z$ , we would thus like to know whether  $\mu_Z = 0$ . Following closely the original proposal and notation of [Gillick and Cox \(1989\)](#), we can estimate the true average from our limited sample as  $\hat{\mu}_Z = \sum_{i=1}^n Z_i / n$ . The estimate of the variance of the  $Z_i$ 's is

$$\sigma_z^2 = \frac{1}{n-1} \sum_{i=1}^n (Z_i - \mu_Z)^2 \quad (26.21)$$

Let

$$W = \frac{\hat{\mu}_z}{\sigma_z / \sqrt{n}} \quad (26.22)$$

For a large enough  $n (> 50)$ ,  $W$  will approximately have a normal distribution with unit variance. The null hypothesis is  $H_0 : \mu_z = 0$ , and it can thus be rejected if  $2 * P(Z \geq |w|) \leq 0.05$  (two-tailed) or  $P(Z \geq |w|) \leq 0.05$  (one-tailed), where  $Z$  is standard normal and  $w$  is the realized value  $W$ ; these probabilities can be looked up in the standard tables of the normal distribution.

#### McNemar's test

Earlier work sometimes used **McNemar's test** for significance, but McNemar's is only applicable when the errors made by the system are independent, which is not true in continuous speech recognition, where errors made on a word are extremely dependent on errors made on neighboring words.

Could we improve on word error rate as a metric? It would be nice, for example, to have something that didn't give equal weight to every word, perhaps valuing content words like *Tuesday* more than function words like *a* or *of*. While researchers generally agree that this would be a good idea, it has proved difficult to agree on a metric that works in every application of ASR. For dialogue systems, however, where the desired semantic output is more clear, a metric called *slot error rate* or *concept error rate* has proved extremely useful; it is discussed in Chapter 24 on page 519.

## 26.6 TTS

The goal of text-to-speech (TTS) systems is to map from strings of letters to waveforms, a technology that's important for a variety of applications from dialogue systems to games to education.

Like ASR systems, TTS systems are generally based on the encoder-decoder architecture, either using LSTMs or Transformers. There is a general difference in training. The default condition for ASR systems is to be speaker-independent: they are trained on large corpora with thousands of hours of speech from many speakers because they must generalize well to an unseen test speaker. By contrast, in TTS, it's less crucial to use multiple voices, and so basic TTS systems are speaker-dependent: trained to have a consistent voice, on much less data, but all from one speaker. For example, one commonly used public domain dataset, the LJ speech corpus, consists of 24 hours of one speaker, Linda Johnson, reading audio books in the LibriVox project (Ito and Johnson, 2017), much smaller than standard ASR corpora which are hundreds or thousands of hours.<sup>2</sup>

We generally break up the TTS task into two components. The first component is an encoder-decoder model for **spectrogram prediction**: it maps from strings of letters to mel spectrograms: sequences of mel spectral values over time. Thus we

---

<sup>2</sup> There is also recent TTS research on the task of **multi-speaker** TTS, in which a system is trained on speech from many speakers, and can switch between different voices.

might map from this string:

It's time for lunch!

to the following mel spectrogram:



**vocoding**  
**vocoder** The second component maps from mel spectrograms to waveforms. Generating waveforms from intermediate representations like spectrograms is called **vocoding** and this second component is called a **vocoder**:



These standard encoder-decoder algorithms for TTS are still quite computationally intensive, so a significant focus of modern research is on ways to speed them up.

### 26.6.1 TTS Preprocessing: Text normalization

**non-standard words**

Before either of these two steps, however, TTS systems require text normalization preprocessing for handling **non-standard words**: numbers, monetary amounts, dates, and other concepts that are verbalized differently than they are spelled. A TTS system seeing a number like *151* needs to know to verbalize it as *one hundred fifty one* if it occurs as *\$151* but as *one fifty one* if it occurs in the context *151 Chapultepec Ave.*. The number *1750* can be spoken in at least four different ways, depending on the context:

**seventeen fifty:** (in “*The European economy in 1750*”)  
**one seven five zero:** (in “*The password is 1750*”)  
**seventeen hundred and fifty:** (in “*1750 dollars*”)  
**one thousand, seven hundred, and fifty:** (in “*1750 dollars*”)

Often the verbalization of a non-standard word depends on its meaning (what Taylor (2009) calls its **semiotic class**). Fig. 26.13 lays out some English non-standard word types.

Many classes have preferred realizations. A year is generally read as paired digits (e.g., **seventeen fifty** for 1750). **\$.3.2 billion** must be read out with the word **dollars** at the end, as **three point two billion dollars**. Some abbreviations like *N.Y.* are expanded (to *New York*), while other acronyms like *GPU* are pronounced as letter sequences. In languages with grammatical gender, normalization may depend on morphological properties. In French, the phrase *1 mangue* (‘one mangue’) is normalized to *une mangue*, but *1 ananas* (‘one pineapple’) is normalized to *un ananas*. In German, *Heinrich IV* (‘Henry IV’) can be normalized to *Heinrich der Vierte*, *Heinrich des Vierten*, *Heinrich dem Vierten*, or *Heinrich den Vierten* depending on the grammatical case of the noun (Demberg, 2006).

semiotic class	examples	verbalization
abbreviations	<b>gov't, N.Y., mph</b>	government
acronyms read as letters	<b>GPU, D.C., PC, UN, IBM</b>	G P U
cardinal numbers	<b>12, 45, 1/2, 0.6</b>	twelve
ordinal numbers	<b>May 7, 3rd, Bill Gates III</b>	seventh
numbers read as digits	<b>Room 101</b>	one oh one
times	<b>3.20, 11:45</b>	eleven forty five
dates	<b>28/02 (or in US, 2/28)</b>	February twenty eighth
years	<b>1999, 80s, 1900s, 2045</b>	nineteen ninety nine
money	<b>\$3.45, €250, \$200K</b>	three dollars forty five
money in tr/m/billions	<b>\$3.45 billion</b>	three point four five billion dollars
percentage	<b>75% 3.4%</b>	seventy five percent

**Figure 26.13** Some types of non-standard words in text normalization; see [Sproat et al. \(2001\)](#) and [\(van Esch and Sproat, 2018\)](#) for many more.

Modern end-to-end TTS systems can learn to do some normalization themselves, but TTS systems are only trained on a limited amount of data (like the 220,000 words we mentioned above for the LJ corpus ([Ito and Johnson, 2017](#))), and so a separate normalization step is important.

Normalization can be done by rule or by an encoder-decoder model. Rule-based normalization is done in two stages: tokenization and verbalization. In the tokenization stage we hand-write write rules to detect non-standard words. These can be regular expressions, like the following for detecting years:

```
/([1[89][0-9][0-9])|(20[0-9][0-9])/
```

A second pass of rules express how to verbalize each semiotic class. Larger TTS systems instead use more complex rule-systems, like the Kestral system of ([Ebden and Sproat, 2015](#)), which first classifies and parses each input into a normal form and then produces text using a verbalization grammar. Rules have the advantage that they don't require training data, and they can be designed for high precision, but can be brittle, and require expert rule-writers so are hard to maintain.

The alternative model is to use encoder-decoder models, which have been shown to work better than rules for such transduction tasks, but do require expert-labeled training sets in which non-standard words have been replaced with the appropriate verbalization; such training sets for some languages are available ([Sproat and Gorman 2018, Zhang et al. 2019](#)).

In the simplest encoder-decoder setting, we simply treat the problem like machine translation, training a system to map from:

They live at 224 Mission St.

to

They live at two twenty four Mission Street

While encoder-decoder algorithms are highly accurate, they occasionally produce errors that are egregious; for example normalizing *45 minutes* as *forty five millimeters*. To address this, more complex systems use mechanisms like lightweight **covering grammars**, which enumerate a large set of possible verbalizations but don't try to disambiguate, to constrain the decoding to avoid such outputs ([Zhang et al., 2019](#)).

## 26.6.2 TTS: Spectrogram prediction

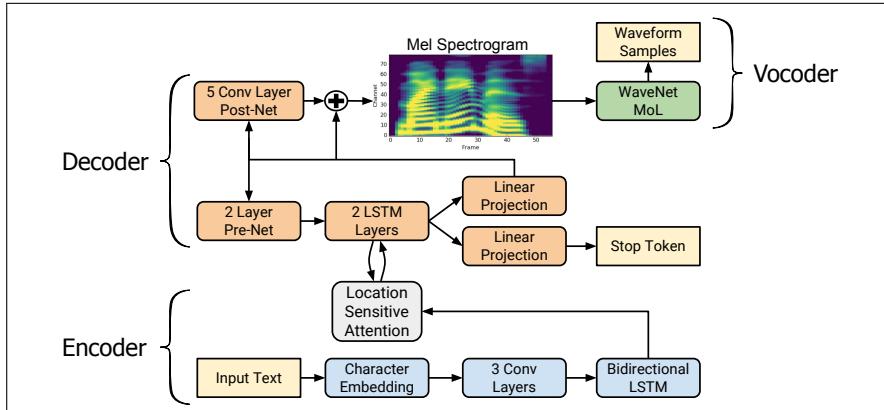
The exact same architecture we described for ASR—the encoder-decoder with attention—can be used for the first component of TTS. Here we'll give a simplified overview of

**Tacotron2** the **Tacotron2** architecture ([Shen et al., 2018](#)), which extends the earlier Tacotron ([Wang et al., 2017](#)) architecture and the **Wavenet** vocoder ([van den Oord et al., 2016](#)). Fig. 26.14 sketches out the entire architecture.

**location-based attention**

The encoder’s job is to take a sequence of letters and produce a hidden representation representing the letter sequence, which is then used by the attention mechanism in the decoder. The Tacotron2 encoder first maps every input grapheme to a 512-dimensional character embedding. These are then passed through a stack of 3 convolutional layers, each containing 512 filters with shape  $5 \times 1$ , i.e. each filter spanning 5 characters, to model the larger letter context. The output of the final convolutional layer is passed through a biLSTM to produce the final encoding. It’s common to use a slightly higher quality (but slower) version of attention called **location-based attention**, in which the computation of the  $\alpha$  values (Eq. 11.17 in Chapter 11) makes use of the  $\alpha$  values from the prior time-state.

In the decoder, the predicted mel spectrum from the prior time slot is passed through a small pre-net as a bottleneck. This prior output is then concatenated with the encoder’s attention vector context and passed through 2 LSTM layers. The output of this LSTM is used in two ways. First, it is passed through a linear layer, and some output processing, to autoregressively predict one 80-dimensional log-mel filterbank vector frame (50 ms, with a 12.5 ms stride) at each step. Second, it is passed through another linear layer to a sigmoid to make a “stop token prediction” decision about whether to stop producing output.



**Figure 26.14** The Tacotron2 architecture: An encoder-decoder maps from graphemes to mel spectrograms, followed by a vocoder that maps to wavefiles. Figure modified from [Shen et al. \(2018\)](#).

The system is trained on gold log-mel filterbank features, using teacher forcing, that is the decoder is fed the correct log-model spectral feature at each decoder step instead of the predicted decoder output from the prior step.

### 26.6.3 TTS: Vocoding

**WaveNet**

The vocoder for Tacotron 2 is an adaptation of the **WaveNet** vocoder ([van den Oord et al., 2016](#)). Here we’ll give a somewhat simplified description of vocoding using WaveNet.

Recall that the goal of the vocoding process here will be to invert a log mel spectrum representations back into a time-domain waveform representation. WaveNet is an autoregressive network, like the language models we introduced in Chapter 9. It

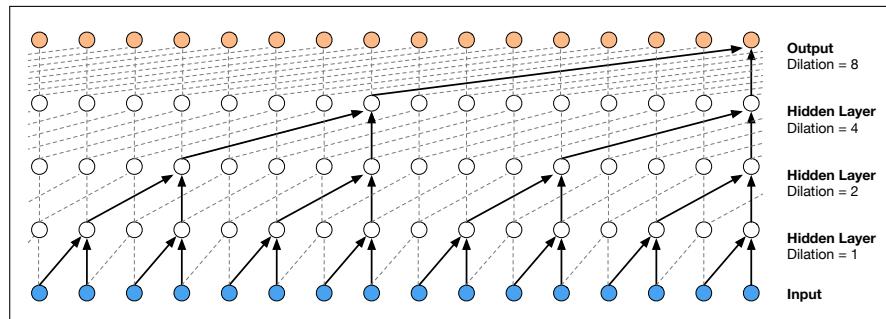
takes spectrograms as input and produces audio output represented as sequences of 8-bit mu-law (page 536). The probability of a waveform , a sequence of 8-bit mu-law values  $Y = y_1, \dots, y_t$ , given an intermediate input mel spectrogram  $h$  is computed as:

$$p(Y) = \prod_{t=1}^t P(y_t | y_1, \dots, y_{t-1}, h_1, \dots, h_t) \quad (26.23)$$

This probability distribution is modeled by a stack of special convolution layers, which include a specific convolutional structure called **dilated convolutions**, and a specific non-linearity function.

dilated convolutions

A dilated convolution is a subtype of **causal** convolutional layer. Causal or masked convolutions look only at the past input, rather than the future; the prediction of  $y_{t+1}$  can only depend on  $y_1, \dots, y_t$ , useful for autoregressive left-to-right processing. In **dilated convolutions**, at each successive layer we apply the convolutional filter over a span longer than its length by skipping input values. Thus at time  $t$  with a dilation value of 1, a convolutional filter of length 2 would see input values  $x_t$  and  $x_{t-1}$ . But a filter with a distillation value of 2 would skip an input, so would see input values  $x_t$  and  $x_{t-2}$ . Fig. 26.15 shows the computation of the output at time  $t$  with 4 dilated convolution layers with dilation values, 1, 2, 4, and 8.



**Figure 26.15** Dilated convolutions, showing one dilation cycle size of 4, i.e., dilation values of 1, 2, 4, 8. Figure from [van den Oord et al. \(2016\)](#).

The Tacotron 2 synthesizer uses 12 convolutional layers in two cycles with a dilation cycle size of 6, meaning that the first 6 layers have dilations of 1, 2, 4, 8, 16, and 32. and the next 6 layers again have dilations of 1, 2, 4, 8, 16, and 32. Dilated convolutions allow the vocoder to grow the receptive field exponentially with depth.

WaveNet predicts mu-law audio samples. Recall from page 536 that this is a standard compression for audio in which the values at each sampling timestep are compressed into 8-bits. This means that we can predict the value of each sample with a simple 256-way categorical classifier. The output of the dilated convolutions is thus passed through a softmax which makes this 256-way decision.

The spectrogram prediction encoder-decoder and the WaveNet vocoder are trained separately. After the spectrogram predictor is trained, the spectrogram prediction network is run in teacher-forcing mode, with each predicted spectral frame conditioned on the encoded text input and the previous frame from the ground truth spectrogram. This sequence of ground truth-aligned spectral features and gold audio output is then used to train the vocoder.

This has been only a high-level sketch of the TTS process. There are numerous important details that the reader interested in going further with TTS may want

to look into. For example WaveNet uses a special kind of a gated activation function as its non-linearity, and contains residual and skip connections. In practice, predicting 8-bit audio values doesn't work as well as 16-bit, for which a simple softmax is insufficient, so decoders use fancier ways as the last step of predicting audio sample values, like mixtures of distributions. Finally, the WaveNet vocoder as we have described it would be so slow as to be useless; many different kinds of efficiency improvements are necessary in practice, for example by finding ways to do non-autoregressive generation, avoiding the latency of having to wait to generate each frame until the prior frame has been generated, and instead making predictions in parallel. We encourage the interested reader to consult the original papers and various versions of the code.

#### 26.6.4 TTS Evaluation

Speech synthesis systems are evaluated by human listeners. (The development of a good automatic metric for synthesis evaluation, one that would eliminate the need for expensive and time-consuming human listening experiments, remains an open and exciting research topic.)

**MOS** We evaluate the quality of synthesized utterances by playing a sentence to listeners and ask them to give a **mean opinion score (MOS)**, a rating of how good the synthesized utterances are, usually on a scale from 1–5. We can then compare systems by comparing their MOS scores on the same sentences (using, e.g., paired t-tests to test for significant differences).

**AB tests** If we are comparing exactly two systems (perhaps to see if a particular change actually improved the system), we can use **AB tests**. In AB tests, we play the same sentence synthesized by two different systems (an A and a B system). The human listeners choose which of the two utterances they like better. We do this for say 50 sentences (presented in random order) and compare the number of sentences preferred for each system.

## 26.7 Other Speech Tasks

While we have focused on speech recognition and TTS in this chapter, there are a wide variety of speech-related tasks.

**wake word** The task of **wake word** detection is to detect a word or short phrase, usually in order to wake up a voice-enable assistant like Alexa, Siri, or the Google Assistant. The goal with wake words is to build the detection into small devices at the computing edge, to maintain privacy by transmitting the least amount of user speech to a cloud-based server. Thus wake word detectors need to be fast, small footprint software that can fit into embedded devices. Wake word detectors usually use the same frontend feature extraction we saw for ASR, often followed by a whole-word classifier.

**Speaker diarization** is the task of determining ‘who spoke when’ in a long multi-speaker audio recording, marking the start and end of each speaker’s turns in the interaction. This can be useful for transcribing meetings, classroom speech, or medical interactions. Often diarization systems use voice activity detection (VAD) to find segments of continuous speech, extract speaker embedding vectors, and cluster the vectors to group together segments likely from the same speaker. More recent work is investigating end-to-end algorithms to map directly from input speech to a sequence of speaker labels for each frame.

**speaker  
recognition**

**Speaker recognition**, is the task of identifying a speaker. We generally distinguish the subtasks of **speaker verification**, where we make a binary decision (is this speaker  $X$  or not?), such as for security when accessing personal information over the telephone, and **speaker identification**, where we make a one of  $N$  decision trying to match a speaker’s voice against a database of many speakers . These tasks are related to **language identification**, in which we are given a wavefile and must identify which language is being spoken; this is useful for example for automatically directing callers to human operators that speak appropriate languages.

**language  
identification**

## 26.8 Summary

This chapter introduced the fundamental algorithms of automatic speech recognition (ASR) and text-to-speech (TTS).

- The task of **speech recognition** (or speech-to-text) is to map acoustic waveforms to sequences of graphemes.
- The input to a speech recognizer is a series of acoustic waves. that are **sampled, quantized**, and converted to a **spectral representation** like the **log mel spectrum**.
- Two common paradigms for speech recognition are the **encoder-decoder with attention** model, and models based on the **CTC loss function**. Attention-based models have higher accuracies, but models based on CTC more easily adapt to **streaming**: outputting graphemes online instead of waiting until the acoustic input is complete.
- ASR is evaluated using the Word Error Rate; the edit distance between the hypothesis and the gold transcription.
- TTS systems are also based on the **encoder-decoder** architecture. The encoder maps letters to an encoding, which is consumed by the decoder which generates **mel spectrogram** output. A neural **vocoder** then reads the spectrogram and generates waveforms.
- TTS systems require a first pass of **text normalization** to deal with numbers and abbreviations and other non-standard words.
- TTS is evaluated by playing a sentence to human listeners and having them give a **mean opinion score (MOS)** or by doing AB tests.

## Bibliographical and Historical Notes

**ASR** A number of speech recognition systems were developed by the late 1940s and early 1950s. An early Bell Labs system could recognize any of the 10 digits from a single speaker (Davis et al., 1952). This system had 10 speaker-dependent stored patterns, one for each digit, each of which roughly represented the first two vowel formants in the digit. They achieved 97%–99% accuracy by choosing the pattern that had the highest relative correlation coefficient with the input. Fry (1959) and Denes (1959) built a phoneme recognizer at University College, London, that recognized four vowels and nine consonants based on a similar pattern-recognition principle. Fry and Denes’s system was the first to use phoneme transition probabilities to constrain the recognizer.

**warping****dynamic time warping**

The late 1960s and early 1970s produced a number of important paradigm shifts. First were a number of feature-extraction algorithms, including the efficient fast Fourier transform (FFT) ([Cooley and Tukey, 1965](#)), the application of cepstral processing to speech ([Oppenheim et al., 1968](#)), and the development of LPC for speech coding ([Atal and Hanauer, 1971](#)). Second were a number of ways of handling **warping**; stretching or shrinking the input signal to handle differences in speaking rate and segment length when matching against stored patterns. The natural algorithm for solving this problem was dynamic programming, and, as we saw in Appendix A, the algorithm was reinvented multiple times to address this problem. The first application to speech processing was by [Vintsyuk \(1968\)](#), although his result was not picked up by other researchers, and was reinvented by [Velichko and Zagoruyko \(1970\)](#) and [Sakoe and Chiba \(1971\)](#) (and (1984)). Soon afterward, [Itakura \(1975\)](#) combined this dynamic programming idea with the LPC coefficients that had previously been used only for speech coding. The resulting system extracted LPC features from incoming words and used dynamic programming to match them against stored LPC templates. The non-probabilistic use of dynamic programming to match a template against incoming speech is called **dynamic time warping**.

The third innovation of this period was the rise of the HMM. Hidden Markov models seem to have been applied to speech independently at two laboratories around 1972. One application arose from the work of statisticians, in particular Baum and colleagues at the Institute for Defense Analyses in Princeton who applied HMMs to various prediction problems ([Baum and Petrie 1966](#), [Baum and Eagon 1967](#)). James Baker learned of this work and applied the algorithm to speech processing ([Baker, 1975a](#)) during his graduate work at CMU. Independently, Frederick Jelinek and collaborators (drawing from their research in information-theoretical models influenced by the work of [Shannon \(1948\)](#)) applied HMMs to speech at the IBM Thomas J. Watson Research Center ([Jelinek et al., 1975](#)). One early difference was the decoding algorithm; Baker's DRAGON system used Viterbi (dynamic programming) decoding, while the IBM system applied Jelinek's stack decoding algorithm ([Jelinek, 1969](#)). Baker then joined the IBM group for a brief time before founding the speech-recognition company Dragon Systems.

**bakeoff**

The use of the HMM, with Gaussian Mixture Models (GMMs) as the phonetic component, slowly spread through the speech community, becoming the dominant paradigm by the 1990s. One cause was encouragement by ARPA, the Advanced Research Projects Agency of the U.S. Department of Defense. ARPA started a five-year program in 1971 to build 1000-word, constrained grammar, few speaker speech understanding ([Klatt, 1977](#)), and funded four competing systems of which Carnegie-Mellon University's Harpy system ([Lowerre, 1968](#)), which used a simplified version of Baker's HMM-based DRAGON system was the best of the tested systems. ARPA (and then DARPA) funded a number of new speech research programs, beginning with 1000-word speaker-independent read-speech tasks like "Resource Management" ([Price et al., 1988](#)), recognition of sentences read from the *Wall Street Journal* (WSJ), Broadcast News domain ([LDC 1998](#), [Graff 1997](#)) (transcription of actual news broadcasts, including quite difficult passages such as on-the-street interviews) and the Switchboard, CallHome, CallFriend, and Fisher domains ([Godfrey et al. 1992](#), [Cieri et al. 2004](#)) (natural telephone conversations between friends or strangers). Each of the ARPA tasks involved an approximately annual **bakeoff** at which systems were evaluated against each other. The ARPA competitions resulted in wide-scale borrowing of techniques among labs since it was easy to see which ideas reduced errors the previous year, and the competitions were probably an im-

portant factor in the eventual spread of the HMM paradigm.

By around 1990 neural alternatives to the HMM/GMM architecture for ASR arose, based on a number of earlier experiments with neural networks for phoneme recognition and other speech tasks. Architectures included the time-delay neural network (**TDNN**)—the first use of convolutional networks for speech—(Waibel et al. 1989, Lang et al. 1990), RNNs (Robinson and Fallside, 1991), and the **hybrid** HMM/MLP architecture in which a feedforward neural network is trained as a phonetic classifier whose outputs are used as probability estimates for an HMM-based architecture (Morgan and Bourlard 1990, Bourlard and Morgan 1994, Morgan and Bourlard 1995).

While the hybrid systems showed performance close to the standard HMM/GMM models, the problem was speed: large hybrid models were too slow to train on the CPUs of that era. For example, the largest hybrid system, a feedforward network, was limited to a hidden layer of 4000 units, producing probabilities over only a few dozen monophones. Yet training this model still required the research group to design special hardware boards to do vector processing (Morgan and Bourlard, 1995). A later analytic study showed the performance of such simple feedforward MLPs for ASR increases sharply with more than 1 hidden layer, even controlling for the total number of parameters (Maas et al., 2017). But the computational resources of the time were insufficient for more layers.

Over the next two decades a combination of Moore’s law and the rise of GPUs allowed deep neural networks with many layers. Performance was getting close to traditional systems on smaller tasks like TIMIT phone recognition by 2009 (Mohamed et al., 2009), and by 2012, the performance of hybrid systems had surpassed traditional HMM/GMM systems (Jaitly et al. 2012, Dahl et al. 2012, *inter alia*). Originally it seemed that unsupervised pretraining of the networks using a technique like deep belief networks was important, but by 2013, it was clear that for hybrid HMM/GMM feedforward networks, all that mattered was to use a lot of data and enough layers, although a few other components did improve performance: using log mel features instead of MFCCs, using dropout, and using rectified linear units (Deng et al. 2013, Maas et al. 2013, Dahl et al. 2013).

Meanwhile early work had proposed the CTC loss function by 2006 (Graves et al., 2006), and by 2012 the RNN-Transducer was defined and applied to phone recognition (Graves 2012, Graves et al. 2013a), and then to end-to-end speech recognition rescoring (Graves and Jaitly, 2014), and then recognition (Maas et al., 2015), with advances such as specialized beam search (Hannun et al., 2014). (Our description of CTC in the chapter draws on Hannun (2017), which we encourage the interested reader to follow).

The encoder-decoder architecture was applied to speech at about the same time by two different groups, in the Listen Attend and Spell system of Chan et al. (2016) and the attention-based encoder decoder architecture of Chorowski et al. (2014) and Bahdanau et al. (2016). By 2018 Transformers were included in this encoder-decoder architecture. Karita et al. (2019) is a nice comparison of RNNs vs Transformers in encoder-architectures for ASR, TTS, and speech-to-speech translation.

Popular toolkits for speech processing include **Kaldi** (Povey et al., 2011) and **ESPnet** (Watanabe et al. 2018, Hayashi et al. 2020).

**TTS** As we noted at the beginning of the chapter, speech synthesis is one of the earliest fields of speech and language processing. The 18th century saw a number of physical models of the articulation process, including the von Kempelen model mentioned above, as well as the 1773 vowel model of Kratzenstein in Copenhagen

using organ pipes.

The early 1950s saw the development of three early paradigms of waveform synthesis: formant synthesis, articulatory synthesis, and concatenative synthesis.

Modern encoder-decoder systems are distant descendants of formant synthesizers. **Formant synthesizers** originally were inspired by attempts to mimic human speech by generating artificial spectrograms. The Haskins Laboratories Pattern Playback Machine generated a sound wave by painting spectrogram patterns on a moving transparent belt and using reflectance to filter the harmonics of a waveform (Cooper et al., 1951); other very early formant synthesizers include those of Lawrence (1953) and Fant (1951). Perhaps the most well-known of the formant synthesizers were the **Klatt formant synthesizer** and its successor systems, including the MITalk system (Allen et al., 1987) and the Klattalk software used in Digital Equipment Corporation's DECTalk (Klatt, 1982). See Klatt (1975) for details.

A second early paradigm, concatenative synthesis, seems to have been first proposed by Harris (1953) at Bell Laboratories; he literally spliced together pieces of magnetic tape corresponding to phones. Soon afterwards, Peterson et al. (1958) proposed a theoretical model based on diphones, including a database with multiple copies of each diphone with differing prosody, each labeled with prosodic features including F0, stress, and duration, and the use of join costs based on F0 and formant distance between neighboring units. But such **diphone synthesis** models were not actually implemented until decades later (Dixon and Maxey 1968, Olive 1977). The 1980s and 1990s saw the invention of **unit selection synthesis**, based on larger units of non-uniform length and the use of a target cost, (Sagisaka 1988, Sagisaka et al. 1992, Hunt and Black 1996, Black and Taylor 1994, Syrdal et al. 2000).

A third paradigm, **articulatory synthesizers** attempt to synthesize speech by modeling the physics of the vocal tract as an open tube. Representative models include Stevens et al. (1953), Flanagan et al. (1975), and Fant (1986). See Klatt (1975) and Flanagan (1972) for more details.

Most early TTS systems used phonemes as input; development of the text analysis components of TTS came somewhat later, drawing on NLP. Indeed the first true text-to-speech system seems to have been the system of Umeda and Teranishi (Umeda et al. 1968, Teranishi and Umeda 1968, Umeda 1976), which included a parser that assigned prosodic boundaries, as well as accent and stress.

## Exercises

- 26.1** Analyze each of the errors in the incorrectly recognized transcription of “um the phone is I left the...” on page 562. For each one, give your best guess as to whether you think it is caused by a problem in signal processing, pronunciation modeling, lexicon size, language model, or pruning in the decoding search.



# Bibliography

- Abadi**, M., Agarwal, A., Barham, P., Brevdo, E., Chen, Z., Citro, C., Corrado, G. S., Davis, A., Dean, J., Devin, M., Ghemawat, S., Goodfellow, I., Harp, A., Irving, G., Isard, M., Jia, Y., Jozefowicz, R., Kaiser, L., Kudlur, M., Levenberg, J., Mané, D., Monga, R., Moore, S., Murray, D., Olah, C., Schuster, M., Shlens, J., Steiner, B., Sutskever, I., Talwar, K., Tucker, P., Vanhoucke, V., Vasudevan, V., Viégas, F., Vinyals, O., Warden, P., Wattenberg, M., Wicke, M., Yu, Y., and Zheng, X. (2015). TensorFlow: Large-scale machine learning on heterogeneous systems.. Software available from tensorflow.org.
- Abney**, S. P., Schapire, R. E., and Singer, Y. (1999). Boosting applied to tagging and PP attachment. *EMNLP/VLC*.
- Agarwal**, O., Subramanian, S., Nenкова, A., and Roth, D. (2019). Evaluation of named entity coreference. *Workshop on Computational Models of Reference, Anaphora and Coreference*.
- Aggarwal**, C. C. and Zhai, C. (2012). A survey of text classification algorithms. Aggarwal, C. C. and Zhai, C. (Eds.), *Mining text data*, 163–222. Springer.
- Agichtein**, E. and Gravano, L. (2000). Snowball: Extracting relations from large plain-text collections. *Proceedings of the 5th ACM International Conference on Digital Libraries*.
- Agirre**, E. and de Lacalle, O. L. (2003). Clustering WordNet word senses. *RANLP 2003*.
- Agirre**, E., Baner, C., Cardie, C., Cer, D., Diab, M., Gonzalez-Agirre, A., Guo, W., Lopez-Gazpio, I., Maritxalar, M., Mihalcea, R., Rigau, G., Uriar, L., and Wiebe, J. (2015). 2015 SemEval-2015 Task 2: Semantic Textual Similarity, English, Spanish and Pilot on Interpretability. *SemEval-15*.
- Agirre**, E., Diab, M., Cer, D., and Gonzalez-Agirre, A. (2012). Semeval-2012 task 6: A pilot on semantic textual similarity. *SemEval-12*.
- Agirre**, E. and Edmonds, P. (Eds.). (2006). *Word Sense Disambiguation: Algorithms and Applications*. Kluwer.
- Agirre**, E. and Martinez, D. (2001). Learning class-to-class selectional preferences. *CoNLL*.
- Aho**, A. V., Sethi, R., and Ullman, J. D. (1986). *Compilers: Principles, Techniques, and Tools*. Addison-Wesley.
- Aho**, A. V. and Ullman, J. D. (1972). *The Theory of Parsing, Translation, and Compiling*. Vol. 1. Prentice Hall.
- Ajdukiewicz**, K. (1935). Die syntaktische Konnektivität. *Studia Philosophica* 1, 1–27. English translation “Syntactic Connexion” by H. Weber in McCall, S. (Ed.) 1967. *Polish Logic*, pp. 207–231, Oxford University Press.
- Alberti**, C., Lee, K., and Collins, M. (2019). A BERT baseline for the natural questions. <http://arxiv.org/abs/1901.08634>.
- Algoet**, P. H. and Cover, T. M. (1988). A sandwich proof of the Shannon-McMillan-Breiman theorem. *The Annals of Probability* 16(2), 899–909.
- Allen**, J. (1984). Towards a general theory of action and time. *Artificial Intelligence* 23(2), 123–154.
- Allen**, J. and Perrault, C. R. (1980). Analyzing intention in utterances. *Artificial Intelligence* 15, 143–178.
- Allen**, J., Hunnicut, M. S., and Klatt, D. H. (1987). *From Text to Speech: The MITalk system*. Cambridge University Press.
- Althoff**, T., Danescu-Niculescu-Mizil, C., and Jurafsky, D. (2014). How to ask for a favor: A case study on the success of altruistic requests. *ICWSM 2014*.
- Amsler**, R. A. (1981). A taxonomy of English nouns and verbs. *ACL*.
- An**, J., Kwak, H., and Ahn, Y.-Y. (2018). SemAxis: A lightweight framework to characterize domain-specific word semantics beyond sentiment. *ACL*.
- Anastasopoulos**, A. and Neubig, G. (2020). Should all cross-lingual embeddings speak English?. *ACL*.
- Antoniak**, M. and Mimno, D. (2018). Evaluating the stability of embedding-based word similarities. *TACL* 6, 107–119.
- Aone**, C. and Bennett, S. W. (1995). Evaluating automated and manual acquisition of anaphora resolution strategies. *ACL*.
- Ariel**, M. (2001). Accessibility theory: An overview. Sanders, T., Schilperoord, J., and Spooren, W. (Eds.), *Text Representation: Linguistic and Psycholinguistic Aspects*, 29–87. Benjamins.
- Arteixe**, M. and Schwenk, H. (2019). Massively multilingual sentence embeddings for zero-shot cross-lingual transfer and beyond. *TACL* 7, 597–610.
- Artstein**, R., Gandhe, S., Gerten, J., Leuski, A., and Traum, D. (2009). Semi-formal evaluation of conversational characters. *Languages: From Formal to Natural*, 22–35. Springer.
- Asher**, N. (1993). *Reference to Abstract Objects in Discourse*. Studies in Linguistics and Philosophy (SLAP) 50, Kluwer.
- Asher**, N. and Lascarides, A. (2003). *Logics of Conversation*. Cambridge University Press.
- Atal**, B. S. and Hanauer, S. (1971). Speech analysis and synthesis by prediction of the speech wave. *JASA* 50, 637–655.
- Austin**, J. L. (1962). *How to Do Things with Words*. Harvard University Press.
- Awadallah**, A. H., Kulkarni, R. G., Ozertem, U., and Jones, R. (2015). Characterizing and predicting voice query reformulation. *CIKM-15*.
- Baayen**, R. H. (2001). *Word frequency distributions*. Springer.
- Baayen**, R. H., Piepenbrock, R., and Gulikers, L. (1995). *The CELEX Lexical Database (Release 2) [CD-ROM]*. Linguistic Data Consortium, University of Pennsylvania [Distributor].
- Baccianella**, S., Esuli, A., and Sebastiani, F. (2010). Sentiwordnet 3.0: An enhanced lexical resource for sentiment analysis and opinion mining. *LREC*.
- Bach**, K. and Harnish, R. (1979). *Linguistic communication and speech acts*. MIT Press.
- Backus**, J. W. (1959). The syntax and semantics of the proposed international algebraic language of the Zurich ACM-GAMM Conference. *Information Processing: Proceedings of the International Conference on Information Processing, Paris*. UNESCO.
- Backus**, J. W. (1996). Transcript of question and answer session. Wexelblat, R. L. (Ed.), *History of Programming Languages*, p. 162. Academic Press.
- Bada**, M., Eckert, M., Evans, D., Garcia, K., Shipley, K., Sitnikov, D., Baumgartner, W. A., Cohen, K. B., Verspoor, K., Blake, J. A., and Hunter, L. E. (2012). Concept annotation in the craft corpus. *BMC bioinformatics* 13(1), 161.
- Bagga**, A. and Baldwin, B. (1998). Algorithms for scoring coreference chains. *LREC*.
- Bahdanau**, D., Chorowski, J., Serdyuk, D., Brakel, P., and Bengio, Y. (2016). End-to-end attention-based large vocabulary speech recognition. *ICASSP*.
- Bahl**, L. R. and Mercer, R. L. (1976). Part of speech assignment by a statistical decision algorithm. *Proceedings IEEE International Symposium on Information Theory*.

- Bahl, L. R., Jelinek, F., and Mercer, R. L.** (1983). A maximum likelihood approach to continuous speech recognition. *IEEE Transactions on Pattern Analysis and Machine Intelligence* 5(2), 179–190.
- Baker, C. F., Fillmore, C. J., and Lowe, J. B.** (1998). The Berkeley FrameNet project. *COLING/ACL*.
- Baker, J. K.** (1975a). The DRAGON system – An overview. *IEEE Transactions on Acoustics, Speech, and Signal Processing ASSP-23*(1), 24–29.
- Baker, J. K.** (1975b). Stochastic modeling for automatic speech understanding. Reddy, D. R. (Ed.), *Speech Recognition*. Academic Press.
- Baldridge, J., Asher, N., and Hunter, J.** (2007). Annotation for and robust parsing of discourse structure on unrestricted texts. *Zeitschrift für Sprachwissenschaft* 26, 213–239.
- Bamman, D., Lewke, O., and Mansoor, A.** (2020). An annotated dataset of coreference in english literature. *LREC*.
- Bamman, D., O'Connor, B., and Smith, N. A.** (2013). Learning latent personas of film characters. *ACL*.
- Bamman, D., Popat, S., and Shen, S.** (2019). An annotated dataset of literary entities. *NAACL HLT*.
- Banarescu, L., Bonial, C., Cai, S., Georgescu, M., Griffitt, K., Hermjakob, U., Knight, K., Koehn, P., Palmer, M., and Schneider, N.** (2013). Abstract meaning representation for sembanking. *7th Linguistic Annotation Workshop and Interoperability with Discourse*.
- Banerjee, S. and Lavie, A.** (2005). METEOR: An automatic metric for MT evaluation with improved correlation with human judgments. *Proceedings of ACL Workshop on Intrinsic and Extrinsic Evaluation Measures for MT and/or Summarization*.
- Banko, M., Cafarella, M., Soderland, S., Broadhead, M., and Etzioni, O.** (2007). Open information extraction for the web. *IJCAI*.
- Bañón, M., Chen, P., Haddow, B., Heafield, K., Hoang, H., Espà-Gomis, M., Forcada, M. L., Kamran, A., Kirefu, F., Koehn, P., Ortiz Rojas, S., Pla Sempere, L., Ramírez-Sánchez, G., Sarrías, E., Strelec, M., Thompson, B., Waites, W., Wiggins, D., and Zaragoza, J.** (2020). ParaCrawl: Web-scale acquisition of parallel corpora. *ACL*.
- Bar-Hillel, Y.** (1953). A quasi-arithmetical notation for syntactic description. *Language* 29, 47–58.
- Bar-Hillel, Y.** (1960). The present status of automatic translation of languages. Alt, F. (Ed.), *Advances in Computers* 1, 91–163. Academic Press.
- Barker, C.** (2010). Nominals don't provide criteria of identity. Rathert, M. and Alexiadou, A. (Eds.), *The Semantics of Nominalizations across Languages and Frameworks*, 9–24. Mouton.
- Barzilay, R. and Lapata, M.** (2005). Modeling local coherence: An entity-based approach. *ACL*.
- Barzilay, R. and Lapata, M.** (2008). Modeling local coherence: An entity-based approach. *Computational Linguistics* 34(1), 1–34.
- Barzilay, R. and Lee, L.** (2004). Catching the drift: Probabilistic content models, with applications to generation and summarization. *HLT-NAACL*.
- Basile, P., Caputo, A., and Semeraro, G.** (2014). An enhanced Lesk word sense disambiguation algorithm through a distributional semantic model. *COLING*.
- Baum, L. E. and Eagon, J. A.** (1967). An inequality with applications to statistical estimation for probabilistic functions of Markov processes and to a model for ecology. *Bulletin of the American Mathematical Society* 73(3), 360–363.
- Baum, L. E. and Petrie, T.** (1966). Statistical inference for probabilistic functions of finite-state Markov chains. *Annals of Mathematical Statistics* 37(6), 1554–1563.
- Baum, L. F.** (1900). *The Wizard of Oz*. Available at Project Gutenberg.
- Bayes, T.** (1763). *An Essay Toward Solving a Problem in the Doctrine of Chances*, Vol. 53. Reprinted in *Facsimiles of Two Papers by Bayes*, Hafner Publishing, 1963.
- Bazell, C. E.** (1952/1966). The correspondence fallacy in structural linguistics. Hamp, E. P., Householder, F. W., and Austerlitz, R. (Eds.), *Studies by Members of the English Department, Istanbul University* (3), reprinted in *Readings in Linguistics II* (1966), 271–298. University of Chicago Press.
- Bean, D. and Riloff, E.** (1999). Corpus-based identification of non-anaphoric noun phrases. *ACL*.
- Bean, D. and Riloff, E.** (2004). Unsupervised learning of contextual role knowledge for coreference resolution. *HLT-NAACL*.
- Beckman, M. E. and Ayers, G. M.** (1997). Guidelines for ToBI labelling. Unpublished manuscript, Ohio State University, [http://www.ling.ohio-state.edu/research/photonics/E\\_ToBI/](http://www.ling.ohio-state.edu/research/photonics/E_ToBI/).
- Beckman, M. E. and Hirschberg, J.** (1994). The ToBI annotation conventions. Manuscript, Ohio State University.
- Bedi, G., Carrillo, F., Cecchi, G. A., Slezak, D. F., Sigman, M., Mota, N. B., Ribeiro, S., Javitt, D. C., Copelli, M., and Corcoran, C. M.** (2015). Automated analysis of free speech predicts psychosis onset in high-risk youths. *npj Schizophrenia* 1.
- Bejček, E., Hajčová, E., Hajč, J., Jínová, P., Kettnerová, V., Kolářová, V., Mikulová, M., Mírovský, J., Nedoluzhko, A., Panevová, J., Poláková, L., Ševčíková, M., Štěpánek, J., and Zikánová, Š.** (2013). Prague dependency treebank 3.0. Tech. rep., Institute of Formal and Applied Linguistics, Charles University in Prague. LINDAT/CLARIN digital library at Institute of Formal and Applied Linguistics, Charles University in Prague.
- Bellegarda, J. R.** (1997). A latent semantic analysis framework for large-span language modeling. *EUROSPEECH*.
- Bellegarda, J. R.** (2000). Exploiting latent semantic information in statistical language modeling. *Proceedings of the IEEE* 89(8), 1279–1296.
- Bellegarda, J. R.** (2013). Natural language technology in mobile devices: Two grounding frameworks. *Mobile Speech and Advanced Natural Language Solutions*, 185–196. Springer.
- Bellman, R.** (1957). *Dynamic Programming*. Princeton University Press.
- Bellman, R.** (1984). *Eye of the Hurricane: an autobiography*. World Scientific Singapore.
- Bender, E. M.** (2019). The #benderrule: On naming the languages we study and why it matters. <https://thegradient.pub/the-benderrule-on-naming-the-languages-we-study-and-why-it-matters>
- Bender, E. M. and Friedman, B.** (2018). Data statements for natural language processing: Toward mitigating system bias and enabling better science. *TACL* 6, 587–604.
- Bender, E. M. and Koller, A.** (2020). Climbing towards NLU: On meaning, form, and understanding in the age of data. *ACL*.
- Bengio, Y., Courville, A., and Vincent, P.** (2013). Representation learning: A review and new perspectives. *IEEE Transactions on Pattern Analysis and Machine Intelligence* 35(8), 1798–1828.
- Bengio, Y., Ducharme, R., Vincent, P., and Jauvin, C.** (2003). A neural probabilistic language model. *Journal of machine learning research* 3(Feb), 1137–1155.
- Bengio, Y., Lamblin, P., Popovici, D., and Larochelle, H.** (2007). Greedy layer-wise training of deep networks. *NeurIPS*.

- Bengio**, Y., Schwenk, H., Senécal, J.-S., Morin, F., and Gauvain, J.-L. (2006). Neural probabilistic language models. *Innovations in Machine Learning*, 137–186. Springer.
- Bentzon**, E. and Roth, D. (2008). Understanding the value of features for coreference resolution. *EMNLP*.
- Bennett**, R. and Elfner, E. (2019). The syntax–prosody interface. *Annual Review of Linguistics* 5, 151–171.
- Berant**, J., Chou, A., Frostig, R., and Liang, P. (2013). Semantic parsing on freebase from question-answer pairs. *EMNLP*.
- Berg-Kirkpatrick**, T., Burkett, D., and Klein, D. (2012). An empirical investigation of statistical significance in NLP. *EMNLP*.
- Berger**, A., Della Pietra, S. A., and Della Pietra, V. J. (1996). A maximum entropy approach to natural language processing. *Computational Linguistics* 22(1), 39–71.
- Bergsma**, S. and Lin, D. (2006). Bootstrapping path-based pronoun resolution. *COLING/ACL*.
- Bergsma**, S., Lin, D., and Goebel, R. (2008a). Discriminative learning of selectional preference from unlabeled text. *EMNLP*.
- Bergsma**, S., Lin, D., and Goebel, R. (2008b). Distributional identification of non-referential pronouns. *ACL*.
- Bethard**, S. (2013). ClearTK-TimeML: A minimalist approach to TempEval 2013. *SemEval-13*.
- Bhat**, I., Bhat, R. A., Shrivastava, M., and Sharma, D. (2017). Joining hands: Exploiting monolingual treebanks for parsing of code-mixing data. *EACL*.
- Biber**, D., Johansson, S., Leech, G., Conrad, S., and Finegan, E. (1999). *Longman Grammar of Spoken and Written English*. Pearson.
- Bickel**, B. (2003). Referential density in discourse and syntactic typology. *Language* 79(2), 708–736.
- Bies**, A., Ferguson, M., Katz, K., and MacIntyre, R. (1995). Bracketing guidelines for Treebank II style Penn Treebank Project..
- Bikel**, D. M., Miller, S., Schwartz, R., and Weischedel, R. (1997). Nymble: A high-performance learning name-finder. *ANLP*.
- Biran**, O. and McKeown, K. (2015). PDTB discourse parsing as a tagging task: The two taggers approach. *SIGDIAL*.
- Bird**, S., Klein, E., and Loper, E. (2009). *Natural Language Processing with Python*. O'Reilly.
- Bisani**, M. and Ney, H. (2004). Bootstrap estimates for confidence intervals in ASR performance evaluation. *ICASSP*.
- Bishop**, C. M. (2006). *Pattern recognition and machine learning*. Springer.
- Bisk**, Y., Holtzman, A., Thomason, J., Andreas, J., Bengio, Y., Chai, J., Lapata, M., Lazaridou, A., May, J., Nisnevich, A., Pinto, N., and Turian, J. (2020). Experience grounds language.. arXiv preprint arXiv:2004.10151.
- Bizer**, C., Lehmann, J., Kobilarov, G., Auer, S., Becker, C., Cyganiak, R., and Hellmann, S. (2009). DBpedia—A crystallization point for the Web of Data. *Web Semantics: science, services and agents on the world wide web* 7(3), 154–165.
- Björkelund**, A. and Kuhn, J. (2014). Learning structured perceptrons for coreference resolution with latent antecedents and non-local features. *ACL*.
- Black**, A. W. and Taylor, P. (1994). CHATR: A generic speech synthesis system. *COLING*.
- Black**, E. (1988). An experiment in computational discrimination of English word senses. *IBM Journal of Research and Development* 32(2), 185–194.
- Black**, E., Abney, S. P., Flickinger, D., Gdaniec, C., Grishman, R., Harrison, P., Hindle, D., Ingraham, R., Jelinek, F., Klavans, J. L., Liberman, M. Y., Marcus, M. P., Roukos, S., Santorini, B., and Strzalkowski, T. (1991). A procedure for quantitatively comparing the syntactic coverage of English grammars. *Proceedings DARPA Speech and Natural Language Workshop*.
- Blei**, D. M., Ng, A. Y., and Jordan, M. I. (2003). Latent Dirichlet allocation. *JMLR* 3(5), 993–1022.
- Blodgett**, S. L., Barocas, S., Daumé III, H., and Wallach, H. (2020). Language (technology) is power: A critical survey of “bias” in NLP. *ACL*.
- Blodgett**, S. L., Green, L., and O'Connor, B. (2016). Demographic dialectal variation in social media: A case study of African-American English. *EMNLP*.
- Blodgett**, S. L. and O'Connor, B. (2017). Racial disparity in natural language processing: A case study of social media African-American English. *Fairness, Accountability, and Transparency in Machine Learning (FATML) Workshop*, KDD.
- Bloomfield**, L. (1914). *An Introduction to the Study of Language*. Henry Holt and Company.
- Bloomfield**, L. (1933). *Language*. University of Chicago Press.
- Bobrow**, D. G., Kaplan, R. M., Kay, M., Norman, D. A., Thompson, H., and Winograd, T. (1977). GUS, A frame driven dialog system. *Artificial Intelligence* 8, 155–173.
- Bobrow**, D. G. and Norman, D. A. (1975). Some principles of memory schemata. Bobrow, D. G. and Collins, A. (Eds.), *Representation and Understanding*. Academic Press.
- Bobrow**, D. G. and Winograd, T. (1977). An overview of KRL, a knowledge representation language. *Cognitive Science* 1(1), 3–46.
- Boersma**, P. and Weenink, D. (2005). Praat: doing phonetics by computer (version 4.3.14). [Computer program]. Retrieved May 26, 2005, from <http://www.praat.org/>.
- Boguraev**, B. K. and Briscoe, T. (Eds.). (1989). *Computational Lexicography for Natural Language Processing*. Longman.
- Bohus**, D. and Rudnicky, A. I. (2005). Sorry, I didn't catch that! — An investigation of non-understanding errors and recovery strategies. *Proceedings of SIGDIAL*.
- Bojanowski**, P., Grave, E., Joulin, A., and Mikolov, T. (2017). Enriching word vectors with subword information. *TACL* 5, 135–146.
- Bollacker**, K., Evans, C., Paritosh, P., Sturge, T., and Taylor, J. (2008). Freebase: a collaboratively created graph database for structuring human knowledge. *SIGMOD 2008*.
- Bolukbasi**, T., Chang, K.-W., Zou, J., Saligrama, V., and Kalai, A. T. (2016). Man is to computer programmer as woman is to homemaker? Debiasing word embeddings. *NeurIPS*.
- Bordes**, A., Usunier, N., Chopra, S., and Weston, J. (2015). Large-scale simple question answering with memory networks. arXiv preprint arXiv:1506.02075.
- Borges**, J. L. (1964). *The analytical language of John Wilkins*. University of Texas Press. Trans. Ruth L. C. Simms.
- Bostrom**, K. and Durrett, G. (2020). Byte pair encoding is suboptimal for language model pretraining. *arXiv*.
- Bourlard**, H. and Morgan, N. (1994). *Connectionist Speech Recognition: A Hybrid Approach*. Kluwer.
- Bowman**, S. R., Vilnis, L., Vinyals, O., Dai, A. M., Jozefowicz, R., and Bengio, S. (2016). Generating sentences from a continuous space. *CoNLL*.
- Boyd-Graber**, J., Feng, S., and Rodriguez, P. (2018). Human-computer question answering: The case for quizbowl. Escalera, S. and Weimer, M. (Eds.), *The NIPS '17 Competition: Building Intelligent Systems*. Springer.
- Brachman**, R. J. (1979). On the epistemological status of semantic networks. Findler, N. V. (Ed.), *Associative Networks: Representation and Use of Knowledge by Computers*, 3–50. Academic Press.

- Brachman, R. J.** and Levesque, H. J. (Eds.). (1985). *Readings in Knowledge Representation*. Morgan Kaufmann.
- Brachman, R. J.** and Schmolze, J. G. (1985). An overview of the KL-ONE knowledge representation system. *Cognitive Science* 9(2), 171–216.
- Brants, T.** (2000). TnT: A statistical part-of-speech tagger. *ANLP*.
- Brants, T.**, Popat, A. C., Xu, P., Och, F. J., and Dean, J. (2007). Large language models in machine translation. *EMNLP/CoNLL*.
- Braud, C.**, Coavoux, M., and Søgaard, A. (2017). Cross-lingual RST discourse parsing. *EACL*.
- Bréal, M.** (1897). *Essai de Sémantique: Science des significations*. Hachette.
- Brennan, S. E.**, Friedman, M. W., and Pollard, C. (1987). A centering approach to pronouns. *ACL*.
- Bresnan, J.** (Ed.). (1982). *The Mental Representation of Grammatical Relations*. MIT Press.
- Brin, S.** (1998). Extracting patterns and relations from the World Wide Web. *Proceedings World Wide Web and Databases International Workshop, Number 1590 in LNCS*. Springer.
- Brockmann, C.** and Lapata, M. (2003). Evaluating and combining approaches to selectional preference acquisition. *EACL*.
- Broschart, J.** (1997). Why Tongan does it differently. *Linguistic Typology* 1, 123–165.
- Brown, P. F.**, Cocke, J., Della Pietra, S. A., Della Pietra, V. J., Jelinek, F., Lafferty, J. D., Mercer, R. L., and Roossin, P. S. (1990). A statistical approach to machine translation. *Computational Linguistics* 16(2), 79–85.
- Brown, P. F.**, Della Pietra, S. A., Della Pietra, V. J., and Mercer, R. L. (1993). The mathematics of statistical machine translation: Parameter estimation. *Computational Linguistics* 19(2), 263–311.
- Brown, T. B.**, Mann, B., Ryder, N., Subbiah, M., Kaplan, J., Dhariwal, P., Neelakantan, A., Shyam, P., Sastry, G., Askell, A., Agarwal, S., Herbert-Voss, A., Krueger, G., Henighan, T., Child, R., Ramesh, A., Ziegler, D. M., Wu, J., Winter, C., Hesse, C., Chen, M., Sigler, E., Litwin, M., Gray, S., Chess, B., Clark, J., Berner, C., McCandlish, S., Radford, A., Sutskever, I., and Amodei, D. (2020). Language models are few-shot learners. arXiv preprint arXiv:2005.14165.
- Bruce, B. C.** (1975). Generation as a social action. *Proceedings of TINLAP-1 (Theoretical Issues in Natural Language Processing)*.
- Brysbaert, M.**, Warriner, A. B., and Kuperman, V. (2014). Concreteness ratings for 40 thousand generally known English word lemmas. *Behavior Research Methods* 46(3), 904–911.
- Bu, H.**, Du, J., Na, X., Wu, B., and Zheng, H. (2017). AISHELL-1: An open-source Mandarin speech corpus and a speech recognition baseline. *O-COCOSDA Proceedings*.
- Buchholz, S.** and Marsi, E. (2006). Conll-x shared task on multilingual dependency parsing. *CoNLL*.
- Buck, C.**, Heafield, K., and Van Ooyen, B. (2014). N-gram counts and language models from the common crawl. *LREC*.
- Budanitsky, A.** and Hirst, G. (2006). Evaluating WordNet-based measures of lexical semantic relatedness. *Computational Linguistics* 32(1), 13–47.
- Budzianowski, P.**, Wen, T.-H., Tseng, B.-H., Casanueva, I., Ultes, S., Ramadhan, O., and Gašić, M. (2018). MultiWOZ - a large-scale multi-domain wizard-of-Oz dataset for task-oriented dialogue modelling. *EMNLP*.
- Bullinaria, J. A.** and Levy, J. P. (2007). Extracting semantic representations from word co-occurrence statistics: A computational study. *Behavior research methods* 39(3), 510–526.
- Bullinaria, J. A.** and Levy, J. P. (2012). Extracting semantic representations from word co-occurrence statistics: stop-lists, stemming, and SVD. *Behavior research methods* 44(3), 890–907.
- Bulyko, I.**, Kirchhoff, K., Ostendorf, M., and Goldberg, J. (2005). Error-sensitive response generation in a spoken language dialogue system. *Speech Communication* 45(3), 271–288.
- Caliskan, A.**, Bryson, J. J., and Narayanan, A. (2017). Semantics derived automatically from language corpora contain human-like biases. *Science* 356(6334), 183–186.
- Callison-Burch, C.**, Osborne, M., and Koehn, P. (2006). Re-evaluating the role of BLEU in machine translation research. *EACL*.
- Canavan, A.**, Graff, D., and Zipperlen, G. (1997). CALLHOME American English speech LDC97S42. Linguistic Data Consortium.
- Cardie, C.** (1993). A case-based approach to knowledge acquisition for domain specific sentence analysis. *AAAI*.
- Cardie, C.** (1994). *Domain-Specific Knowledge Acquisition for Conceptual Sentence Analysis*. Ph.D. thesis, University of Massachusetts, Amherst, MA. Available as CMPSCI Technical Report 94-74.
- Cardie, C.** and Wagstaff, K. (1999). Noun phrase coreference as clustering. *EMNLP/VLC*.
- Carlini, N.**, Tramer, F., Wallace, E., Jagielski, M., Herbert-Voss, A., Lee, K., Roberts, A., Brown, T., Song, D., Erlingsson, U., Oprea, A., and Raffel, C. (2020). Extracting training data from large language models. arXiv preprint arXiv:2012.07805.
- Carlson, G. N.** (1977). *Reference to kinds in English*. Ph.D. thesis, University of Massachusetts, Amherst. Forward.
- Carlson, L.** and Marcu, D. (2001). Discourse tagging manual. Tech. rep. ISI-TR-545, ISI.
- Carlson, L.**, Marcu, D., and Okurowski, M. E. (2001). Building a discourse-tagged corpus in the framework of rhetorical structure theory. *Proceedings of SIGDIAL*.
- Carreras, X.** and Márquez, L. (2005). Introduction to the CoNLL-2005 shared task: Semantic role labeling. *CoNLL*.
- Chafe, W. L.** (1976). Givenness, contrastiveness, definiteness, subjects, topics, and point of view. Li, C. N. (Ed.), *Subject and Topic*, 25–55. Academic Press.
- Chambers, N.** (2013). NavyTime: Event and time ordering from raw text. *SemEval-13*.
- Chambers, N.** and Jurafsky, D. (2010). Improving the use of pseudo-words for evaluating selectional preferences. *ACL*.
- Chambers, N.** and Jurafsky, D. (2011). Template-based information extraction without the templates. *ACL*.
- Chan, W.**, Jaitly, N., Le, Q., and Vinyals, O. (2016). Listen, attend and spell: A neural network for large vocabulary conversational speech recognition. *ICASSP*.
- Chandioux, J.** (1976). MÉTÉO: un système opérationnel pour la traduction automatique des bulletins météorologiques destinés au grand public. *Meta* 21, 127–133.
- Chang, A. X.** and Manning, C. D. (2012). SUTime: A library for recognizing and normalizing time expressions. *LREC*.
- Chang, K.-W.**, Samdani, R., and Roth, D. (2013). A constrained latent variable model for coreference resolution. *EMNLP*.
- Chang, K.-W.**, Samdani, R., Rozovskaya, A., Sammons, M., and Roth, D. (2012). Illinois-Coref: The UI system in the CoNLL-2012 shared task. *CoNLL*.
- Chaplot, D. S.** and Salakhutdinov, R. (2018). Knowledge-based word sense disambiguation using topic models. *AAAI*.

- Charniak, E.** (1997). Statistical parsing with a context-free grammar and word statistics. *AAAI*.
- Charniak, E., Hendrickson, C., Jacobson, N., and Perkowitz, M.** (1993). Equations for part-of-speech tagging. *AAAI*.
- Che, W., Li, Z., Li, Y., Guo, Y., Qin, B., and Liu, T.** (2009). Multilingual dependency-based syntactic and semantic parsing. *CoNLL*.
- Chen, C. and Ng, V.** (2013). Linguistically aware coreference evaluation metrics. *Sixth International Joint Conference on Natural Language Processing*.
- Chen, D., Fisch, A., Weston, J., and Bordes, A.** (2017). Reading wikipedia to answer open-domain questions. *ACL*.
- Chen, D. and Manning, C. D.** (2014). A fast and accurate dependency parser using neural networks. *EMNLP*.
- Chen, E., Snyder, B., and Barzilay, R.** (2007). Incremental text structuring with online hierarchical ranking. *EMNLP/CoNLL*.
- Chen, J. N. and Chang, J. S.** (1998). Topical clustering of MRD senses based on information retrieval techniques. *Computational Linguistics* 24(1), 61–96.
- Chen, S. F. and Goodman, J.** (1998). An empirical study of smoothing techniques for language modeling. Tech. rep. TR-10-98, Computer Science Group, Harvard University.
- Chen, S. F. and Goodman, J.** (1999). An empirical study of smoothing techniques for language modeling. *Computer Speech and Language* 13, 359–394.
- Chen, X., Shi, Z., Qiu, X., and Huang, X.** (2017). Adversarial multi-criteria learning for Chinese word segmentation. *ACL*.
- Chiang, D.** (2005). A hierarchical phrase-based model for statistical machine translation. *ACL*.
- Chierchia, G. and McConnell-Ginet, S.** (1991). *Meaning and Grammar*. MIT Press.
- Chinchor, N., Hirschman, L., and Lewis, D. L.** (1993). Evaluating Message Understanding systems: An analysis of the third Message Understanding Conference. *Computational Linguistics* 19(3), 409–449.
- Chiticariu, L., Danilevsky, M., Li, Y., Reiss, F., and Zhu, H.** (2018). SystemT: Declarative text understanding for enterprise. *NAACL HLT*, Vol. 3.
- Chiticariu, L., Li, Y., and Reiss, F. R.** (2013). Rule-Based Information Extraction is Dead! Long Live Rule-Based Information Extraction Systems!. *EMNLP*.
- Chiu, J. P. C. and Nichols, E.** (2016). Named entity recognition with bidirectional LSTM-CNNs. *TACL* 4, 357–370.
- Cho, K., van Merriënboer, B., Gulcehre, C., Bahdanau, D., Bougares, F., Schwenk, H., and Bengio, Y.** (2014). Learning phrase representations using RNN encoder-decoder for statistical machine translation. *EMNLP*.
- Choi, J. D. and Palmer, M.** (2011a). Getting the most out of transition-based dependency parsing. *ACL*.
- Choi, J. D. and Palmer, M.** (2011b). Transition-based semantic role labeling using predicate argument clustering. *Proceedings of the ACL 2011 Workshop on Relational Models of Semantics*.
- Choi, J. D., Tetreault, J., and Stent, A.** (2015). It depends: Dependency parser comparison using a web-based evaluation tool. *ACL*.
- Chomsky, N.** (1956). Three models for the description of language. *IRE Transactions on Information Theory* 2(3), 113–124.
- Chomsky, N.** (1956/1975). *The Logical Structure of Linguistic Theory*. Plenum.
- Chomsky, N.** (1957). *Syntactic Structures*. Mouton, The Hague.
- Chomsky, N.** (1963). Formal properties of grammars. Luce, R. D., Bush, R., and Galanter, E. (Eds.), *Handbook of Mathematical Psychology*, Vol. 2, 323–418. Wiley.
- Chomsky, N.** (1981). *Lectures on Government and Binding*. Foris.
- Chomsky, N.** (1995). *The Minimalist Program*. MIT Press.
- Chorowski, J., Bahdanau, D., Cho, K., and Bengio, Y.** (2014). End-to-end continuous speech recognition using attention-based recurrent NN: First results. *NeurIPS Deep Learning and Representation Learning Workshop*.
- Chou, W., Lee, C.-H., and Juang, B. H.** (1993). Minimum error rate training based on  $n$ -best string models. *ICASSP*.
- Christodoulopoulos, C., Goldwater, S., and Steedman, M.** (2010). Two decades of unsupervised POS induction: How far have we come?. *EMNLP*.
- Chu, Y.-J. and Liu, T.-H.** (1965). On the shortest arborescence of a directed graph. *Science Sinica* 14, 1396–1400.
- Chu-Carroll, J.** (1998). A statistical model for discourse act recognition in dialogue interactions. Chu-Carroll, J. and Green, N. (Eds.), *Applying Machine Learning to Discourse Processing. Papers from the 1998 AAAI Spring Symposium*. Tech. rep. SS-98-01. AAAI Press.
- Chu-Carroll, J. and Carberry, S.** (1998). Collaborative response generation in planning dialogues. *Computational Linguistics* 24(3), 355–400.
- Chu-Carroll, J. and Carpenter, B.** (1999). Vector-based natural language call routing. *Computational Linguistics* 25(3), 361–388.
- Church, A.** (1940). A formulation of a simple theory of types. *Journal of Symbolic Logic* 5, 56–68.
- Church, K. W.** (1980). *On Memory Limitations in Natural Language Processing*. Master's thesis, MIT. Distributed by the Indiana University Linguistics Club.
- Church, K. W.** (1988). A stochastic parts program and noun phrase parser for unrestricted text. *ANLP*.
- Church, K. W.** (1989). A stochastic parts program and noun phrase parser for unrestricted text. *ICASSP*.
- Church, K. W.** (1994). Unix for Poets. Slides from 2nd ELSNET Summer School and unpublished paper ms.
- Church, K. W. and Gale, W. A.** (1991). A comparison of the enhanced Good-Turing and deleted estimation methods for estimating probabilities of English bigrams. *Computer Speech and Language* 5, 19–54.
- Church, K. W. and Hanks, P.** (1989). Word association norms, mutual information, and lexicography. *ACL*.
- Church, K. W. and Hanks, P.** (1990). Word association norms, mutual information, and lexicography. *Computational Linguistics* 16(1), 22–29.
- Church, K. W., Hart, T., and Gao, J.** (2007). Compressing trigram language models with Golomb coding. *EMNLP/CoNLL*.
- Cialdini, R. B.** (1984). *Influence: The psychology of persuasion*. Morrow.
- Ciaramita, M. and Altun, Y.** (2006). Broad-coverage sense disambiguation and information extraction with a supersense sequence tagger. *EMNLP*.
- Ciaramita, M. and Johnson, M.** (2003). Supersense tagging of unknown nouns in WordNet. *EMNLP-2003*.
- Cieri, C., Miller, D., and Walker, K.** (2004). The Fisher corpus: A resource for the next generations of speech-to-text. *LREC*.
- Clark, E.** (1987). The principle of contrast: A constraint on language acquisition. MacWhinney, B. (Ed.), *Mechanisms of language acquisition*, 1–33. LEA.
- Clark, H. H.** (1996). *Using Language*. Cambridge University Press.
- Clark, H. H. and Fox Tree, J. E.** (2002). Using uh and um in spontaneous speaking. *Cognition* 84, 73–111.

- Clark**, H. H. and Marshall, C. (1981). Definite reference and mutual knowledge. Joshi, A. K., Webber, B. L., and Sag, I. A. (Eds.), *Elements of Discourse Understanding*, 10–63. Cambridge.
- Clark**, H. H. and Wilkes-Gibbs, D. (1986). Referring as a collaborative process. *Cognition* 22, 1–39.
- Clark**, J. and Yallop, C. (1995). *An Introduction to Phonetics and Phonology* (2nd Ed.). Blackwell.
- Clark**, J. H., Choi, E., Collins, M., Garrette, D., Kwiatkowski, T., Nikolaev, V., and Palomaki, J. (2020). TyDi QA: A benchmark for information-seeking question answering in typologically diverse languages. arXiv preprint arXiv:2003.05002.
- Clark**, K. and Manning, C. D. (2015). Entity-centric coreference resolution with model stacking. *ACL*.
- Clark**, K. and Manning, C. D. (2016a). Deep reinforcement learning for mention-ranking coreference models. *EMNLP*.
- Clark**, K. and Manning, C. D. (2016b). Improving coreference resolution by learning entity-level distributed representations. *ACL*.
- Clark**, P., Cowhey, I., Etzioni, O., Khot, T., Sabharwal, A., Schoenick, C., and Tafjord, O. (2018). Think you have solved question answering? Try ARC, the AI2 reasoning challenge.. arXiv preprint arXiv:1803.05457.
- Clark**, P., Etzioni, O., Khashabi, D., Khot, T., Mishra, B. D., Richardson, K., Sabharwal, A., Schoenick, C., Tafjord, O., Tandon, N., Bhakthavatsalam, S., Groeneveld, D., Guerquin, M., and Schmitz, M. (2019). From 'F' to 'A' on the NY Regents Science Exams: An overview of the Aristo project. arXiv preprint arXiv:1909.01958.
- Clark**, S., Curran, J. R., and Osborne, M. (2003). Bootstrapping pos taggers using unlabelled data. *CoNLL*.
- CMU** (1993). The Carnegie Mellon Pronouncing Dictionary v0.1. Carnegie Mellon University.
- Coccaro**, N. and Jurafsky, D. (1998). Towards better integration of semantic predictors in statistical language modeling. *ICSLP*.
- Cohen**, M. H., Giangola, J. P., and Balogh, J. (2004). *Voice User Interface Design*. Addison-Wesley.
- Cohen**, P. R. and Perrault, C. R. (1979). Elements of a plan-based theory of speech acts. *Cognitive Science* 3(3), 177–212.
- Colby**, K. M., Hilf, F. D., Weber, S., and Kraemer, H. C. (1972). Turing-like indistinguishability tests for the validation of a computer simulation of paranoid processes. *Artificial Intelligence* 3, 199–221.
- Colby**, K. M., Weber, S., and Hilf, F. D. (1971). Artificial paranoia. *Artificial Intelligence* 2(1), 1–25.
- Cole**, R. A., Novick, D. G., Vermeulen, P. J. E., Sutton, S., Fanti, M., Wessels, L. F. A., de Villiers, J. H., Schalkwyk, J., Hansen, B., and Burnett, D. (1997). Experiments with a spoken dialogue system for taking the US census. *Speech Communication* 23, 243–260.
- Coleman**, J. (2005). *Introducing Speech and Language Processing*. Cambridge University Press.
- Collins**, M. (1999). *Head-Driven Statistical Models for Natural Language Parsing*. Ph.D. thesis, University of Pennsylvania, Philadelphia.
- Collins**, M. (2003). Head-driven statistical models for natural language parsing. *Computational Linguistics* 29(4), 589–637.
- Collobert**, R. and Weston, J. (2007). Fast semantic extraction using a novel neural network architecture. *ACL*.
- Collobert**, R. and Weston, J. (2008). A unified architecture for natural language processing: Deep neural networks with multitask learning. *ICML*.
- Collobert**, R., Weston, J., Bottou, L., Karlen, M., Kavukcuoglu, K., and Kuksa, P. (2011). Natural language processing (almost) from scratch. *JMLR* 12, 2493–2537.
- Comrie**, B. (1989). *Language Universals and Linguistic Typology* (2nd Ed.). Blackwell.
- Connolly**, D., Burger, J. D., and Day, D. S. (1994). A machine learning approach to anaphoric reference. *Proceedings of the International Conference on New Methods in Language Processing (NeMLaP)*.
- Cooley**, J. W. and Tukey, J. W. (1965). An algorithm for the machine calculation of complex Fourier series. *Mathematics of Computation* 19(90), 297–301.
- Cooper**, F. S., Liberman, A. M., and Borst, J. M. (1951). The interconversion of audible and visible patterns as a basis for research in the perception of speech. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences* 37(5), 318–325.
- Copestake**, A. and Briscoe, T. (1995). Semi-productive polysemy and sense extension. *Journal of Semantics* 12(1), 15–68.
- Cottrell**, G. W. (1985). *A Connectionist Approach to Word Sense Disambiguation*. Ph.D. thesis, University of Rochester, Rochester, NY. Revised version published by Pitman, 1989.
- Cover**, T. M. and Thomas, J. A. (1991). *Elements of Information Theory*. Wiley.
- Covington**, M. (2001). A fundamental algorithm for dependency parsing. *Proceedings of the 39th Annual ACM Southeast Conference*.
- Cox**, D. (1969). *Analysis of Binary Data*. Chapman and Hall, London.
- Craven**, M. and Kumlien, J. (1999). Constructing biological knowledge bases by extracting information from text sources. *ISMB-99*.
- Crawford**, K. (2017). The trouble with bias. Keynote at NeurIPS.
- Croft**, W. (1990). *Typology and Universals*. Cambridge University Press.
- Cruse**, D. A. (2004). *Meaning in Language: an Introduction to Semantics and Pragmatics*. Oxford University Press. Second edition.
- Cucerzan**, S. (2007). Large-scale named entity disambiguation based on Wikipedia data. *EMNLP/CoNLL*.
- Culicover**, P. W. and Jackendoff, R. (2005). *Simpler Syntax*. Oxford University Press.
- Dagan**, I., Marcus, S., and Markovitch, S. (1993). Contextual word similarity and estimation from sparse data. *ACL*.
- Dahl**, G. E., Sainath, T. N., and Hinton, G. E. (2013). Improving deep neural networks for lvcsr using rectified linear units and dropout. *ICASSP*.
- Dahl**, G. E., Yu, D., Deng, L., and Acero, A. (2012). Context-dependent pre-trained deep neural networks for large-vocabulary speech recognition. *IEEE Transactions on audio, speech, and language processing* 20(1), 30–42.
- Danescu-Niculescu-Mizil**, C. and Lee, L. (2011). Chameleons in imagined conversations: A new approach to understanding coordination of linguistic style in dialogs. *2nd Workshop on Cognitive Modeling and Computational Linguistics*.
- Danieli**, M. and Gerbino, E. (1995). Metrics for evaluating dialogue strategies in a spoken language system. *AAAI Spring Symposium on Empirical Methods in Discourse Interpretation and Generation*.
- Das**, S. R. and Chen, M. Y. (2001). Yahoo! for Amazon: Sentiment parsing from small talk on the web. EFA 2001 Barcelona Meetings. <http://ssrn.com/abstract=276189>.
- David, Jr.**, E. E. and Selfridge, O. G. (1962). Eyes and ears for computers. *Proceedings of the IRE (Institute of Radio Engineers)* 50, 1093–1101.
- Davidson**, D. (1967). The logical form of action sentences. Rescher, N. (Ed.), *The Logic of Decision and Action*. University of Pittsburgh Press.

- Davidson**, T., Bhattacharya, D., and Weber, I. (2019). Racial bias in hate speech and abusive language detection datasets. *Third Workshop on Abusive Language Online*.
- Davies**, M. (2012). Expanding horizons in historical linguistics with the 400-million word Corpus of Historical American English. *Corpora* 7(2), 121–157.
- Davies**, M. (2015). The Wikipedia Corpus: 4.6 million articles, 1.9 billion words. Adapted from Wikipedia. <https://www.english-corpora.org/wiki/>.
- Davies**, M. (2020). The Corpus of Contemporary American English (COCA): One billion words, 1990–2019. <https://www.english-corpora.org/coca/>.
- Davis**, E. (1990). *Representations of Commonsense Knowledge*. Morgan Kaufmann.
- Davis**, E., Morgenstern, L., and Ortiz, C. L. (2017). The first Winograd schema challenge at IJCAI-16. *AI Magazine* 38(3), 97–98.
- Davis**, K. H., Biddulph, R., and Balashuk, S. (1952). Automatic recognition of spoken digits. *JASA* 24(6), 637–642.
- Davis**, S. and Mermelstein, P. (1980). Comparison of parametric representations for monosyllabic word recognition in continuously spoken sentences. *IEEE Transactions on Acoustics, Speech, and Signal Processing* 28(4), 357–366.
- de Marneffe**, M.-C., Dozat, T., Silveira, N., Haverinen, K., Ginter, F., Nivre, J., and Manning, C. D. (2014). Universal Stanford dependencies: A cross-linguistic typology. *LREC*.
- de Marneffe**, M.-C., MacCartney, B., and Manning, C. D. (2006). Generating typed dependency parses from phrase structure parses. *LREC*.
- de Marneffe**, M.-C. and Manning, C. D. (2008). The Stanford typed dependencies representation. *Coling 2008: Proceedings of the workshop on Cross-Framework and Cross-Domain Parser Evaluation*.
- de Marneffe**, M.-C., Recasens, M., and Potts, C. (2015). Modeling the lifespan of discourse entities with application to coreference resolution. *JAIR* 52, 445–475.
- Deerwester**, S. C., Dumais, S. T., Furnas, G. W., Harshman, R. A., Landauer, T. K., Lochbaum, K. E., and Streeter, L. (1988). Computer information retrieval using latent semantic structure: US Patent 4,839,853..
- Deerwester**, S. C., Dumais, S. T., Landauer, T. K., Furnas, G. W., and Harshman, R. A. (1990). Indexing by latent semantics analysis. *JASIS* 41(6), 391–407.
- DeJong**, G. F. (1982). An overview of the FRUMP system. Lehnert, W. G. and Ringle, M. H. (Eds.), *Strategies for Natural Language Processing*, 149–176. LEA.
- Demberg**, V. (2006). Letter-to-phoneme conversion for a German text-to-speech system. Diplomarbeit Nr. 47, Universität Stuttgart.
- Denes**, P. (1959). The design and operation of the mechanical speech recognizer at University College London. *Journal of the British Institution of Radio Engineers* 19(4), 219–234. Appears together with companion paper (Fry 1959).
- Deng**, L., Hinton, G., and Kingsbury, B. (2013). New types of deep neural network learning for speech recognition and related applications: An overview. *ICASSP*.
- Deng**, Y. and Byrne, W. (2005). HMM word and phrase alignment for statistical machine translation. *HLT-EMNLP*.
- Denis**, P. and Baldridge, J. (2007). Joint determination of anaphoricity and coreference resolution using integer programming. *NAACL-HLT*.
- Denis**, P. and Baldridge, J. (2008). Specialized models and ranking for coreference resolution. *EMNLP*.
- Denis**, P. and Baldridge, J. (2009). Global joint models for coreference resolution and named entity classification. *Procesamiento del Lenguaje Natural* 42.
- DeRose**, S. J. (1988). Grammatical category disambiguation by statistical optimization. *Computational Linguistics* 14, 31–39.
- Devlin**, J., Chang, M.-W., Lee, K., and Toutanova, K. (2019). BERT: Pre-training of deep bidirectional transformers for language understanding. *NAACL HLT*.
- Di Eugenio**, B. (1990). Centering theory and the Italian pronominal system. *COLING*.
- Di Eugenio**, B. (1996). The discourse functions of Italian subjects: A centering approach. *COLING*.
- Diab**, M. and Resnik, P. (2002). An unsupervised method for word sense tagging using parallel corpora. *ACL*.
- Digman**, J. M. (1990). Personality structure: Emergence of the five-factor model. *Annual Review of Psychology* 41(1), 417–440.
- Dinan**, E., Fan, A., Williams, A., Urbanek, J., Kiela, D., and Weston, J. (2020). Queens are powerful too: Mitigating gender bias in dialogue generation. *EMNLP*.
- Dinan**, E., Roller, S., Shuster, K., Fan, A., Auli, M., and Weston, J. (2019). Wizard of Wikipedia: Knowledge-powered conversational agents. *ICLR*.
- Ditman**, T. and Kuperberg, G. R. (2010). Building coherence: A framework for exploring the breakdown of links across clause boundaries in schizophrenia. *Journal of neurolinguistics* 23(3), 254–269.
- Dixon**, L., Li, J., Sorensen, J., Thain, N., and Vasserman, L. (2018). Measuring and mitigating unintended bias in text classification. *2018 AAAI/ACM Conference on AI, Ethics, and Society*.
- Dixon**, N. and Maxey, H. (1968). Terminal analog synthesis of continuous speech using the diphone method of segment assembly. *IEEE Transactions on Audio and Electroacoustics* 16(1), 40–50.
- Do**, Q. N. T., Bethard, S., and Moens, M.-F. (2017). Improving implicit semantic role labeling by predicting semantic frame arguments. *IJCNLP*.
- Doddington**, G. (2002). Automatic evaluation of machine translation quality using n-gram co-occurrence statistics. *HLT*.
- Dolan**, B. (1994). Word sense ambiguity: Clustering related senses. *COLING*.
- Dostert**, L. (1955). The Georgetown-I.B.M. experiment. *Machine Translation of Languages: Fourteen Essays*, 124–135. MIT Press.
- Dowty**, D. R. (1979). *Word Meaning and Montague Grammar*. D. Reidel.
- Dowty**, D. R., Wall, R. E., and Peters, S. (1981). *Introduction to Montague Semantics*. D. Reidel.
- Dozat**, T., Qi, P., and Manning, C. D. (2017). Stanford’s graph-based neural dependency parser at the CoNLL 2017 shared task. *Proceedings of the CoNLL 2017 Shared Task*.
- Dror**, R., Baumer, G., Bogomolov, M., and Reichart, R. (2017). Replicability analysis for natural language processing: Testing significance with multiple datasets. *TACL* 5, 471–486.
- Dror**, R., Peled-Cohen, L., Shlomov, S., and Reichart, R. (2020). *Statistical Significance Testing for Natural Language Processing*, Vol. 45 of *Synthesis Lectures on Human Language Technologies*. Morgan & Claypool.
- Dryer**, M. S. and Haspelmath, M. (Eds.). (2013). *The World Atlas of Language Structures Online*. Max Planck Institute for Evolutionary Anthropology, Leipzig. Available online at <http://wals.info>.
- Du Bois**, J. W., Chafe, W. L., Meyer, C., Thompson, S. A., Englebretson,

- R., and Martey, N. (2005). Santa Barbara corpus of spoken American English, Parts 1-4. Philadelphia: Linguistic Data Consortium.
- Dua**, D., Wang, Y., Dasigi, P., Stanovsky, G., Singh, S., and Gardner, M. (2019). DROP: A reading comprehension benchmark requiring discrete reasoning over paragraphs. *NAACL HLT*.
- Duda**, R. O. and Hart, P. E. (1973). *Pattern Classification and Scene Analysis*. John Wiley and Sons.
- Durrett**, G. and Klein, D. (2013). Easy victories and uphill battles in coreference resolution. *EMNLP*.
- Durrett**, G. and Klein, D. (2014). A joint model for entity analysis: Coreference, typing, and linking. *TACL 2*, 477–490.
- Earley**, J. (1968). *An Efficient Context-Free Parsing Algorithm*. Ph.D. thesis, Carnegie Mellon University, Pittsburgh, PA.
- Earley**, J. (1970). An efficient context-free parsing algorithm. *CACM 6*(8), 451–455.
- Ebdon**, P. and Sproat, R. (2015). The Kestrel TTS text normalization system. *Natural Language Engineering 21*(3), 333.
- Edmonds**, J. (1967). Optimum branchings. *Journal of Research of the National Bureau of Standards B 71*(4), 233–240.
- Edunov**, S., Ott, M., Auli, M., and Grangier, D. (2018). Understanding back-translation at scale. *EMNLP*.
- Efron**, B. and Tibshirani, R. J. (1993). *An introduction to the bootstrap*. CRC press.
- Egghe**, L. (2007). Untangling Herdan's law and Heaps' law: Mathematical and informetric arguments. *JASIST 58*(5), 702–709.
- Eisner**, J. (1996). Three new probabilistic models for dependency parsing: An exploration. *COLING*.
- Ejhered**, E. I. (1988). Finding clauses in unrestricted text by finitary and stochastic methods. *ANLP*.
- Ekman**, P. (1999). Basic emotions. Dalgleish, T. and Power, M. J. (Eds.), *Handbook of Cognition and Emotion*, 45–60. Wiley.
- Elman**, J. L. (1990). Finding structure in time. *Cognitive science 14*(2), 179–211.
- Elsner**, M., Austerweil, J., and Charniak, E. (2007). A unified local and global model for discourse coherence. *NAACL-HLT*.
- Elsner**, M. and Charniak, E. (2008). Coreference-inspired coherence modeling. *ACL*.
- Elsner**, M. and Charniak, E. (2011). Extending the entity grid with entity-specific features. *ACL*.
- Elvevåg**, B., Foltz, P. W., Weinberger, D. R., and Goldberg, T. E. (2007). Quantifying incoherence in speech: an automated methodology and novel application to schizophrenia. *Schizophrenia research 93*(1-3), 304–316.
- Emami**, A., Trichelaire, P., Trischler, A., Suleiman, K., Schulz, H., and Cheung, J. C. K. (2019). The KNOWREF coreference corpus: Removing gender and number cues for difficult pronominal anaphora resolution. *ACL*.
- Erk**, K. (2007). A simple, similarity-based model for selectional preferences. *ACL*.
- Ethayarajh**, K., Duvenaud, D., and Hirst, G. (2019a). Towards understanding linear word analogies. *ACL*.
- Ethayarajh**, K., Duvenaud, D., and Hirst, G. (2019b). Understanding undesirable word embedding associations. *ACL*.
- Etzioni**, O., Cafarella, M., Downey, D., Popescu, A.-M., Shaked, T., Soderland, S., Weld, D. S., and Yates, A. (2005). Unsupervised named-entity extraction from the web: An experimental study. *Artificial Intelligence 165*(1), 91–134.
- Evans**, N. (2000). Word classes in the world's languages. Booij, G., Lehmann, C., and Mugdan, J. (Eds.), *Morphology: A Handbook on Inflection and Word Formation*, 708–732. Mouton.
- Fader**, A., Soderland, S., and Etzioni, O. (2011). Identifying relations for open information extraction. *EMNLP*.
- Fano**, R. M. (1961). *Transmission of Information: A Statistical Theory of Communications*. MIT Press.
- Fant**, G. M. (1951). Speech communication research. *Ing Vetenskaps Akad Stockholm, Sweden 24*, 331–337.
- Fant**, G. M. (1960). *Acoustic Theory of Speech Production*. Mouton.
- Fant**, G. M. (1986). Glottal flow: Models and interaction. *Journal of Phonetics 14*, 393–399.
- Fant**, G. M. (2004). *Speech Acoustics and Phonetics*. Kluwer.
- Faruqui**, M., Dodge, J., Jauhar, S. K., Dyer, C., Hovy, E., and Smith, N. A. (2015). Retrofitting word vectors to semantic lexicons. *NAACL HLT*.
- Fast**, E., Chen, B., and Bernstein, M. S. (2016). Empath: Understanding Topic Signals in Large-Scale Text. *CHI*.
- Fauconnier**, G. and Turner, M. (2008). *The way we think: Conceptual blending and the mind's hidden complexities*. Basic Books.
- Fazel-Zarandi**, M., Li, S.-W., Cao, J., Casale, J., Henderson, P., Whitney, D., and Geramifard, A. (2017). Learning robust dialog policies in noisy environments. *Conversational AI Workshop (NIPS)*.
- Feldman**, J. A. and Ballard, D. H. (1982). Connectionist models and their properties. *Cognitive Science 6*, 205–254.
- Fellbaum**, C. (Ed.). (1998). *WordNet: An Electronic Lexical Database*. MIT Press.
- Feng**, V. W. and Hirst, G. (2011). Classifying arguments by scheme. *ACL*.
- Feng**, V. W. and Hirst, G. (2014). A linear-time bottom-up discourse parser with constraints and post-editing. *ACL*.
- Feng**, V. W., Lin, Z., and Hirst, G. (2014). The impact of deep hierarchical discourse structures in the evaluation of text coherence. *COLING*.
- Fensel**, D., Hendler, J. A., Lieberman, H., and Wahlster, W. (Eds.). (2003). *Spinning the Semantic Web: Bring the World Wide Web to its Full Potential*. MIT Press, Cambridge, MA.
- Fernandes**, E. R., dos Santos, C. N., and Miliadiú, R. L. (2012). Latent structure perceptron with feature induction for unrestricted coreference resolution. *CoNLL*.
- Ferragina**, P. and Scaiella, U. (2011). Fast and accurate annotation of short texts with wikipedia pages. *IEEE Software 29*(1), 70–75.
- Ferro**, L., Gerber, L., Mani, I., Sundheim, B., and Wilson, G. (2005). Tides 2005 standard for the annotation of temporal expressions. Tech. rep., MITRE.
- Ferrucci**, D. A. (2012). Introduction to "This is Watson". *IBM Journal of Research and Development 56*(3/4), 1:1–1:15.
- Fessler**, L. (2017). We tested bots like Siri and Alexa to see who would stand up to sexual harassment. *Quartz*, Feb 22, 2017. <https://qz.com/911681/>.
- Field**, A. and Tsvetkov, Y. (2019). Entity-centric contextual affective analysis. *ACL*.
- Fikes**, R. E. and Nilsson, N. J. (1971). STRIPS: A new approach to the application of theorem proving to problem solving. *Artificial Intelligence 2*, 189–208.
- Fillmore**, C. J. (1966). A proposal concerning English prepositions. Dinneen, F. P. (Ed.), *17th annual Round Table*, Vol. 17 of *Monograph Series on Language and Linguistics*, 19–34. Georgetown University Press.

- Fillmore, C. J.** (1968). The case for case. Bach, E. W. and Harms, R. T. (Eds.), *Universals in Linguistic Theory*, 1–88. Holt, Rinehart & Winston.
- Fillmore, C. J.** (1985). Frames and the semantics of understanding. *Quaderni di Semantica VI*(2), 222–254.
- Fillmore, C. J.** (2003). Valency and semantic roles: the concept of deep structure case. Ágel, V., Eichinger, L. M., Eroms, H. W., Hellwig, P., Heringer, H. J., and Lobin, H. (Eds.), *Dependenz und Valenz: Ein internationales Handbuch der zeitgenössischen Forschung*, chap. 36, 457–475. Walter de Gruyter.
- Fillmore, C. J.** (2012). Encounters with language. *Computational Linguistics* 38(4), 701–718.
- Fillmore, C. J.** and Baker, C. F. (2009). A frames approach to semantic analysis. Heine, B. and Narrog, H. (Eds.), *The Oxford Handbook of Linguistic Analysis*, 313–340. Oxford University Press.
- Fillmore, C. J.**, Johnson, C. R., and Petrucci, M. R. L. (2003). Background to FrameNet. *International journal of lexicography* 16(3), 235–250.
- Finkelstein, L.**, Gabrilovich, E., Matias, Y., Rivlin, E., Solan, Z., Wolfman, G., and Ruppin, E. (2002). Placing search in context: The concept revisited. *ACM Transactions on Information Systems* 20(1), 116—131.
- Finlayson, M. A.** (2016). Inferring Propp's functions from semantically annotated text. *The Journal of American Folklore* 129(511), 55–77.
- Firth, J. R.** (1935). The technique of semantics. *Transactions of the philosophical society* 34(1), 36–73.
- Firth, J. R.** (1957). A synopsis of linguistic theory 1930–1955. *Studies in Linguistic Analysis*. Philological Society. Reprinted in Palmer, F. (ed.) 1968. *Selected Papers of J. R. Firth*. Longman, Harlow.
- Fitt, S.** (2002). Unisyn lexicon. <http://www.cstr.ed.ac.uk/projects/unisyn/>.
- Flanagan, J. L.** (1972). *Speech Analysis, Synthesis, and Perception*. Springer.
- Flanagan, J. L.**, Ishizaka, K., and Shipley, K. L. (1975). Synthesis of speech from a dynamic model of the vocal cords and vocal tract. *The Bell System Technical Journal* 54(3), 485–506.
- Foland, W.** and Martin, J. H. (2016). CU-NLP at semeval-2016 task 8: AMR parsing using lstm-based recurrent neural networks. *Proceedings of the 10th International Workshop on Semantic Evaluation*.
- Foland, Jr., W. R.** and Martin, J. H. (2015). Dependency-based semantic role labeling using convolutional neural networks. \*SEM 2015.
- Foltz, P. W.**, Kintsch, W., and Landauer, T. K. (1998). The measurement of textual coherence with latent semantic analysis. *Discourse processes* 25(2-3), 285–307.
- forall, Nekoto, W., Marivate, V., Matsila, T., Fasubaa, T., Kolawole, T., Fagbohungbe, T., Akinola, S. O., Muhammad, S. H., Kabongo, S., Osei, S., Freshia, S., Niyongabo, R. A., Ogayo, R. M. P., Ahia, O., Meressa, M., Adeyemi, M., Mokgesi-Selinga, M., Okegbemi, L., Martinus, L. J., Tajudeen, K., Degila, K., Ogueji, K., Siminyu, K., Kreutzer, J., Webster, J., Ali, J. T., Orife, J. A. I., Ezeani, I., Dangana, I. A., Kamper, H., Elsahar, H., Duru, G., Kioko, G., Murhabazi, E., van Biljon, E., Whitenack, D., Onyefuluchi, C., Emezue, C., Dosou, B., Sibanda, B., Bassey, B. I., Olabiyi, A., Ramkilowan, A., Oktem, A., Akinfaderin, A., and Bashir, A. (2020). Participatory research for low-resourced machine translation: A case study in african languages. *Findings of EMNLP*.
- Forchini, P.** (2013). Using movie corpora to explore spoken American English: Evidence from multi-dimensional analysis. Bamford, J., Cavalieri, S., and Diani, G. (Eds.), *Variation and Change in Spoken and Written Discourse: Perspectives from corpus linguistics*, 123–136. Benjamins.
- Fox, B. A.** (1993). *Discourse Structure and Anaphora: Written and Conversational English*. Cambridge.
- Francis, W. N.** and Kučera, H. (1982). *Frequency Analysis of English Usage*. Houghton Mifflin, Boston.
- Franz, A.** and Brants, T. (2006). All our n-gram are belong to you. <http://googleresearch.blogspot.com/2006/08/all-our-n-gram-are-belong-to-you.html>.
- Fraser, N. M.** and Gilbert, G. N. (1991). Simulating speech systems. *Computer Speech and Language* 5, 81–99.
- Friedman, B.**, Hendry, D. G., and Borning, A. (2017). A survey of value sensitive design methods. *Foundations and Trends in Human-Computer Interaction* 11(2), 63–125.
- Fry, D. B.** (1955). Duration and intensity as physical correlates of linguistic stress. *JASA* 27, 765–768.
- Fry, D. B.** (1959). Theoretical aspects of mechanical speech recognition. *Journal of the British Institution of Radio Engineers* 19(4), 211–218. Appears together with companion paper (Denes 1959).
- Furnas, G. W.**, Landauer, T. K., Gomez, L. M., and Dumais, S. T. (1987). The vocabulary problem in human-system communication. *Communications of the ACM* 30(11), 964–971.
- Gabow, H. N.**, Galil, Z., Spencer, T., and Tarjan, R. E. (1986). Efficient algorithms for finding minimum spanning trees in undirected and directed graphs. *Combinatorica* 6(2), 109–122.
- Gaddy, D.**, Stern, M., and Klein, D. (2018). What's going on in neural constituency parsers? an analysis. *NAACL HLT*.
- Gale, W. A.** and Church, K. W. (1994). What is wrong with adding one?. Oostdijk, N. and de Haan, P. (Eds.), *Corpus-Based Research into Language*, 189–198. Rodopi.
- Gale, W. A.** and Church, K. W. (1991). A program for aligning sentences in bilingual corpora. *ACL*.
- Gale, W. A.** and Church, K. W. (1993). A program for aligning sentences in bilingual corpora. *Computational Linguistics* 19, 75–102.
- Gale, W. A.**, Church, K. W., and Yarowsky, D. (1992a). Estimating upper and lower bounds on the performance of word-sense disambiguation programs. *ACL*.
- Gale, W. A.**, Church, K. W., and Yarowsky, D. (1992b). One sense per discourse. *Proceedings DARPA Speech and Natural Language Workshop*.
- Gale, W. A.**, Church, K. W., and Yarowsky, D. (1992c). Work on statistical methods for word sense disambiguation. Goldman, R. (Ed.), *AAAI Fall Symposium on Probabilistic Approaches to Natural Language*.
- Gao, S.**, Sethi, A., Aggarwal, S., Chung, T., and Hakkani-Tür, D. (2019). Dialog state tracking: A neural reading comprehension approach. arXiv preprint arXiv:1908.01946.
- Garg, N.**, Schiebinger, L., Jurafsky, D., and Zou, J. (2018). Word embeddings quantify 100 years of gender and ethnic stereotypes. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences* 115(16), E3635–E3644.
- Garside, R.** (1987). The CLAWS word-tagging system. Garside, R., Leech, G., and Sampson, G. (Eds.), *The Computational Analysis of English*, 30–41. Longman.
- Garside, R.**, Leech, G., and McEnery, A. (1997). *Corpus Annotation*. Longman.
- Gazdar, G.**, Klein, E., Pullum, G. K., and Sag, I. A. (1985). *Generalized Phrase Structure Grammar*. Blackwell.

- Gebru**, T., Morgenstern, J., Vecchione, B., Vaughan, J. W., Wallach, H., Daumé III, H., and Crawford, K. (2020). Datasheets for datasets. arXiv preprint arXiv:1803.09010.
- Gehman**, S., Gururangan, S., Sap, M., Choi, Y., and Smith, N. A. (2020). RealToxicityPrompts: Evaluating neural toxic degeneration in language models. *Findings of EMNLP*.
- Gerber**, M. and Chai, J. Y. (2010). Beyond nombank: A study of implicit arguments for nominal predicates. *ACL*.
- Gil**, D. (2000). Syntactic categories, cross-linguistic variation and universal grammar. Vogel, P. M. and Comrie, B. (Eds.), *Approaches to the Typology of Word Classes*, 173–216. Mouton.
- Gildea**, D. and Jurafsky, D. (2000). Automatic labeling of semantic roles. *ACL*.
- Gildea**, D. and Jurafsky, D. (2002). Automatic labeling of semantic roles. *Computational Linguistics* 28(3), 245–288.
- Gildea**, D. and Palmer, M. (2002). The necessity of syntactic parsing for predicate argument recognition. *ACL*.
- Giles**, C. L., Kuhn, G. M., and Williams, R. J. (1994). Dynamic recurrent neural networks: Theory and applications. *IEEE Trans. Neural Netw. Learning Syst.* 5(2), 153–156.
- Gillick**, L. and Cox, S. J. (1989). Some statistical issues in the comparison of speech recognition algorithms. *ICASSP*.
- Ginzburg**, J. and Sag, I. A. (2000). *Interrogative Investigations: the Form, Meaning and Use of English Interrogatives*. CSLI.
- Girard**, G. (1718). *La justesse de la langue françoise: ou les différentes significations des mots qui passent pour synonymes*. Laurent d'Houry, Paris.
- Giuliano**, V. E. (1965). The interpretation of word associations. Stevens, M. E., Giuliano, V. E., and Heilprin, L. B. (Eds.), *Statistical Association Methods For Mechanized Documentation. Symposium Proceedings*. Washington, D.C., USA, March 17, 1964. <https://nvlpubs.nist.gov/nistpubs/Legacy/MP/nbsmiscellaneouspub269.pdf>.
- Gladkova**, A., Drozd, A., and Matsumura, S. (2016). Analogy-based detection of morphological and semantic relations with word embeddings: what works and what doesn't. *NAACL Student Research Workshop*.
- Glenberg**, A. M. and Robertson, D. A. (2000). Symbol grounding and meaning: A comparison of high-dimensional and embodied theories of meaning. *Journal of memory and language* 43(3), 379–401.
- Glennie**, A. (1960). On the syntax machine and the construction of a universal compiler. Tech. rep. No. 2, Contr-NR 049-141, Carnegie Mellon University (at the time Carnegie Institute of Technology), Pittsburgh, PA.
- Godfrey**, J., Holliman, E., and McDaniel, J. (1992). SWITCHBOARD: Telephone speech corpus for research and development. *ICASSP*.
- Goffman**, E. (1974). *Frame analysis: An essay on the organization of experience*. Harvard University Press.
- Goldberg**, J., Ostendorf, M., and Kirchhoff, K. (2003). The impact of response wording in error correction subdialogs. *ISCA Tutorial and Research Workshop on Error Handling in Spoken Dialogue Systems*.
- Goldberg**, Y. (2017). *Neural Network Methods for Natural Language Processing*, Vol. 10 of *Synthesis Lectures on Human Language Technologies*. Morgan & Claypool.
- Gonen**, H. and Goldberg, Y. (2019). Lipstick on a pig: Debiasing methods cover up systematic gender biases in word embeddings but do not remove them. *NAACL HLT*.
- Good**, M. D., Whiteside, J. A., Wixon, D. R., and Jones, S. J. (1984). Building a user-derived interface. *CACM* 27(10), 1032–1043.
- Goodfellow**, I., Bengio, Y., and Courville, A. (2016). *Deep Learning*. MIT Press.
- Goodman**, J. (2006). A bit of progress in language modeling: Extended version. Tech. rep. MSR-TR-2001-72, Machine Learning and Applied Statistics Group, Microsoft Research, Redmond, WA.
- Goodwin**, C. (1996). Transparent vision. Ochs, E., Schegloff, E. A., and Thompson, S. A. (Eds.), *Interaction and Grammar*, 370–404. Cambridge University Press.
- Gopalakrishnan**, K., Hedayatnia, B., Chen, Q., Gottardi, A., Kwatra, S., Venkatesh, A., Gabriel, R., and Hakkan-Tür, D. (2019). Topical-chat: Towards knowledge-grounded open-domain conversations..
- Gould**, J. D., Conti, J., and Hovanyecz, T. (1983). Composing letters with a simulated listening typewriter. *CACM* 26(4), 295–308.
- Gould**, J. D. and Lewis, C. (1985). Designing for usability: Key principles and what designers think. *CACM* 28(3), 300–311.
- Gould**, S. J. (1980). *The Panda's Thumb*. Penguin Group.
- Graff**, D. (1997). The 1996 Broadcast News speech and language-model corpus. *Proceedings DARPA Speech Recognition Workshop*.
- Gravano**, A., Hirschberg, J., and Beňuš, Š. (2012). Affirmative cue words in task-oriented dialogue. *Computational Linguistics* 38(1), 1–39.
- Graves**, A. (2012). Sequence transduction with recurrent neural networks. *ICASSP*.
- Graves**, A., Fernández, S., Gomez, F., and Schmidhuber, J. (2006). Connectionist temporal classification: Labelling unsegmented sequence data with recurrent neural networks. *ICML*.
- Graves**, A., Fernández, S., Liwicki, M., Bunke, H., and Schmidhuber, J. (2007). Unconstrained on-line handwriting recognition with recurrent neural networks. *NeurIPS*.
- Graves**, A. and Jaitly, N. (2014). Towards end-to-end speech recognition with recurrent neural networks. *ICML*.
- Graves**, A., Mohamed, A.-r., and Hinton, G. (2013a). Speech recognition with deep recurrent neural networks. *ICASSP*.
- Graves**, A., Mohamed, A., and Hinton, G. E. (2013b). Speech recognition with deep recurrent neural networks. *IEEE International Conference on Acoustics, Speech and Signal Processing, ICASSP*.
- Graves**, A. and Schmidhuber, J. (2005). Framewise phoneme classification with bidirectional LSTM and other neural network architectures. *Neural Networks* 18(5-6), 602–610.
- Green**, B. F., Wolf, A. K., Chomsky, C., and Laughey, K. (1961). Baseball: An automatic question answerer. *Proceedings of the Western Joint Computer Conference 19*.
- Greenberg**, S., Ellis, D., and Hollenbeck, J. (1996). Insights into spoken language gleaned from phonetic transcription of the Switchboard corpus. *ICSLP*.
- Greene**, B. B. and Rubin, G. M. (1971). Automatic grammatical tagging of English. Department of Linguistics, Brown University, Providence, Rhode Island.
- Greenwald**, A. G., McGhee, D. E., and Schwartz, J. L. K. (1998). Measuring individual differences in implicit cognition: the implicit association test. *Journal of personality and social psychology* 74(6), 1464–1480.
- Grenager**, T. and Manning, C. D. (2006). Unsupervised Discovery of a Statistical Verb Lexicon. *EMNLP*.
- Grice**, H. P. (1975). Logic and conversation. Cole, P. and Morgan, J. L. (Eds.), *Speech Acts: Syntax and Semantics Volume 3*, 41–58. Academic Press.

- Grice, H. P.** (1978). Further notes on logic and conversation. Cole, P. (Ed.), *Pragmatics: Syntax and Semantics Volume 9*, 113–127. Academic Press.
- Grishman, R.** and Sundheim, B. (1995). Design of the MUC-6 evaluation. *MUC-6*.
- Grosz, B. J.** (1977a). The representation and use of focus in a system for understanding dialogs. *IJCAI-77*. Morgan Kaufmann.
- Grosz, B. J.** (1977b). *The Representation and Use of Focus in Dialogue Understanding*. Ph.D. thesis, University of California, Berkeley.
- Grosz, B. J.**, Joshi, A. K., and Weinstein, S. (1983). Providing a unified account of definite noun phrases in English. *ACL*.
- Grosz, B. J.**, Joshi, A. K., and Weinstein, S. (1995). Centering: A framework for modeling the local coherence of discourse. *Computational Linguistics 21(2)*, 203–225.
- Grosz, B. J.** and Sidner, C. L. (1980). Plans for discourse. Cohen, P. R., Morgan, J., and Pollack, M. E. (Eds.), *Intentions in Communication*, 417–444. MIT Press.
- Gruber, J. S.** (1965). *Studies in Lexical Relations*. Ph.D. thesis, MIT.
- Guinaudeau, C.** and Strube, M. (2013). Graph-based local coherence modeling. *ACL*.
- Guindon, R.** (1988). A multidisciplinary perspective on dialogue structure in user-advisor dialogues. Guindon, R. (Ed.), *Cognitive Science and Its Applications for Human-Computer Interaction*, 163–200. Lawrence Erlbaum.
- Gundel, J. K.**, Hedberg, N., and Zacharski, R. (1993). Cognitive status and the form of referring expressions in discourse. *Language 69(2)*, 274–307.
- Gururangan, S.**, Marasović, A., Swayamdipta, S., Lo, K., Beltagy, I., Downey, D., and Smith, N. A. (2020). Don't stop pretraining: Adapt language models to domains and tasks. *ACL*.
- Gusfield, D.** (1997). *Algorithms on Strings, Trees, and Sequences: Computer Science and Computational Biology*. Cambridge University Press.
- Guyon, I.** and Elisseeff, A. (2003). An introduction to variable and feature selection. *JMLR 3*, 1157–1182.
- Habernal, I.** and Gurevych, I. (2016). Which argument is more convincing? Analyzing and predicting convincingness of Web arguments using bidirectional LSTM. *ACL*.
- Habernal, I.** and Gurevych, I. (2017). Argumentation mining in user-generated web discourse. *Computational Linguistics 43(1)*, 125–179.
- Haghghi, A.** and Klein, D. (2009). Simple coreference resolution with rich syntactic and semantic features. *EMNLP*.
- Hajishirzi, H.**, Zilles, L., Weld, D. S., and Zettlemoyer, L. (2013). Joint coreference resolution and named-entity linking with multi-pass sieves. *EMNLP*.
- Hajič, J.** (1998). *Building a Syntactically Annotated Corpus: The Prague Dependency Treebank*, 106–132. Karolinum.
- Hajič, J.** (2000). Morphological tagging: Data vs. dictionaries. *NAACL Seattle*.
- Hajič, J.**, Ciaramita, M., Johansson, R., Kawahara, D., Martí, M. A., Márquez, L., Meyers, A., Nivre, J., Padó, S., Štěpánek, J., Stranák, P., Surdeanu, M., Xue, N., and Zhang, Y. (2009). The conll-2009 shared task: Syntactic and semantic dependencies in multiple languages. *CoNLL*.
- Hakkani-Tür, D.**, Oflazer, K., and Tür, G. (2002). Statistical morphological disambiguation for agglutinative languages. *Journal of Computers and Humanities 36(4)*, 381–410.
- Halliday, M. A. K.** and Hasan, R. (1976). *Cohesion in English*. Longman. English Language Series, Title No. 9.
- Hamilton, W. L.**, Clark, K., Leskovec, J., and Jurafsky, D. (2016a). Inducing domain-specific sentiment lexicons from unlabeled corpora. *EMNLP*.
- Hamilton, W. L.**, Leskovec, J., and Jurafsky, D. (2016b). Diachronic word embeddings reveal statistical laws of semantic change. *ACL*.
- Hancock, B.**, Bordes, A., Mazaré, P.-E., and Weston, J. (2019). Learning from dialogue after deployment: Feed yourself, chatbot!. *ACL*.
- Hannun, A.** (2017). Sequence modeling with CTC. *Distill 2(11)*.
- Hannun, A. Y.**, Maas, A. L., Jurafsky, D., and Ng, A. Y. (2014). First-pass large vocabulary continuous speech recognition using bidirectional recurrent DNNs. arXiv preprint arXiv:1408.2873.
- Harris, C. M.** (1953). A study of the building blocks in speech. *JASA 25(5)*, 962–969.
- Harris, R. A.** (2005). *Voice Interaction Design: Crafting the New Conversational Speech Systems*. Morgan Kaufmann.
- Harris, Z. S.** (1946). From morpheme to utterance. *Language 22(3)*, 161–183.
- Harris, Z. S.** (1954). Distributional structure. *Word 10*, 146–162. Reprinted in J. Fodor and J. Katz, *The Structure of Language*, Prentice Hall, 1964 and in Z. S. Harris, *Papers in Structural and Transformational Linguistics*, Reidel, 1970, 775–794.
- Harris, Z. S.** (1962). *String Analysis of Sentence Structure*. Mouton, The Hague.
- Hastie, T.**, Tibshirani, R. J., and Friedman, J. H. (2001). *The Elements of Statistical Learning*. Springer.
- Hatzivassiloglou, V.** and McKeown, K. (1997). Predicting the semantic orientation of adjectives. *ACL*.
- Hatzivassiloglou, V.** and Wiebe, J. (2000). Effects of adjective orientation and gradability on sentence subjectivity. *COLING*.
- Haviland, S. E.** and Clark, H. H. (1974). What's new? Acquiring new information as a process in comprehension. *Journal of Verbal Learning and Verbal Behaviour 13*, 512–521.
- Hawkins, J. A.** (1978). *Definiteness and indefiniteness: a study in reference and grammaticality prediction*. Croom Helm Ltd.
- Hayashi, T.**, Yamamoto, R., Inoue, K., Yoshimura, T., Watanabe, S., Toda, T., Takeda, K., Zhang, Y., and Tan, X. (2020). ESPnet-TTS: Unified, reproducible, and integratable open source end-to-end text-to-speech toolkit. *ICASSP*.
- He, L.**, Lee, K., Lewis, M., and Zettlemoyer, L. (2017). Deep semantic role labeling: What works and what's next. *ACL*.
- Heafield, K.** (2011). KenLM: Faster and smaller language model queries. *Workshop on Statistical Machine Translation*.
- Heafield, K.**, Pouzyrevsky, I., Clark, J. H., and Koehn, P. (2013). Scalable modified Kneser-Ney language model estimation. *ACL*.
- Heaps, H. S.** (1978). *Information retrieval. Computational and theoretical aspects*. Academic Press.
- Hearst, M. A.** (1991). Noun homograph disambiguation. *Proceedings of the 7th Conference of the University of Waterloo Centre for the New OED and Text Research*.
- Hearst, M. A.** (1992a). Automatic acquisition of hyponyms from large text corpora. *COLING*.
- Hearst, M. A.** (1992b). Automatic acquisition of hyponyms from large text corpora. *COLING*.
- Hearst, M. A.** (1997). Texttiling: Segmenting text into multi-paragraph subtopic passages. *Computational Linguistics 23*, 33–64.

- Hearst, M. A.** (1998). Automatic discovery of WordNet relations. Fellbaum, C. (Ed.), *WordNet: An Electronic Lexical Database*. MIT Press.
- Heckerman, D.**, Horvitz, E., Sahami, M., and Dumais, S. T. (1998). A bayesian approach to filtering junk email. *AAAI-98 Workshop on Learning for Text Categorization*.
- Heim, I.** (1982). *The semantics of definite and indefinite noun phrases*. Ph.D. thesis, University of Massachusetts at Amherst.
- Heim, I.** and Kratzer, A. (1998). *Semantics in a Generative Grammar*. Blackwell Publishers, Malden, MA.
- Heinz, J. M.** and Stevens, K. N. (1961). On the properties of voiceless fricative consonants. *JASA* 33, 589–596.
- Hellrich, J.**, Buechel, S., and Hahn, U. (2019). Modeling word emotion in historical language: Quantity beats supposed stability in seed word selection. *3rd Joint SIGHUM Workshop on Computational Linguistics for Cultural Heritage, Social Sciences, Humanities and Literature*.
- Hellrich, J.** and Hahn, U. (2016). Bad company—Neighborhoods in neural embedding spaces considered harmful. *COLING*.
- Hemphill, C. T.**, Godfrey, J., and Doddington, G. (1990). The ATIS spoken language systems pilot corpus. *Proceedings DARPA Speech and Natural Language Workshop*.
- Henderson, P.**, Sinha, K., Angelard-Gontier, N., Ke, N. R., Fried, G., Lowe, R., and Pineau, J. (2017). Ethical challenges in data-driven dialogue systems. *AAAI/ACM AI Ethics and Society Conference*.
- Hendrickx, I.**, Kim, S. N., Kozareva, Z., Nakov, P., Ó Séaghdha, D., Padó, S., Pennacchiotti, M., Romano, L., and Szpakowicz, S. (2009). Semeval-2010 task 8: Multi-way classification of semantic relations between pairs of nominals. *5th International Workshop on Semantic Evaluation*.
- Hendrix, G. G.**, Thompson, C. W., and Slocum, J. (1973). Language processing via canonical verbs and semantic models. *Proceedings of IJCAI-73*.
- Henrich, V.**, Hinrichs, E., and Vodolazova, T. (2012). WebCAGe – a web-harvested corpus annotated with GermanNet senses. *EACL*.
- Herdan, G.** (1960). *Type-token mathematics*. Mouton.
- Hermann, K. M.**, Kočiský, T., Grefenstette, E., Espeholt, L., Kay, W., Suleyman, M., and Blunsom, P. (2015a). Teaching machines to read and comprehend. *NeurIPS*.
- Hermann, K. M.**, Kočiský, T., Grefenstette, E., Espeholt, L., Kay, W., Suleyman, M., and Blunsom, P. (2015b). Teaching machines to read and comprehend. *Proceedings of the 28th International Conference on Neural Information Processing Systems - Volume 1*. MIT Press.
- Hernault, H.**, Prendinger, H., duVerle, D. A., and Ishizuka, M. (2010). Hilda: A discourse parser using support vector machine classification. *Dialogue & Discourse* 1(3).
- Hidey, C.**, Musi, E., Hwang, A., Mureşan, S., and McKeown, K. (2017). Analyzing the semantic types of claims and premises in an online persuasive forum. *4th Workshop on Argument Mining*.
- Hill, F.**, Reichart, R., and Korhonen, A. (2015). Simlex-999: Evaluating semantic models with (genuine) similarity estimation. *Computational Linguistics* 41(4), 665–695.
- Hinkelmann, E. A.** and Allen, J. (1989). Two constraints on speech act ambiguity. *ACL*.
- Hinton, G. E.** (1986). Learning distributed representations of concepts. *COGSCI*.
- Hinton, G. E.**, Osindero, S., and Teh, Y.-W. (2006). A fast learning algorithm for deep belief nets. *Neural computation* 18(7), 1527–1554.
- Hinton, G. E.**, Srivastava, N., Krizhevsky, A., Sutskever, I., and Salakhutdinov, R. R. (2012). Improving neural networks by preventing co-adaptation of feature detectors. arXiv preprint arXiv:1207.0580.
- Hirschberg, J.**, Litman, D. J., and Swerts, M. (2001). Identifying user corrections automatically in spoken dialogue systems. *NAACL*.
- Hirschman, L.**, Light, M., Breck, E., and Burger, J. D. (1999). Deep Read: A reading comprehension system. *ACL*.
- Hirschman, L.** and Pao, C. (1993). The cost of errors in a spoken language system. *EUROSPEECH*.
- Hirst, G.** (1981). *Anaphora in Natural Language Understanding: A survey*. No. 119 in Lecture notes in computer science. Springer-Verlag.
- Hirst, G.** (1987). *Semantic Interpretation and the Resolution of Ambiguity*. Cambridge University Press.
- Hirst, G.** (1988). Resolving lexical ambiguity computationally with spreading activation and polaroid words. Small, S. L., Cottrell, G. W., and Tanenhaus, M. K. (Eds.), *Lexical Ambiguity Resolution*, 73–108. Morgan Kaufmann.
- Hirst, G.** and Charniak, E. (1982). Word sense and case slot disambiguation. *AAAI*.
- Hjelmslev, L.** (1969). *Prologomena to a Theory of Language*. University of Wisconsin Press. Translated by Francis J. Whitfield; original Danish edition 1943.
- Hobbs, J. R.** (1978). Resolving pronoun references. *Lingua* 44, 311–338.
- Hobbs, J. R.** (1979). Coherence and coreference. *Cognitive Science* 3, 67–90.
- Hobbs, J. R.**, Appelt, D. E., Bear, J., Israel, D., Kameyama, M., Stickel, M. E., and Tyson, M. (1997). FASTUS: A cascaded finite-state transducer for extracting information from natural-language text. Roche, E. and Schabes, Y. (Eds.), *Finite-State Language Processing*, 383–406. MIT Press.
- Hochreiter, S.** and Schmidhuber, J. (1997). Long short-term memory. *Neural Computation* 9(8), 1735–1780.
- Hockenmaier, J.** and Steedman, M. (2007). Ccgbank: a corpus of ccg derivations and dependency structures extracted from the penn treebank. *Computational Linguistics* 33(3), 355–396.
- Hofmann, T.** (1999). Probabilistic latent semantic indexing. *SIGIR-99*.
- Hopcroft, J. E.** and Ullman, J. D. (1979). *Introduction to Automata Theory, Languages, and Computation*. Addison-Wesley.
- Hou, Y.**, Markert, K., and Strube, M. (2018). Unrestricted bridging resolution. *Computational Linguistics* 44(2), 237–284.
- Householder, F. W.** (1995). Dionysius Thrax, the *technai*, and Sextus Empiricus. Koerner, E. F. K. and Asher, R. E. (Eds.), *Concise History of the Language Sciences*, 99–103. Elsevier Science.
- Hovy, E. H.** (1990). Parsimonious and profligate approaches to the question of discourse structure relations. *Proceedings of the 5th International Workshop on Natural Language Generation*.
- Hovy, E. H.**, Marcus, M. P., Palmer, M., Ramshaw, L. A., and Weischedel, R. (2006). Ontonotes: The 90% solution. *HLT-NAACL*.
- Hu, M.** and Liu, B. (2004a). Mining and summarizing customer reviews. *KDD*.
- Hu, M.** and Liu, B. (2004b). Mining and summarizing customer reviews. *SIGKDD-04*.
- Huang, E. H.**, Socher, R., Manning, C. D., and Ng, A. Y. (2012). Improving word representations via global

- context and multiple word prototypes. *ACL*.
- Huang**, L. and Sagae, K. (2010). Dynamic programming for linear-time incremental parsing. *ACL*.
- Huang**, Z., Xu, W., and Yu, K. (2015). Bidirectional LSTM-CRF models for sequence tagging. *arXiv preprint arXiv:1508.01991*.
- Huddleston**, R. and Pullum, G. K. (2002). *The Cambridge Grammar of the English Language*. Cambridge University Press.
- Hudson**, R. A. (1984). *Word Grammar*. Blackwell.
- Huffman**, S. (1996). Learning information extraction patterns from examples. Wertmer, S., Riloff, E., and Scheller, G. (Eds.), *Connectionist, Statistical, and Symbolic Approaches to Learning Natural Language Processing*, 246–260. Springer.
- Humeau**, S., Shuster, K., Lachaux, M.-A., and Weston, J. (2020). Poly-encoders: Transformer architectures and pre-training strategies for fast and accurate multi-sentence scoring. *ICLR*.
- Hunt**, A. J. and Black, A. W. (1996). Unit selection in a concatenative speech synthesis system using a large speech database. *ICASSP*.
- Hutchins**, W. J. (1986). *Machine Translation: Past, Present, Future*. El-lis Horwood, Chichester, England.
- Hutchins**, W. J. (1997). From first conception to first demonstration: The nascent years of machine translation, 1947–1954. A chronology. *Machine Translation* 12, 192–252.
- Hutchins**, W. J. and Somers, H. L. (1992). *An Introduction to Machine Translation*. Academic Press.
- Hutchinson**, B., Prabhakaran, V., Denton, E., Webster, K., Zhong, Y., and Denyul, S. (2020). Social biases in NLP models as barriers for persons with disabilities. *ACL*.
- Hymes**, D. (1974). Ways of speaking. Bauman, R. and Sherzer, J. (Eds.), *Explorations in the ethnography of speaking*, 433–451. Cambridge University Press.
- Iacobacci**, I., Pilehvar, M. T., and Navigli, R. (2016). Embeddings for word sense disambiguation: An evaluation study. *ACL*.
- Iida**, R., Inui, K., Takamura, H., and Matsumoto, Y. (2003). Incorporating contextual cues in trainable models for coreference resolution. *EACL Workshop on The Computational Treatment of Anaphora*.
- Irons**, E. T. (1961). A syntax directed compiler for ALGOL 60. *CACM* 4, 51–55.
- Irsoy**, O. and Cardie, C. (2014). Opinion mining with deep recurrent neural networks. *EMNLP*.
- Isbell**, C. L., Kearns, M., Kormann, D., Singh, S., and Stone, P. (2000). Cobot in LambdaMOO: A social statistics agent. *AAAI/IAAI*.
- ISO8601** (2004). Data elements and interchange formats—information interchange—representation of dates and times. Tech. rep., International Organization for Standards (ISO).
- Itakura**, F. (1975). Minimum prediction residual principle applied to speech recognition. *IEEE Transactions on Acoustics, Speech, and Signal Processing ASSP-32*, 67–72.
- Iter**, D., Guu, K., Lansing, L., and Jurafsky, D. (2020). Pretraining with contrastive sentence objectives improves discourse performance of language models. *ACL*.
- Iter**, D., Yoon, J., and Jurafsky, D. (2018). Automatic detection of incoherent speech for diagnosing schizophrenia. *Fifth Workshop on Computational Linguistics and Clinical Psychology*.
- Ito**, K. and Johnson, L. (2017). The lj speech dataset. <https://keithito.com/LJ-Speech-Dataset/>.
- Iyer**, S., Konstas, I., Cheung, A., Krishnamurthy, J., and Zettlemoyer, L. (2017). Learning a neural semantic parser from user feedback. *ACL*.
- Jackendoff**, R. (1983). *Semantics and Cognition*. MIT Press.
- Jacobs**, P. S. and Rau, L. F. (1990). SCISOR: A system for extracting information from on-line news. *CACM* 33(11), 88–97.
- Jaech**, A., Mulcaire, G., Hathi, S., Ostendorf, M., and Smith, N. A. (2016). Hierarchical character-word models for language identification. *ACL Workshop on NLP for Social Media*.
- Jaeger**, T. F. and Levy, R. P. (2007). Speakers optimize information density through syntactic reduction. *NeurIPS*.
- Jaitly**, N., Nguyen, P., Senior, A., and Vanhoucke, V. (2012). Application of pretrained deep neural networks to large vocabulary speech recognition. *INTERSPEECH*.
- Jauhainen**, T., Lui, M., Zampieri, M., Baldwin, T., and Lindén, K. (2018). Automatic language identification in texts: A survey. *arXiv preprint arXiv:1804.08186*.
- Jefferson**, G. (1972). Side sequences. Sudnow, D. (Ed.), *Studies in social interaction*, 294–333. Free Press, New York.
- Jeffreys**, H. (1948). *Theory of Probability* (2nd Ed.). Clarendon Press. Section 3.23.
- Jelinek**, F. (1969). A fast sequential decoding algorithm using a stack. *IBM Journal of Research and Development* 13, 675–685.
- Jelinek**, F. (1976). Continuous speech recognition by statistical methods. *Proceedings of the IEEE* 64(4), 532–557.
- Jelinek**, F. (1990). Self-organized language modeling for speech recognition. Waibel, A. and Lee, K.-F. (Eds.), *Readings in Speech Recognition*, 450–506. Morgan Kaufmann. Originally distributed as IBM technical report in 1985.
- Jelinek**, F. and Mercer, R. L. (1980). Interpolated estimation of Markov source parameters from sparse data. Gelserma, E. S. and Kanal, L. N. (Eds.), *Proceedings, Workshop on Pattern Recognition in Practice*, 381–397. North Holland.
- Jelinek**, F., Mercer, R. L., and Bahl, L. R. (1975). Design of a linguistic statistical decoder for the recognition of continuous speech. *IEEE Transactions on Information Theory IT-21(3)*, 250–256.
- Ji**, H. and Grishman, R. (2011). Knowledge base population: Successful approaches and challenges. *ACL*.
- Ji**, H., Grishman, R., and Dang, H. T. (2010). Overview of the tac 2011 knowledge base population track. *TAC-11*.
- Ji**, Y. and Eisenstein, J. (2014). Representation learning for text-level discourse parsing. *ACL*.
- Ji**, Y. and Eisenstein, J. (2015). One vector is not enough: Entity-augmented distributed semantics for discourse relations. *TACL* 3, 329–344.
- Jia**, S., Meng, T., Zhao, J., and Chang, K.-W. (2020). Mitigating gender bias amplification in distribution by posterior regularization. *ACL*.
- Jiang**, K., Wu, D., and Jiang, H. (2019). FreebaseQA: A new factoid QA data set matching trivia-style question-answer pairs with Freebase. *NAACL HLT*.
- Johnson**, J., Douze, M., and Jégou, H. (2017). Billion-scale similarity search with GPUs. *arXiv preprint arXiv:1702.08734*.
- Johnson**, K. (2003). *Acoustic and Auditory Phonetics* (2nd Ed.). Blackwell.
- Johnson**, W. E. (1932). Probability: deductive and inductive problems (appendix to). *Mind* 41(164), 421–423.
- Johnson-Laird**, P. N. (1983). *Mental Models*. Harvard University Press, Cambridge, MA.
- Jones**, M. P. and Martin, J. H. (1997). Contextual spelling correction using latent semantic analysis. *ANLP*.

- Jones**, R., McCallum, A., Nigam, K., and Riloff, E. (1999). Bootstrapping for text learning tasks. *IJCAI-99 Workshop on Text Mining: Foundations, Techniques and Applications*.
- Jones**, T. (2015). Toward a description of African American Vernacular English dialect regions using “Black Twitter”. *American Speech* 90(4), 403–440.
- Joos**, M. (1950). Description of language design. *JASA* 22, 701–708.
- Jordan**, M. (1986). Serial order: A parallel distributed processing approach. Tech. rep. ICS Report 8604, University of California, San Diego.
- Joshi**, A. K. (1985). Tree adjoining grammars: How much context-sensitivity is required to provide reasonable structural descriptions?. Dowty, D. R., Karttunen, L., and Zwicky, A. (Eds.), *Natural Language Parsing*, 206–250. Cambridge University Press.
- Joshi**, A. K. and Hopely, P. (1999). A parser from antiquity. Kornai, A. (Ed.), *Extended Finite State Models of Language*, 6–15. Cambridge University Press.
- Joshi**, A. K. and Kuhn, S. (1979). Centered logic: The role of entity centered sentence representation in natural language inferencing. *IJCAI-79*.
- Joshi**, A. K. and Weinstein, S. (1981). Control of inference: Role of some aspects of discourse structure – centering. *IJCAI-81*.
- Joshi**, M., Chen, D., Liu, Y., Weld, D. S., and Zettlemoyer, L. (2020). SpanBERT: Improving pre-training by representing and predicting spans. *TACL* 8, 64–77.
- Joshi**, M., Choi, E., Weld, D. S., and Zettlemoyer, L. (2017). Triviaqa: A large scale distantly supervised challenge dataset for reading comprehension. *ACL*.
- Joshi**, M., Levy, O., Weld, D. S., and Zettlemoyer, L. (2019). BERT for coreference resolution: Baselines and analysis. *EMNLP*.
- Joty**, S., Carenini, G., and Ng, R. T. (2015). CODRA: A novel discriminative framework for rhetorical analysis. *Computational Linguistics* 41(3), 385–435.
- Jurafsky**, D. (2014). *The Language of Food*. W. W. Norton, New York.
- Jurafsky**, D., Chahuneau, V., Routledge, B. R., and Smith, N. A. (2014). Narrative framing of consumer sentiment in online restaurant reviews. *First Monday* 19(4).
- Jurafsky**, D., Wooters, C., Tajchman, G., Segal, J., Stolcke, A., Fosler, E., and Morgan, N. (1994). The Berkeley restaurant project. *ICSLP*.
- Jurgens**, D. and Klaptis, I. P. (2013). Semeval-2013 task 13: Word sense induction for graded and non-graded senses. \*SEM.
- Jurgens**, D., Mohammad, S. M., Turney, P., and Holyoak, K. (2012). SemEval-2012 task 2: Measuring degrees of relational similarity. \*SEM 2012.
- Jurgens**, D., Tsvetkov, Y., and Jurafsky, D. (2017). Incorporating dialectal variability for socially equitable language identification. *ACL*.
- Justeson**, J. S. and Katz, S. M. (1991). Co-occurrences of anonymous adjectives and their contexts. *Computational linguistics* 17(1), 1–19.
- Kalchbrenner**, N. and Blunsom, P. (2013). Recurrent continuous translation models. *EMNLP*.
- Kameyama**, M. (1986). A property-sharing constraint in centering. *ACL*.
- Kamp**, H. (1981). A theory of truth and semantic representation. Groenendijk, J., Janssen, T., and Stokhof, M. (Eds.), *Formal Methods in the Study of Language*, 189–222. Mathematical Centre, Amsterdam.
- Kamphuis**, C., de Vries, A. P., Boytsov, L., and Lin, J. (2020). Which bm25 do you mean? a large-scale reproducibility study of scoring variants. *European Conference on Information Retrieval*.
- Kane**, S. K., Morris, M. R., Paradiso, A., and Campbell, J. (2017). “at times avuncular and cantankerous, with the reflexes of a mongoose”: Understanding self-expression through augmentative and alternative communication devices. *CSCW 2017*.
- Kannan**, A. and Vinyals, O. (2016). Adversarial evaluation of dialogue models. *NIPS 2016 Workshop on Adversarial Training*.
- Kaplan**, R. M. (1973). A general syntactic processor. Rustin, R. (Ed.), *Natural Language Processing*, 193–241. Algorithmics Press.
- Karamanis**, N., Poesio, M., Mellish, C., and Oberlander, J. (2004). Evaluating centering-based metrics of coherence for text structuring using a reliably annotated corpus. *ACL*.
- Karita**, S., Chen, N., Hayashi, T., Hori, T., Inaguma, H., Jiang, Z., Someki, M., Soplin, N. E. Y., Yamamoto, R., Wang, X., Watanabe, S., Yoshimura, T., and Zhang, W. (2019). A comparative study on transformer vs RNN in speech applications. *IEEE ASRU-19*.
- Karlsson**, F., Voutilainen, A., Heikkilä, J., and Anttila, A. (Eds.). (1995). *Constraint Grammar: A Language-Independent System for Parsing Unrestricted Text*. Mouton de Gruyter.
- Karpukhin**, V., Oğuz, B., Min, S., Lewis, P., Wu, L., Edunov, S., Chen, D., and Yih, W.-t. (2020). Dense passage retrieval for open-domain question answering. *EMNLP*.
- Karttunen**, L. (1969). Discourse referents. *COLING*. Preprint No. 70.
- Karttunen**, L. (1999). Comments on Joshi, Kornai, A. (Ed.), *Extended Finite State Models of Language*, 16–18. Cambridge University Press.
- Kasami**, T. (1965). An efficient recognition and syntax analysis algorithm for context-free languages. Tech. rep. AFCRL-65-758, Air Force Cambridge Research Laboratory, Bedford, MA.
- Katz**, J. J. and Fodor, J. A. (1963). The structure of a semantic theory. *Language* 39, 170–210.
- Kawamoto**, A. H. (1988). Distributed representations of ambiguous words and their resolution in connectionist networks. Small, S. L., Cottrell, G. W., and Tanenhaus, M. (Eds.), *Lexical Ambiguity Resolution*, 195–228. Morgan Kaufman.
- Kay**, M. (1967). Experiments with a powerful parser. *Proc. 2eme Conference Internationale sur le Traitement Automatique des Langues*.
- Kay**, M. (1973). The MIND system. Rustin, R. (Ed.), *Natural Language Processing*, 155–188. Algorithmics Press.
- Kay**, M. (1982). Algorithm schemata and data structures in syntactic processing. Allén, S. (Ed.), *Text Processing: Text Analysis and Generation, Text Typology and Attribution*, 327–358. Almqvist and Wiksell, Stockholm.
- Kay**, M. and Röscheisen, M. (1988). Text-translation alignment. Tech. rep. P90-00143, Xerox Palo Alto Research Center, Palo Alto, CA.
- Kay**, M. and Röscheisen, M. (1993). Text-translation alignment. *Computational Linguistics* 19, 121–142.
- Kay**, P. and Fillmore, C. J. (1999). Grammatical constructions and linguistic generalizations: The What’s X Doing Y? construction. *Language* 75(1), 1–33.
- Kehler**, A. (1993). The effect of establishing coherence in ellipsis and anaphora resolution. *ACL*.
- Kehler**, A. (1994). Temporal relations: Reference or discourse coherence?. *ACL*.
- Kehler**, A. (1997a). Current theories of centering for pronoun interpretation: A critical evaluation. *Computational Linguistics* 23(3), 467–475.
- Kehler**, A. (1997b). Probabilistic coreference in information extraction. *EMNLP*.

- Kehler**, A. (2000). *Coherence, Reference, and the Theory of Grammar*. CSLI Publications.
- Kehler**, A., Appelt, D. E., Taylor, L., and Simma, A. (2004). The (non)utility of predicate-argument frequencies for pronoun interpretation. *HLT-NAACL*.
- Kehler**, A. and Rohde, H. (2013). A probabilistic reconciliation of coherence-driven and centering-driven theories of pronoun interpretation. *Theoretical Linguistics* 39(1-2), 1–37.
- Keller**, F. and Lapata, M. (2003). Using the web to obtain frequencies for unseen bigrams. *Computational Linguistics* 29, 459–484.
- Kelly**, E. F. and Stone, P. J. (1975). *Computer Recognition of English Word Senses*. North-Holland.
- Kendall**, T. and Farrington, C. (2020). The Corpus of Regional African American Language. Version 2020.05. Eugene, OR: The Online Resources for African American Language Project. <http://oraal.uoregon.edu/coraal>.
- Kennedy**, C. and Boguraev, B. K. (1996). Anaphora for everyone: Pronominal anaphora resolution without a parser. *COLING*.
- Kiela**, D. and Clark, S. (2014). A systematic study of semantic vector space model parameters. *EACL 2nd Workshop on Continuous Vector Space Models and their Compositionality (CVSC)*.
- Kilgarriff**, A. and Rosenzweig, J. (2000). Framework and results for English SENSEVAL. *Computers and the Humanities* 34, 15–48.
- Kim**, E. (2019). Optimize computational efficiency of skip-gram with negative sampling. [https://aegis4048.github.io/optimize\\_computational\\_efficiency\\_of\\_skip\\_gram\\_with\\_negative\\_sampling](https://aegis4048.github.io/optimize_computational_efficiency_of_skip_gram_with_negative_sampling).
- Kim**, S. M. and Hovy, E. H. (2004). Determining the sentiment of opinions. *COLING*.
- King**, S. (2020). From African American Vernacular English to African American Language: Rethinking the study of race and language in African Americans' speech. *Annual Review of Linguistics* 6, 285–300.
- Kingma**, D. and Ba, J. (2015). Adam: A method for stochastic optimization. *ICLR 2015*.
- Kintsch**, W. (1974). *The Representation of Meaning in Memory*. Wiley, New York.
- Kintsch**, W. and Van Dijk, T. A. (1978). Toward a model of text comprehension and production. *Psychological review* 85(5), 363–394.
- Kipper**, K., Dang, H. T., and Palmer, M. (2000). Class-based construction of a verb lexicon. *AAAI*.
- Kiritchenko**, S. and Mohammad, S. M. (2017). Best-worst scaling more reliable than rating scales: A case study on sentiment intensity annotation. *ACL*.
- Kiritchenko**, S. and Mohammad, S. M. (2018). Examining gender and race bias in two hundred sentiment analysis systems. *\*SEM*.
- Kiss**, T. and Strunk, J. (2006). Unsupervised multilingual sentence boundary detection. *Computational Linguistics* 32(4), 485–525.
- Kitaev**, N., Cao, S., and Klein, D. (2019). Multilingual constituency parsing with self-attention and pre-training. *ACL*.
- Kitaev**, N. and Klein, D. (2018). Constitency parsing with a self-attentive encoder. *ACL*.
- Klatt**, D. H. (1975). Voice onset time, friction, and aspiration in word-initial consonant clusters. *Journal of Speech and Hearing Research* 18, 686–706.
- Klatt**, D. H. (1977). Review of the ARPA speech understanding project. *JASA* 62(6), 1345–1366.
- Klatt**, D. H. (1982). The Klattalk text-to-speech conversion system. *ICASSP*.
- Kleene**, S. C. (1951). Representation of events in nerve nets and finite automata. Tech. rep. RM-704, RAND Corporation. RAND Research Memorandum.
- Kleene**, S. C. (1956). Representation of events in nerve nets and finite automata. Shannon, C. and McCarthy, J. (Eds.), *Automata Studies*, 3–41. Princeton University Press.
- Klein**, D. and Manning, C. D. (2003). A\* parsing: Fast exact Viterbi parse selection. *HLT-NAACL*.
- Klein**, S. and Simmons, R. F. (1963). A computational approach to grammatical coding of English words. *Journal of the ACM* 10(3), 334–347.
- Kneser**, R. and Ney, H. (1995). Improved backing-off for M-gram language modeling. *ICASSP*, Vol. 1.
- Knott**, A. and Dale, R. (1994). Using linguistic phenomena to motivate a set of coherence relations. *Discourse Processes* 18(1), 35–62.
- Kocijan**, V., Cretu, A.-M., Camburu, O.-M., Yordanov, Y., and Lukasiewicz, T. (2019). A surprisingly robust trick for the Winograd Schema Challenge. *ACL*.
- Koehn**, P. (2005). Europarl: A parallel corpus for statistical machine translation. *MT summit*, vol. 5.
- Koehn**, P., Hoang, H., Birch, A., Callison-Burch, C., Federico, M., Bertoldi, N., Cowan, B., Shen, W., Moran, C., Zens, R., Dyer, C., Bojar, O., Constantin, A., and Herbst, E. (2006). Moses: Open source toolkit for statistical machine translation. *ACL*.
- Koehn**, P., Och, F. J., and Marcu, D. (2003). Statistical phrase-based translation. *HLT-NAACL*.
- Koenig**, W., Dunn, H. K., and Lacy, L. Y. (1946). The sound spectrograph. *JASA* 18, 19–49.
- Kolhatkar**, V., Roussel, A., Dipper, S., and Zinsmeister, H. (2018). Anaphora with non-nominal antecedents in computational linguistics: A survey. *Computational Linguistics* 44(3), 547–612.
- Krovetz**, R. (1993). Viewing morphology as an inference process. *SIGIR-93*.
- Kruskal**, J. B. (1983). An overview of sequence comparison. Sankoff, D. and Kruskal, J. B. (Eds.), *Time Warps, String Edits, and Macromolecules: The Theory and Practice of Sequence Comparison*, 1–44. Addison-Wesley.
- Kudo**, T. (2018). Subword regularization: Improving neural network translation models with multiple subword candidates. *ACL*.
- Kudo**, T. and Matsumoto, Y. (2002). Japanese dependency analysis using cascaded chunking. *CoNLL*.
- Kudo**, T. and Richardson, J. (2018). SentencePiece: A simple and language independent subword tokenizer and detokenizer for neural text processing. *EMNLP*.
- Kullback**, S. and Leibler, R. A. (1951). On information and sufficiency. *Annals of Mathematical Statistics* 22, 79–86.
- Kumar**, S., Jat, S., Saxena, K., and Talukdar, P. (2019). Zero-shot word sense disambiguation using sense definition embeddings. *ACL*.
- Kummerfeld**, J. K. and Klein, D. (2013). Error-driven analysis of challenges in coreference resolution. *EMNLP*.
- Kuno**, S. (1965). The predictive analyzer and a path elimination technique. *ACM* 8(7), 453–462.
- Kuno**, S. and Oettinger, A. G. (1963). Multiple-path syntactic analyzer. Popplewell, C. M. (Ed.), *Information Processing 1962: Proceedings of the IFIP Congress 1962*. North-Holland.
- Kupiec**, J. (1992). Robust part-of-speech tagging using a hidden Markov model. *Computer Speech and Language* 6, 225–242.
- Kurita**, K., Vyas, N., Pareek, A., Black, A. W., and Tsvetkov, Y. (2019). Quantifying social biases in contextual

- word representations. *1st ACL Workshop on Gender Bias for Natural Language Processing*.
- Kučera, H.** and Francis, W. N. (1967). *Computational Analysis of Present-Day American English*. Brown University Press, Providence, RI.
- Kwiatkowski, T.**, Palomaki, J., Redfield, O., Collins, M., Parikh, A., Alberti, C., Epstein, D., Polosukhin, I., Devlin, J., Lee, K., Toutanova, K., Jones, L., Kelcey, M., Chang, M.-W., Dai, A. M., Uszkoreit, J., Le, Q., and Petrov, S. (2019). Natural questions: A benchmark for question answering research. *TACL 7*, 452–466.
- Ladefoged, P.** (1993). *A Course in Phonetics*. Harcourt Brace Jovanovich. (3rd ed.).
- Ladefoged, P.** (1996). *Elements of Acoustic Phonetics* (2nd Ed.). University of Chicago.
- Lafferty, J. D.**, McCallum, A., and Pereira, F. C. N. (2001). Conditional random fields: Probabilistic models for segmenting and labeling sequence data. *ICML*.
- Lai, A.** and Tetreault, J. (2018). Discourse coherence in the wild: A dataset, evaluation and methods. *SIGDIAL*.
- Lake, B. M.** and Murphy, G. L. (2020). Word meaning in minds and machines..
- Lakoff, G.** (1965). *On the Nature of Syntactic Irregularity*. Ph.D. thesis, Indiana University. Published as *Irregularity in Syntax*. Holt, Rinehart, and Winston, New York, 1970.
- Lakoff, G.** (1972a). Linguistics and natural logic. Davidson, D. and Harman, G. (Eds.), *Semantics for Natural Language*, 545–665. D. Reidel.
- Lakoff, G.** (1972b). Structural complexity in fairy tales. *The Study of Man*, 128–50. School of Social Sciences, University of California, Irvine, CA.
- Lakoff, G.** and Johnson, M. (1980). *Metaphors We Live By*. University of Chicago Press, Chicago, IL.
- Lample, G.**, Ballesteros, M., Subramanian, S., Kawakami, K., and Dyer, C. (2016). Neural architectures for named entity recognition. *NAACL HLT*.
- Landauer, T. K.** (Ed.). (1995). *The Trouble with Computers: Usefulness, Usability, and Productivity*. MIT Press.
- Landauer, T. K.** and Dumais, S. T. (1997). A solution to Plato’s problem: The Latent Semantic Analysis theory of acquisition, induction, and representation of knowledge. *Psychological Review 104*, 211–240.
- Landauer, T. K.**, Laham, D., Rehder, B., and Schreiner, M. E. (1997). How well can passage meaning be derived without using word order? A comparison of Latent Semantic Analysis and humans. *COGSCI*.
- Landes, S.**, Leacock, C., and Tengi, R. I. (1998). Building semantic concordances. Fellbaum, C. (Ed.), *WordNet: An Electronic Lexical Database*, 199–216. MIT Press.
- Lang, J.** and Lapata, M. (2014). Similarity-driven semantic role induction via graph partitioning. *Computational Linguistics 40*(3), 633–669.
- Lang, K. J.**, Waibel, A. H., and Hinton, G. E. (1990). A time-delay neural network architecture for isolated word recognition. *Neural networks 3*(1), 23–43.
- Lapata, M.** (2003). Probabilistic text structuring: Experiments with sentence ordering. *ACL*.
- Lapesa, G.** and Evert, S. (2014). A large scale evaluation of distributional semantic models: Parameters, interactions and model selection. *TACL 2*, 531–545.
- Lappin, S.** and Leass, H. (1994). An algorithm for pronominal anaphora resolution. *Computational Linguistics 20*(4), 535–561.
- Lascarides, A.** and Asher, N. (1993). Temporal interpretation, discourse relations, and common sense entailment. *Linguistics and Philosophy 16*(5), 437–493.
- Lauscher, A.**, Vulić, I., Ponti, E. M., Korhonen, A., and Glavaš, G. (2019). Informing unsupervised pretraining with external linguistic knowledge. arXiv preprint arXiv:1909.02339.
- Lawrence, W.** (1953). The synthesis of speech from signals which have a low information rate. Jackson, W. (Ed.), *Communication Theory*, 460–469. Butterworth.
- LDC** (1998). *LDC Catalog: Hub4 project*. University of Pennsylvania. [www.ldc.upenn.edu/Catalog/LDC98S71.html](http://www.ldc.upenn.edu/Catalog/LDC98S71.html).
- LeCun, Y.**, Boser, B., Denker, J. S., Henderson, D., Howard, R. E., Hubbard, W., and Jackel, L. D. (1989). Backpropagation applied to handwritten zip code recognition. *Neural computation 1*(4), 541–551.
- Lee, D. D.** and Seung, H. S. (1999). Learning the parts of objects by non-negative matrix factorization. *Nature 401*(6755), 788–791.
- Lee, H.**, Chang, A., Peirsman, Y., Chambers, N., Surdeanu, M., and Jurafsky, D. (2013). Deterministic coreference resolution based on entity-centric, precision-ranked rules. *Computational Linguistics 39*(4), 885–916.
- Lee, H.**, Peirsman, Y., Chang, A., Chambers, N., Surdeanu, M., and Jurafsky, D. (2011). Stanford’s multi-pass sieve coreference resolution system at the CoNLL-2011 shared task. *CoNLL*.
- Lee, H.**, Surdeanu, M., and Jurafsky, D. (2017). A scaffolding approach to coreference resolution integrating statistical and rule-based models. *Natural Language Engineering 23*(5), 733–762.
- Lee, K.**, Chang, M.-W., and Toutanova, K. (2019). Latent retrieval for weakly supervised open domain question answering. *ACL*.
- Lee, K.**, He, L., Lewis, M., and Zettlemoyer, L. (2017). End-to-end neural coreference resolution. *EMNLP*.
- Lee, K.**, He, L., and Zettlemoyer, L. (2018). Higher-order coreference resolution with coarse-to-fine inference. *NAACL HLT*.
- Lehiste, I.** (Ed.). (1967). *Readings in Acoustic Phonetics*. MIT Press.
- Lehnert, W. G.**, Cardie, C., Fisher, D., Riloff, E., and Williams, R. (1991). Description of the CIRCUS system as used for MUC-3. Sundheim, B. (Ed.), *MUC-3*.
- Lemon, O.**, Georgila, K., Henderson, J., and Stuttle, M. (2006). An ISU dialogue system exhibiting reinforcement learning of dialogue policies: Generic slot-filling in the TALK in-car system. *EACL*.
- Lengerich, B.**, Maas, A., and Potts, C. (2018). Retrofitting distributional embeddings to knowledge graphs with functional relations. *COLING*.
- Lesk, M. E.** (1986). Automatic sense disambiguation using machine readable dictionaries: How to tell a pine cone from an ice cream cone. *Proceedings of the 5th International Conference on Systems Documentation*.
- Levenshtein, V. I.** (1966). Binary codes capable of correcting deletions, insertions, and reversals. *Cybernetics and Control Theory 10*(8), 707–710. Original in *Doklady Akademii Nauk SSSR 163*(4): 845–848 (1965).
- Levesque, H.** (2011). The Winograd Schema Challenge. *Logical Formalizations of Commonsense Reasoning — Papers from the AAAI 2011 Spring Symposium (SS-11-06)*.
- Levesque, H.**, Davis, E., and Morgenstern, L. (2012). The Winograd Schema Challenge. *KR-12*.
- Levesque, H. J.**, Cohen, P. R., and Nunes, J. H. T. (1990). On acting together. *AAAI*. Morgan Kaufmann.
- Levin, B.** (1977). Mapping sentences to case frames. Tech. rep. 167, MIT AI Laboratory. AI Working Paper 143.

- Levin, B.** (1993). *English Verb Classes and Alternations: A Preliminary Investigation*. University of Chicago Press.
- Levin, B.** and Rappaport Hovav, M. (2005). *Argument Realization*. Cambridge University Press.
- Levin, E.**, Pieraccini, R., and Eckert, W. (2000). A stochastic model of human-machine interaction for learning dialog strategies. *IEEE Transactions on Speech and Audio Processing* 8, 11–23.
- Levine, Y.**, Lenz, B., Dagan, O., Ram, O., Padnos, D., Sharir, O., Shalev-Shwartz, S., Shashua, A., and Shoham, Y. (2020). SenseBERT: Driving some sense into BERT. *ACL*.
- Levinson, S. C.** (1983). *Conversational Analysis*, chap. 6. Cambridge University Press.
- Levow, G.-A.** (1998). Characterizing and recognizing spoken corrections in human-computer dialogue. *COLING-ACL*.
- Levy, O.** and Goldberg, Y. (2014a). Dependency-based word embeddings. *ACL*.
- Levy, O.** and Goldberg, Y. (2014b). Linguistic regularities in sparse and explicit word representations. *CoNLL*.
- Levy, O.** and Goldberg, Y. (2014c). Neural word embedding as implicit matrix factorization. *NeurIPS*.
- Levy, O.**, Goldberg, Y., and Dagan, I. (2015). Improving distributional similarity with lessons learned from word embeddings. *TACL* 3, 211–225.
- Lewis, M.** and Steedman, M. (2014). A\* ccg parsing with a supertag-factored model. *EMNLP*.
- Li, A.**, Zheng, F., Byrne, W., Fung, P., Kamm, T., Yi, L., Song, Z., Ruhi, U., Venkataramani, V., and Chen, X. (2000). CASS: A phonetically transcribed corpus of Mandarin spontaneous speech. *ICSLP*.
- Li, B. Z.**, Min, S., Iyer, S., Mehdad, Y., and Yih, W.-t. (2020). Efficient one-pass end-to-end entity linking for questions. *EMNLP*.
- Li, J.**, Chen, X., Hovy, E. H., and Jurafsky, D. (2015). Visualizing and understanding neural models in NLP. *NAACL HLT*.
- Li, J.**, Galley, M., Brockett, C., Gao, J., and Dolan, B. (2016). A diversity-promoting objective function for neural conversation models. *NAACL HLT*.
- Li, J.** and Jurafsky, D. (2017). Neural net models of open-domain discourse coherence. *EMNLP*.
- Li, J.**, Li, R., and Hovy, E. H. (2014). Recursive deep models for discourse parsing. *EMNLP*.
- Li, J.**, Monroe, W., Ritter, A., Galley, M., Gao, J., and Jurafsky, D. (2016). Deep reinforcement learning for dialogue generation. *EMNLP*.
- Li, J.**, Monroe, W., Shi, T., Ritter, A., and Jurafsky, D. (2017). Adversarial learning for neural dialogue generation. *EMNLP*.
- Li, M.**, Weston, J., and Roller, S. (2019). Acute-eval: Improved dialogue evaluation with optimized questions and multi-turn comparisons. *NeurIPS19 Workshop on Conversational AI*.
- Li, Q.**, Li, T., and Chang, B. (2016). Discourse parsing with attention-based hierarchical neural networks. *EMNLP*.
- Li, X.**, Meng, Y., Sun, X., Han, Q., Yuan, A., and Li, J. (2019). Is word segmentation necessary for deep learning of Chinese representations?. *ACL*.
- Liberman, A. M.**, Delattre, P. C., and Cooper, F. S. (1952). The role of selected stimulus variables in the perception of the unvoiced stop consonants. *American Journal of Psychology* 65, 497–516.
- Lin, D.** (2003). Dependency-based evaluation of minipar. *Workshop on the Evaluation of Parsing Systems*.
- Lin, J.**, Nogueira, R., and Yates, A. (2020). Pretrained transformers for text ranking: BERT and beyond. arXiv preprint arXiv:2010.06467.
- Lin, Y.**, Michel, J.-B., Aiden Lieberman, E., Orwant, J., Brockman, W., and Petrov, S. (2012a). Syntactic annotations for the Google books NGram corpus. *ACL*.
- Lin, Y.**, Michel, J.-B., Lieberman Aiden, E., Orwant, J., Brockman, W., and Petrov, S. (2012b). Syntactic annotations for the google books ngram corpus. *ACL*.
- Lin, Z.**, Madotto, A., Shin, J., Xu, P., and Fung, P. (2019). MoEL: Mixture of empathetic listeners. <http://arxiv.org/abs/1908.07687>.
- Lin, Z.**, Kan, M.-Y., and Ng, H. T. (2009). Recognizing implicit discourse relations in the penn discourse treebank. *EMNLP*.
- Lin, Z.**, Ng, H. T., and Kan, M.-Y. (2011). Automatically evaluating text coherence using discourse relations. *ACL*.
- Lin, Z.**, Ng, H. T., and Kan, M.-Y. (2014). A pdtb-styled end-to-end discourse parser. *Natural Language Engineering* 20(2), 151–184.
- Lindsey, R.** (1963). Inferential memory as the basis of machines which understand natural language. Feigenbaum, E. and Feldman, J. (Eds.), *Computers and Thought*, 217–233. McGraw Hill.
- Ling, W.**, Dyer, C., Black, A. W., Trancoso, I., Fernandez, R., Amir, S., Marujo, L., and Luis, T. (2015). Finding function in form: Compositional character models for open vocabulary word representation. *EMNLP*.
- Linzen, T.** (2016). Issues in evaluating semantic spaces using word analogies. *1st Workshop on Evaluating Vector-Space Representations for NLP*.
- Lison, P.** and Tiedemann, J. (2016). Opensubtitles2016: Extracting large parallel corpora from movie and tv subtitles. *LREC*.
- Litman, D. J.** (1985). *Plan Recognition and Discourse Analysis: An Integrated Approach for Understanding Dialogues*. Ph.D. thesis, University of Rochester, Rochester, NY.
- Litman, D. J.** and Allen, J. (1987). A plan recognition model for subdialogues in conversation. *Cognitive Science* 11, 163–200.
- Litman, D. J.**, Swerts, M., and Hirschberg, J. (2000). Predicting automatic speech recognition performance using prosodic cues. *NAACL*.
- Litman, D. J.**, Walker, M. A., and Kearns, M. (1999). Automatic detection of poor speech recognition at the dialogue level. *ACL*.
- Liu, B.** and Zhang, L. (2012). A survey of opinion mining and sentiment analysis. Aggarwal, C. C. and Zhai, C. (Eds.), *Mining text data*, 415–464. Springer.
- Liu, C.-W.**, Lowe, R. T., Serban, I. V., Noseworthy, M., Charlin, L., and Pineau, J. (2016). How NOT to evaluate your dialogue system: An empirical study of unsupervised evaluation metrics for dialogue response generation. *EMNLP*.
- Liu, H.**, Dacon, J., Fan, W., Liu, H., Liu, Z., and Tang, J. (2020). Does gender matter? Towards fairness in dialogue systems. *COLING*.
- Liu, Y.**, Fung, P., Yang, Y., Cieri, C., Huang, S., and Graff, D. (2006). HKUST/MTS: A very large scale Mandarin telephone speech corpus. *International Conference on Chinese Spoken Language Processing*.
- Liu, Y.**, Ott, M., Goyal, N., Du, J., Joshi, M., Chen, D., Levy, O., Lewis, M., Zettlemoyer, L., and Stoyanov, V. (2019). RoBERTa: A robustly optimized BERT pretraining approach. arXiv preprint arXiv:1907.11692.
- Lochbaum, K. E.**, Grosz, B. J., and Sidner, C. L. (2000). Discourse structure and intention recognition. Dale, R., Moisl, H., and Somers, H. L. (Eds.), *Handbook of Natural Language Processing*. Marcel Dekker.

- Logeswaran**, L., Lee, H., and Radev, D. (2018). Sentence ordering and coherence modeling using recurrent neural networks. *AAAI*.
- Louis**, A. and Nenkova, A. (2012). A coherence model based on syntactic patterns. *EMNLP*.
- Loureiro**, D. and Jorge, A. (2019). Language modelling makes sense: Propagating representations through WordNet for full-coverage word sense disambiguation. *ACL*.
- Louviere**, J. J., Flynn, T. N., and Marley, A. A. J. (2015). *Best-worst scaling: Theory, methods and applications*. Cambridge University Press.
- Lovins**, J. B. (1968). Development of a stemming algorithm. *Mechanical Translation and Computational Linguistics* 11(1–2), 9–13.
- Lowerre**, B. T. (1968). *The Harpy Speech Recognition System*. Ph.D. thesis, Carnegie Mellon University, Pittsburgh, PA.
- Luhn**, H. P. (1957). A statistical approach to the mechanized encoding and searching of literary information. *IBM Journal of Research and Development* 1(4), 309–317.
- Lui**, M. and Baldwin, T. (2011). Cross-domain feature selection for language identification. *IJCNL*.
- Lui**, M. and Baldwin, T. (2012). langid.py: An off-the-shelf language identification tool. *ACL*.
- Lukovnikov**, D., Fischer, A., and Lehmann, J. (2019). Pretrained transformers for simple question answering over knowledge graphs. *International Semantic Web Conference*.
- Luo**, F., Liu, T., He, Z., Xia, Q., Sui, Z., and Chang, B. (2018a). Leveraging gloss knowledge in neural word sense disambiguation by hierarchical co-attention. *EMNLP*.
- Luo**, F., Liu, T., Xia, Q., Chang, B., and Sui, Z. (2018b). Incorporating glosses into neural word sense disambiguation. *ACL*.
- Luo**, X. (2005). On coreference resolution performance metrics. *EMNLP*.
- Luo**, X. and Pradhan, S. (2016). Evaluation metrics. Poesio, M., Stuckardt, R., and Versley, Y. (Eds.), *Anaphora resolution: Algorithms, resources, and applications*, 141–163. Springer.
- Luo**, X., Pradhan, S., Recasens, M., and Hovy, E. H. (2014). An extension of BLANC to system mentions. *ACL*.
- Lyons**, J. (1977). *Semantics*. Cambridge University Press.
- Ma**, X. and Hovy, E. H. (2016). End-to-end sequence labeling via bi-directional LSTM-CNNs-CRF. *ACL*.
- Maas**, A., Xie, Z., Jurafsky, D., and Ng, A. Y. (2015). Lexicon-free conversational speech recognition with neural networks. *NAACL HLT*.
- Maas**, A. L., Hannun, A. Y., and Ng, A. Y. (2013). Rectifier nonlinearities improve neural network acoustic models. *ICML*.
- Maas**, A. L., Qi, P., Xie, Z., Hannun, A. Y., Lengerich, C. T., Jurafsky, D., and Ng, A. Y. (2017). Building dnn acoustic models for large vocabulary speech recognition. *Computer Speech & Language* 41, 195–213.
- Madhu**, S. and Lytel, D. (1965). A figure of merit technique for the resolution of non-grammatical ambiguity. *Mechanical Translation* 8(2), 9–13.
- Magerman**, D. M. (1994). *Natural Language Parsing as Statistical Pattern Recognition*. Ph.D. thesis, University of Pennsylvania.
- Magerman**, D. M. (1995). Statistical decision-tree models for parsing. *ACL*.
- Mairesse**, F. and Walker, M. A. (2008). Trainable generation of big-five personality styles through data-driven parameter estimation. *ACL*.
- Manandhar**, S., Klapaftis, I. P., Dligach, D., and Pradhan, S. (2010). Semeval-2010 task 14: Word sense induction & disambiguation. *SemEval-2010*.
- Mann**, W. C. and Thompson, S. A. (1987). Rhetorical structure theory: A theory of text organization. Tech. rep. RS-87-190, Information Sciences Institute.
- Manning**, C. D. (2011). Part-of-speech tagging from 97% to 100%: Is it time for some linguistics?. *CICLing 2011*.
- Manning**, C. D., Raghavan, P., and Schütze, H. (2008). *Introduction to Information Retrieval*. Cambridge.
- Manning**, C. D., Surdeanu, M., Bauer, J., Finkel, J., Bethard, S., and McClosky, D. (2014). The Stanford CoreNLP natural language processing toolkit. *ACL*.
- Marcu**, D. (1997). The rhetorical parsing of natural language texts. *ACL*.
- Marcu**, D. (1999). A decision-based approach to rhetorical parsing. *ACL*.
- Marcu**, D. (2000a). The rhetorical parsing of unrestricted texts: A surface-based approach. *Computational Linguistics* 26(3), 395–448.
- Marcu**, D. (Ed.) (2000b). *The Theory and Practice of Discourse Parsing and Summarization*. MIT Press.
- Marcu**, D. and Echihabi, A. (2002). An unsupervised approach to recognizing discourse relations. *ACL*.
- Marcu**, D. and Wong, W. (2002). A phrase-based, joint probability model for statistical machine translation. *EMNLP*.
- Marcus**, M. P. (1980). *A Theory of Syntactic Recognition for Natural Language*. MIT Press.
- Marcus**, M. P., Kim, G., Marcinkiewicz, M. A., MacIntyre, R., Bies, A., Ferguson, M., Katz, K., and Schasberger, B. (1994). The Penn Treebank: Annotating predicate argument structure. *ARPA Human Language Technology Workshop*. Morgan Kaufmann.
- Marcus**, M. P., Santorini, B., and Marcinkiewicz, M. A. (1993). Building a large annotated corpus of English: The Penn treebank. *Computational Linguistics* 19(2), 313–330.
- Markov**, A. A. (1913). Essai d'une recherche statistique sur le texte du roman "Eugene Onegin" illustrant la liaison des épreuves en chaîne ('Example of a statistical investigation of the text of "Eugene Onegin" illustrating the dependence between samples in chain'). *Izvistia Imperatorskoi Akademii Nauk (Bulletin de l'Académie Impériale des Sciences de St.-Pétersbourg)* 7, 153–162.
- Maron**, M. E. (1961). Automatic indexing: an experimental inquiry. *Journal of the ACM* 8(3), 404–417.
- Màrquez**, L., Carreras, X., Litkowski, K. C., and Stevenson, S. (2008). Semantic role labeling: An introduction to the special issue. *Computational linguistics* 34(2), 145–159.
- Marshall**, I. (1983). Choice of grammatical word-class without global syntactic analysis: Tagging words in the LOB corpus. *Computers and the Humanities* 17, 139–150.
- Marshall**, I. (1987). Tag selection using probabilistic methods. Garside, R., Leech, G., and Sampson, G. (Eds.), *The Computational Analysis of English*, 42–56. Longman.
- Martin**, J. H. (1986). The acquisition of polysemy. *ICML*.
- Martschat**, S. and Strube, M. (2014). Recall error analysis for coreference resolution. *EMNLP*.
- Martschat**, S. and Strube, M. (2015). Latent structures for coreference resolution. *TACL* 3, 405–418.
- Masterman**, M. (1957). The thesaurus in syntax and semantics. *Mechanical Translation* 4(1), 1–2.
- Mathis**, D. A. and Mozer, M. C. (1995). On the computational utility of consciousness. Tesauro, G., Touretzky, D. S., and Alspector, J. (Eds.), *Advances in Neural Information Processing Systems VII*. MIT Press.
- McCallum**, A., Freitag, D., and Pereira, F. C. N. (2000). Maximum entropy Markov models for information extraction and segmentation. *ICML*.

- McCallum**, A. and Li, W. (2003). Early results for named entity recognition with conditional random fields, feature induction and web-enhanced lexicons. *CoNLL*.
- McCallum**, A. and Nigam, K. (1998). A comparison of event models for naive bayes text classification. *AAAI/ICML-98 Workshop on Learning for Text Categorization*.
- McCarthy**, J. F. and Lehnert, W. G. (1995). Using decision trees for coreference resolution. *IJCAI-95*.
- McCawley**, J. D. (1968). The role of semantics in a grammar. Bach, E. W. and Harms, R. T. (Eds.), *Universals in Linguistic Theory*, 124–169. Holt, Rinehart & Winston.
- McCawley**, J. D. (1993). *Everything that Linguists Have Always Wanted to Know about Logic* (2nd Ed.). University of Chicago Press, Chicago, IL.
- McClelland**, J. L. and Elman, J. L. (1986). The TRACE model of speech perception. *Cognitive Psychology* 18, 1–86.
- McClelland**, J. L. and Rumelhart, D. E. (Eds.). (1986). *Parallel Distributed Processing: Explorations in the Microstructure of Cognition*, Vol. 2: *Psychological and Biological Models*. MIT Press.
- McCulloch**, W. S. and Pitts, W. (1943). A logical calculus of ideas immanent in nervous activity. *Bulletin of Mathematical Biophysics* 5, 115–133.
- McDonald**, R., Crammer, K., and Pereira, F. C. N. (2005). Online large-margin training of dependency parsers. *ACL*.
- McDonald**, R. and Nivre, J. (2011). Analyzing and integrating dependency parsers. *Computational Linguistics* 37(1), 197–230.
- McDonald**, R., Pereira, F. C. N., Ribarov, K., and Hajič, J. (2005). Non-projective dependency parsing using spanning tree algorithms. *HLT-EMNLP*.
- McGuffie**, K. and Newhouse, A. (2020). The radicalization risks of GPT-3 and advanced neural language models. arXiv preprint arXiv:2009.06807.
- McGuiness**, D. L. and van Harmelen, F. (2004). OWL web ontology overview. Tech. rep. 20040210, World Wide Web Consortium.
- McLuhan**, M. (1964). *Understanding Media: The Extensions of Man*. New American Library.
- Mehl**, M. R., Gosling, S. D., and Pennebaker, J. W. (2006). Personality in its natural habitat: manifestations and implicit folk theories of personality in daily life. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology* 90(5).
- Meister**, C., Vieira, T., and Cotterell, R. (2020). If beam search is the answer, what was the question?. *EMNLP*.
- Melamud**, O., Goldberger, J., and Dagan, I. (2016). context2vec: Learning generic context embedding with bidirectional LSTM. *CoNLL*.
- Mel'čuk**, I. A. (1988). *Dependency Syntax: Theory and Practice*. State University of New York Press.
- Merialdo**, B. (1994). Tagging English text with a probabilistic model. *Computational Linguistics* 20(2), 155–172.
- Mesgar**, M. and Strube, M. (2016). Lexical coherence graph modeling using word embeddings. *ACL*.
- Metsis**, V., Androutsopoulos, I., and Paliouras, G. (2006). Spam filtering with naive bayes—which naive bayes?. *CEAS*.
- Meyers**, A., Reeves, R., Macleod, C., Szekely, R., Zielinska, V., Young, B., and Grishman, R. (2004). The nombank project: An interim report. *Proceedings of the NAACL/HLT Workshop: Frontiers in Corpus Annotation*.
- Mihalcea**, R. (2007). Using wikipedia for automatic word sense disambiguation. *NAACL-HLT*.
- Mihalcea**, R. and Csomai, A. (2007). Wikify!: Linking documents to encyclopedic knowledge. *CIKM 2007*.
- Mihalcea**, R. and Moldovan, D. (2001). Automatic generation of a coarse grained WordNet. *NAACL Workshop on WordNet and Other Lexical Resources*.
- Mikheev**, A., Moens, M., and Grover, C. (1999). Named entity recognition without gazetteers. *EACL*.
- Mikolov**, T. (2012). *Statistical language models based on neural networks*. Ph.D. thesis, Ph. D. thesis, Brno University of Technology.
- Mikolov**, T., Chen, K., Corrado, G. S., and Dean, J. (2013). Efficient estimation of word representations in vector space. *ICLR 2013*.
- Mikolov**, T., Karafiat, M., Burget, L., Černocký, J., and Khudanpur, S. (2010). Recurrent neural network based language model. *INTERSPEECH 2010*.
- Mikolov**, T., Kombrink, S., Burget, L., Černocký, J. H., and Khudanpur, S. (2011). Extensions of recurrent neural network language model. *ICASSP*.
- Mikolov**, T., Sutskever, I., Chen, K., Corrado, G. S., and Dean, J. (2013a). Distributed representations of words and phrases and their compositionality. *NeurIPS*.
- Mikolov**, T., Yih, W.-t., and Zweig, G. (2013b). Linguistic regularities in continuous space word representations. *NAACL HLT*.
- Miller**, G. A. and Nicely, P. E. (1955). An analysis of perceptual confusions among some English consonants. *JASA* 27, 338–352.
- Miller**, G. A. and Beebe-Center, J. G. (1958). Some psychological methods for evaluating the quality of translations. *Mechanical Translation* 3, 73–80.
- Miller**, G. A. and Charles, W. G. (1991). Contextual correlates of semantics similarity. *Language and Cognitive Processes* 6(1), 1–28.
- Miller**, G. A. and Chomsky, N. (1963). Finitary models of language users. Luce, R. D., Bush, R. R., and Galanter, E. (Eds.), *Handbook of Mathematical Psychology*, Vol. II, 419–491. John Wiley.
- Miller**, G. A., Leacock, C., Tengi, R. I., and Bunker, R. T. (1993). A semantic concordance. *Proceedings ARPA Workshop on Human Language Technology*.
- Miller**, G. A. and Selfridge, J. A. (1950). Verbal context and the recall of meaningful material. *American Journal of Psychology* 63, 176–185.
- Miller**, S., Bobrow, R. J., Ingria, R., and Schwartz, R. (1994). Hidden understanding models of natural language. *ACL*.
- Milne**, D. and Witten, I. H. (2008). Learning to link with wikipedia. *CIKM 2008*.
- Miltzakaki**, E., Prasad, R., Joshi, A. K., and Webber, B. L. (2004). The Penn Discourse Treebank. *LREC*.
- Minsky**, M. (1961). Steps toward artificial intelligence. *Proceedings of the IRE* 49(1), 8–30.
- Minsky**, M. (1974). A framework for representing knowledge. Tech. rep. 306, MIT AI Laboratory. Memo 306.
- Minsky**, M. and Papert, S. (1969). *Perceptrons*. MIT Press.
- Mintz**, M., Bills, S., Snow, R., and Jurafsky, D. (2009). Distant supervision for relation extraction without labeled data. *ACL IJCNLP*.
- Mitchell**, M., Wu, S., Zaldivar, A., Barnes, P., Vasserman, L., Hutchinson, B., Spitzer, E., Raji, I. D., and Gebru, T. (2019). Model cards for model reporting. *ACM FAccT*.
- Mitkov**, R. (2002). *Anaphora Resolution*. Longman.
- Mohamed**, A., Dahl, G. E., and Hinton, G. E. (2009). Deep Belief Networks for phone recognition. *NIPS Workshop on Deep Learning for Speech Recognition and Related Applications*.
- Mohammad**, S. M. (2018a). Obtaining reliable human ratings of valence, arousal, and dominance for 20,000 english words. *ACL*.

- Mohammad**, S. M. (2018b). Word affect intensities. *LREC*.
- Mohammad**, S. M. and Turney, P. D. (2013). Crowdsourcing a word-emotion association lexicon. *Computational Intelligence* 29(3), 436–465.
- Monroe**, B. L., Colaresi, M. P., and Quinn, K. M. (2008). Fightin'words: Lexical feature selection and evaluation for identifying the content of political conflict. *Political Analysis* 16(4), 372–403.
- Montague**, R. (1973). The proper treatment of quantification in ordinary English. Thomason, R. (Ed.), *Formal Philosophy: Selected Papers of Richard Montague*, 247–270. Yale University Press, New Haven, CT.
- Moosavi**, N. S. and Strube, M. (2016). Which coreference evaluation metric do you trust? a proposal for a link-based entity aware metric. *ACL*.
- Morey**, M., Muller, P., and Asher, N. (2017). How much progress have we made on RST discourse parsing? a replication study of recent results on the rst-dt. *EMNLP*.
- Morgan**, A. A., Hirschman, L., Colosimo, M., Yeh, A. S., and Colombe, J. B. (2004). Gene name identification and normalization using a model organism database. *Journal of Biomedical Informatics* 37(6), 396–410.
- Morgan**, N. and Bourlard, H. (1990). Continuous speech recognition using multilayer perceptrons with hidden markov models. *ICASSP*.
- Morgan**, N. and Bourlard, H. A. (1995). Neural networks for statistical recognition of continuous speech. *Proceedings of the IEEE* 83(5), 742–772.
- Morris**, J. and Hirst, G. (1991). Lexical cohesion computed by thesaural relations as an indicator of the structure of text. *Computational Linguistics* 17(1), 21–48.
- Morris**, W. (Ed.). (1985). *American Heritage Dictionary* (2nd College Edition Ed.). Houghton Mifflin.
- Mosteller**, F. and Wallace, D. L. (1963). Inference in an authorship problem: A comparative study of discrimination methods applied to the authorship of the disputed federalist papers. *Journal of the American Statistical Association* 58(302), 275–309.
- Mosteller**, F. and Wallace, D. L. (1964). *Inference and Disputed Authorship: The Federalist*. Springer-Verlag. 1984 2nd edition: *Applied Bayesian and Classical Inference*.
- Mrkšić**, N., Ó Séaghdha, D., Wen, T.-H., Thomson, B., and Young, S. (2017). Neural belief tracker: Data-driven dialogue state tracking. *ACL*.
- Mrkšić**, N., Séaghdha, D. Ó., Thomson, B., Gašić, M., Rojas-Barahona, L. M., Su, P.-H., Vandyke, D., Wen, T.-H., and Young, S. (2016). Counterfitting word vectors to linguistic constraints. *NAACL HLT*.
- Muller**, P., Braud, C., and Morey, M. (2019). ToNy: Contextual embeddings for accurate multilingual discourse segmentation of full documents. *Workshop on Discourse Relation Parsing and Treebanking*.
- Murphy**, K. P. (2012). *Machine learning: A probabilistic perspective*. MIT press.
- Musi**, E., Stede, M., Kriese, L., Mureşan, S., and Rocci, A. (2018). A multi-layer annotated corpus of argumentative text: From argument schemes to discourse relations. *LREC*.
- Myers**, G. (1992). “in this paper we report...”: Speech acts and scientific facts. *Journal of Pragmatics* 17(4), 295–313.
- Nádas**, A. (1984). Estimation of probabilities in the language model of the IBM speech recognition system. *IEEE Transactions on Acoustics, Speech, Signal Processing* 32(4), 859–861.
- Nagata**, M. and Morimoto, T. (1994). First steps toward statistical modeling of dialogue to predict the speech act type of the next utterance. *Speech Communication* 15, 193–203.
- Nallapati**, R., Zhou, B., dos Santos, C., Güllçehre, Ç., and Xiang, B. (2016). Abstractive text summarization using sequence-to-sequence RNNs and beyond. *Proceedings of The 20th SIGNLL Conference on Computational Natural Language Learning*. Association for Computational Linguistics.
- Nash-Webber**, B. L. (1975). The role of semantics in automatic speech understanding. Bobrow, D. G. and Collins, A. (Eds.), *Representation and Understanding*, 351–382. Academic Press.
- Naur**, P., Backus, J. W., Bauer, F. L., Green, J., Katz, C., McCarthy, J., Perlis, A. J., Rutishauser, H., Samuelson, K., Vauquois, B., Wegstein, J. H., van Wijngaarden, A., and Woodger, M. (1960). Report on the algorithmic language ALGOL 60. *CACM* 3(5), 299–314. Revised in CACM 6:1, 1–17, 1963.
- Navigli**, R. (2006). Meaningful clustering of senses helps boost word sense disambiguation performance. *COLING/ACL*.
- Navigli**, R. (2009). Word sense disambiguation: A survey. *ACM Computing Surveys* 41(2).
- Navigli**, R. (2016). Chapter 20. ontologies. Mitkov, R. (Ed.), *The Oxford handbook of computational linguistics*. Oxford University Press.
- Navigli**, R. and Ponzetto, S. P. (2012). BabelNet: The automatic construction, evaluation and application of a wide-coverage multilingual semantic network. *Artificial Intelligence* 193, 217–250.
- Navigli**, R. and Vannella, D. (2013). SemEval-2013 task 11: Word sense induction & disambiguation within an end-user application. \*SEM.
- Nayak**, N., Hakkani-Tür, D., Walker, M. A., and Heck, L. P. (2017). To plan or not to plan? discourse planning in slot-value informed sequence to sequence models for language generation. *INTERSPEECH*.
- Neff**, G. and Nagy, P. (2016). Talking to bots: Symbiotic agency and the case of Tay. *International Journal of Communication* 10, 4915–4931.
- Ng**, A. Y. and Jordan, M. I. (2002). On discriminative vs. generative classifiers: A comparison of logistic regression and naive bayes. *NIPS* 14.
- Ng**, H. T., Teo, L. H., and Kwan, J. L. P. (2000). A machine learning approach to answering questions for reading comprehension tests. *EMNLP*.
- Ng**, V. (2004). Learning noun phrase anaphoricity to improve coreference resolution: Issues in representation and optimization. *ACL*.
- Ng**, V. (2005a). Machine learning for coreference resolution: From local classification to global ranking. *ACL*.
- Ng**, V. (2005b). Supervised ranking for pronoun resolution: Some recent improvements. *AAAI*.
- Ng**, V. (2010). Supervised noun phrase coreference research: The first fifteen years. *ACL*.
- Ng**, V. (2017). Machine learning for entity coreference resolution: A retrospective look at two decades of research. *AAAI*.
- Ng**, V. and Cardie, C. (2002a). Identifying anaphoric and non-anaphoric noun phrases to improve coreference resolution. *COLING*.
- Ng**, V. and Cardie, C. (2002b). Improving machine learning approaches to coreference resolution. *ACL*.
- Nguyen**, D. T. and Joty, S. (2017). A neural local coherence model. *ACL*.
- Nguyen**, K. A., Schulte im Walde, S., and Vu, N. T. (2016). Integrating distributional lexical contrast into word embeddings for antonym-synonym distinction. *ACL*.
- Nie**, A., Bennett, E., and Goodman, N. (2019). Dissent: Learning sentence representations from explicit discourse relations. *ACL*.

- Nielsen**, J. (1992). The usability engineering life cycle. *IEEE Computer* 25(3), 12–22.
- Nielsen**, M. A. (2015). *Neural networks and Deep learning*. Determination Press USA.
- Nigam**, K., Lafferty, J. D., and McCallum, A. (1999). Using maximum entropy for text classification. *IJCAI-99 workshop on machine learning for information filtering*.
- Nilsson**, J., Riedel, S., and Yuret, D. (2007). The conll 2007 shared task on dependency parsing. *Proceedings of the CoNLL shared task session of EMNLP-CoNLL*. sn.
- Nirenburg**, S., Somers, H. L., and Wilks, Y. (Eds.). (2002). *Readings in Machine Translation*. MIT Press.
- Nissim**, M., Dingare, S., Carletta, J., and Steedman, M. (2004). An annotation scheme for information status in dialogue. *LREC*.
- NIST** (1990). TIMIT Acoustic-Phonetic Continuous Speech Corpus. National Institute of Standards and Technology Speech Disc 1-1.1. NIST Order No. PB91-505065.
- NIST** (2005). Speech recognition scoring toolkit (sck) version 2.1. <http://www.nist.gov/speech/tools/>.
- NIST** (2007). Matched Pairs Sentence-Segment Word Error (MAPSSWE) Test..
- Nivre**, J. (2007). Incremental non-projective dependency parsing. *NAACL-HLT*.
- Nivre**, J. (2003). An efficient algorithm for projective dependency parsing. *Proceedings of the 8th International Workshop on Parsing Technologies (IWPT)*.
- Nivre**, J. (2006). *Inductive Dependency Parsing*. Springer.
- Nivre**, J. (2009). Non-projective dependency parsing in expected linear time. *ACL IJCNLP*.
- Nivre**, J., de Marneffe, M.-C., Giltnar, F., Goldberg, Y., Hajic̄, J., Manning, C. D., McDonald, R., Petrov, S., Pyysalo, S., Silveira, N., Tsarfaty, R., and Zeman, D. (2016a). Universal Dependencies v1: A multilingual treebank collection. *LREC*.
- Nivre**, J., de Marneffe, M.-C., Giltnar, F., Goldberg, Y., Hajic̄, J., Manning, C. D., McDonald, R., Petrov, S., Pyysalo, S., Silveira, N., Tsarfaty, R., and Zeman, D. (2016b). Universal Dependencies v1: A multilingual treebank collection. *LREC*.
- Nivre**, J., Hall, J., Nilsson, J., Chaney, A., Eryigit, G., Kübler, S., Marinov, S., and Marsi, E. (2007). Malt-parser: A language-independent system for data-driven dependency parsing. *Natural Language Engineering* 13(02), 95–135.
- Nivre**, J. and Nilsson, J. (2005). Pseudo-projective dependency parsing. *ACL*.
- Nivre**, J. and Scholz, M. (2004). Deterministic dependency parsing of english text. *COLING*.
- Niwa**, Y. and Nitta, Y. (1994). Co-occurrence vectors from corpora vs. distance vectors from dictionaries. *ACL*.
- Noreen**, E. W. (1989). *Computer Intensive Methods for Testing Hypothesis*. Wiley.
- Norman**, D. A. (1988). *The Design of Everyday Things*. Basic Books.
- Norman**, D. A. and Rumelhart, D. E. (1975). *Explorations in Cognition*. Freeman.
- Norvig**, P. (1991). Techniques for automatic memoization with applications to context-free parsing. *Computational Linguistics* 17(1), 91–98.
- Nosek**, B. A., Banaji, M. R., and Greenwald, A. G. (2002a). Harvesting implicit group attitudes and beliefs from a demonstration web site. *Group Dynamics: Theory, Research, and Practice* 6(1), 101.
- Nosek**, B. A., Banaji, M. R., and Greenwald, A. G. (2002b). Math=male, me=female, therefore math≠ me. *Journal of personality and social psychology* 83(1), 44.
- Och**, F. J. (1998). *Ein beispiele basierter und statistischer Ansatz zum maschinellen Lernen von natürlichsprachlicher Übersetzung*. Ph.D. thesis, Universität Erlangen-Nürnberg, Germany. Diplomarbeit (diploma thesis).
- Och**, F. J. (2003). Minimum error rate training in statistical machine translation. *ACL*.
- Och**, F. J. and Ney, H. (2003). A systematic comparison of various statistical alignment models. *Computational Linguistics* 29(1), 19–51.
- Och**, F. J. and Ney, H. (2004). The alignment template approach to statistical machine translation. *Computational Linguistics* 30(4), 417–449.
- O'Connor**, B., Krieger, M., and Ahn, D. (2010). Tweetmotif: Exploratory search and topic summarization for twitter. *ICWSM*.
- Olive**, J. P. (1977). Rule synthesis of speech from dyadic units. *ICASSP77*.
- Olteanu**, A., Diaz, F., and Kazai, G. (2020). When are search completion suggestions problematic?. *CSCW*.
- Oppenheim**, A. V., Schafer, R. W., and Stockham, T. G. J. (1968). Non-linear filtering of multiplied and convolved signals. *Proceedings of the IEEE* 56(8), 1264–1291.
- Oravecz**, C. and Dienes, P. (2002). Efficient stochastic part-of-speech tagging for Hungarian. *LREC*.
- Oren**, I., Herzig, J., Gupta, N., Gardner, M., and Berant, J. (2020). Improving compositional generalization in semantic parsing. arXiv preprint arXiv:2010.05647.
- Osgood**, C. E., Suci, G. J., and Tannenbaum, P. H. (1957). *The Measurement of Meaning*. University of Illinois Press.
- Ostendorf**, M., Price, P., and Shattuck-Hufnagel, S. (1995). The Boston University Radio News Corpus. Tech. rep. ECS-95-001, Boston University.
- Packard**, D. W. (1973). Computer-assisted morphological analysis of ancient Greek. *COLING*.
- Palmer**, D. (2012). Text preprocessing. Indurkha, N. and Damerau, F. J. (Eds.), *Handbook of Natural Language Processing*, 9–30. CRC Press.
- Palmer**, M., Babko-Malaya, O., and Dang, H. T. (2004). Different sense granularities for different applications. *HLT-NAACL Workshop on Scalable Natural Language Understanding*.
- Palmer**, M., Dang, H. T., and Fellbaum, C. (2006). Making fine-grained and coarse-grained sense distinctions, both manually and automatically. *Natural Language Engineering* 13(2), 137–163.
- Palmer**, M., Gildea, D., and Xue, N. (2010). Semantic role labeling. *Synthesis Lectures on Human Language Technologies* 3(1), 1–103.
- Palmer**, M., Kingsbury, P., and Gildea, D. (2005). The proposition bank: An annotated corpus of semantic roles. *Computational Linguistics* 31(1), 71–106.
- Panayotov**, V., Chen, G., Povey, D., and Khudanpur, S. (2015). Librispeech: an ASR corpus based on public domain audio books. *ICASSP*.
- Pang**, B. and Lee, L. (2008). Opinion mining and sentiment analysis. *Foundations and trends in information retrieval* 2(1-2), 1–135.
- Pang**, B., Lee, L., and Vaithyanathan, S. (2002). Thumbs up? Sentiment classification using machine learning techniques. *EMNLP*.
- Paolino**, J. (2017). Google Home vs Alexa: Two simple user experience design gestures that delighted a female user. *Medium*. Jan 4, 2017. <https://medium.com/startup-grid/google-home-vs-alexa-56e26f69ac77>.
- Papineni**, K., Roukos, S., Ward, T., and Zhu, W.-J. (2002). Bleu: A method for automatic evaluation of machine translation. *ACL*.

- Paranjape**, A., See, A., Kenealy, K., Li, H., Hardy, A., Qi, P., Sadagopan, K. R., Phu, N. M., Soylu, D., and Manning, C. D. (2020). Neural generation meets real people: Towards emotionally engaging mixed-initiative conversations. *3rd Proceedings of Alexa Prize*.
- Park**, J. H., Shin, J., and Fung, P. (2018). Reducing gender bias in abusive language detection. *EMNLP*.
- Park**, J. and Cardie, C. (2014). Identifying appropriate support for propositions in online user comments. *First workshop on argumentation mining*.
- Parsons**, T. (1990). *Events in the Semantics of English*. MIT Press.
- Partee**, B. H. (Ed.). (1976). *Montague Grammar*. Academic Press.
- Paszke**, A., Gross, S., Chintala, S., Chanan, G., Yang, E., DeVito, Z., Lin, Z., Desmaison, A., Antiga, L., and Lerer, A. (2017). Automatic differentiation in pytorch. *NIPS-W*.
- Pearl**, C. (2017). *Designing Voice User Interfaces: Principles of Conversational Experiences*. O'Reilly.
- Pedersen**, T. and Bruce, R. (1997). Distinguishing word senses in untagged text. *EMNLP*.
- Peldszus**, A. and Stede, M. (2013). From argument diagrams to argumentation mining in texts: A survey. *International Journal of Cognitive Informatics and Natural Intelligence (IJCINI)* 7(1), 1–31.
- Peldszus**, A. and Stede, M. (2016). An annotated corpus of argumentative microtexts. *1st European Conference on Argumentation*.
- Penn**, G. and Kiparsky, P. (2012). On Pāṇini and the generative capacity of contextualized replacement systems. *COLING*.
- Pennebaker**, J. W., Booth, R. J., and Francis, M. E. (2007). *Linguistic Inquiry and Word Count: LIWC 2007*. Austin, TX.
- Pennebaker**, J. W. and King, L. A. (1999). Linguistic styles: language use as an individual difference. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology* 77(6).
- Pennington**, J., Socher, R., and Manning, C. D. (2014). Glove: Global vectors for word representation. *EMNLP*.
- Percival**, W. K. (1976). On the historical source of immediate constituent analysis. McCawley, J. D. (Ed.), *Syntax and Semantics Volume 7, Notes from the Linguistic Underground*, 229–242. Academic Press.
- Perrault**, C. R. and Allen, J. (1980). A plan-based analysis of indirect speech acts. *American Journal of Computational Linguistics* 6(3-4), 167–182.
- Peters**, M., Neumann, M., Iyyer, M., Gardner, M., Clark, C., Lee, K., and Zettlemoyer, L. (2018). Deep contextualized word representations. *NAACL HLT*.
- Peterson**, G. E. and Barney, H. L. (1952). Control methods used in a study of the vowels. *JASA* 24, 175–184.
- Peterson**, G. E., Wang, W. S.-Y., and Sivertsen, E. (1958). Segmentation techniques in speech synthesis. *JASA* 30(8), 739–742.
- Peterson**, J. C., Chen, D., and Griffiths, T. L. (2020). Parallelograms revisited: Exploring the limitations of vector space models for simple analogies. *Cognition* 205.
- Petrov**, S., Das, D., and McDonald, R. (2012). A universal part-of-speech tagset. *LREC*.
- Petrov**, S. and McDonald, R. (2012). Overview of the 2012 shared task on parsing the web. *Notes of the First Workshop on Syntactic Analysis of Non-Canonical Language (SANCL)*, Vol. 59.
- Phillips**, A. V. (1960). A question-answering routine. Tech. rep. 16, MIT AI Lab.
- Picard**, R. W. (1995). Affective computing. Tech. rep. 321, MIT Media Lab Perceptual Computing Technical Report. Revised November 26, 1995.
- Pieraccini**, R., Levin, E., and Lee, C.-H. (1991). Stochastic representation of conceptual structure in the ATIS task. *Proceedings DARPA Speech and Natural Language Workshop*.
- Pierce**, J. R., Carroll, J. B., Hamp, E. P., Hays, D. G., Hockett, C. F., Oettinger, A. G., and Perlis, A. J. (1966). *Language and Machines: Computers in Translation and Linguistics*. ALPAC report. National Academy of Sciences, National Research Council, Washington, DC.
- Pilehvar**, M. T. and Camacho-Collados, J. (2019). WiC: the word-in-context dataset for evaluating context-sensitive meaning representations. *NAACL HLT*.
- Pilehvar**, M. T., Jurgens, D., and Navigli, R. (2013). Align, disambiguate and walk: A unified approach for measuring semantic similarity. *ACL*.
- Pitler**, E., Louis, A., and Nenkova, A. (2009). Automatic sense prediction for implicit discourse relations in text. *ACL IJCNLP*.
- Pitler**, E. and Nenkova, A. (2009). Using syntax to disambiguate explicit discourse connectives in text. *ACL IJCNLP*.
- Pitt**, M. A., Dilley, L., Johnson, K., Kiesling, S., Raymond, W. D., Hume, E., and Fosler-Lussier, E. (2007). Buckeye corpus of conversational speech (2nd release).. Department of Psychology, Ohio State University (Distributor).
- Pitt**, M. A., Johnson, K., Hume, E., Kiesling, S., and Raymond, W. D. (2005). The buckeye corpus of conversational speech: Labeling conventions and a test of transcriber reliability. *Speech Communication* 45, 90–95.
- Plutchik**, R. (1962). *The emotions: Facts, theories, and a new model*. Random House.
- Plutchik**, R. (1980). A general psychoevolutionary theory of emotion. Plutchik, R. and Kellerman, H. (Eds.), *Emotion: Theory, Research, and Experience, Volume 1*, 3–33. Academic Press.
- Poesio**, M., Stevenson, R., Di Eugenio, B., and Hitzeman, J. (2004). Centering: A parametric theory and its instantiations. *Computational Linguistics* 30(3), 309–363.
- Poesio**, M., Stuckardt, R., and Versley, Y. (2016). *Anaphora resolution: Algorithms, resources, and applications*. Springer.
- Poesio**, M., Sturt, P., Artstein, R., and Filik, R. (2006). Underspecification and anaphora: Theoretical issues and preliminary evidence. *Discourse processes* 42(2), 157–175.
- Poesio**, M. and Vieira, R. (1998). A corpus-based investigation of definite description use. *Computational Linguistics* 24(2), 183–216.
- Polanyi**, L. (1988). A formal model of the structure of discourse. *Journal of Pragmatics* 12.
- Polanyi**, L., Culy, C., van den Berg, M., Thioné, G. L., and Ahn, D. (2004). A rule based approach to discourse parsing. *Proceedings of SIGDIAL*.
- Polifroni**, J., Hirschman, L., Seneff, S., and Zue, V. W. (1992). Experiments in evaluating interactive spoken language systems. *Proceedings DARPA Speech and Natural Language Workshop*.
- Pollard**, C. and Sag, I. A. (1994). *Head-Driven Phrase Structure Grammar*. University of Chicago Press.
- Ponzetto**, S. P. and Navigli, R. (2010). Knowledge-rich word sense disambiguation rivaling supervised systems. *ACL*.
- Ponzetto**, S. P. and Strube, M. (2006). Exploiting semantic role labeling, WordNet and Wikipedia for coreference resolution. *HLT-NAACL*.
- Ponzetto**, S. P. and Strube, M. (2007). Knowledge derived from Wikipedia for computing semantic relatedness. *JAIR* 30, 181–212.

- Popp**, D., Donovan, R. A., Crawford, M., Marsh, K. L., and Peele, M. (2003). Gender, race, and speech style stereotypes. *Sex Roles* 48(7-8), 317–325.
- Porter**, M. F. (1980). An algorithm for suffix stripping. *Program* 14(3), 130–137.
- Post**, M. (2018). A call for clarity in reporting BLEU scores. *WMT 2018*.
- Potts**, C. (2011). On the negativity of negation. Li, N. and Lutz, D. (Eds.), *Proceedings of Semantics and Linguistic Theory 20*, 636–659. CLC Publications, Ithaca, NY.
- Povey**, D., Ghoshal, A., Boulianne, G., Burget, L., Glembek, O., Goel, N., Hannemann, M., Motlicek, P., Qian, Y., Schwarz, P., Silovsky, J., Stemmer, G., and Vesely, K. (2011). The Kaldi speech recognition toolkit. *ASRU*.
- Pradhan**, S., Hovy, E. H., Marcus, M. P., Palmer, M., Ramshaw, L., and Weischedel, R. (2007a). OntoNotes: A unified relational semantic representation. *Proceedings of ICSC*.
- Pradhan**, S., Hovy, E. H., Marcus, M. P., Palmer, M., Ramshaw, L., and Weischedel, R. M. (2007b). Ontonotes: a unified relational semantic representation. *Int. J. Semantic Computing* 1(4), 405–419.
- Pradhan**, S., Luo, X., Recasens, M., Hovy, E. H., Ng, V., and Strube, M. (2014). Scoring coreference partitions of predicted mentions: A reference implementation. *ACL*.
- Pradhan**, S., Moschitti, A., Xue, N., Ng, H. T., Björkelund, A., Uryupina, O., Zhang, Y., and Zhong, Z. (2013). Towards robust linguistic analysis using OntoNotes. *CoNLL*.
- Pradhan**, S., Moschitti, A., Xue, N., Uryupina, O., and Zhang, Y. (2012a). CoNLL-2012 shared task: Modeling multilingual unrestricted coreference in OntoNotes. *CoNLL*.
- Pradhan**, S., Moschitti, A., Xue, N., Uryupina, O., and Zhang, Y. (2012b). Conll-2012 shared task: Modeling multilingual unrestricted coreference in OntoNotes. *CoNLL*.
- Pradhan**, S., Ramshaw, L., Marcus, M. P., Palmer, M., Weischedel, R., and Xue, N. (2011). CoNLL-2011 shared task: Modeling unrestricted coreference in OntoNotes. *CoNLL*.
- Pradhan**, S., Ramshaw, L., Weischedel, R., MacBride, J., and Micciulla, L. (2007). Unrestricted coreference: Identifying entities and events in OntoNotes. *Proceedings of ICSC 2007*.
- Pradhan**, S., Ward, W., Hacioglu, K., Martin, J. H., and Jurafsky, D. (2005). Semantic role labeling using different syntactic views. *ACL*.
- Prasad**, R., Dinesh, N., Lee, A., Milt-sakaki, E., Robaldo, L., Joshi, A. K., and Webber, B. L. (2008). The Penn Discourse TreeBank 2.0. *LREC*.
- Prasad**, R., Webber, B. L., and Joshi, A. (2014). Reflections on the Penn Discourse Treebank, comparable corpora, and complementary annotation. *Computational Linguistics* 40(4), 921–950.
- Prates**, M. O. R., Avelar, P. H., and Lamb, L. C. (2019). Assessing gender bias in machine translation: a case study with Google Translate. *Neural Computing and Applications* 32, 6363–6381.
- Price**, P. J., Fisher, W., Bernstein, J., and Pallet, D. (1988). The DARPA 1000-word resource management database for continuous speech recognition. *ICASSP*.
- Price**, P. J., Ostendorf, M., Shattuck-Hufnagel, S., and Fong, C. (1991). The use of prosody in syntactic disambiguation. *JASA* 90(6).
- Prince**, E. (1981a). Toward a taxonomy of given-new information. Cole, P. (Ed.), *Radical Pragmatics*, 223–256. Academic Press.
- Prince**, E. (1981b). Toward a taxonomy of given-new information. Cole, P. (Ed.), *Radical Pragmatics*, 223–255. Academic Press.
- Propp**, V. (1968). *Morphology of the Folktales* (2nd Ed.). University of Texas Press. Original Russian 1928. Translated by Laurence Scott.
- Pu**, X., Pappas, N., Henderson, J., and Popescu-Belis, A. (2018). Integrating weakly supervised word sense disambiguation into neural machine translation. *TACL* 6, 635–649.
- Pullum**, G. K. (1991). *The Great Eskimo Vocabulary Hoax*. University of Chicago.
- Pundak**, G. and Sainath, T. N. (2016). Lower frame rate neural network acoustic models. *INTERSPEECH*.
- Purver**, M. (2004). *The theory and use of clarification requests in dialogue*. Ph.D. thesis, University of London.
- Pustejovsky**, J. (1991). The generative lexicon. *Computational Linguistics* 17(4).
- Pustejovsky**, J. (1995). *The Generative Lexicon*. MIT Press.
- Pustejovsky**, J. and Boguraev, B. K. (Eds.) (1996). *Lexical Semantics: The Problem of Polysemy*. Oxford University Press.
- Pustejovsky**, J., Castaño, J., Ingria, R., Saurí, R., Gaizauskas, R., Setzer, A., and Katz, G. (2003a). TimeML: robust specification of event and temporal expressions in text. *Proceedings of the 5th International Workshop on Computational Semantics (IWCS-5)*.
- Pustejovsky**, J., Hanks, P., Saurí, R., See, A., Gaizauskas, R., Setzer, A., Radov, D., Sundheim, B., Day, D. S., Ferro, L., and Lazo, M. (2003b). The TIMEBANK corpus. *Proceedings of Corpus Linguistics 2003 Conference*. UCREL Technical Paper number 16.
- Pustejovsky**, J., Ingria, R., Saurí, R., Castaño, J., Littman, J., Gaizauskas, R., Setzer, A., Katz, G., and Mani, I. (2005). *The Specification Language TimeML*, chap. 27. Oxford.
- Qin**, L., Zhang, Z., and Zhao, H. (2016). A stacking gated neural architecture for implicit discourse relation classification. *EMNLP*.
- Qin**, L., Zhang, Z., Zhao, H., Hu, Z., and Xing, E. (2017). Adversarial connective-exploiting networks for implicit discourse relation classification. *ACL*.
- Quillian**, M. R. (1968). Semantic memory. Minsky, M. (Ed.), *Semantic Information Processing*, 227–270. MIT Press.
- Quillian**, M. R. (1969). The teachable language comprehender: A simulation program and theory of language. *CACM* 12(8), 459–476.
- Quirk**, R., Greenbaum, S., Leech, G., and Svartvik, J. (1985). *A Comprehensive Grammar of the English Language*. Longman.
- Rafford**, A., Wu, J., Child, R., Luan, D., Amodei, D., and Sutskever, I. (2019). Language models are unsupervised multitask learners. OpenAI tech report.
- Rafford**, A. (1997). *Syntactic Theory and the Structure of English: A Minimalist Approach*. Cambridge University Press.
- Raganato**, A., Bovi, C. D., and Navigli, R. (2017a). Neural sequence learning models for word sense disambiguation. *EMNLP*.
- Raganato**, A., Camacho-Collados, J., and Navigli, R. (2017b). Word sense disambiguation: A unified evaluation framework and empirical comparison. *EACL*.
- Raghunathan**, K., Lee, H., Rangarajan, S., Chambers, N., Surdeanu, M., Jurafsky, D., and Manning, C. D. (2010). A multi-pass sieve for coreference resolution. *EMNLP*.
- Rahman**, A. and Ng, V. (2009). Supervised models for coreference resolution. *EMNLP*.
- Rahman**, A. and Ng, V. (2012). Resolving complex cases of definite pronouns: the Winograd Schema challenge. *EMNLP*.
- Rajpurkar**, P., Jia, R., and Liang, P. (2018). Know what you don't know: Unanswerable questions for SQuAD. *ACL*.

- Rajpurkar, P., Zhang, J., Lopyrev, K., and Liang, P.** (2016). SQuAD: 100,000+ questions for machine comprehension of text. *EMNLP*.
- Ram, A., Prasad, R., Khatri, C., Venkatesh, A., Gabriel, R., Liu, Q., Nunn, J., Hedayatnia, B., Cheng, M., Nagar, A., King, E., Bland, K., Wartick, A., Pan, Y., Song, H., Jayadevan, S., Hwang, G., and Pettigree, A.** (2017). Conversational ai: The science behind the Alexa Prize. *1st Proceedings of Alexa Prize*.
- Ramshaw, L. A. and Marcus, M. P.** (1995). Text chunking using transformation-based learning. *Proceedings of the 3rd Annual Workshop on Very Large Corpora*.
- Ranganath, R., Jurafsky, D., and McFarland, D. A.** (2013). Detecting friendly, flirtatious, awkward, and assertive speech in speed-dates. *Computer Speech and Language* 27(1), 89–115.
- Raphael, B.** (1968). SIR: A computer program for semantic information retrieval. Minsky, M. (Ed.), *Semantic Information Processing*, 33–145. MIT Press.
- Rashkin, H., Bell, E., Choi, Y., and Volkova, S.** (2017). Multilingual connotation frames: A case study on social media for targeted sentiment analysis and forecast. *ACL*.
- Rashkin, H., Singh, S., and Choi, Y.** (2016). Connotation frames: A data-driven investigation. *ACL*.
- Rashkin, H., Smith, E. M., Li, M., and Boureau, Y.-L.** (2019). Towards empathetic open-domain conversation models: A new benchmark and dataset. *ACL*.
- Ratinov, L. and Roth, D.** (2012). Learning-based multi-sieve coreference resolution with knowledge. *EMNLP*.
- Ratnaparkhi, A.** (1996). A maximum entropy part-of-speech tagger. *EMNLP*.
- Ratnaparkhi, A.** (1997). A linear observed time statistical parser based on maximum entropy models. *EMNLP*.
- Recasens, M. and Hovy, E. H.** (2011). BLANC: Implementing the Rand index for coreference evaluation. *Natural Language Engineering* 17(4), 485–510.
- Recasens, M., Hovy, E. H., and Martí, M. A.** (2011). Identity, non-identity, and near-identity: Addressing the complexity of coreference. *Lingua* 121(6), 1138–1152.
- Recasens, M. and Martí, M. A.** (2010). AnCora-CO: Coreferentially annotated corpora for Spanish and Catalan. *Language Resources and Evaluation* 44(4), 315–345.
- Reed, C., Mochales Palau, R., Rowe, G., and Moens, M.-F.** (2008). Language resources for studying argument. *LREC*.
- Rehder, B., Schreiner, M. E., Wolfe, M. B. W., Laham, D., Landauer, T. K., and Kintsch, W.** (1998). Using Latent Semantic Analysis to assess knowledge: Some technical considerations. *Discourse Processes* 25(2-3), 337–354.
- Reichenbach, H.** (1947). *Elements of Symbolic Logic*. Macmillan, New York.
- Reichman, R.** (1985). *Getting Computers to Talk Like You and Me*. MIT Press.
- Resnik, P.** (1993). Semantic classes and syntactic ambiguity. *Proceedings of the workshop on Human Language Technology*.
- Resnik, P.** (1996). Selectional constraints: An information-theoretic model and its computational realization. *Cognition* 61, 127–159.
- Richardson, M., Burges, C. J. C., and Renshaw, E.** (2013). MCTest: A challenge dataset for the open-domain machine comprehension of text. *EMNLP*.
- Riedel, S., Yao, L., and McCallum, A.** (2010). Modeling relations and their mentions without labeled text. *Machine Learning and Knowledge Discovery in Databases*, 148–163. Springer.
- Riedel, S., Yao, L., McCallum, A., and Marlin, B. M.** (2013). Relation extraction with matrix factorization and universal schemas. *NAACL HLT*.
- Riesbeck, C. K.** (1975). Conceptual analysis. Schank, R. C. (Ed.), *Conceptual Information Processing*, 83–156. American Elsevier, New York.
- Riloff, E.** (1993). Automatically constructing a dictionary for information extraction tasks. *AAAI*.
- Riloff, E.** (1996). Automatically generating extraction patterns from untagged text. *AAAI*.
- Riloff, E. and Jones, R.** (1999). Learning dictionaries for information extraction by multi-level bootstrapping. *AAAI*.
- Riloff, E. and Schmelzenbach, M.** (1998). An empirical approach to conceptual case frame acquisition. *Proceedings of the Sixth Workshop on Very Large Corpora*.
- Riloff, E. and Shepherd, J.** (1997). A corpus-based approach for building semantic lexicons. *EMNLP*.
- Riloff, E. and Thelen, M.** (2000). A rule-based question answering system for reading comprehension tests. *ANLP/NAACL workshop on reading comprehension tests*.
- Riloff, E. and Wiebe, J.** (2003). Learning extraction patterns for subjective expressions. *EMNLP*.
- Ritter, A., Cherry, C., and Dolan, B.** (2010). Unsupervised modeling of twitter conversations. *HLT-NAACL*.
- Ritter, A., Cherry, C., and Dolan, B.** (2011). Data-driven response generation in social media. *EMNLP*.
- Ritter, A., Etzioni, O., and Mausam** (2010). A latent dirichlet allocation method for selectional preferences. *ACL*.
- Ritter, A., Zettlemoyer, L., Mausam, and Etzioni, O.** (2013). Modeling missing data in distant supervision for information extraction. *TACL 1*, 367–378.
- Roberts, A., Raffel, C., and Shazeer, N.** (2020). How much knowledge can you pack into the parameters of a language model?. arXiv preprint arXiv:2002.08910.
- Robertson, S., Walker, S., Jones, S., Hancock-Beaulieu, M. M., and Gatford, M.** (1995). Okapi at TREC-3. *Overview of the Third Text REtrieval Conference (TREC-3)*.
- Robins, R. H.** (1967). *A Short History of Linguistics*. Indiana University Press, Bloomington.
- Robinson, T. and Fallside, F.** (1991). A recurrent error propagation network speech recognition system. *Computer Speech & Language* 5(3), 259–274.
- Rohde, D. L. T., Gonnerman, L. M., and Plaut, D. C.** (2006). An improved model of semantic similarity based on lexical co-occurrence. *CACM 8*, 627–633.
- Roller, S., Dinan, E., Goyal, N., Ju, D., Williamson, M., Liu, Y., Xu, J., Ott, M., Shuster, K., Smith, E. M., Boureau, Y.-L., and Weston, J.** (2020). Recipes for building an open-domain chatbot. arXiv preprint arXiv:2004.13637.
- Rooth, M., Riezler, S., Prescher, D., Carroll, G., and Beil, F.** (1999). Inducing a semantically annotated lexicon via EM-based clustering. *ACL*.
- Rosenblatt, F.** (1958). The perceptron: A probabilistic model for information storage and organization in the brain. *Psychological review* 65(6), 386–408.
- Rosenfeld, R.** (1996). A maximum entropy approach to adaptive statistical language modeling. *Computer Speech and Language* 10, 187–228.
- Rosenthal, S. and McKeown, K.** (2017). Detecting influencers in multiple online genres. *ACM Transactions on Internet Technology (TOIT)* 17(2).
- Rothe, S., Ebert, S., and Schütze, H.** (2016). Ultradense Word Embeddings by Orthogonal Transformation. *NAACL HLT*.

- Roy**, N., Pineau, J., and Thrun, S. (2000). Spoken dialog management for robots. *ACL*.
- Rudinger**, R., Naradowsky, J., Leonard, B., and Van Durme, B. (2018). Gender bias in coreference resolution. *NAACL HLT*.
- Rumelhart**, D. E., Hinton, G. E., and Williams, R. J. (1986). Learning internal representations by error propagation. Rumelhart, D. E. and McClelland, J. L. (Eds.), *Parallel Distributed Processing*, Vol. 2, 318–362. MIT Press.
- Rumelhart**, D. E. and McClelland, J. L. (1986a). On learning the past tense of English verbs. Rumelhart, D. E. and McClelland, J. L. (Eds.), *Parallel Distributed Processing*, Vol. 2, 216–271. MIT Press.
- Rumelhart**, D. E. and McClelland, J. L. (Eds.). (1986b). *Parallel Distributed Processing*. MIT Press.
- Rumelhart**, D. E. and Abrahamson, A. A. (1973). A model for analogical reasoning. *Cognitive Psychology* 5(1), 1–28.
- Rumelhart**, D. E. and McClelland, J. L. (Eds.). (1986). *Parallel Distributed Processing: Explorations in the Microstructure of Cognition*, Vol. 1: Foundations. MIT Press.
- Ruppenhofer**, J., Ellsworth, M., Petrucc, M. R. L., Johnson, C. R., Baker, C. F., and Scheffczyk, J. (2016). FrameNet II: Extended theory and practice..
- Ruppenhofer**, J., Sporleder, C., Morante, R., Baker, C. F., and Palmer, M. (2010). Semeval-2010 task 10: Linking events and their participants in discourse. *5th International Workshop on Semantic Evaluation*.
- Russell**, J. A. (1980). A circumplex model of affect. *Journal of personality and social psychology* 39(6), 1161–1178.
- Russell**, S. and Norvig, P. (2002). *Artificial Intelligence: A Modern Approach* (2nd Ed.). Prentice Hall.
- Rutherford**, A. and Xue, N. (2015). Improving the inference of implicit discourse relations via classifying explicit discourse connectives. *NAACL HLT*.
- Sacks**, H., Schegloff, E. A., and Jefferson, G. (1974). A simplest systematics for the organization of turn-taking for conversation. *Language* 50(4), 696–735.
- Sag**, I. A. and Liberman, M. Y. (1975). The intonational disambiguation of indirect speech acts. *CLS-75*, 487–498. University of Chicago.
- Sag**, I. A., Wasow, T., and Bender, E. M. (Eds.). (2003). *Syntactic Theory: A Formal Introduction*. CSLI Publications, Stanford, CA.
- Sagae**, K. (2009). Analysis of discourse structure with syntactic dependencies and data-driven shift-reduce parsing. *IWPT-09*.
- Sagisaka**, Y. (1988). Speech synthesis by rule using an optimal selection of non-uniform synthesis units. *ICASSP*.
- Sagisaka**, Y., Kaiki, N., Iwashashi, N., and Mimura, K. (1992). Atr – v-talk speech synthesis system. *ICSLP*.
- Sahami**, M., Dumais, S. T., Heckerman, D., and Horvitz, E. (1998). A Bayesian approach to filtering junk e-mail. *AAAI Workshop on Learning for Text Categorization*.
- Sakoe**, H. and Chiba, S. (1971). A dynamic programming approach to continuous speech recognition. *Proceedings of the Seventh International Congress on Acoustics*, Vol. 3. Akadémiai Kiadó.
- Sakoe**, H. and Chiba, S. (1984). Dynamic programming algorithm optimization for spoken word recognition. *IEEE Transactions on Acoustics, Speech, and Signal Processing ASSP-26*(1), 43–49.
- Salton**, G. (1971). *The SMART Retrieval System: Experiments in Automatic Document Processing*. Prentice Hall.
- Sampson**, G. (1987). Alternative grammatical coding systems. Garside, R., Leech, G., and Sampson, G. (Eds.), *The Computational Analysis of English*, 165–183. Longman.
- Sankoff**, D. and Labov, W. (1979). On the uses of variable rules. *Language in society* 8(2-3), 189–222.
- Sap**, M., Card, D., Gabriel, S., Choi, Y., and Smith, N. A. (2019). The risk of racial bias in hate speech detection. *ACL*.
- Sap**, M., Prasettio, M. C., Holtzman, A., Rashkin, H., and Choi, Y. (2017). Connotation frames of power and agency in modern films. *EMNLP*.
- Scha**, R. and Polanyi, L. (1988). An augmented context free grammar for discourse. *COLING*.
- Schank**, R. C. (1972). Conceptual dependency: A theory of natural language processing. *Cognitive Psychology* 3, 552–631.
- Schank**, R. C. and Abelson, R. P. (1975). Scripts, plans, and knowledge. *Proceedings of IJCAI-75*.
- Schank**, R. C. and Abelson, R. P. (1977). *Scripts, Plans, Goals and Understanding*. Lawrence Erlbaum.
- Schegloff**, E. A. (1968). Sequencing in conversational openings. *American Anthropologist* 70, 1075–1095.
- Scherer**, K. R. (2000). Psychological models of emotion. Borod, J. C. (Ed.), *The neuropsychology of emotion*, 137–162. Oxford.
- Schiebinger**, L. (2013). Machine translation: Analyzing gender. <http://genderedinnovations.stanford.edu/case-studies/nlp.html#tabs-2>.
- Schiebinger**, L. (2014). Scientific research must take gender into account. *Nature* 507(7490), 9.
- Schneider**, N., Hwang, J. D., Sriku-mar, V., Prange, J., Blodgett, A., Moeller, S. R., Stern, A., Bitan, A., and Abend, O. (2018). Comprehensive supersense disambiguation of English prepositions and possessives. *ACL*.
- Schone**, P. and Jurafsky, D. (2000). Knowledge-free induction of morphology using latent semantic analysis. *CoNLL*.
- Schone**, P. and Jurafsky, D. (2001a). Is knowledge-free induction of multiword unit dictionary headwords a solved problem?. *EMNLP*.
- Schone**, P. and Jurafsky, D. (2001b). Knowledge-free induction of inflectional morphologies. *NAACL*.
- Schönfinkel**, M. (1924). Über die Bausteine der mathematischen Logik. *Mathematische Annalen* 92, 305–316. English translation appears in *From Frege to Gödel: A Source Book in Mathematical Logic*, Harvard University Press, 1967.
- Schuster**, M. and Nakajima, K. (2012). Japanese and korean voice search. *ICASSP*.
- Schuster**, M. and Paliwal, K. K. (1997). Bidirectional recurrent neural networks. *IEEE Transactions on Signal Processing* 45, 2673–2681.
- Schütze**, H. (1992a). Context space. Goldman, R. (Ed.), *AAAI Fall Symposium on Probabilistic Approaches to Natural Language*.
- Schütze**, H. (1992b). Dimensions of meaning. *Proceedings of Supercomputing '92*. IEEE Press.
- Schütze**, H. (1997a). *Ambiguity Resolution in Language Learning – Computational and Cognitive Models*. CSLI, Stanford, CA.
- Schütze**, H. (1997b). *Ambiguity Resolution in Language Learning: Computational and Cognitive Models*. CSLI Publications, Stanford, CA.
- Schütze**, H. (1998). Automatic word sense discrimination. *Computational Linguistics* 24(1), 97–124.
- Schütze**, H., Hull, D. A., and Pedersen, J. (1995). A comparison of classifiers and document representations for the routing problem. *SIGIR-95*.
- Schütze**, H. and Pedersen, J. (1993). A vector model for syntagmatic and paradigmatic relatedness. *9th Annual Conference of the UW Centre for the New OED and Text Research*.

- Schütze**, H. and Singer, Y. (1994). Part-of-speech tagging using a variable memory Markov model. *ACL*.
- Schwartz**, H. A., Eichstaedt, J. C., Kern, M. L., Dziurzynski, L., Ramones, S. M., Agrawal, M., Shah, A., Kosinski, M., Stillwell, D., Seligman, M. E. P., and Ungar, L. H. (2013). Personality, gender, and age in the language of social media: The open-vocabulary approach. *PloS one* 8(9), e73791.
- Schwenk**, H. (2007). Continuous space language models. *Computer Speech & Language* 21(3), 492–518.
- Schwenk**, H. (2018). Filtering and mining parallel data in a joint multilingual space. *ACL*.
- Séaghdha**, D. O. (2010). Latent variable models of selectional preference. *ACL*.
- Seddah**, D., Tsarfaty, R., Kübler, S., Candito, M., Choi, J. D., Farkas, R., Foster, J., Goenaga, I., Gojenola, K., Goldberg, Y., Green, S., Habash, N., Kuhlmann, M., Maier, W., Nivre, J., Przepiórkowski, A., Roth, R., Seeker, W., Versley, Y., Vincze, V., Woliński, M., Wróblewska, A., and Villemonte de la Clérgerie, E. (2013). Overview of the SPMRL 2013 shared task: cross-framework evaluation of parsing morphologically rich languages. *4th Workshop on Statistical Parsing of Morphologically-Rich Languages*.
- See**, A., Roller, S., Kiela, D., and Weston, J. (2019). What makes a good conversation? how controllable attributes affect human judgments. *NAACL HLT*.
- Sekine**, S. and Collins, M. (1997). The evalb software. <http://cs.nyu.edu/cs/projects/proteus/evalb>.
- Sellam**, T., Das, D., and Parikh, A. (2020). BLEURT: Learning robust metrics for text generation. *ACL*.
- Seneff**, S. and Zue, V. W. (1988). Transcription and alignment of the TIMIT database. *Proceedings of the Second Symposium on Advanced Man-Machine Interface through Spoken Language*.
- Sennrich**, R., Haddow, B., and Birch, A. (2016). Neural machine translation of rare words with subword units. *ACL*.
- Seo**, M., Kembhavi, A., Farhadi, A., and Hajishirzi, H. (2017). Bidirectional attention flow for machine comprehension. *ICLR*.
- Serban**, I. V., Lowe, R., Henderson, P., Charlin, L., and Pineau, J. (2018). A survey of available corpora for building data-driven dialogue systems: The journal version. *Dialogue & Discourse* 9(1), 1–49.
- Sgall**, P., Hajičová, E., and Panevova, J. (1986). *The Meaning of the Sentence in its Pragmatic Aspects*. Reidel.
- Shang**, L., Lu, Z., and Li, H. (2015). Neural responding machine for short-text conversation. *ACL*.
- Shannon**, C. E. (1948). A mathematical theory of communication. *Bell System Technical Journal* 27(3), 379–423. Continued in the following volume.
- Shannon**, C. E. (1951). Prediction and entropy of printed English. *Bell System Technical Journal* 30, 50–64.
- Sheil**, B. A. (1976). Observations on context free parsing. *SMIL: Statistical Methods in Linguistics 1*, 71–109.
- Shen**, J., Pang, R., Weiss, R. J., Schuster, M., Jaitly, N., Yang, Z., Chen, Z., Zhang, Y., Wang, Y., Skerry-Ryan, R., Sauroos, R. A., Agiomyrgiannakis, Y., and Wu, Y. (2018). Natural TTS synthesis by conditioning WaveNet on mel spectrogram predictions. *ICASSP*.
- Sheng**, E., Chang, K.-W., Natarajan, P., and Peng, N. (2019). The woman worked as a babysitter: On biases in language generation. *EMNLP*.
- Shi**, P. and Lin, J. (2019). Simple BERT models for relation extraction and semantic role labeling. arXiv preprint arXiv:1904.05255.
- Shoup**, J. E. (1980). Phonological aspects of speech recognition. Lea, W. A. (Ed.), *Trends in Speech Recognition*, 125–138. Prentice Hall.
- Shriberg**, E., Bates, R., Taylor, P., Stolcke, A., Jurafsky, D., Ries, K., Coccaro, N., Martin, R., Meteer, M., and Van Ess-Dykema, C. (1998). Can prosody aid the automatic classification of dialog acts in conversational speech?. *Language and Speech (Special Issue on Prosody and Conversation)* 41(3-4), 439–487.
- Sidner**, C. L. (1979). Towards a computational theory of definite anaphora comprehension in English discourse. Tech. rep. 537, MIT Artificial Intelligence Laboratory, Cambridge, MA.
- Sidner**, C. L. (1983). Focusing in the comprehension of definite anaphora. Brady, M. and Berwick, R. C. (Eds.), *Computational Models of Discourse*, 267–330. MIT Press.
- Silverman**, K., Beckman, M. E., Pitrelli, J. F., Ostendorf, M., Wightman, C. W., Price, P. J., Pierrehumbert, J. B., and Hirschberg, J. (1992). ToBI: A standard for labelling English prosody. *ICSLP*.
- Simmons**, R. F. (1965). Answering English questions by computer: A survey. *CACM* 8(1), 53–70.
- Simmons**, R. F. (1973). Semantic networks: Their computation and use for understanding English sentences. Schank, R. C. and Colby, K. M. (Eds.), *Computer Models of Thought and Language*, 61–113. W.H. Freeman and Co.
- Simmons**, R. F., Klein, S., and McConologue, K. (1964). Indexing and dependency logic for answering English questions. *American Documentation* 15(3), 196–204.
- Simons**, G. F. and Fennig, C. D. (2018). Ethnologue: Languages of the world, 21st edition. SIL International.
- Singh**, S. P., Litman, D. J., Kearns, M., and Walker, M. A. (2002). Optimizing dialogue management with reinforcement learning: Experiments with the NJFun system. *JAIR* 16, 105–133.
- Sleator**, D. and Temperley, D. (1993). Parsing English with a link grammar. *IWPT-93*.
- Slobin**, D. I. (1996). Two ways to travel. Shibatani, M. and Thompson, S. A. (Eds.), *Grammatical Constructions: Their Form and Meaning*, 195–220. Clarendon Press.
- Small**, S. L. and Rieger, C. (1982). Parsing and comprehending with Word Experts. Lehner, W. G. and Ringle, M. H. (Eds.), *Strategies for Natural Language Processing*, 89–147. Lawrence Erlbaum.
- Smith**, V. L. and Clark, H. H. (1993). On the course of answering questions. *Journal of Memory and Language* 32, 25–38.
- Smolensky**, P. (1988). On the proper treatment of connectionism. *Behavioral and brain sciences* 11(1), 1–23.
- Smolensky**, P. (1990). Tensor product variable binding and the representation of symbolic structures in connectionist systems. *Artificial intelligence* 46(1-2), 159–216.
- Snover**, M., Dorr, B., Schwartz, R., Micciulli, L., and Makhoul, J. (2006). A study of translation edit rate with targeted human annotation. *AMTA-2006*.
- Snow**, R., Jurafsky, D., and Ng, A. Y. (2005). Learning syntactic patterns for automatic hypernym discovery. *NeurIPS*.
- Snow**, R., Prakash, S., Jurafsky, D., and Ng, A. Y. (2007). Learning to merge word senses. *EMNLP/CoNLL*.
- Snyder**, B. and Palmer, M. (2004). The English all-words task. *SENSEVAL-3*.
- Soderland**, S., Fisher, D., Aseltine, J., and Lehner, W. G. (1995). CRYSTAL: Inducing a conceptual dictionary. *IJCAI-95*.
- Søgaard**, A. (2010). Simple semi-supervised training of part-of-speech taggers. *ACL*.

- Søgaard**, A. and Goldberg, Y. (2016). Deep multi-task learning with low level tasks supervised at lower layers. *ACL*.
- Søgaard**, A., Johannsen, A., Plank, B., Hovy, D., and Alonso, H. M. (2014). What's in a p-value in NLP?. *CoNLL*.
- Solorio**, T., Blair, E., Maharjan, S., Bethard, S., Diab, M., Ghoneim, M., Hawwari, A., AlGhamdi, F., Hirschberg, J., Chang, A., and Fung, P. (2014). Overview for the first shared task on language identification in code-switched data. *First Workshop on Computational Approaches to Code Switching*.
- Somasundaran**, S., Burstein, J., and Chodorow, M. (2014). Lexical chaining for measuring discourse coherence quality in test-taker essays. *COLING*.
- Soon**, W. M., Ng, H. T., and Lim, D. C. Y. (2001). A machine learning approach to coreference resolution of noun phrases. *Computational Linguistics* 27(4), 521–544.
- Sordoni**, A., Galley, M., Auli, M., Brockett, C., Ji, Y., Mitchell, M., Nie, J.-Y., Gao, J., and Dolan, B. (2015). A neural network approach to context-sensitive generation of conversational responses. *NAACL HLT*.
- Soricut**, R. and Marcu, D. (2003). Sentence level discourse parsing using syntactic and lexical information. *HLT-NAACL*.
- Soricut**, R. and Marcu, D. (2006). Discourse generation using utility-trained coherence models. *COLING/ACL*.
- Sorokin**, D. and Gurevych, I. (2018). Mixing context granularities for improved entity linking on question answering data across entity categories. \*SEM.
- Sparck Jones**, K. (1972). A statistical interpretation of term specificity and its application in retrieval. *Journal of Documentation* 28(1), 11–21.
- Sparck Jones**, K. (1986). *Synonymy and Semantic Classification*. Edinburgh University Press, Edinburgh. Republication of 1964 PhD Thesis.
- Sporleder**, C. and Lascarides, A. (2005). Exploiting linguistic cues to classify rhetorical relations. *RANLP-05*.
- Sporleder**, C. and Lapata, M. (2005). Discourse chunking and its application to sentence compression. *EMNLP*.
- Sproat**, R., Black, A. W., Chen, S. F., Kumar, S., Ostendorf, M., and Richards, C. (2001). Normalization of non-standard words. *Computer Speech & Language* 15(3), 287–333.
- Sproat**, R. and Gorman, K. (2018). A brief summary of the Kaggle text normalization challenge. <http://blog.kaggle.com/2018/02/07/a-brief-summary-of-the-kaggle-text-normalization-challenge/>
- Srivastava**, N., Hinton, G. E., Krizhevsky, A., Sutskever, I., and Salakhutdinov, R. R. (2014). Dropout: a simple way to prevent neural networks from overfitting. *JMLR* 15(1), 1929–1958.
- Stab**, C. and Gurevych, I. (2014a). Annotating argument components and relations in persuasive essays. *COLING*.
- Stab**, C. and Gurevych, I. (2014b). Identifying argumentative discourse structures in persuasive essays. *EMNLP*.
- Stab**, C. and Gurevych, I. (2017). Parsing argumentation structures in persuasive essays. *Computational Linguistics* 43(3), 619–659.
- Stalnaker**, R. C. (1978). Assertion. Cole, P. (Ed.), *Pragmatics: Syntax and Semantics Volume 9*, 315–332. Academic Press.
- Stamatatos**, E. (2009). A survey of modern authorship attribution methods. *JASIST* 60(3), 538–556.
- Stanovsky**, G., Smith, N. A., and Zettlemoyer, L. (2019). Evaluating gender bias in machine translation. *ACL*.
- Stede**, M. (2011). *Discourse processing*. Morgan & Claypool.
- Stede**, M. and Schneider, J. (2018). *Argumentation Mining*. Morgan & Claypool.
- Steedman**, M. (1989). Constituency and coordination in a combinatorial grammar. Baltin, M. R. and Kroch, A. S. (Eds.), *Alternative Conceptions of Phrase Structure*, 201–231. University of Chicago.
- Steedman**, M. (1996). *Surface Structure and Interpretation*. MIT Press. Linguistic Inquiry Monograph, 30.
- Steedman**, M. (2000). *The Syntactic Process*. The MIT Press.
- Stern**, M., Andreas, J., and Klein, D. (2017). A minimal span-based neural constituency parser. *ACL*.
- Stevens**, K. N. (1998). *Acoustic Phonetics*. MIT Press.
- Stevens**, K. N. and House, A. S. (1955). Development of a quantitative description of vowel articulation. *JASA* 27, 484–493.
- Stevens**, K. N. and House, A. S. (1961). An acoustical theory of vowel production and some of its implications. *Journal of Speech and Hearing Research* 4, 303–320.
- Stevens**, K. N., Kasowski, S., and Fant, G. M. (1953). An electrical analog of the vocal tract. *JASA* 25(4), 734–742.
- Stevens**, S. S. and Volkmann, J. (1940). The relation of pitch to frequency: A revised visualization. *Journal of Psychology* 53(3), 329–353.
- Stevens**, S. S., Volkmann, J., and Newman, E. B. (1937). A scale for the measurement of the psychological magnitude pitch. *JASA* 8, 185–190.
- Stifelman**, L. J., Arons, B., Schmandt, C., and Hulteen, E. A. (1993). VoiceNotes: A speech interface for a hand-held voice notetaker. *INTERCHI* 1993.
- Stolcke**, A. (1998). Entropy-based pruning of backoff language models. *Proc. DARPA Broadcast News Transcription and Understanding Workshop*.
- Stolcke**, A. (2002). SRILM – an extensible language modeling toolkit. *ICSLP*.
- Stolcke**, A., Ries, K., Coccaro, N., Shriberg, E., Bates, R., Jurafsky, D., Taylor, P., Martin, R., Meteer, M., and Van Ess-Dykema, C. (2000). Dialogue act modeling for automatic tagging and recognition of conversational speech. *Computational Linguistics* 26(3), 339–371.
- Stolz**, W. S., Tannenbaum, P. H., and Carstensen, F. V. (1965). A stochastic approach to the grammatical coding of English. *CACM* 8(6), 399–405.
- Stone**, P., Dunphy, D., Smith, M., and Ogilvie, D. (1966). *The General Inquirer: A Computer Approach to Content Analysis*. MIT Press.
- Stoyanov**, S. and Johnston, M. (2015). Localized error detection for targeted clarification in a virtual assistant. *ICASSP*.
- Stoyanov**, S., Liu, A., and Hirschberg, J. (2013). Modelling human clarification strategies. *SIGDIAL*.
- Stoyanov**, S., Liu, A., and Hirschberg, J. (2014). Towards natural clarification questions in dialogue systems. *AISB symposium on questions, discourse and dialogue*.
- Strötgen**, J. and Gertz, M. (2013). Multilingual and cross-domain temporal tagging. *Language Resources and Evaluation* 47(2), 269–298.
- Strube**, M. and Hahn, U. (1996). Functional centering. *ACL*.
- Su**, Y., Sun, H., Sadler, B., Srivatsa, M., Güür, I., Yan, Z., and Yan, X. (2016). On generating characteristic-rich question sets for QA evaluation. *EMNLP*.
- Subba**, R. and Di Eugenio, B. (2009). An effective discourse parser that uses rich linguistic information. *NAACL HLT*.
- Suendermann**, D., Evanini, K., Liscombe, J., Hunter, P., Dayanidhi, K.,

- and Pieraccini, R. (2009). From rule-based to statistical grammars: Continuous improvement of large-scale spoken dialog systems. *ICASSP*.
- Sundheim**, B. (Ed.). (1991). *Proceedings of MUC-3*.
- Sundheim**, B. (Ed.). (1992). *Proceedings of MUC-4*.
- Sundheim**, B. (Ed.). (1993). *Proceedings of MUC-5*, Baltimore, MD.
- Sundheim**, B. (Ed.). (1995). *Proceedings of MUC-6*.
- Surdeanu**, M. (2013). Overview of the TAC2013 Knowledge Base Population evaluation: English slot filling and temporal slot filling. *TAC-13*.
- Surdeanu**, M., Harabagiu, S., Williams, J., and Aarseth, P. (2003). Using predicate-argument structures for information extraction. *ACL*.
- Surdeanu**, M., Hicks, T., and Valenzuela-Escarcega, M. A. (2015). Two practical rhetorical structure theory parsers. *NAACL HLT*.
- Surdeanu**, M., Johansson, R., Meyers, A., Márquez, L., and Nivre, J. (2008). The conll-2008 shared task on joint parsing of syntactic and semantic dependencies. *CoNLL*.
- Sutskever**, I., Vinyals, O., and Le, Q. V. (2014). Sequence to sequence learning with neural networks. *NeurIPS*.
- Sweet**, H. (1877). *A Handbook of Phonetics*. Clarendon Press.
- Swerts**, M., Litman, D. J., and Hirschberg, J. (2000). Corrections in spoken dialogue systems. *ICSLP*.
- Swier**, R. and Stevenson, S. (2004). Unsupervised semantic role labelling. *EMNLP*.
- Switzer**, P. (1965). Vector images in document retrieval. Stevens, M. E., Giuliano, V. E., and Heilprin, L. B. (Eds.), *Statistical Association Methods For Mechanized Documentation. Symposium Proceedings. Washington, D.C., USA, March 17, 1964*. <https://nvlpubs.nist.gov/nistpubs/Legacy/MP/nbsmiscellaneouspub269.pdf>.
- Syrdal**, A. K., Wightman, C. W., Conkie, A., Stylianou, Y., Beutnagel, M., Schroeter, J., Strom, V., and Lee, K.-S. (2000). Corpus-based techniques in the AT&T NEXTGEN synthesis system. *ICSLP*.
- Talbot**, D. and Osborne, M. (2007). Smoothed Bloom Filter Language Models: Tera-Scale LMs on the Cheap. *EMNLP/CoNLL*.
- Talmor**, A. and Berant, J. (2018). The web as a knowledge-base for answering complex questions. *NAACL HLT*.
- Talmy**, L. (1985). Lexicalization patterns: Semantic structure in lexical forms. Shopen, T. (Ed.), *Language Typology and Syntactic Description, Volume 3*. Cambridge University Press. Originally appeared as UC Berkeley Cognitive Science Program Report No. 30, 1980.
- Talmy**, L. (1991). Path to realization: A typology of event conflation. *BLS-91*.
- Tan**, C., Niculae, V., Danescu-Niculescu-Mizil, C., and Lee, L. (2016). Winning arguments: Interaction dynamics and persuasion strategies in good-faith online discussions. *WWW-16*.
- Tannen**, D. (1979). What's in a frame? Surface evidence for underlying expectations. Freedle, R. (Ed.), *New Directions in Discourse Processing*, 137–181. Ablex.
- Taylor**, P. (2009). *Text-to-Speech Synthesis*. Cambridge University Press.
- ter Meulen**, A. (1995). *Representing Time in Natural Language*. MIT Press.
- Teranishi**, R. and Umeda, N. (1968). Use of pronouncing dictionary in speech synthesis experiments. *6th International Congress on Acoustics*.
- Tesnière**, L. (1959). *Éléments de Syntaxe Structurale*. Librairie C. Klincksieck, Paris.
- Tetreault**, J. R. (2001). A corpus-based evaluation of centering and pronoun resolution. *Computational Linguistics* 27(4), 507–520.
- Teufel**, S., Carletta, J., and Moens, M. (1999). An annotation scheme for discourse-level argumentation in research articles. *EACL*.
- Teufel**, S., Siddharthan, A., and Batchelor, C. (2009). Towards domain-independent argumentative zoning: Evidence from chemistry and computational linguistics. *EMNLP*.
- Thede**, S. M. and Harper, M. P. (1999). A second-order hidden Markov model for part-of-speech tagging. *ACL*.
- Thompson**, B. and Koehn, P. (2019). Vcalign: Improved sentence alignment in linear time and space. *EMNLP*.
- Thompson**, K. (1968). Regular expression search algorithm. *CACM* 11(6), 419–422.
- Tibshirani**, R. J. (1996). Regression shrinkage and selection via the lasso. *Journal of the Royal Statistical Society. Series B (Methodological)* 58(1), 267–288.
- Titov**, I. and Khoddam, E. (2014). Unsupervised induction of semantic roles within a reconstruction-error minimization framework. *NAACL HLT*.
- Titov**, I. and Klementiev, A. (2012). A Bayesian approach to unsupervised semantic role induction. *EACL*.
- Tomkins**, S. S. (1962). *Affect, imagery, consciousness: Vol. I. The positive affects*. Springer.
- Toutanova**, K., Klein, D., Manning, C. D., and Singer, Y. (2003). Feature-rich part-of-speech tagging with a cyclic dependency network. *HLT-NAACL*.
- Trichelaire**, P., Emami, A., Cheung, J. C. K., Trischler, A., Suleman, K., and Diaz, F. (2018). On the evaluation of common-sense reasoning in natural language understanding. *NeurIPS 2018 Workshop on Critiquing and Correcting Trends in Machine Learning*.
- Trnka**, K., Yarrington, D., McCaw, J., McCoy, K. F., and Pennington, C. (2007). The effects of word prediction on communication rate for AAC. *NAACL-HLT*.
- Tsvetkov**, Y., Schneider, N., Hovy, D., Bhatia, A., Faruqui, M., and Dyer, C. (2014). Augmenting English adjective senses with supersenses. *LREC*.
- Tur**, G. and De Mori, R. (2011). *Spoken language understanding: Systems for extracting semantic information from speech*. John Wiley & Sons.
- Turian**, J. P., Shen, L., and Melamed, I. D. (2003). Evaluation of machine translation and its evaluation. *Proceedings of MT Summit IX*.
- Turian**, J., Ratinov, L., and Bengio, Y. (2010). Word representations: a simple and general method for semi-supervised learning. *ACL*.
- Turney**, P. D. (2002). Thumbs up or thumbs down? Semantic orientation applied to unsupervised classification of reviews. *ACL*.
- Turney**, P. D. and Littman, M. (2003). Measuring praise and criticism: Inference of semantic orientation from association. *ACM Transactions on Information Systems (TOIS)* 21, 315–346.
- Turney**, P. D. and Littman, M. L. (2005). Corpus-based learning of analogies and semantic relations. *Machine Learning* 60(1-3), 251–278.
- Umeda**, N. (1976). Linguistic rules for text-to-speech synthesis. *Proceedings of the IEEE* 64(4), 443–451.
- Umeda**, N., Matui, E., Suzuki, T., and Omura, H. (1968). Synthesis of fairy tale using an analog vocal tract. *6th International Congress on Acoustics*.
- Uryupina**, O., Artstein, R., Bristot, A., Cavicchio, F., Delogu, F., Rodriguez, K. J., and Poesio, M. (2020). Annotating a broad range of anaphoric phenomena, in a variety of genres: The ARRAU corpus. *Natural Language Engineering* 26(1), 1–34.
- Uzzaman**, N., Llorens, H., Derczynski, L., Allen, J., Verhagen, M., and

- Pustejovsky, J. (2013). SemEval-2013 task 1: TempEval-3: Evaluating time expressions, events, and temporal relations. *SemEval-13*.
- van Benthem**, J. and ter Meulen, A. (Eds.). (1997). *Handbook of Logic and Language*. MIT Press.
- van Deemter**, K. and Kibble, R. (2000). On coreferring: coreference in MUC and related annotation schemes. *Computational Linguistics* 26(4), 629–637.
- van den Oord**, A., Dieleman, S., Zen, H., Simonyan, K., Vinyals, O., Graves, A., Kalchbrenner, N., Senior, A., and Kavukcuoglu, K. (2016). Wavenet: A generative model for raw audio. arXiv preprint arXiv:1609.03499.
- van der Maaten**, L. and Hinton, G. E. (2008). Visualizing high-dimensional data using t-sne. *JMLR* 9, 2579–2605.
- van Esch**, D. and Sproat, R. (2018). An expanded taxonomy of semiotic classes for text normalization. *INTERSPEECH*.
- van Rijsbergen**, C. J. (1975). *Information Retrieval*. Butterworths.
- Van Valin, Jr.**, R. D. and La Polla, R. (1997). *Syntax: Structure, Meaning, and Function*. Cambridge University Press.
- Vaswani**, A., Shazeer, N., Parmar, N., Uszkoreit, J., Jones, L., Gomez, A. N., Kaiser, L., and Polosukhin, I. (2017). Attention is all you need. *NeurIPS*.
- Vauquois**, B. (1968). A survey of formal grammars and algorithms for recognition and transformation in machine translation. *IFIP Congress 1968*.
- Velichko**, V. M. and Zagoruyko, N. G. (1970). Automatic recognition of 200 words. *International Journal of Man-Machine Studies* 2, 223–234.
- Velikovich**, L., Blair-Goldensohn, S., Hannan, K., and McDonald, R. (2010). The viability of web-derived polarity lexicons. *NAACL HLT*.
- Vendler**, Z. (1967). *Linguistics in Philosophy*. Cornell University Press.
- Verhagen**, M., Gaizauskas, R., Schilder, F., Hepple, M., Moszkowicz, J., and Pustejovsky, J. (2009). The TempEval challenge: Identifying temporal relations in text. *Language Resources and Evaluation* 43(2), 161–179.
- Verhagen**, M., Mani, I., Sauri, R., Knippen, R., Jang, S. B., Littman, J., Rumshisky, A., Phillips, J., and Pustejovsky, J. (2005). Automating temporal annotation with TARSQI. *ACL*.
- Versley**, Y. (2008). Vagueness and referential ambiguity in a large-scale annotated corpus. *Research on Language and Computation* 6(3-4), 333–353.
- Vieira**, R. and Poesio, M. (2000). An empirically based system for processing definite descriptions. *Computational Linguistics* 26(4), 539–593.
- Vijayakumar**, A. K., Cogswell, M., Selvaraju, R. R., Sun, Q., Lee, S., Crandall, D., and Batra, D. (2018). Diverse beam search: Decoding diverse solutions from neural sequence models. *AAAI*.
- Vilain**, M., Burger, J. D., Aberdeen, J., Connolly, D., and Hirschman, L. (1995). A model-theoretic coreference scoring scheme. *MUC-6*.
- Vintsyuk**, T. K. (1968). Speech discrimination by dynamic programming. *Cybernetics* 4(1), 52–57. Russian Kibernetika 4(1):81–88. 1968.
- Vinyals**, O. and Le, Q. V. (2015). A neural conversational model. *ICML Deep Learning Workshop*.
- Voorhees**, E. M. and Harman, D. K. (2005). *TREC: Experiment and Evaluation in Information Retrieval*. MIT Press.
- Vossen**, P., Görög, A., Laan, F., Van Gompel, M., Izquierdo, R., and Van Den Bosch, A. (2011). Dutchsemcor: building a semantically annotated corpus for dutch. *Proceedings of eLex*.
- Voutilainen**, A. (1999). Handcrafted rules. van Halteren, H. (Ed.), *Syntactic Wordclass Tagging*, 217–246. Kluwer.
- Vrandečić**, D. and Krötzsch, M. (2014). Wikidata: a free collaborative knowledge base. *CACM* 57(10), 78–85.
- Wade**, E., Shriberg, E., and Price, P. J. (1992). User behaviors affecting speech recognition. *ICSLP*.
- Wagner**, R. A. and Fischer, M. J. (1974). The string-to-string correction problem. *Journal of the ACM* 21, 168–173.
- Waibel**, A., Hanazawa, T., Hinton, G., Shikano, K., and Lang, K. J. (1989). Phoneme recognition using time-delay neural networks. *IEEE transactions on Acoustics, Speech, and Signal Processing* 37(3), 328–339.
- Walker**, M. A. (2000). An application of reinforcement learning to dialogue strategy selection in a spoken dialogue system for email. *JAIR* 12, 387–416.
- Walker**, M. A., Fromer, J. C., and Narayanan, S. S. (1998). Learning optimal dialogue strategies: A case study of a spoken dialogue agent for email. *COLING/ACL*.
- Walker**, M. A., Iida, M., and Cote, S. (1994). Japanese discourse and the process of centering. *Computational Linguistics* 20(2), 193–232.
- Walker**, M. A., Joshi, A. K., and Prince, E. (Eds.). (1998). *Centering in Discourse*. Oxford University Press.
- Walker**, M. A., Kamm, C. A., and Litman, D. J. (2001). Towards developing general models of usability with PARADISE. *Natural Language Engineering: Special Issue on Best Practice in Spoken Dialogue Systems* 6(3), 363–377.
- Walker**, M. A. and Whittaker, S. (1990). Mixed initiative in dialogue: An investigation into discourse segmentation. *ACL*.
- Wang**, A., Singh, A., Michael, J., Hill, F., Levy, O., and Bowman, S. R. (2018). Glue: A multi-task benchmark and analysis platform for natural language understanding. *ICLR*.
- Wang**, S. and Manning, C. D. (2012). Baselines and bigrams: Simple, good sentiment and topic classification. *ACL*.
- Wang**, W. and Chang, B. (2016). Graph-based dependency parsing with bidirectional lstm. *ACL*.
- Wang**, Y., Li, S., and Yang, J. (2018). Toward fast and accurate neural discourse segmentation. *EMNLP*.
- Wang**, Y., Skerry-Ryan, R., Stanton, D., Wu, Y., Weiss, R. J., Jaity, N., Yang, Z., Xiao, Y., Chen, Z., Bengio, S., Le, Q., Agiomyrgiannakis, Y., Clark, R., and Saurous, R. A. (2017). Tacotron: Towards end-to-end speech synthesis. *INTERSPEECH*.
- Ward**, W. and Issar, S. (1994). Recent improvements in the CMU spoken language understanding system. *ARPA Human Language Technologies Workshop*.
- Watanabe**, S., Hori, T., Karita, S., Hayashi, T., Nishitoba, J., Unno, Y., Soplins, N. E. Y., Heymann, J., Wiesner, M., Chen, N., Renduchintala, A., and Ochiai, T. (2018). ESPnet: End-to-end speech processing toolkit. *INTERSPEECH*.
- Weaver**, W. (1949/1955). Translation. Locke, W. N. and Boothe, A. D. (Eds.), *Machine Translation of Languages*, 15–23. MIT Press. Reprinted from a memorandum written by Weaver in 1949.
- Webber**, B. L. (1978). *A Formal Approach to Discourse Anaphora*. Ph.D. thesis, Harvard University.
- Webber**, B. L. (1983). So what can we talk about now?. Brady, M. and Berwick, R. C. (Eds.), *Computational Models of Discourse*, 331–371. The MIT Press.
- Webber**, B. L. (1991). Structure and ostension in the interpretation of discourse deixis. *Language and Cognitive Processes* 6(2), 107–135.
- Webber**, B. L. and Baldwin, B. (1992). Accommodating context change. *ACL*.

- Webber, B. L.**, Egg, M., and Kordonis, V. (2012). Discourse structure and language technology. *Natural Language Engineering* 18(4), 437–490.
- Webber, B. L.** (1988). Discourse deixis: Reference to discourse segments. *ACL*.
- Webster, K.**, Recasens, M., Axelrod, V., and Baldridge, J. (2018). Mind the gap: A balanced corpus of gendered ambiguous pronouns. *TACL* 6, 605–617.
- Weinschenk, S.** and Barker, D. T. (2000). *Designing Effective Speech Interfaces*. Wiley.
- Weischedel, R.**, Hovy, E. H., Marcus, M. P., Palmer, M., Belvin, R., Pradhan, S., Ramshaw, L. A., and Xue, N. (2011). Ontonotes: A large training corpus for enhanced processing. Olive, J., Christianson, C., and McCary, J. (Eds.), *Handbook of Natural Language Processing and Machine Translation: DARPA Global Automatic Language Exploitation*, 54–63. Springer.
- Weischedel, R.**, Meteer, M., Schwartz, R., Ramshaw, L. A., and Palmucci, J. (1993). Coping with ambiguity and unknown words through probabilistic models. *Computational Linguistics* 19(2), 359–382.
- Weizenbaum, J.** (1966). ELIZA – A computer program for the study of natural language communication between man and machine. *CACM* 9(1), 36–45.
- Weizenbaum, J.** (1976). *Computer Power and Human Reason: From Judgement to Calculation*. W.H. Freeman and Company.
- Wells, J. C.** (1982). *Accents of English*. Cambridge University Press.
- Wen, T.-H.**, Gašić, M., Kim, D., Mrkšić, N., Su, P.-H., Vandyke, D., and Young, S. J. (2015a). Stochastic language generation in dialogue using recurrent neural networks with convolutional sentence reranking. *SIGDIAL*.
- Wen, T.-H.**, Gašić, M., Mrkšić, N., Su, P.-H., Vandyke, D., and Young, S. J. (2015b). Semantically conditioned LSTM-based natural language generation for spoken dialogue systems. *EMNLP*.
- Werbos, P.** (1974). *Beyond regression: new tools for prediction and analysis in the behavioral sciences*. Ph.D. thesis, Harvard University.
- Werbos, P. J.** (1990). Backpropagation through time: what it does and how to do it. *Proceedings of the IEEE* 78(10), 1550–1560.
- Widrow, B.** and Hoff, M. E. (1960). Adaptive switching circuits. *IRE WESCON Convention Record*, Vol. 4.
- Wiebe, J.** (1994). Tracking point of view in narrative. *Computational Linguistics* 20(2), 233–287.
- Wiebe, J.** (2000). Learning subjective adjectives from corpora. *AAAI*.
- Wiebe, J.**, Bruce, R. F., and O'Hara, T. P. (1999). Development and use of a gold-standard data set for subjectivity classifications. *ACL*.
- Wierzbicka, A.** (1992). *Semantics, Culture, and Cognition: University Human Concepts in Culture-Specific Configurations*. Oxford University Press.
- Wierzbicka, A.** (1996). *Semantics: Primes and Universals*. Oxford University Press.
- Wilensky, R.** (1983). *Planning and Understanding: A Computational Approach to Human Reasoning*. Addison-Wesley.
- Wilks, Y.** (1973). An artificial intelligence approach to machine translation. Schank, R. C. and Colby, K. M. (Eds.), *Computer Models of Thought and Language*, 114–151. W.H. Freeman.
- Wilks, Y.** (1975a). An intelligent analyzer and understander of English. *CACM* 18(5), 264–274.
- Wilks, Y.** (1975b). Preference semantics. Keenan, E. L. (Ed.), *The Formal Semantics of Natural Language*, 329–350. Cambridge Univ. Press.
- Wilks, Y.** (1975c). A preferential, pattern-seeking, semantics for natural language inference. *Artificial Intelligence* 6(1), 53–74.
- Williams, J. D.**, Raux, A., and Henderson, M. (2016). The dialog state tracking challenge series: A review. *Dialogue & Discourse* 7(3), 4–33.
- Williams, J. D.** and Young, S. J. (2007). Partially observable markov decision processes for spoken dialog systems. *Computer Speech and Language* 21(1), 393–422.
- Wilson, T.**, Wiebe, J., and Hoffmann, P. (2005). Recognizing contextual polarity in phrase-level sentiment analysis. *EMNLP*.
- Winograd, T.** (1972). *Understanding Natural Language*. Academic Press.
- Winston, P. H.** (1977). *Artificial Intelligence*. Addison Wesley.
- Wiseman, S.**, Rush, A. M., and Shieber, S. M. (2016). Learning global features for coreference resolution. *NAACL HLT*.
- Wiseman, S.**, Rush, A. M., Shieber, S. M., and Weston, J. (2015). Learning anaphoricity and antecedent ranking features for coreference resolution. *ACL*.
- Witten, I. H.** and Bell, T. C. (1991). The zero-frequency problem: Estimating the probabilities of novel events in adaptive text compression. *IEEE Transactions on Information Theory* 37(4), 1085–1094.
- Witten, I. H.** and Frank, E. (2005). *Data Mining: Practical Machine Learning Tools and Techniques* (2nd Ed.). Morgan Kaufmann.
- Wittgenstein, L.** (1953). *Philosophical Investigations*. (Translated by Anscombe, G.E.M.). Blackwell.
- Wolf, F.** and Gibson, E. (2005). Representing discourse coherence: A corpus-based analysis. *Computational Linguistics* 31(2), 249–287.
- Wolf, M. J.**, Miller, K. W., and Grodzinsky, F. S. (2017). Why we should have seen that coming: Comments on Microsoft's Tay “experiment,” and wider implications. *The ORBIT Journal* 1(2), 1–12.
- Wolfson, T.**, Geva, M., Gupta, A., Gardner, M., Goldberg, Y., Deutch, D., and Berant, J. (2020). Break it down: A question understanding benchmark. *TACL* 8, 183–198.
- Woods, W. A.** (1967). *Semantics for a Question-Answering System*. Ph.D. thesis, Harvard University.
- Woods, W. A.** (1973). Progress in natural language understanding. *Proceedings of AFIPS National Conference*.
- Woods, W. A.** (1975). What's in a link: Foundations for semantic networks. Bobrow, D. G. and Collins, A. M. (Eds.), *Representation and Understanding: Studies in Cognitive Science*, 35–82. Academic Press.
- Woods, W. A.** (1978). Semantics and quantification in natural language question answering. Yovits, M. (Ed.), *Advances in Computers*, 2–64. Academic.
- Woods, W. A.**, Kaplan, R. M., and Nash-Webber, B. L. (1972). The lunar sciences natural language information system: Final report. Tech. rep. 2378, BBN.
- Woodsend, K.** and Lapata, M. (2015). Distributed representations for unsupervised semantic role labeling. *EMNLP*.
- Wu, D.** (1996). A polynomial-time algorithm for statistical machine translation. *ACL*.
- Wu, F.** and Weld, D. S. (2007). Autonomously semantifying Wikipedia. *CIKM-07*.
- Wu, F.** and Weld, D. S. (2010). Open information extraction using Wikipedia. *ACL*.
- Wu, L.**, Petroni, F., Josifoski, M., Riedel, S., and Zettlemoyer, L. (2019). Zero-shot entity linking with dense

- entity retrieval. arXiv preprint arXiv:1911.03814.
- Wu, S.** and Dredze, M. (2019). Beto, Bentz, Becas: The surprising cross-lingual effectiveness of BERT. *EMNLP*.
- Wu, Y.**, Schuster, M., Chen, Z., Le, Q. V., Norouzi, M., Macherey, W., Krikun, M., Cao, Y., Gao, Q., Macherey, K., Klingner, J., Shah, A., Johnson, M., Liu, X., Kaiser, L., Gouws, S., Kato, Y., Kudo, T., Kazawa, H., Stevens, K., Kurian, G., Patil, N., Wang, W., Young, C., Smith, J., Riesa, J., Rudnick, A., Vinyals, O., Corrado, G. S., Hughes, M., and Dean, J. (2016). Google’s neural machine translation system: Bridging the gap between human and machine translation. arXiv preprint arXiv:1609.08144.
- Wundt, W.** (1900). *Völkerpsychologie: eine Untersuchung der Entwicklungs-gesetze von Sprache, Mythos, und Sitte*. W. Engelmann, Leipzig. Band II: Die Sprache, Zweiter Teil.
- Xia, F.** and Palmer, M. (2001). Converting dependency structures to phrase structures. *HLT*.
- Xu, J.**, Ju, D., Li, M., Boureau, Y.-L., Weston, J., and Dinan, E. (2020). Recipes for safety in open-domain chatbots. arXiv preprint arXiv:2010.07079.
- Xu, P.**, Saghir, H., Kang, J. S., Long, T., Bose, A. J., Cao, Y., and Cheung, J. C. K. (2019). A cross-domain transferable neural coherence model. *ACL*.
- Xu, Y.** (2005). Speech melody as articulatorily implemented communicative functions. *Speech communication* 46(3-4), 220–251.
- Xue, N.**, Ng, H. T., Pradhan, S., Rutherford, A., Webber, B. L., Wang, C., and Wang, H. (2016). Conll 2016 shared task on multilingual shallow discourse parsing. *CoNLL-16 shared task*.
- Xue, N.** and Palmer, M. (2004). Calibrating features for semantic role labeling. *EMNLP*.
- Yamada, H.** and Matsumoto, Y. (2003). Statistical dependency analysis with support vector machines. Noord, G. V. (Ed.), *IWPT-03*.
- Yan, Z.**, Duan, N., Bao, J.-W., Chen, P., Zhou, M., Li, Z., and Zhou, J. (2016). DocChat: An information retrieval approach for chatbot engines using unstructured documents. *ACL*.
- Yang, D.**, Chen, J., Yang, Z., Jurafsky, D., and Hovy, E. H. (2019). Let’s make your request more persuasive: Modeling persuasive strategies via semi-supervised neural nets on crowdfunding platforms. *NAACL HLT*.
- Yang, X.**, Zhou, G., Su, J., and Tan, C. L. (2003). Coreference resolution using competition learning approach. *ACL*.
- Yang, Y.** and Pedersen, J. (1997). A comparative study on feature selection in text categorization. *ICML*.
- Yang, Z.**, Qi, P., Zhang, S., Bengio, Y., Cohen, W., Salakhutdinov, R., and Manning, C. D. (2018). HotpotQA: A dataset for diverse, explainable multi-hop question answering. *EMNLP*.
- Yankelovich, N.**, Levow, G.-A., and Marx, M. (1995). Designing SpeechActs: Issues in speech user interfaces. *CHI-95*.
- Yarowsky, D.** (1995). Unsupervised word sense disambiguation rivaling supervised methods. *ACL*.
- Yasseri, T.**, Kornai, A., and Kertész, J. (2012). A practical approach to language complexity: a Wikipedia case study. *PloS one* 7(11).
- Yih, W.-t.**, Richardson, M., Meek, C., Chang, M.-W., and Suh, J. (2016). The value of semantic parse labeling for knowledge base question answering. *ACL*.
- Yngve, V. H.** (1955). Syntax and the problem of multiple meaning. Locke, W. N. and Booth, A. D. (Eds.), *Machine Translation of Languages*, 208–226. MIT Press.
- Young, S. J.**, Gašić, M., Keizer, S., Mairesse, F., Schatzmann, J., Thomson, B., and Yu, K. (2010). The Hidden Information State model: A practical framework for POMDP-based spoken dialogue management. *Computer Speech & Language* 24(2), 150–174.
- Younger, D. H.** (1967). Recognition and parsing of context-free languages in time  $n^3$ . *Information and Control* 10, 189–208.
- Yu, M.** and Dredze, M. (2014). Improving lexical embeddings with semantic knowledge. *ACL*.
- Yu, N.**, Zhang, M., and Fu, G. (2018). Transition-based neural RST parsing with implicit syntax features. *COLING*.
- Yu, Y.**, Zhu, Y., Liu, Y., Liu, Y., Peng, S., Gong, M., and Zeldes, A. (2019). GumDrop at the DISRPT2019 shared task: A model stacking approach to discourse unit segmentation and connective detection. *Workshop on Discourse Relation Parsing and Treebanking 2019*.
- Zapirain, B.**, Agirre, E., Márquez, L., and Surdeanu, M. (2013). Selectional preferences for semantic role classification. *Computational Linguistics* 39(3), 631–663.
- Zelle, J. M.** and Mooney, R. J. (1996). Learning to parse database queries using inductive logic programming. *AAAI*.
- Zeman, D.** (2008). Reusable tagset conversion using tagset drivers. *LREC*.
- Zeman, D.**, Popel, M., Straka, M., Hajic, J., Nivre, J., Ginter, F., Luoto-lahti, J., Pyysalo, S., Petrov, S., Potthast, M., Tyers, F. M., Badmaeva, E., Gokirmak, M., Nedoluzhko, A., Cinková, S., Hajic, Jr., J., Hlaváčová, J., Kettnerová, V., Uresová, Z., Kanerva, J., Ojala, S., Missilä, A., Manning, C. D., Schuster, S., Reddy, S., Taji, D., Habash, N., Leung, H., de Marneffe, M.-C., Sanguinetti, M., Simi, M., Kanayama, H., de Paiva, V., Droganova, K., Alonso, H. M., Çöltekin, Ç., Sulubacak, U., Uszkoreit, H., Macketanz, V., Burchardt, A., Harris, K., Marheinecke, K., Rehm, G., Kayadelen, T., Attia, M., El-Kahky, A., Yu, Z., Pitler, E., Lertpradit, S., Mandl, M., Kirchner, J., Alcalde, H. F., Strnadová, J., Banerjee, E., Manurung, R., Stella, A., Shimada, A., Kwak, S., Mendonça, G., Lando, T., Nitisoroj, R., and Li, J. (2017). Conll 2017 shared task: Multilingual parsing from raw text to universal dependencies. *Proceedings of the CoNLL 2017 Shared Task: Multilingual Parsing from Raw Text to Universal Dependencies*.
- Zens, R.** and Ney, H. (2007). Efficient phrase-table representation for machine translation with applications to online MT and speech translation. *NAACL-HLT*.
- Zhang, H.**, Sproat, R., Ng, A. H., Stahlberg, F., Peng, X., Gorman, K., and Roark, B. (2019). Neural models of text normalization for speech applications. *Computational Linguistics* 45(2), 293–337.
- Zhang, R.**, dos Santos, C. N., Yasunaga, M., Xiang, B., and Radev, D. (2018). Neural coreference resolution with deep biaffine attention by joint mention detection and mention clustering. *ACL*.
- Zhang, T.**, Kishore, V., Wu, F., Weinberger, K. Q., and Artzi, Y. (2020). Bertscore: Evaluating text generation with BERT. *ICLR 2020*.
- Zhang, Y.** and Clark, S. (2008). A tale of two parsers: investigating and combining graph-based and transition-based dependency parsing using beam-search. *EMNLP*.
- Zhang, Y.** and Nivre, J. (2011). Transition-based dependency parsing with rich non-local features. *ACL*.
- Zhang, Y.**, Zhong, V., Chen, D., Angeli, G., and Manning, C. D. (2017). Position-aware attention and supervised data improve slot filling. *EMNLP*.

- Zhao**, H., Chen, W., Kit, C., and Zhou, G. (2009). Multilingual dependency learning: A huge feature engineering method to semantic dependency parsing. *CoNLL*.
- Zhao**, J., Wang, T., Yatskar, M., Cotterell, R., Ordóñez, V., and Chang, K.-W. (2019). Gender bias in contextualized word embeddings. *NAACL HLT*.
- Zhao**, J., Wang, T., Yatskar, M., Ordóñez, V., and Chang, K.-W. (2017). Men also like shopping: Reducing gender bias amplification using corpus-level constraints. *EMNLP*.
- Zhao**, J., Wang, T., Yatskar, M., Ordóñez, V., and Chang, K.-W. (2018a). Gender bias in coreference resolution: Evaluation and debiasing methods. *NAACL HLT*.
- Zhao**, J., Zhou, Y., Li, Z., Wang, W., and Chang, K.-W. (2018b). Learning gender-neutral word embeddings. *EMNLP*.
- Zheng**, J., Vilnis, L., Singh, S., Choi, J. D., and McCallum, A. (2013). Dynamic knowledge-base alignment for coreference resolution. *CoNLL*.
- Zhong**, Z. and Ng, H. T. (2010). It makes sense: A wide-coverage word sense disambiguation system for free text. *ACL*.
- Zhou**, D., Bousquet, O., Lal, T. N., Weston, J., and Schölkopf, B. (2004). Learning with local and global consistency. *NeurIPS*.
- Zhou**, G., Su, J., Zhang, J., and Zhang, M. (2005). Exploring various knowledge in relation extraction. *ACL*.
- Zhou**, J. and Xu, W. (2015a). End-to-end learning of semantic role labeling using recurrent neural networks. *ACL*.
- Zhou**, J. and Xu, W. (2015b). End-to-end learning of semantic role labeling using recurrent neural networks. *ACL*.
- Zhou**, L., Gao, J., Li, D., and Shum, H.-Y. (2020). The design and implementation of Xiaolce, an empathetic social chatbot. *Computational Linguistics* 46(1), 53–93.
- Zhou**, L., Ticrea, M., and Hovy, E. H. (2004). Multi-document biography summarization. *EMNLP*.
- Zhou**, Y. and Xue, N. (2015). The Chinese Discourse TreeBank: a Chinese corpus annotated with discourse relations. *Language Resources and Evaluation* 49(2), 397–431.
- Zhu**, X. and Ghahramani, Z. (2002). Learning from labeled and unlabeled data with label propagation. Tech. rep. CMU-CALD-02, CMU.
- Zhu**, X., Ghahramani, Z., and Lafferty, J. (2003). Semi-supervised learning using gaussian fields and harmonic functions. *ICML*.
- Ziemski**, M., Junczys-Dowmunt, M., and Pouliquen, B. (2016). The united nations parallel corpus v1.0. *LREC*.
- Zue**, V. W., Glass, J., Goodine, D., Leung, H., Phillips, M., Polifroni, J., and Seneff, S. (1989). Preliminary evaluation of the VOYAGER spoken language system. *Proceedings DARPA Speech and Natural Language Workshop*.

# Subject Index

- $\lambda$ -reduction, 315  
 $*?$ , 7  
 $+?$ , 7  
.wav format, 536  
10-fold cross-validation, 68  
→ (derives), 233  
 $\wedge$ , 57  
\* (RE Kleene \*), 5  
+ (RE Kleene +), 5  
. (RE any character), 5  
\$ (RE end-of-line), 5  
( (RE precedence symbol), 6  
[ (RE character disjunction), 4  
\B (RE non word-boundary), 6  
\b (RE word-boundary), 6  
] (RE character disjunction), 4  
^ (RE start-of-line), 5  
[^] (single-char negation), 4  
 $\exists$  (there exists), 313  
 $\forall$  (for all), 313  
 $\implies$  (implies), 316  
 $\lambda$ -expressions, 315  
 $\lambda$ -reduction, 315  
 $\wedge$  (and), 313  
 $\neg$  (not), 313  
 $\vee$  (or), 316  
4-gram, 34  
4-tuple, 236  
5-gram, 34  
A-D conversion, 535, 552  
AAC, 30  
AAL, 13  
AB test, 569  
abduction, 318  
ABox, 323  
ABSITY, 371  
absolute discounting, 45  
absolute temporal expression, 344  
abstract word, 397  
accented syllables, 532  
accessible, 420  
accessing a referent, 415  
accomplishment expressions, 322  
accuracy, 152  
achievement expressions, 322, 322  
acknowledgment speech act, 494  
activation, 128  
activity expressions, 322, 322  
acute-eval, 517  
ad hoc retrieval, 465  
add gate, 188  
add-k, 43  
add-one smoothing, 41  
adequacy, 221  
adjacency pairs, 495  
adjective, 240  
adjective phrase, 240  
Adjectives, 150  
adjunction in TAG, 257  
adverb, 150  
degree, 150  
directional, 150  
locative, 150  
manner, 150  
syntactic position of, 240  
temporal, 150  
Adverbs, 150  
adversarial evaluation, 518  
AED, 555  
affective, 393  
affix, 21  
affricate sound, 530  
agent, as thematic role, 374  
agglomerative clustering, 370  
agglutinative language, 207  
AIFF file, 536  
AISHELL-1, 551  
ALGOL, 257  
algorithm byte-pair encoding, 20  
CKY, 261  
Kneser-Ney discounting, 45  
Lesk, 367  
minimum edit distance, 25  
naive Bayes classifier, 56  
pointwise mutual information, 109  
semantic role labeling, 381  
Simplified Lesk, 367  
TextTiling, 456  
unsupervised word sense disambiguation, 369  
Viterbi, 159  
alignment, 22, 558  
in ASR, 562  
minimum cost, 24  
of transcript, 545  
string, 22  
via minimum edit distance, 24  
all-words task in WSD, 363  
Allen relations, 349  
allocational harm, 120  
alveolar sound, 529  
ambiguity amount of part-of-speech in Brown corpus, 152  
attachment, 260  
coordination, 260  
in meaning representations, 306  
of referring expressions, 417  
part-of-speech, 151  
resolution of tag, 152  
word sense, 363  
American Structuralism, 256  
amplitude of a signal, 534  
RMS, 537  
anaphor, 416  
anaphora, 416  
anaphoricity detector, 425  
anchor texts, 478, 487  
anchors in regular expressions, 5, 26  
antecedent, 416  
antonym, 358  
AP, 240  
Apple AIFF, 536  
approximant sound, 530  
approximate randomization, 70  
Arabic, 526  
Egyptian, 544  
Aramaic, 526  
ARC, 489  
arc eager, 294  
arc standard, 287  
argumentation mining, 458  
argumentation schemes, 459  
argumentative relations, 458  
argumentative zoning, 460  
Aristotle, 148, 322  
arity, 319  
ARPA, 571  
ARPAbet, 546  
article (part-of-speech), 150  
articulatory phonetics, 527, 527  
articulatory synthesis, 573  
aspect, 322  
ASR, 548  
confidence, 515  
association, 98  
ATIS, 231  
corpus, 234, 237  
ATN, 391  
ATRANS, 389  
attachment ambiguity, 260  
attention mechanism, 213  
Attribution (as coherence relation), 445  
augmentative communication, 30  
authorship attribution, 55  
autoregressive generation, 175, 181  
Auxiliary, 151  
B<sup>3</sup>, 434  
Babbage, C., 549  
BabelNet, 368  
backoff in smoothing, 43  
backprop, 139  
Backpropagation Through Time, 178  
backtrace in minimum edit distance, 26  
Backtranslation, 221  
Backus-Naur Form, 233  
backward chaining, 317  
backward composition, 253  
backward-looking center, 452  
bag of words, 57, 58  
in IR, 465  
bag-of-words, 57  
bakeoff, 571  
speech recognition competition, 571  
barge-in, 520  
baseline most frequent sense, 364  
take the first sense, 364  
basic emotions, 394  
batch training, 87  
Bayes' rule, 57  
dropping denominator, 58, 158  
Bayesian inference, 57  
BDI, 524  
beam search, 215, 295  
beam width, 215, 295  
bear pitch accent, 532  
Berkeley Restaurant Project, 33  
Bernoulli naive Bayes, 74  
BERT for affect, 410  
best-worst scaling, 398  
bias amplification, 121  
bias term, 78, 128  
bidirectional RNN, 185  
bigram, 31  
bilabial, 529  
binary branching, 249  
binary NB, 62  
binary tree, 249  
BIO, 154  
BIO tagging for NER, 154  
BIOES, 154  
bitext, 219  
bits for measuring entropy, 49  
blank in CTC, 558  
BLEU, 222  
Bloom filters, 48  
BM25, 466, 468  
BNF (Backus-Naur Form), 233  
bootstrap, 72  
bootstrap algorithm, 72

- bootstrap test, 70  
 bootstrapping, 70  
     in IE, 339  
 bound pronoun, 418  
 boundary tones, 534  
 BPE, 18  
 BPE, 20  
 bracketed notation, 234  
 bridging inference, 420  
 broadcast news  
     speech recognition of, 571  
 Brown corpus, 11  
     original tagging of, 170  
 byte-pair encoding, 18
- CALLHOME, 550  
*Candide*, 228  
 canonical form, 307  
 Cantonese, 207  
 capture group, 10  
 cardinal number, 239  
 cascade, 21  
     regular expression in  
         Eliza, 10  
 case  
     sensitivity in regular  
         expression search, 3  
 case folding, 20  
 case frame, 375, 390  
 CAT, 203  
 cataphora, 418  
 categorial grammar, 250, 250  
 CD (conceptual dependency), 389  
 CELEX, 544  
 Centering Theory, 443, 451  
 centroid, 111  
 cepstrum  
     history, 571  
 CFG, *see* context-free grammar  
 chain rule, 93, 139  
 channels in stored waveforms, 536  
 chart parsing, 261  
 chatbots, 2, 496  
 CHiME, 550  
 Chinese  
     as verb-framed language, 207  
     characters, 526  
     words for brother, 206  
 Chirpy Cardinal, 503  
 Chomsky normal form, 249  
 Chomsky-adjunction, 250  
 chunking, 270, 270  
 CIRCUS, 353  
 citation form, 97  
*Citizen Kane*, 442  
 CKY algorithm, 259  
 claims, 458  
 clarification questions, 517  
 class-based n-gram, 53  
 clause, 238  
 clefts, 421  
 clitic, 16
- origin of term, 148  
 closed class, 149  
 closed vocabulary, 40  
 closure, stop, 529  
 cluster, 416  
 clustering  
     in word sense  
         disambiguation, 372  
 CNF, *see* Chomsky normal form  
 coarse senses, 372  
 cochlea, 542  
 Cocke-Kasami-Younger algorithm, *see* CKY  
 coda, syllable, 531  
 code switching, 13  
 coherence, 442  
     entity-based, 451  
     relations, 444  
 cohesion  
     lexical, 443, 456  
 cold languages, 208  
 collection in IR, 465  
 collocation, 366  
 combinatory categorial grammar, 250  
 commissive speech act, 494  
 common ground, 494, 524  
 Common nouns, 149  
 complement, 242, 242  
 complementizers, 150  
 completeness in FOL, 318  
 componential analysis, 389  
 compression, 535  
 Computational Grammar Coder (CGC), 170  
 computational semantics, 305  
 concatenation, 26  
 concept error rate, 519  
 conceptual dependency, 389  
 concordance, semantic, 363  
 concrete word, 397  
 conditional random field, 162  
 confidence, 226  
     ASR, 515  
     in relation extraction, 340  
 confidence values, 339  
 configuration, 285  
 confusion matrix, 65  
 conjoined phrase, 243  
 Conjunctions, 150  
 conjunctions, 243  
 connectionist, 147  
 connotation frame, 411  
 connotation frames, 392  
 connotations, 99, 394  
 consonant, 528  
 constants in FOL, 312  
 constative speech act, 494  
 constituency, 232  
     evidence for, 232  
 constituent, 232  
     book titles which are not, 231  
 Constraint Grammar, 303  
 Construction Grammar, 257
- content planning, 515  
 context embedding, 117  
 context-free grammar, 231, 232, 236, 255  
     Chomsky normal form, 249  
     invention of, 257  
     non-terminal symbol, 233  
     productions, 233  
     rules, 233  
     terminal symbol, 233  
     weak and strong equivalence, 249  
 continuation rise, 534  
 conversation, 492  
 conversation analysis, 523  
 conversational agents, 492  
 conversational analysis, 495  
 conversational implicature, 496  
 conversational speech, 550  
 convex, 84  
 coordinate noun phrase, 243  
 coordination ambiguity, 260  
 copula, 151  
 CORAL, 550  
 corefer, 415  
 coreference chain, 416  
 coreference resolution, 416  
     gender agreement, 422  
     Hobbs tree search algorithm, 438  
     number agreement, 421  
     person agreement, 422  
     recency preferences, 422  
     selectional restrictions, 423  
     syntactic (“binding”) constraints, 422  
     verb semantics, 423  
 coronal sound, 529  
 corpora, 11  
 corpus, 11  
     ATIS, 234  
     Broadcast news, 571  
     Brown, 11, 170  
     CASS phonetic of Mandarin, 545  
     fisher, 571  
     Kiel of German, 545  
     LOB, 170  
     regular expression searching inside, 3  
     Switchboard, 11, 500, 535, 536, 550  
     TimeBank, 349  
     TIMIT, 545  
     Wall Street Journal, 571  
 correction act detection, 512  
 cosine  
     as a similarity metric, 105  
 cost function, 81  
 count nouns, 149  
 counters, 26
- counts  
     treating low as zero, 165  
 CRF, 162  
     compared to HMM, 162  
     inference, 166  
     Viterbi inference, 166  
 CRFs  
     learning, 167  
 cross-brackets, 270  
 cross-entropy, 51  
 cross-entropy loss, 82, 137  
 cross-validation, 68  
     10-fold, 68  
 crowdsourcing, 398  
 CTC, 557  
 currying, 315  
 cycles in a wave, 534  
 cycles per second, 534
- datasheet, 14  
 date  
     fully qualified, 347  
     normalization, 507  
 dative alternation, 376  
 DBpedia, 482  
 debiasing, 122  
 decision boundary, 79, 131  
 decision tree  
     use in WSD, 372  
 declarative sentence structure, 237  
 decoding, 157  
     Viterbi, 157  
 deduction  
     in FOL, 317  
 deep  
     neural networks, 127  
 deep learning, 127  
 deep role, 374  
 definite reference, 418  
 degree adverb, 150  
 delexicalization, 516  
 denotation, 309  
 dental sound, 529  
 dependency  
     grammar, 280  
 dependency tree, 283  
 dependent, 281  
 derivation  
     direct (in a formal language), 236  
     syntactic, 233, 233, 236, 236  
 description logics, 323  
 Det, 233  
 determiner, 150, 233, 239  
 Determiners, 150  
 development test set, 67  
 development test set (dev-test), 35  
 devset, *see* development test set (dev-test), 67  
 DFT, 554  
 dialogue, 492  
 dialogue act  
     correction, 512  
 dialogue acts, 509  
 dialogue manager

- design, 520  
 dialogue policy, 513  
 dialogue systems, 492  
     design, 520  
     evaluation, 517  
 diathesis alternation, 376  
 diff program, 27  
 digit recognition, 549  
 digitization, 535, 552  
 dilated convolutions, 568  
 dimension, 102  
 diphthong, 531  
     origin of term, 148  
 direct derivation (in a formal language), 236  
 directional adverb, 150  
 directive speech act, 494  
 disambiguation  
     in parsing, 267  
     syntactic, 261  
 discount, 41, 43, 44  
 discounting, 41  
 discourse, 442  
     segment, 445  
 discourse connectives, 446  
 discourse deixis, 417  
 discourse model, 415  
 discourse parsing, 447  
 discourse-new, 419  
 discourse-old, 419  
 discovery procedure, 256  
 discrete Fourier transform, 554  
 discriminative model, 77  
 disfluency, 12  
 disjunction, 26  
     pipe in regular expressions as, 6  
     square braces in regular expression as, 4  
 dispreferred response, 525  
 distance  
     cosine, 105  
 distant supervision, 340  
 distributional hypothesis, 96  
 distributional similarity, 256  
 divergences between languages in MT, 205  
 document  
     in IR, 465  
 document frequency, 107  
 document vector, 111  
 domain, 309  
 domination in syntax, 233  
 dot product, 78, 105  
 dot-product attention, 213  
 Dragon Systems, 571  
 dropout, 142  
 duration  
     temporal expression, 344  
 dynamic programming, 23  
     and parsing, 261  
     Viterbi as, 159  
 dynamic time warping, 571  
 edge-factored, 296  
 edit distance  
     minimum algorithm, 24  
 EDU, 445  
 effect size, 69  
 Elaboration (as coherence relation), 444  
 ELIZA, 2  
     implementation, 11  
     sample conversation, 10  
 Elman Networks, 176  
 ELMo  
     for affect, 410  
 EM  
     for deleted interpolation, 44  
 embedded verb, 241  
 embeddings, 100  
     cosine for similarity, 105  
     skip-gram, learning, 115  
     sparse, 104  
     tf-idf, 107  
     word2vec, 112  
 emission probabilities, 156  
 EmoLex, 396  
 emotion, 394  
 empty category, 238  
 Encoder-decoder, 208  
 end-to-end training, 184  
 endpointing, 494  
 English  
     lexical differences from French, 207  
     simplified grammar rules, 234  
     verb-framed, 207  
 entity dictionary, 165  
 entity grid, 453  
 Entity linking, 477  
 entity linking, 416  
 entity-based coherence, 451  
 entropy, 49  
     and perplexity, 49  
     cross-entropy, 51  
     per-word, 50  
     rate, 50  
     relative, 387  
 error backpropagation, 139  
 ESPnet, 572  
 ethos, 458  
 Euclidean distance  
     in L2 regularization, 89  
*Eugene Onegin*, 52  
 Euler's formula, 554  
 Europarl, 219  
 evalb, 270  
 evaluating parsers, 269  
 evaluation  
     10-fold cross-validation, 68  
     AB test, 569  
     BLEU in MT, 222  
     comparing models, 37  
     cross-validation, 68  
     development test set, 35, 67  
     devset, 67  
     part-of-speech tagging, 164  
 feature vectors, 551  
 Federalist papers, 74  
 feedforward network, 133  
 fenceposts, 263  
 FFT, 554, 571  
 file format, .wav, 536  
 filled pause, 12  
 filler, 12  
 final fall, 533  
 First Order Logic, *see* FOL  
 first-order co-occurrence, 119  
 flap (phonetic), 530  
 fluency, 221  
     in MT, 222  
 focus, 485  
 FOL, 305, 311  
      $\exists$  (there exists), 313  
      $\forall$  (for all), 313  
      $\Rightarrow$  (implies), 316  
      $\wedge$  (and), 313, 316  
      $\neg$  (not), 313, 316  
      $\vee$  (or), 316  
     and verifiability, 311  
     constants, 312  
     expressiveness of, 308, 311  
     functions, 312  
     inference in, 311  
     terms, 312  
     variables, 312  
 fold (in cross-validation), 68  
 forget gate, 187  
 formal language, 235  
 formant, 542  
 formant synthesis, 573  
 forward chaining, 317  
 forward composition, 253  
 forward-looking centers, 452  
 Fosler, E., *see* Fosler-Lussier, E.  
 fragment of word, 12  
 frame, 552  
     semantic, 379  
 frame elements, 379  
 FrameNet, 379  
 frames, 504  
 free word order, 280  
 Freebase, 335, 482  
 FreebaseQA, 482  
 French, 205  
 frequency  
     of a signal, 534  
 fricative sound, 530  
 Frump, 353  
 fully qualified date  
     expressions, 347  
 fully-connected, 133  
 function word, 149, 169  
 functional grammar, 257  
 functions in FOL, 312  
 fundamental frequency, 537  
 fusion language, 207

- Gaussian prior on weights, 90  
gazetteer, 165  
General Inquirer, 63, 395  
generalize, 88  
generalized semantic role, 376  
generation of sentences to test a CFG grammar, 234  
template-based, 508  
generative grammar, 236  
generative lexicon, 372  
generative model, 77  
generative models, 58  
generative syntax, 257  
generator, 233  
generics, 421  
genitive NP, 258  
German, 205, 544  
gerundive postmodifier, 240  
Gilbert and Sullivan, 332  
given-new, 420  
gloss, 360  
glosses, 356  
Glottal, 529  
glottal stop, 529  
glottis, 528  
Godzilla, speaker as, 384  
gold labels, 65  
Good-Turing, 45  
gradient, 84  
Grammar Constraint, 303  
Construction, 257  
Head-Driven Phrase Structure (HPSG), 248, 257  
Lexical-Functional (LFG), 257  
Link, 303  
Minimalist Program, 257  
Tree Adjoining, 257  
grammar binary branching, 249  
categorial, 250, 250  
CCG, 250  
checking, 259  
combinatory categorial, 250  
equivalence, 249  
generative, 236  
inversion transduction, 229  
strong equivalence, 249  
weak equivalence, 249  
grammatical function, 281  
grammatical relation, 281  
grammatical sentences, 235  
greedy, 215  
greedy RE patterns, 7  
Greek, 526  
grep, 3, 3, 27  
Gricean maxims, 496  
grounding, 494  
GUS, 504  
H\* pitch accent, 534
- Hamilton, Alexander, 74  
Hamming, 553  
Hansard, 228  
hanzi, 17  
harmonic, 543  
harmonic mean, 66  
Hays, D., 303  
head, 248, 281  
finding, 248  
Head-Driven Phrase Structure Grammar (HPSG), 248, 257  
Heaps' Law, 12  
Hearst patterns, 336  
Hebrew, 526  
held out, 35  
held-out, 44  
Herdan's Law, 12  
hertz as unit of measure, 534  
hidden, 156  
hidden layer, 133  
as representation of input, 134  
hidden units, 133  
Hindi, 205  
Hindi, verb-framed, 207  
HKUST, 551  
HMM, 156  
formal definition of, 156  
history in speech recognition, 571  
initial distribution, 156  
observation likelihood, 156  
observations, 156  
simplifying assumptions for POS tagging, 158  
states, 156  
transition probabilities, 156  
Hungarian part-of-speech tagging, 169  
hybrid, 572  
hyperarticulation, 512  
hyponym, 335, 358  
lexico-syntactic patterns for, 336  
hyperparameter, 86  
hyperparameters, 142  
hyponym, 358  
Hz as unit of measure, 534
- IBM Models, 228  
IBM Thomas J. Watson Research Center, 53, 571  
idf, 107
- idf term weighting, 107, 466  
if then reasoning in FOL, 317  
immediately dominates, 233  
imperative sentence structure, 237  
implicature, 496  
implicit argument, 392  
implicit confirmation, 514  
implied hierarchy in description logics, 327  
indefinite article, 239  
indefinite reference, 418  
inference, 308  
in FOL, 317  
inference-based learning, 301  
infinitives, 242  
infoboxes, 335  
information structure, 419  
status, 419  
information extraction (IE), 332  
bootstrapping, 339  
partial parsing for, 270  
information gain, 74  
for feature selection, 74  
Information retrieval, 103, 465  
initiative, 495  
inner ear, 542  
inner product, 105  
instance checking, 326  
Institutional Review Board, 522  
intensity of sound, 538  
intent determination, 506  
intercept, 78  
Interjections, 150  
intermediate phrase, 533  
International Phonetic Alphabet, 526, 546  
interpersonal stance, 408  
Interpolated Kneser-Ney discounting, 45, 47  
interpolated precision, 471  
interpolation in smoothing, 43  
interpretable, 92  
interpretation, 309  
intonation phrases, 533  
intransitive verbs, 242  
intrinsic evaluation, 35  
inversion transduction grammar (ITG), 229  
inverted index, 469  
IO, 154  
IOB tagging for temporal expressions, 345  
IPA, 526, 546  
IR, 465  
idf term weighting, 107, 466  
term weighting, 466
- vector space model, 101  
IR-based QA, 473  
IRB, 522  
IS-A, 359  
is-a, 335  
ISO 8601, 346  
isolating language, 207  
iSRL, 392  
ITG (inversion transduction grammar), 229  
Japanese, 205–207, 526, 544  
Jay, John, 74  
joint intention, 524  
Kaldi, 572  
Katz backoff, 44  
KBP, 354  
KenLM, 48, 53  
KL divergence, 387  
KL-ONE, 329  
Klatt formant synthesizer, 573  
Kleene \*, 5  
sneakiness of matching zero things, 5  
Kleene +, 5  
Kneser-Ney discounting, 45  
knowledge base, 307  
knowledge claim, 460  
knowledge graphs, 332  
knowledge-based, 366  
Korean, 544  
KRL, 329  
Kullback-Leibler divergence, 387  
L\* pitch accent, 534  
L+H\* pitch accent, 534  
L1 regularization, 89  
L2 regularization, 89  
labeled precision, 270  
labeled recall, 269  
labial place of articulation, 529  
labiodental consonants, 529  
lambda notation, 315  
language identification, 570  
universal, 205  
language ID, 63  
language id, 55  
language model, 30  
Laplace smoothing, 41  
Laplace smoothing:for PMI, 111  
larynx, 527  
lasso regression, 89  
latent semantic analysis, 125  
lateral sound, 530  
LDC, 16  
learning rate, 84  
lemma, 12, 97  
versus wordform, 12  
lemmatization, 3

- Lesk algorithm, 366  
 Simplified, 366  
 Levenshtein distance, 23  
 lexical  
   category, 233  
   cohesion, 443, 456  
   database, 360  
   gap, 206  
   semantics, 97  
   stress, 532  
   trigger, in IE, 344  
 lexical answer type, 486  
 lexical sample task in WSD, 363  
 Lexical-Functional Grammar (LFG), 257  
 lexico-syntactic pattern, 336  
 lexicon, 233  
 LibriSpeech, 550  
 likelihood, 58  
 linear chain CRF, 162, 163  
 linear classifiers, 59  
 linear interpolation for n-grams, 44  
 linearly separable, 131  
 Linguistic Data Consortium, 16  
 Linguistic Discourse model, 461  
 Link Grammar, 303  
 List (as coherence relation), 445  
 listen attend and spell, 555  
 LIWC, 63, 397  
 LM, 30  
 LOB corpus, 170  
 localization, 203  
 location-based attention, 567  
 locative, 150  
 locative adverb, 150  
 log  
   why used for probabilities, 34  
   why used to compress speech, 536  
 log likelihood ratio, 405  
 log odds ratio, 405  
 log probabilities, 34, 34  
 logical connectives, 313  
 logical vocabulary, 308  
 logistic function, 78  
 logistic regression, 76  
   conditional maximum likelihood estimation, 82  
   Gaussian priors, 90  
   learning in, 81  
   regularization, 90  
   relation to neural networks, 135  
 logos, 458  
 Long short-term memory, 187  
 long-distance dependency, 245  
 traces in the Penn Treebank, 245  
 wh-questions, 238  
 lookahead in RE, 11  
 loss, 81  
 loudness, 539  
 low frame rate, 556  
 low-resourced languages, 227  
 LPC (Linear Predictive Coding), 571  
 LSI, *see* latent semantic analysis  
 LSTM, 171  
 LUNAR, 490  
 Lunar, 329  
 machine learning  
   for NER, 168  
   textbooks, 74, 95  
 machine translation, 203  
 macroaveraging, 67  
 Madison, James, 74  
 MAE, 13  
 Mandarin, 205, 544  
 Manhattan distance  
   in L1 regularization, 89  
 manner adverb, 150  
 manner of articulation, 529  
 marker passing for WSD, 371  
 Markov, 32  
   assumption, 32  
 Markov assumption, 155  
 Markov chain, 52, 155  
   formal definition of, 156  
   initial distribution, 156  
   N-gram as, 155  
   states, 156  
   transition probabilities, 156  
 Markov model, 32  
   formal definition of, 156  
   history, 53  
 Marx, G., 259  
 mass nouns, 149  
 maxent, 95  
 maxim, Gricean, 496  
 maximum entropy, 95  
 maximum spanning tree, 297  
 Mayan, 207  
 McNemar's test, 564  
 MCTest, 489  
 mean average precision, 471  
 mean opinion score, 569  
 mean reciprocal rank, 488  
 meaning representation, 305  
   as set of symbols, 306  
   early uses, 329  
   languages, 306  
 mechanical indexing, 124  
 Mechanical Turk, 549  
 mel, 554  
   scale, 538  
 mention detection, 424  
 mention-pair, 427  
 mentions, 415  
 meronym, 359  
 meronymy, 359  
 MERT, for training in MT, 229  
 MeSH (Medical Subject Headings), 56, 363  
 Message Understanding Conference, 352  
 metarule, 244  
 METEOR, 222, 230  
 metonymy, 359, 440  
 Micro-Planner, 329  
 microaveraging, 67  
 Microsoft .wav format, 536  
 mini-batch, 87  
 minimum edit distance, 22, 22, 159  
   example of, 25  
   for speech recognition evaluation, 562  
 MINIMUM EDIT DISTANCE, 25  
 minimum edit distance algorithm, 24  
 Minimum Error Rate Training, 229  
 MLE  
   for n-grams, 32  
   for n-grams, intuition, 33  
 MLP, 133  
 modal verb, 151  
 model, 308  
 model card, 73  
 modified Kneser-Ney, 47  
 modified n-gram precision, 224  
 modus ponens, 317  
 Montague semantics, 329  
 Monte Carlo search, 221  
 morpheme, 21  
 MOS (mean opinion score), 569  
 Moses, Michelangelo statue of, 492  
 Moses, MT toolkit, 229  
 most frequent sense, 364  
 MRR, 488  
 MT, 203  
   divergences, 205  
   post-editing, 203  
 mu-law, 536  
 MUC, 352, 353  
 MUC F-measure, 434  
 multi-layer perceptrons, 133  
 multihead self-attention layers, 194  
 multinomial logistic regression, 90  
 multinomial naive Bayes, 56  
 multinomial naive Bayes classifier, 56  
 multiword expressions, 125  
 MWE, 125  
 n-best list, 557  
 N-gram  
   as Markov chain, 155  
 n-gram, 30, 32  
   absolute discounting, 45  
   add-one smoothing, 41  
   as approximation, 31  
   as generators, 38  
   equation for, 32  
   example of, 33, 34  
   for Shakespeare, 38  
   history of, 53  
   interpolation, 43  
   Katz backoff, 44  
   KenLM, 48, 53  
   Kneser-Ney discounting, 45  
   logprobs in, 34  
   normalizing, 33  
   parameter estimation, 33  
   sensitivity to corpus, 37  
   smoothing, 41  
   SRILM, 53  
   test set, 35  
   training set, 35  
   unknown words, 40  
 naive Bayes  
   multinomial, 56  
   simplifying assumptions, 58  
 naive Bayes assumption, 58  
 naive Bayes classifier  
   use in text categorization, 56  
 named entity, 148, 153  
   list of types, 153  
 named entity recognition, 153  
 nasal sound, 528, 530  
 nasal tract, 528  
 Natural Questions, 475  
 negative log likelihood loss, 92, 138  
 neo-Davidsonian, 319  
 NER, 153  
 neural networks  
   relation to logistic regression, 135  
 newline character, 8  
 NIST for MT evaluation, 222, 230  
 noisy-or, 340  
 NomBank, 378  
 Nominal, 233  
 non-capturing group, 10  
 non-finite postmodifier, 240  
 non-greedy, 7  
 non-logical vocabulary, 308  
 non-standard words, 565  
 non-stationary process, 552  
 non-terminal symbols, 233, 234  
 normal form, 249, 249  
 normalization  
   dates, 507  
   temporal, 346  
 word, 20

- normalization of probabilities, 32  
 normalizing, 135  
 noun  
     abstract, 149, 239  
     common, 149  
     count, 149  
     mass, 149, 239  
     proper, 149  
 noun phrase, 232  
     constituents, 233  
 Nouns, 149  
 NP, 233, 234  
 nucleus, 444  
 nucleus of syllable, 531  
 null hypothesis, 69  
 Nyquist frequency, 535, 552  
  
 observation likelihood  
     role in Viterbi, 160  
 one-hot vector, 144  
 onset, syllable, 531  
 ontology, 323  
 OntoNotes, 372  
 OOV (out of vocabulary) words, 40  
 OOV rate, 40  
 open class, 149  
 open information extraction, 342  
 open vocabulary system unknown words in, 40  
 operation list, 22  
 operator precedence, 6, 7  
 optionality  
     of determiners, 239  
     use of ? in regular expressions for, 4  
 oral tract, 528  
 ordinal number, 239  
 orthography  
     opaque, 527  
     transparent, 527  
 output gate, 188  
 overfitting, 88  
  
 p-value, 69  
 Paired, 70  
 palatal sound, 529  
 palate, 529  
 palato-alveolar sound, 529  
 parallel corpus, 219  
 parallel distributed processing, 147  
 parallelogram model, 119  
 parse tree, 233, 235  
 PARSEVAL, 269  
 parsing  
     ambiguity, 259  
     chunking, 270  
     CKY, 261  
     CYK, *see* CKY evaluation, 269  
     history, 278  
     partial, 270  
     relation to grammars, 236  
  
 shallow, 270  
 syntactic, 259  
 well-formed substring table, 278  
 part of speech  
     as used in CFG, 233  
 part-of-speech  
     adjective, 150  
     adverb, 150  
     closed class, 149  
     interjection, 150  
     noun, 149  
     open class, 149  
     particle, 150  
     subtle distinction between verb and noun, 150  
     verb, 150  
 part-of-speech tagger  
     PARTS, 170  
     TAGGIT, 170  
 Part-of-speech tagging, 151  
 part-of-speech tagging ambiguity and, 151  
     amount of ambiguity in Brown corpus, 152  
     and morphological analysis, 169  
     feature templates, 164  
     history of, 170  
     Hungarian, 169  
     Turkish, 169  
     unknown words, 162  
 part-whole, 359  
 partial parsing, 270  
 particle, 150  
 PARTS tagger, 170  
 parts of speech, 148  
 pathos, 458  
 pattern, regular expression, 3  
 PCM (Pulse Code Modulation), 536  
 PDP, 147  
 PDTB, 446  
 Penn Discourse TreeBank, 446  
 Penn Treebank, 244  
     tagset, 151, 151  
 Penn Treebank  
     tokenization, 16  
 per-word entropy, 50  
 perceptron, 130  
 period of a wave, 534  
 perplexity, 36, 51, 175  
     as weighted average branching factor, 36  
     defined via cross-entropy, 51  
 personal pronoun, 150  
 personality, 407  
 persuasion, 459  
 phone, 526, 545  
 phonetics, 526  
     articulatory, 527, 527  
 phonotactics, 531  
 phrasal verb, 150  
 phrase-based translation, 229  
 phrase-structure grammar, 233, 256  
 PII, 501  
 pipe, 6  
*The Pirates of Penzance*, 332  
 pitch, 538  
 pitch accent, 532  
     ToBI, 534  
 pitch extraction, 539  
 pitch track, 537  
 place of articulation, 529  
 planning  
     and speech acts, 524  
     shared plans, 524  
 pleonastic, 421  
 plosive sound, 530  
 plural, 239  
 Pointwise mutual information, 109  
 polysynthetic language, 207  
 Porter stemmer, 21  
 POS, 148  
 positional embeddings, 195  
 possessive NP, 258  
 possessive pronoun, 150  
 post-editing, 203  
 postdeterminer, 239  
 postings, 469  
 postmodifier, 240  
 postponed constructions, 232  
 postposition, 205  
 Potts diagram, 403  
 power of a signal, 537  
 PP, 234  
 PPMI, 109  
 praat, 539, 540, 545  
 precedence, 6  
 precedence, operator, 6  
 Precision, 66  
 precision  
     for MT evaluation, 222, 230  
     in NER, 167  
     modified n-gram, in MT, 224  
 precision-recall curve, 471  
 predeterminer, 241  
 predicate, 242  
 predicate-argument relations, 242  
 preference semantics, 371  
 premises, 458  
 proposed constructions, 232  
 prepositional phrase, 240  
     constituency, 234  
     preposing, 232  
 prepositions, 150  
 presequences, 495  
 pretraining, 144  
 primitive decomposition, 389  
 principle of contrast, 98  
 prior probability, 58  
 pro-drop languages, 208  
 productions, 233  
 progressive prompting, 514  
 projection layer, 145  
 Prolog, 317  
 prominence, phonetic, 533  
 prominent word, 532  
 prompts, 508  
 pronoun, 150  
     bound, 418  
     demonstrative, 419  
     non-binary, 422  
     personal, 150  
     possessive, 150  
     wh-, 150  
 pronunciation dictionary, 544  
     CELEX, 544  
     CMU, 544  
 PropBank, 377  
 proper noun, 149  
 propositional meaning, 98  
 prosodic phrasing, 533  
 Prosody, 532  
 prosody  
     accented syllables, 532  
     reduced vowels, 533  
 PROTO-AGENT, 376  
 PROTO-PATIENT, 376  
 pseudoword, 388  
 PTRANS, 389  
 Pullum, G. K., 231  
 punctuation  
     for numbers  
         cross-linguistically, 16  
     for sentence segmentation, 22  
     tokenization, 16  
     treated as words, 11  
     treated as words in LM, 39  
  
 qualia structure, 372  
 quantifier  
     as part of speech, 239  
     semantics, 313  
 quantization, 536, 552  
 query, 465  
     in IR, 465  
 question  
     factoid, 464  
     rise, 533  
 question answering  
     evaluation, 488  
     factoid questions, 464  
  
 Radio Rex, 548  
 range, regular expression, 4  
 ranking, 222  
 rapid reprompting, 515  
 rarefaction, 535  
 RDF, 335  
 RDF triple, 335  
 RE  
     regular expression, 3  
 Read speech, 550  
 reading comprehension, 473

- Reason (as coherence relation), **444**  
 Recall, **66**  
 recall  
     for MT evaluation, 222, 230  
     in NER, 167  
 recipe  
     meaning of, 305  
 rectangular, **552**  
 reduced vowels, **533**  
 reduction, phonetic, **533**  
 reference  
     bound pronouns, 418  
     cataphora, 418  
     definite, 418  
     generics, 421  
     indefinite, 418  
 reference point, **321**  
 referent, **415**  
     accessing of, **415**  
     evoking of, **415**  
 referential density, **208**  
 reflexive, **422**  
 register in RE, **10**  
 regression  
     lasso, **89**  
     ridge, **89**  
 regular expression, **3**, 26  
     substitutions, **9**  
 regularization, **89**  
 rejection  
     conversation act, **514**  
 relatedness, **98**  
 relation extraction, **332**  
 relative  
     temporal expression, 344  
 relative entropy, **387**  
 relative frequency, **33**  
 relative pronoun, **241**  
 release, stop, **529**  
 relevance, **496**  
 relexicalize, **516**  
 ReLU, **129**  
 reporting events, **348**  
 representation learning, **96**  
 representational harm, **121**  
 representational harms, **72**  
 rescore, **557**  
 resolution for inference, **318**  
 resolve, **152**  
 Resource Management, **571**  
 response generation, **501**  
 restrictive grammar, **508**  
 restrictive relative clause, **241**  
 retrieve and read, **473**  
 retrofitting, **369**  
 ReVerb, **342**  
 reversives, **358**  
 rewrite, 233  
 Rhetorical Structure Theory, *see* RST  
 rhyme, syllable, **531**  
 Riau Indonesian, 150  
 ridge regression, **89**  
 rime
- syllable, **531**  
 RMS amplitude, 537  
 RNN-T, **561**  
 role-filler extraction, **351**  
 Rosebud, sled named, 442  
 rounded vowels, **531**  
 row vector, **103**  
 RST, **444**  
     TreeBank, 446, 461  
 rules  
     context-free, **233**  
     context-free, expansion, 233, 237  
     context-free, sample, 234  
 Russian  
     fusion language, 207  
     verb-framed, 207
- S as start symbol in CFG, **233**  
 salience, in discourse model, **420**  
 sampling, **552**  
     of analog waveform, **535**  
     rate, **535**, **552**  
     used in clustering, 370  
 satellite, **206**, **444**  
 satellite-framed language, 207  
 saturated, **130**  
 Schönfinkelization, 315  
 schwa, **533**  
 SCISOR, 353  
 sclite, 563  
 sclite package, 27  
 script  
     Schankian, 379  
 scripts, **350**  
 SDRT (Segmented Discourse Representation Theory), **461**  
 search engine, **465**  
 search tree, **215**  
 second-order  
     co-occurrence, **119**  
 seed pattern in IE, **338**  
 seed tuples, **338**  
 segmentation  
     sentence, 22  
     word, **16**  
 selectional association, **387**  
 selectional preference strength, **387**  
 selectional preferences  
     pseudowords for evaluation, 388  
 selectional restriction, **384**  
     representing with events, 385  
     violations in WSD, 386  
 self-attention, **191**  
 self-supervision, **113**  
 semantic concordance, **363**  
 semantic drift in IE, 339  
 semantic feature, **124**  
 semantic field, **98**  
 semantic frame, **99**
- semantic grammars, **507**  
 semantic network  
     for word sense disambiguation, 371  
 semantic networks  
     origins, 329  
 semantic parsing, **305**  
 semantic relations in IE, **333**  
     table, 334  
 semantic role, **374**, **374**, **376**  
 Semantic role labeling, **380**  
 semantics  
     lexical, **97**  
 semivowel, **528**  
 sense  
     word, **355**, **356**  
 sentence  
     error rate, **563**  
     segmentation, **22**  
 sentence realization, **515**  
 sentence segmentation, **3**  
 sentential complements, **241**  
 sentiment, **99**  
     origin of term, 413  
 sentiment analysis, **55**  
 sentiment lexicons, **63**  
 SentiWordNet, **402**  
 sequence labeling, **148**  
 SGNS, **112**  
 Shakespeare  
     n-gram approximations to, 38  
 shallow discourse parsing, **450**  
 shallow parse, **270**  
 shared plans, 524  
 shift-reduce parsing, **285**  
 SHRDLU, 329  
 sibilant sound, **530**  
 side sequence, **495**  
 sigmoid, **78**, **128**  
 significance test  
     MAPSSWE for ASR, 563  
     McNemar's, 564  
 similarity, **98**  
 Simple Questions, 482  
 Simplified Lesk, **366**  
 singleton, **416**  
 singular they, **422**  
 skip-gram, **112**  
 slot filling, **354**, **506**  
 slots, **504**  
 smoothing, **41**, **41**  
     absolute discounting, **45**  
     add-one, **41**  
     discounting, **41**  
     interpolation, **43**  
     Katz backoff, **44**  
     Kneser-Ney discounting, **45**  
     Laplace, **41**  
     linear interpolation, 44  
 softmax, **90**, **135**  
 source, **209**
- source-filter model, **543**  
 SOV language, **205**  
 spam detection, **55**, **63**  
 span, **267**, **476**  
 Spanish, 544  
 Speaker diarization, **569**  
 speaker identification, **570**  
 speaker recognition, **570**  
 speaker verification, **570**  
 spectrogram, **542**  
 spectrum, **540**  
 speech  
     telephone bandwidth, **536**  
 speech acts, **494**  
 speech recognition  
     architecture, 549, 555  
     history of, 570  
 speech synthesis, **549**  
 spelling correction  
     use of n-grams in, 29  
 split-half reliability, **398**  
 SQuAD, **474**  
 SRILM, **53**  
 SRL, 380  
 Stacked RNNs, **184**  
 start symbol, **233**  
 state  
     semantic representation of, 318  
 static embeddings, **112**  
 stationary process, **552**  
 stationary stochastic process, **50**  
 statistical significance  
     MAPSSWE for ASR, 563  
     McNemar's test, 564  
 statistically significant, **70**  
 stative expressions, 322  
 stem, **21**  
 Stemming, 3  
 stemming, **21**  
 stop (consonant), **529**  
 stop list, **468**  
 stop words, **60**  
 streaming, **561**  
 stress  
     lexical, **532**  
 stride, **552**  
 strong equivalence of grammars, 249  
 structural ambiguity, **259**  
 structured polysemy, **359**  
 stupid backoff, **48**  
 subcategorization  
     tagsets for, **242**  
 subcategorization frame, **242**  
     examples, 242  
 subcategorize for, **242**  
 subdialogue, **495**  
 subject, syntactic  
     in wh-questions, 238  
 subjectivity, **393**, **413**  
 substitutability, 256  
 substitution in TAG, 257

- substitution operator  
(regular expressions), 9  
subsumption, 324, 326  
subwords, 18  
superordinate, 359  
supersenses, 361  
Supertagging, 273  
supervised machine learning, 56  
SVD, 125  
SVO language, 205  
Swedish, verb-framed, 207  
Switchboard, 550  
Switchboard Corpus, 11, 500, 535, 536, 550  
syllabification, 531  
syllable, 531  
  accented, 532  
  coda, 531  
  nucleus, 531  
  onset, 531  
  prominent, 532  
  rhyme, 531  
  rime, 531  
synchronous grammar, 229  
synonyms, 97, 358  
synset, 360  
syntactic disambiguation, 261  
syntactic movement, 245  
syntax, 231  
  origin of term, 148
- TAC KBP, 335  
Tacotron2, 567  
TACRED dataset, 335  
TAG, 257  
TAGGIT, 170  
tagset  
  Penn Treebank, 151, 151  
  table of Penn Treebank tags, 151  
Tamil, 207  
tanh, 129  
tap (phonetic), 530  
target, 209  
target embedding, 117  
Tay, 521  
TBox, 323  
teacher forcing, 180, 212  
technai, 148  
telephone-bandwidth, 552  
telephone-bandwidth speech, 536  
telic eventualities, 323  
template filling, 333, 350  
template recognition, 351  
template, in IE, 350  
template-based generation, 508  
temporal adverb, 150  
temporal anchor, 347  
temporal expression  
  absolute, 344  
  metaphor for, 322  
  recognition, 332  
  relative, 344
- temporal logic, 319  
temporal normalization, 346  
temporal reasoning, 330  
tense logic, 319  
term  
  clustering, 371, 372  
  in FOL, 312  
  in IR, 465  
  weight in IR, 466  
term frequency, 107  
term weight, 466  
term-document matrix, 101  
term-term matrix, 103  
terminal symbol, 233  
terminology  
  in description logics, 323  
test set, 35  
  development, 35  
  how to choose, 35  
text categorization, 55  
  bag of words assumption, 57  
  naive Bayes approach, 56  
  unknown words, 60  
text normalization, 2  
Text summarization, 197  
text-to-speech, 549  
TextTiling, 456  
tf-idf, 108  
thematic grid, 375  
thematic role, 374  
  and diathesis alternation, 376  
  examples of, 374  
  problems, 376  
theme, 374  
theme, as thematic role, 374  
thesaurus, 371  
time, representation of, 319  
time-aligned transcription, 545  
TimeBank, 349  
TIMIT, 545  
ToBI, 534  
  boundary tones, 534  
tokenization, 2  
  sentence, 22  
  word, 16  
tokens, word, 12  
topic models, 99  
toxicity detection, 72  
trace, 238, 244  
trachea, 527  
training oracle, 290  
training set, 35  
  cross-validation, 68  
  how to choose, 35  
transcription  
  of speech, 548  
  reference, 562  
  time-aligned, 545  
transduction grammars, 229  
Transformations and Discourse Analysis Project (TDAP), 170  
Transformers, 190
- transition probability  
  role in Viterbi, 160  
transitive verbs, 242  
translation  
  divergences, 205  
TREC, 490  
Tree Adjoining Grammar (TAG), 257  
  adjunction in, 257  
  substitution in, 257  
treebank, 244  
trigram, 34  
truth-conditional semantics, 310  
TTS, 549  
tune, 533  
  continuation rise, 534  
Turing test  
  Passed in 1972, 500  
Turk, Mechanical, 549  
Turkish  
  agglutinative, 207  
  part-of-speech tagging, 169  
turn correction ratio, 520  
turns, 493  
TyDi QA, 475  
type raising, 253  
typed dependency structure, 280  
types  
  word, 12  
typology, 205  
  linguistic, 205
- ungrammatical sentences, 235  
unit production, 262  
unit vector, 105  
Universal Dependencies, 282  
universal, linguistic, 205  
Unix, 3  
<UNK>, 40  
unknown words  
  in n-grams, 40  
  in part-of-speech tagging, 162  
  in text categorization, 60  
unvoiced sound, 528  
user-centered design, 520  
utterance, 12
- vagueness, 307  
value sensitive design, 521  
vanishing gradient, 130  
vanishing gradients, 187  
variable  
  existentially quantified, 314  
  universally quantified, 314  
variables, 308  
variables in FOL, 312  
Vauquois triangle, 228  
vector, 102, 128  
vector length, 105  
vector semantics, 96
- vector space, 102  
vector space model, 101  
Vectors semantics, 100  
velar sound, 529  
velum, 529  
verb  
  copula, 151  
  modal, 151  
  phrasal, 150  
verb alternations, 376  
verb phrase, 234, 241  
verb-framed language, 207  
Verbs, 150  
verifiability, 306  
Vietnamese, 207  
Viterbi  
  and beam search, 215  
Viterbi algorithm, 23, 159  
  inference in CRF, 166  
VITERBI ALGORITHM, 159  
vocal  
  cords, 528  
  folds, 528  
  tract, 528  
vocoder, 565  
vocoding, 565  
voice user interface, 520  
voiced sound, 528  
voiceless sound, 528  
vowel, 528  
  back, 530, 531  
  front, 530  
  height, 530, 531  
  high, 531  
  low, 531  
  mid, 531  
  reduced, 533  
  rounded, 530
- VSO language, 205
- wake word, 569  
Wall Street Journal  
  *Wall Street Journal*  
  speech recognition of, 571  
warping, 571  
wavefile format, 536  
WaveNet, 567  
Wavenet, 567  
weak equivalence of grammars, 249  
Web Ontology Language, 328  
WebQuestions, 482  
Weight Tying, 180  
well-formed substring table, 278  
WFST, 278  
wh-non-subject-question, 238  
wh-phrase, 237, 238  
wh-pronoun, 150  
wh-subject-questions, 237  
wh-word, 237  
WiC, 367  
wikification, 478  
wildcard, regular expression, 5

- 
- |  |   |   |   |
|--|---|---|---|
| <p>Winograd Schema, <b>436</b><br/>     Wizard-of-Oz system, <b>520</b><br/>     word<br/>         boundary, regular expression notation, <b>6</b><br/>         closed class, <b>149</b><br/>         definition of, <b>11</b><br/>         error rate, <b>551</b>, <b>562</b><br/>         fragment, <b>12</b><br/>         function, <b>149</b>, <b>169</b><br/>         open class, <b>149</b><br/>         punctuation as, <b>11</b><br/>         tokens, <b>12</b><br/>         types, <b>12</b><br/>     word normalization, <b>20</b></p> | <p>word segmentation, <b>16</b>, <b>18</b><br/>     word sense, <b>355</b>, <b>356</b><br/>     word sense disambiguation, <b>363</b>, <i>see</i> WSD<br/>     word sense induction, <b>369</b><br/>     word shape, <b>164</b><br/>     word tokenization, <b>16</b><br/>     word-in-context, <b>367</b><br/>     word-word matrix, <b>103</b><br/>     word2vec, <b>112</b><br/>     wordform, <b>12</b><br/>         and lemma, <b>97</b><br/>         versus lemma, <b>12</b><br/>     WordNet, <b>360</b>, <b>360</b><br/>     wordpiece, <b>218</b><br/>     world knowledge, <b>305</b></p> | <p>WSD, <b>363</b><br/>         AI-oriented efforts, <b>371</b><br/>         all-words task, <b>363</b><br/>         bootstrapping, <b>372</b><br/>         decision tree approach, <b>372</b><br/>         evaluation of, <b>364</b><br/>         history, <b>371</b><br/>         history of, <b>372</b><br/>         lexical sample task, <b>363</b><br/>         neural network<br/>             approaches, <b>371</b><br/>             robust approach, <b>371</b><br/>         supervised machine learning, <b>372</b></p> | <p>unsupervised machine learning, <b>369</b><br/>     WSI, <b>369</b><br/>     X-bar schemata, <b>257</b><br/>     yes-no questions, <b>237</b><br/>     Yonkers Racetrack, <b>49</b><br/>     Yupik, <b>207</b><br/>     zero anaphor, <b>419</b><br/>     zero-width, <b>11</b><br/>     zeros, <b>40</b><br/>     zeugma, <b>357</b></p> |
|--|---|---|---|